

1
2
3
4
5
IEEE P802.11ax™/D5.0, October 2019

(amendment to IEEE P802.11REVmd/D3.0)

6
IEEE P802.11ax™/D5.0

7
Draft Standard for Information technology— Tele-
8
communications and information exchange between
9
systems Local and metropolitan area networks—
10
Specific requirements

11
Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control
12
(MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications

13
Amendment 1: Enhancements for High Efficiency
14
WLAN

15
Prepared by the 802.11 Working Group of the

16
LAN/MAN Standards Committee
17
of the
18
IEEE Computer Society

19
Copyright © 2019 by the IEEE.

20
Three Park Avenue

21
New York, New York 10016-5997, USA

22
All rights reserved.

23
This document is an unapproved draft of a proposed IEEE Standard. As such, this document is subject to
24
change. USE AT YOUR OWN RISK! Because this is an unapproved draft, this document must not be
25
utilized for any conformance/compliance purposes. Permission is hereby granted for IEEE Standards
26
Committee participants to reproduce this document for purposes of international standardization
27
consideration. Prior to adoption of this document, in whole or in part, by another standards development
28
organization permission must first be obtained from the IEEE Standards Activities Department
29
(stds.ipr@ieee.org). Other entities seeking permission to reproduce this document, in whole or in part, must
30
also obtain permission from the IEEE Standards Activities Department.

31
IEEE Standards Activities Department
32
445 Hoes Lane
33
Piscataway, NJ 08854, USA

1 **Abstract:** This amendment defines modifications to both the IEEE 802.11 physical layer (PHY)
2 and the medium access control (MAC) sublayer for high efficiency operation in frequency bands
3 between 1 GHz and 7.125 GHz.
4

5 **Keywords:** high efficiency, PHY, physical layer, MAC, medium access control, OFDMA, orthogonal
6 frequency division multiple access, wireless local area network, WLAN, dense deployment
7

8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **Introduction**

2
 3
 4 This introduction is not part of IEEE P802.11ax/D5.0, October 2019, IEEE Standard for Information technology—
 5 Telecommunications and information exchange between systems—Local and metropolitan area network—Spe-
 6 cific requirements—Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifica-
 7 tions—Amendment 1: Enhancements for High Efficiency WLAN.
 8
 9

10
 11 This amendment defines modifications to both the IEEE 802.11 physical layer (PHY) and the medium
 12 access control (MAC) sublayer for high efficiency operation in frequency bands between 1 GHz and
 13 7.125 GHz.
 14

15 **Laws and regulations**

16
 17 Users of these documents should consult all applicable laws and regulations. Compliance with the
 18 provisions of this standard does not imply compliance to any applicable regulatory requirements.
 19 Implementers of the standard are responsible for observing or referring to the applicable regulatory
 20 requirements. IEEE does not, by the publication of its standards, intend to urge action that is not in
 21 compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.
 22
 23

24 **Copyrights**

25
 26 This document is copyrighted by the IEEE. It is made available for a wide variety of both public and private
 27 uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation,
 28 standardization, and the promotion of engineering practices and methods. By making this document
 29 available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, the IEEE does not waive any rights in
 30 copyright to this document.
 31
 32

33 **Updating of IEEE documents**

34
 35 Users of IEEE standards should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the
 36 issuance of new editions or may be amended from time to time through the issuance of amendments,
 37 corrigenda, or errata. An official IEEE document at any point in time consists of the current edition of the
 38 document together with any amendments, corrigenda, or errata then in effect. In order to determine whether
 39 a given document is the current edition and whether it has been amended through the issuance
 40 of amendments, corrigenda, or errata, visit the IEEE Standards Association website at <http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/standards.jsp>, or contact the IEEE at the address listed previously.
 41
 42

43 For more information about the IEEE Standards Association or the IEEE standards development process,
 44 visit the IEEE-SA website at <http://standards.ieee.org>.
 45
 46

47 **Errata**

48
 49 Errata, if any, for this and all other standards can be accessed at the following URL: <http://standards.ieee.org/findstds/errata/index.html>. Users are encouraged to check this URL for errata
 50 periodically.
 51
 52

53 **Patents**

54
 55 Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter
 56 covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or
 57 58

1 validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. A patent holder or patent applicant has filed a statement
2 of assurance that it will grant licenses under these rights without compensation or under reasonable rates,
3 with reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination to applicants
4 desiring to obtain such licenses. Other Essential Patent Claims may exist for which a statement of assurance
5 has not been received. The IEEE is not responsible for identifying Essential Patent Claims for which a
6 license may be required, for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of Patents Claims, or
7 determining whether any licensing terms or conditions are reasonable or non-discriminatory. Further
8 information may be obtained from the IEEE Standards Association.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

Participants

At the time this revision was sent to sponsor ballot, the IEEE 802.11 Working Group had the following officers:

Dorothy Stanley, Chair
Jon W. Rosdahl, 1st Vice Chair
Robert Stacey, 2nd Vice Chair
Stephen McCann, Secretary

The officers and members of the Task Group ax Working Group ballot pool are as follows:

Osama Aboul-Magd, Chair
Ron Porat, 1st Vice Chair
Alfred Astarjadhi, 2nd Vice Chair
Yasuhiko Inoue, Secretary
Robert Stacey, Technical Editor

Editor's Note: A 3-column list of working group voters at the time the working group first approved the draft will be inserted here.

Major contributions were received from the following individuals:

Editor's Note: A 3-column list of those who made major contributions will be inserted here.

The following members of the individual balloting committee voted on this revision. Balloters may have voted for approval, disapproval, or abstention.

Editor's Note: A 3-column list of sponsor ballot voters will be inserted here.

Editor's Note: The date of approval will be inserted on the following line.

When the IEEE-SA Standards Board approved this revision on <date>, it had the following membership:

Editor's Note: The officers of the IEEE-SA Standards board will be inserted here.

Editor's Note: A 3-column list of the IEEE-SA Standards board members will be inserted here.

Also included are the following nonvoting IEEE-SA Standards Board liaisons:

Editor's Note: The Standards Program Manager and Staff liaison will be inserted below.

<name>
 IEEE Standards Program Manager, Document Development

 <name>
 IEEE Standards Program Managers, Technical Program Development

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **Contents**

4	Editorial Notes	33
5		
6	3. Definitions, acronyms, and abbreviations.....	37
7		
8	3.1 Definitions	37
9	3.2 Definitions specific to IEEE 802.11	37
10	3.4 Abbreviations and acronyms	45
11		
12	4. General description	47
13		
14	4.3 Components of the IEEE Std 802.11 architecture	47
15	4.3.15a High efficiency (HE) STA.....	47
16	4.3.19 Wireless network management.....	48
17	4.3.19.8 Event reporting.....	48
18		
19	6. Layer management.....	49
20		
21	6.3 MLME SAP interface	49
22	6.3.3 Scan.....	49
23	6.3.3.2 MLME-SCAN.request	49
24	6.3.3.3 MLME-SCAN.confirm	49
25	6.3.4 Synchronization	53
26	6.3.4.2 MLME-JOIN.request	53
27	6.3.7 Associate	53
28	6.3.7.2 MLME-ASSOCIATE.request.....	53
29	6.3.7.3 MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm.....	54
30	6.3.7.4 MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication	57
31	6.3.7.5 MLME-ASSOCIATE.response	59
32	6.3.8 Reassociate.....	61
33	6.3.8.2 MLME-REASSOCIATE.request.....	61
34	6.3.8.3 MLME-REASSOCIATE.confirm.....	62
35	6.3.8.4 MLME-REASSOCIATE.indication	64
36	6.3.8.5 MLME-REASSOCIATE.response	67
37	6.3.11 Start.....	69
38	6.3.11.2 MLME-START.request	69
39	6.5 PLME SAP interface	70
40	6.5.6 PLME-TXTIME.confirm.....	70
41	6.5.6.2 Semantics of the service primitive	70
42		
43	8. PHY service specification.....	71
44		
45	8.3 Detailed PHY service specifications.....	71
46	8.3.4 Basic service and options.....	71
47	8.3.4.2 PHY-SAP inter-(sub)layer service primitives.....	71
48	8.3.4.3 PHY SAP service primitives parameters	71
49	8.3.4.4 Vector descriptions	71
50	8.3.5 PHY SAP detailed service specification.....	72
51	8.3.5.2 PHY-DATA.request.....	72
52	8.3.5.3 PHY-DATA.indication	72
53	8.3.5.10 PHY-CCARESET.request	73
54	8.3.5.12 PHY-CCA.indication	74

1	8.3.5.16	PHY-TRIGGER.request	75
2	9.	Frame formats	77
3	9.2	MAC frame formats.....	77
4	9.2.4	Frame fields	77
5	9.2.4.1	Frame Control field.....	77
6	9.2.4.3	Address fields.....	78
7	9.2.4.5	QoS Control field	78
8	9.2.4.6	HT Control field.....	82
9	9.2.4.6a	Control subfield variants of an A-Control subfield	84
10	9.2.4.7	Frame Body field	94
11	9.2.5	Duration/ID field (QoS STA)	96
12	9.2.5.2	Setting for single and multiple protection under enhanced distributed	
13	channel access (EDCA)	96	
14	9.2.5.7	Setting for control response frames	98
15	9.2.5.8	Setting for other response frames.....	98
16	9.3	Format of individual frame types.....	99
17	9.3.1	Control frames	99
18	9.3.1.2	RTS frame format	99
19	9.3.1.3	CTS frame format	99
20	9.3.1.5	PS-Poll frame format	99
21	9.3.1.6	CF-End frame format	99
22	9.3.1.7	BlockAckReq frame format	99
23	9.3.1.8	BlockAck frame format	100
24	9.3.1.19	VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame format.....	108
25	9.3.1.22	Trigger frame format.....	112
26	9.3.2	Data frames	125
27	9.3.2.1	Format of Data frames	125
28	9.3.3	Management frames.....	125
29	9.3.3.2	Beacon frame format.....	125
30	9.3.3.5	Association Request frame format.....	127
31	9.3.3.6	Association Response frame format	127
32	9.3.3.7	Reassociation Request frame format.....	129
33	9.3.3.8	Reassociation Response frame format	129
34	9.3.3.9	Probe Request frame format	131
35	9.3.3.10	Probe Response frame format	131
36	9.3.3.13	Action frame format.....	133
37	9.3.4	Extension frames.....	133
38	9.3.4.2	DMG Beacon	133
39	9.3.4.3	S1G Beacon frame format.....	133
40	9.4	Management and Extension frame body components	134
41	9.4.1	Fields that are not elements	134
42	9.4.1.7	Reason Code field	134
43	9.4.1.9	Status Code field	134
44	9.4.1.11	Action field	135
45	9.4.1.17	QoS Info field.....	135
46	9.4.1.45	Band ID field.....	136
47	9.4.1.53	Operating Mode field	137
48	9.4.1.60	TWT Information field.....	138
49	9.4.1.64	HE MIMO Control field	138
50	9.4.1.65	HE Compressed Beamforming Report field	141
51	9.4.1.66	HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field.....	149
52	9.4.1.67	HE CQI Report field	150

1	9.4.2	Elements.....	152
2	9.4.2.1	General	152
3	9.4.2.3	Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element.....	154
4	9.4.2.5	TIM element.....	154
5	9.4.2.26	Extended Capabilities element.....	155
6	9.4.2.29	TSPEC element.....	156
7	9.4.2.36	Neighbor Report element.....	158
8	9.4.2.45	Multiple BSSID element.....	160
9	9.4.2.63	Channel Switch Timing element.....	161
10	9.4.2.66	Event Request element.....	161
11	9.4.2.67	Event Report element.....	161
12	9.4.2.73	Multiple BSSID-Index element	162
13	9.4.2.139	ADDBA Extension element.....	162
14	9.4.2.157	VHT Capabilities	163
15	9.4.2.159	Extended BSS Load element.....	164
16	9.4.2.161	Transmit Power Envelope element	164
17	9.4.2.170	Reduced Neighbor Report element.....	164
18	9.4.2.177	FILS Request Parameters element	167
19	9.4.2.199	TWT element	167
20	9.4.2.247	HE Capabilities element.....	177
21	9.4.2.248	HE Operation element.....	199
22	9.4.2.249	UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element.....	
23	202		
24	9.4.2.250	MU EDCA Parameter Set element	203
25	9.4.2.251	Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element.....	204
26	9.4.2.252	NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element	205
27	9.4.2.253	BSS Color Change Announcement element	206
28	9.4.2.254	Quiet Time Period element	206
29	9.4.2.255	ESS Report element	209
30	9.4.2.256	OPS element.....	210
31	9.4.2.257	HE BSS Load element	211
32	9.4.2.258	Multiple BSSID Configuration element	212
33	9.4.2.259	Known BSSID element.....	213
34	9.4.2.260	Short SSID List element	214
35	9.4.2.261	HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element.....	214
36	9.4.2.262	UL MU Power Capabilities element.....	215
37	9.6	Action frame format details	216
38	9.6.7	Public Action details.....	216
39	9.6.7.16	TDLS Discovery Response frame format.....	216
40	9.6.7.36	FILS Discovery frame format	216
41	9.6.12	TDLS Action field formats	218
42	9.6.12.2	TDLS Setup Request Action field format.....	218
43	9.6.12.3	TDLS Setup Response Action field format	218
44	9.6.12.4	TDLS Setup Confirm Action field format	219
45	9.6.15	Self-protected Action frame details	219
46	9.6.15.2	Mesh Peering Open frame format.....	219
47	9.6.15.3	Mesh Peering Confirm frame format	219
48	9.6.24	Unprotected S1G Action frame details	220
49	9.6.24.1	Unprotected S1G Action field.....	220
50	9.6.24.8	TWT Setup frame format.....	220
51	9.6.24.9	TWT Teardown frame format	220
52	9.6.24.12	TWT Information frame format	221
53	9.6.31	HE Action frame details	222
54	9.6.31.1	HE Action field	222

1	9.6.31.2	HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame format	222
2	9.6.31.3	Quiet Time Period Action frame details	223
3	9.6.31.4	OPS frame format	223
4	9.6.32	Protected HE Action frame details	224
5	9.6.32.1	Protected HE Action field	224
6	9.6.32.2	HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame format	224
7	9.6.32.3	MU EDCA Control frame format	225
8	9.7	Aggregate MPDU (A-MPDU)	225
9	9.7.1	A-MPDU format	225
10	9.7.3	A-MPDU contents	227
11	10.	MAC sublayer functional description	241
12	10.1	Introduction	241
13	10.2	MAC architecture	241
14	10.2.1	General	241
15	10.2.3	Hybrid coordination function (HCF)	242
16	10.2.3.2	HCF contention based channel access (EDCA).	242
17	10.2.4a	Triggered uplink access (TUA)	242
18	10.2.5	Combined use of DCF, and HCF, and TUA	242
19	10.3	DCF	243
20	10.3.1	General	243
21	10.3.2	Procedures common to the DCF and EDCAF	243
22	10.3.2.1	CS mechanism	243
23	10.3.2.3	IFS	244
24	10.3.2.4	Setting and resetting the NAV	244
25	10.3.2.13	MU acknowledgment procedure	245
26	10.3.5	Individually addressed MPDU transfer procedure	249
27	10.3.7	DCF timing relations	250
28	10.3.8	Signal extension	250
29	10.4	MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU fragmentation	250
30	10.5	MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU defragmentation	250
31	10.6	Multirate support	251
32	10.6.1	Overview	251
33	10.6.5	Rate selection for Data and Management frames	251
34	10.6.5.1	Rate selection for non-STBC Beacon and non-STBC PSMP frames ..	251
35	10.6.5.3	Rate selection for other group addressed Data and Management frames ..	251
36	251		
37	10.6.6	Rate selection for Control frames	252
38	10.6.6.1	General rules for rate selection for Control frames	252
39	10.6.6.6	Channel Width selection for Control frames	252
40	10.6.10	Modulation classes	253
41	10.6.11	Non-HT basic rate calculation	256
42	10.6.13	Rate selection constraints for VHT STAs	257
43	10.6.13.3	Additional rate selection constraints for VHT PPDUs	257
44	10.8	HT Control field operation	257
45	10.9	Control Wrapper operation	259
46	10.11	A-MSDU operation	259
47	10.12	A-MPDU operation	260
48	10.12.1	A-MPDU contents	260
49	10.12.2	A-MPDU length limit rules	260
50	10.12.3	Minimum MPDU Sstart Sspacing field rules	261
51	10.12.4	A-MPDU aggregation of group addressed Data frames	262
52	10.12.6	A-MPDU padding for VHT, HE or S1G PPDU	264

1	10.13	PPDU duration constraint	264
2	10.15	LDPC operation	264
3	10.23	HCF	264
4	10.23.1	General	264
5	10.23.2	HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)	264
6	10.23.2.2	EDCA backoff procedure	264
7	10.23.2.4	Obtaining an EDCA TXOP	266
8	10.23.2.5	EDCA channel access in a VHT, HE or TVHT BSS	267
9	10.23.2.7	Sharing an EDCA TXOP	268
10	10.23.2.8	Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP	269
11	10.23.2.9	TXOP limits	270
12	10.23.2.10	Truncation of TXOP	272
13	10.23.2.11	Termination of TXOP	273
14	10.23.2.12	Retransmit procedures	273
15	10.25	Block acknowledgment (block ack)	273
16	10.25.2	Setup and modification of the block ack parameters	273
17	10.25.5	Selection of BlockAck and BlockAckReq variants	274
18	10.25.6	HT-immediate block ack extensions	274
19	10.25.6.1	Introduction to HT-immediate block ack extensions	274
20	10.25.6.3	Scoreboard context control during full-state operation	275
21	10.25.6.5	Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG	
22	STA, or S1G STA	275	
23	10.25.6.6	Receive reordering buffer control operation	275
24	10.25.9	GCR and GLK-GCR block ack	275
25	10.25.9.1	Introduction General	276
26	10.25.9.4	GCR block ack BlockAckReq and BlockAck frame exchanges	276
27	10.27	Protection mechanisms	278
28	10.27.5	Protection rules for VHT STAs and HE STAs	278
29	10.27.6	Protection rules for HE STAs	278
30	10.29	Reverse direction protocol	278
31	10.29.1	General	278
32	10.29.2	Reverse direction (RD) exchange sequence	279
33	10.29.3	Rules for RD initiator	279
34	10.29.4	Rules for RD responder	280
35	10.36	null data PPDU (NDP) sounding	281
36	10.36.6	Transmission of a VHT NDP	281
37	10.48	Target wake time (TWT)	281
38	10.48.1	TWT overview	281
39	11.	MLME	285
40	11.1	Synchronization	285
41	11.1.3	Maintaining synchronization	285
42	11.1.3.8	Multiple BSSID procedure	285
43	11.1.4	Acquiring synchronization, scanning	289
44	11.1.4.3	Active scanning	289
45	11.2	Power management	291
46	11.2.3	Power management in a non-DMG infrastructure network	291
47	11.2.3.2	Non-AP STA power management modes	291
48	11.2.3.6	AP operation	291
49	11.2.3.7	Receive operation for STAs in PS mode	293
50	11.2.3.9	STAs operating in active mode	293
51	11.2.3.15	TIM Broadcast	294
52	11.2.6	SM power save	295

1	11.3	STA authentication and association.....	295
2	11.3.3	Frame filtering based on STA state	295
3	11.3.5	Association, reassociation, and disassociation	295
4	11.3.5.3	AP or PCP association receipt procedures.....	295
5	11.3.5.5	AP or PCP reassociation receipt procedures.....	296
6	11.3.8	Neighbor report information upon rejection with suggested BSS transition.....	296
7	11.4	TS operation.....	296
8	11.4.4	TS setup	296
9	11.4.4.4	TS setup procedures for both AP and non-AP STA initiation.....	296
10	11.7	TPC procedures.....	296
11	11.10	Radio measurement procedures	296
12	11.10.14	Multiple BSSID set.....	296
13	11.21	Tunneled direct-link setup	297
14	11.21.1	General.....	297
15	11.22	Wireless network management procedures	297
16	11.22.2	Event request and report procedures.....	297
17	11.22.2.1	Event request and event report.....	297
18	11.22.2.7	BSS color collision event.....	297
19	11.22.2.8	BSS color in use event	298
20	11.22.6	Fine timing measurement (FTM) procedure.....	298
21	11.22.6.4	Measurement exchange.....	298
22	11.22.7	BSS transition management for network load balancing.....	298
23	11.22.7.1	BSS transition capability.....	298
24	11.22.7.4	BSS transition management response	298
25	11.22.7.5	Planned ESS	299
26	11.32	Multi-band operation	299
27	11.32.5	On-channel Tunneling (OCT) operation.....	299
28	11.46	Fast Initial Link Setup (FILS) procedures	300
29	11.46.2	FILS Discovery frame generation and usage.....	300
30	11.46.2.1	FILS Discovery frame transmission	300
31	11.50	Reduced neighbor report.....	301
32	14.	MLME mesh procedures	303
33	14.2	Mesh discovery	303
34	14.2.4	Mesh STA configuration	303
35	14.2.7	Candidate peer mesh STA	303
36	18.	Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification.....	305
37	18.2	PHY-specific service parameter list	305
38	26.	High Efficiency (HE) MAC specification	307
39	26.1	Introduction.....	307
40	26.2	HE channel access	307
41	26.2.1	TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS	307
42	26.2.2	Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification.....	307
43	26.2.3	SRG PPDU identification	309
44	26.2.4	Updating two NAVs	309
45	26.2.5	Truncation of TXOP	311
46	26.2.6	MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure	312
47	26.2.6.1	General	312
48	26.2.6.2	MU-RTS Trigger frame transmission	313

1	26.2.6.3	CTS frame response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame.....	314
2	26.2.7	EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters.....	315
3	26.2.8	Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP in the 6 GHz band.....	317
4	26.3	Fragmentation and defragmentation	318
5	26.3.1	General.....	318
6	26.3.2	Dynamic fragmentation	319
7	26.3.2.1	General	319
8	26.3.2.2	Level 1 dynamic fragmentation	320
9	26.3.2.3	Level 2 dynamic fragmentation	320
10	26.3.2.4	Level 3 dynamic fragmentation	321
11	26.3.3	Dynamic defragmentation.....	321
12	26.3.3.1	General	321
13	26.3.3.2	Level 1 dynamic defragmentation.....	322
14	26.3.3.3	Level 2 dynamic defragmentation.....	322
15	26.3.3.4	Level 3 dynamic defragmentation.....	323
16	26.4	HE acknowledgment procedure.....	324
17	26.4.1	Overview.....	324
18	26.4.2	Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame	326
19	26.4.3	Negotiation of block ack bitmap lengths	328
20	26.4.4	Per-PPDU acknowledgment selection rules	329
21	26.4.4.1	General	329
22	26.4.4.2	Responding to an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with an SU PPDU	329
23			329
24	26.4.4.3	Responding to an HE MU PPDU with an SU PPDU	330
25	26.4.4.4	Responding to an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU	330
26			331
27	with an HE TB PPDU		331
28	26.4.4.5	Responding to an HE TB PPDU with an SU PPDU	332
29	26.4.4.6	Responding to an HE TB PPDU with an HE MU PPDU	333
30			334
31	26.4.5	HE block acknowledgment request and response rules.....	334
32	26.5	MU operation.....	334
33	26.5.1	HE DL MU operation	334
34	26.5.1.1	General	334
35	26.5.1.2	RU addressing in an HE MU PPDU	335
36	26.5.1.3	RU allocation in an HE MU PPDU	335
37	26.5.2	UL MU operation.....	336
38	26.5.2.1	General	336
39	26.5.2.2	Rules for soliciting UL MU frames	337
40	26.5.2.3	Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation	344
41	26.5.2.4	A-MPDU contents in an HE TB PPDU	348
42	26.5.2.5	UL MU CS mechanism.....	351
43	26.5.3	MU cascading sequence.....	353
44	26.5.4	UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA).....	354
45	26.5.4.1	General	354
46	26.5.4.2	Eligible RA-RUs	355
47	26.5.4.3	Transmission procedure for UORA	356
48	26.5.4.4	Retransmission procedure for UORA	357
49	26.5.4.5	Additional considerations for unassociated STAs	358
50	26.5.5	Buffer status report operation	359
51	26.5.6	Bandwidth query report operation	361
52	26.5.7	NDP feedback report procedure	361
53	26.5.7.1	General	361
54	26.5.7.2	STA behavior	362
55	26.5.7.3	AP behavior.....	363
56	26.5.7.4	NDP feedback report for a resource request	363
57			363

1	26.5.7.5	Power save operation with NDP feedback report procedure	364
2	26.5.8	Use of TSPEC by HE STAs	364
3	26.5.9	UL MU transmit power capabilities	365
4	26.6	A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU	365
5	26.6.1	General	365
6	26.6.2	A-MPDU padding in an HE PPDU	366
7	26.6.2.1	General	366
8	26.6.2.2	A-MPDU padding in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU 366	366
9	PPDU	26.6.2.3 A-MPDU padding in an HE TB PPDU	367
10	26.6.3	Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU	368
11	26.6.3.1	General	368
12	26.6.3.2	Ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU operation	370
13	26.6.3.3	Non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU operation	370
14	26.6.3.4	Ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU operation	370
15	26.7	HE sounding protocol	371
16	26.7.1	General	371
17	26.7.2	Sounding sequences and support	371
18	26.7.3	Rules for HE sounding protocol sequences	374
19	26.7.4	Rules for generating segmented feedback	379
20	26.7.5	HE sounding NDP transmission	380
21	26.8	TWT operation	381
22	26.8.1	General	381
23	26.8.2	Individual TWT agreements	382
24	26.8.3	Broadcast TWT operation	386
25	26.8.3.1	General	386
26	26.8.3.2	Rules for TWT scheduling AP	388
27	26.8.3.3	Rules for TWT scheduled STA	392
28	26.8.4	Use of TWT Information frames	396
29	26.8.4.1	General	396
30	26.8.4.2	TWT Information frame exchange for individual TWT	397
31	26.8.4.3	TWT Information frame exchange for broadcast TWT	398
32	26.8.4.4	TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time	399
33	26.8.5	Power save operation during TWT SPs	400
34	26.8.6	Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval	401
35	26.8.7	HE subchannel selective transmission	403
36	26.8.7.1	General	403
37	26.8.7.2	SST operation	403
38	26.9	Operating mode indication	404
39	26.9.1	General	404
40	26.9.2	Receive operating mode (ROM) indication	407
41	26.9.3	Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication	408
42	26.10	Spatial reuse operation	409
43	26.10.1	General	409
44	26.10.2	OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation	410
45	26.10.2.1	General	410
46	26.10.2.2	General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level	410
47	26.10.2.3	General operation with SRG OBSS PD level	411
48	26.10.2.4	Adjustment of OBSS PD and transmit power	413
49	26.10.2.5	OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period	415
50	26.10.2.6	OBSS PD-based spatial reuse backoff procedure	418
51	26.10.3	SRP-based spatial reuse operation	418
52	26.10.3.1	General	418
53	26.10.3.2	SRP-based spatial reuse initiation	419

1	26.10.3.3	SRP-based spatial reuse backoff procedure	419
2	26.10.3.4	UL Spatial Reuse subfield of Trigger frame.....	420
3	26.10.3.5	SRPT PPDU transmission requirements.....	420
4	26.10.3.6	SRPT PPDU reception and response transmission requirements	421
5	26.10.4	Interaction of OBSS PD and SRP-based spatial reuse	421
6	26.11	Setting TXVECTOR parameters for an HE PPDU	421
7	26.11.1	STA_ID.....	421
8	26.11.2	UPLINK_FLAG	422
9	26.11.3	BEAM_CHANGE	422
10	26.11.4	BSS_COLOR.....	422
11	26.11.5	TXOP_DURATION	423
12	26.11.6	SPATIAL_REUSE	424
13	26.11.7	INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS and RU_ALLOCATION	426
14	26.11.8	STBC and DCM.....	427
15	26.12	HE PPDU post-FEC padding and packet extension	428
16	26.13	Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield	429
17	26.14	Power management.....	431
18	26.14.1	Intra-PPDU power save for non-AP HE STAs.....	431
19	26.14.2	Power save with UORA and TWT	432
20	26.14.3	Opportunistic power save	433
21	26.14.3.1	General	433
22	26.14.3.2	AP operation for opportunistic power save.....	434
23	26.14.3.3	STA operation for opportunistic power save	434
24	26.14.4	HE dynamic SM power save	435
25	26.15	PPDU format, BW, MCS, NSS, and DCM selection rules	436
26	26.15.1	General	436
27	26.15.2	PPDU format selection	436
28	26.15.3	MCS, NSS, BW and DCM selection	437
29	26.15.4	Rate selection constraints for HE STAs	439
30	26.15.4.1	Receive HE-MCS and NSS Set	439
31	26.15.4.2	Transmit HE-MCS and NSS Set.....	440
32	26.15.4.3	Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPUDUs	440
33	26.15.4.4	Rx Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set	441
34	26.15.5	Additional rules for ER beacons and group addressed frames	441
35	26.15.6	Additional rules for HE SU beacons and group addressed frames.....	442
36	26.15.7	Additional rules for group addressed frames in an HE MU PPDU	442
37	26.15.8	Additional rules for PPUDUs sent in the 6 GHz band	443
38	26.16	Midamble parameter setting rules.....	444
39	26.17	HE BSS operation.....	445
40	26.17.1	Basic HE BSS operation	445
41	26.17.2	HE BSS operation in the 6 GHz band.....	449
42	26.17.2.1	General	449
43	26.17.2.2	Beacons in the 6 GHz band.....	451
44	26.17.2.3	Scanning in the 6 GHz band	451
45	26.17.2.4	Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS	454
46	26.17.2.5	HE STA antenna indication	456
47	26.17.3	BSS color	456
48	26.17.3.1	General	456
49	26.17.3.2	Initial BSS color.....	456
50	26.17.3.3	Disabling BSS color.....	457
51	26.17.3.4	Selecting and advertising a new BSS color	457
52	26.17.3.5	Detecting and reporting BSS color collision.....	458
53	26.17.4	AID assignment	459
54	26.17.5	Quiet HE STAs in an HE BSS.....	459

1	26.17.5.1	General	459
2	26.17.5.2	QTP Requesting STA procedure.....	460
3	26.17.5.3	Responding AP procedure	461
4	26.17.6	ER beacon generation in an ER BSS	461
5	26.17.7	Co-hosted BSSID set	461
6			
7	27.	High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification	463
8			
9	27.1	Introduction.....	463
10	27.1.1	Introduction to the HE PHY	463
11	27.1.2	Scope.....	468
12	27.1.3	HE PHY functions	468
13	27.1.3.1	General	468
14	27.1.3.2	PHY management entity (PLME).....	468
15	27.1.3.3	Service specification method	468
16	27.1.4	PPDU formats	469
17	27.2	HE PHY service interface.....	469
18	27.2.1	Introduction.....	469
19	27.2.2	TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters	470
20	27.2.3	TRIGVECTOR parameters.....	487
21	27.2.4	PHYCONFIG_VECTOR parameters.....	488
22	27.2.5	Effects of CH_BANDWIDTH parameter on PPDU format.....	489
23	27.2.6	Support for non-HT, HT and VHT formats.....	490
24	27.2.6.1	General	490
25	27.2.6.2	Support for non-HT format.....	493
26	27.2.6.3	Support for HT format	495
27	27.2.6.4	Support for VHT format	495
28	27.3	HE PHY	496
29	27.3.1	Introduction.....	496
30	27.3.1.1	MU transmission	496
31	27.3.1.2	OFDMA	496
32	27.3.2	Subcarrier and resource allocation.....	497
33	27.3.2.1	General	497
34	27.3.2.2	Resource unit, guard and DC subcarriers.....	497
35	27.3.2.3	Null subcarriers.....	505
36	27.3.2.4	Pilot subcarriers.....	505
37	27.3.2.5	Resource indication and User identification in an HE MU PPDU	505
38	27.3.2.6	Resource allocation for an HE TB PPDU	507
39	27.3.2.7	20 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs	507
40	27.3.2.8	RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation	508
41	27.3.2.9	80 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs	508
42	27.3.3	MU-MIMO	509
43	27.3.3.1	DL MU-MIMO	509
44	27.3.3.2	UL MU-MIMO	509
45	27.3.4	HE PPDU formats.....	510
46	27.3.5	Transmitter block diagram.....	513
47	27.3.6	Overview of the PPDU encoding process.....	522
48	27.3.6.1	General	522
49	27.3.6.2	Construction of L-STF	522
50	27.3.6.3	Construction of L-LTF	523
51	27.3.6.4	Construction of L-SIG	523
52	27.3.6.5	Construction of RL-SIG.....	524
53	27.3.6.6	Construction of HE-SIG-A	525
54	27.3.6.7	Construction of HE-SIG-B.....	526

1	27.3.6.8	Construction of HE-STF	527
2	27.3.6.9	Construction of HE-LTF	527
3	27.3.6.10	Construction of the Data field in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and 527	
4	HE TB PPDU		
5	27.3.6.11	Construction of the Data field in an HE MU PPDU	529
6	27.3.7	HE modulation and coding schemes (HE-MCSs)	529
7	27.3.8	Timing-related parameters	530
8	27.3.9	Mathematical description of signals	535
9	27.3.10	HE preamble	541
10	27.3.10.1	Introduction	541
11	27.3.10.2	Cyclic shift	541
12	27.3.10.3	L-STF	542
13	27.3.10.4	L-LTF	543
14	27.3.10.5	L-SIG	544
15	27.3.10.6	RL-SIG	546
16	27.3.10.7	HE-SIG-A	547
17	27.3.10.8	HE-SIG-B	564
18	27.3.10.9	HE-STF	581
19	27.3.10.10	HE-LTF	585
20	27.3.11	Data field	601
21	27.3.11.1	General	601
22	27.3.11.2	Pre-FEC padding process	602
23	27.3.11.3	SERVICE field	604
24	27.3.11.4	Scrambler	604
25	27.3.11.5	Coding	605
26	27.3.11.6	Stream parser	610
27	27.3.11.7	Segment parser	611
28	27.3.11.8	BCC interleavers	611
29	27.3.11.9	Constellation mapping	612
30	27.3.11.10	LDPC tone mapper	615
31	27.3.11.11	Space-time block coding	618
32	27.3.11.12	Segment deparser	618
33	27.3.11.13	Pilot subcarriers	619
34	27.3.11.14	OFDM modulation	624
35	27.3.11.15	Dual carrier modulation	625
36	27.3.11.16	Midambles	625
37	27.3.12	Packet extension	626
38	27.3.13	Non-HT duplicate transmission	631
39	27.3.14	Transmit requirements for PPDUs sent in response to a triggering frame	632
40	27.3.14.1	Introduction	632
41	27.3.14.2	Power pre-correction	632
42	27.3.14.3	Pre-correction accuracy requirements	633
43	27.3.15	SU-MIMO and DL MU-MIMO beamforming	634
44	27.3.15.1	General	634
45	27.3.15.2	Beamforming feedback matrix V	635
46	27.3.15.3	CQI feedback	635
47	27.3.16	HE sounding NDP	636
48	27.3.17	HE TB feedback NDP	636
49	27.3.18	Transmit specification	637
50	27.3.18.1	Transmit spectral mask	637
51	27.3.18.2	Spectral flatness	642
52	27.3.18.3	Transmit center frequency and symbol clock frequency tolerance	643
53	27.3.18.4	Modulation accuracy	643
54	27.3.19	Receiver specification	650

1	27.3.19.1	General	650
2	27.3.19.2	Receiver minimum input sensitivity	651
3	27.3.19.3	Adjacent channel rejection	651
4	27.3.19.4	Nonadjacent channel rejection	652
5	27.3.19.5	Receiver maximum input level	653
6	27.3.19.6	CCA sensitivity	653
7	27.3.20	HE transmit procedure	657
8	27.3.21	HE receive procedure	662
9	27.3.22	Channel numbering	668
10	27.3.22.1	General	668
11	27.3.22.2	Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band	668
12	27.3.23	Regulatory requirements	669
13	27.4	HE PLME	669
14	27.4.1	PLME_SAP sublayer management primitives	669
15	27.4.2	PHY MIB	669
16	27.4.3	TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation	674
17	27.4.4	HE PHY	678
18	27.5	Parameters for HE-MCSs	678
19	27.5.1	HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU	679
20	27.5.2	HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU	684
21	27.5.3	HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU	689
22	27.5.4	HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz	694
23	27.5.5	HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz	699
24	27.5.6	HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz	704
25	27.5.7	HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz	709
26	Annex B	715
27	B.4	PICS proforma—IEEE Std 802.11-<year>	715
28	B.4.3	IUT configuration	715
29	B.4.4	MAC protocol	716
30	B.4.4.1	MAC protocol capabilities	716
31	B.4.4.2	MAC frames	717
32	B.4.12	QoS base functionality	718
33	B.4.33	High efficiency (HE) features	718
34	B.4.33.1	HE MAC features	718
35	B.4.33.2	HE PHY features	722
36	Annex C	729
37	C.3	MIB Detail	729
38	Annex E	763
39	E.1	Country information and operating classes	763
40	Annex G	765
41	G.1	General	765
42	G.4	HT and VHT and S1G sequences	765
43	G.5	HE sequences	765
44	Annex T	767

1	T.1	Introduction.....	767
2	T.6	BSS color and spatial reuse	767
3			
4	Annex Z		769
5			
6	Z.1	General.....	769
7	Z.2	Example 1	769
8	Z.3	Example 2	770
9	Z.4	Example 3	771
10	Z.5	Example 4	772
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			
26			
27			
28			
29			
30			
31			
32			
33			
34			
35			
36			
37			
38			
39			
40			
41			
42			
43			
44			
45			
46			
47			
48			
49			
50			
51			
52			
53			
54			
55			
56			
57			
58			
59			
60			
61			
62			
63			
64			
65			

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

Figures

Figure 9-16—VHT Control Middle subfield of the VHT variant HT Control field format.....	83
Figure 9-19a—A-Control subfield of the HE variant HT Control field format	83
Figure 9-19b—Control subfield format.....	83
Figure 9-22a—Control Information subfield format in a TRS Control subfield.....	84
Figure 9-22b—Control Information subfield format in an OM Control subfield	85
Figure 9-22c—Control Information subfield format in an HLA Control subfield.....	87
Figure 9-22d—MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield format if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1	90
Figure 9-22e—Control Information subfield format in a BSR Control subfield	90
Figure 9-22g—Control Information subfield format in a BQR Control subfield.....	93
Figure 9-22h—Control Information subfield format in a CAS Control subfield	93
Figure 9-22f—Control Information subfield format in a UPH Control subfield	93
Figure 9-36—BAR Control field format	100
Figure 9-42—BA Control field format.....	101
Figure 9-43—BA Information field format (Compressed BlockAck)	102
Figure 9-47a—BA Information field format (Multi-STA BlockAck).....	104
Figure 9-47b—AID TID Info subfield format.....	104
Figure 9-47c—Per AID TID Info subfield format if the AID11 subfield is not 2045.....	105
Figure 9-47d—Per AID TID Info subfield format if the AID11 subfield is 2045	108
Figure 9-59—Sounding Dialog Token field format	109
Figure 9-61a—HE NDP Announcement frame format	109
Figure 9-61b—STA Info subfield format in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the AID11 subfield is not 2047	110
Figure 9-61c—Partial BW Info subfield format.....	110
Figure 9-61d—STA Info subfield format in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the AID11 subfield is 2047 112	112
Figure 9-64a—Trigger frame format.....	112
Figure 9-64b—Common Info field format	113
Figure 9-64c—UL Spatial Reuse subfield format	116
Figure 9-64d—User Info field format	117
Figure 9-64e—SS Allocation subfield format	119
Figure 9-64f—RA-RU Information subfield format	120
Figure 9-64g—Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the Basic Trigger variant.....	121
Figure 9-64h—Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the BFRP variant.....	121
Figure 9-64i—Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the MU-BAR variant	122
Figure 9-64j—UL BW subfield and B7-B1 of RU Allocation subfield in MU-RTS Trigger frame	123
Figure 9-64k—Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield format in the GCR MU-BAR variant	123
Figure 9-64l—User Info field format in the NFRP Trigger frame	124
Figure 9-100—QoS Info field format when sent by an AP	135
Figure 9-142—TWT Information field format	138
Figure 9-144a—HE MIMO Control field format	139
Figure 9-337—BSSID Information field format	158
Figure 9-580—ADDBA Capabilities field format	162
Figure 9-632—TBTT Information field format.....	165
Figure 9-632a—BSS Parameters subfield format	166
Figure 9-686—TWT element format.....	167
Figure 9-687—Control field format	167
Figure 9-687a—Individual TWT Parameter Set field format	169
Figure 9-687b—Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field	169
Figure 9-688—Request Type field format in an Individual TWT Parameter Set field	170
Figure 9-688a—Request Type field format in a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field.....	170
Figure 9-689a—Broadcast TWT Info subfield format	175

1	Figure 9-787a—HE Capabilities element format	177
2	Figure 9-787b—HE MAC Capabilities Information field format	178
3	Figure 9-787c—HE PHY Capabilities Information field format	185
4	Figure 9-787d—Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format	194
5	Figure 9-787e—Rx HE-MCS Map subfield, Tx HE-MCS Map subfield and Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field format	196
6	Figure 9-787f—PPE Thresholds field format.....	197
7	Figure 9-787g—PPE Thresholds Info field format	197
8	Figure 9-787h—HE Operation element format	199
9	Figure 9-787i—HE Operation Parameters field format	199
10	Figure 9-787j—BSS Color Information field format	200
11	Figure 9-787k—6 GHz Operation Information field format	201
12	Figure 9-787l—Control field format	201
13	Figure 9-787m—UORA Parameter Set element format.....	202
14	Figure 9-787n—OCW Range field format	202
15	Figure 9-787o—MU EDCA Parameter Set element format.....	203
16	Figure 9-787p—MU AC Parameter Record field format.....	203
17	Figure 9-787q—Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element format	204
18	Figure 9-787r—SR Control field format	204
19	Figure 9-787s—NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element format	205
20	Figure 9-787t—BSS Color Change Announcement element format	206
21	Figure 9-787u—New BSS Color Information field format.....	206
22	Figure 9-787v—Quiet Time Period element format.....	206
23	Figure 9-787w—Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Setup subtype.....	207
24	Figure 9-787x—Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Request subtype.....	208
25	Figure 9-787y—Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Response subtype	208
26	Figure 9-787z—ESS Report element format.....	209
27	Figure 9-787aa—ESS Information field format	210
28	Figure 9-787ab—OPS element format	210
29	Figure 9-787ac—HE BSS Load element format	211
30	Figure 9-787ad—Multiple BSSID Configuration element format	212
31	Figure 9-787ae—Known BSSID element format.....	213
32	Figure 9-787af—BSSID Bitmap field format	213
33	Figure 9-787ag—Short SSID List element format	214
34	Figure 9-787ah—HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element format	214
35	Figure 9-787ai—Capabilities Information field format.....	214
36	Figure 9-787aj—UL MU Power Capabilities element format	215
37	Figure 9-957—TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 0 or 1	220
38	Figure 9-957a—TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 2	220
39	Figure 9-957b—TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 3	221
40	Figure 9-959a—MU EDCA Control field format	225
41	Figure 10-1—Non-DMG non-CMMG non-S1G STA MAC architecture	241
42	Figure 10-15a—An example of an HE MU PPDU transmission with an immediate UL OFDMA acknowledgement	247
43	Figure 10-15b—An example of an UL MU transmission with an immediate DL MU transmission containing individually addressed BlockAck frames acknowledging the frames received from the respective STAs.	248
44	Figure 10-15c—An example of UL MU transmissions with an immediate Multi-STA BlockAck frame acknowledging the MPDUs.....	248
45	Figure 10-15d—An example of UL MU transmissions with an immediate DL non-HT duplicate PPDU containing the Multi-STA BlockAck frame	249
46	Figure 10-37a—Example of a frame exchange with GCR MU-BAR Trigger frames.....	277
47	Figure 11-3a—Example of a Multiple BSSID element carrying Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelements	286
48	Figure 11-3b—Example of a nontransmitted BSSID profile split across multiple Multiple BSSID elements.	286

1	287	
2	Figure 26-1—Example of MU-RTS/CTS/DL MU PPDU/Acknowledgment Response and NAV setting	312
3	Figure 26-2—Example of MU-RTS/CTS/Trigger/HE TB PPDU/Multi-STA BlockAck and NAV setting	313
4	313
5	Figure 26-3—An example of an MU-RTS Trigger frame soliciting CTS frame responses on the primary	40
6	MHz channel.....	315
7	Figure 26-4—Example of User Info field ordering and RU location mapping.....	343
8	Figure 26-5—An example of an MU cascading sequence	353
9	Figure 26-6—Illustration of the UORA procedure.....	356
10	Figure 26-7—An example of the sounding protocol with a single HE beamformee	374
11	Figure 26-8—An example of the sounding protocol with more than one HE beamformee.....	375
12	Figure 26-9—Example of individual TWT operation	383
13	Figure 26-10—Example of broadcast TWT operation with optional TBTT negotiation.....	387
14	Figure 26-11—Illustration of the adjustment rules for OBSS PD and TX_PWR	413
15	Figure 26-12—Example of OBSS PD SR operation	417
16	Figure 26-13—SRPR PPDU spatial reuse.....	419
17	Figure 26-14—Example of power save operation with UORA and TWT	433
18	Figure 26-15—Quiet time period operation	460
19	Figure 27-1—PHY interaction on transmit for various PPDU formats.....	492
20	Figure 27-2—PHY interaction on receive for various PPDU formats	492
21	Figure 27-3—PHY-CONFIG and CCA interaction with various PPDU formats	493
22	Figure 27-4—Illustration of OFDM and OFDMA concepts	497
23	Figure 27-5—RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU	501
24	Figure 27-6—RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU	502
25	Figure 27-7—RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU	503
26	Figure 27-8—HE SU PPDU format	511
27	Figure 27-9—HE MU PPDU format	511
28	Figure 27-10—HE ER SU PPDU format	511
29	Figure 27-11—HE TB PPDU format	511
30	Figure 27-12—Number of 20 MHz channels occupied by the pre-HE modulated fields in an HE TB PPDU.	513
31	513
32	Figure 27-13—Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU	515
33	and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 1	515
34	Figure 27-14—Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU	515
35	and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 0	515
36	Figure 27-15—Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE TB PPDU	516
37	516
38	Figure 27-16—Transmitter block diagram for the HE-SIG-B field	516
39	Figure 27-17—Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a	517
40	Data field with BCC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106- or 242-tone RU	517
41	Figure 27-18—Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a	518
42	Data field with LDPC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- or 996-tone RU	518
43	Figure 27-19—Transmitter block diagram for the DL MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC en-	519
44	coding on a 106- or 242-tone RU	519
45	Figure 27-20—Transmitter block diagram for the DL MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with LDPC	520
46	encoding on a 106-, 242-, 484- or 996-tone RU	520
47	Figure 27-21—Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 160 MHz with LDPC en-	521
48	coding.....	521
49	Figure 27-22—Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 80+80 MHz with LDPC	522
50	encoding.....	522
51	Figure 27-23—Timing boundaries for HE PPDU fields if midamble is not present	536
52	Figure 27-24—CRC calculation	561
53	Figure 27-25—Data subcarrier constellation of HE-SIG-A symbols.....	563
54	Figure 27-26—HE-SIG-B content channel format.....	564

1	Figure 27-27—An example of the mapping of the 8-bit RU Allocation subfield and the position of the User field to the STA's assignment for one 20 MHz channel	575
2	Figure 27-28—HE-SIG-B content channel for a 20 MHz PPDU	580
3	Figure 27-29—HE-SIG-B content channel for a 40 MHz PPDU	580
4	Figure 27-30—HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in an 80 MHz PPDU	580
5	Figure 27-31—HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in a 160 MHz PPDU	581
6	Figure 27-32—Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, and HE ER SU PPDU	598
7	Figure 27-33—Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE TB PPDU for user u on RU r	599
8	Figure 27-34—Generation of 1x HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment	599
9	Figure 27-35—Generation of 2x HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment	600
10	Figure 27-36—HE PPDU padding process in the last OFDM symbol (non-STBC) if $a = 1$	602
11	Figure 27-37—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (1st quadrant)	613
12	Figure 27-38—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (2nd quadrant)	613
13	Figure 27-39—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (3rd quadrant)	614
14	Figure 27-40—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (4th quadrant)	614
15	Figure 27-41—HE PPDU with midamble	626
16	Figure 27-42—Midamble at the end of an HE PPDU	626
17	Figure 27-43—PE field duration of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU without midambles if TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING is $8 \mu\text{s}$ and TPE = TPE,nominal	628
18	Figure 27-44—PE field duration of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU without midambles if TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING is $16 \mu\text{s}$ TPE = TPE,nominal	628
19	Figure 27-45—HE sounding NDP format	636
20	Figure 27-46—HE TB feedback NDP format	636
21	Figure 27-47—Example transmit spectral mask for a 20 MHz mask PPDU	637
22	Figure 27-48—Example transmit spectral mask for a 40 MHz mask PPDU	638
23	Figure 27-49—Example transmit spectral mask for an 80 MHz mask PPDU	639
24	Figure 27-50—Example transmit spectral mask for a 160 MHz mask PPDU	639
25	Figure 27-51—Example transmit spectral mask for an 80+80 MHz mask PPDU	640
26	Figure 27-52—Example transmit spectral mask for the $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured channel with transmissions on both upper and lower subchannels	641
27	Figure 27-53—Example transmit spectral mask for the $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured channel with transmissions on the lower subchannel	642
28	Figure 27-54—PHY transmit procedure for an HE SU PPDU	657
29	Figure 27-55—PHY transmit procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU	658
30	Figure 27-56—PHY transmit procedure for an HE MU PPDU	658
31	Figure 27-57—PHY transmit procedure for an HE TB PPDU	659
32	Figure 27-58—PHY transmit state machine for an HE PPDU without midambles	661
33	Figure 27-59—PHY receive procedure for an HE SU PPDU	662
34	Figure 27-60—PHY receive procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU	662
35	Figure 27-61—PHY receive procedure for an HE MU PPDU	663
36	Figure 27-62—PHY receive procedure for an HE TB PPDU	663
37	Figure 27-63—PHY receive state machine if midambles are not present	664
38		
39		
40		
41		
42		
43		
44		
45		
46		
47		
48		
49		
50		
51		
52		
53		
54		
55		
56		
57		
58		
59		
60		
61		
62		
63		
64		
65		

Tables

Table 1—Draft Status	34
Table 8-2—PHY SAP inter-(sub)layer service primitives	71
Table 8-3—PHY SAP service primitive parameters	71
Table 8-5—The channel-list parameter elements	74
Table 9-1—Valid type and subtype combinations	77
Table 9-13—Ack policy	79
Table 9-13a—Queue Size subfield encoding by a non-AP HE STA	81
Table 9-13b—HT Control field format	82
Table 9-22a—Control ID subfield values	84
Table 9-24a—UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable subfields encoding	86
Table 9-24b—HLA Control subfields	87
Table 9-24c—ACI Bitmap subfield encoding	91
Table 9-24d—Delta TID subfield encoding	91
Table 9-24e—Scaling Factor subfield encoding	92
Table 9-25—Maximum data unit sizes (in octets) and durations (in microseconds)	94
Table 9-28—BlockAckReq frame variant encoding	100
Table 9-30—BlockAck frame variant encoding	101
Table 9-30a—Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Compressed BlockAck variant	103
Table 9-30b—Context of the Per AID TID Info subfield and presence of optional subfields if the AID11 subfield is not 2045	106
Table 9-30c—Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Multi-STA BlockAck variant	107
Table 9-31a—Feedback Type And Ng subfield and Codebook Size subfield encoding	111
Table 9-31b—Trigger Type subfield encoding	114
Table 9-31c—UL BW subfield encoding	114
Table 9-31d—GI And LTF Type subfield encoding	115
Table 9-31e—MU-MIMO LTF Mode subfield encoding	115
Table 9-31f—Pre-FEC Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity subfields	116
Table 9-31g—AID12 subfield encoding	117
Table 9-31h—B7-B1 of the RU Allocation subfield	118
Table 9-31i—UL Target RSSI subfield encoding	120
Table 9-31j—Feedback Type subfield encoding	124
Table 9-34—Beacon frame body	125
Table 9-36—Association Request frame body	127
Table 9-37—Association Response frame body	127
Table 9-38—Reassociation Request frame body	129
Table 9-39—Reassociation Response frame body	129
Table 9-40—Probe Request frame body	131
Table 9-41—Probe Response frame body	131
Table 9-45—Action frame body and Action No Ack frame body	133
Table 9-47—DMG Beacon frame body	133
Table 9-48—Minimum and full set of optional elements	133
Table 9-51—Reason codes	134
Table 9-52—Status codes	134
Table 9-53—Category values	135
Table 9-69—Band ID field	136
Table 9-82—Subfield values of the Operating Mode field	137
Table 9-93a—HE MIMO Control field encoding	139
Table 9-93b—HE Compressed Beamforming Report information	141
Table 9-93c—Subcarrier indices scidx(0) and scidx(Ns – 1) for Ng = 4	142
Table 9-93d—Subcarrier indices scidx(0) and scidx(Ns – 1) for Ng = 16	145
Table 9-93e—Subcarrier indices for compressed beamforming feedback matrix	148

1	Table 9-93f—HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information	149
2	Table 9-93g—HE CQI Report information	150
3	Table 9-93h—Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield	151
4	Table 9-94—Element IDs	152
5	Table 9-95—BSS membership selector value encoding	154
6	Table 9-153—Extended Capabilities element	155
7	Table 9-158—Direction subfield encoding	156
8	Table 9-160—TS Info Ack Policy subfield encoding	157
9	Table 9-161—Setting of Schedule subfield.....	157
10	Table 9-159—Access Policy subfield.....	157
11	Table 9-173—Optional subelement IDs for Neighbor report.....	159
12	Table 9-193—Event Type field definitions for event requests and reports.....	161
13	Table 9-265a—HE Fragmentation Operation subfield.....	163
14	Table 9-281—TBTT Information field contents	165
15	Table 9-289—PHY Support Criterion subfield	167
16	Table 9-296a—Interpretation of Negotiation Type subfield, Target Wake Time, TWT Wake Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields.....	168
17	Table 9-297—TWT Setup Command field values	171
18	Table 9-297a—Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast TWT element	173
19	Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field.....	178
20	Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field.....	186
21	Table 9-321c—Subfields of the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field.....	195
22	Table 9-321d—Constellation index.....	198
23	Table 9-321e—RU allocation index	198
24	Table 9-321f—Quiet Time Period Subtype field encoding	207
25	Table 9-321g—Status Code.....	209
26	Table 9-321h—Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield encoding	210
27	Table 9-374—TDLS Discovery Response Action field format	216
28	Table 9-383—FILS Discovery frame format	216
29	Table 9-384—BSS Operating Channel Width.....	216
30	Table 9-386—PHY Index subfield	217
31	Table 9-387—FILS Minimum Rate	217
32	Table 9-414—Information for TDLS Setup Request Action field	218
33	Table 9-415—Information for TDLS Setup Response Action field.....	218
34	Table 9-416—Information for TDLS Setup Confirm Action field	219
35	Table 9-436—Mesh Peering Open frame Action field format.....	219
36	Table 9-437—Mesh Peering Confirm frame Action field format	219
37	Table 9-526a—HE Action field values	222
38	Table 9-526b—HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame Action field format.....	222
39	Table 9-526c—Quiet Time Period Frame Body.....	223
40	Table 9-526d—OPS frame Action field format	223
41	Table 9-526e—Protected HE Action field values	224
42	Table 9-526f—HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame Action field format	224
43	Table 9-526g—MU EDCA Control frame Action field format	225
44	Table 9-527—MPDU delimiter fields (non-DMG).....	226
45	Table 9-529—A-MPDU Contexts	228
46	Table 9-530—A-MPDU contents in the non-HE data enabled immediate response context.....	230
47	Table 9-531—A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context	231
48	Table 9-532—A-MPDU contents in the control response context.....	232
49	Table 9-532a—A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context..	233
50	Table 9-532b—A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context.....	235
51	Table 9-532c—A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context ...	236
52	Table 9-532d—A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context	238
53	Table 10-9—Modulation classes	253

1	Table 10-10—Non-HT reference rate.....	256
2	Table 10-11a—Conditions for including Control subfield variants	258
3	Table 10-16—Channels indicated idle by the channel-list parameter	267
4	Table 10-18—Modulation classes eligible for TXOP termination.....	273
5	Table 10-19—Rate and modulation class of a final transmission in a TXOP	273
6	Table 10-31a—TWT setup exchange command interpretation.....	283
7	Table 18-1—TXVECTOR parameters	305
8	Table 18-3—RXVECTOR parameters	305
9	Table 26-1—Negotiated buffer size and Block Ack Bitmap subfield length.....	328
10	Table 26-2—Relation between TID Aggregation Limit field, Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support field and solicited immediate response	343
11	Table 26-3—FEEDBACK_STATUS description	364
12	Table 26-4—Settings for BW, RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announcement frame.	
13		377
14	Table 26-5—TWT setup exchange for unsolicited TWT and recommended broadcast TWT switch	383
15	Table 26-6—Broadcast TWT announcements	392
16	Table 26-7—Broadcast TWT membership exchanges	393
17	Table 26-8—Wake TBTT negotiation exchanges	402
18	Table 26-9—Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT NSS at an HE STA transmitting the OM Control subfield.....	405
19	Table 26-10—Non-SRG OBSS PD Min and Non-SRG OBSS PD Max values for non-AP STAs.....	414
20	Table 26-11—SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG OBSS PD Max values for non-AP STAs	415
21	Table 26-12—PPE thresholds per PPET8 and PPET16	429
22	Table 26-13—Example of rate selection for HE PPDUs	441
23	Table 26-14—6 GHz BSS channel width.....	450
24	Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters	470
25	Table 27-2—TRIGVECTOR parameters	487
26	Table 27-3— Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT Modulation and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters ...	489
27	Table 27-4— Interpretation of CH_BANDWIDTH and INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameters when FORMAT is equal to NON_HT and NON_HT_MODULATION is equal to NON_HT_DUP_OFDM....	491
28	Table 27-5—Mapping of the HE PHY parameters for non-HT operation	494
29	Table 27-6—Maximum number of RUs for each channel width	498
30	Table 27-7—Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU	499
31	Table 27-8—Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU	499
32	Table 27-9—Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU	500
33	Table 27-10— Null subcarrier indices.....	505
34	Table 27-11—HE PPDU fields.....	512
35	Table 27-12—Timing-related constants	530
36	Table 27-13—Subcarrier allocation related constants for the HE-modulated fields in a non-OFDMA HE PPDU	532
37	Table 27-14—Subcarrier allocation related constants for RUs in an OFDMA HE PPDU	533
38	Table 27-15—Frequently used parameters	533
39	Table 27-16—Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields	539
40	Table 27-17—CH_BANDWIDTH and for pre-HE modulated fields.....	541
41	Table 27-18—HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU	547
42	Table 27-19—Interpretation of DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size subfields	551
43	Table 27-20—HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU	552
44	Table 27-21—HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU	556
45	Table 27-22—Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU	
46		559
47	Table 27-23—Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU	560

1	Table 27-24—Common field.....	565
2	Table 27-25—RUs associated with each RU Allocation subfield for each HE-SIG-B content channel and 3 PPDU bandwidth	567
4	Table 27-26—RU Allocation subfield.....	568
5	Table 27-27—User Block field.....	573
6	Table 27-28—User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation.....	575
7	Table 27-29—User field format for a MU-MIMO allocation	576
8	Table 27-30—Spatial Configuration subfield encoding	577
9	Table 27-31—HE-LTF type and GI duration combinations for various HE PPDU formats	586
10	Table 27-32—HE-LTF subcarrier mapping for the HE TB feedback NDP	597
11	Table 27-33—NSD,short values	603
12	Table 27-34—SERVICE field	604
13	Table 27-35—BCC interleaver parameters	612
14	Table 27-36—LDPC tone mapping distance for each RU size	616
15	Table 27-37—Pilot indices for a 26-tone RU	619
16	Table 27-38—The 2 pilot values for a 26-tone RU	619
17	Table 27-39—Pilot indices for 52-tone RU transmission	620
18	Table 27-40—The 4 pilot values in a 52- and 106-tone RU	620
19	Table 27-41—Pilot indices for 106-tone RU transmission	621
20	Table 27-42—Pilot indices for 242-tone RU transmission	621
21	Table 27-43—The 8 pilot values in a 242-tone RU.....	622
22	Table 27-44—Pilot indices for 484-tone RU transmission	622
23	Table 27-45—Pilot indices for 996-tone RU transmission	623
24	Table 27-46—Nominal TPE values.....	627
25	Table 27-47—Transmit power and RSSI measurement accuracy	633
26	Table 27-48—Maximum transmit spectral flatness deviations	643
27	Table 27-49—Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate.....	644
28	Table 27-50—iRU26,start for RUs other than a 26-tone RU	649
29	Table 27-51—Receiver minimum input level sensitivity	651
30	Table 27-52—Minimum required adjacent and nonadjacent channel rejection levels.....	652
31	Table 27-53—Conditions for CCA BUSY on the primary 20 MHz	654
32	Table 27-54—HE PHY MIB attributes	670
33	Table 27-55—HE PHY characteristics.....	678
34	Table 27-56—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 1	679
35	Table 27-57—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 2	680
36	Table 27-58—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 3	681
37	Table 27-59—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 4	681
38	Table 27-60—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 5	682
39	Table 27-61—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 6	682
40	Table 27-62—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 7	683
41	Table 27-63—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 8	683
42	Table 27-64—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 1	684
43	Table 27-65—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 2	685
44	Table 27-66—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 3	686
45	Table 27-67—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 4	686
46	Table 27-68—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 5	687
47	Table 27-69—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 6	687
48	Table 27-70—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 7	688
49	Table 27-71—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 8	688
50	Table 27-72—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 1	689
51	Table 27-73—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 2	690
52	Table 27-74—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 3	691
53	Table 27-75—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 4	691
54	Table 27-76—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 5	692

1	Table 27-77—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 6	692
2	Table 27-78—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 7	693
3	Table 27-79—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 8	693
4	Table 27-80—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 1	694
5	Table 27-81—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 2	695
6	Table 27-82—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 3	696
7	Table 27-83—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 4	696
8	Table 27-84—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 5	697
9	Table 27-85—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 6	697
10	Table 27-86—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 7	698
11	Table 27-87—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 8	698
12	Table 27-88—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 1	699
13	Table 27-89—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 2	700
14	Table 27-90—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 3	701
15	Table 27-91—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 4	701
16	Table 27-92—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 5	702
17	Table 27-93—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 6	702
18	Table 27-94—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 7	703
19	Table 27-95—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 8	703
20	Table 27-96—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 1	704
21	Table 27-97—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 2	705
22	Table 27-98—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 3	706
23	Table 27-99—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 4	706
24	Table 27-100—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 5	707
25	Table 27-101—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 6	707
26	Table 27-102—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 7	708
27	Table 27-103—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 8	708
28	Table 27-104—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 1	709
29	Table 27-105—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 2	710
30	Table 27-106—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 3	711
31	Table 27-107—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 4	711
32	Table 27-108—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 5	712
33	Table 27-109—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 6	712
34	Table 27-110—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 7	713
35	Table 27-111—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 8	713
36	Table G-1—Attributes applicable to frame exchange sequence definition	765
37	Table Z-1—Resource allocation signaling example 1	769
38	Table Z-2—HE-SIG-B content for example 1	770
39	Table Z-3—Resource allocation signaling example 2	770
40	Table Z-4—HE-SIG-B content for example 2	771
41	Table Z-5—Resource allocation signaling example 3	771
42	Table Z-6—HE-SIG-B content for example 3	771
43	Table Z-7—RU Allocation subfields for different dynamic splits of User fields for the example of two MU-MIMO users in the lowest 484-tone RU of an 80 MHz or wider PPDU	772
44		
45		
46		
47		
48		
49		
50		
51		
52		
53		
54		
55		
56		
57		
58		
59		
60		
61		
62		
63		
64		
65		

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 IEEE P802.11ax™/D5.0

2
3
4
5 **Draft STANDARD for**
6 **Information Technology—**
7 **Telecommunications and information exchange**
8 **between systems—**
9 **Local and metropolitan area networks—**
10 **Specific requirements**

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20 **Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control**
21 **(MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) specifications**

22
23
24
25
26
27 **Amendment 6: Enhancements for High Efficiency**
28 **WLAN**

29
30
31
32
33
34
35 NOTE—The editing instructions contained in this amendment define how to merge the material contained therein into
36 the existing base standard and its amendments to form the comprehensive standard.

37
38 The editing instructions are shown in ***bold italic***. Four editing instructions are used: change, delete, insert, and replace.
39 **Change** is used to make corrections in existing text or tables. The editing instruction specifies the location of the change
40 and describes what is being changed by using **strikethrough** (to remove old material) and **underscore** (to add new mate-
41 rial). **Delete** removes existing material. **Insert** adds new material without disturbing the existing material. Insertions may
42 require renumbering. If so, renumbering instructions are given in the editing instruction. **Replace** is used to make
43 changes in figures or equations by removing the existing figure or equation and replacing it with a new one. Editorial
44 instructions, change markings and this NOTE will not be carried over into future editions because the changes will be
45 incorporated into the base standard.

46
47
48 **Editorial Notes**

49
50
51 ***Editor's Note: Editorial Notes in the body of the standard appear like this. They will be removed before***
52 ***publication. They may highlight some issue that the editor has had to address during the implementation***
53 ***of a change. Where there may be any technical impact from an editing issue, the editor will raise a tech-***
54 ***nical letter ballot comment. There is no need for voters to comment on such issues unless they have a spe-***
55 ***cific resolution they wish to present.***

56
57
58 ***Editor's Note: Headings with empty content or Headings preceding editing instructions that modify the***
59 ***contents of the referenced subclause are there to provide context to the reader of this document, they have***
60 ***no other significance.***

61
62
63 ***Editor's Note: The default IEEE-SA style for tables is to "float". This means that they be repositioned***
64 ***later, usually at the head of the next page, to avoid splitting the table and reduce the amount of blank***

space. The table can appear to move out of the subclause it is referenced first from, and can even split a paragraph. This is the intended IEEE-SA behavior, please do not report it as a defect in the draft. In many cases, additional line feeds have been inserted to force tables to follow text, rather than float beyond sequential text. The additional line feeds will be removed before publication, please do not report them as a defect in the text.

Editor's Note: Line numbering is only approximate. This is a limitation of the FrameMaker tool. Whitespace between paragraphs is part of the IEEE-SA style, as defined in their templates. The combination of these two facts leads to the appearance of blank lines in the draft between every paragraph. Please do not report this as an editorial defect as it is the unavoidable behavior.

Editor's Note: A cumulative status of the versions of this draft is shown below.

Table 1—Draft Status

Draft	Date	Status
D0.1	2016-03-03	Converted to FrameMaker from 16/0024r1 Proposed draft specification
D0.2	2016-06-06	Includes tentative resolutions for most editorials. Includes resolutions for technical comments motioned in May 2016 session.
D0.3	2016-08-11	Includes resolutions for technical comments motioned in July 2016 session.
D0.4	2016-08-26	Included motioned draft changes from July 2016 session and corrected errors.
D0.5	2016-09-30	Included comment resolutions and other changes motioned at the September 2016 session.
D1.0	2016-11-30	Includes all approved changes. Ready for WG ballot.
D1.1	2017-02-09	Includes groundhogs (from 2017-02-02, start of editing), approved changes from the January 2017 session and a few editorials.
D1.2	2017-04-10	Include comment resolution approved during March 2017 session plus a few editorials.
D1.3	2017-05-19	Includes approved changes from May 2017 session plus a few editorials.
D1.4	2017-08-17	Includes approved changes from July 2017 session plus most remaining editorials.
D2.0	2017-10-02	Includes approved changes from September 2017 session.
D2.1	2018-01-02	Includes approved changes from November 2017 session plus some editorials.
D2.2	2018-02-15	Includes approved changes from January 2018 session.
D2.3	2018-04-17	Includes approved changes from the March 2018 session plus editorials.
D3.0	2018-05-23	Includes all approved changes. Ready for WG ballot.
D3.1	2018-08-23	Approved resolutions from the July session and tentative resolutions for most editorials.
D3.2	2018-10-11	Approved resolutions from the September session.
D3.3	2018-12-18	Approved resolutions from the November session with fixes.
D4.0	2019-02-01	Includes approved changes from January 2019 session. All comments resolved; ready for WG ballot.

Table 1—Draft Status

Draft	Date	Status
D4.1	2019-04-04	Includes approved changes from March 2019 session and tentative resolutions to around 159 editorial comments.
D4.2	2019-06-17	Includes approved changes from the May 2019 session and tentative resolutions to editorial comments.
D4.3	2019-08-02	Includes approved changes from the July 2019 session.
D5.0	2019-10-04	All comments on D4.0 resolved; ready for WG ballot

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 3. Definitions, acronyms, and abbreviations 2 3 4

5 3.1 Definitions 6 7

8 *Change the following definitions:*

9
 10 **aggregate medium access control (MAC) service data unit (A-MSDU):** A structure that contains one or
 11 more MSDUs and is transported within a single (unfragmented) transmitted in one or more data medium
 12 access control (MAC) MAC protocol data units (MPDUs) with the same sequence number.
 13

14 **multi-user multiple input, multiple output (MU-MIMO):** A technique by which multiple stations
 15 (STAs), each with one or more antennas, either simultaneously transmit to a single STA or simultaneously
 16 receive from a single STA independent data streams over the same radio frequencies.
 17

18 **NOTE** IEEE Std 802.11 supports only downlink (DL) MU-MIMO. See downlink multi-user multiple input, multiple
 19 output (DL MU-MIMO) (in 3.2).

20
 21 **non-high-throughput (non-HT):** A modifier meaning neither not high throughput (HT), not nor very high
 22 throughput (VHT) and not high efficiency (HE).
 23

24
 25 **physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** The unit of data exchanged between two peer PHY enti-
 26 ties to provide the PHY data service.
 27

28
 29 *Insert the following definition maintaining alphabetical order:*
 30

31
 32 **orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA):** An orthogonal frequency division multiple
 33 (OFDM)-based multiple access technique by which multiple stations (STAs) either simultaneously transmit
 34 to a single STA or simultaneously receive from a single STA independent data streams over different groups
 35 of subcarriers.
 36

37 3.2 Definitions specific to IEEE 802.11 38 39

40 *Change the following definitions:*
 41

42 **20 MHz mask physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** One of the following PPDUs:
 43

- 44 a) A Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) PPDU trans-
 45 mitted using the 20 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency divi-
 46 sion multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification).
- 47 b) A Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) orthogonal frequency division multiplexing
 48 (OFDM) PPDU transmitted using the transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 18 (Extended Rate
 49 PHY (ERP) specification).
- 50 c) A high throughput (HT) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
 51 HT_CBW20 and the CH_OFFSET parameter equal to CH_OFF_20 transmitted using the 20 MHz
 52 transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification).
- 53 d) A very high throughput (VHT) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
 54 CBW20 transmitted using the 20 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High
 55 Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 56 e) A Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) PPDU trans-
 57 mitted by a VHT STA using the transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput
 58 (VHT) PHY specification).

- 1 f) An HT PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to HT_CBW20 and the
2 CH_OFFSET parameter equal to CH_OFF_20 transmitted by a VHT STA using the 20 MHz trans-
3 mit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 4 g) A high efficiency (HE) PPDU with TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW20
5 transmitted using the 20 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE)
6 PHY specification).
- 7 h) A Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) PPDU trans-
8 mitted by an HE STA using the 20 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 27 (High Effi-
9 ciency (HE) PHY specification).

13
14 **20 MHz physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the
15 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) PPDU, Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division
16 multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) PPDU (when using 20 MHz channel spacing), Clause 16 (High
17 rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification) PPDU, Clause 18 (Extended Rate
18 PHY (ERP) specification) orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PPDU, Clause 19 (High
19 Throughput (HT) PHY specification) 20 MHz high throughput (HT) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter
20 CH_BANDWIDTH equal to HT_CBW20, or Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY
21 specification(11ac)) 20 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter
22 CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW20, or Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) 20 MHz high
23 efficiency (HE) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW20.

26
27 **40 MHz mask physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** One of the following PPDUs:

- 28 a) A 40 MHz high throughput (HT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
29 HT_CBW40) transmitted using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 19 (High
30 Throughput (HT) PHY specification).
- 31 b) A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
32 NON_HT_CBW40) transmitted by a non-very high throughput (non-VHT) STA using the 40 MHz
33 transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification).
- 34 c) A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40)
35 transmitted by a very high throughput (VHT) STA using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined
36 in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 37 d) A 20 MHz HT PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to HT_CBW20
38 and the CH_OFFSET parameter equal to either CH_OFF_20U or CH_OFF_20L transmitted using
39 the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specifica-
40 tion).
- 41 e) A 20 MHz VHT PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW20
42 transmitted using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput
43 (VHT) PHY specification).
- 44 f) A 40 MHz VHT PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40
45 transmitted using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput
46 (VHT) PHY specification).
- 47 g) A 40 MHz HT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to HT_CBW40) transmit-
48 ted by a VHT STA using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High
49 Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 50 h) A 20 MHz non-HT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW20) transmit-
51 ted using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY
52 specification).
- 53 i) A 20 MHz non-HT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW20) transmit-
54 ted by a VHT STA using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High
55 Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).

- 1 j) A 40 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU with TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
2 CBW40 transmitted using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 27 (High Efficiency
3 (HE) PHY specification).
- 4 k) A 40 MHz VHT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40) transmitted
5 by an HE STA using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very high throughput
6 (VHT) PHY specification).
- 7 l) A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40)
8 transmitted by an HE STA using the 40 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 19 (High
9 Throughput (HT) PHY specification).

14 **40 MHz physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A 40 MHz high throughput (HT) PPDU
15 (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to HT_CBW40) or a 40 MHz non-HT duplicate PPDU
16 (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to NON_HT_CBW40 or TXVECTOR parameter
17 CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40), or a 40 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR
18 parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40), or Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification)
19 40 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW40.

22 **80 MHz mask physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU that is transmitted using the 80
23 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) and
24 that is one One of the following PPDUs:

- 25 a) An 80 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal
26 to CBW80) transmitted using the 80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High
27 Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 28 b) An 80 MHz non-high throughput (non-HT) duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
29 WIDTH equal to CBW80) transmitted using the 80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause
30 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 31 c) A 20 MHz non-HT, high throughput (HT), or VHT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
32 WIDTH equal to CBW20) transmitted using the 80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause
33 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 34 d) A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate, HT, or VHT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH
35 equal to CBW40) transmitted using the 80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very
36 High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 37 e) An 80 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
38 CBW80) transmitted using the 80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 27 (High Effi-
39 ciency (HE) PHY specification).

44 **80 MHz physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT)
45 PHY specification) 80 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
46 WIDTH equal to CBW80) or, a Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) 80 MHz non-
47 high throughput (non-HT) duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW80),
48 or Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) 80 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU with the
49 TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW80.

57 **80+80 MHz mask physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU that is transmitted using
58 the 80+80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specifi-
59 cation) and that is one One of the following PPDUs:

- 60 a) An 80+80 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH
61 equal to CBW80+80) transmitted using the 80+80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21
62 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).

- 1 b) An 80+80 MHz non-high throughput (non-HT) duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter
2 CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW80+80) transmitted using the 80+80 MHz transmit spectral mask
3 defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 4 c) An 80+80 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
5 CBW80+80) transmitted using the 80+80 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 27 (High
6 Efficiency (HE) PHY specification).

7
8 **80+80 MHz physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A Clause 21 (Very High Throughput
9 (VHT) PHY specification) 80+80 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter
10 CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW80+80) or, a Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification)
11 80+80 MHz non-high throughput (non-HT) duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
12 WIDTH equal to CBW80+80) or Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) 80+80 MHz high
13 efficiency (HE) PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW80+80.

14
15 **160 MHz mask physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU that is transmitted using the
16 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY
17 specification (11ac)) and that is one One of the following PPDUs:

- 18 a) A 160 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal
19 to CBW160) transmitted using the 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very
20 High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 21 b) A 160 MHz non-high throughput (non-HT) duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
22 WIDTH equal to CBW160) transmitted using the 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause
23 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 24 c) A 20 MHz non-HT, high throughput (HT), or VHT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
25 WIDTH equal to CBW20) transmitted using the 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause
26 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 27 d) A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate, HT, or VHT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH
28 equal to CBW40) transmitted using the 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very
29 High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 30 e) An 80 MHz non-HT duplicate or VHT PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
31 CBW80) transmitted using the 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 21 (Very High
32 Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
- 33 f) A 160 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
34 CBW160) transmitted using the 160 MHz transmit spectral mask defined in Clause 27 (High Effi-
35 ciency (HE) PHY specification).

36
37 **160 MHz physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT)
38 PHY specification) 160 MHz very high throughput (VHT) PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BAND-
39 WIDTH equal to CBW160) or, a Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) 160 MHz
40 non-high throughput (non-HT) duplicate PPDU (TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to
41 CBW160) or Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) 160 MHz high efficiency (HE) PPDU
42 with the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH equal to CBW160.

43
44 **bandwidth signaling transmitter address (TA):** A TA that is used by a very high throughput (VHT) station
45 (STA) or a high efficiency (HE) STA to indicate the presence of additional signaling related to the
46 bandwidth to be used in a subsequent transmission in an enhanced distributed channel access (EDCA) trans-
47 mission opportunity (TXOP). It is represented by the IEEE medium access control (MAC) individual
48 address of the transmitting VHT-STA but with the Individual/Group bit set to 1.

49
50 **fragmentation:** The process of partitioning a medium access control (MAC) service data unit (MSDU),
51 aggregate medium access control (MAC) service data unit (A-MSDU) or MAC management protocol data
52 unit (MMPDU) into a sequence of smaller MAC protocol data units (MPDUs) prior to transmission. The
53
54

1 process of recombining a set of fragment MPDUs into an MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU is known as
 2 defragmentation. These processes are described in 5.8.1.9 of ISO/IEC 7498-1:1994.
 3

4 **medium access control (MAC) management protocol data unit (MMPDU):** The unit of data exchanged
 5 between two peer MAC entities, using services of the physical layer (PHY), to implement the MAC man-
 6 agement protocol. The MMPDU is transported in one or more Management frames. The MMPDU might
 7 include a Mesh Control field or management message integrity code element (Management MIC element),
 8 but does not include a MAC header, a frame check sequence (FCS), or any other security encapsulation
 9 overhead.
 10

11
 12 NOTE—The MMPDU occupies a position in the management plane similar to that of the MAC service data unit
 13 (MSDU) in the data plane. An MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU is transmitted in one or more MAC protocol data units
 14 (MPDUs) (with the Type field set to Data, Data or Management, respectively). An MSDU can be carried in an aggregate
 15 MAC service data unit (A-MSDU). An A-MSDU is transmitted in one MPDU. An MSDU, A-MSDU, or MMPDU can
 16 be carried (in an MPDU) in an aggregate MAC protocol data unit (A-MPDU)
 17

18
 19 **multiple basic service set identifier (BSSID) set:** A collection of ~~cooperating~~ access points (APs), such
 20 that all APs use a common operating class, channel, and antenna connectors ~~and advertise information for~~
 21 ~~multiple BSSIDs using Beacon or Probe Response frames sent by the AP corresponding to the transmitted~~
 22 ~~BSSID.~~
 23

24
 25 **multi-user (MU) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU that carries one or more
 26 PHY service data units (PSDUs) for one or more stations (STAs) using the ~~downlink~~ multi-user multiple
 27 input, multiple output (DL-MU-MIMO) technique, ~~orthogonal frequency division multiple access (DL~~
 28 ~~OFDMA) technique, or a combination of the two techniques or that carries a PSDU for an AP and is in high~~
 29 ~~efficiency (HE) MU PPDU format.~~
 30

31
 32 **nontransmitted basic service set (BSS) identifier (BSSID):** A BSSID ~~corresponding to one of the basic~~
 33 ~~service sets (BSSs) when the multiple BSSID capability is supported~~ that is not transmitted explicitly, but
 34 that can be derived from the information encoded in Probe Response, Beacon and directional multi-gigabit
 35 (DMG) Beacon frames and Neighbor reports.
 36

37
 38 *Replace the definition of “user” with the following:*
 39

40
 41 **user:** An individual station or group of stations (STAs) using a single identifier, in the context of single
 42 input single output (SISO), single-user multiple input, multiple output (SU-MIMO), multi-user multiple
 43 input, multiple output (MU-MIMO), or orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA).
 44

45
 46 *Insert the following definitions maintaining alphabetical order:*
 47

48
 49 **20 MHz-only non-access-point (non-AP) high efficiency station (HE STA):** A non-AP HE STA that indi-
 50 cates in the Supported Channel Width Set subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE
 51 Capabilities element that it support for only 20 MHz channel width for the frequency band in which it is
 52 operating.
 53

54
 55 **20 MHz operating non-access-point (non-AP) high efficiency station (HE STA):** A non-AP HE STA
 56 that is operating in 20 MHz channel width mode, such as a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA or an HE STA
 57 that has reduced its operating channel width to 20 MHz using operating mode indication (OMI).
 58

59
 60 **80 MHz operating non-access-point (non-AP) high efficiency station (HE STA):** A non-AP HE STA
 61 that is operating in 80 MHz channel width mode, such as a non-AP STA (excluding the 20 MHz-only non-
 62 AP HE STA) which is not capable of 160 MHz operation or a non-AP STA that has reduced its operating
 63 channel width to 80 MHz using operating mode indication (OMI).
 64

**1 ack-enabled single-traffic identifier (TID) aggregate medium access control (MAC) protocol data unit
 2 (ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU):** An A-MPDU that contains at least two A-MPDU subframes where
 3 more than one MPDU in the A-MPDU subframes from same traffic identified (TID) are not allowed and
 4 only one of the A-MPDU subframes includes an EOF MPDU that solicits an immediate acknowledgment.
 5

7 NOTE—The single Management frame that solicits the acknowledgement in an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU is
 8 treated as a frame from a TID, e.g. soliciting Ack of TID 15 in multi-STA BlockAck frame.
 9

**10 ack-enabled multi-traffic identifier (TID) aggregate medium access control (MAC) protocol data unit
 11 (ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU):** An A-MPDU where at least one EOF MPDU that solicits Ack
 12 acknowledgement is aggregated in the A-MPDU, and MPDUs from more than one TID that solicit Ack
 13 acknowledgement or Block Ack acknowledgement are aggregated in the A-MPDU.
 14

16 NOTE—The single Management frame that solicits the acknowledgement in an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU is
 17 treated as a frame from a TID, e.g. soliciting Ack of TID 15 in multi-STA BlockAck frame.
 18

20 basic service set (BSS) color: An identifier for a BSS or for a set of BSSs belonging to a multiple BSSID
 21 set or a co-hosted BSSID set.
 22

23 broadcast resource unit (RU): a resource unit in a high efficiency (HE) multi-user (MU) physical layer
 24 (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU) transmitted by an access point (AP) that is intended for either unassociated
 25 STAs or more than one associated STA in the basic service set (BSS) or in any of the other BSSs in the mul-
 26 tiple BSSID set to which the AP's BSS belongs.
 27

29 broadcast target wake time (TWT): A specific time or set of times broadcast by an access point (AP) to
 30 multiple non-AP stations (non-AP STAs) to wake in order to exchange frames with the AP.
 31

33 co-hosted basic service set identifier (BSSID) set: A collection of access points (APs) such that all APs
 34 use a common operating class, channel, and antenna connectors and each AP advertises information for its
 35 BSSID using Beacon or Probe Response frames.
 36

38 co-located access point (AP) set: A set of two or more APs in the same physical device.
 39

40 NOTE 1—APs in the co-located set might be operating on the same or different channel.
 41

42 NOTE 2—The APs that are part of a co-located AP set and that are operating on the same channel might form a co-
 43 hosted BSSID set or multiple BSSID set.
 44

45 detected access point (AP): An AP might be detected by a station (STA) if the STA and the AP are on the
 46 same channel and in range.
 47

49 downlink (DL) high efficiency (HE) multi-user (MU) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU): An HE MU PPDU transmitted by an access point (AP). This PPDU carries one or more physical layer
 50 (PHY) service data units (PSDUs) for one or more users.
 51

53 end of frame (EOF) media access control (MAC) protocol data unit (MPDU) (EOF MPDU): An
 54 MPDU carried in an aggregate MPDU (A-MPDU) subframe that has the EOF field in the MPDU delimiter
 55 set to 1.
 56

58 enhanced multiple basic service set identifier (BSSID) advertisement (EMA) access point (AP): An AP
 59 with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented set to true that supports enhancements related to the discovery of non-
 60 transmitted BSSIDs.
 61

63 extended range (ER) beacon: A Beacon frame transmitted in a high efficiency (HE) ER single user (SU)
 64 physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU) to form an ER basic service set (BSS).
 65

1 **high efficiency (HE) basic service set (BSS):** A BSS in which the transmitted Beacon frame includes an
 2 HE Operation element.
 3

4 **high efficiency (HE) beacon:** A Beacon frame transmitted in a high efficiency (HE) single user (SU) physi-
 5 cal layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU).
 6

7 **high efficiency (HE) beamformee:** An HE station (STA) that receives an HE physical layer (PHY) proto-
 8 col data unit (PPDU) that was transmitted using a beamforming steering matrix.
 9

10 **high efficiency (HE) beamformer:** An HE station (STA) that transmits an HE physical layer (PHY) proto-
 11 col data unit (PPDU) using a beamforming steering matrix.
 12

13 **high efficiency (HE) extended range (ER) single user (SU) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit
 14 (PPDU) (HE ER SU PPDU):** A PPDU transmitted with HE ER SU PPDU format. This PPDU carries a sin-
 15 gle service data unit (PSDU).
 16

17 **high efficiency (HE) masked HE-long training field (LTF) sequence mode:** An HE-LTF mode used in
 18 HE TB PPDU. The masked HE-LTF sequence mode does not have any pilot subcarriers in the HE-LTF field
 19 and uses a masked HE-LTF sequence generated by multiplying an orthogonal code (distinct to each spatial
 20 stream) over groups of subcarriers.
 21

22 **high efficiency (HE) modulation and coding scheme (HE-MCS):** A specification of the HE physical layer
 23 (PHY) parameters that consists of modulation order (e.g., BPSK, QPSK, 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 256-QAM,
 24 1024-QAM) and forward error correction (FEC) coding rate (e.g., 1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6) and that is used in an
 25 HE PHY protocol data unit (PPDU).
 26

27 **high efficiency (HE) multi-user (MU) physical layer protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU transmitted
 28 with HE MU PPDU format.
 29

30 **high efficiency (HE) no pilot HE-long training field (LTF) mode:** An HE-LTF mode used in HE TB
 31 PPDU. The no pilot HE-LTF mode does not have any pilot subcarriers in the HE-LTF field and does not use
 32 a masked HE-LTF sequence (see HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode).
 33

34 **high efficiency (HE) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A Clause 27 PPDU that is not a
 35 Clause 21 PPDU.
 36

37 **high efficiency (HE) single stream pilot:** The same pilot sequence is applied to all spatial time streams for
 38 a given resource allocation.
 39

40 **high efficiency (HE) single stream pilot HE-long training field (LTF) mode:** An HE-LTF mode used in
 41 an HE single user (SU), HE extended range (ER) SU, HE multi-user (MU) and HE trigger-based (TB)
 42 PPDU. The HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode has single stream pilot subcarriers in the HE-LTF field.
 43

44 **high efficiency (HE) single-user (SU) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU trans-
 45 mitted with HE SU PPDU format. This PPDU carries a single physical layer service data unit (PSDU).
 46

47 **high efficiency (HE) trigger-based (TB) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A PPDU
 48 transmitted with HE TB PPDU format. This PPDU carries a single physical layer service data unit (PSDU).
 49

50 **non-ack-enabled single traffic identifier (TID) aggregate medium access control (MAC) protocol data
 51 unit (non-ack-enabled single TID A-MPDU):** A legacy A-MPDU with the exception that a Trigger frame
 52 can be aggregated.
 53

1 **non-ack-enabled multi-traffic identifier (TID) aggregate medium access control (MAC) protocol data**
 2 **unit (non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU):** An A-MPDU where EOF MPDUs are not aggregated, and
 3 the aggregated non-EOF MPDUs from at least two TIDs solicit block acknowledgement.

5 **non-end of frame (non-EOF) medium access control (MAC) protocol data unit (MPDU) (non-EOF**
 6 **MPDU):** An MPDU carried in an aggregate MPDU (A-MPDU) subframe that has the EOF field in the
 7 MPDU delimiter set to 0.

10 **non-orthogonal frequency division multiple access (non-OFDMA) high efficiency (HE) physical layer**
 11 **(PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):** A 20 MHz HE PPDU with a 242-tone resource unit (RU), a 40 MHz
 12 HE PPDU with a 484-tone RU, an 80 MHz HE PPDU with a 996-tone RU, or a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE
 13 PPDU with a 2×996-tone RU.

16 **non-spatial reuse group (non-SRG):** an adjective indicating the quality of not being a member of a partic-
 17 ular spatial reuse group, or the quality of not originating from a station (STA) that is a member of a basic
 18 service set (BSS) that is part of a particular spatial reuse group.

21 **opportunistic power save (OPS) access point (AP):** An AP that supports the opportunistic power save
 22 mechanism.

25 **opportunistic power save (OPS) mechanism:** A power save mechanism to allow OPS non-access-point
 26 (non-AP) stations (STAs) to opportunistically go to doze state or be unavailable for a defined period.

29 **opportunistic power save (OPS) period:** A period during which an OPS non-access-point (non-AP) station
 30 (STA) is allowed to be unavailable if it received an indication that it will not be scheduled by its associated
 31 OPS access point (AP).

33 **opportunistic power save (OPS) station (STA):** A non-access point (AP) high efficiency (HE) STA that
 34 supports the opportunistic power save mechanism.

37 **orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA) high efficiency (HE) physical layer (PHY)**
 38 **protocol data unit (PPDU):** A 20 MHz HE PPDU with resource units (RUs) smaller than 242-tone, or a
 39 40 MHz HE PPDU with RUs smaller than 484-tone, or an 80 MHz HE PPDU with RUs smaller than 996-
 40 tone, or a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE PPDU with RUs smaller than 2×996-tone.

43 **overlapping basic service set (OBSS) packet detect (PD):** A packet detection level used for spatial reuse
 44 procedure.

47 **random access resource unit (RA-RU):** A resource unit (RU) allocated in a Trigger frame to support the
 48 uplink (UL) orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA) based random access (UORA) proce-
 49 dure.

51 **reported access point (AP):** An AP that is described in an element such as a Neighbor Report element or a
 52 Reduced Neighbor Report element.

55 **reporting access point (AP):** An AP that is transmitting an element, such as a Neighbor Report element or
 56 a Reduced Neighbor Report element, describing a reported AP.

59 **resource unit (RU):** a group of 26, 52, 106, 242, 484, 996 or 2×996 subcarriers as an allocation of subcarri-
 60 ers for transmission.

62 **spatial reuse (SR):** the transmission of a physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU) on the medium
 63 under certain conditions when a PPDU has been detected that would otherwise have prevented the transmis-
 64 sion.

1 spatial reuse group (SRG): A group of basic service sets (BSSs) identified by their BSS colors or partial
2 basic service set identifiers (BSSIDs) for overlapping basic service set packet detect (OBSS PD)-based spatial
3 reuse operation with SRG OBSS PD level.

5 spatial reuse parameters (SRP) opportunity: a spatial reuse opportunity that is established based on the
6 value of a Spatial Reuse field in the HE-SIG-A field of a high efficiency (HE) trigger-based (TB) physical
7 layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU) and/or the UL Spatial Reuse subfield in the Common Info field of a
8 Trigger frame.

10 spatial reuse parameters reception (SRPR) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (SRPR PPDU): a
11 PPDU that contains a Trigger frame that has a value in the UL Spatial Reuse subfield of the Common Info
12 field that is neither SRP_DISALLOW nor SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED.

**14 spatial reuse parameters transmission (SRPT) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU) (SRPT
15 PPDU):** a PPDU that is transmitted during a spatial reuse parameters (SRP) opportunity by an HE STA
16 when SRP conditions for SRP-based spatial reuse operation are satisfied and that has the SR PPDU subfield
17 of the CAS Control field equal to 1.

19 target wake time (TWT) scheduled station (STA): A STA that follows the broadcast TWT schedules pro-
20 vided in a broadcast TWT element.

22 target wake time (TWT) scheduling access point (AP): An AP that schedules broadcast TWTs and pro-
23 vides these broadcast TWT schedules in a broadcast TWT element.

25 triggered uplink access (TUA): A mechanism by which one or more non-access point (non-AP) stations
26 (STAs) simultaneously participate in an uplink (UL) transmission to an access point (AP) using resource
27 units (RUs) allocated in the preceding Trigger frame.

29 triggering frame: A Trigger frame or a frame carrying a TRS Control subfield.

31 triggering physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU): A PPDU carrying a triggering frame.

33 uplink (UL) high efficiency (HE) multi-user (MU) physical layer (PHY) protocol data unit (PPDU):
34 An HE MU PPDU transmitted by a non-access point (non-AP) station (STA). This PPDU carries a single
35 physical layer service data unit (PSDU).

37 NOTE—The UL HE MU PPDU has an HE-SIG-B field that contains additional information (e.g., the identifier of the
38 transmitter) that can be used by the recipient of the UL HE MU PPDU to determine the transmitter of the PPDU even in
39 those cases where the Data field of the PPDU is not received. For example, this allows the originator of persistently fail-
40 ing PPDUs to be identified.

42 uplink (UL) orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA)-based random access (UORA):
43 A random access mechanism for non-access point (non-AP) high efficiency (HE) stations (STAs) to partici-
44 pate in uplink OFDMA transmissions in one or more designated random access resource units (RUs).

54 **3.4 Abbreviations and acronyms**

56 Insert the following acronym definitions (maintaining alphabetical order):

A-Control	aggregated control
BQR	bandwidth query report
BQRP	bandwidth query report poll
BFRP	beamforming report poll
BSR	buffer status report

1	BSRP	buffer status report poll
2	CAS	command and status
3	CCDF	complementary cumulative distribution function
4	CQI	channel quality indication
5	DCM	dual carrier modulation
6	DL	downlink
7	DL MU	downlink multi-user
8	HE	high efficiency
9	LA	link adaptation
10	MU-BAR	multi-user block ack request
11	MUEDCATimer	multi-user EDCA timer
12	MU-RTS	multi-user request to send
13	NFRP	NDP feedback report poll
14	OBO	orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA) random access backoff
15	OCW	orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA) contention window
16	OFDMA	orthogonal frequency division multiple access
17	OM	operating mode
18	OMI	operating mode indication
19	PD	packet detect
20	PPE	physical layer (PHY) packet extension
21	PPET	physical layer (PHY) packet extension threshold
22	QTP	quiet time period
23	RA-RU	random access resource unit
24	RDP	reverse direction protocol
25	ROM	receive operating mode
26	RPL	received power level
27	RU	resource unit
28	SF	scaling factor
29	SRP	spatial reuse parameters
30	SR	spatial reuse
31	SRG	spatial reuse group
32	TB	trigger-based
33	TOM	transmit operating mode
34	TRS	triggered response scheduling
35	TUA	triggered uplink access
36	UL	uplink
37	UL MU	uplink multi-user
38	UORA	uplink orthogonal frequency division multiple access (OFDMA) based random access
39	UPH	uplink (UL) power headroom

1 **4. General description**

4 **4.3 Components of the IEEE Std 802.11 architecture**

7 *Insert a new subclause after subclause 4.3.15 (Very high throughput (VHT) STA) as follows:*

9 **4.3.15a High efficiency (HE) STA**

11 The IEEE 802.11 HE STA operates in frequency bands between 1 GHz and 7.125 GHz.

14 An HE STA that is a mesh STA does not transmit and does not receive HE TB PPDUs.

17 In the 5 to 7.125 GHz bands, the following apply:

- 18 — An HE STA is also a VHT STA if operating in the 5 GHz band except that a 20 MHz-only HE STA
19 does not support 40 MHz and 80 MHz channel widths
- 21 — Support for 20 MHz operating channel width is mandatory in an HE STA
- 22 — Support for 40 MHz and 80 MHz operating channel width is mandatory in an HE STA that is not a
23 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA
- 25 — Support for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz operating channel width is optional in an HE STA

27 In the 2.4 GHz band, the following apply:

- 29 — An HE STA is also an HT STA
- 30 — Support for 20 MHz operating channel width is mandatory in an HE STA
- 32 — Support for 40 MHz operating channel width is optional in an HE STA

34 The main PHY features in an HE STA that are not present in VHT STA or HT STA are the following:

- 36 — Mandatory support for DL and UL OFDMA
- 37 — Mandatory support for DL MU-MIMO by an HE AP that supports 4 or more spatial streams when
38 MU-MIMO is done on the entire PPDU bandwidth
- 40 — Mandatory support for DL MU-MIMO reception for a non-AP HE STA
- 42 — Mandatory support for the HE sounding protocol to support beamforming for a non-AP STA beam-
43 formee and optional otherwise
- 44 — Optional support for HE-MCSs 10 and 11
- 46 — Optional support for UL MU-MIMO
- 47 — Optional support for preamble puncturing

49 NOTE—Preamble puncturing is a mechanism whereby OFDMA is used to avoid transmissions in certain subcarriers.

51 The main MAC features in an HE STA that are not present in VHT STA or HT STA are the following:

- 53 — In an AP, mandatory support for the role of operating mode indication (OMI) responder and optional
54 support for the role of OMI initiator
- 55 — In an AP, mandatory support for individual target wake time (TWT) operation
- 57 — In a non-AP STA, mandatory support for two NAV operation
- 59 — In a non-AP STA, mandatory support for multiple BSSID operation
- 60 — In an AP, optional support for two NAV operation
- 62 — In a non-AP STA, optional support for the roles of OMI initiator and responder
- 63 — In a non-AP STA, optional support for individual TWT operation
- 65 — Optional support for dynamic fragmentation levels 1, 2 and 3

- Optional support for broadcast TWT
- Optional support for UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)
- Optional support for spatial reuse operation
- Optional support for multi-TID A-MPDU operation
- Optional support for ER BSS
- Optional support for the NDP feedback report

An HE AP sends a Trigger frame to initiate OFDMA or MU-MIMO transmissions in the uplink direction or a TRS Control subfield to initiate OFDMA transmissions in the uplink direction. The Trigger frame or TRS Control subfield identifies non-AP STAs participating in the UL MU transmissions and assigns RUs and/or spatial streams to these STAs. Multi-STA BlockAck frames can be used by the AP to acknowledge the frames transmitted by multiple non-AP STAs. The scheduling of these Trigger frames can be set up between a non-AP STA and the AP using TWT operation to save power and reduce collisions.

These features can reduce protocol overhead and increase aggregate network throughput (e.g., DL and UL OFDMA, DL/UL MU-MIMO), enhance peak link throughput (e.g., HE-MCS 10, 11), enhance dense network efficiency (e.g., spatial reuse), and/or enhance power conservation (e.g., TWT). These features can, under certain circumstances, improve the average throughput per STA in a BSS by a factor of four, compared to VHT.

4.3.19 Wireless network management

4.3.19.8 Event reporting

Change as follows:

Event requests enable a STA to request a non-AP STA to send particular real-time event reports. The types of events include transition, RSNA, WNM log, BSS color collision, BSS color in use and peer-to-peer link events. A transition event is transmitted after a non-AP STA successfully completes a BSS transition. Transition events are used to diagnose transition performance problems. An RSNA event report describes the type of Authentication used for the RSNA. RSNA events are used to diagnose security and authentication performance problems. A WNM log event report enables a non-AP STA to transmit a set of WNM log event messages to the requesting STA. WNM log event reports are used to access the contents of a STA's WNM log. A BSS color collision event report enables a non-AP HE STA to signal BSS color collision to its associated AP. A BSS color in use event report enables a non-AP HE STA to signal a BSS color in use by the non-AP HE STA to its associated AP. A peer-to-peer link event report enables a non-AP STA to inform the requesting STA that a peer-to-peer link has been established. Peer-to-peer link event reports are used to monitor the use of peer-to-peer links in the network.

1 6. Layer management

2

3

4

5 6.3 MLME SAP interface

6

7

8 6.3.3 Scan

9

10 6.3.3.2 MLME-SCAN.request

11

12

13 6.3.3.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive

14

16 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters are shown):*

19 The primitive parameters are as follows:

```
21        MLME-SCAN.request(
22
23              ...
24              Short SSID List,
25              HE Capabilities,
26              HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
27              VendorSpecificInfo
28
29              )
30
31
32
33
```

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
<u>Short SSID List</u>	<u>A list of short SSIDs</u>	<u>As defined in 9.4.2.260 (Short SSID List element)</u>	<u>One or more Short SSID fields that are optionally present if dot11ShortSSIDList is true</u>
<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>As defined in HE Capabilities element</u>	<u>As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)</u>	<u>Specifies the parameters in the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.</u>
<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element</u>	<u>As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)</u>	<u>Specifies the parameters in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.</u>

55 6.3.3.3 MLME-SCAN.confirm

59 6.3.3.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive

62 *Insert the following rows at the end of the BSSDescriptionSet table:*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description	IBSS adoption
------	------	-------------	-------------	---------------

1	TWT	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.199 (TWT element)	The value from TWT element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, dot11TWTOptionActivated is true, and a TWT element was present in the broadcast Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
17	HE Capabilities	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	The value from HE Capabilities element. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and an HE Capabilities element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescription was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
31	HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	The value from HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true and an HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescription was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
45	HE Operation	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	The value from HE Operation element. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and an HE Operation element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Adopt

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	UORA Parameter Set	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element)	The value from UORA Parameter Set element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented is true and a UORA Parameter Set element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31	MU EDCA Parameter Set	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.250 (MU EDCA Parameter Set element)	The value from MU EDCA Parameter Set element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and a MU EDCA Parameter Set element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65	Spatial Reuse Parameter Set	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element)	The value from Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
	NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.252 (NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element)	The value from NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and an NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt

1	BSS Color Change Announcement	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element)	The value from BSS Color Change Announcement element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and a BSS Color Change Announcement element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
17	ESS Report	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element)	The value from ESS Report element. The parameter is optionally present if an ESS Report element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
29	HE BSS Load	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.257 (HE BSS Load element)	The value from HE BSS Load element. The parameter is optionally present if dot11QBSSLoadImplemented and dot11HEOptionImplemented are true and an HE BSS Load element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescriptionSet was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt
46	Multiple BSSID Configuration	As defined in frame format	As defined in 9.4.2.258 (Multiple BSSID Configuration element)	The value from Multiple BSSID Configuration element. The parameter is present if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true and the Multiple BSSID Configuration element was present in the Probe Response or Beacon frame from which the BSSDescription was determined. Otherwise, the parameter is not present.	Do not adopt

1 **6.3.4 Synchronization**
 2
 3
 4

5 **6.3.4.2 MLME-JOIN.request**
 6
 7

8 **6.3.4.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive**
 9
 10

11 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters in the baseline are shown):*

12 The primitive parameters are as follows:

13 MLME-JOIN.request(

14 \dots_2
 15 HE Capabilities,
 16 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
 17 VendorSpecificInfo
 18)

20 *Insert the following entry into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order*
 21 *above:*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.

46 **6.3.4.2.4 Effect of receipt**
 47
 48

49 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

51 If the MLME of an HE STA receives an MLME-JOIN.request primitive with a SelectedBSS parameter containing a Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field in the HE Operation parameter that contains any unsupported <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple, then the MLME response in the resulting MLME-JOIN.confirm primitive shall contain a ResultCode parameter that is not set to the value SUCCESS.

57 **6.3.7 Associate**
 58
 59

60 **6.3.7.2 MLME-ASSOCIATE.request**
 61
 62

63 **6.3.7.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive**
 64
 65

65 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all parameters are shown):*

1 The primitive parameters are as follows:

2

3 MLME-ASSOCIATE.request(

5 ...

6 HE Capabilities,

7 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,

8 Channel Switch Timing,

9 UL MU Power Capabilities,

10 VendorSpecificInfo

11)

14 *Insert the following entries into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order*
 15 *above:*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters in the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
Channel Switch Timing	As defined in the Channel Switch Timing element	As defined in 9.4.2.63 (Channel Switch Timing element)	Provides information regarding the channel switch timing. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
UL MU Power Capabilities	As defined in UL MU Power Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.262 (UL MU Power Capabilities element)	Provides information regarding the UL MU power capabilities for the non-AP STA. The UL MU Power Capability element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.

57 **6.3.7.3 MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm**

59 **6.3.7.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

62 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all parameters are shown):*

65 The primitive parameters are as follows:

```

1   MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm(
2     ...
3       HE Capabilities,
4       HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
5       HE Operation,
6       BSS Color Change Announcement,
7       Spatial Reuse Parameter Set,
8       MU EDCA Parameter Set,
9       UORA Parameter Set,
10      ESS Report,
11      VendorSpecificInfo
12    )
13
14
15
16
17 Change the unnumbered table in this subclause as follows:
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

```

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TWT	TWT element	As defined in 9.4.2.199 (TWT element)	Specifies the parameters in the TWT element. This parameter is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivate d is true and the TWT element is present in the Association Request frame that elicited the Association Response frame or the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities element in the Association Request frame that elicited the Association Response frame is 1; otherwise not present.

1 ***Insert the following entries into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order***
 2 ***above:***

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE Operation	As defined in HE Operation element	As defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	Provides additional information for operating the HE BSS. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
UORA Parameter Set	As defined in UORA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element)	Indicates the metrics of the OFDMA-based random access mechanism. The parameter is optionally present if dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.

1	MU EDCA Parameter Set	As defined in MU EDCA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.250 (MU EDCA Parameter Set element)	Indicates MU EDCA parameters. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
8	Spatial Reuse Parameter Set	As defined in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element)	Indicates parameters needed by STAs when performing OBSS PD-based spatial reuse. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
18	NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set	As defined in NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.252 (NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element)	Indicates NDP Feedback Report parameter values. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
25	BSS Color Change Announcement	As defined in BSS Color Change Announcement element	As defined in 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element)	Indicates information on BSS Color Change. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
33	ESS Report	As defined in ESS Report element	As defined in 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element)	Provides information on ESS to assist BSS transition. The parameter is optionally present.

38 6.3.7.4 MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication

41 6.3.7.4.2 Semantics of the service primitive

43 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters in the baseline are shown):*

46 The primitive parameters are as follows:

47 MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication(

49 ...
50 HE Capabilities,
51 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
52 Channel Switch Timing,
53 UL MU Power Capabilities,
54 VendorSpecificInfo
55)
56

1 ***Insert the following entry into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order***
 2 ***above:***

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the peer STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and the HE Capabilities element is present in the Association Request frame received from the STA; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the peer STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true and the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present in the Association Request frame received from the STA; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
Channel Switch Timing	As defined in the Channel Switch Timing element	As defined in 9.4.2.63 (Channel Switch Timing element)	Provides information regarding the channel switch timing. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented is true and the Channel Switch Timing element is present in the Association Request frame received from the STA; otherwise not present.
UL MU Power Capabilities	As defined in UL MU Power Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.262 (UL MU Power Capabilities element)	Provides information regarding the UL MU power capabilities for the non-AP STA. The UL MU Power Capability element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and the HE Capabilities element and UL MU Power Capability element is present in the Association Request frame received from the STA; otherwise it is not present.

1 **6.3.7.5 MLME-ASSOCIATE.response**

2 **6.3.7.5.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

3 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters in the baseline are shown):*

4 The primitive parameters are as follows:

5 MLME-ASSOCIATE.response(

6 ...,
 7 HE Capabilities,
 8 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
 9 HE Operation,
 10 UORA Parameter Set,
 11 MU EDCA Parameter Set,
 12 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set,
 13 NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set,
 14 BSS Color Change Announcement,
 15 ESS Report,
 16 VendorSpecificInfo
 17)

18 *Change the unnumbered table in this subclause as follows:*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TWT	TWT element	As defined in 9.4.2.199 (TWT element)	Specifies the parameters in the TWT element. This parameter is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivate d is true <u>and the TWT element is present in the Association Request frame that elicited the Association Response frame or the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities element in the Association Request frame that elicited the Association Response frame is 1</u> ; otherwise not present.

19 *Insert the following entries into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order above:*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemen ted is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.

1	HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
2	HE Operation	As defined in HE Operation element	As defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	Provides additional information for operating the HE BSS. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
3	UORA Parameter Set	As defined in UORA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element)	Indicates the metrics of the OFDMA-based random access mechanism. The parameter is optionally present if dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
4	MU EDCA Parameter Set	As defined in MU EDCA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.250 (MU EDCA Parameter Set element)	Indicates MU EDCA parameters. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
5	Spatial Reuse Parameter Set	As defined in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element)	Indicates parameters needed by STAs when performing OBSS PD-based spatial reuse. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
6	NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set	As defined in NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.252 (NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element)	Indicates NDP Feedback Report parameter values. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.

1	BSS Color Change Announcement	As defined in BSS Color Change Announcement element	As defined in 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element)	Indicates information on BSS Color Change. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
9	ESS Report	As defined in ESS Report element	As defined in 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element)	Provides information on ESS to assist BSS transition. The parameter is optionally present.

6.3.8 Reassociate

6.3.8.2 MLME-REASSOCIATE.request

6.3.8.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive

Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all parameters are shown):

The primitive parameters are as follows:

MLME-REASSOCIATE.request(

...,
HE Capabilities,
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
Channel Switch Timing,
UL MU Power Capabilities,
VendorSpecificInfo
)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **Insert the following entries into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order**
 2 **above:**

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters in the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
Channel Switch Timing	As defined in the Channel Switch Timing element	As defined in 9.4.2.63 (Channel Switch Timing element)	Provides information regarding the channel switch timing. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
UL MU Power Capabilities	As defined in UL MU Power Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.262 (UL MU Power Capabilities element)	Provides information regarding the UL MU power capabilities for the non-AP STA. The UL MU Power Capability element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.

44 **6.3.8.3 MLME-REASSOCIATE.confirm**

45 **6.3.8.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

46 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters in the baseline are shown):*

47 The primitive parameters are as follows:

48 MLME-REASSOCIATE.confirm(

49 ...
 50 HE Capabilities,
 51 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
 52 HE Operation,
 53 UORA Parameter Set,
 54 MU EDCA Parameter Set,
 55 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set,
 56 NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set,
 57 BSS Color Change Announcement,

ESS Report,
VendorSpecificInfo
)

Change the unnumbered table in this subclause as follows:

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TWT	TWT element	As defined in 9.4.2.199 (TWT element)	Specifies the parameters in the TWT element. This parameter is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivate d is true and the TWT element is present in the Reassociation Request frame that elicited the Reassociation Response frame or the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities element in the Reassociation Request frame that elicited the Reassociation Response frame is 1; otherwise not present.

Insert the following entries into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order above:

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot1HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot1HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE Operation	As defined in HE Operation element	As defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	Provides additional information for operating the HE BSS. The parameter is present if dot1HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.

1	UORA Parameter Set	As defined in UORA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element)	Indicates the metrics of the OFDMA-based random access mechanism. The parameter is optionally present if dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
12	MU EDCA Parameter Set	As defined in MU EDCA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.250 (MU EDCA Parameter Set element)	Indicates MU EDCA parameters. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
19	Spatial Reuse Parameter Set	As defined in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element)	Indicates parameters needed by STAs when performing OBSS PD-based spatial reuse. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
28	NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set	As defined in NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.252 (NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element)	Indicates NDP Feedback Report parameter values. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
36	BSS Color Change Announcement	As defined in BSS Color Change Announcement element	As defined in 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element)	Indicates information on BSS Color Change. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
44	ESS Report	As defined in ESS Report element	As defined in 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element)	Provides information on ESS to assist BSS transition. The parameter is optionally present.

49 6.3.8.4 MLME-REASSOCIATE.indication

50 51 52 6.3.8.4.2 Semantics of the service primitive

54 *55 Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all parameters are shown):*

57 The primitive parameters are as follows:

58 MLME-REASSOCIATE.indication(

60 ...

61 HE Capabilities,

62 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,

63 Channel Switch Timing,

64 UL MU Power Capabilities,

```
1      VendorSpecificInfo  
2      )  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65
```

1 ***Insert the following entry into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order***
 2 ***above:***

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element.	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the peer STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and the HE Capabilities element is present in the Reassociation Request frame received from the STA; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true and the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present in the Reassociation Request frame received from the STA; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
Channel Switch Timing	As defined in the Channel Switch Timing element	As defined in 9.4.2.63 (Channel Switch Timing element)	Provides information regarding the channel switch timing. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented is true and the Channel Switch Timing element is present in the Reassociation Request frame received from the STA; otherwise not present.
UL MU Power Capabilities	As defined in UL MU Power Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.262 (UL MU Power Capabilities element)	Provides information regarding the UL MU power capabilities for the non-AP STA. The UL MU Power Capability element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and the HE Capabilities element and UL MU Power Capability element is present in the Association Request frame received from the STA; otherwise it is not present.

1 **6.3.8.5 MLME-REASSOCIATE.response**

2

3 **6.3.8.5.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

4

5 *Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters in the baseline are shown):*

6

7 The primitive parameters are as follows:

8

9 MLME-REASSOCIATE.response(

10

11 ...,
 HE Capabilities,
 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
 HE Operation,
 UORA Parameter Set,
 MU EDCA Parameter Set,
 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set,
 NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set,
 BSS Color Change Announcement,
 ESS Report,
 VendorSpecificInfo
)

27 *Change the unnumbered table in this subclause as follows:*

28

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TWT	TWT element	As defined in 9.4.2.199 (TWT element)	Specifies the parameters in the TWT element. This parameter is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivate d is true <u>and the TWT element is present in the Reassociation Request frame that elicited the Reassociation Response frame or the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities element in the Reassociation Request frame that elicited the Reassociation Response frame is 1</u> ; otherwise not present.

1 ***Insert the following entries into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order***
 2 ***above:***

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE Operation	As defined in HE Operation element	As defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	Provides additional information for operating the HE BSS. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
UORA Parameter Set	As defined in UORA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element)	Indicates the metrics of the OFDMA-based random access mechanism. The parameter is optionally present if dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
MU EDCA Parameter Set	As defined in MU EDCA Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.250 (MU EDCA Parameter Set element)	Indicates MU EDCA parameters. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
Spatial Reuse Parameter Set	As defined in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element)	Indicates parameters needed by STAs when performing OBSS PD-based spatial reuse. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.

1	NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set	As defined in NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element	As defined in 9.4.2.252 (NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element)	Indicates NDP Feedback Report parameter values. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
9	BSS Color Change Announcement	As defined in BSS Color Change Announcement element	As defined in 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element)	Indicates information on BSS Color Change. The parameter is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise not present.
17	ESS Report	As defined in ESS Report element	As defined in 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element)	Provides information on ESS to assist BSS transition. The parameter is optionally present.

6.3.11 Start

6.3.11.2 MLME-START.request

6.3.11.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive

Change the primitive parameters as follows (not all existing parameters in the baseline are shown):

MLME-START.request(

...
HE Capabilities,
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities,
HE Operation,
VendorSpecificInfo
)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 ***Insert the following entry into the unnumbered table in this subclause maintaining the primitive order***
 2 ***above:***

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HE Capabilities	As defined in HE Capabilities element.	As defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities	As defined in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element	As defined in 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element)	Specifies the parameters within the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element that are supported by the STA. The parameter is present if dot11HE6GOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.
HE Operation	As defined in HE Operation element.	As defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	Provides additional information for operating the HE BSS. The parameter is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, this parameter is not present.

34 **6.3.11.2.4 Effect of receipt**

35 ***Insert the following at the end of the subclause:***

36 If the MLME of an HE STA receives an MLME-START.request primitive with a Basic HE-MCS And NSS
 37 Set field in the HE Operation parameter that contains any unsupported <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple, then the
 38 MLME response in the resulting MLME-START.confirm primitive shall not contain a ResultCode parameter
 39 that is set to SUCCESS.

46 **6.5 PLME SAP interface**

49 **6.5.6 PLME-TXTIME.confirm**

51 **6.5.6.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

54 ***Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:***

56 The TXTIME represents the time, in microseconds, required to transmit the PPDU described in the corresponding PLME-TXTIME.request primitive. If the calculated time includes a fractional microsecond and
 57 the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT in the corresponding PLME-TXTIME.request primitive is not
 58 HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_TB or HE_ER_SU, a non-DMG STA rounds the TXTIME value to the next higher
 59 integer. A non-DMG STA does not round the TXTIME value up or down if the TXVECTOR parameter
 60 FORMAT in the corresponding PLME-TXTIME.request primitive is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_TB or
 61 HE_ER_SU. A DMG STA does not round the TXTIME value up or down (see 20.11.3 (TXTIME calculation)).

8. PHY service specification

8.3 Detailed PHY service specifications

8.3.4 Basic service and options

8.3.4.2 PHY-SAP inter-(sub)layer service primitives

Insert a new last row in Table 8-2 as follows:

Table 8-2—PHY SAP inter-(sub)layer service primitives

Primitive	Request	Indication	Confirm
PHY-TRIGGER	X		

8.3.4.3 PHY SAP service primitives parameters

Insert a new last row in Table 8-3 as follows:

Table 8-3—PHY SAP service primitive parameters

Parameter	Associated primitive	Value
TRIGVECTOR	PHY-TRIGGER.request	A set of parameters

8.3.4.4 Vector descriptions

Change the 2nd and 3rd paragraph as follows:

The Clause 19 (High throughput (HT) PHY specification) HT PHY TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR contain additional parameters related to the operation of the Clause 19 (High throughput (HT) PHY specification) HT PHY modes of operation as described in 19.2 (HT PHY service interface). In certain modes of operation, the DATARATE parameter is replaced by MCS, CH_BANDWIDTH and GI_TYPE values. The mapping from these values to data rate is defined in 19.5 (Parameters for HT MCSs).

The Clause 21 (Very high throughput (VHT) PHY specification) VHT PHY TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR contain additional parameters related to the operation of the Clause 21 (Very high throughput (VHT) PHY specification) VHT PHY modes of operation as described in 21.2 (VHT PHY service interface). In certain modes of operation, the DATARATE parameter is replaced by MCS, CH_BANDWIDTH, NUM_STS, STBC and GI_TYPE values. The mapping from these values to data rate is defined 21.5 (Parameters for VHT-MCSs), where VHT-MCS is MCS and N_{SS} is NUM_STS / (STBC + 1)

Insert the following at the end of the subclause:

The HE PHY TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR contain additional parameters related to the HE PHY modes of operation as described in 27.2 (HE PHY service interface). In certain modes of operation, the DATA-RATE parameter is replaced by MCS, CH BANDWIDTH, RU ALLOCATION, NUM STS, STBC, GI -

TYPE and DCM values. The mapping from these values to data rate is defined in 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs), where HE-MCS is MCS and N_{SS} is NUM_STS / (STBC + 1).

The HE PHY TRIGVECTOR contains parameters for UL MU operation (see Table 27-2 (TRIGVECTOR parameters)).

8.3.5 PHY SAP detailed service specification

8.3.5.2 PHY-DATA.request

8.3.5.2.2 Semantics of the service primitive

Change the subclause as follows:

The primitive provides the following parameters:

Y-DATA.request(
 DATA,
 USER_INDEX,
 STA_INDEX
)

The DATA parameter is an octet of value X'00' to X'FF'.

The USER_INDEX parameter (typically identified as u for a VHT STA; see NOTE for MU usage at the end of Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters)) is present for a VHT MU PPDU and indicates the index of the user in the TXVECTOR to which the accompanying DATA octet applies; otherwise, this parameter is not present.

The STA_INDEX parameter (identified as the STA_ID parameter; see STA_ID parameter in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) and 26.11.1 (STA_ID)) is present for an HE MU PPDU; otherwise, this parameter is not present. If the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG is 0, this parameter indicates the STA or group of STAs that is the recipient of an RU to which the accompanying DATA octet applies. If the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG is 1, this parameter indicates the STA that is the transmitter of an RU to which the accompanying DATA octet applies.

8.3.5.3 PHY-DATA.indication

8.3.5.3.2 Semantics of the service primitive

Change the subclause as follows:

The primitive provides the following parameter:

Y-DATA.indication(

The DATA parameter is an octet of value X'00' to X'FF'.

The STA_INDEX parameter (identified as an AID of the transmitter of the DATA contained in an HE TB PPDU; see STA_ID parameter in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters)) is present for an HE TB PPDU and indicates the STA of an RU from which the accompanying DATA octet applies; otherwise, this parameter is not present.

1 **8.3.5.10 PHY-CCARESET.request**
2
3
4

5 **8.3.5.10.3 When generated**
6
7

8 *Insert the following after the 1st paragraph:*
9
10 This primitive is also generated by the MAC sublayer for the local PHY entity when the spatial reuse conditions defined in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation) are met.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **8.3.5.12 PHY-CCA.indication**

2

3 **8.3.5.12.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

4

5 *Change Table 8-5 (The channel-list parameter elements) as follows (only modified rows shown):*

6

7 **Table 8-5—The channel-list parameter elements**

8

channel-list element	Meaning
primary	<p>In an HT STA that is <u>not neither a VHT STA nor an HE STA</u>, indicates that the primary 20 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 19.3.19.5.2 (CCA-Energy Detect (CCA-ED)).</p> <p>In a VHT STA<u>that is not an HE STA</u>, indicates that the primary 20 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 21.3.18.5.3 (CCA sensitivity for signals occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</p> <p>In a TVHT STA, indicates that the primary channel is busy according to the rules specified in 22.3.18.6.3 (CCA sensitivity for signals occupying the primary channel).</p> <p><u>In an HE STA, indicates that the primary 20 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 27.3.19.6.3 (CCA sensitivity for the primary 20 MHz channel).</u></p>
secondary	<p>In an HT STA that is <u>not neither a VHT STA nor an HE STA</u>, indicates that the secondary channel is busy according to the rules specified in 19.3.19.5.5 (CCA sensitivity in 40 MHz).</p> <p>In a VHT STA<u>that is not an HE STA</u>, indicates that the secondary 20 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 21.3.18.5.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</p> <p>In a TVHT STA, indicates that the secondary channel is busy according to the rules specified in 22.3.18.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary channel).</p> <p><u>In an HE STA, indicates that the secondary 20 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 27.3.19.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</u></p>
secondary40	<p><u>In a VHT STA that is not an HE STA, indicates</u> <u>Indicates</u> that the secondary 40 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 21.3.18.5.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</p> <p>In a TVHT STA, indicates that the secondary TVHT_2W channel is busy according to the rules specified in 22.3.18.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary channel).</p> <p><u>In an HE STA, indicates that the secondary 40 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 27.3.19.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</u></p>
secondary80	<p><u>In a VHT STA that is not an HE STA, indicates</u> <u>Indicates</u> that the secondary 80 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 21.3.18.5.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</p> <p><u>In an HE STA, indicates that the secondary 80 MHz channel is busy according to the rules specified in 27.3.19.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel).</u></p>
per20bitmap	<p><u>In an HE STA, indicates the busy/idle status of each 20 MHz subchannel in 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz according to the rules specified in 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity). Valid only for the 20 MHz subchannels that require CCA operation for the preamble puncturing transmission, HE TB PPDU transmission and BQR operation.</u></p>

1 **8.3.5.12.3 When generated**

2 *Change the 1st paragraph and remove the note as follows:*

3 For Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) to Clause 20
 4 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) PHYs, this primitive is generated within aCCATime
 5 of the occurrence of a change in the status of the primary channel from channel idle to channel busy or from
 6 channel busy to channel idle or when the elements of the channel-list parameter change. For Clause 21 ~~and~~
 7 Clause 22 ~~and~~ Clause 27 PHYs, this primitive is generated when the status of the channel(s) changes from
 8 channel idle to channel busy or from channel busy to channel idle or when the elements of the channel-list
 9 parameter change. This includes the period of time when the PHY is receiving data. The timing of PHY-
 10 CCA.indication primitives related to transitions on secondary channel(s) is PHY specific. Refer to specific
 11 PHY clauses for details about CCA behavior for a given PHY.

12 NOTE ~~For the VHT PHY, the timing information is omitted here and is defined in 21.3.18.5.~~

13 Insert a new subclause 8.3.5.16 at the end of 8.3.5:

14 **8.3.5.16 PHY-TRIGGER.request**

15 **8.3.5.16.1 Function**

16 This primitive is a request by the MAC sublayer to the local PHY entity to set parameters for the receipt of HE TB
 17 PPDU.

18 **8.3.5.16.2 Semantics of the service primitive**

19 The primitive provides the following parameter:

20 PHY-TRIGGER.request (

TRIGVECTOR
)

21 The TRIGVECTOR parameter provides the PHY with the information needed to demodulate of the expected HE TB
 22 PPDUs.

23 **8.3.5.16.3 When generated**

24 This primitive is issued by the MAC sublayer to the PHY entity after issuing PHY-TXSTART.request and before receiving HE TB PPDU.

25 **8.3.5.16.4 Effect of receipt**

26 The effect of receipt of this primitive by the PHY entity is to configure receiver module with parameters in TRIGVECTOR before HE TB PPDUs arrival.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 9. Frame formats 2 3 4 9.2 MAC frame formats 5 6 9.2.4 Frame fields 7 8 9.2.4.1 Frame Control field 9 10 9.2.4.1.3 Type and Subtype subfields 11 12 9.2.4.1.3 Type and Subtype subfields 13 14 Change Table 9-1 (Valid type and subtype combinations) as follows: 15 16 17 Table 9-1—Valid type and subtype combinations 18 19

Type value B3 B2	Type description	Subtype value B7 B6 B5 B4	Subtype description
01	Control	0000-00100001	Reserved
<u>01</u>	<u>Control</u>	<u>0010</u>	<u>Trigger</u>
01	Control	0101	VHT/HE NDP Announcement

31 9.2.4.1.8 More Data subfield 32 33 34 Change paragraphs 3-4 as follows: 35

36 An AP optionally sets the More Data subfield to 1 in Ack frames sent to a non-DMG and non-S1G non-HE
37 STA and in Ack, BlockAck and Multi-STA BlockAck frames sent to an HE STA. An HE AP indicates that
38 it supports setting the More Data subfield to 1 in these control response frames by setting the More Data Ack
39 subfield to 1 in the QoS Info field of elements it includes in frames transmitted to the STA.
40

41 The AP can set the More Data subfield to 1 to indicate that it has a pending transmission for the STA if it
42 from which it has received a frame that contains a QoS Capability element QoS Info field in which the More
43 Data Ack subfield is equal to 1 from the STA and that has one or more ACs that are delivery enabled and
44 that is in PS mode to indicate that the AP has a pending transmission for the STA one of the following con-
45 ditions is true:
46

- 47 == The STA is in PS mode and has one or more ACs that are delivery enabled (see 11.2.2.6 (AP opera-
48 tion during the CP)).
49 == The STA is in PS mode and is a TWT requester or a TWT scheduled STA (see 26.8 (TWT opera-
50 tion))
51

52 A TDLS peer STA optionally sets the More Data subfield to 1 in Ack frames sent to a non-HE STA and in
53 Ack, BlockAck, and Multi-STA BlockAck frames sent to an HE STA. An HE TDLS peer STA indicates
54 that it supports setting the More Data subfield to 1 in these control response frames by setting the More Data
55 Ack subfield to 1 in the QoS Info field of the QoS Capability element it includes in frames transmitted to the
56 STA.
57

58 The TDLS peer STA can set the More Data subfield to 1 to indicate that it has pending transmission for the
59 STA if it has received from the STA a TDLS Setup Request frame or TDLS Setup Response frame that has
60 TDLS peer PSM enabled and that has the More Data Ack subfield equal to 1 in the QoS Info field of the
61

1 QoS Capability element of its transmitted TDLS Setup Request frame or TDLS Setup Response frame to
 2 indicate that it has a pending transmission for the STA, and one of the following conditions is true:
 3

- 4 — The STA has TDLS peer PSM enabled (see 11.2.3.6 (AP operation))
 5 — The STA is in PS mode and is a TWT requester or a TWT scheduled STA (see 26.8 (TWT opera-
 6 tion)).
 7

8 **9.2.4.1.10 +HTC subfield**

9 *Change as follows:*

10 The +HTC subfield is 1 bit in length. The setting of the subfield is as follows:

- 11 — It is set to 1 in a QoS Data or Management frame transmitted with the FORMAT parameter of the TXVECTOR set to HT_GF, HT_MF, VHT, or S1G for to indicate that the frame contains an HT Control field.
 12
- 13 — It is set to 1 in an RTS frame transmitted with the FORMAT parameter of the TXVECTOR set to S1G to indicate that the intended recipient of the frame has permission to extend the TXOP as described in 10.55.5.4 (Relay-shared TXOP protection mechanisms).
 14
- 15 — It is set to 1 in a QoS Data or Management frame transmitted by a CMMG STA to indicate that the frame contains a CMMG variant HT Control field.
 16
- 17 — It is set to 1 in a QoS Data, QoS Null, or Management frame transmitted by an HE STA to another HE STA to indicate that the frame contains an HT Control field.
 18

19 Otherwise, the +HTC subfield is set to 0.
 20

21 NOTE—The +HTC subfield is always set to 0 for frames transmitted by a DMG STA.
 22

23 **9.2.4.3 Address fields**

24 **9.2.4.3.5 DA field**

25 *Change as follows:*

26 The DA field contains an IEEE MAC individual or group address that identifies the MAC entity or entities intended as the final recipient(s) of the MSDU (or fragment thereof) or A-MSDU (or fragment thereof), as defined in 9.3.2.1, contained in the frame body field.
 27

28 **9.2.4.3.6 SA field**

29 *Change as follows:*

30 The SA field contains an IEEE MAC individual address that identifies the MAC entity from which the transfer of the MSDU (or fragment thereof) or A-MSDU (or fragment thereof), as defined in 9.3.2.1, contained in the frame body field was initiated. The Individual/Group bit is always transmitted as a 0 in the source address.
 31

32 **9.2.4.5 QoS Control field**

33 **9.2.4.5.2 TID subfield**

34 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

35 The TID subfield identifies the TC or TS to which the corresponding MSDU (or fragment thereof) or A-MSDU (or fragment thereof) in the Frame Body field belongs. The TID subfield also identifies the TC or TS
 36

of traffic for which a TXOP is being requested, through the setting of TXOP duration requested or queue size. The encoding of the TID subfield depends on the access policy (see 9.4.2.29 (TSPEC element)) and is shown in Table 9-12 (TID subfield). Additional information on the interpretation of the contents of this field appears in 5.1.1.3 (Interpretation of priority parameter in MAC service primitives).

9.2.4.5.4 Ack Policy Indicator subfield

Change Table 9-13 (Ack policy) as follows (only relevant rows shown):

Table 9-13—Ack policy

Ack policy	Bits in QoS Control field		Other conditions	Meaning
	Bit 5	Bit 6		
No Explicit Acknowledgment	0	1	Bit 6 of the Frame Control field (see 9.2.4.1.3 (Type and Subtype subfields)) is equal to 1 <u>and the frame is not carried in an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU that contains a frame that solicits a response in an HE TB PPDU</u>	<p>There might be a response frame to the frame that is received, but it is neither the Ack frame nor any Data frame of subtype +CF-Ack.</p> <p>This ack policy is used for QoS CF-Poll and QoS CF-Ack +CF-Poll Data frames.</p> <p>NOTE—Bit 6 of the Frame Control field (see 9.2.4.1.3 (Type and Subtype subfields)) indicates the absence of a Frame Body field in a QoS Data frame. When equal to 1, the QoS Data frame contains no Frame Body field, and any response is generated in response to a QoS CF-Poll or QoS CF-Ack +CF-Poll frame, but does not signify an acknowledgment of data.</p>
PSMP Ack	0	1	Bit 6 of the Frame Control field (see 9.2.4.1.3 (Type and Subtype subfields)) is equal to 0 <u>and the frame is not carried in an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU that contains a frame that solicits a response in an HE TB PPDU</u>	<p>The acknowledgment for a frame indicating PSMP Ack when it appears in a PSMP downlink transmission time (PSMP-DTT) is to be received in a later PSMP uplink transmission time (PSMP-UTT).</p> <p>The acknowledgment for a frame indicating PSMP Ack when it appears in a PSMP-UTT is to be received in a later PSMP-DTT.</p> <p>See 10.31.2.7 (PSMP acknowledgment rules).</p>
HTP Ack	0	1	<u>The frame is carried in an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU that contains a frame that solicits a response in an HE TB PPDU</u>	<u>The addressed recipient returns an Ack, Compressed Block-Ack, or Multi-STA BlockAck frame carried in an HE TB PPDU a SIFS after the PPDU, subject to reception of a Trigger frame or TRS Control subfield in the PPDU, as defined in 10.3.2.13.2 (Acknowledgment procedure for DL MU PPDU in MU format) and 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).</u>

9.2.4.5.6 Queue Size subfield

Replace 9.2.4.5.6 with the following:

The Queue Size subfield is an 8-bit field that indicates the amount of buffered traffic for a given TC or TS at the non-AP non-HE STA sending the frame that contains this subfield and the amount of buffered traffic for a given TC or TS at the non-AP HE STA for transmission to the HE STA identified by the receiver address of the frame that contains this subfield. The Queue Size subfield is present in QoS Data frames with bit 4 of

1 the QoS Control field set to 1 sent by a non-AP STA and in QoS Null frames with bit 4 of the QoS Control
 2 field set to 1 sent by a non-AP HE STA. The AP might use information contained in the Queue Size subfield
 3 to determine the TXOP duration assigned to the STA or to determine the UL resources assigned to the non-
 4 AP HE STA (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)).
 5

6 If sent by a non-HE STA or sent to a non-HE STA, the following apply:
 7

- 8 — The queue size value is the approximate total size, rounded up to the nearest multiple of 256 octets
 9 and expressed in units of 256 octets, of all MSDUs and A-MSDUs buffered at the STA (excluding
 10 the MSDU or A-MSDU of the present QoS Data frame) in the delivery queue used for MSDUs and
 11 A-MSDUs with TID values equal to the value in the TID subfield of this QoS Control field.
 12
- 13 — A queue size value of 0 is used solely to indicate the absence of any buffered traffic in the queue used
 14 for the specified TID.
 15
- 16 — A queue size value of 254 is used for all sizes greater than 64 768 octets.
 17
- 18 — A queue size value of 255 is used to indicate an unspecified or unknown size.
 19

20 If sent by a non-AP HE STA to an HE STA, the remainder of the subclause applies.
 21

22 The queue size, QS , is the approximate total size in octets, of all MSDUs and A-MSDUs buffered at the STA
 23 (including the MSDUs or A-MSDUs in the same PSDU as the frame containing the Queue Size subfield) in
 24 the delivery queue used for MSDUs and A-MSDUs with TID values equal to the value in the TID subfield
 25 of this QoS Control field.
 26

27 NOTE 1—The queue size is based on data received by the STA at the MAC SAP (MA-UNITDATA.request).
 28

29 NOTE 2—Buffered MSDUs are those that have been received in an MA-UNITDATA.request but that have not been
 30 successfully transmitted and have not been discarded.
 31

32 The Queue Size subfield consists of a Scaling Factor subfield in B14–B15 of the QoS Control subfield and
 33 an unscaled value, UV , in B8–B13 of the QoS Control subfield. The Scaling Factor subfield provides the
 34 scaling factor, SF , with an encoding that is shown in Table 9-24e (Scaling Factor subfield encoding). A non-
 35

1 AP HE STA sets the Queue Size subfield in a QoS frame it transmits as shown in Table 9-13a (Queue Size
 2 subfield encoding by a non-AP HE STA).

5 **Table 9-13a—Queue Size subfield encoding by a non-AP HE STA**

Queue Size subfields		Queue Size, QS	Description
Scaling Factor	UV		
0	0	0	No buffered traffic in the queue used for the specified TID
0	Ceil (QS, 16) / 16	0 < QS ≤ 1008	The queue size is in units of 16 octets
1	0	1008 < QS ≤ 1024	The queue size is rounded up to 1024 octets
1	Ceil (QS – 1024, 256) / 256	1024 < QS ≤ 17 152	The queue size is in units of 256 octets
2	0	17 152 < QS ≤ 17 408	The queue size is rounded up to 17 408 octets
2	Ceil (QS – 17 408, 2048) / 2048	17 408 < QS ≤ 146 432	The queue size is in units of 2048 octets
3	0	146 432 < QS ≤ 148 480	The queue size is rounded up to 148 480 octets
3	Ceil (QS – 148 480, 32 768) / 32 768	148 480 < QS ≤ 2 147 328	The queue size is in units of 32 768 octets
3	62	QS > 2 147 328	The queue size greater than 2 147 328
3	63	Unspecified or unknown	The queue size is unspecified or unknown

44 An HE STA obtains the queue size, QS , from a received QoS Control field, which contains a scaling factor
 45 and an unscaled value, as follows:

$$QS = \begin{cases} 16 \times UV, & \text{if the Scaling Factor subfield is 0} \\ 1024 + 256 \times UV, & \text{if the Scaling Factor subfield is 1} \\ 17 408 + 2048 \times UV, & \text{if the Scaling Factor subfield is 2} \\ 148 480 + 32 768 \times UV, & \text{if the Scaling Factor subfield is 3 and UV subfield is } < 62 \\ > 2 147 328, & \text{if the Scaling Factor subfield is 3 and UV subfield is 62} \\ \text{Unspecified or Unknown,} & \text{if the Scaling Factor subfield is 3 and UV subfield is 63} \end{cases} \quad (9-0a)$$

61 The queue size value of QoS Data frames containing fragments might remain constant in all fragments even
 62 if the amount of queued traffic changes as successive fragments are transmitted (see 10.23.3.5.1 (General)).
 63 If the QoS Data frames containing fragments are carried in an A-MPDU, the queue size values of the MPDU
 64 containing the fragments are set according to the rules in 10.12.1 (A-MPDU contents).
 65

1 **9.2.4.6 HT Control field**

2

3

4 **9.2.4.6.1 General**

5

6 *Change the 1st and 2nd paragraphs as follows:*

7

8 The HT Control field is always present in a Control Wrapper frame and is present in QoS Data, QoS Null
 9 and Management frames as determined by the +HTC subfield of the Frame Control field as defined in
 10 9.2.4.1.10 (+HTC subfield).

11 NOTE—The only control frame subtype for which HT Control field is present is the Control Wrapper frame. A Control
 12 frame that is described as +HTC (e.g., an RTS+HTC, CTS+HTC, BlockAck+HTC or BlockAckReq+HTC frame)
 13 implies the use of the Control Wrapper frame to carry that Control frame.

14 The format of the HT Control field transmitted by a non-CMMG STA is shown in Figure 9-11 (Non-CMMG
 15 variant HT Control field format) defined in Table 9-13b (HT Control field format).

16

17 *Remove Figure 9-11 (Non-CMMG variant HT Control field format).*

18

19

20 *Insert Table 9-13b (HT Control field format) as follows:*

21

22

23

24 **Table 9-13b—HT Control field format**

25

26

Variant	B0	B1	B2–B29	B30	B31
HT	0		HT Control Middle	AC Constraint	RDG/More PPDU
VHT	1	0	VHT Control Middle	AC Constraint	RDG/More PPDU
HE	1	1		A-Control	

27

28 *Change the 3rd and 4th paragraphs as follows:*

29

30

31 The HT Control field transmitted by a non-CMMG STA has two forms, three variants: the HT variant, and
 32 the VHT variant, and the HE variant. The variant formats are differentiated by the values of B0 and B1 as
 33 defined in Table 9-13b (HT Control field format). The two forms differ in the format of the HT Control Mid-
 34 dle subfield, described in 9.2.4.6.2 (HT variant) for the HT variant and in 9.2.4.6.3 (VHT variant) for the
 35 VHT variant and in the value of the VHT subfield.

36

37 The HT Control Middle subfield is defined in 9.2.4.6.2 (HT variant) and the VHT Control Middle subfield is
 38 defined in 9.2.4.6.3 (VHT variant). The A-Control subfield is defined in 9.2.4.6.3a (HE variant).

39

40 The VHT subfield of the HT Control field indicates whether the HT Control Middle subfield is the VHT
 41 Variant or the HT Variant. The VHT subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the HT Control Middle subfield is
 42 the VHT Variant and is set to 0 to indicate that the HT Control Middle subfield is the HT Variant.

43

44 **9.2.4.6.3 VHT variant**

45

46 *Change the paragraph below as follows:*

47

48 In a non-S1G STA, the format of the VHT Control Middle subfield of the VHT variant HT Control field is
 49 shown in Figure 9-16 (VHT Control Middle subfield of the VHT variant HT Control field format).

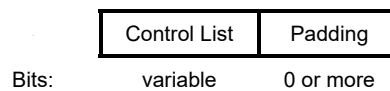
1 Change Figure 9-15 as follows (remove Reserved field and change title):
 2
 3
 4
 5

	B4	B2	B3 B5	B6 B8	B9 B23	B24 B26	B27	B28	B29
Bits:	4	1	3	3	15	3	1	1	1

11 **Figure 9-16—VHT Control Middle subfield of the VHT variant HT Control field format**
 12
 13
 14

15 Insert a new subclause following 9.2.4.6.3:
 16
 17 **9.2.4.6.3a HE variant**
 18
 19

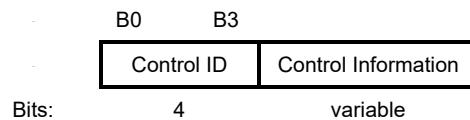
20 The format of the A-Control subfield of the HE variant HT Control field is shown in Figure 9-19a (A-Control
 21 subfield of the HE variant HT Control field format).
 22
 23
 24
 25



31 **Figure 9-19a—A-Control subfield of the HE variant HT Control field format**
 32
 33

34 The A-Control subfield is 30 bits in length.
 35
 36

37 The Control List subfield contains one or more Control subfields. The format of each Control subfield is
 38 shown in Figure 9-19b (Control subfield format).
 39
 40
 41



47 **Figure 9-19b—Control subfield format**
 48
 49
 50

51 The Control ID subfield indicates the type of information carried in the Control Information subfield. The
 52 length of the Control Information subfield is fixed for each value of the Control ID subfield that is not
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

1 reserved. The values of the Control ID subfield and the associated length of the Control Information subfield
 2 are defined in Table 9-22a (Control ID subfield values).

5 **Table 9-22a—Control ID subfield values**

Control ID value	Meaning	Length of the Control Information subfield (bits)	Content of the Control Information subfield
0	Triggered response scheduling (TRS)	26	See 9.2.4.6a.1 (TRS Control)
1	Operating mode (OM)	12	See 9.2.4.6a.2 (OM Control)
2	HE link adaptation (HLA)	26	See 9.2.4.6a.3 (HLA Control)
3	Buffer status report (BSR)	26	See 9.2.4.6a.4 (BSR Control)
4	UL power headroom (UPH)	8	See 9.2.4.6a.5 (UPH Control)
5	Bandwidth query report (BQR)	10	See 9.2.4.6a.6 (BQR Control)
6	Command and status (CAS)	8	See 9.2.4.6a.7 (CAS Control))
7-14	Reserved		
15	Ones need expansion surely (ONES)	26	See 10.8 (HT Control field operation)

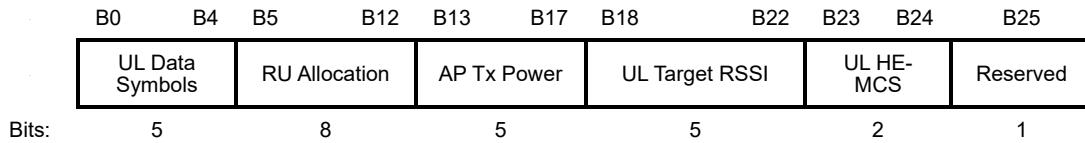
32 The Padding subfield, if present, follows the last Control subfield and is set to a sequence of zeros so that the
 33 length of the A-Control subfield carried in the HT Control field is 30 bits.

36 *Insert a new subclause following 9.2.4.6 as follows:*

39 **9.2.4.6a Control subfield variants of an A-Control subfield**

41 **9.2.4.6a.1 TRS Control**

43 The Control Information subfield in a TRS Control subfield contains triggered response scheduling (TRS)
 44 information for soliciting an HE TB PPDU that follows an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU
 45 PPDU carrying the Control subfield (see 26.5.2.2 (Rules for soliciting UL MU frames)). See 26.5.2.4 (A-
 46 MPDU contents in an HE TB PPDU) for details on allowed content in an A-MPDU carried in an HE TB
 47 PPDU. The format of the subfield is shown in Figure 9-22a (Control Information subfield format in a TRS
 48 Control subfield).

60 **Figure 9-22a—Control Information subfield format in a TRS Control subfield**

1 The UL Data Symbols subfield indicates the number of OFDM symbols in the Data field of the HE TB
 2 PPDU response and is set to the number of OFDM symbols minus 1.
 3

4 The RU Allocation subfield indicates the resource unit (RU) assigned for transmitting the HE TB PPDU
 5 response and the encoding is defined in Table 9-31h (B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield).
 6

7 The AP Tx Power subfield indicates in units of dBm, the AP's combined transmit power at the antenna
 8 connectors of all the transmit antennas used to transmit the triggering PPDU that solicits the HE TB PPDU, and
 9 normalized to 20 MHz bandwidth. The transmit power, P_{TX} , is calculated as $P_{TX} = -20 + 2 \times F_{Val}$, where
 10 F_{Val} is the value of the AP Tx Power subfield, except for the value 31, which is reserved.
 11

12 The UL Target RSSI subfield indicates, in units of dBm, the expected receive power at the AP (i.e., aver-
 13 aged RSSI over all the AP's antennas) for the HE portion of the HE TB PPDU transmitted on the assigned
 14 RU. The target receive power is calculated as $Target_{RSSI} = -90 + 2 \times F_{Val}$, where F_{Val} is the value of the UL
 15 Target RSSI subfield, except that the value 31 indicates to the STA to transmit at maximum power for the
 16 assigned HE-MCS.
 17

18 NOTE—It is possible that a STA is unable to satisfy the target RSSI due to its hardware or regulatory limitation (see
 19 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction)).
 20

21 The UL HE-MCS subfield indicates the HE-MCS, in the range HE-MCS 0 to 3, to be used by the receiving
 22 STA for the HE TB PPDU is set to the HE-MCS index (see 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)).
 23

24 9.2.4.6a.2 OM Control

25 The Control Information subfield in an OM Control subfield contains information related to the operating
 26 mode (OM) change of the STA transmitting the frame containing this information (see 26.9 (Operating
 27 mode indication)). The format of the subfield is shown in Figure 9-22b (Control Information subfield format
 28 in an OM Control subfield).
 29

	B0	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B8	B9	B10	B11
	Rx NSS	Channel Width	UL MU Disable	Tx NSTS	ER SU Disable	DL MU-MIMO Resound Recommendation		UL MU Data Disable		
Bits:	3	2	1	3	1	1		1	1	

46 **Figure 9-22b—Control Information subfield format in an OM Control subfield**
 47

48 If the operating channel width of the STA is greater than 80 MHz, then the Rx NSS subfield indicates the
 49 maximum number of spatial streams, N_{SS} , that the STA supports in reception for PPDU bandwidths less
 50 than or equal to 80 MHz and is set to $N_{SS} - 1$. If the operating channel width of the STA is less than or equal
 51 to 80 MHz, then the Rx NSS subfield indicates the maximum number of spatial streams, NSS, that the STA
 52 supports in reception and is set to $N_{SS} - 1$.
 53

54 If the operating channel width of the STA is greater than 80 MHz, then the maximum number of spatial
 55 streams that the STA supports in reception for PPDU bandwidths greater than 80 MHz is defined in 26.9
 56 (Operating mode indication).
 57

58 The Channel Width subfield indicates the operating channel width supported by the STA for both reception
 59 and transmission. It is set to 0 for 20 MHz, 1 for primary 40 MHz, 2 for primary 80 MHz, and 3 for
 60 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz. The value 0 indicates a primary 20 MHz, unless the STA is an HE SST STA in
 61

1 which case it indicates any of the negotiated 20 MHz subchannels of the SST operation (see 26.8.7 (HE sub-
 2 channel selective transmission)).
 3
 4

5 The allowed UL MU operations and frame types that can be transmitted as a response to a Trigger frame or
 6 a frame carrying a TRS Control subfield are determined by the UL MU Disable subfield, UL MU Data Dis-
 7 able subfield and the recipient's setting of the OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support subfield in the
 8 HE Capabilities element, as indicated in Table 9-24a (UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable subfields
 9 encoding).
 10
 11

12 If the OM Control field is transmitted by an HE AP, then the UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable sub-
 13 fields are reserved.
 14
 15

16 **Table 9-24a—UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable subfields encoding**

UL MU Disable subfield	UL MU Data Disable subfield	Interpretation by an AP that transmits a value of 0 in the OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support	Interpretation by an AP that transmits a value of 1 in the OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support
0	0	All trigger based UL MU transmis- sions are enabled by the STA as defined in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).	All trigger based UL MU transmis- sions are enabled by the STA as defined in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).
0	1	All trigger based UL MU transmis- sions are enabled by the STA as defined in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).	Trigger based UL MU Data frame transmissions in response to a Basic Trigger frame are suspended by the STA as defined in 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication). Other trigger based UL MU transmis- sions remain enabled by the STA as defined in 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication).
1	0	All trigger based UL MU transmis- sions are suspended by the STA. The STA will not respond to a received Trigger frame or MPDU con- taining a TRS Control subfield.	All trigger based UL MU transmis- sions are suspended by the STA. The STA will not respond to a received Trigger frame or MPDU con- taining a TRS Control subfield.
1	1	Reserved	Reserved

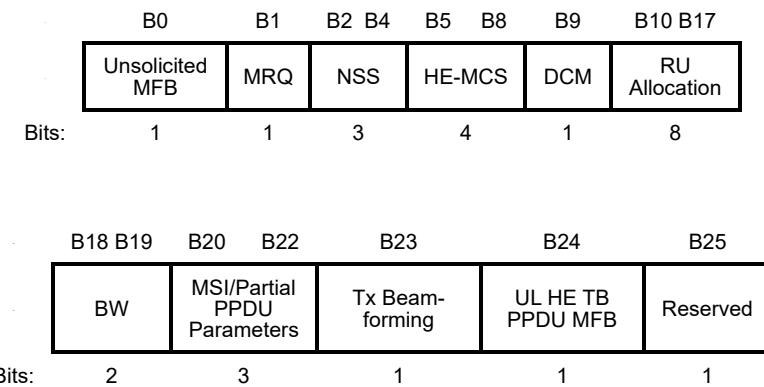
49
 50 The Tx NSTS subfield indicates the maximum number of space-time streams, N_{STS} , that the STA supports
 51 in transmission and is set to $N_{STS} - 1$.
 52
 53

54 A non-AP HE STA sets the ER SU Disable subfield to 1 to indicate that 242-tone HE ER SU PPDU recep-
 55 tion is disabled and to 0 to indicate that 242-tone HE ER SU PPDU reception is enabled. If the OM Control
 56 field is transmitted by an HE AP, then the ER SU Disable subfield is reserved.
 57
 58

59 A non-AP HE STA sets the DL MU-MIMO Resound Recommendation subfield to 1 to indicate that the
 60 STA suggests that the AP either resound the channel or increase the channel sounding frequency with the
 61 STA. The subfield is set to 0 to indicate that the non-AP HE STA has no recommendation on the AP channel
 62 sounding frequency. If the OM Control field is transmitted by an HE AP, then the DL MU-MIMO Resound
 63 Recommendation subfield is reserved.
 64
 65

1 9.2.4.6a.3 HLA Control

2
3 The Control Information subfield in an HLA Control subfield contains information related to the HE link
4 adaptation (HLA) procedure (see 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield)). The format of
5 the subfield is shown in Figure 9-22c (Control Information subfield format in an HLA Control subfield).



25 **Figure 9-22c—Control Information subfield format in an HLA Control subfield**

26
27
28 The HLA Control subfields are defined in Table 9-24b (HLA Control subfields).

32 **Table 9-24b—HLA Control subfields**

Subfield	Meaning	Definition
Unsolicited MFB	Unsolicited MFB indicator	Set to 1 if the HLA Control is an unsolicited MFB. Set to 0 if the HLA Control is an MRQ or a solicited MFB.
MRQ	HLA feedback request indicator	Set to 1 and set Unsolicited MFB subfield to 0 to request an HLA feedback. Set to 0 and set Unsolicited MFB subfield to 0 to respond an HLA request. If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1, the MRQ subfield is reserved.
NSS	Recommended number of spatial stream	If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 0 or if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 0, the NSS subfield indicates the recommended number of spatial streams to the PPDU sent to the STA, N_{SS} , and is set to $N_{SS} - 1$. If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 1, the NSS subfield indicates the recommended number of spatial streams to the HE TB PPDU sent from the STA, N_{SS} , and is set to $N_{SS} - 1$. Otherwise, this subfield is reserved.

Table 9-24b—HLA Control subfields (continued)

Subfield	Meaning	Definition
HE-MCS	Recommended HE-MCS	<p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 0 or if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 0, the HE-MCS subfield indicates the recommended HE-MCS of the PPDU sent to the STA, and is set to the HE-MCS index (see 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)).</p> <p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 1, the HE-MCS subfield indicates the recommended HE-MCS of the HE TB PPDU sent from the STA, and is set to the HE-MCS index (see 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)).</p> <p>Otherwise, this subfield is reserved.</p>
DCM	Recommended usage of dual carrier modulation (DCM)	<p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 0 or if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 0, the DCM subfield indicates the recommended usage of DCM. This subfield is set to 1 if DCM is recommended to the PPDU sent to the STA and is set to 0 otherwise.</p> <p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 1, the DCM subfield indicates the recommended usage of DCM. This subfield is set to 1 if DCM is recommended to the HE TB PPDU sent from the STA and is set to 0 otherwise.</p> <p>Otherwise, this subfield is reserved.</p>
RU Allocation	RU of the recommended HE-MCS/RU specified by MFB requester to get feedback	<p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 0, the RU Allocation subfield indicates the RU for which the recommended HE-MCS applies to the PPDU sent to the STA, as defined in 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield).</p> <p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 1, the RU subfield indicates the RU requested by the MFB requester to get feedback.</p> <p>The RU Allocation subfield is interpreted with the BW subfield to specify the RU.</p> <p>The RU index encoding is as defined in Table 9-31h (B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield).</p> <p>If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 1, the RU Allocation subfield indicates the RU for which the recommended HE-MCS applies to the HE TB PPDU sent from the STA, as defined in 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield) and that the actual allocation of the RU can be ignored by the recipient.</p> <p>Otherwise, this subfield is reserved.</p>

Table 9-24b—HLA Control subfields (continued)

Subfield	Meaning	Definition
BW	Bandwidth of the recommended HE-MCS/Bandwidth specified by MFB requester to get feedback	If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 0, the BW subfield indicates the bandwidth for which the recommended HE-MCS applies to the PPDU sent to the STA, as defined in 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield). If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 1, the BW subfield indicates the bandwidth for which the recommended HE-MCS applies to the HE TB PPDU sent from the STA, as defined in 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield). If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 1, the BW subfield indicates the bandwidth requested by the MFB requester to get feedback. Set to 0 for 20 MHz Set to 1 for 40 MHz Set to 2 for 80 MHz
MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters	Partial parameters of the measured PPDU/ MRQ sequence identifier	If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 1, the MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield contains a sequence number in the range 0 to 6 that identifies the specific HE-MCS feedback request. If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 0 and the MRQ subfield is 0, the MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield contains a sequence number in the range 0 to 6 that responds to the specific solicited HE-MCS feedback request. If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1, the MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield contains the PPDU Format and Coding Type subfields as shown in Figure 9-22d (MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield format if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1).
Tx Beamforming	Transmission type of the measured PPDU	If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1 and the UL HE TB PPDU MFB subfield is 0, then the Tx Beamforming subfield indicates whether or not the PPDU from which the unsolicited MFB was estimated is beamformed. Set to 0 for non-beamformed PPDU Set to 1 for beamformed PPDU Otherwise, this subfield is reserved.
UL HE TB PPDU MFB	UL HE TB PPDU MFB indication	If the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1, a value of 1 in this subfield indicates that the NSS, HE-MCS, DCM, BW and RU Allocation fields represent the recommended MFB for the HE TB PPDU sent from the STA as defined in 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield). Otherwise, this subfield is reserved.

1 The format of the MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield is defined in Figure 9-22d (MSI/Partial PPDU
 2 Parameters subfield format if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1).

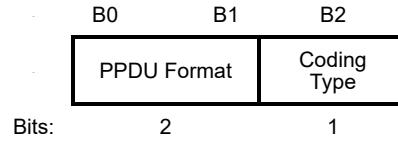


Figure 9-22d—MSI/Partial PPDU Parameters subfield format if the Unsolicited MFB subfield is 1

The PPDU Format subfield indicates the format of the PPDU from which the unsolicited MFB was estimated:

- Set to 0 for an HE SU PPDU
- Set to 1 for an HE MU PPDU
- Set to 2 for an HE ER SU PPDU
- Set to 3 for an HE TB PPDU

The Coding Type subfield contains the coding information of the PPDU from which the unsolicited MFB was estimated:

- Set to 0 for BCC
- Set to 1 for LDPC

9.2.4.6a.4 BSR Control

The Control Information subfield in a BSR Control subfield contains buffer status information used for UL MU operation (see 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence)). The format of the subfield is shown in Figure 9-22e (Control Information subfield format in a BSR Control subfield).

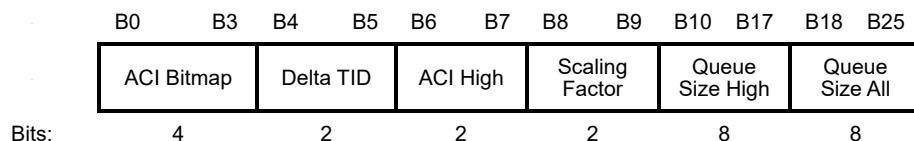


Figure 9-22e—Control Information subfield format in a BSR Control subfield

The ACI Bitmap subfield indicates the access categories for which the buffer status is reported and its encoding is shown in Table 9-24c (ACI Bitmap subfield encoding). Each bit of the ACI Bitmap subfield is set to 1 to indicate the buffer status of the corresponding AC, and set to 0 otherwise. If the ACI Bitmap sub-

1 field is 0 and the Delta TID subfield is 3 it indicates that there is buffered traffic for all 8 TIDs (see Table 9-
 2 24d (Delta TID subfield encoding)).
 3
 4
 5

6 **Table 9-24c—ACI Bitmap subfield encoding**

B0	B1	B2	B3
AC_BE	AC_BK	AC_VI	AC_VO

14 The Delta TID subfield, together with the values of the ACI Bitmap subfield, indicate the number of TIDs
 15 for which the STA is reporting the buffer status. The encoding of the Delta TID subfield is defined in
 16 Table 9-24d (Delta TID subfield encoding).
 17
 18
 19

20 **Table 9-24d—Delta TID subfield encoding**

Number of bits in the ACI Bitmap subfield that are set to 1	Mapping of Delta TID subfield value and number of TIDs, N_{TID}
0	Values 0 to 2 are not applicable; Value 3 indicates 8 TIDs (i.e., all ACs have traffic)
1	Value 0 indicates 1 TID; Value 1 indicates 2 TIDs; Values 2 to 3 are not applicable;
2	Value 0 indicates 2 TID; Value 1 indicates 3 TIDs; Value 2 indicates 4 TIDs; Value 3 is not applicable;
3	Value 0 indicates 3 TID; Value 1 indicates 4 TIDs; Value 2 indicates 5 TIDs; Value 3 indicates 6 TIDs;
4	Value 0 indicates 4 TID; Value 1 indicates 5 TIDs; Value 2 indicates 6 TIDs; Value 3 indicates 7 TIDs;
NOTE 1—The number of TIDs can be obtained as $N_{TID} = N_{ones} + D_{Val}$, where N_{ones} is the number of bits set to one in the AC Bitmap subfield, and D_{Val} is the value of the Delta TID subfield except if N_{ones} is equal to 0 for which there is the $N_{TID} = 8$ case.	
NOTE 2—The Delta TID might be used by an AP to determine the setting of the TID Aggregation Limit field in the User Info field addressed to the STA in a subsequent Basic Trigger frame.	

49 The ACI High subfield indicates the ACI of the AC for which the BSR is indicated in the Queue Size High
 50 subfield. The ACI to AC mapping is shown in Table 9-154 (ACI Bitmap subfield encoding).
 51
 52

53 NOTE—It is up to the non-AP STA that reports the buffer status to determine the queue that deserves higher priority
 54 with respect to the other queues. The determination might be based on the time the traffic has been outstanding, QoS
 55 delay requirements, amount of buffered traffic, etc., and is out of scope for this standard.
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

1 The Scaling Factor subfield indicates the unit *SF*, in octets, of the Queue Size High and Queue Size All sub-
 2 fields. The encoding of the Scaling Factor subfield is shown in Table 9-24e (Scaling Factor subfield encod-
 3 ing).
 4

5
 6 **Table 9-24e—Scaling Factor subfield encoding**
 7
 8

Scaling Factor subfield	Scaling factor, <i>SF</i> , in octets
0	16
1	256
2	2 048
3	32 768

19
 20
 21 The Queue Size High subfield indicates the amount of buffered traffic, in units of *SF* octets, for the AC iden-
 22 tified by the ACI High subfield that is intended for the STA identified by the receive address of the frame
 23 containing the BSR Control subfield.
 24

25
 26 The Queue Size All subfield indicates the amount of buffered traffic, in units of *SF* octets, for all the ACs
 27 identified by the ACI Bitmap subfield that is intended for the STA identified by the receive address of the
 28 frame containing the BSR Control subfield.
 29

30
 31 The queue size values in the Queue Size High and Queue Size All subfields are the total sizes, rounded up to
 32 the nearest multiple of *SF* octets, of all MSDUs and A-MSDUs buffered at the STA (including the MSDUs
 33 or A-MSDUs in the same PSDU as the frame containing the BSR Control subfield) in the delivery queues
 34 used for MSDUs and A-MSDUs with AC(s) that are specified in the ACI High and ACI Bitmap subfields,
 35 respectively.
 36

37
 38 NOTE 1—The queue size is based on data received by the STA at the MAC SAP (MA-UNITDATA.request). Any data
 39 in layers above the MAC is not taken into account.
 40

41
 42 NOTE 2—Buffered MSDUs are those that have been received in an MA-UNITDATA.request but that have not been
 43 successfully transmitted and have not been discarded.
 44

45 A queue size value of 254 in the Queue Size High and Queue Size All subfields indicates that the amount of
 46 buffered traffic is greater than $254 \times SF$ octets. A queue size value of 255 in the Queue Size High and Queue
 47 Size All subfields indicates that the amount of buffered traffic is an unspecified or unknown size.
 48

49
 50 The queue size value of the QoS Data frames containing the fragments might remain constant in all frag-
 51 ments even if the amount of queued traffic changes as successive fragments are transmitted (see 10.23.3.5.1
 52 (General)). If the QoS Data frames containing fragments are carried in the A-MPDU, the queue size values
 53 of the MPDUs containing the fragments are set according to the rules in 10.18 (HT Control field operation).
 54

55 **9.2.4.6a.5 UPH Control**

56
 57
 58 The Control Information subfield in an UPH Control subfield contains the UL power headroom (UPH) used
 59 for power pre-correction (see 26.5.2.4 (A-MPDU contents in an HE TB PPDU)). The format of the subfield
 60 is shown in Figure 9-22f (Control Information subfield format in a UPH Control subfield).
 61

62
 63 The UL Power Headroom subfield indicates the available UL power headroom in units of dB, for the current
 64 HE-MCS. The UL Power Headroom subfield carries a value 0 to 31 that maps to 0 dB to 31 dB.
 65

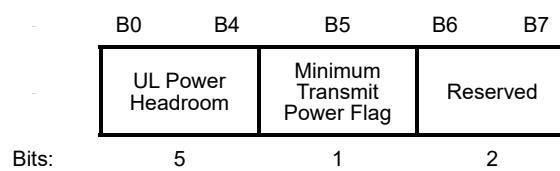


Figure 9-22f—Control Information subfield format in a UPH Control subfield

The Minimum Transmit Power Flag subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the minimum transmit power for the current HE-MCS is reached by the STA and set to 0 otherwise.

9.2.4.6a.6 BQR Control

The Control Information subfield in a BQR Control subfield contains the bandwidth query report (BQR) used for bandwidth query report operation to assist HE MU transmission (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)). The format of the subfield is shown in Figure 9-22g (Control Information subfield format in a BQR Control subfield).

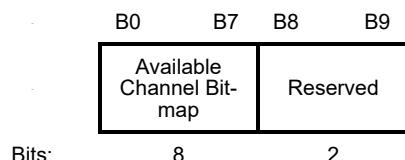


Figure 9-22q—Control Information subfield format in a BQR Control subfield

The Available Channel Bitmap subfield contains a bitmap indicating the subchannels available at the STA transmitting the BQR. Each bit in the bitmap corresponds to a 20 MHz subchannel within the operating channel width of the BSS with which the STA is associated, with the LSB corresponding to the lowest numbered operating subchannel of the BSS. The bit in position X in the bitmap is set to 1 to indicate that the subchannel $X + 1$ is idle; otherwise it is set to 0 to indicate that the subchannel is busy or unavailable. Availability of each 20 MHz subchannel is based on the ED-based CCA defined in 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity) and is reported for the 20 MHz subchannels located in the operating channel of the reporting STA when the WM is idle as defined in 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism) and in 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism).

9.2.4.6a.7 CAS Control

The Control Information subfield in a CAS Control subfield contains the command and status (CAS) control. The format of the subfield frame is shown in Figure 9-22h (Control Information subfield format in a CAS Control subfield).

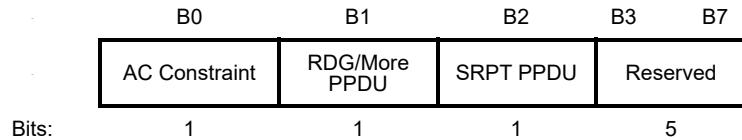


Figure 9-22h—Control Information subfield format in a CAS Control subfield

1 The AC Constraint subfield is defined in Table 9-10 (AC Constraint subfield values), except that a value of
 2 1 indicates to an HE STA that the response can contain RD Data frames from the same AC or higher priority
 3 ACs as defined in 10.29.4 (Rules for RD responder).

4
 5 The RDG/More PPDU subfield is defined in Table 9-11 (RDG/More PPDU subfield values).
 6
 7

8 The SRPT PPDU subfield indicates whether or not the PPDU carrying the frame with the CAS Control sub-
 9 field is an SRPT PPDU. The SRPT PPDU subfield is set to 1 if the PPDU is an SRPT PPDU; otherwise it is
 10 set to 0.
 11
 12

13 **9.2.4.7 Frame Body field**

14 **9.2.4.7.1 General**

15
 16 *Change as Table 9-25 (Maximum data unit sizes (in octets) and durations (in microseconds)) follows:*
 17
 18

19 **Table 9-25—Maximum data unit sizes (in octets) and durations (in microseconds)**

	Non-HT non-VHT non-S1G non-DMG PPDU and non-HT duplicate PPDU	HT PPDU	VHT PPDU	<u>HE PPDU</u>	S1G PPDU	DMG PPDU
MMPDU size	2304	2304	See NOTE 1	<u>See NOTE 1</u>	See NOTE 1	2304
MSDU size	2304	2304	2304	<u>2304</u>	2304	7920
A-MSDU size	3839 or 4065 (see NOTE 2) (HT STA, see also Table 9-185 (Subfields of the HT Capability Information field)), or N/A (non-HT STA, see also 10.11 (A-MSDU operation))	3839 or 7935 (see also Table 9-185 (Subfields of the HT Capability Information field))	See NOTE 3	<u>2.4 GHz band: 3839 or 7935 (see also Table 9-185 (Subfields of the HT Capability Information field))</u> <u>Otherwise: see NOTE 3</u>	See NOTE 3	7935

1 **Table 9-25—Maximum data unit sizes (in octets) and durations (in microseconds) (continued)**

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	Non-HT non-VHT non-S1G non-DMG PPDU and non-HT duplicate PPDU	HT PPDU	VHT PPDU	<u>HE PPDU</u>	S1G PPDU	DMG PPDU	
12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26	MPDU size	See NOTE 4	See NOTE 5	3895 or 7991 or 11 454 (see also Table 9-273 (Subfields of the VHT Capabilities Information field)) <u>2.4 GHz band:</u> <u>see NOTE 5</u> <u>Otherwise:</u> <u>3895 or 7991 or 11 454 (see also Table 9-273 (Subfields of the VHT Capabilities Information field)).</u> <u>See NOTE 7.</u>	3895 or 7991 (see also Table 9-302 (Sub-fields of the S1G Capabilities Information field))	3895 or 7991 (see also Table 9-302 (Sub-fields of the S1G Capabilities Information field))	See NOTE 5
27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65	PSDU size	$2^{12}-1$ (see Table 15-5 (DSSS PHY characteristics), Table 16-4 (HR/DSSS PHY characteristics), Table 17-21 (OFDM PHY characteristics), Table 18-5 (ERP characteristics))	$2^{16}-1$ (see Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics))	4 692 480 ($\sim 2^{22.16}$) (see Table 21-29 (VHT PHY characteristics))	<u>6,500,631</u> ($\sim 2^{22.63}$) (see Table 27-55 (HE PHY characteristics))	797 160 ($\sim 2^{19.60}$) (see Table 23-37 (S1G PHY characteristics))	$2^{18}-1$ (see Table 20-32 (DMG PHY characteristics))

Table 9-25—Maximum data unit sizes (in octets) and durations (in microseconds) (continued)

	Non-HT non-VHT non-S1G non-DMG PPDU and non-HT duplicate PPDU	HT PPDU	VHT PPDU	<u>HE PPDU</u>	S1G PPDU	DMG PPDU
PPDU duration	See NOTE 6	5484 (HT_MF; see 10.28.4 (L_LENGTH and L_DATARATE parameter values for HT-mixed format PPDUs)) or 10 000 (HT_GF; see Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics))	5484 (see Table 21-29 (VHT PHY characteristics))	<u>5484 (see Table 27-55 (HE PHY characteristics))</u>	27 840 (see Table 23-37 (S1G PHY characteristics))	2000 (see Table 20-32 (DMG PHY characteristics))

NOTE 1—No direct constraint on the maximum MMPDU size; indirectly constrained by the maximum MPDU size (see 9.3.3.2 (Beacon frame format)).

NOTE 2—Indirect constraint from the maximum PSDU size: $2^{12}-1$ octets minus the minimum QoS Data frame overhead (26 octets for the MAC header and 4 octets for the FCS).

NOTE 3—No direct constraint on the maximum A-MSDU size; indirectly constrained by the maximum MPDU size.

NOTE 4—No direct constraint on the maximum MPDU size; indirectly constrained by the maximum MSDU/MMPDU or (for HT STAs only) A-MSDU size.

NOTE 5—No direct constraint on the maximum MPDU size; indirectly constrained by the maximum A-MSDU size.

NOTE 6—No direct constraint on the maximum duration, but an L_LENGTH value above 2332 might not be supported by some receivers (see last NOTE in 10.27.4 (L_LENGTH and L_DATARATE parameter values for HT-mixed format PPDUs)).

NOTE 7—The maximum MPDU size might be greater than the size declared as supported by the recipient if the MPDU is an HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame.

9.2.5 Duration/ID field (QoS STA)

9.2.5.2 Setting for single and multiple protection under enhanced distributed channel access (EDCA)

Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:

The STA selects between single and multiple protection when it transmits the first frame of a TXOP. All subsequent frames transmitted by the STA in the same TXOP use the same class of duration settings. A STA always uses multiple protection in a TXOP that includes:

- Frames that have the RDG/More PPDU subfield equal to 1
 - PSMP frames
 - VHT/HE NDP Announcement frames or Beamforming Report Poll frames or BFRP Trigger frames
 - S1G Beacon frames
 - Frames transmitted by an S1G STA with the TXVECTOR parameter RESPONSE INDICATION equal to Long Response

1 ***Change item a) of the 3rd paragraph as follows:***

2 The Duration/ID field is determined as follows:

- 3 a) Single protection settings.
- 4 1) In an RTS frame that is not part of a dual clear-to-send (CTS) exchange and is not part of a
5 BDT exchange, the Duration/ID field is set to the estimated time, in microseconds, required to
6 transmit the pending frame, plus one CTS frame, plus one Ack or BlockAck frame if required,
7 plus any NDPs required, plus explicit feedback if required, plus applicable IFSs.
- 8 1a) In an MU-RTS Trigger frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the estimated time, in microsec-
9 onds, required to transmit the pending frame(s), plus one CTS frame, plus the time to transmit
10 the solicited HE TB PPDU if required, plus the time to transmit the acknowledgment for the
11 solicited HE TB PPDU if required, plus applicable IFSs.

12 NOTE—The pending frame(s) include a triggering frame if required.

- 13 ...
- 14 3) In a BlockAckReq frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the estimated time required to transmit
15 one Ack or BlockAck frame, as applicable, plus one SIFS.
- 16 3a) In an MU-BAR Trigger frame, BSRP Trigger frame, GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame, BQRP
17 Trigger frame, and NFRP Trigger frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the time required to
18 transmit the solicited HE TB PPDU plus one SIFS.
- 19 ...
- 20 6) In individually addressed QoS Data frames with an ack policy of No Ack or Block Ack, for
21 Action No Ack frames, and for group addressed frames, the Duration/ID field is set to one of
22 the following:
- 23 i) If the frame is the final frame of the TXOP, 0
- 24 ii) Otherwise, the estimated time required for the transmission of the following frame and its
25 response frame, if required (including appropriate IFSs)
- 26 7) In a Basic Trigger frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the estimated time required to transmit
27 the solicited HE TB PPDU, plus the estimated time required to transmit the acknowledgment
28 for the solicited HE TB PPDU, plus applicable SIFSs.

29 ***Change item b) of the 3rd paragraph as follows:***

- 30 b) Multiple protection settings. The Duration/ID field is set to a value D as follows:

- 31 4) Else $T_{END-NAV} - T_{PPDU} \leq D \leq T_{TXOP-REMAINING} - T_{PPDU}$
32 where

33 $T_{SINGLE-MSDU}$ is the estimated time required for the transmission of the allowed frame
34 exchange sequence defined in 10.23.2.9 (TXOP limits) (for a TXOP limit
35 of 0), including applicable IFS durations

36 $T_{PENDING}$ is the estimated time required for the transmission of

- 37 —Pending MPDUs of the same AC
- 38 —Any associated immediate response frames
- 39 —Any HT NDP, VHT NDP, HE sounding NDP or Beamforming Report
40 Poll frame transmissions and explicit feedback response frames
- 41 —Applicable IFSs
- 42 —Any RDG
- 43 —Any BDT
- 44 —Any pending QoS Null frame exchanges by paged STAs
- 45 —Any pending PS-Poll or NDP PS-Poll frame exchanges by paged STAs

T_{TXOP} is the duration given by `dot11EDCATableTXOPLimit` (`dot11QAPEDCATableTXO-PLimit` for the AP) for that AC

$T_{TXOP-REMAINING}$ is T_{TXOP} less the time already used time within the TXOP

$T_{END-NAV}$ is the remaining duration of any NAV set by the TXOP holder, or 0 if no NAV has been established

T_{PPDU} is the time required for transmission of the current PPDU

NOTE 1—The rules allowing or disallowing the transmission of MPDUs with different ACs are described in 10.22.2.6 (Sharing an EDCA TXOP), 10.22.2.7 (Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP), and 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU).

NOTE 2—The estimated time to transmit an acknowledgment in response to the frames carried in a solicited HE TB PPDU might be inexact. The TXOP holder might use the maximum time required to transmit the acknowledgment as the estimated time.

9.2.5.7 Setting for control response frames

Change paragraphs 1-4 as follows:

This subclause describes how to set the Duration/ID field for CTS, Ack, and BlockAck frames transmitted by a QoS STA.

In a CTS frame that is not part of a dual CTS sequence transmitted in response to an RTS frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the value obtained from the Duration/ID field of the RTS frame that elicited the response minus the time, in microseconds, between the end of the PPDU carrying the RTS frame and the end of the PPDU carrying the CTS frame.

In a CTS frame that is transmitted in response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the value obtained from the Duration/ID field of the MU-RTS Trigger frame that elicited the CTS frame minus the time, in microseconds, between the end of the PPDU carrying the MU-RTS Trigger frame and the end of the PPDU carrying the CTS frame.

In an Ack frame, the Duration/ID field is set to the value obtained from the Duration/ID field of the frame that elicited the response minus the time, in microseconds between the end of the PPDU carrying the frame that elicited the response and the end of the PPDU carrying the Ack frame.

In a BlockAck frame transmitted in response to a BlockAckReq frame, MU-BAR Trigger frame, or transmitted in response to a frame containing an implicit block ack request, or frame carried in HE TB PPDU under single protection settings, the Duration/ID field is set to the value obtained from the Duration/ID field of the frame that elicited the response minus the time, in microseconds between the end of the PPDU carrying the frame that elicited the response and the end of the PPDU carrying the BlockAck frame.

Under multiple protection settings, the Duration/ID field in a BlockAck frame transmitted in response to a frame carried in HE TB PPDU is set according to the multiple protection settings defined in 9.2.5.2 (Setting for single and multiple protection under enhanced distributed channel access (EDCA)).

9.2.5.8 Setting for other response frames

Change as follows:

In any frame transmitted by a STA that is not the TXOP holder and is not specified by 9.2.5.1 (General) to 9.2.5.7 (Setting for control response frames), the Duration/ID field is set to the value obtained from the Duration/ID field of the frame that elicited the response minus the time, in microseconds, between the end of the PPDU carrying the frame that elicited the response and the end of the PPDU carrying the frame. **If the**

1 frame is contained in an HE TB PPDU, the time is equal to SIFS plus the duration of the HE TB PPDU,
 2 where the duration of the HE TB PPDU is defined in Equation (27-134).

5 9.3 Format of individual frame types

8 9.3.1 Control frames

10 9.3.1.2 RTS frame format

13 *Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:*

15 The TA field is the address of the STA transmitting the RTS frame or the bandwidth signaling TA of the
 16 STA transmitting the RTS frame. In an RTS frame transmitted by a VHT STA or an HE STA in a non-HT or
 17 non-HT duplicate format to another VHT STA or HE STA, the scrambling sequence carries the TXVECTOR
 18 parameters CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT and DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT (see 10.3.2.8
 19 (VHT and S1G RTS procedure)) and the TA field is a bandwidth signaling TA.
 20

22 9.3.1.3 CTS frame format

25 *Change the 2nd paragraph of this subclause as follows:*

28 When If the CTS frame is a response to an RTS frame, the value of the RA field of the CTS frame is set to
 29 the address from the TA field of the RTS frame with the Individual/Group bit set to 0. When If the CTS
 30 frame is the first frame in a frame exchange, the RA field is set to the MAC address of the transmitter. If the
 31 CTS frame is a response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame, the value of the RA field of the CTS frame is set to
 32 the address from the TA field of the MU-RTS Trigger frame.
 33

35 9.3.1.5 PS-Poll frame format

38 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

40 The BSSID (RA) is set to the address of the STA contained in the AP. The TA field value is the address of
 41 the STA transmitting the frame or a bandwidth signaling TA. In a PS-Poll frame transmitted by a VHT STA
 42 or an HE STA in a non-HT or non-HT duplicate format and where the scrambling sequence carries the
 43 TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT, the TA field value is a bandwidth signaling
 44 TA.
 45

47 9.3.1.6 CF-End frame format

50 *Change the last paragraph as follows:*

52 When If transmitted by a non-DMG STA, the BSSID (TA) field is the address of the STA contained in the
 53 AP except that the Individual/Group bit of the BSSID (TA) field is set to 1 in a CF-End frame transmitted by
 54 a VHT STA to a VHT AP or an HE STA to an HE AP in a non-HT or non-HT duplicate format to indicate
 55 that the scrambling sequence carries the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT. When
 56 If transmitted by a DMG STA, the TA field is the MAC address of the STA transmitting the frame.
 57

59 9.3.1.7 BlockAckReq frame format

62 9.3.1.7.1 Overview

65 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*

The TA field value is the address of the STA transmitting the BlockAckReq frame or a bandwidth signaling TA. In a BlockAckReq frame transmitted by a VHT STA or an HE STA in a non-HT or non-HT duplicate format and where the scrambling sequence carries the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT, the TA field value is a bandwidth signaling TA.

Change Figure 9-36 (BAR Control field format) as follows:

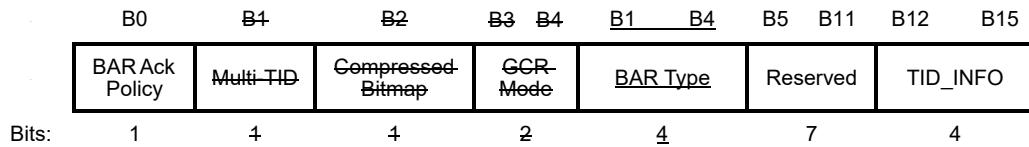


Figure 9-36—BAR Control field format

Replace the 7th paragraph (table reference) and Table 9-28 (BlockAckReq frame variant encoding) with the following:

The BAR Type subfield indicates the BlockAckReq frame variant as defined in Table 9-28 (BlockAckReq frame variant encoding).

Table 9-28—BlockAckReq frame variant encoding

BAR Type	BlockAckReq frame variant
0	Basic
1	Extended Compressed
2	Compressed
3	Multi-TID
4-5	Reserved
6	GCR
7-9	Reserved
10	GLK-GCR
11-15	Reserved

9.3.1.8 BlockAck frame format

9.3.1.8.1 Overview

Change paragraphs 3-4 as follows:

The RA field of the BlockAck frame is the address of the recipient STA—a BlockAck frame that is not a Multi-STA BlockAck variant is set to the TA field of the soliciting frame or the address of the recipient STA from which Data frames are acknowledged. The RA field of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame is set as described in 9.3.1.8.7 (Multi-STA BlockAck variant).

The TA field value is the address of the STA transmitting the BlockAck frame or a bandwidth signaling TA in the context of HT-delayed block ack. In a BlockAck frame transmitted in the context of HT-delayed block ack by a VHT STA or an HE STA in a non-HT or non-HT duplicate format and where the scrambling sequence carries the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT, the TA field value is a bandwidth signaling TA.

Change Figure 9-42 (BA Control field format) as follows:

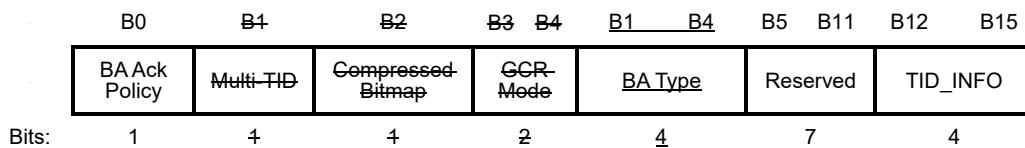


Figure 9-42—BA Control field format

Change the 6th paragraph as follows:

For BlockAck frames sent under HT-delayed agreements, the BA Ack Policy subfield of the BA Control field has the meaning shown in Table 9-29 (BA Ack Policy subfield). For BlockAck frames sent under other types of agreement, the BA Ack Policy subfield is reserved. An HE STA does not send a Multi-STA Block-Ack frame under Delayed and HT-delayed agreements.

Replace the paragraphs 7-8 and Table 9-30 (BlockAck frame variant encoding) with the following:

The BA Type subfield in the BA Control field indicates the BlockAck frame variant as defined in Table 9-30 (BlockAck frame variant encoding).

Table 9-30—BlockAck frame variant encoding

BA Type	BlockAck frame variant
0	Basic
1	Extended Compressed
2	Compressed
3	Multi-TID
4-5	Reserved
6	GCR
7-9	Reserved
10	GLK-GCR
11	Multi-STA
12-15	Reserved

NOTE—Reference to “a BlockAck” frame without any other qualification from other subclauses applies to any of the variants, unless specific exclusions are called out.

1 The GCR BlockAck frame is used in response to a GCR BlockAckReq frame and the GLK-GCR BlockAck
 2 frame is used in response to a GLK-GCR BlockAckReq frame.
 3

4 **9.3.1.8.2 Compressed BlockAck variant**
 5

6 *Change the 2nd paragraph and Figure 9-43 (BA Information field format (Compressed BlockAck)) as
 7 follows:*
 8

9 The BA Information field of the Compressed BlockAck frame ~~comprises the Block Ack Starting Sequence
 10 Control subfield and the Block Ack Bitmap subfield, as is shown in Figure 9-43 (BA Information field for-
 11 mat (Compressed BlockAck)). The Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield is shown in Figure 9-37
 12 (Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield format). The Starting Sequence Number subfield of the
 13 Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield contains the sequence number of the first MSDU or A-
 14 MSDU for which this BlockAck frame is sent. This subfield is defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and trans-
 15 mission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA). The Fragment Number subfield of
 16 the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield is set to 0.~~
 17
 18
 19

Octets:	2	<u>8 or 32</u>

22 **Figure 9-43—BA Information field format (Compressed BlockAck)**
 23
 24

25 *Insert the following paragraph and table after the 2nd paragraph:*
 26

27 The Fragment Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control field is set as defined in
 28 Table 9-30a (Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Compressed BlockAck variant). The Fragment
 29
 30

1 Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield is set to all 0s if the Compressed
 2 BlockAck frame is sent to or from a non-HE STA.
 3
 4

5 **Table 9-30a—Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Compressed BlockAck variant**

Fragment Number subfield			Fragmentation Level 3 (ON/OFF)	Block Ack Bitmap subfield length (octets)	Maximum number of MSDUs/A-MSDUs that can be acknowledged
B3	B2-B1	B0			
0	0	0	OFF	8	64
0	1	0		Reserved	Reserved
0	2	0		32	256
0	3	0		Reserved	Reserved
0	0	1	ON	8	16
0	1	1		Reserved	Reserved
0	2	1		32	64
0	3	1		Reserved	Reserved
1	Any	Any		Reserved	Reserved

30 NOTE—A Compressed BlockAck frame with B0 of the Fragment Number subfield set to 1 is
 31 not sent to an HE STA whose Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities
 32 element it transmits is not set to 3 (see 26.3 (Fragmentation and defragmentation)).

35 *Change the remainder of the subclause as follows:*

38 If B0 of the Fragment Number subfield is 0, the Block Ack Bitmap subfield of the BA Information field of
 39 the Compressed BlockAck frame indicates the receive status of up to 64 or 256 MSDUs and/or A-MSDUs
 40 depending upon the value of B2-B1 in the Fragment Number subfield as shown in Table 9-30a (Fragment
 41 Number subfield encoding for the Compressed BlockAck variant). The Block Ack Bitmap subfield of the
 42 BA Information field of the Compressed BlockAck frame is 8 octets in length and is used to indicate the
 43 received status of up to 64 entries, where each entry represents an MSDU or an A-MSDU. Each bit that is
 44 equal to 1 in the compressed Block Ack Bitmap subfield acknowledges the reception of a single MSDU or
 45 A-MSDU in the order of sequence number, with the first bit of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield correspond-
 46 ing to the MSDU or A-MSDU or fragment thereof with the sequence number that matches the value of the
 47 Starting Sequence Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield.

51 If B0 of the Fragment Number subfield is 1, the Block Ack Bitmap subfield of the BA Information field of
 52 the Compressed BlockAck frame indicates the receive status of up to 16 or 64 MSDUs and/or A-MSDUs
 53 depending upon the value B2-B1 in the Fragment Number subfield as shown in Table 9-30a (Fragment
 54 Number subfield encoding for the Compressed BlockAck variant). If bit position n of the Block Ack Bitmap
 55 subfield is 1, it acknowledges receipt of an MPDU with sequence number value SN and fragment number
 56 value FN with $n = 4 \times (SN - SSN) + FN$, where SSN is the value of the Starting Sequence Number subfield of
 57 the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield and the operations on the sequence numbers are per-
 58 formed modulo 4096. If bit position n of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield is 0, it indicates that the MPDU has
 59 not been received.

63 NOTE—If the B0 of the Fragment Number subfield is equal to 1 then the Block Ack Bitmap subfield is split into (Block
 64 Ack Bitmap subfield length)/4 subbitmaps, each of which indicates receive status for 4 fragments of each of the MSDUs
 65 or A-MSDUs as indicated in Table 9-30a (Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Compressed BlockAck variant).

9.3.1.8.5 GCR Block Ack variant

Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:

The GCR Group Address subfield is set to the value from the Group Address subfield of the GCR BAR Information field in the BlockAckReq frame to which the BlockAck frame is sent in response. If the BlockAck frame is sent in response to a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame, the GCR Group Address subfield is set to the value from the RA field in the GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame.

Insert the following new subclause after 9.3.1.8.6:

9.3.1.8.7 Multi-STA BlockAck variant

The Multi-STA BlockAck frame is supported if either UL MU or multi-TID A-MPDU operation is supported and acknowledges MPDUs carried in an HE TB PPDU or multi-STA multi-TID, multi-STA single TID, or single-STA multi-TID A-MPDUs.

An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame where the Per AID TID Info fields are addressed to more than one STA sets the RA field to the broadcast address. An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame where the Per AID TID Info fields are all addressed to a single recipient STA and that is sent in response to an HE TB PPDU sets the RA field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to either the address of the recipient STA or to the broadcast address. An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame where the Per AID TID Info fields are all addressed to a single recipient STA and that is not sent in response to an HE TB PPDU sets the RA field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to the address of the recipient STA.

A non-AP HE STA sets the RA field to the TA field of the soliciting frame or to the address of the recipient STA whose Data or Management frames are acknowledged.

The TID INFO subfield of the BA Control field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame is reserved.

The BA Information field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame comprises one or more Per AID TID Info sub-fields as defined in Figure 9-47a (BA Information field format (Multi-STA BlockAck)).

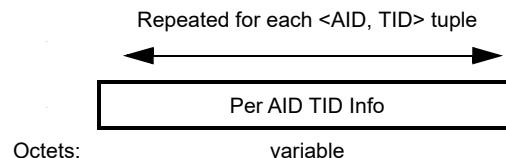


Figure 9-47a—BA Information field format (Multi-STA BlockAck)

The AID TID Info subfield is shown in Figure 9-47b (AID TID Info subfield format).

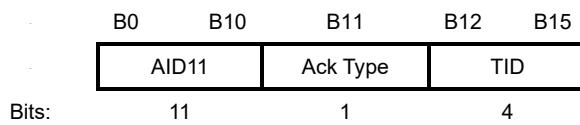


Figure 9-47b—AID TID Info subfield format

1 The AID11 subfield carries the 11 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA for which the Per AID TID Info
 2 subfield is intended. The format of the Per AID TID Info subfield depends on the value of the AID11 sub-
 3 field. If the Multi-STA BlockAck frame is sent to an AP, the AID11 subfield is set to 0. A value of 2045 in
 4 the AID11 subfield is used as a unique identifier for any unassociated STA. If the AID11 subfield is set to
 5 2045, then the Ack Type subfield and TID subfield are set to 0 and 15, respectively.
 6

7 NOTE—More than one Per AID TID Info subfield with the same value in the AID11 subfield but different values in the
 8 TID subfield can be present in the Multi-STA BlockAck frame.
 9

10 If the AID11 subfield of the AID TID Info subfield is not 2045, then the Per AID TID Info subfield has the
 11 format shown in Figure 9-47c (Per AID TID Info subfield format if the AID11 subfield is not 2045).
 12

Octets:	2	0 or 2	0, 4, 8, 16 or 32
	AID TID Info	Block Ack Starting Sequence Control	Block Ack Bitmap

22 **Figure 9-47c—Per AID TID Info subfield format if the AID11 subfield is not 2045**
 23

24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

If the AID11 subfield is not 2045, then the context and the presence of each optional subfield in a Per AID TID Info subfield in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame is defined in Table 9-30b (Context of the Per AID TID Info subfield and presence of optional subfields if the AID11 subfield is not 2045).

Table 9-30b—Context of the Per AID TID Info subfield and presence of optional subfields if the AID11 subfield is not 2045

Ack Type subfield values	TID subfield values	Presence of Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield and Block Ack Bitmap subfields	Context of a Per AID TID Info subfield in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame
0	0–7	Present	Block acknowledgment context: Sent as an acknowledgment to QoS Data frames that solicit a BlockAck frame response or to a BlockAckReq frame.
1	0–7	Not present	Acknowledgment context: Sent as an acknowledgment to a QoS Data or QoS Null frame that solicits an Ack frame response.
0 or 1	8–13	N/A	Reserved
0	14	N/A	Reserved
1	14	Not present	All ack context: Sent as an acknowledgment to an A-MPDU that contains an MPDU that solicits an immediate response and all MPDUs contained in the A-MPDU are received successfully.
0	15	N/A	Reserved
1	15	Not present	Management/PS-Poll frame acknowledgment context: Sent as an acknowledgment to a Management or PS-Poll frame.
NOTE 1—Additional rules for acknowledgment, block acknowledgment and the all ack context are defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame) for a multi-TID A-MPDU.			
NOTE 2—As HE STAs do not use HCCA (see 10.23.1 (General)), TID values from 8 to 15 are not used in QoS Data frames.			

If the Ack Type subfield is 0, the Fragment Number subfield encoding indicates the length of the BlockAck bitmap subfield as defined in Table 9-30c (Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Multi-STA BlockAck variant).

Table 9-30c—Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Multi-STA BlockAck variant

Fragment Number subfield			Fragmentation Level 3 (ON/OFF)	Block Ack Bitmap subfield length (octets)	Maximum number of MSDUs/A-MSDUs that can be acknowledged
B3	B2 B1	B0			
0	0	0	OFF	8	64
0	1	0		16	128
0	2	0		32	256
0	3	0		4	32
0	0	1	ON	8	16
0	1	1		16	32
0	2	1		32	64
0	3	1		4	8
1	Any	Any		Reserved	Reserved

NOTE—A Multi-STA BlockAck frame with B0 of the Fragment Number subfield set to 1 cannot be sent to an HE STA unless the HE Capabilities element received from the HE STA has the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield equal to 3 (see 26.3 (Fragmentation and defragmentation)).

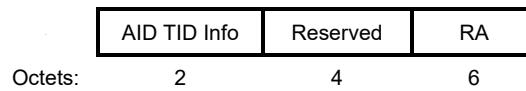
If B0 of the Fragment Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield is 0, the BA Information field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame contains an 8-octet, 16-octet, 32-octet or 4-octet Block Ack Bitmap subfield depending on B2-B1 of the Fragment Number subfield as defined in Table 9-30c (Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Multi-STA BlockAck variant) indicating the receive status of up to 64, 128, 256 or 32 MSDUs (or fragments thereof) and/or A-MSDUs (or fragments thereof), respectively. Each bit that is equal to 1 in the Block Ack Bitmap subfield acknowledges the reception of a single MSDU (or fragment thereof) or A-MSDU (or fragment thereof) in the order of sequence number with the first bit of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield corresponding to the MSDU or A-MSDU with the sequence number that matches the value of the Starting Sequence Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield.

If B0 of the Fragment Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield is 1, the Block Ack Bitmap subfield of the BA Information field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame indicates the receive status of up to 16, 32, 64 or 8 MSDUs and/or A-MSDUs depending on B2-B1 of the Fragment Number subfield as shown in Table 9-30c (Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Multi-STA BlockAck variant). If bit position n of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield is 1, it acknowledges receipt of an MPDU with sequence number value SN and fragment number value FN with $n = 4 \times (SN - SSN) + FN$, where SSN is the value of the Starting Sequence Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield and the operations on the sequence numbers are performed modulo 4096. If bit position n of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield is 0, it indicates that the MPDU has not been received.

NOTE—If B0 of the Fragment Number subfield is 1 then the Block Ack Bitmap field is split into Block Ack Bitmap field length/4 subbitmaps, each of which indicates receive status for 4 fragments of each of the MSDUs or A-MSDUs as

1 indicated in Table 9-30c (Fragment Number subfield encoding for the Multi-STA BlockAck variant). For an A-MSDU,
 2 only the first bit of the subbitmap is used, if fragmentation is not allowed in an A-MSDU.
 3

4 If the AID11 subfield of the AID TID Info subfield is 2045, then the Per AID TID Info subfield has the for-
 5 mat shown in Figure 9-47d (Per AID TID Info subfield format if the AID11 subfield is 2045), where the RA
 6 subfield indicates the MAC address of an unassociated STA for which the Per AID TID Info subfield is
 7 intended.
 8



17 **Figure 9-47d—Per AID TID Info subfield format if the AID11 subfield is 2045**
 18

21 NOTE—An associated non-AP HE STA that receives a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as a response from its AP and does
 22 not support the UORA procedure ignores the 10 octets following the AID TID Info subfield that are the remainder of the
 23 Per AID TID Info subfield if the AID11 subfield is 2045 and parses the following Per AID TID Info subfields if any.
 24

25 *Change the title of 9.3.1.19 as follows:*
 26

28 **9.3.1.19 VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame format**

30 *Insert the following before the 1st paragraph:*
 31

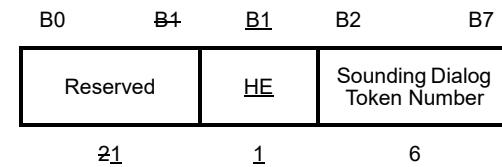
32 The VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame has two variants, the VHT NDP Announcement frame and the HE
 33 NDP Announcement frame. The two formats are distinguished by the setting of the HE subfield in the
 34 Sounding Dialog Token field.
 35

37 *Change paragraphs 3-4 as follows:*
 38

40 The VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame contains at least one STA Info field. If the VHT/HE NDP
 41 Announcement frame contains only one STA Info field, then the RA field is set to the address of the STA
 42 that can provide feedback (see 10.37.5.2 (Rules for VHT sounding protocol sequences)). If the VHT/HE
 43 NDP Announcement frame contains more than one STA Info field, then the RA field is set to the broadcast
 44 address.
 45

47 The TA field is set to the address of the STA transmitting the VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame or the
 48 bandwidth signaling TA of the STA transmitting the VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame. In a VHT/HE
 49 NDP Announcement frame transmitted by a VHT or HE STA in a non-HT or non-HT duplicate format and
 50 where the scrambling sequence carries the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT, the
 51 TA field is set to a bandwidth signaling TA.
 52

1 Change Figure 9-59 (Sounding Dialog Token field format) as follows:
 2
 3
 4
 5



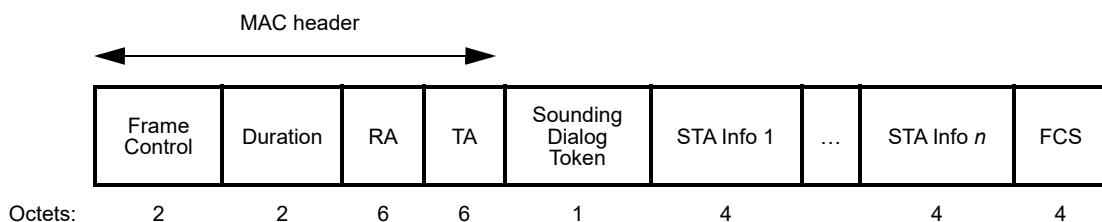
10
 11
 12 **Figure 9-59—Sounding Dialog Token field format**
 13
 14
 15

16 Insert the following after the 5th paragraph (“The format of the Sounding...”):
 17
 18

19 The HE subfield in the Sounding Dialog Token field is set to 0 to identify the frame as a VHT NDP
 20 Announcement frame and set to 1 to identify the frame as an HE NDP Announcement frame.
 21

22 Insert the following at the end of 9.3.1.19:
 23
 24

25 The format of the HE NDP Announcement frame is shown in Figure 9-61a (HE NDP Announcement frame
 26 format).
 27
 28
 29



30
 31 **Figure 9-61a—HE NDP Announcement frame format**
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36

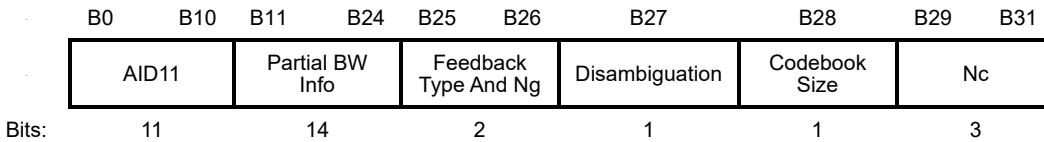
37 The Duration, RA, and TA fields are set as in a VHT NDP Announcement frame.
 38
 39

40 The HE subfield in the Sounding Dialog Token field is set to 1 to identify the frame as an HE NDP
 41 Announcement frame.
 42

43 The Sounding Dialog Token Number field in the Sounding Dialog Token field contains a value selected by
 44 the beamformer to identify the HE NDP Announcement frame.
 45
 46
 47

48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

1 The format of the STA Info field in an HE NDP Announcement Frame if the AID11 subfield is not set to
 2 2047 is defined in Figure 9-61b (STA Info subfield format in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the
 3 AID11 subfield is not 2047).

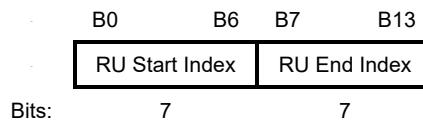


14 **Figure 9-61b—STA Info subfield format in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the AID11
 15 subfield is not 2047**

18 An HE NDP Announcement frame contains at most 1 STA Info field per STA.

21 If the AID11 subfield is not 2047, then it contains the 11 least significant bits of the AID of a STA expected
 22 to process the following HE sounding NDP and prepare the sounding feedback.

25 The Partial BW Info subfield is defined in Figure 9-61c (Partial BW Info subfield format).



34 **Figure 9-61c—Partial BW Info subfield format**

38 The RU Start Index subfield in the Partial BW Info subfield indicates the first 26-tone RU for which the HE
 39 beamformer is requesting feedback. The RU End Index subfield of the Partial BW Info subfield indicates the
 40 last 26-tone RU for which the HE beamformer is requesting feedback. The value of the RU Start Index sub-
 41 field is less than or equal to the value of the RU End Index subfield. The RU Start Index subfield and RU
 42 End Index subfield depends on the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame, which is indicated by
 43 the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH if the frame is carried in an HE, VHT or HT PPDU and by
 44 the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT if the frame is carried in a non-HT duplicate
 45 PPDU, and is 20 MHz if the frame is carried in non-HT PPDU. The values of the RU Start Index subfield
 46 and RU End Index subfield are each selected from the following:

- 49 — Values 0 to 8 if the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame is 20 MHz, where 0 indicates
 50 26-tone RU 1 and 8 indicates 26-tone RU 9. Values 9–127 are reserved. See Table 27-7 (Data and
 51 pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU).
- 53 — Values 0 to 17 if the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame is 40 MHz, where 0 indicates
 54 26-tone RU 1 and 17 indicates 26-tone RU 18. Values 18–127 are reserved. See Table 27-8 (Data
 55 and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE
 56 PPDU).
- 58 — Values 0 to 36 if the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame is 80 MHz, where 0 indicates
 59 26-tone RU 1 and 36 indicates 26-tone RU 37. Values 37–127 are reserved. See Table 27-9 (Data
 60 and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE
 61 PPDU).
- 63 — Values 0 to 73 if the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame is 160 MHz, where 0 indicates
 64 26-tone RU 1 and 73 indicates 26-tone RU 74. In the 80+80 MHz case, value 0 indicates the 26-tone

1 RU 1 in the lower 80 MHz frequency segment and 36 indicates the 26-tone RU 37 in the lower 80
 2 MHz frequency segment and 37 indicates the 26-tone RU 1 in the upper 80 MHz frequency segment
 3 and 73 indicates the 26-tone RU 74 in the upper 80 MHz frequency segment. Values 74–127 are
 4 reserved. For 80+80 MHz, feedback is not requested for the gap between the 80 MHz segments. See
 5 Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-
 6 OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU).
 7

8
 9 The Feedback Type And Ng and Codebook Size subfields are defined in Table 9-31a (Feedback Type And
 10 Ng subfield and Codebook Size subfield encoding).
 11

14 **Table 9-31a—Feedback Type And Ng subfield and Codebook Size subfield encoding**

Feedback Type And Ng		Codebook Size	Description
B25	B26		
0	0	0	SU, $Ng = 4$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$
0	0	1	SU, $Ng = 4$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{6, 4\}$
0	1	0	SU, $Ng = 16$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$
0	1	1	SU, $Ng = 16$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{6, 4\}$
1	0	0	MU, $Ng = 4$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{7, 5\}$
1	0	1	MU, $Ng = 4$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{9, 7\}$
1	1	0	CQI
1	1	1	MU, $Ng = 16$, quantization resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{9, 7\}$

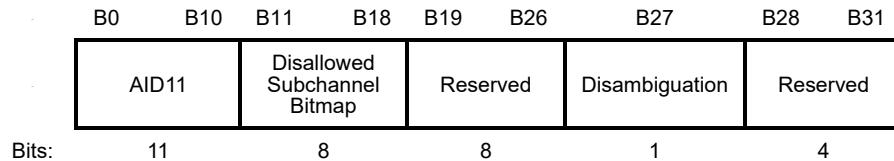
38 The Disambiguation subfield is set to 1 to prevent a non-HE VHT STA from wrongly determining its AID in
 39 the HE NDP Announcement frame. The Disambiguation subfield coincides with the MSB of the AID12
 40 subfield of an expected VHT NDP Announcement frame if the HE NDP Announcement field is parsed by a
 41 non-HE VHT STA. The MSB of the AID12 subfield is always 0 for a non-HE VHT STA due to the limita-
 42 tion of the AID to a maximum of 2007.
 43

44 In a broadcast HE NDP Announcement frame that has more than one STA Info field with a value other than
 45 2047 in the AID11 field the following applies to each STA Info subfield with a value other than 2047:
 46

- 47 — If the Feedback Type subfield indicates SU or MU, the Nc subfield indicates the number of columns,
 Nc, in the compressed beamforming feedback matrix and is set to $Nc - 1$
- 48 — If the Feedback Type subfield indicates CQI, the Nc subfield indicates the number of space-time
 streams, Nc, in the CQI report and is set to $Nc - 1$

54 In an individually addressed HE NDP Announcement frame that has only one STA Info field with a value
 55 other than 2047 in the AID11 subfield, the Nc subfield is reserved.
 56

1 The format of the STA Info field in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the AID11 subfield is set to 2047 is
 2 defined in Figure 9-61d (STA Info subfield format in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the AID11 sub-
 3 field is 2047).



14 **Figure 9-61d—STA Info subfield format in an HE NDP Announcement frame if the AID11
 15 subfield is 2047**

19 The Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield indicates the 20 MHz subchannels and the 242-tone RUs that
 20 are present in HE sounding NDPs announced by the HE NDP Announcement frame and the 242-tone RUs
 21 that are to be included in requested sounding feedback. A 20 MHz subchannel is as defined in Clause 17
 22 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) for the portions of the PPDU that
 23 use a tone plan as specified in Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY speci-
 24 fication) and a 242-tone RU is as defined in 27.3.2 (Subcarrier and resource allocation)). The lowest num-
 25 bered bit of the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield corresponds to the 20 MHz subchannel that lies
 26 within the BSS width and that has the lowest frequency of the set of all 20 MHz subchannels within the BSS
 27 width. Each successive bit in the bitmap corresponds to the next higher frequency 20 MHz subchannel. A bit
 28 in the bitmap is set to 1 to indicate that for the corresponding 20 MHz subchannel, no energy is present in the
 29 HE sounding NDP associated with this HE NDP Announcement frame. For each disallowed 20 MHz sub-
 30 channel, the 242-tone RU that is most closely aligned in frequency with the 20 MHz subchannel is disal-
 31 lowed for PPDU that use a tone plan as specified in Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification).
 32 STAs addressed by the HE NDP Announcement frame do not include tones from disallowed 242-tone RUs
 33 when determining the average SNR of space time streams 1 to N_c and when generating requested sounding
 34 feedback. If a 20 MHz subchannel and its corresponding 242-tone RU is not disallowed, the corresponding
 35 bit in the bitmap is set to 0.

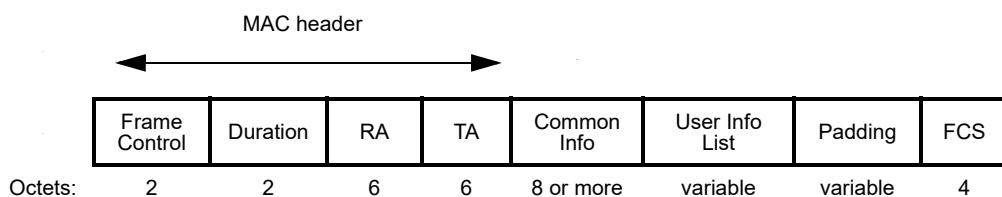
40 *Insert a new subclause after 9.3.1.21:*

43 **9.3.1.22 Trigger frame format**

46 **9.3.1.22.1 General**

48 A Trigger frame allocates resources for and solicits one or more HE TB PPDU transmissions. The Trigger
 49 frame also carries other information required by the responding STA to send an HE TB PPDU.

52 The format for the Trigger frame is defined in Figure 9-64a (Trigger frame format).



64 **Figure 9-64a—Trigger frame format**

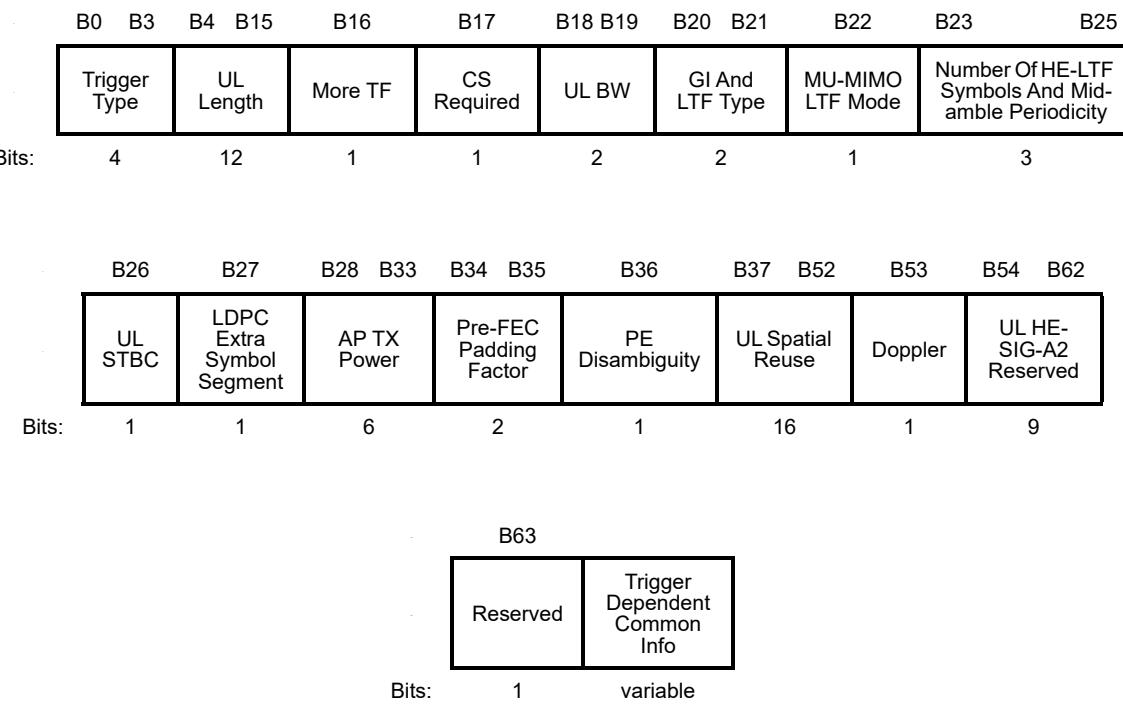
1 The Duration field is set as defined in 9.2.5 (Duration/ID field (QoS STA)).
 2

3 The RA field is set as follows:
 4

- 5 — For a Trigger frame that is not a GCR MU-BAR, NFRP or MU-RTS Trigger frame, and that has one
 6 User Info field and the AID12 subfield of the User Info field contains the AID of a non-AP STA, the
 7 RA field is set to the address of that STA
- 8 — For a Trigger frame that has at least one User Info field with the AID12 subfield that allocates an
 9 RA-RU, the RA field is set to the broadcast address
- 10 — For a Trigger frame that is not a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame and that has more than one User Info
 11 field, the RA field is set to the broadcast address
- 12 — For a Trigger frame that is an NFRP Trigger frame or MU-RTS Trigger frame, the RA field is set to
 13 the broadcast address
- 14 — For a Trigger frame that is a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame, the RA field is set to the MAC address
 15 of the group for which reception status is being requested

16
 17 The TA field is the address of the STA transmitting the Trigger frame if the Trigger frame is addressed to
 18 STAs that belong to a single BSS. The TA field is the transmitted BSSID if the Trigger frame is addressed to
 19 STAs from at least two different BSSs of the multiple BSSID set. The rules for setting of the TA field are
 20 defined in 26.5.2.2.4 (Allowed settings of the Trigger frame fields and TRS Control subfield).
 21

22 The Common Info field is defined in Figure 9-64b (Common Info field format).
 23



57 Figure 9-64b—Common Info field format
 58

1 The Trigger Type subfield identifies the Trigger frame variant and its encoding is defined in Table 9-31b
 2 (Trigger Type subfield encoding).

5 **Table 9-31b—Trigger Type subfield encoding**

Trigger Type subfield value	Trigger frame variant
0	Basic
1	Beamforming Report Poll (BFRP)
2	MU-BAR
3	MU-RTS
4	Buffer Status Report Poll (BSRP)
5	GCR MU-BAR
6	Bandwidth Query Report Poll (BQRP)
7	NDP Feedback Report Poll (NFRP)
8-15	Reserved

30 The UL Length subfield of the Common Info field indicates the value of the L-SIG LENGTH field of the
 31 solicited HE TB PPDU.

34 The More TF subfield of the Common Info field indicates whether or not a subsequent Trigger frame is
 35 scheduled for transmission. The More TF subfield is set as defined in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements)
 36 and 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP).

39 The CS Required subfield of the Common Info field is set to 1 to indicate that the STAs identified in the
 40 User Info fields are required to use ED to sense the medium and to consider the medium state and the NAV
 41 in determining whether or not to respond. The CS Required subfield is set to 0 to indicate that the STAs
 42 identified in the User Info fields are not required to consider the medium state or the NAV in determining
 43 whether or not to respond. See 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) and 26.5.2.5 (UL
 44 MU CS mechanism) for details.

47 The UL BW subfield of the Common Info field indicates the bandwidth in the HE-SIG-A of the HE TB
 48 PPDU and is defined in Table 9-31c (UL BW subfield encoding).

52 **Table 9-31c—UL BW subfield encoding**

UL BW subfield value	Description
0	20 MHz
1	40 MHz
2	80 MHz
3	80+80 MHz or 160 MHz

1 The GI And LTF Type subfield of the Common Info field indicates the GI and HE-LTF type of the HE TB
 2 PPDU response. The GI And LTF Type subfield encoding is defined in Table 9-31d (GI And LTF Type sub-
 3 field encoding).

6 **Table 9-31d—GI And LTF Type subfield encoding**

GI And LTF field value	Description
0	1x HE-LTF + 1.6 μs GI
1	2x HE-LTF + 1.6 μs GI
2	4x HE-LTF + 3.2 μs GI
3	Reserved

22 **Table 9-31e—MU-MIMO LTF Mode subfield encoding**

MU-MIMO LTF subfield value	Description
0	HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode
1	HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode

35 The MU-MIMO LTF Mode subfield of the Common Info field indicates the LTF mode of the non-OFDMA
 36 MU-MIMO HE TB PPDU response when the GI And LTF Type subfield of the Common Info field indi-
 37 cates either 2x LTF + 1.6 μs GI or 4x LTF + 3.2 μs GI, as defined in Table 9-31d (GI And LTF Type sub-
 38 field encoding). Otherwise, this subfield is set to HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode.

41 If the Doppler subfield of the Common Info field is 0, then the Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble
 42 Periodicity subfield of the Common Info field indicates the number of HE-LTF symbols present in the HE
 43 TB PPDU and is encoded as follows:

- 45 — 0 for 1 HE-LTF symbol
- 46 — 1 for 2 HE-LTF symbols
- 47 — 2 for 4 HE-LTF symbols
- 48 — 3 for 6 HE-LTF symbols
- 49 — 4 for 8 HE-LTF symbols
- 50 — 5-7 is reserved

56 If the Doppler subfield of the Common Info field is 1, then the Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble
 57 Periodicity subfield indicates the number of HE-LTF symbols and the periodicity of the midamble and is
 58 encoded as follows:

- 60 — 0 for 1 HE-LTF symbol and 10 symbol midamble periodicity
- 61 — 1 for 2 HE-LTF symbols and 10 symbol midamble periodicity
- 62 — 2 for 4 HE-LTF symbols and 10 symbol midamble periodicity
- 63 — 4 for 1 HE-LTF symbol and 20 symbol midamble periodicity

- 5 for 2 HE-LTF symbols and 20 symbol midamble periodicity
- 6 for 4 HE-LTF symbols and 20 symbol midamble periodicity
- 3 and 7 are reserved

The UL STBC subfield of the Common Info field indicates the status of STBC encoding the solicited HE TB PPDUs. It is set to 1 to indicate STBC encoding and set to 0 otherwise.

The LDPC Extra Symbol Segment subfield of the Common Info field indicates the status of the LDPC extra symbol segment. It is set to 1 if the LDPC extra symbol segment is present in the solicited HE TB PPDUs and set to 0 otherwise.

The AP Tx Power subfield of the Common Info field indicates in units of dBm, the AP's combined transmit power at the antenna connectors of all the transmit antennas used to transmit the Trigger frame and normalized to 20 MHz bandwidth. The transmit power is reported with a resolution of 1 dB, with values in the range 0 to 60 representing -20 dBm to 40 dBm, respectively. Values above 60 are reserved.

The Pre-FEC Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity subfields are defined in Table 9-31f (Pre-FEC Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity subfields) and have the same encoding as their respective subfields in HE SIG-A (see Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU)).

Table 9-31f—Pre-FEC Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity subfields

Subfield	Description	Encoding
Pre-FEC Padding Factor	Indicates the pre-FEC padding factor	Set to 0 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 4 Set to 1 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 1 Set to 2 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 2 Set to 3 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 3
PE Disambiguity	Indicates PE disambiguity	Set to 1 if the condition in Equation (27-118) is met; otherwise it is set to 0

The UL Spatial Reuse subfield of the Common Info field carries the values to be included in the Spatial Reuse fields in the HE-SIG-A field of the solicited HE TB PPDUs. The format of the UL Spatial Reuse subfield is shown in Figure 9-64c (UL Spatial Reuse subfield format), where each Spatial Reuse n subfield, $1 \leq n \leq 4$, is set to the same value as its corresponding subfield in the HE-SIG-A of the HE TB PPDU, which are defined in Table 27-21 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU).

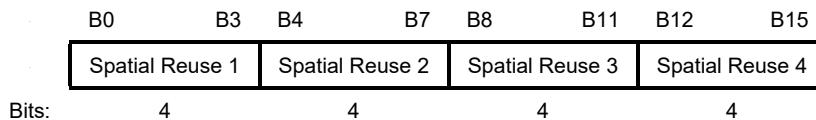


Figure 9-64c—UL Spatial Reuse subfield format

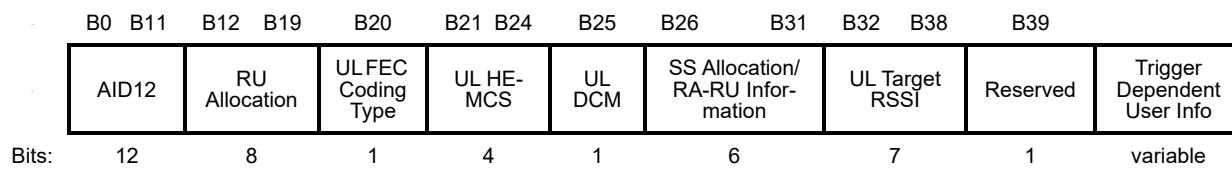
The Doppler subfield of the Common Info field is set to 1 to indicate that a midamble is present in the HE TB PPDU and set to 0 otherwise.

1 The UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved subfield of the Common Info field carries the values to be included in the
 2 Reserved field in the HE-SIG-A2 subfield of the solicited HE TB PPDUs. An HE AP sets the UL HE-SIG-
 3 A2 Reserved subfield to all 1s.
 4

5 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield in the Common Info field is optionally present based on the
 6 value of the Trigger Type field (see 9.3.1.22.2 (Basic Trigger variant) to 9.3.1.22.9 (NDP Feedback Report
 7 Poll (NFRP) variant).
 8
 9

10 The User Info List field contains zero or more User Info fields.
 11

12 The User Info field is defined in Figure 9-64d (User Info field format) for all Trigger frame variants except
 13 the NFRP Trigger frame, which is defined in 9.3.1.22.9 (NDP Feedback Report Poll (NFRP) variant).
 14
 15



25 **Figure 9-64d—User Info field format**
 26

27 The AID12 subfield in the User Info field is encoded as defined in Table 9-31g (AID12 subfield encoding):
 28

32 **Table 9-31g—AID12 subfield encoding**

AID12 subfield	Description
0	User Info field allocates one or more contiguous RA-RUs for associated STAs
1–2007	User Info field is addressed to an associated STA whose AID is equal to the value in the AID12 subfield
2008–2044	Reserved
2045	User Info field allocates one or more contiguous RA-RUs for unassociated STAs
2046	Unallocated RU
2047–4094	Reserved
4095	Start of Padding field

51 NOTE 1—The remaining subfields in the User Info field are reserved when the AID12 subfield is 2046.
 52
 53 NOTE 2—The remaining subfields of the User Info field are not present when the AID12 subfield is 4095.

56 The RU Allocation subfield along with the UL BW subfield in the Common Info field identifies the size and
 57 the location of the RU. If the UL BW subfield indicates 20 MHz, 40 MHz or 80 MHz PPDU, then B0 of the
 58 RU Allocation subfield is set to 0. If the UL BW subfield indicates 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz, then B0 of the
 59 RU Allocation subfield is set to 0 to indicate that the RU allocation applies to the primary 80 MHz channel
 60

1 and set to 1 to indicate that the RU allocation applies to the secondary 80 MHz channel. The mapping of B7–
 2 B1 of the RU Allocation subfield is defined in Table 9-31h (B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield).

5 **Table 9-31h—B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield**

B7-B1 of the RU Allocation subfield	UL BW subfield	RU size	RU Index
0–8	20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	26	RU1 to RU9, respectively
9–17	40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU10 to RU18, respectively
18–36	80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU19 to RU37, respectively
37–40	20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	52	RU1 to RU4, respectively
41–44	40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU5 to RU8, respectively
45–52	80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU9 to RU16, respectively
53, 54	20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	106	RU1 and RU2, respectively
55, 56	40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU3 and RU4, respectively
57–60	80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU5 to RU8, respectively
61	20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	242	RU1
62	40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU2
63, 64	80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU3 and RU4, respectively
65	40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	484	RU1
66	80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz		RU2
67	80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	996	RU1
68	80+80 MHz or 160 MHz	2×996	RU1
NOTE—If the UL BW subfield indicates 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz, the description indicates the RU index for the Primary 80 MHz or Secondary 80 MHz channel as indicated by B0 of the RU Allocation subfield.			

61 If the UL BW subfield indicates 20 MHz, the mapping of the RU index to RU is defined in Table 27-7 (Data
 62 and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU) in
 63 increasing order.

If the UL BW subfield indicates 40 MHz, the mapping of the RU index RU is defined in Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) in increasing order.

If the UL BW subfield indicates 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz, the mapping of the RU index to RU is defined in Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU) in increasing order.

If the UL BW subfield indicates 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz, B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield is set to 68 and B0 is set to 1 to indicate a 2×996-tone RU. A non-AP STA ignores B0 for 2×996-tone RU indication.

If the AID12 subfield is in the range 1 to 2007, then the RU Allocation subfield indicates the RU allocated to the STA identified by the AID12 subfield. If the AID12 subfield is 0 or 2045, then the RU Allocation subfield indicates the starting RU of one or more contiguous RA-RUs allocated by the User Info field. If the AID12 subfield is 2046, then the RU Allocation subfield indicates an unallocated RU.

If there is more than one RA-RU (i.e., the Number Of RA-RU subfield of this User Info field has a value greater than 0), then the allocated RUs are contiguous and the RU sizes of all RA-RUs are the same and equal to the size of the first RU. Further, all the remaining subfields of the User Info field apply to all the RA-RUs.

The UL FEC Coding Type subfield of the User Info field indicates the code type of the solicited HE TB PPDU. The UL FEC Coding Type subfield is set to 0 to indicate BCC and set to 1 to indicate LDPC.

The UL HE-MCS subfield of the User Info field indicates the HE-MCS of the solicited HE TB PPDU. The encoding of the UL HE-MCS subfield is defined in 27.3.7 (HE modulation and coding schemes (HE-MCSs)).

The UL DCM subfield of the User Info field indicates DCM of the solicited HE TB PPDU. The UL DCM subfield is set to 1 to indicate that DCM is used in the solicited HE TB PPDU as defined in 27.3.11.15 (Dual carrier modulation). The UL DCM subfield is set to 0 to indicate that DCM is not used. The UL DCM subfield is set to 0 if the UL STBC subfield of the Common Info field is set to 1.

If the AID12 subfield is either 0 or 2045, then B26–B31 of the User Info field is the RA-RU Information subfield, otherwise B26–B31 of the User Info field is the SS Allocation subfield.

The SS Allocation subfield of the User Info field indicates the spatial streams of the solicited HE TB PPDU and the format is defined in Figure 9-64e (SS Allocation subfield format).

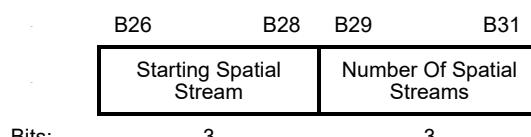


Figure 9-64e—SS Allocation subfield format

The Starting Spatial Stream subfield indicates the starting spatial stream and is set to the starting spatial stream minus 1.

The Number Of Spatial Streams subfield indicates the number of spatial streams, and is set to the number of spatial streams minus 1.

1 The RA-RU Information subfield of the User Info field indicates the RA-RU information and the format is
 2 defined in Figure 9-64f (RA-RU Information subfield format).

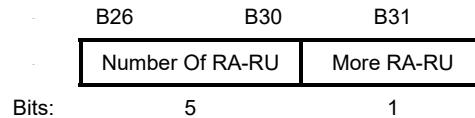


Figure 9-64f—RA-RU Information subfield format

16 The Number Of RA-RU subfield indicates the number of contiguous RUs allocated for UORA. The value of
 17 the Number Of RA-RU subfield is equal to the number of contiguous RA-RUs minus one.

19 NOTE—The starting spatial stream and the number of spatial streams of the HE TB PPDU transmitted on each RA-RU
 20 are 1.

23 The More RA-RU subfield is set to 1 to indicate that RA-RUs of the type indicated by the AID12 subfield in
 24 this User Info field (see Table 9-31g (AID12 subfield encoding)) are allocated in subsequent Trigger frames
 25 that are sent until the end of the TWT SP in which the Trigger frame carrying this field is sent. Otherwise,
 26 the subfield is set to 0. The More RA-RU subfield is reserved if the More TF field in the Common Info field
 27 is set to 0.

31 The UL Target RSSI subfield of the User Info field indicates the expected receive signal power, averaged
 32 over the AP's antenna connectors, for the HE portion of the HE TB PPDU transmitted on the assigned RU.
 33 The resolution for the UL Target RSSI subfield in the User Info field is 1 dB. The UL Target RSSI subfield
 34 encoding is defined in Table 9-31i (UL Target RSSI subfield encoding).

Table 9-31i—UL Target RSSI subfield encoding

UL Target RSSI subfield	Description
0–90	Values 0 to 90 map to –110 dBm to –20 dBm
91–126	Reserved
127	Indicates to the STA to transmit an HE TB PPDU response at its maximum transmit power for the assigned HE-MCS

54 The Trigger Dependent User Info subfield in the User Info field is optionally present based on the value of
 55 the Trigger Type field (see 9.3.1.22.2 (Basic Trigger variant) to 9.3.1.22.9 (NDP Feedback Report Poll
 56 (NFRP) variant)).

60 The Padding field is optionally present in a Trigger frame to extend the frame length to give the recipient
 61 STAs enough time to prepare a response for transmission a SIFS after the frame is received. The Padding
 62 field, if present, is at least two octets in length and is set to all 1s. If the Padding field is present in a Trigger
 63 frame, its length is computed as described in 26.5.2.2.3 (Padding for Trigger frame or frame containing TRS
 64 Control subfield).

9.3.1.22.2 Basic Trigger variant

The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield is not present in the Basic Trigger frame. The Trigger Dependent User Info subfield of the Basic Trigger frame is defined in Figure 9-64g (Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the Basic Trigger variant).

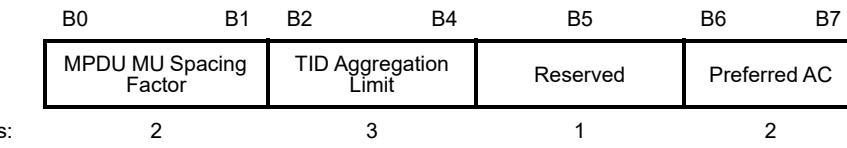


Figure 9-64g—Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the Basic Trigger variant

The MPDU MU Spacing Factor subfield is used for calculating the value by which the minimum MPDU start spacing is multiplied (see 10.12.3 (Minimum MPDU Sstart Sspacing field rules)).

The TID Aggregation Limit subfield indicates the MPDUs allowed in an A-MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU and the maximum number of TIDs that can be aggregated by the STA in the A-MPDU and is set as defined in 26.5.2.2.4 (Allowed settings of the Trigger frame fields and TRS Control subfield).

The value in the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in Trigger frame is less than or equal to $MT + 1$, where MT is the value indicated in the Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the non-AP STA that is the intended receiver of the User Info field.

The Preferred AC subfield indicates the lowest AC that is recommended for aggregation of MPDUs in the A-MPDU contained in the HE TB PPDU sent as a response to the Trigger frame. The encoding of the Preferred AC subfield as defined in Table 9-154 (ACI-to-AC encoding).

9.3.1.22.3 Beamforming Report Poll (BFRP) variant

The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield is not present in the BFRP Trigger frame. The Trigger Dependent User Info subfield of the BFRP Trigger frame is defined in Figure 9-64h (Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the BFRP variant).

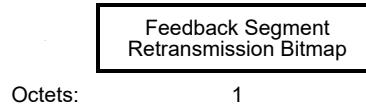


Figure 9-64h—Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the BFRP variant

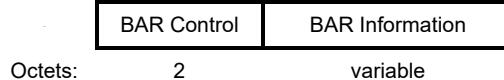
The Feedback Segment Retransmission Bitmap subfield indicates the requested feedback segments of an HE compressed beamforming report. If the bit in position n ($n = 0$ for LSB and $n = 7$ for MSB) is 1, then the feedback segment with the Remaining Feedback Segments subfield in the HE MIMO Control field equal to n is requested. If the bit in position n is 0, then the feedback segment with the Remaining Feedback Segments subfield in the HE MIMO Control field equal to n is not requested.

1 **9.3.1.22.4 MU-BAR variant**

2

3 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield is not present in the MU-BAR Trigger frame. The Trigger
 4 Dependent User Info subfield for the MU-BAR Trigger frame is defined in Figure 9-64i (Trigger Dependent
 5 User Info subfield format in the MU-BAR variant).

6



13 **Figure 9-64i—Trigger Dependent User Info subfield format in the MU-BAR variant**

14

15 The BAR Control subfield is defined in 9.3.1.7 (BlockAckReq frame format) and indicates either a Com-
 16 pressed BlockAckReq variant or a Multi-TID BlockAckReq variant.

17

18 The BAR Information subfield is defined in 9.3.1.7 (BlockAckReq frame format).

19

20 **9.3.1.22.5 MU-RTS variant**

21

22 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield and Trigger Dependent User Info subfield are not present in
 23 the MU-RTS Trigger frame.

24

25 The UL BW subfield in the Common Info field indicates the bandwidth of the PPDU carrying the MU-RTS
 26 Trigger frame and is defined in Table 9-31c (UL BW subfield encoding).

27

28 The UL Length, GI And LTF Type, MU-MIMO LTF Mode, Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble
 29 Periodicity, UL STBC, LDPC Extra Symbol Segment, AP TX Power, Pre-FEC Padding Factor, PE Disam-
 30 biguity, UL Spatial Reuse, Doppler and UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved subfields in the Common Info field are
 31 reserved.

32

33 The UL HE-MCS, UL FEC Coding Type, UL DCM, SS Allocation/RA-RU Information and UL Target
 34 RSSI fields in the User Info field are reserved.

35

36 The RU Allocation subfield in the User Info field addressed to the STA indicates whether the CTS frame is
 37 transmitted on the primary 20 MHz channel, primary 40 MHz channel, primary 80 MHz channel, 160 MHz
 38 channel, or 80+80 MHz channel.

39

40 B0 of the RU Allocation subfield is set to 0 to indicate primary 20 MHz channel, primary 40 MHz channel
 41 and primary 80 MHz channel. For 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz indication, B0 of the RU Allocation subfield is
 42 set to 1. A non-AP STA ignores B0 for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz indication.

43

44 B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield is set to indicate the primary 20 MHz channel as follows:

45

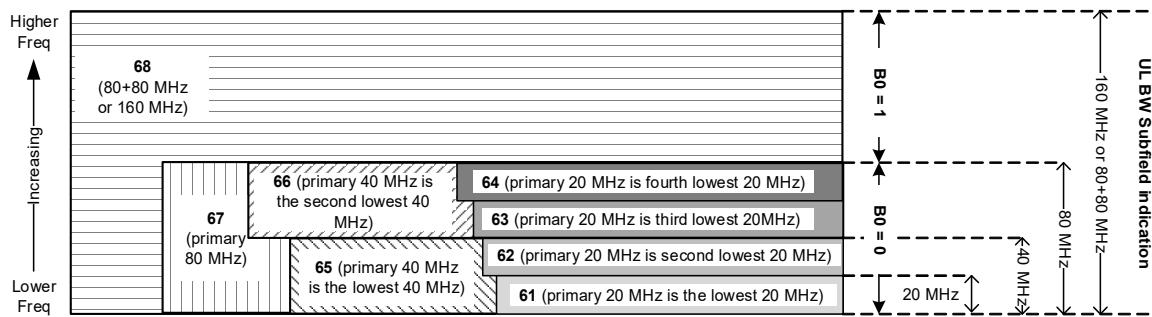
- 46 — 61 if the primary 20 MHz channel is the only 20 MHz channel or the lowest frequency 20 MHz chan-
 47 nel in the primary 40 MHz channel or primary 80 MHz channel
- 48 — 62 if the primary 20 MHz channel is the second lowest frequency 20 MHz channel in the primary
 49 40 MHz channel or primary 80 MHz channel
- 50 — 63 if the primary 20 MHz channel is the third lowest frequency 20 MHz channel in the primary
 51 80 MHz channel
- 52 — 64 if the primary 20 MHz channel is the fourth lowest frequency 20 MHz channel in the primary
 53 80 MHz channel
- 54

- 1 B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield is set to indicate the primary 40 MHz channel as follows:
 2 — 65 if the primary 40 MHz channel is the only 40 MHz channel or the lowest frequency 40 MHz chan-
 3 nel in the primary 80 MHz channel
 4 — 66 if the primary 40 MHz channel is the second lowest frequency 40 MHz channel in the primary
 5 80 MHz channel
 6
 7

8 B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield is set to 67 to indicate the primary 80 MHz channel.
 9
 10

11 B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield is set to 68 to indicate the primary and secondary 80 MHz channel.
 12
 13

14 The settings for B7–B1 of the RU Allocation subfield are illustrated in Figure 9-64j (UL BW subfield and
 15 B7-B1 of RU Allocation subfield in MU-RTS Trigger frame).
 16
 17



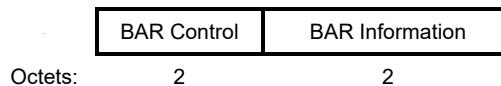
31 **Figure 9-64j—UL BW subfield and B7-B1 of RU Allocation subfield in MU-RTS Trigger frame**
 32
 33

34 9.3.1.22.6 Buffer Status Report Poll (BSRP) variant

35 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield and Trigger Dependent User Info subfield are not present in
 36 the BSRP Trigger frame.
 37
 38

39 9.3.1.22.7 GCR MU-BAR variant

40 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield of the GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame is defined in Figure 9-
 41 64k (Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield format in the GCR MU-BAR variant). The Trigger Depen-
 42 dent User Info subfield is not present in the GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame.
 43
 44



54 **Figure 9-64k—Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield format in the GCR MU-BAR variant**
 55
 56

57 The BAR Control subfield is defined in 9.3.1.7 (BlockAckReq frame format) and indicates a GCR Block-
 58 AckReq variant.
 59
 60

61 The BAR Information subfield is defined in 9.3.1.7.6 (GCR BlockAckReq variant) except that the GCR
 62 Group Address field is not present.
 63
 64

65 NOTE—A GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame is not a type of MU BAR Trigger frame.

1 **9.3.1.22.8 Bandwidth Query Report Poll (BQRP) variant**

2

3

4 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield and Trigger Dependent User Info subfield are not present in
 5 the BQRP Trigger frame.

6

7 **9.3.1.22.9 NDP Feedback Report Poll (NFRP) variant**

8

9

10 The UL BW subfield indicates the bandwidth of the NDP feedback report response.

11

12

13 The UL STBC, LDPC Extra Symbol Segment, Pre-FEC Padding Factor, PE Disambiguity, UL Spatial
 14 Reuse, and Doppler subfields are reserved.

15

16

17 The Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Periodicity subfield of the Common Info field indicates
 18 the number of HE-LTF symbols present in the NDP feedback report response and is set to 1.

19

20

21 The GI and LTF Type subfield of the Common Info field is set to 2.

22

23

24 The Trigger Dependent Common Info subfield is not present.

25

26 The User Info field for NFRP Trigger frame is defined in Figure 9-64l (User Info field format in the NFRP
 27 Trigger frame). The Trigger Dependent User Info subfield is not present.

28

29

30

31

Starting AID	Reserved	Feedback Type	Reserved	UL Target RSSI	Multiplexing Flag
Bits: 12	9	4	7	7	1

37 **Figure 9-64l—User Info field format in the NFRP Trigger frame**

38

39

40

41 The Feedback Type subfield encoding is defined in Table 9-31j (Feedback Type subfield encoding).

42

43

44

45 **Table 9-31j—Feedback Type subfield encoding**

46

Value	Description
0	Resource request
1-15	Reserved

56 The scheduled non-AP HE STAs are identified by a range of AIDs. The Starting AID field defines the first
 57 AID of the range of AIDs that are scheduled to respond to the NFRP Trigger frame.

58

59

60 The UL Target RSSI subfield indicates the target RSSI at the receiver's antenna connector(s), over the sub-
 61 carriers assigned to a scheduled STA within the PPDU bandwidth, from the HE portion of the HE TB feed-
 62 back NDP, averaged over all antennas used to receive the PPDU for each of the scheduled STAs. The
 63 resolution for the UL Target RSSI subfield is 1 dB. The UL Target RSSI subfield encoding is defined in
 64 Table 9-31i (UL Target RSSI subfield encoding).

65

1 The Multiplexing Flag subfield indicates the number of STAs that are multiplexed on the same set of tones
 2 in the same RU, and is encoded as the number of STAs minus 1.
 3

4 The total number of STAs, N_{STA} , that are scheduled to respond to the NFRP Trigger frame is calculated
 5 using Equation (9-ax1).
 6

7

$$8 \quad N_{STA} = 18 \times 2^{BW} \times (MultiplexingFlag + 1) \quad (9\text{-ax1})$$

9

10 where BW is the value of the UL BW subfield in the Common Info field of the NFRP Trigger frame, and
 11 *MultiplexingFlag* is the value of the Multiplexing Flag subfield.
 12

14 **9.3.2 Data frames**

15

17 **9.3.2.1 Format of Data frames**

18

19 **9.3.2.1.2 Address and BSSID fields**

20

21 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

22

23 The content of the address fields of Data frames are dependent upon the values of the To DS and From DS
 24 subfields in the Frame Control field and whether the Frame Body field contains either an MSDU (or frag-
 25 ment thereof) or an ~~entire~~-A-MSDU (or fragment thereof), as determined by the A-MSDU Present subfield
 26 of the QoS Control field (see 9.2.4.5.9 (A-MSDU Present subfield)). The content of the address fields trans-
 27 mitted by nonmesh STAs is defined in Table 9-32 (Address field contents). The content of the address fields
 28 transmitted by mesh STAs is defined in 9.3.5 (Frame addressing in an MBSS), and the content of the fields
 29 transmitted by GLK STAs is defined in 10.66 (Addressing of GLK Data frame transmission). Where the
 30 content of a field is shown as not applicable (N/A), the field is omitted. Note that Address 1 always holds the
 31 receiver address of the intended receiver (or, in the case of group addressed frames, receivers), and that
 32 Address 2 always holds the address of the STA that is transmitting the frame.
 33

34 *Change the subsequent occurrences of the term “A-MSDU” to “A-MSDU (or fragment thereof).”*
 35

37 **9.3.3 Management frames**

38

40 **9.3.3.2 Beacon frame format**

41

42 *Change the following rows in Table 9-34 (Beacon frame body) maintaining row order:*

43

44 **Table 9-34—Beacon frame body**

45

Order	Information	Notes
19	EDCA Parameter Set	The EDCA Parameter Set element is present if <u>dot11QosOptionImplemented is true, and dot11MeshActivated is false, and the QoS Capability element is not present; otherwise it is not present.</u>
20	QoS Capability	The QoS Capability element is present if <u>dot11QosOptionImplemented is true, and dot11MeshActivated is false, and neither the EDCA Parameter Set element nor the MU EDCA Parameter Set element are is not present; otherwise it is not present.</u>
33	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented is true and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA.</u>

Table 9-34—Beacon frame body (continued)

Order	Information	Notes
34	HT Operation	The HT Operation element is included by an AP and a mesh STA when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the AP or mesh STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
56	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
57	VHT Operation	The VHT Operation element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA, and is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise, it is not present.
63	Reduced Neighbor Report	The Reduced Neighbor Report element is optionally present if <u>dot11TVHTOptionImplemented</u> or <u>dot11FILSActivated</u> or <u>dot11Co-locatedRNRImplemented</u> is true; otherwise not present.
76	<u>Multiple BSSID Configuration</u>	<u>The Multiple BSSID Configuration element is optionally present if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true.</u>
77	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
78	<u>HE Operation</u>	<u>The HE Operation element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
79	<u>TWT</u>	<u>The TWT element is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
80	<u>UORA Parameter Set</u>	<u>The UORA Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
81	<u>BSS Color Change Announcement</u>	<u>The BSS Color Change Announcement element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
82	<u>Spatial Reuse Parameter Set</u>	<u>The Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
83	<u>MU EDCA Parameter Set</u>	<u>The MU EDCA Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and dot11MUEDCAParameters-Activated is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
84	<u>ESS Report</u>	<u>The ESS Report element is optionally present.</u>
85	<u>NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set</u>	<u>The NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
86	<u>HE BSS Load</u>	<u>The HE BSS Load element is optionally present if dot11QBSSLoad-Implemented and dot11HEOptionImplemented are true.</u>
87	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented and dot11HE6GOptionImplemented are true.</u>

1 **9.3.3.5 Association Request frame format**

2

3 *Change the following rows in Table 9-36 (Association Request frame body) maintaining row order:*

4

5 **Table 9-36—Association Request frame body**

6

Order	Information	Notes
13	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
22	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
45	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
46	<u>Channel Switch Timing</u>	<u>The Channel Switch Timing element is optionally present if dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
47	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented and dot11HE6GOptionImplemented are true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
48	<u>UL MU Power Capabilities</u>	<u>The UL MU Power Capability element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>

35 **9.3.3.6 Association Response frame format**

36

37 *Change Table 9-37 (Association Response frame body) as follows maintaining numeric order:*

38

39 **Table 9-37—Association Response frame body**

40

Order	Information	Notes
6	EDCA Parameter Set	The EDCA Parameter Set element is <u>optionally</u> present if <u>dot11QosOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise not present.
15	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
16	HT Operation	The HT Operation element is included by an AP and a mesh STA when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
29	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
30	VHT Operation	The VHT Operation element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> , and is <u>optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise, it is not present.

Table 9-37—Association Response frame body (continued)

Order	Information	Notes
40	TWT	<p>The TWT element is present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true and the TWT element is present in the Association Request frame that elicited the Association Response frame.</p> <p><u>The TWT element is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true, dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, and the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities element in the Association Request frame that elicited this Association Response frame is 1.</u></p> <p><u>Otherwise, the TWT element is not present.</u></p> <p><u>If the TWT element is present in the Association Request frame that solicits the Association Response frame but the TWT element is not present in the Association Response frame then the STA can transmit another TWT request frame after association.</u></p>
56	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
57	<u>HE Operation</u>	<u>The HE Operation element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
58	<u>BSS Color Change Announcement</u>	<u>The BSS Color Change Announcement element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
59	<u>Spatial Reuse Parameter Set</u>	<u>The Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
60	<u>MU EDCA Parameter Set</u>	<u>The MU EDCA Parameter Set element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and dot11MUEDCAParametersActivated is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
61	<u>UORA Parameter Set</u>	<u>The UORA Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
62	<u>ESS Report</u>	<u>The ESS Report element is optionally present.</u>
63	<u>NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set</u>	<u>The NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
64	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented and dot11HE6GOptionImplemented are true.</u>

1 **9.3.3.7 Reassociation Request frame format**

2

3 *Change the following rows in Table 9-38 (Reassociation Request frame body) maintaining row order:*

4

5 **Table 9-38—Reassociation Request frame body**

6

Order	Information	Notes
16	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
27	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
50	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
51	<u>Channel Switch Timing</u>	<u>The Channel Switch Timing element is optionally present if dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
52	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented and dot11HE6GOptionImplemented are true.</u>
53	<u>UL MU Power Capabilities</u>	<u>The UL MU Power Capability element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>

34 **9.3.3.8 Reassociation Response frame format**

35

36 *Change Table 9-39 (Reassociation Response frame body) as follows maintaining numeric order:*

37

38 **Table 9-39—Reassociation Response frame body**

39

Order	Information	Notes
6	EDCA Parameter Set	The EDCA Parameter Set element is <u>optionally</u> present if <u>dot11QoSOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise not present.
16	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
17	HT Operation	The HT Operation element is included by an AP when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the AP is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
32	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
33	VHT Operation	The VHT Operation element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> , and is <u>optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise, it is not present.

Table 9-39—Reassociation Response frame body (continued)

Order	Information	Notes
43	TWT	<p>The TWT element is present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true and the TWT element is present in the Reassociation Request frame that elicited this Reassociation Response frame.</p> <p><u>The TWT element is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true, dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, and the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities element in the Reassociation Request frame that elicited this Reassociation Response frame is 1.</u></p> <p><u>Otherwise, the TWT element is not present.</u></p> <p><u>If the TWT element is present in the Reassociation Request frame that solicits the Reassociation Response frame but the TWT element is not present in the Reassociation Response frame then the STA can transmit another TWT request frame after association.</u></p>
60	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
61	<u>HE Operation</u>	<u>The HE Operation element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
62	<u>BSS Color Change Announcement</u>	<u>The BSS Color Change Announcement element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
63	<u>Spatial Reuse Parameter Set</u>	<u>The Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
64	<u>MU EDCA Parameter Set</u>	<u>The MU EDCA Parameter Set element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and dot11MUEDCAParametersActivated is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
65	<u>UORA Parameter Set</u>	<u>The UORA Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
66	<u>ESS Report</u>	<u>The ESS Report element is optionally present.</u>
67	<u>NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set</u>	<u>The NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise, it is not present.</u>
68	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented and dot11HE6GOptionImplemented are true.</u>

1 **9.3.3.9 Probe Request frame format**

2

3 *Change the following rows in Table 9-40 (Probe Request frame body) maintaining row order:*

4

5 **Table 9-40—Probe Request frame body**

6

Order	Information	Notes
7	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
17	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
34	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>
35	<u>Known BSSID</u>	<u>The Known BSSID element is optionally present if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true.</u>
36	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented and dot11HE6GOptionImplemented are true.</u>
37	<u>Short SSID List</u>	<u>The Short SSID List element is optionally present if dot11ShortSSIDListImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.</u>

31 **9.3.3.10 Probe Response frame format**

32

33 *Change the following rows in Table 9-41 (Probe Response frame body) maintaining numeric order:*

34

35 **Table 9-41—Probe Response frame body**

36

Order	Information	Notes
18	EDCA Parameter Set	The EDCA Parameter Set element is <u>optionally</u> present if <u>dot11QoSOptionImplemented</u> is true and <u>dot11MeshActivated</u> is false.
31	HT Capabilities	The HT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
32	HT Operation	The HT Operation element is included by an AP and a mesh STA when <u>dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the AP is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
58	VHT Capabilities	The VHT Capabilities element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> .
59	VHT Operation	The VHT Operation element is present when <u>dot11VHTOptionImplemented</u> is true <u>and the STA is not a 6 GHz STA</u> , and is <u>optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise, it is not present.

Table 9-41—Probe Response frame body (continued)

Order	Information	Notes
65	Reduced Neighbor Report	The Reduced Neighbor Report element is optionally present if <u>dot11TVHTOptionImplemented</u> , <u>or</u> <u>dot11FILSActivated</u> <u>or</u> <u>dot11Co-locatedRNRImplemented</u> is true; otherwise not present.
93	<u>Multiple BSSID Configuration</u>	The Multiple BSSID Configuration element is optionally present if <u>dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented</u> is true.
94	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	The HE Capabilities element is present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise it is not present.
95	<u>HE Operation</u>	The HE Operation element is present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise it is not present.
96	TWT	The TWT element is optionally present within broadcast Probe Response frames if <u>dot11TWTOptionActivated</u> , <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> and <u>dot11FILSOmitReplicateProbeResponses</u> are true; otherwise it is not present. If the TWT element is present, then the Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element is 2.
97	<u>UORA Parameter Set</u>	The UORA Parameter Set element is optionally present if <u>dot11OFDMRandomAccessOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise it is not present.
98	<u>BSS Color Change Announcement</u>	The BSS Color Change Announcement element is optionally present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise it is not present.
99	<u>Spatial Reuse Parameter Set</u>	The Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is optionally present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise it is not present.
100	<u>MU EDCA Parameter Set</u>	The MU EDCA Parameter Set element is present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true and <u>dot11MUEDCAParametersActivated</u> is true; otherwise, it is not present.
101	ESS Report	The ESS Report element is optionally present.
102	<u>NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set</u>	The NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element is optionally present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> is true; otherwise, it is not present.
103	<u>HE BSS Load</u>	The HE BSS Load element is optionally present if <u>dot11QBSSLoad-Implemented</u> and <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> are true.
104	<u>HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities</u>	The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is present if <u>dot11HEOptionImplemented</u> and <u>dot11HE6GOptionImplemented</u> are true.

1 **9.3.3.13 Action frame format**
 2
 3
 4

5
 6 *Change Table 9-45 (Action frame body and Action No Ack frame body) as follows:*
 7
 8

9 **Table 9-45—Action frame body and Action No Ack frame body**
 10
 11

Order	Information
Last – 2	<p>One or more vendor-specific elements are optionally present.</p> <p>These elements are absent when the Category subfield of the Action field is Vendor-Specific, Vendor-Specific Protected, or Self-protected or when the Category subfield of the Action field is VHT and the VHT Action subfield of the Action field is VHT Compressed Beamforming, or when the Category subfield of the Action field is HE and the HE Action subfield of the Action field is HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI.</p>

22
 23 **9.3.4 Extension frames**
 24
 25

26 **9.3.4.2 DMG Beacon**
 27
 28

29 *Insert the following row in Table 9-47 (DMG Beacon frame body) maintaining numeric order:*
 30
 31

32 **Table 9-47—DMG Beacon frame body**
 33
 34

Order	Information	Notes
55	Multiple BSSID Configuration	The Multiple BSSID Configuration element is optionally present if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true.

41
 42 **9.3.4.3 S1G Beacon frame format**
 43
 44

45 *Insert the following row in Table 9-48 (Minimum and full set of optional elements) maintaining numeric order:*
 46
 47

48 **Table 9-48—Minimum and full set of optional elements**
 49
 50

Order	Information	Notes	Allowed in minimum set	Allowed in full set
17	Multiple BSSID Configuration	The Multiple BSSID Configuration element is optionally present if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true.	No	Yes

1 **9.4 Management and Extension frame body components**

2

3 **9.4.1 Fields that are not elements**

4

5 **9.4.1.7 Reason Code field**

6

7

8 *Insert a new row in Table 9-51 (Reason codes) as follows (maintaining numeric order and updating the reserved range):*

9

10

11

12 **Table 9-51—Reason codes**

13

14

Status code	Name	Meaning
71	POOR_RSSI_CONDITIONS	Disassociated due to poor RSSI.

15

16

17

18

19

20

21 **9.4.1.9 Status Code field**

22

23

24 *Change Table 9-52 (Status codes) as follows (maintaining numeric order and updating the reserved range):*

25

26

27 **Table 9-52—Status codes**

28

29

Status code	Name	Meaning
18	REFUSED_BASIC_RATES_MISMATCH	Association denied due to requesting STA not supporting all of the data rates in the BSSBasicRateSet parameter, the Basic HT-MCS Set field of the HT Operation parameter, or the Basic VHT-MCS and NSS Set field in the VHT Operation parameter, <u>or the Basic HE-MCS and NSS Set field in the HE Operation parameter.</u>
<u>124</u>	<u>DENIED_HE_NOT_SUPPORTED</u>	<u>Association denied because the requesting STA does not support HE features.</u>

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

1 **9.4.1.11 Action field**

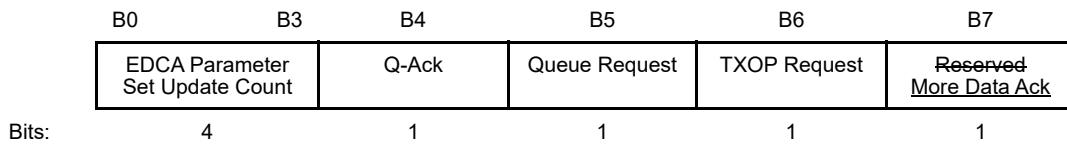
2
3 *Insert the following rows into Table 9-53 (Category values) in numerical order and update the Reserved*
4 *row:*
5

8 **Table 9-53—Category values**
9

Code	Meaning	See subclause	Robust	Group addressed privacy
30	HE	9.6.31 (HE Action frame details)	No	No
31	Protected HE	9.6.32 (Protected HE Action frame details)	Yes	No

22 **9.4.1.17 QoS Info field**
23
24

25 *Change Figure 9-100 (QoS Info field format when sent by an AP) as follows:*
26
27



38 **Figure 9-100—QoS Info field format when sent by an AP**
39
40

41 *Insert the following after the 6th paragraph (“APs set the TXOP Request subfield...”):*
42

44 An HE AP sets the More Data Ack subfield to 1 to indicate that it can generate individually addressed Ack and BlockAck frames with the More Data bit in the Frame Control field equal to 1; otherwise the AP sets the More Data Ack subfield to 0. For a non-HE AP, the More Data Ack subfield is reserved.
45
46
47

49 *Change the last paragraph of this subclause as follows:*
50

52 Non-AP STAs set the More Data Ack subfield to 1 to indicate that they can process Ack and BlockAck frames with the More Data bit in the Frame Control field equal to 1 and remain in the awake state.
53
54

56 Non-AP non-HE STAs set the More Data Ack subfield to 1 to indicate that they can process Ack frames with the More Data bit in the Frame Control field equal to 1 and remain in the awake state. Non-AP HE STAs set the More Data Ack subfield to 1 to indicate that they can process Ack and BlockAck frames with the More Data bit in the Frame Control field equal to 1 and remain in the awake state. Non-AP STAs set the More Data Ack subfield to 0 otherwise. For APs, the More Data Ack subfield is reserved.
57
58
59
60
61

63 An HE TDLS peer STA uses the More Data Ack subfield to indicate support for both processing and generating Ack and BlockAck frames.
64
65

1 **9.4.1.45 Band ID field**
2
3
4
5
6
7

Insert a new row in Table 9-69 (Band ID field) as follows and update the Reserved row as appropriate:

Table 9-69—Band ID field

Band ID value	Meaning
7	6 GHz

9.4.1.53 Operating Mode field

Change the Rx NSS row in Table 9-82 (Subfield values of the Operating Mode field) as follows:

Table 9-82—Subfield values of the Operating Mode field

Subfield	Description
Rx NSS	<p>If the STA that transmits the Operating Mode field (STA1) and the receiver of the Operating Mode field (STA2) are not both HE STAs and if the Rx NSS Type subfield is 0, then this field, combined with other information described in 9.4.2.157.3 (Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set field), indicates the maximum number of spatial streams that the STA-STA1 can receive.</p> <p>If the STA that transmits the Operating Mode field (STA1) and the receiver of the Operating Mode field (STA2) are both HE STAs, and if the Rx NSS Type subfield is 0, then the following apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> = The value of this field, combined with other information described in 9.4.2.157.3 (Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set field), indicates the maximum number of spatial streams that the HE STA can receive in a VHT PPDU = The value of this field, combined with other information described in 9.4.2.247.4 (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field), indicates the maximum number of spatial streams that STA1 can receive in an HE PPDU. <p>If the Rx NSS Type subfield is 1, this field; indicates the maximum number of spatial streams that the STA can receive as a beamformee in an SU PPDU using a beamforming steering matrix derived from a VHT Compressed Beamforming report with Feedback Type subfield indicating MU in the corresponding VHT Compressed Beamforming frame sent by the STA.</p> <p>In a non-S1G STA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for $N_{SS} = 1$ Set to 1 for $N_{SS} = 2$... Set to 7 for $N_{SS} = 8$ <p>In an S1G STA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for $N_{SS} = 1$ Set to 1 for $N_{SS} = 2$ Set to 2 for $N_{SS} = 3$ Set to 3 for $N_{SS} = 4$ <p>NOTE—In a STA with dot11VHTExtendedNSSBWCapable equal to true, NSS might be further modified for VHT PPDUs per Table 9-83 (Setting of the Channel Width subfield and 160/80+80 BW subfield at a VHT STA transmitting the Operating Mode field). In an HE STA with dot11VHTExtendedNSSBWCapable equal to true, NSS might be further modified for HE PPDUs per Equation (9-2a).</p>

Insert the following at the end of the subclause:

The maximum number of spatial streams that the STA supports in reception for a given HE-MCS as a function of the received HE PPDU bandwidth at an HE STA transmitting an Operating Mode field is defined as

$$\text{floor} \left(Rx\text{-NSS-from-OMF} \times (\text{Max-HE-NSS-at-BW} / \text{Max-HE-NSS-at-80}) \right) \quad (9\text{-}2\text{a})$$

1 where

2 Rx-NSS-from-OMF is Rx NSS from the Operating Mode field transmitted by the STA

3 Max-HE-NSS-at-BW is the maximum HE NSS among all HE-MCS at BW MHz from the Supported HE-
4 MCS And NSS Set field transmitted by the STA

5 Max-HE-NSS-at-80 is the maximum HE NSS among all HE-MCS at 80 MHz from the Supported HE-
6 MCS and NSS Set field transmitted by the STA

7 NOTE—For operating mode between two HE STAs, the Rx NSS subfield indicates the maximum number of spatial
8 streams at channel widths less than or equal to 80 MHz.

9.4.1.60 TWT Information field

Change Figure 9-142 (TWT Information field format) as follows:

B0	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	Bn
TWT Flow Identifier	Response Requested		Next TWT Request		Next TWT Subfield Size	Reserved All TWT		Next TWT

Bits: 3 1 1 2 1 0, 32, 48, or 64

Figure 9-142—TWT Information field format

Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:

The TWT Flow Identifier subfield contains the TWT flow identifier for which TWT information is requested or being provided. The TWT Flow Identifier subfield is reserved if the All TWT subfield is 1.

Insert the following before the last paragraph:

The All TWT subfield is set to 1 by an HE STA to indicate that the TWT Information frame reschedules all TWTs as defined in 26.8.4 (Use of TWT Information frames). Otherwise, it is set to 0.

Insert the following subclauses after 9.4.1.63:

9.4.1.64 HE MIMO Control field

The HE MIMO Control field is defined in Figure 9-144a (HE MIMO Control field format).

B0	B2	B3	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	B10	B11	B12	B14	B15
Nc Index	Nr Index		BW	Grouping		Codebook Information	Feedback Type		Remaining Feedback Segments		First Feedback Segment	

Bit s: 3 3 2 1 1 2 3 1

B16	B22	B23	B29	B30	B35	B36	B37	B39	B40	B47	B48	B55
RU Start Index	RU End Index	Sounding Dialog Token Number	Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap Present		Reserved	Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap		0 or 8	0 or 8			

Figure 9-144a—HE MIMO Control field format

The subfields of the HE MIMO Control field are defined in Table 9-93a (HE MIMO Control field encoding).

Table 9-93a—HE MIMO Control field encoding

Subfield	Description
Nc Index	<p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates SU or MU, the Nc Index subfield indicates the number of columns, Nc, in the compressed beamforming feedback matrix and is set to $Nc - 1$.</p> <p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates CQI, the Nc Index subfield indicates the number of space time streams, Nc, in the CQI Report and is set to $Nc - 1$.</p>
Nr Index	<p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates SU or MU, then the Nr Index sub-field indicates the number of rows, Nr, in the compressed beamforming feed-back matrix and is set to $Nr - 1$. The value 0 is reserved.</p> <p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates CQI, then the Nr Index subfield is reserved.</p>
BW	<p>Indicates the channel width used to determine the starting and ending subcar-rier indices when interpreting the RU Start Index and RU End Index sub-fields.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 20 MHz Set to 1 for 40 MHz Set to 2 for 80 MHz Set to 3 for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz
Grouping	<p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates SU or MU, then the Grouping sub-field indicates the subcarrier grouping, Ng, used for the compressed beam-forming feedback matrix:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for $Ng = 4$ Set to 1 for $Ng = 16$ <p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates CQI, then the Grouping subfield is reserved.</p>

Table 9-93a—HE MIMO Control field encoding (continued)

Codebook Information	<p>Indicates the size of codebook entries.</p> <p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates SU:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 4 bits for ϕ and 2 bits for ψ Set to 1 for 6 bits for ϕ and 4 bits for ψ <p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates MU:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 7 bits for ϕ and 5 bits for ψ Set to 1 for 9 bits for ϕ and 7 bits for ψ <p>If the Feedback Type subfield indicates CQI, then the Codebook Information subfield is reserved.</p> <p>NOTE—The codebook size for MU Feedback with $N_g = 16$ is limited to $(\phi, \psi) = \{9, 7\}$</p>
Feedback Type	<p>Indicates the feedback type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for SU Set to 1 for MU Set to 2 for CQI 3 is reserved
Remaining Feedback Segments	<p>Indicates the number of remaining feedback segments for the associated HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for the last feedback segment of a segmented report or the only feedback segment of an unsegmented report. Set to a value between 1 and 7 for a feedback segment that is not the last feedback segment of a segmented report. <p>In a retransmitted feedback segment, the subfield is set to the same value associated with the feedback segment in the original transmission.</p>
First Feedback Segment	<p>Set to 1 for the first feedback segment of a segmented report or the only feedback segment of an unsegmented report.</p> <p>Set to 0 if not the first feedback segment or if the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field and HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field are not present in the frame.</p> <p>In a retransmitted feedback segment, the subfield is set to the same value associated with the feedback segment in the original transmission.</p> <p>NOTE—The First Feedback Segment subfield is always set to 0 if the Feedback Type subfield indicates CQI because the HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI Report frame is always less than 11 454 octets in length.</p>
RU Start Index	<p>The starting RU index indicates the first 26-tone RU for which the HE beamformer is requesting feedback.</p>
RU End Index	<p>The ending RU index indicates the last 26-tone RU for which the HE beamformer is requesting feedback.</p>
Sounding Dialog Token Number	<p>Set to the same value as the Sounding Dialog Token Number field in the corresponding HE NDP Announcement frame.</p>

In an HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame not carrying an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report, the Nc Index, Nr Index, Channel Width, Grouping, Codebook Information, Feedback Type and Sounding Dialog Token Number subfields are reserved, the First Feedback Segment subfield is set to 0 and the Remaining Feedback Segments subfield is set to 7.

The Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap Present subfield indicates whether a Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield and a reserved field of 8 bits are present in the HE MIMO Control field. These subfields are present

1 if the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap Present subfield is equal to 1. These subfields are not present if the
 2 Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap Present subfield is equal to 0.
 3

4
 5 The Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield is defined in 9.3.1.19 (VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame
 6 format).
 7

8
 9 **9.4.1.65 HE Compressed Beamforming Report field**
 10

11
 12 The HE Compressed Beamforming Report field carries the average SNR of each space-time stream and
 13 compressed beamforming feedback matrices V for use by a transmit beamformer to determine steering
 14 matrices Q , as described in 10.32.3 (Explicit feedback beamforming) and 19.3.12.3 (Explicit feedback
 15 beamforming).
 16

17
 18 The size of the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field depends on the values in the HE MIMO Control
 19 field. The HE Compressed Beamforming Report field contains HE Compressed Beamforming Report infor-
 20 mation or successive (possibly zero-length) portions thereof in the case of segmented HE compressed beam-
 21 forming/CQI report (see 26.7.4 (Rules for generating segmented feedback)). HE Compressed Beamforming
 22 Report information is included in the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report if the Feedback Type sub-
 23 field in the HE MIMO Control field indicates SU or MU. If the HE MIMO Control field contains a Disal-
 24 lowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield, then the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field does not include
 25 information for tones that are included within 242-tone RUs that are indicated as disallowed by the bitmap.
 26

27
 28 The HE Compressed Beamforming Report information contains the channel matrix elements indexed, first,
 29 by matrix angles in order shown in Table 9-73 (Order of angles in the Compressed Beamforming Feedback
 30 Matrix subfield when used in a non-S1G band), and second, by data and pilot subcarrier index from lowest
 31 frequency to highest frequency. An explanation of how these angles are generated from the beamforming
 32 feedback matrix V is given in 19.3.12.3.6 (Compressed beamforming feedback matrix), where N_c is the
 33 number of columns in a compressed beamforming feedback matrix determined by the N_c Index subfield of
 34 the HE MIMO Control field, and N_r is the number of rows in a compressed beamforming feedback matrix
 35 determined by the N_r Index subfield of the HE MIMO Control field.
 36

37
 38 The beamforming feedback matrix V is formed by the beamformee as follows. The beamformer transmits an
 39 HE sounding NDP with $N_{STS,NDP}$ space-time streams, where $N_{STS,NDP}$ takes a value between 2 and 8. Based
 40 on this HE sounding NDP, the beamformee estimates the $N_{RX,BFEE} \times N_{STS,NDP}$ channel, and based on that
 41 channel it determines a $N_r \times N_c$ orthogonal matrix V , where N_r and N_c satisfy Equation (9-1). $N_{RX,BFEE}$ is
 42 the number of receiver chains used to receive the HE sounding NDP at the beamformee.
 43

44 Further restrictions on N_c are described in 27.2 (HE PHY service interface). The angles are quantized as
 45 defined in Table 9-76 (Quantization of angles) with b_ψ defined by the Codebook Information field of the HE
 46 MIMO Control field (see 9.4.1.64 (HE MIMO Control field)).
 47

48
 49 The HE Compressed Beamforming Report information has the structure and order defined in Table 9-93b
 50 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report information), where N_a is the number of angles used for the com-
 51 pressed beamforming feedback matrix (see Table 9-73 (Order of angles in the compressed beamforming
 52 feedback matrix when used in a non-S1G band)).
 53

60
 61 **Table 9-93b—HE Compressed Beamforming Report information**
 62

63

Field	Size (bits)	Meaning
-------	-------------	---------

Table 9-93b—HE Compressed Beamforming Report information (continued)

Average SNR of Space-Time Stream 1	8	Signal-to-noise ratio at the beamformee for space-time stream 1 averaged over all data subcarriers. See Table 9-79 (Average SNR of Space-Time Stream i subfield).
...		...
Average SNR of Space-Time Stream Nc	8	Signal-to-noise ratio at the beamformee for space-time stream Nc averaged over all data subcarriers. See Table 9-79 (Average SNR of Space-Time Stream i subfield).
Compressed beamforming feedback matrix V for subcarrier $k = scidx(0)$	$Na \times (b_\phi + b_\psi)/2$	Compressed beamforming feedback matrix defined in Table 9-73 (Order of angles in the Compressed Beamforming Feedback Matrix subfield when used in a non-S1G band).
Compressed beamforming feedback matrix V for subcarrier $k = scidx(1)$	$Na \times (b_\phi + b_\psi)/2$	Compressed beamforming feedback matrix defined in Table 9-73 (Order of angles in the Compressed Beamforming Feedback Matrix subfield when used in a non-S1G band).
Compressed beamforming feedback matrix V for subcarrier $k = scidx(2)$	$Na \times (b_\phi + b_\psi)/2$	Compressed beamforming feedback matrix defined in Table 9-73 (Order of angles in the Compressed Beamforming Feedback Matrix subfield when used in a non-S1G band).
...		...
Compressed beamforming feedback matrix V for subcarrier $k = scidx(Ns - 1)$	$Na \times (b_\phi + b_\psi)/2$	Compressed beamforming feedback matrix defined in Table 9-73 (Order of angles in the Compressed Beamforming Feedback Matrix subfield when used in a non-S1G band).

In Table 9-93b (HE Compressed Beamforming Report information), Ns is the number of subcarriers for which a compressed beamforming feedback matrix is sent back to the beamformer. A beamformer or beamformee, depending upon which of the two determines the feedback parameters, reduces Ns by using a method referred to as grouping, in which only a single compressed beamforming feedback matrix is reported for each group of Ng adjacent subcarriers. Ns is a function of the BW, RU Start Index, RU End Index and Grouping subfields in the HE MIMO Control field (see 9.4.1.64 (HE MIMO Control field)).

Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ are identified by the RU Start Index and RU End Index subfields respectively, together with the BW and Grouping subfields, as defined in Table 9-93c (Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 4$) and Table 9-93d (Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 16$).

Table 9-93c—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 4$

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
0	-122	-96	-244	-216	-500	-472	-1012	-984	-500(L)	-472(L)
1	-96	-68	-220	-192	-476	-448	-988	-960	-476(L)	-448(L)

Table 9-93c—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 4$ (continued)

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
2	-68	-40	-192	-164	-448	-420	-960	-932	-448(L)	-420(L)
3	-44	-16	-164	-136	-420	-392	-932	-904	-420(L)	-392(L)
4	-16	16	-136	-108	-392	-364	-904	-876	-392(L)	-364(L)
5	16	44	-112	-84	-368	-340	-880	-852	-368(L)	-340(L)
6	40	68	-84	-56	-340	-312	-852	-824	-340(L)	-312(L)
7	68	96	-56	-28	-312	-284	-824	-796	-312(L)	-284(L)
8	96	122	-32	-4	-288	-260	-800	-772	-288(L)	-260(L)
9			4	32	-260	-232	-772	-744	-260(L)	-232(L)
10			28	56	-232	-204	-744	-716	-232(L)	-204(L)
11			56	84	-204	-176	-716	-688	-204(L)	-176(L)
12			84	112	-180	-152	-692	-664	-180(L)	-152(L)
13			108	136	-152	-124	-664	-636	-152(L)	-124(L)
14			136	164	-124	-96	-636	-608	-124(L)	-96(L)
15			164	192	-100	-72	-612	-584	-100(L)	-72(L)
16			192	220	-72	-44	-584	-556	-72(L)	-44(L)
17			216	244	-44	-16	-556	-528	-44(L)	-16(L)
18					-16	16	-528	-496	-16(L)	16(L)
19					16	44	-496	-468	16(L)	44(L)
20					44	72	-468	-440	44(L)	72(L)
21					72	100	-440	-412	72(L)	100(L)
22					96	124	-416	-388	96(L)	124(L)
23					124	152	-388	-360	124(L)	152(L)
24					152	180	-360	-332	152(L)	180(L)
25					176	204	-336	-308	176(L)	204(L)
26					204	232	-308	-280	204(L)	232(L)
27					232	260	-280	-252	232(L)	260(L)
28					260	288	-252	-224	260(L)	288(L)
29					284	312	-228	-200	284(L)	312(L)
30					312	340	-200	-172	312(L)	340(L)
31					340	368	-172	-144	340(L)	368(L)
32					364	392	-148	-120	364(L)	392(L)
33					392	420	-120	-92	392(L)	420(L)

Table 9-93c—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 4$ (continued)

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
34					420	448	-92	-64	420(L)	448(L)
35					448	476	-64	-36	448(L)	476(L)
36					472	500	-40	-12	472(L)	500(L)
37							12	40	-500(H)	-472(H)
38							36	64	-476(H)	-448(H)
39							64	92	-448(H)	-420(H)
40							92	120	-420(H)	-392(H)
41							120	148	-392(H)	-364(H)
42							144	172	-368(H)	-340(H)
43							172	200	-340(H)	-312(H)
44							200	228	-312(H)	-284(H)
45							224	252	-288(H)	-260(H)
46							252	280	-260(H)	-232(H)
47							280	308	-232(H)	-204(H)
48							308	336	-204(H)	-176(H)
49							332	360	-180(H)	-152(H)
50							360	388	-152(H)	-124(H)
51							388	416	-124(H)	-96(H)
52							412	440	-100(H)	-72(H)
53							440	468	-72(H)	-44(H)
54							468	496	-44(H)	-16(H)
55							496	528	-16(H)	16(H)
56							528	556	16(H)	44(H)
57							556	584	44(H)	72(H)
58							584	612	72(H)	100(H)
59							608	636	96(H)	124(H)
60							636	664	124(H)	152(H)
61							664	692	152(H)	180(H)
62							688	716	176(H)	204(H)
63							716	744	204(H)	232(H)
64							744	772	232(H)	260(H)
65							772	800	260(H)	288(H)

Table 9-93c—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 4$ (continued)

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
66							796	824	284(H)	312(H)
67							824	852	312(H)	340(H)
68							852	880	340(H)	368(H)
69							876	904	364(H)	392(H)
70							904	932	392(H)	420(H)
71							932	960	420(H)	448(H)
72							960	988	448(H)	476(H)
73							984	1012	472(H)	500(H)

NOTE 1—S denotes subcarrier index $scidx(0)$, identified by the RU Start Index subfield; E denotes subcarrier index $scidx(Ns - 1)$, identified by the RU End Index subfield.

NOTE 2—x(L) denotes subcarrier index x in the frequency segment lower in frequency, and x(H) denotes subcarrier index x in the frequency segment higher in frequency.

Table 9-93d—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 16$

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
0	-122	-84	-244	-212	-500	-468	-1012	-980	-500(L)	-468(L)
1	-100	-68	-228	-180	-484	-436	-996	-948	-484(L)	-436(L)
2	-68	-36	-196	-164	-452	-420	-964	-932	-452(L)	-420(L)
3	-52	-4	-164	-132	-420	-388	-932	-900	-420(L)	-388(L)
4	-20	20	-148	-100	-404	-356	-916	-868	-404(L)	-356(L)
5	4	52	-116	-84	-372	-340	-884	-852	-372(L)	-340(L)
6	36	68	-84	-52	-340	-308	-852	-820	-340(L)	-308(L)
7	68	100	-68	-20	-324	-276	-836	-788	-324(L)	-276(L)
8	84	122	-36	-4	-292	-260	-804	-772	-292(L)	-260(L)
9			4	36	-260	-228	-772	-740	-260(L)	-228(L)
10			20	68	-244	-196	-756	-708	-244(L)	-196(L)
11			52	84	-212	-164	-724	-676	-212(L)	-164(L)
12			84	116	-180	-148	-692	-660	-180(L)	-148(L)
13			100	148	-164	-116	-676	-628	-164(L)	-116(L)
14			132	164	-132	-84	-644	-596	-132(L)	-84(L)
15			164	196	-100	-68	-612	-580	-100(L)	-68(L)

Table 9-93d—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 16$ (continued)

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
16			180	228	-84	-36	-596	-548	-84(L)	-36(L)
17			212	244	-52	-4	-564	-516	-52(L)	-4(L)
18					-20	20	-532	-492	-20(L)	20(L)
19					4	52	-508	-460	4(L)	52(L)
20					36	84	-476	-428	36(L)	84(L)
21					68	100	-444	-412	68(L)	100(L)
22					84	132	-428	-380	84(L)	132(L)
23					116	164	-396	-348	116(L)	164(L)
24					148	180	-364	-332	148(L)	180(L)
25					164	212	-348	-300	164(L)	212(L)
26					196	244	-316	-268	196(L)	244(L)
27					228	260	-284	-252	228(L)	260(L)
28					260	292	-252	-220	260(L)	292(L)
29					276	324	-236	-188	276(L)	324(L)
30					308	340	-204	-172	308(L)	340(L)
31					340	372	-172	-140	340(L)	372(L)
32					356	404	-156	-108	356(L)	404(L)
33					388	420	-124	-92	388(L)	420(L)
34					420	452	-92	-60	420(L)	452(L)
35					436	484	-76	-28	436(L)	484(L)
36					468	500	-44	-12	468(L)	500(L)
37							12	44	-500(H)	-468(H)
38							28	76	-484(H)	-436(H)
39							60	92	-452(H)	-420(H)
40							92	124	-420(H)	-388(H)
41							108	156	-404(H)	-356(H)
42							140	172	-372(H)	-340(H)
43							172	204	-340(H)	-308(H)
44							188	236	-324(H)	-276(H)
45							220	252	-292(H)	-260(H)
46							252	284	-260(H)	-228(H)
47							268	316	-244(H)	-196(H)

Table 9-93d—Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(Ns - 1)$ for $Ng = 16$ (continued)

RU Index	20 MHz		40 MHz		80 MHz		160 MHz		80+80 MHz	
	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E	S	E
48							300	348	-212(H)	-164(H)
49							332	364	-180(H)	-148(H)
50							348	396	-164(H)	-116(H)
51							380	428	-132(H)	-84(H)
52							412	444	-100(H)	-68(H)
53							428	476	-84(H)	-36(H)
54							460	508	-52(H)	-4(H)
55							492	532	-20(H)	20(H)
56							516	564	4(H)	52(H)
57							548	596	36(H)	84(H)
58							580	612	68(H)	100(H)
59							596	644	84(H)	132(H)
60							628	676	116(H)	164(H)
61							660	692	148(H)	180(H)
62							676	724	164(H)	212(H)
63							708	756	196(H)	244(H)
64							740	772	228(H)	260(H)
65							772	804	260(H)	292(H)
66							788	836	276(H)	324(H)
67							820	852	308(H)	340(H)
68							852	884	340(H)	372(H)
69							868	916	356(H)	404(H)
70							900	932	388(H)	420(H)
71							932	964	420(H)	452(H)
72							948	996	436(H)	484(H)
73							980	1012	468(H)	500(H)
NOTE 1—S denotes subcarrier index $scidx(0)$, identified by the RU Start Index subfield; E denotes subcarrier index $scidx(Ns - 1)$, identified by the RU End Index subfield. NOTE 2— $x(L)$ denotes subcarrier index x in the frequency segment lower in frequency, and $x(H)$ denotes subcarrier index x in the frequency segment higher in frequency.										

Subcarrier indices $scidx(i)$, $i = 0, \dots, Ns - 1$ are the subset of the subcarrier indices identified by the BW and Grouping subfields, as defined in Table 9-93e (Subcarrier indices for compressed beamforming feedback matrix), starting with $scidx(0)$ and ending with $scidx(Ns - 1)$, in the order given.

1 NOTE 1—This implicitly defines N_s .
 2

3 NOTE 2—For full bandwidth feedback, subcarrier indices $scidx(i)$, $i = 0, \dots, N_s - 1$ are the entire superset shown in
 4 Table 9-93e (Subcarrier indices for compressed beamforming feedback matrix), in the order given.
 5

7 **Table 9-93e—Subcarrier indices for compressed beamforming feedback matrix**
 8

10 Channel Width	11 Ng	12 Superset of subcarrier indices ($scidx$)
13 20 MHz	4	14 $-122, -120, -116, \dots, -8, -4, -2, 2, 4, 8, \dots, 116, 120, 122$
	16	15 $-122, -116, -100, \dots, -20, -4, -2, 2, 4, 20, \dots, 100, 116, 122$
17 40 MHz	4	18 $-244, -240, \dots, -8, -4, 4, 8, \dots, 240, 244$
	16	19 $-244, -228, \dots, -20, -4, 4, 20, \dots, 228, 244$
21 80 MHz	4	22 $-500, -496, \dots, -8, -4, 4, 8, \dots, 496, 500$
	16	23 $-500, -484, \dots, -20, -4, 4, 20, \dots, 484, 500$
25 160 MHz	4	26 $-1012, -1008, \dots, -520, -516, -508, -504, \dots, -16, -12,$ 27 $12, 16, \dots, 504, 508, 516, 520, \dots, 1008, 1012$
	16	28 $-1012, -996, \dots, -532, -516, -508, -492, \dots, -28, -12,$ 29 $12, 28, \dots, 492, 508, 516, 532, \dots, 996, 1012$
32 80+80 MHz	4	33 $-500(L), -496(L), \dots, -8(L), -4(L), 4(L), 8(L), \dots, 496(L), 500(L),$ 34 $-500(H), -496(H), \dots, -8(H), -4(H), 4(H), 8(H), \dots, 496(H), 500(H)$
	16	35 $-500(L), -484(L), \dots, -20(L), -4(L), 4(L), 20(L), \dots, 484(L), 500(L),$ 36 $-500(H), -484(H), \dots, -20(H), -4(H), 4(H), 20(H), \dots, 484(H), 500(H)$
38 NOTE 1— $x(L)$ denotes subcarrier index x in the frequency segment lower in frequency, and $x(H)$ denotes subcarrier 39 index x in the frequency segment higher in frequency. 40		
41 NOTE 2—“...” denotes an arithmetic progression in Ng increments. 42		
43 NOTE 3—Pilot subcarriers are not skipped.		

44
 45
 46 The Average SNR of Space-Time Stream i subfield in Table 9-93b (HE Compressed Beamforming Report
 47 information) is an 8-bit 2s complement integer defined in Table 9-79 (Average SNR of Space-Time Stream
 48 i subfield).
 49

50
 51
 52 The $AvgSNR_i$ in Table 9-79 (Average SNR of Space-Time Stream i subfield) is found by computing the
 53 SNR per subcarrier in decibels for the subcarriers identified in Table 9-93c (Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and
 54 $scidx(N_s - 1)$ for $Ng = 4$ and Table 9-93d (Subcarrier indices $scidx(0)$ and $scidx(N_s - 1)$ for Ng
 55 = 16) for $Ng = 16$, and then computing the arithmetic mean of those values. Each SNR value per subcarrier
 56 in stream i (before being averaged) corresponds to the SNR associated with column i of the beamforming
 57 feedback matrix V determined at the beamformee. Each SNR corresponds to the predicted SNR at the beam-
 58 formee when the beamformer applies all columns of the matrix V .
 59

60
 61
 62 The computation of the $AvgSNR_i$ values does not include channel information from subcarriers that lie
 63 within 242-tone RUs that are indicated as punctured by the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield, if pres-
 64 ent, of the HE NDP Announcement frame that solicited the feedback.
 65

1 Padding is not present between angles in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report information, even if they
 2 correspond to different subcarriers. If the size of the HE Compressed Beamforming Report information is
 3 not an integer multiple of 8 bits, up to seven 0s are appended to the end of the field to make its size an inte-
 4 ger multiple of 8 bits.
 5

9.4.1.66 HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field

10 The HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field carries explicit feedback in the form of delta SNRs. The
 11 information in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field and the HE MU Exclusive Beamforming
 12 Report field can be used by the transmit MU beamformer to determine the steering matrices Q , as described
 13 in 27.3.3.1 (DL MU-MIMO).
 14

15 The size of the HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field depends on the values in the HE MIMO Con-
 16 trol field. The HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field contains HE MU Exclusive Beamforming
 17 Report information or successive (possibly zero-length) portions thereof in the case of segmented HE com-
 18 pressed beamforming/CQI report (see 26.7.4 (Rules for generating segmented feedback)). HE MU Exclu-
 19 sive Beamforming Report information is included in the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report (in
 20 addition to HE Compressed Beamforming Report information) if the Feedback Type subfield in the HE
 21 MIMO Control field indicates MU. If the HE MIMO Control field contains a Disallowed Subchannel Bit-
 22 map subfield, then the HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field does not include information for tones
 23 that are included within 242-tone RUs that are indicated as disallowed by the bitmap.
 24

25 The HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information consists of Delta SNR subfields for each of the
 26 space-time streams, 1 to N_c , of a subset of subcarriers typically spaced Ng apart, where Ng is signaled in the
 27 Grouping subfield of the HE MIMO Control field. The subset of subcarriers starts from the lowest frequency
 28 subcarrier and continues to the highest frequency subcarrier. The subcarrier indices of the feedback for each
 29 Delta SNR subfield are identical to the subcarrier indices for the compressed beamforming feedback matrix
 30 V .
 31

32 No padding is present between $\Delta SNR_{k,i}$ in the HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field, even if they
 33 correspond to different subcarriers. The subset of subcarriers included is determined by the values of the RU
 34 Start Index, RU End Index, and Grouping subfields of the HE MIMO Control field. For each subcarrier
 35 included, the deviation in dB of the SNR of that subcarrier for each column of V relative to the average SNR
 36 of the corresponding space-time stream is computed using Equation (9-2) except that k is the subcarrier
 37 index in the range $scidx(0), \dots, scidx(N_s - 1)$ and \overline{SNR}_i is the average SNR of space-time stream i reported
 38 in the Average SNR of Space-Time Stream i field of the HE Compressed Beamforming Report Information
 39 field. In Equation (9-2), the average SNR value is computed only for subcarriers that are not indicated as dis-
 40 allowed by a Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield, when it is present.
 41

42 The HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information has the structure and order defined in Table 9-93f
 43 (HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information).
 44

53 **Table 9-93f—HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information**

54 Field	55 Size (bits)	56 Meaning
57 Delta SNR for space-time stream 1 for 58 subcarrier $k = scidx(0)$	59 4	60 $\Delta SNR_{scidx(0),1}$ as defined in Equation (9-2) as modi- 61 fied above.
62 ...	63	64 ...
65 Delta SNR for space-time stream N_c for subcarrier $k = scidx(0)$	66 4	67 $\Delta SNR_{scidx(0),N_c}$ as defined in Equation (9-2) as modified above.

Table 9-93f—HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information

Delta SNR for space-time stream 1 for subcarrier $k = scidx(1)$	4	$\Delta SNR_{scidx(1),1}$ as defined in Equation (9-2) as modified above.
...		...
Delta SNR for space-time stream N_c for subcarrier $k = scidx(1)$	4	$\Delta SNR_{scidx(1),N_c}$ as defined in Equation (9-2) as modified above.
...		...
Delta SNR for space-time stream 1 for subcarrier $k = scidx(N_s - 1)$	4	$\Delta SNR_{scidx(N_s - 1),1}$ as defined in Equation (9-2) as modified above.
...		...
Delta SNR for space-time stream N_c for subcarrier $k = scidx(N_s - 1)$	4	$\Delta SNR_{scidx(N_s - 1),N_c}$ as defined in Equation (9-2) as modified above.

In Table 9-93f (HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information), N_s and $scidx()$ are defined in 9.4.1.65 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report field).

9.4.1.67 HE CQI Report field

The HE CQI Report field carries the per-RU average SNRs of each space-time stream, where each per-RU average SNR is the arithmetic mean of the SNR in decibels over a 26-tone RU for which the feedback is being requested. The HE CQI Report field contains information about the quality of the link.

The size of the HE CQI Report field depends on the values in the HE MIMO Control field. The HE CQI Report field contains HE CQI Report information. HE CQI Report information is included in the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report if the Feedback Type subfield in the HE MIMO Control field indicates CQI feedback. If the HE MIMO Control field contains a Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield, then the HE CQI Report field does not include information for tones that are included within 26-tone RUs that are indicated as disallowed by the bitmap.

The HE CQI Report field has the structure and order defined in Table 9-93g (HE CQI Report information).

Table 9-93g—HE CQI Report information

Field	Size (bits)	Meaning
Average SNR for space-time stream 1 for RU index $k = ruidx(0)$	6	SNR at the beamformee for space-time stream 1 averaged over 26-tone RU. See Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).
...		...
Average SNR for space-time stream N_c for RU index $k = ruidx(0)$	6	SNR at the beamformee for space-time stream N_c averaged over 26-tone RU. See Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).

1
2
3
4 **Table 9-93g—HE CQI Report information (continued)**
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Average SNR for space-time stream 1 for RU index $k = ruidx(1)$	6	SNR at the beamformee for space-time stream 1 averaged over 26-tone RU. See Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).
...		...
Average SNR for space-time stream Nc for RU index $k = ruidx(1)$	6	SNR at the beamformee for space-time stream Nc averaged over 26-tone RU. See Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).
...		...
Average SNR for space-time stream 1 for RU index $k = ruidx(Ncqi - 1)$	6	SNR at the beamformee for space-time stream 1 averaged over 26-tone RU. See Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).
...		...
Average SNR for space-time stream Nc for RU index $k = ruidx(Ncqi - 1)$	6	SNR at the beamformee for space-time stream Nc averaged over 26-tone RU. See Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).

31
32
33 $Ncqi$ is the number of RU indices for which the CQI report is sent back to the beamformer.
34 $Ncqi = (ruidx(Ncqi - 1) - ruidx(0)) + 1$ – Disallowed # of RU26, where $ruidx(0)$ and $ruidx(Ncqi - 1)$ are
35 equal to the RU Start Index and RU End Index subfields, respectively. The RU index $ruidx(i) = ruidx(i - 1)$
36 + 1, where $1 \leq i \leq Ncqi - 2$. The 26-tone RU subcarrier indices for 20 MHz, 40 MHz and 80 MHz are
37 defined in Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-
38 OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU
39 and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an
40 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU), respectively.
41
42

43
44 The Average SNR of space-time stream i for the RU index k subfield in the Table 9-93g (HE CQI Report
45 information) is a 6-bit 2s complement integer whose definition is shown in Table 9-93h (Average SNR of
46 RU index k for space-time stream i subfield).
47
48

49 **Table 9-93h—Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield**
50
51

Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i	$\text{AvgSNR}_{k,i}$ (dB)
-32	≤ -10
-31	-9
-30	-8

1 **Table 9-93h—Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield (continued)**
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

...	...
30	52
31	≥ 53

12 The $AvgSNR_{k,i}$ in Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield) is found by
 13 computing the arithmetic mean of the SNR per subcarrier in decibels for space-time stream i over the sub-
 14 carriers in RU index k for which the feedback is being requested. The SNR per subcarrier calculation is
 15 defined in 9.4.1.65 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report field).
 16

19 Padding is not present between per-RU average SNRs of each space-time stream information, even if they
 20 correspond to different RUs and space-time streams. If the size of the HE CQI Report information is not an
 21 integer multiple of 8 bits, up to seven 0s are appended to the end of the field to make its size an integer mul-
 22 tiple of 8 bits.
 23

25 **9.4.2 Elements** 26

28 **9.4.2.1 General** 29

32 Insert the following rows into Table 9-94 (Element IDs) and update Reserved rows as appropriate:
33
34

35 **Table 9-94—Element IDs**
36

38 Element	39 Element ID	40 Element ID Extension	41 Extensible	42 Fragmentable
43 HE Capabilities (see 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element))	255	35	Yes	No
44 HE Operation (see 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element))	255	36	Yes	No
45 UORA Parameter Set element (see 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element))	255	37	Yes	No
46 MU EDCA Parameter Set (see 9.4.2.250 (MU EDCA Parameter Set element))	255	38	Yes	No
47 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element (see 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element))	255	39	Yes	No
48 NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element (see 9.4.2.252 (NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element))	255	41	Yes	No

Table 9-94—Element IDs (continued)

BSS Color Change Announcement (see 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element))	255	42	Yes	No
Quiet Time Period Setup (see 9.4.2.254 (Quiet Time Period element))	255	43	Yes	No
ESS Report (see 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element))	255	45	Yes	No
OPS (see 9.4.2.256 (OPS element))	255	46	Yes	No
HE BSS Load (see 9.4.2.257 (HE BSS Load element))	255	47	Yes	No
Multiple BSSID Configuration (see 9.4.2.258 (Multiple BSSID Configuration element))	255	55	Yes	No
Known BSSID (see 9.4.2.259 (Known BSSID element))	255	57	No	No
Short SSID List (see 9.4.2.260 (Short SSID List element))	255	58	No	No
HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities (see 9.4.2.261 (HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element))	255	59	Yes	No
UL MU Power Capabilities (see 9.4.2.262 (UL MU Power Capabilities element))	255	60	Yes	No

1 **9.4.2.3 Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element**

2

3 *Change Table 9-95 (BSS membership selector value encoding) as follows (only modified rows shown):*

4

5 **Table 9-95—BSS membership selector value encoding**

6

Value	Feature	Interpretation
126	VHT PHY	Support for the mandatory features of Clause 21 (Very high throughput (VHT) PHY specification) is required in order to join the BSS that was the source of the Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element or Extended Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element containing this value, <u>unless the STA is a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA and the BSS is an HE BSS.</u>
122	HE PHY	<u>Support for the mandatory features of Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) is required in order to join the BSS that was the source of the Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element or Extended Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element containing this value.</u>

28 **9.4.2.5 TIM element**

29

30 **9.4.2.5.1 General**

31

32 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

33

34 If included in an OPS frame or a FILS Discovery frame by an OPS AP for unscheduled opportunistic power save (see 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save)), the following apply:

35

- 36 — The DTIM Count field is reserved
- 37 — The DTIM Period field is reserved
- 38 — Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap that corresponds to an OPS non-AP STA with AID N is determined as follows:
 - 39 • Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap is set to 0 if the OPS AP does not intend to transmit to the OPS non-AP STA including to trigger the OPS non-AP STA for an UL MU transmission during the OPS period.
 - 40 • Otherwise, bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap for the OPS non-AP STA is set to 1.
- 41 — Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap that corresponds to an non-OPS non-AP STA with AID N is determined as follows:
 - 42 • Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap is set to 1 to indicate that AP has buffered frames for the STA and set to 0 otherwise.

43 If included in a TIM frame or a FILS Discovery frame by an OPS AP for scheduled opportunistic power save (see 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save)), the following apply:

44

- 45 — The DTIM Count field is reserved
- 46 — The DTIM Period field is reserved
- 47 — Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap that corresponds to an OPS non-AP STA with AID N is determined as follows:

- 1 • Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap is set to 0 if the OPS AP does not intend to transmit
2 to the OPS non-AP STA including to trigger the OPS non-AP STA for an UL MU transmission
3 during the TWT SP and before the next TWT SP.
- 4 • Otherwise, bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap for the OPS non-AP STA is set to 1.
- 5 — Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap that corresponds to a non-OPS non-AP STA with AID
6 N is determined as follows:
7 • Bit N in the traffic indication virtual bitmap is set to 1 to indicate that AP has buffered frames for
8 the STA and set to 0 otherwise.

9.4.2.26 Extended Capabilities element

Change the following rows in Table 9-153 (Extended Capabilities element) maintaining row order:

Table 9-153—Extended Capabilities element

Bit	Information	Notes
77	<u>TWT Requester Support</u>	A STA sets the TWT Requester Support field to 1 if <u>dot11TWTOptionActivated</u> is true and TWT requester functionality is supported. Otherwise, the STA sets the TWT Requester Support field to 0. See <u>10.48 (Target wake time (TWT))</u> .
78	<u>TWT Responder Support</u>	A STA sets the TWT Responder Support field to 1 if <u>dot11TWTOptionActivated</u> is true and TWT responder functionality is supported. Otherwise, the STA sets the TWT Responder Support field to 0. See <u>10.48 (Target wake time (TWT))</u> .
79	<u>OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support</u>	An AP STA sets the OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field to 1 if <u>dot11OBSSNarrowBWRUinOFDMATolerated</u> is true, and sets it to 0 otherwise. A non-AP STA sets the OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field to 0.
80	Complete List of NonTxBSSID Profiles	This field is reserved for a non-AP STA or when the AP has <u>dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented</u> set to false. <u>When set to 1, Set to 1</u> to indicates that the frame carrying this element includes a complete list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles. <u>When set to 0, Set to 0 by a non-HE AP</u> , if there is no indication about the completeness of the list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles in the frame. <u>Set to 0 by an HE AP to indicate that the frame carrying this element does not include a complete list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles</u> . Also see 11.1.3.8 (Multiple BSSID procedure).
83	<u>Enhanced Multi-BSSID Advertisement Support</u>	This field is reserved for a non-AP STA or when the AP has <u>dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented</u> set to false. <u>Set to 1 to indicate that the AP supports enhancements related to discovery and advertisement of nontransmitted BSSIDs</u> . Set to 0, otherwise. Also see 11.1.3.8 (Multiple BSSID procedure).
86	<u>OCT</u>	The non-AP STA sets the OCT field to 1 when <u>dot11OCTOptionImplemented</u> is true, and sets it to 0 otherwise. <u>This field is reserved for an AP</u> .

1 **9.4.2.29 TSPEC element**

2

3

4 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

5

6 The TSPEC element contains the set of parameters that define the characteristics and QoS expectations of a
 7 traffic flow, in the context of a particular STA, for use by the HC or PCP and STA(s) or a mesh STA and its
 8 peer mesh STAs in support of QoS traffic transfer using the procedures defined in 11.4 (TS operation) and
 9 11.22.16.3 (GCR procedures), or for use by HE STAs in support of HE APs' scheduling for MU operations
 10 (see 26.5 (MU operation)). The element information format comprises the items as defined in this subclause,
 11 and the structure is defined in Figure 9-298 (TSPEC element format).

12

13

14

15 *Change the 4th paragraph and associated tables as follows:*

16

17

18 The subfields of the TS Info field are defined as follows:

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

- The Traffic Type subfield is set to 1 for a periodic traffic pattern (e.g., isochronous TS of MSDUs or A-MSDUs, with constant or variable sizes, that are originated at fixed rate) or set to 0 for an aperiodic, or unspecified, traffic pattern (e.g., asynchronous TS of low-duty cycles).
- The TSID subfield contains a value that is a TSID. Note that the MSB (bit 4 in TS Info field) of the TSID subfield is always set to 1 when the TSPEC element is included within an ADDTS Response frame. For HE STAs, TSID subfield contains the TID associated with this TSPEC.
- The Direction subfield specifies the direction of data carried by the TS as defined in Table 9-158 (Direction subfield encoding).

32 **Table 9-158—Direction subfield encoding**

Bit 5	Bit 6	Usage
0	0	Uplink, defined as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — Non-DMG BSS: MSDUs or A-MSDUs are sent from the non-AP <u>non-HE STA to HC or from the non-AP HE STA to the HE AP</u> — DMG BSS: MSDUs or A-MSDUs are sent by the originator of the ADDTS Request frame
1	0	Downlink, defined as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — Non-DMG BSS: MSDUs or A-MSDUs are sent from the HC to the non-AP <u>non-HE STA or from the HE AP to the non-AP HE STA</u> — DMG BSS: MSDUs or A-MSDUs are sent by the recipient of the ADDTS Request frame
0	1	Direct link (MSDUs or A-MSDUs are sent from the non-AP STA to another non-AP STA)
1	1	Bidirectional link (equivalent to a downlink request plus an uplink request, each direction having the same parameters). The fields in the TSPEC element specify resources for a single direction. Double the specified resources are required to support both streams.

- 56
- 57
- 58
- 59
- 60
- 61
- 62
- 63
- 64
- 65
- The Access Policy subfield specifies the access method to be used for the TS, and is defined in Table 9-159 (Access Policy subfield).
 - The Aggregation subfield is valid only when the access method is HCCA or SPCA or when the access method is EDCA and the Schedule subfield is equal to 1. It is set to 1 by a non-AP STA to indicate that an aggregate schedule is required. It is set to 1 by the AP if an aggregate schedule is being provided to the STA. It is set to 0 otherwise. In all other cases, the Aggregation subfield is reserved.

Table 9-159—Access Policy subfield

Bit 7	Bit 8	Usage
0	0	Reserved
1	0	For non-HE STAs: Contention based channel access (EDCA) For HE STAs: Contention based channel access (EDCA) or MU based access (see 26.5 (MU operation))
0	1	Controlled channel access (HCCA for non-DMG STAs and SPCA for DMG STAs)
1	1	Controlled and contention based channel access (HCCA, EDCA mixed mode (HEMM) for non-DMG STAs; SPCA, EDCA mixed mode (SEMM) for DMG STAs)

- The APSD subfield is set to 1 to indicate that automatic PS delivery is to be used for the traffic associated with the TSPEC and set to 0 otherwise.
- The UP subfield indicates the actual value of the UP to be used for the transport of MSDUs or A-MSDUs belonging to this TS *when-if* relative prioritization is required. When the TCLAS element is present in the request, the UP subfield in TS Info field of the TSPEC element is reserved.
- The TS Info Ack Policy subfield indicates whether MAC acknowledgments are required for MPDUs or A-MSDUs belonging to this TSID and the form of those acknowledgments. The encoding of the TS Info Ack Policy subfield is shown in Table 9-160 (TS Info Ack Policy subfield encoding).

Table 9-160—TS Info Ack Policy subfield encoding

Bit 14	Bit 15	Usage
0	0	Normal Acknowledgment Ack The addressed recipient returns an Ack or QoS +CF-Ack frame after a SIFS, according to the procedures defined in 10.3.2.11 (Acknowledgment procedure) and 10.23.3.5 (HCCA transfer rules).
1	0	No Ack: The recipient(s) do not acknowledge the transmission.
0	1	Reserved
1	1	Block Ack: A separate block ack mechanism described in 10.25 (Block acknowledgment (block ack)) is used.

- The Schedule subfield specifies the requested type of schedule. The setting of the subfield when the access policy is EDCA is shown in Table 9-161 (Setting of Schedule subfield). When the Access Policy subfield is equal to any value other than EDCA, the Schedule subfield is reserved. When the Schedule and APSD subfields are equal to 1, the AP sets the Aggregation subfield to 1, indicating that an aggregate schedule is being provided to the STA.

Table 9-161—Setting of Schedule subfield

APSD	Schedule	Usage
0	0	No Schedule
1	0	Unscheduled APSD
0	1	Scheduled PSMP or GCR-SP
1	1	Scheduled APSD

1 ***Change the 10th and 11th paragraphs as follows:***
 2
 3

4 The Inactivity Interval field is 4 octets long and contains an unsigned integer that specifies the minimum
 5 amount of time, in microseconds, that can elapse without arrival or transfer of an MPDU belonging to the TS
 6 before this TS is deleted by the MAC entity at the HC for a non-HE STA, or before the information provided
7 in this TSPEC is considered invalid at HE STAs for HE STAs.
 8
 9

10 For non-HE STAs, the The Suspension Interval field is 4 octets long and contains an unsigned integer that
 11 specifies the minimum amount of time, in microseconds, that can elapse without arrival or transfer of an
 12 MSDU belonging to the TS before the generation of successive QoS(+)CF-Poll is stopped for this TS. A
 13 value of $4\ 294\ 967\ 295$ ($= 2^{32} - 1$) disables the suspension interval, indicating that polling for the TS is not
 14 to be interrupted based on inactivity. The suspension interval is always less than or equal to the inactivity
 15 interval. The Suspension Interval field is reserved for HE STAs.
 16
 17

18 **9.4.2.36 Neighbor Report element**
 19
 20

21 ***Change Figure 9-337 (BSSID Information field format) as follows:***
 22
 23

B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B9	B10	B11	B12	B13
AP Reachability	Security	Key Scope	Capabilities	Mobility Domain	High Throughput	Very High Throughput	FTM		
Bits:	2	1	1	6	1	1	1	1	
B14	B15	B16	B17	B18	B19	B20	B21	B31	
High Efficiency	ER BSS	Co-Located AP	20 TU Probe Response Active	Member Of ESS With 2.4/5 GHz Co-Located AP	OCT Supported With Reporting AP	Co-Located With 6 GHz AP	Reserved		
Bits:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	4811

41 **Figure 9-337—BSSID Information field format**
 42
 43

44 ***Change paragraphs 11-12 as follows:***
 45
 46

47 The High Throughput bit is set to 1 to indicate that the AP represented by this BSSID is an HT AP including
 48 the HT Capabilities element in its Beacons, and that the contents of that HT Capabilities element are identi-
49 cal in content to the HT Capabilities element advertised by the AP sending the report.
 50
 51

52 The High Throughput bit is set to 1 to indicate that the AP represented by this BSSID is an HT AP and that
 53 the HT Capabilities element (or HT Operation element), if included as a subelement in the report, is identical
 54 in content to the HT Capabilities element (or HT Operation element) included in the neighboring AP's Bea-
 55 con. Otherwise the High Throughput subfield is set to 0.
 56
 57

58 The Very High Throughput bit is set to 1 to indicate that the AP represented by this BSSID is a VHT AP and
 59 that the VHT Capabilities element (or VHT Operation element), if included as a subelement in the report, is
 60 identical in content to the VHT Capabilities element (or VHT Operation element) included in the neighboring
61 AP's Beacon frame. Otherwise the Very High Throughput subfield is set to 0.
 62
 63

64 ***Insert the following after paragraph 14 (beginning “The FTM field... ”):***
 65

1 The High Efficiency subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the AP represented by this BSSID is an HE AP and
 2 that the HE Capabilities element (or HE Operation element), if included as a subelement in the report, is
 3 identical in content to the HE Capabilities element (or HE Operation element) included in the neighboring
 4 AP's Beacon frame. Otherwise the High Efficiency subfield is set to 0.
 5

7 The ER BSS subfield is set to 1 if the BSS corresponding to the HE AP representing this BSSID is an ER
 8 BSS transmitting Beacon frames using an HE ER SU PPDU (see 26.17.6 (ER beacon generation in an ER
 9 BSS)). Otherwise the ER BSS subfield is set to 0.
 10

12 The Co-Located AP subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the AP reported in this Neighbor Report element is in
 13 the same co-located AP set as the AP sending the Neighbor Report element.
 14

16 The 20 TU Probe Response Active subfield is set to 1 if the reported AP is part of an ESS where all the APs
 17 that operate in the same channel as the reported AP and that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame
 18 have dot1120TUProbeResponseOptionImplemented equal to true and so are transmitting unsolicited Probe
 19 Response frames every 20 TUs (see 26.17.2.3 (Scanning in the 6 GHz band)). It is set to 0 otherwise or if the
 20 reporting AP does not have that information.
 21

23 The Member Of ESS With 2.4/5 GHz Co-Located APsubfield is set to 1 if the reported AP is part of an ESS
 24 where each AP in the ESS and operating in the same band as the reported AP (irrespective of the operating
 25 channel in that band) that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame has dot11MemberOfColocat-
 26 ed6GHzESSOptionImplemented equal to true and also has a corresponding AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or
 27 5 GHz bands that is in the same co-located AP set as that AP. It is set to 0 otherwise or if the reporting AP
 28 does not have that information. It is reserved if the reported AP is operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands.
 29

31 NOTE 1—This subfield indicates that the reported AP is part of an ESS that has no 6 GHz-only APs that might be
 32 detected by a STA receiving this frame. This means that all APs operating in the 6 GHz band that are part of that ESS
 33 that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame can be discovered in the 2.4 GHz and/or 5 GHz bands.
 34

36 NOTE 2—An AP might be detected by a STA if the STA and the AP are on the same channel and in range.
 37

38 The OCT Supported With Reported AP subfield is set to 1 to indicate that OCT is supported to exchange
 39 MMPDUs with the AP reported in the Neighbor Report element (see 11.32.5 (On-channel Tunneling (OCT)
 40 operation)), through over-the-air transmissions with the AP sending the Neighbor Report element. It is set to
 41 0 otherwise.
 42

44 The Co-Located With 6 GHz AP subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the AP reported by the Neighbor Report
 45 element is in the same co-located AP set as the 6 GHz AP and that the 6 GHz AP can be discovered by Man-
 46 agement frames sent by the reported AP. It is set to 0 otherwise.
 47

49 ***Delete paragraph 15 (“Bits 14-31 are reserved.”)***
 50

52 ***Insert new rows in Table 9-173 (Optional subelement IDs for Neighbor report) as follows and update the
 53 reserved row:***
 54

56 **Table 9-173—Optional subelement IDs for Neighbor report**
 57

Subelement ID	Name	Extensible
193	HE Capabilities	Yes
194	HE Operation	Yes
195	BSS Load	

Table 9-173—Optional subelement IDs for Neighbor report

Subelement ID	Name	Extensible
196	HE BSS Load	Yes
197	SSID	

Insert the following after the 2nd last paragraph (beginning “The VHT Operation subelement... ”):

The HE Capabilities subelement is the same as the HE Capabilities element and is defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element).

The HE Operation subelement is the same as the HE Operation element and is defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element).

The BSS Load subelement is the same as the BSS Load element and is defined in 9.4.2.27 (BSS Load element).

The HE BSS Load subelement is the same as the HE BSS Load element and is defined in 9.4.2.257 (HE BSS Load element).

The SSID subelement is the same as the SSID element and is defined in 9.4.2.2 (SSID element).

9.4.2.45 Multiple BSSID element

Change the 3rd paragraph as follows (line break paragraph after first sentence and add note):

The MaxBSSID Indicator field contains a value assigned to n , where 2^n is the maximum number of BSSIDs in the multiple BSSID set, including the reference BSSID (see 11.10.14 (Multiple BSSID set)).

NOTE— $1 \leq n \leq 8$ since the BSSID Index field in 9.4.2.73 (Multiple BSSID-Index element) indicates the number of BSSIDs in a multiple BSSID set.

Change the 7th paragraph as follows:

~~The Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement contains a list of elements for one or more APs or DMG STAs that have nontransmitted BSSIDs. A nontransmitted BSSID profile carried in one or more Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelements across one or more multiple BSSID elements in the same frame contains a list of elements for the AP or the DMG STA that has a nontransmitted BSSID, and is defined as follows:~~

- For each nontransmitted BSSID, ~~t~~ The Nontransmitted BSSID Capability element (see 9.4.2.71 (Nontransmitted BSSID Capability element)) is the first element included, followed by a variable number of elements, in the order defined in Table 9-34 (Beacon frame body) for a non-DMG non-S1G AP, Table 9-47 (DMG Beacon frame body) for a DMG AP or Table 9-48 (Minimum and full set of optional elements) for a S1G AP.
- The SSID element (see 9.4.2.2 (SSID element)) and Multiple BSSID-Index element (see 9.4.2.73 (Multiple BSSID-Index element)) are included as the second and third elements, respectively, in the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement.
- The FMS Descriptor element (see 9.4.2.74 (FMS Descriptor element)) is included in the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement if dot11FMSActivated is true for the BSS using this nontransmitted BSSID and if the Multiple BSSID element is included in a Beacon frame.
- Any element specific to the BSS or with content that is different from the transmitted BSSID.

- The Timestamp and Beacon Interval fields, TIM, DSSS Parameter Set, IBSS Parameter Set, Country, Channel Switch Announcement, Extended Channel Switch Announcement, Wide Bandwidth Channel Switch, Transmit Power Envelope, Supported Operating Classes, IBSS DFS, ERP Information, HT Capabilities, HT Operation, VHT Capabilities, and VHT Operation, S1G Beacon Compatibility, Short Beacon Interval, S1G Capabilities, and S1G Operation, HE Capabilities, HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities, HE Operation, BSS Color Change Announcement, and Spatial Reuse Parameter Set elements are not included in the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement; the values of these elements for each nontransmitted BSSID are always the same as the corresponding transmitted BSSID element values.
- When included in the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement for this nontransmitted BSSID, the Non-Inheritance element (see 9.4.2.240 (Non-Inheritance element)) appears as the last element in the profile and carries a list of elements that are not inherited by this nontransmitted BSSID from the transmitted BSSID.

Each Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement contains only elements for a BSS with a nontransmitted BSSID.

9.4.2.63 Channel Switch Timing element

Change the last paragraph of 9.4.2.64 as follows:

The Switch Timeout field is set to a time in units of microseconds. The STA sending the Channel Switch Timing element waits for the first Data frame exchange on the off-channel for Switch Timeout microseconds before switching back to base channel. The time is measured from the end of the last symbol of the Ack frame that is transmitted in response to TDLS Channel Switch Response frame, as seen on the WM. If transmitted in a (Re)Association Request frame, the Switch Timeout field is not present in the Channel Switch Timing element.

9.4.2.66 Event Request element

9.4.2.66.1 Event Request definition

Insert rows in Table 9-193 (Event Type field definitions for event requests and reports) as follows and update the Reserved row:

Table 9-193—Event Type field definitions for event requests and reports

Name	Event Type
BSS Color Collision	4
BSS Color In Use	5

9.4.2.67 Event Report element

9.4.2.67.1 Event Report Definition

Replace the 6th paragraph (“The Event TSF, …”) with the following:

If the Event Report Status field is 0 (Successful) and the Event Type field is neither 4 (BSS Color Collision) nor 5 (BSS Color In Use), then the Event TSF, UTC Offset, Event Time Error, and Event Report fields are present. If the Event Report Status field is 0 (Successful) and the Event Type field is either 4 (BSS Color

1 Collision) or 5 (BSS Color In Use), then Event TSF and Event Report fields are present. Otherwise, the
 2 Event TSF, UTC Offset, Event Time Error, or Event Report fields are not present.
 3

4 *Change the 10th paragraph as follows:*
 5

6 The Event Report field contains the specification of a single event report, as described in 9.4.2.67.2 (Transi-
 7 tion event report) to 9.4.2.67.5 (WNM log event report), 9.4.2.67.7 (BSS color collision event report) and
 8 9.4.2.67.8 (BSS color in use event report).
 9

10 *Insert new subclauses at the end of 9.4.2.67 as follows:*
 11

12 **9.4.2.67.7 BSS color collision event report**

13 The Event Report field for a BSS color collision event report is 8 octets in length with each bit representing
 14 a BSS color value. A value of 1 at a bit position indicates that the BSS color value corresponding to that
 15 position is in use by OBSS as detected by the reporting non-AP HE STA.
 16

17 **9.4.2.67.8 BSS color in use event report**

18 The Event Report field for a BSS color in use event report is 1 octet in length. If a reporting non-AP HE
 19 STA communicates with a peer STA with a BSS color that is different from the BSS color used by its asso-
 20 ciated AP, the Event Report field is set to the BSS color used in the communication with the peer STA.
 21

22 A non-AP HE STA sets the Event Report field to 0 to cancel a previously sent BSS color in use event report.
 23 See 11.22.2.8 (BSS color in use event).
 24

25 **9.4.2.73 Multiple BSSID-Index element**

26 *Change paragraphs 3-5 as follows:*
 27

28 The BSSID Index field is a value between 1 and $2^n - 1$ that identifies the nontransmitted BSSID, where n is
 29 a nonzero, positive integer value (see MaxBSSID Indicator field in 9.4.2.45 (Multiple BSSID element)).
 30

31 The DTIM Period field indicates the DTIM period for the BSSID as defined in 9.4.2.5.1 (General). This
 32 field is not present when the Multiple BSSID-Index element is included in the Probe Response frame.
 33

34 The DTIM Count field indicates the DTIM count for the BSSID as defined in 9.4.2.5.1 (General). This field
 35 is not present when the Multiple BSSID-Index element is included in the Probe Response frame.
 36

37 **9.4.2.139 ADDBA Extension element**

38 *Change Figure 9-580 (ADDBA Capabilities field format) as follows:*
 39

B0	B1	B2	B4B3	B7
No-Fragmentation	<u>HE Fragmentation Operation</u>	Reserved		

40 Bits: 1 2 7-5
 41

42 **Figure 9-580—ADDBA Capabilities field format**

43 *Change the last paragraph as follows:*
 44

1 The No-Fragmentation subfield determines whether a fragmented MSDU can be carried in the MPDU sent
 2 under the block ack agreement. When If this subfield set to 1 in the ADDBA Request frame, it indicates that
 3 the non-HE originator is not fragmenting sent MSDUs. When If this subfield set to 1 in the ADDBA
 4 Response frame, it indicates that the non-HE recipient is not capable of receiving fragmented MSDUs. The
 5 No-Fragmentation subfield is reserved when transmitted by an HE STA to another HE STA.

6
 7
 8 ***Insert the following as the new last paragraph:***
 9

10 If transmitted by an HE STA, the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield indicates the level of dynamic frag-
 11 mentation that is under negotiation for the TID indicated in the ADDBA frame as defined in Table 9-265a
 12 (HE Fragmentation Operation subfield).
 13
 14

15
 16
 17 **Table 9-265a—HE Fragmentation Operation subfield**
 18

Value	Meaning in ADDBA Request frame	Meaning in ADDBA Response frame
0	The originator does not intend to send fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDUs (if supported by the transmitter) for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Request frame.	The recipient does not support the reception of fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDUs for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Response frame.
1	The originator intends to send fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDU (if supported by the transmitter) under fragmentation level 1 (see 26.3.2.2 (Level 1 dynamic fragmentation)) for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Request frame.	The recipient supports the reception of fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDU (if supported) under fragmentation level 1 only for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Response frame.
2	The originator intends to send fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDUs (if supported by the transmitter) under fragmentation level 2 (see 26.3.2.3 (Level 2 dynamic fragmentation)) for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Request frame.	The recipient supports the reception of receiving fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDU (if supported) under fragmentation levels 1 and 2 for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Response frame.
3	The originator intends to send fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDUs (if supported by the transmitter) under fragmentation level 3 (see 26.3.2.4 (Level 3 dynamic fragmentation)) for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Request frame.	The recipient supports the reception of fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDU (if supported) under fragmentation levels 1, 2 and 3 for the TID specified in the Block Ack Parameter Set field of the ADDBA Response frame.

51
 52
 53 **9.4.2.157 VHT Capabilities**
 54

55
 56 **9.4.2.157.3 Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set field**
 57

58
 59 ***Insert the following at the end of this subclause:***
 60

61 The value of Max VHT NSS for a given MCS is equal to the smaller of:
 62

- 63 — the maximum value of n for which the Max VHT-MCS for n SS has a value that indicates support for
 64 that MCS
 65

- 1 — the maximum supported NSS as indicated in by the value of the Rx NSS field of the OM Control
 2 subfield (and further defined in the Table 26-9 (Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT NSS at
 3 an HE STA transmitting the OM Control subfield))
 4

5 NOTE—A VHT-MCS indicated as supported in the VHT-MCS Map fields for a particular number of spatial streams
 6 might not be valid at all bandwidths (see 21.5 (Parameters for VHT-MCSs)), might be limited by the declaration of Tx
 7 Highest Supported Long GI Data Rates and Rx Highest Supported Long GI Data Rates, and might be affected by
 8 10.6.13.3 (Additional rate selection constraints for VHT PPDUs) and the value of the Extended NSS BW Support field
 9 of the VHT Capabilities Information field in 9.4.2.157.2 (VHT Capabilities Information field) and the 160/80+80 BW
 10 subfield of the Operating Mode field in 9.4.1.53 (Operating Mode field).
 11

12 **9.4.2.159 Extended BSS Load element**

13 *Change the description of the $T_{busy,W1}$ parameter in 7th paragraph as follows:*

14 $T_{busy,W1}$ is computed as the sum of the times from PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY,{W2}) to the next issue
 15 of a PHY-CCA.indication primitive and that overlap the measurement interval, for $W1 = 20$,
 16 40, or 80, and where W2 equals secondary, secondary40, or secondary80 for $W1 = 20, 40$, or
 17 80, respectively. For a VHT AP, for $W1 = 20, 40, 80$, W2 equals secondary, secondary40, or
 18 secondary80, respectively. For an HE AP, for $W1 = 20$, W2 equals secondary or per20bitmap
 19 in which the bit corresponding to the primary 20 MHz channel is set to 0 and the bit corre-
 20 sponding to the secondary 20 MHz channel is set to 1; for $W1 = 40$, W2 equals secondary40 or
 21 per20bitmap in which the bits corresponding to the primary 20 MHz and secondary 20 MHz
 22 channels are set to 0, and at least one bit corresponding to any 20 MHz subchannel in the sec-
 23 ondary 40 MHz channel is set to 1; for $W1 = 80$, W2 equals secondary80 or per20bitmap in
 24 which the bits corresponding to the primary 20 MHz, secondary 20 MHz and secondary
 25 40 MHz channels are set to 0, and at least one bit corresponding to any 20 MHz subchannel in
 26 the secondary 80 MHz channel is set to 1.
 27

34 **9.4.2.161 Transmit Power Envelope element**

35 *Change the 6th paragraph as follows:*

36 Local Maximum Transmit Power For X MHz fields (where $X = 20, 40, 80$, or 160/80+80) define the local
 37 maximum transmit power limit of X MHz PPDUs, except for an HE TB PPDU where X MHz is the band-
 38 width of the pre-HE modulated fields of the HE TB PPDU transmitted by a STA. Each Local Maximum
 39 Transmit Power For X MHz field is encoded as an 8-bit 2's complement signed integer in the range -64 dBm
 40 to 63 dBm with a 0.5 dB step. Setting this field to 63.5 dBm indicates 63.5 dBm or higher (i.e., no local max-
 41 imum transmit power constraint).
 42

43 **9.4.2.170 Reduced Neighbor Report element**

44 **9.4.2.170.2 Neighbor AP Information field**

45 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*

46 The Filtered Neighbor AP subfield is 1 bit in length. When included in an individually addressed Probe
 47 Response frame, it is set to 1 if the SSID corresponding to every AP in this Neighbor AP Information field
 48 matches the SSID in the corresponding Probe Request frame. When included in a Beacon, broadcast Probe
 49 Response or FILS Discovery frame transmitted by a non-TVHT AP, it is set to 1 if the SSID corresponding
 50 to every AP in this Neighbor AP Information field matches the SSID of the transmitting AP's BSS. It is set
 51 to 0 otherwise.
 52

53 *Change the 6th paragraph as follows:*

The TBTT Information Length subfield is 1 octet in length and indicates the length of each TBTT Information field included in the TBTT Information Set field of the Neighbor AP Information field. When If the TBTT Information Field Type subfield is set to 0, the TBTT Information Length subfield:

- contains the length in octets of each TBTT Information field that is included in the TBTT Information Set field of the Neighbor AP Information field
 - is set to 1, 5, 7, 8, or 11, or 12; other values are reserved.
 - indicates the TBTT Information field contents as shown in Table 9-273 (TBTT Information field content).

Change Table 9-281 (TBTT Information field contents) as follows:

Table 9-281—TBTT Information field contents

TBTT Information Length subfield value	TBTT Information field contents
1	The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield
<u>2</u>	<u>The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield and the BSS Parameters subfield</u>
5	The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield and the Short-SSID subfield
<u>6</u>	<u>The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield, the Short-SSID subfield, and the BSS Parameters subfield</u>
7	The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield and the BSSID subfield
<u>8</u>	<u>The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield, the BSSID subfield, and the BSS Parameters subfield</u>
11	The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield, the BSSID subfield and the Short-SSID subfield
<u>12</u>	<u>The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield, the BSSID subfield, the Short-SSID subfield and the BSS Parameters subfield</u>
0, <u>23</u> –4, 6, 8–10, 12– <u>255</u> <u>9–10</u>	Reserved
<u>13–255</u>	<u>The first 12 octets of the field are the same as for TBTT Information Length</u>

Change 9-632 (TBTT Information field format) as follows:

Neighbor AP TBTT Offset	BSSID (optional)	Short-SSID (optional)	<u>BSS parameters</u>
Octets:	1	0 or 6	0 or 4

Figure 9-632—TBTT Information field format

1 ***Change the 3rd to last paragraph as follows:***
 2
 3
 4 ~~The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield is 1 octet in length and indicates the offset in TUs, rounded down to nearest TU, to the next TBTT of an AP from the immediately prior TBTT of the AP that transmits this element. The value 254 indicates an offset of 254 TUs or higher. The value 255 indicates an unknown offset value.~~
 5
 6
 7
 8
 9

10 The Neighbor AP TBTT Offset subfield indicates the offset in TUs, rounded down to nearest TU, to the following:
 11
 12

- 13 = The next TBTT of the reported AP from the immediately prior TBTT of the AP that transmits this element if the reported AP is not part of a multiple BSSID set or is the transmitted BSSID of a multiple BSSID set.
 14
 15
- 16 = The next TBTT of the transmitted BSSID of the multiple BSSID set of the reported AP from the immediately prior TBTT of the AP that transmits this element if the reported AP is part of a multiple BSSID set and is a nontransmitted BSSID.
 17
 18
 19

20
 21 The value 254 indicates an offset of 254 TUs or higher. The value 255 indicates an unknown offset value.
 22
 23

24 ***Insert at the end of this subclause:***
 25
 26

27 The format of the BSS Parameters subfield is defined in Figure 9-632a (BSS Parameters subfield format).
 28
 29

	B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7
OCT Recommended	Same SSID	Multiple BSSID	Transmitted BSSID	Member Of ESS With 2.4/5 GHz Co-Located AP	20 TU Probe Response Active	Co-Located AP	Reserved	
Bits:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

36 **Figure 9-632a—BSS Parameters subfield format**
 37
 38
 39
 40

41 The OCT Recommended subfield is set to 1 to indicate that OCT is recommended to exchange MMPDUs with the AP identified in the TBTT Information field (see 11.32.5 (On-channel Tunneling (OCT) operation)), through over-the-air transmissions with the AP sending the Reduced Neighbor Report element. It is set to 0 otherwise.
 42
 43
 44
 45

46 The Same SSID subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the reported AP has the same SSID as the reporting AP. It is set to 0 otherwise.
 47
 48
 49

50 The Multiple BSSID subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the reported AP is part of a multiple BSSID set. It is set to 0 otherwise.
 51
 52

53 The Transmitted BSSID subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the reported AP is a transmitted BSSID. It is set to 0 if the reported AP is a nontransmitted BSSID. It is reserved if the Multiple BSSID subfield is set to 0.
 54
 55

56 The Member Of ESS With 2.4/5 GHz Co-Located AP subfield is set to 1 if the reported AP is part of an ESS where each AP in the ESS and operating in the same band as the reported AP (irrespective of the operating channel in that band) that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame has dot11MemberOfColocated6GHzESSOptionImplemented equal to true and also has a corresponding AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands that is in the same co-located AP set as that AP. It is set to 0 otherwise or if the reporting AP does not have that information. It is reserved if the reported AP is operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands.
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

1 NOTE 1—This subfield indicates that the reported AP is part of an ESS that has no 6 GHz-only APs that might be
 2 detected by a STA receiving this frame. This means that all APs operating in the 6 GHz band that are part of that ESS
 3 that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame can be discovered in the 2.4 GHz and/or 5 GHz bands.

4 NOTE 2—An AP might be detected by a STA if the STA and the AP are on the same channel and in range.
 5

7 The 20 TU Probe Response Active subfield is set to 1 if the reported AP is part of an ESS where all the APs
 8 that operate in the same channel as the reported AP and that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame
 9 have dot1120TUProbeResponseOptionImplemented equal to true and are transmitting unsolicited Probe
 10 Response frames every 20 TUs (see 26.17.2.3 (Scanning in the 6 GHz band)). It is set to 0 otherwise or if the
 11 reporting AP does not have that information.
 12

14 The Co-Located AP subfield is set to 1 if the reported AP is in the same co-located AP set as the transmitting
 15 AP. It is set to 0 otherwise.
 16

18 9.4.2.177 FILS Request Parameters element 19

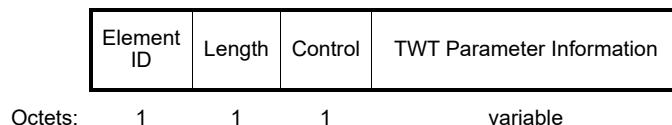
21 *Insert the following in Table 9-289 (PHY Support Criterion subfield) and update the Reserved row as
 22 appropriate:*
 23

25 **Table 9-289—PHY Support Criterion subfield**
 26

Value	Explanation
3	Indicates that a responding FILS STA is HE capable.

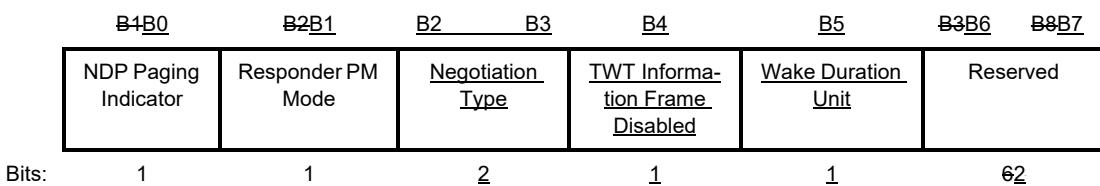
36 9.4.2.199 TWT element 37

39 *Replace Figure 9-686 (TWT element format) with the following:*
 40



49 **Figure 9-686—TWT element format**
 50

52 *Change Figure 9-687 (Control field format) as follows.*
 53



62 **Figure 9-687—Control field format**
 63

64 *Insert the following (including table) after the 5th paragraph (“The Responder PM Mode subfield... ”):*
 65

1 The Negotiation Type subfield indicates whether the information included in the TWT element is for the
 2 negotiation of parameters of broadcast or individual TWT(s) or a Wake TBTT interval. The MSB of the
 3 Negotiation Type subfield is the Broadcast field.

5 The TWT Information Frame Disabled subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the reception of TWT Information
 6 frames is disabled by the STA; otherwise, it is set to 0.
 7

9 The Wake Duration Unit subfield indicates the unit of the Nominal Minimum TWT Wake Duration field.
 10 The Wake Duration Unit subfield is set to 0 if the unit is 256 us and is set to 1 if the unit is a TU. A non-HE
 11 STA sets the Wake Duration Unit subfield to 0.
 12

14 If the Broadcast field of the Negotiation Type subfield is 1, then one or more broadcast TWT parameter sets
 15 are contained in the TWT element (see Figure 9-687b (Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field format)). If the
 16 Broadcast field of the Negotiation Type subfield is 0, then only one Individual TWT parameter set is con-
 17 tained in the TWT element (see Figure 9-687a (Individual TWT Parameter Set field format)). An S1G STA
 18 sets the Negotiation Type subfield to 0.
 19

21 A TWT element that has the Broadcast field in the Control field set to 1 is referred to as broadcast TWT ele-
 22 ment.
 23

25 The Negotiation Type subfield determines the interpretation of the Target Wake Time, TWT Wake Interval
 26 Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent subfields of the TWT element as defined in Table 9-296a
 27 (Interpretation of Negotiation Type subfield, Target Wake Time, TWT Wake Interval Mantissa and TWT
 28 Wake Interval Exponent fields).
 29

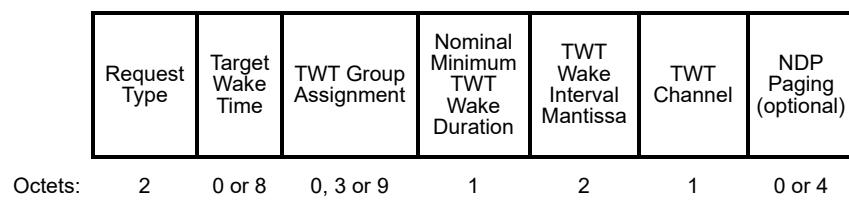
32 **Table 9-296a—Interpretation of Negotiation Type subfield, Target Wake Time, TWT Wake
 33 Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields**

Negotiation Type subfield	Target Wake Time field	TWT Wake Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields	Description
0	A future Individual TWT SP start time	Interval between individual TWT SPs	<p>Individual TWT negotiation between TWT requesting STA and TWT responding STA or individual TWT announcement by TWT responder. See 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)), and 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements).</p> <p>The TWT element contains one individual TWT parameter set.</p>

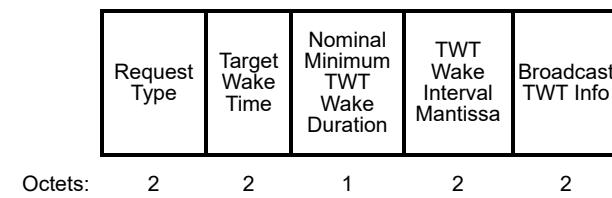
1
2 **Table 9-296a—Interpretation of Negotiation Type subfield, Target Wake Time, TWT Wake**
3 **Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields (continued)**

1	Next Wake TBTT time	Interval between wake TBTTs	Wake TBTT and wake interval negotiation between TWT scheduled STA and TWT scheduling AP. See 26.8.6 (Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval). The TWT element contains one individual TWT parameter set.
2	A future Broadcast TWT SP start time	Interval between broadcast TWT SPs	Provide broadcast TWT schedules to TWT scheduled STAs by including the TWT element in broadcast Management frames sent by TWT scheduling AP. See 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP). The TWT element contains one or more broadcast TWT parameter sets.
3	A future Broadcast TWT SP start time	Interval between broadcast TWT SPs	Manage memberships in broadcast TWT schedules by including the TWT element in individually addressed Management frames sent by either a TWT scheduled STA or a TWT scheduling AP. See 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation). The TWT element contains one or more broadcast TWT parameter sets.

31 The TWT Parameter Information field contains a single Individual TWT Parameter Set field with format
32 defined in Figure 9-687a (Individual TWT Parameter Set field format) if the Broadcast subfield in the Control field is 0 and contains one or more Broadcast TWT Parameter Set fields with format defined in Figure 9-
33 687b (Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field format) if the Broadcast subfield of the Control field is 1. The
34 number of Broadcast TWT Parameter Set fields present is determined by the values of the Last Broadcast
35 Parameter Set subfields of the Request Type fields.
36
37
38



49 **Figure 9-687a—Individual TWT Parameter Set field format**



62 **Figure 9-687b—Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field format**

1 **Change the 6th paragraph as follows:**

2
3 The format of the Request Type field of the Individual TWT Parameter Set field is shown in Figure 9-688
4 (Request Type field format in an Individual TWT Parameter Set field) and of a Broadcast TWT Parameter
5 Set field is shown in Figure 9-688a (Request Type field format in a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field).
6
7

8 **Change Figure 9-688 (Request Type field format in an Individual TWT Parameter Set field) as follows:**
9

B0	B1	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B9	B10	B14	B15
TWT Request	TWT Setup Command	Reserved Trigger	Implicit	Flow Type	TWT Flow Identifier	TWT Wake Interval Exponent	TWT Protection			
Bits:	1	3	1	1	1	3	5		1	

19 **Figure 9-688—Request Type field format in an Individual TWT Parameter Set field**
20

21 **Insert a new Figure 9-688a (Request Type field format in a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field) as**
22 **follows:**
23

B0	B1	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B9	B10	B14	B15
TWT Request	TWT Setup Command	Trigger	Last Broadcast Parameter Set	Flow Type	Broadcast TWT Recomme ndation	TWT Wake Interval Exponent	Reserved			
Bits:	1	3	1	1	1	3	5		1	

34 **Figure 9-688a—Request Type field format in a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field**
35

36 **Change the 7th and 8th paragraphs as follows:**

39 A STA that transmits a TWT element with the TWT Request subfield equal to 1 is a TWT requesting STA
40 or TWT scheduled STA. Otherwise, it is a TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP.
41

42 The TWT Setup Command subfield values indicate the type of TWT command as shown in Table 9-262k.
43 The use of the TWT Setup Command field for the negotiation of individual and broadcast TWT is described
44 in Table 9-297 (TWT Setup Command field values). The entries in the table apply to cases where the Negotiation Type subfield is not 1. For TWT Setup Command field use when the Negotiation Type subfield is 1, see 26.8.6 (Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval).
45

1 Change Table 9-297 (TWT Setup Command field values) as follows:

2

3

4

5 **Table 9-297—TWT Setup Command field values**

6

TWT Setup Command field value	Command name	Description when transmitted by a TWT requesting STA <u>Description</u>	Description when transmitted by a TWT responding STA
0	Request TWT	<p>The Target Wake Time field of the TWT element contains 0s as the TWT responding STA specifies the target wake time value; for this case, other TWT parameters* are suggested by the TWT requesting STA in the TWT request.</p> <p>A TWT requesting or TWT scheduled STA requests to join a TWT without specifying a target wake time.</p> <p>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is equal to 1; otherwise the command is not applicable.</p>	N/A
1	Suggest TWT	<p>TWT requesting STA includes a set of TWT parameters such that if the requested target wake time value and/or other TWT parameters cannot be accommodated, then the TWT setup might still be accepted.</p> <p>A TWT requesting or TWT scheduled STA requests to join a TWT and specifies a suggested set of TWT parameters with the possibility that if the requested target wake time and/or other TWT parameters cannot be accommodated, then the TWT setup might still be accepted by the TWT requesting or TWT scheduled STA.</p> <p>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is equal to 1; otherwise it is not applicable.</p>	N/A
2	Demand TWT	<p>TWT requesting STA includes a set of TWT parameters such that if the requested target wake time value and/or other TWT parameters cannot be accommodated, then the TWT setup will be rejected.</p> <p>A TWT requesting or TWT scheduled STA requests to join a TWT and specifies a demanded set of TWT parameters. If the demanded set of TWT parameters is not accommodated by the responding STA or TWT scheduling AP, then the TWT requesting STA or TWT scheduled STA will reject the TWT setup.</p> <p>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is equal to 1; otherwise it is not applicable.</p>	N/A

Table 9-297—TWT Setup Command field values (continued)

3	TWT Grouping	N/A <u>The TWT responding STA suggests TWT group parameters that are different from the suggested or demanded TWT parameters of the TWT requesting STA.</u> <u>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is 0, the Negotiation Type subfield is 0 and is sent by an S1G STA; otherwise not applicable.</u>	TWT responding STA suggests TWT group parameters that are different from the suggested or demanded TWT parameters of the TWT requesting STA
4	Accept TWT	N/A <u>A TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP accepts the TWT request with the TWT parameters (see NOTE) indicated in the TWT element transmitted by the TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP.</u> <u>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is 0; otherwise not applicable.</u>	TWT responding STA accepts the TWT request with the TWT parameters (See NOTE) indicated in the TWT element transmitted by the responding STA
5	Alternate TWT	N/A <u>A TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP suggests TWT parameters that are different from those suggested by the TWT requesting STA or TWT scheduled STA.</u> <u>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is 0; otherwise not applicable.</u>	TWT responding STA suggests TWT parameters that are different from TWT requesting STA suggested or demanded TWT parameters
6	Dictate TWT	N/A <u>A TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP indicates TWT parameters that are different from those suggested by the TWT requesting STA or TWT scheduled STA.</u> <u>This command is valid if the TWT Request field is 0; otherwise not applicable.</u>	TWT responding STA demands TWT parameters that are different from TWT requesting STA TWT suggested or demanded parameters
7	Reject TWT	N/A <u>A TWT responding STA rejects setup or a TWT scheduling AP terminates an existing broadcast TWT or a TWT scheduled STA terminates its membership in a broadcast TWT.</u>	TWT responding STA rejects TWT setup

NOTE—TWT Parameters are: TWT, Nominal Minimum Wake Duration, TWT Wake Interval and TWT Channel subfield values indicated in the TWT element. The Trigger subfield value indicated in the TWT element is also a TWT parameter for an HE STA.

Insert the following paragraph after the 8th paragraph (“The TWT Setup Command subfield...”):

1 The Trigger field indicates whether or not the TWT SP indicated by the TWT element includes Trigger
 2 frames or frames carrying a TRS Control subfield as defined in 26.8 (TWT operation). The Trigger field is
 3 set to 1 to indicate that at least one Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield is transmitted
 4 during the TWT SP. The Trigger field is set to 0 otherwise.
 5

6 ***Change paragraphs 9-12 as follows:***
 7

8 **When If** transmitted by a TWT requesting STA, the Implicit subfield is set to 1 to request an implicit TWT.
 9

10 **When If** transmitted by a TWT requesting STA, the Implicit subfield is set to 0 to request an explicit TWT.
 11

12 **The Last Broadcast Parameter Set subfield is set to 0 to indicate that another broadcast TWT Parameter set**
 13 **follows this set. The Last Broadcast Parameter Set subfield is set to 1 to indicate that this is the last broadcast**
 14 **TWT Parameter set in the broadcast TWT element.**
 15

16 The Flow Type subfield indicates the type of interaction between the TWT requesting STA and the TWT
 17 responding STA at a TWT. Setting the Flow Type subfield to 0 indicates an announced TWT in which the
 18 TWT requesting STA will send a PS-Poll or an APSD trigger frame (see 11.2.3.5 (Power management with
 19 APSD)) to signal its awake state to the TWT responding STA before a frame that is not a Trigger frame is
 20 sent from the TWT responding STA to the TWT requesting STA. Setting the Flow Type subfield to 1 indicates
 21 an unannounced TWT in which the TWT responding STA will send a frame to the TWT requesting
 22 STA at TWT without waiting to receive a PS-Poll or an APSD trigger frame from the TWT requesting STA.
 23

24 **NOTE—The TWT requesting STA is expected to send the PS-Poll or APSD trigger frame in response to a Trigger frame**
 25 **if the TWT is a trigger-enabled TWT.**
 26

27 The TWT Flow Identifier subfield contains a 3-bit value which that identifies the specific information for
 28 this TWT request uniquely from other requests made between the same TWT requesting STA and TWT
 29 responding STA pair. **The Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield contains a value that indicates recom-**
 30 **mendations on the types of frames that are transmitted by TWT scheduled STAs and scheduling AP during**
 31 **the broadcast TWT SP, encoded according to the Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast**
 32 **TWT element as defined in Table 9-297a (Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast TWT ele-**
 33 **ment). The Broadcast TWT Recommendation is reserved if transmitted by a TWT scheduled STA.**
 34

35 ***Insert a new table as follows:***
 36

37 **Table 9-297a—Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast TWT element**
 38

Broadcast TWT Recommendation field value	Description when transmitted in a broadcast TWT element
0	No constraints on the frames transmitted during a broadcast TWT SP.

Table 9-297a—Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast TWT element

1	<p>Frames transmitted during a broadcast TWT SP by a TWT scheduled STA are recommended to be limited to solicited feedback and status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — PS-Poll and QoS Null frames — Feedback can be contained in the QoS Control field or in the HE variant HT Control field of the frame, if either is present (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation), 26.9 (Operating mode indication), 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield), etc.) — Feedback in an HE TB feedback NDP, if solicited by the AP (see 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure)) — BQRs (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)) — BSRs (see 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence)) — Frames that are sent as part of a sounding feedback exchange (see 26.7 (HE sounding protocol)) — Management frames: Action or Action No Ack frames — Control response frames <p>Trigger frames transmitted by the TWT scheduling AP during the broadcast TWT SP do not contain RUs for random access (see 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP)), otherwise, there are no other restrictions on the frames transmitted by the TWT scheduling AP.</p>
2	<p>Frames transmitted during a broadcast TWT SP by a TWT scheduled STA are recommended to be limited to solicited status and feedback:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — PS-Poll and QoS Null frames — Feedback can be contained in the QoS Control field or in the HE variant HT Control field of the frame, if either is present (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation), 26.9 (Operating mode indication), 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield), etc.) — BQRs (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)) — BSRs (see 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence)) — Frames that are sent as part of a sounding feedback exchange (see 26.7 (HE sounding protocol)) — Management frames: Action, Action No Ack frames or (Re)Association Request — Control response frames <p>Trigger frames transmitted by the TWT scheduling AP during the broadcast TWT SP contain at least one RU for random access (see 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP)), otherwise there are no restrictions on the frames transmitted by the TWT scheduling AP.</p>
3	No constraints on the frames transmitted during a broadcast TWT SP except that the AP transmits a TIM frame or a FILS Discovery frame including a TIM element at the beginning of each TWT SP (see 26.14.3.2 (AP operation for opportunistic power save)).
4-7	Reserved

Change the 13th and 14th paragraphs as follows:

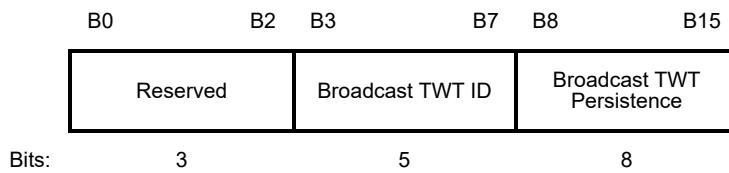
In a TWT element transmitted by a TWT requesting or TWT scheduled STA, the TWT wake interval is equal to the average time that the TWT requesting STA expects to elapse between successive TWT SPs start times (see Table 9-296a (Interpretation of Negotiation Type subfield, Target Wake Time, TWT Wake Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields)). In a TWT element transmitted by a TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP, the TWT wake interval is equal to the average time that the TWT responding STA expects to elapse between successive TWT SPs start times. In a TWT element contained in a TWT request that is sent by the scheduled STA to negotiate its wake intervals, the TWT wake interval indicates the value of the wake interval (see 26.8.6 (Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval)). The TWT Wake Interval Exponent subfield is set to the value of the exponent of the TWT wake interval value in

1 microseconds, base 2. The TWT wake interval of the requesting STA is equal to (TWT Wake Interval
 2 Mantissa) $\times 2^{(\text{TWT Wake Interval Exponent})}$.

4
 5 When If transmitted by a TWT requesting STA or a TWT scheduled STA and the TWT Setup Command
 6 subfield contains a value corresponding to the command "Suggest TWT" or "Demand TWT", the Target
 7 Wake Time field contains a positive an unsigned integer corresponding to a TSF time at which the STA
 8 requests to wake, or 0 when the TWT Setup Command subfield contains the value corresponding to the
 9 command "Request TWT". If transmitted by a TWT requesting STA or a TWT scheduled STA and the
 10 TWT Setup Command subfield contains the value corresponding to the command "Request TWT", the Tar-
 11 get Wake Time field contains the value 0. The Target Wake Time field is 8 octets if the Broadcast field is 0;
 12 otherwise it is 2 octets with the lowest bit of the 2 octets corresponding to bit 10 of the relevant TSF value.
 13 When If a TWT responding STA with dot11TWGGroupingSupport equal to 0 transmits a TWT element to
 14 the TWT requesting STA, the TWT element contains a value in the Target Wake Time field corresponding
 15 to a TSF time at which the TWT responding STA requests the TWT requesting STA to wake for the corre-
 16 sponding TWT SP and it does not contain the TWT Group Assignment field.

17
 18
 19
 20 ***Insert the following paragraphs and figure after paragraph 21 ("The TWT Wake Interval Mantissa..."):***

21
 22 The Broadcast TWT Info subfield is defined in Figure 9-689a (Broadcast TWT Info subfield format).



31
 32
 33 **Figure 9-689a—Broadcast TWT Info subfield format**

34
 35 Within a TWT element that includes a TWT setup command value of Request TWT, Suggest TWT or
 36 Demand TWT, the Broadcast TWT ID, if present, indicates a specific Broadcast TWT in which the transmit-
 37 ting STA is requesting to participate. Within a TWT element that includes a TWT setup command value of
 38 Accept TWT, Alternate TWT, Dictate TWT or Reject TWT, the Broadcast TWT ID, if present, indicates a
 39 specific Broadcast TWT for which the transmitting STA is providing TWT parameters. Within a TWT ele-
 40 ment that includes a TWT setup command value of TWT Grouping, the Broadcast subfield is 0 and the
 41 Broadcast TWT ID, is not present. The value 0 in the Broadcast TWT ID subfield indicates the broadcast
 42 TWT whose membership corresponds to all STAs that are members of the BSS corresponding to the BSSID
 43 of the Management frame carrying the TWT element and that is permitted to contain Trigger frames with
 44 RA-RUs for unassociated STAs.

45
 46
 47 The Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield indicates the number of TBTTs during which the Broadcast TWT
 48 SPs corresponding to this broadcast TWT Parameter set are present. The number of beacon intervals during
 49 which the Broadcast TWT SPs are present is equal to the value in the Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield
 50 plus 1 except that the value 255 indicates that the Broadcast TWT SPs are present until explicitly terminated.

51
 52
 53
 54 ***Change the 20th paragraph as follows:***

55
 56 The Nominal Minimum TWT Wake Duration field indicates the minimum amount of time, in the units of
 57 256 μ s indicated by the Wake Duration Unit subfield, that the TWT requesting STA expects that it needs to
 58 be awake in order to complete the frame exchanges associated with the TWT flow identifier for the period of
 59 TWT wake interval, where TWT wake interval is the average time that the TWT requesting STA expects to
 60 elapse between successive TWT SPs.

61
 62
 63
 64 ***Change the 22nd and subsequent two paragraphs as follows:***

When transmitted by a TWT requesting STA, the TWT Channel field contains a bitmap indicating which channel the STA requests to use as a temporary primary channel during a TWT SP. When transmitted by a TWT responding STA, the TWT Channel field contains a bitmap indicating which channel the TWT requesting STA is allowed to use as a temporary channel during the TWT SP. The TWT Channel field includes a bitmap that provides the channel that is being negotiated by a STA as a temporary channel during a TWT SP. Each bit in the bitmap corresponds to one minimum width channel for the band in which the TWT responding STA's associated BSS is currently operating, with the least significant bit corresponding to the lowest numbered channel of the operating channels of the BSS. In an S1G BSS, the The minimum width channel is equal to the SST Channel Unit field of the SST Operation element if such an element has been previously received or is equal to 1 MHz for a BSS with a BSS primary channel width of 1 MHz and 2 MHz for a BSS with a BSS primary channel width of 2 MHz if no such element has been previously received from the AP to which the SST STA is associated. In an HE BSS, the minimum width channel is equal to 20 MHz. A value of 1 in a bit position in the bitmap transmitted by a TWT requesting STA means that operation with that channel as the primary channel is requested during a TWT SP. A value of 1 in a bit position in the bitmap transmitted by a TWT responding STA means that operation with that channel as the primary channel is allowed during the TWT SP. In an HE BSS, none of the bits, any 1 bit, the 4 LSBs, or the 4 MSBs of the bitmap can have a value of 1. The TWT Channel field is used by an S1G STA as defined in 10.53 (Subchannel Selective Transmission (SST)) and is used by an HE STA as defined in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission). If the TWT channel field is 0 then the HE STAs operate as define in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements).

A TWT requesting STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 1 to request the TWT responding STA to provide protection of the set of TWT SPs corresponding to the requested TWT flow identifier by allocating RAW(s) that restrict access to the medium during the TWT SP(s) for that (those) TWTs. A TWT requesting STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 0 if TWT protection by RAW allocation is not requested for the corresponding TWT(s).

A TWT requesting STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 1 to request the TWT responding STA to provide protection of the set of TWT SPs corresponding to the requested TWT flow identifier by:

- = Allocating RAW(s) that restrict access to the medium during the TWT SP(s) for the TWTs that are set up within an S1G BSS
- = Enabling NAV protection during the TWT SP(s) for the TWTs that are set up within an HE BSS

A TWT requesting STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 0 if TWT protection is not requested for the corresponding TWT(s).

When transmitted by a TWT responding STA that is an AP, the TWT Protection subfield indicates whether the TWT SP(s) identified in the TWT element will be protected. A TWT responding STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 1 to indicate that the TWT SP(s) corresponding to the TWT flow identifier(s) of the TWT element will be protected by allocating RAW(s) that restrict access to the medium during the TWT SP(s) for that (those) TWT(s). A TWT responding STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 0 to indicate that the TWT SP(s) identified in the TWT element might not be protected from TIM STAs by allocating RAW(s).

A TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP sets the TWT Protection subfield to 1 to indicate that the TWT SP(s) corresponding to the TWT flow identifier(s) of the TWT element will be protected by:

- = Allocating RAW(s) that restrict access to the medium during the TWT SP(s) for the TWTs where the TWT responding STA is an S1G STA.
- = Enabling NAV protection during the TWT SP(s) for the TWTs where the TWT responding STA is an HE STA.

A TWT responding STA sets the TWT Protection subfield to 0 to indicate that the TWT SP(s) identified in the TWT element might not be protected.

1 *Insert the following new subclauses after the last subclause in 9.4.2:*

2 **9.4.2.247 HE Capabilities element**

3 **9.4.2.247.1 General**

4 An HE STA declares that it is an HE STA by transmitting the HE Capabilities element.

5 The HE Capabilities element contains a number of fields that are used to advertise the HE capabilities of an
6 HE STA. The HE Capabilities element is defined in Figure 9-787a (HE Capabilities element format).

Element ID	Length	ElementID Extension	HE MAC Capabilities Information	HE PHY Capabilities Information	Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set	PPE Thresholds (optional)
Octets:	1	1	1	6	11	4, 8 or 12 variable

22 **Figure 9-787a—HE Capabilities element format**

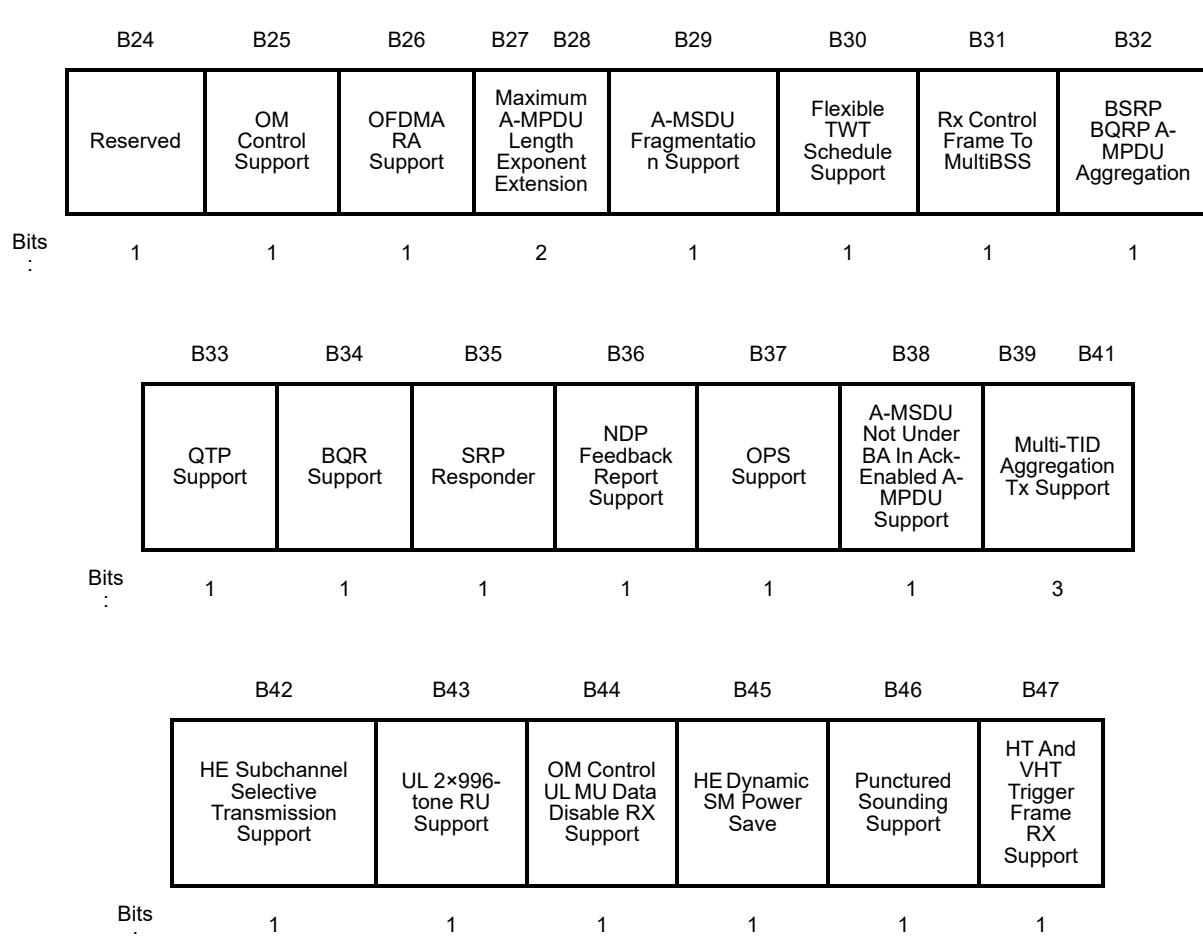
23 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

24 The HE MAC Capabilities Information, HE PHY Capabilities Information, Supported HE-MCS And NSS
25 Set, and PPE Thresholds fields are defined in the subclauses below.

31 **9.4.2.247.2 HE MAC Capabilities Information field**

33 The format of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field is defined in Figure 9-787b (HE MAC Capabilities Information field format).

B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B7	B8	B9	B10	B11	B12	B14
+HTC HE Support	TWT Requester Support	TWT Responder Support	Dynamic Fragmentation Support	Maximum Number Of Fragmented MSDUs/A-MSDUs Exponent	Minimum Fragment Size	Trigger Frame MAC Padding Duration	Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support					
Bits : 1	1	1	1	2	3	2	2					3
B15 B16	B17	B18	B19	B20	B21	B22	B23					
HE Link Adaptation Support	All Ack Support	TRS Support	BSR Support	Broadcast TWT Support	32-bit BA Bitmap Support	MU Cascading Support	Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support					
Bits : 2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1					1

**Figure 9-787b—HE MAC Capabilities Information field format**

The subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field are defined in Table 9-321a (Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field).

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
+HTC-HE Support	Indicates support for the reception of a frame that carries an HE variant HT Control field.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 1 if the STA supports reception of an HE variant HT Control field based on the description in 10.8 (HT Control field operation). Set to 0 otherwise. An AP sets the +HTC-HE Support subfield to 1.
TWT Requester Support	Indicates support for the role of TWT requesting STA as described in 26.8 (TWT operation)).	Set to 1 if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true and the STA supports TWT requesting STA functionality (see 26.8 (TWT operation)). Set to 0 otherwise.

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
TWT Responder Support	Indicates support for the role of TWT responder STA as described in 26.8 (TWT operation).	<p>Set to 1 if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true and the STA supports TWT responder STA functionality (see 26.8 (TWT operation)).</p> <p>Set to 0 otherwise.</p> <p>An AP sets the TWT Responder Support subfield to 1.</p>
Dynamic Fragmentation Support	Indicates the level of dynamic fragmentation that is supported by a STA as a recipient.	<p>Set to 0 for no support for dynamic fragmentation.</p> <p>Set to 1 for support for up to one dynamic fragment that is a non-A-MPDU frame, no support for dynamic fragments within an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU.</p> <p>Set to 2 for support for up to one dynamic fragment that is a non-A-MPDU frame and support for up to one dynamic fragment for each MSDU, each A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) and one MMPDU (if present, see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)) within an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU.</p> <p>Set to 3 for support for up to one dynamic fragment that is a non-A-MPDU frame and support for up to 4 dynamic fragments for each MSDU and for each A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) within an A-MPDU and up to one dynamic fragment for one MMPDU (if present, see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)) in an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU.</p>
Maximum Number Of Fragmented MSDUs/A-MSDUs Exponent	Indicates the maximum number of fragmented MSDUs and/or A-MSDUs (if supported by the recipient) that the STA is capable of receiving concurrently.	<p>If the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield is greater than 0:</p> <p>The maximum number of fragmented MSDUs and/or A-MSDUs, N_{max}, defined by this field is $N_{max} = 2^{\text{Maximum Number Of Fragmented MSDUs/A-MSDUs Exponent}}$, except that a value 7 in the Maximum Number Of Fragmented MSDUs/A-MSDUs Exponent subfield indicates that there is no restriction.</p> <p>Reserved if the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield is 0.</p>
Minimum Fragment Size	Indicates the minimum frame body size in octets of the first fragment of an MSDU, A-MSDU (if supported), or MMPDU that is supported by the recipient STA.	<p>If the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield is greater than 0:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 to indicate no minimum frame body size. Set to 1 to indicate a minimum frame body size of 128 octets. Set to 2 to indicate a minimum frame body size of 256 octets. Set to 3 to indicate a minimum frame body size of 512 octets. <p>Reserved if the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield is 0.</p>

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Trigger Frame MAC Padding Duration	Indicates <i>MinTrigProcTime</i> , which is used in 26.5.2.2.3 (Padding for Trigger frame or frame containing TRS Control subfield).	For a non-AP STA: Set to 0 to indicate 0. Set to 1 to indicate 8 μ s. Set to 2 to indicate 16 μ s. The value 3 is reserved. Reserved for an AP.
Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support	Indicates the number of TIDs of QoS Data frames that an HE STA can receive in a multi-TID A-MPDU as described in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU).	Set to the number of TIDs minus 1 of QoS Data frames that an HE STA can receive in a multi-TID A-MPDU.
Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support	Indicates the number of TIDs of QoS Data frames that an HE STA can transmit in a multi-TID A-MPDU as described in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU).	Set to the number of TIDs minus 1 of QoS Data frames that an HE STA can transmit in a multi-TID A-MPDU.
HE Link Adaptation Support	Indicates support for link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield.	If +HTC-HE Support is 1: Set to 0 (No Feedback) if the STA does not provide HE MFB. Set to 2 (Unsolicited) if the STA can receive and provide only unsolicited HE MFB. Set to 3 (Solicited and unsolicited) if the STA is capable of receiving and providing HE MFB in response to HE MRQ and if the STA can receive and provide unsolicited HE MFB. The value 1 is reserved. HE MFB and HE MRQ are MFB and MRQ using HLA Control subfield, respectively. Reserved if +HTC-HE Support is 0.
All Ack Support	Indicates support for the reception of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame under the all ack context (see 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame))	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
TRS Support	For a non-AP STA, indicates support for receiving a frame with a TRS Control subfield.	For a non-AP STA that has set the +HTC-HE Support field to 1: Set to 1 if the STA supports reception of the TRS Control subfield. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved for an AP or if the +HTC-HE Support field is 0.

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
BSR Support	For an AP, indicates support for receiving a frame with a BSR Control subfield. For a non-AP STA, indicates support for generating a frame with a BSR Control subfield.	If +HTC-HE Support is 1: Set to 1 if the STA supports the BSR Control subfield functionality. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved if +HTC-HE Support is 0.
Broadcast TWT Support	For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the role of TWT scheduled STA. For an AP indicates support for the role of TWT scheduling AP as described in 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation).	Set to 1 if the STA supports broadcast TWT functionality. Set to 0 otherwise.
32-bit BA Bitmap Support	Indicates support for the reception of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame that has a Per AID Info subfield addressed to it with a 32-bit Block Ack Bitmap subfield.	Set to 1 if the STA supports reception of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame that has a Per AID Info subfield addressed to it with a 32-bit Block Ack Bitmap subfield. Set to 0 otherwise.
MU Cascading Support	Indicates support for participating in an MU cascading sequence (see 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence)).	For an HE AP: Set to 1 to indicate that the AP is capable of transmitting an A-MPDU that is constructed following the MU cascade sequence rules (see 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence)) under MU cascade operation. Set to 0 otherwise. For a non-AP HE STA: Set to 1 to indicate that the non-AP STA is capable of receiving an A-MPDU that is constructed following the MU cascade sequence rules (see 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence)). Set to 0 otherwise.
Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support	Indicates support by a STA to receive an A-MPDU that contains two or more frames at least one of which solicits an Ack frame or acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as described in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU) and 26.5.1.1 (General).	Set to 1 if the STA supports reception of this A-MPDU format. Set to 0 otherwise.
OM Control Support	Indicates support for receiving a frame with an OM Control subfield.	If the +HTC-HE Support subfield is 1 in a non-AP STA: Set to 1 if the non-AP STA supports reception of the OM Control subfield. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved if the +HTC-HE Support subfield is 0 in a non-AP STA. An AP sets the OM Control Support subfield to 1.

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
OFDMA RA Support	For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the OFDMA random access procedure. For an AP, indicates support for sending Trigger frames that allocate RA-RUs. See 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)).	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension	Indicates the exponent extension for the maximum A-MPDU length supported in reception (see 26.6 (A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU)).	Set to the value of the maximum A-MPDU exponent extension value.
A-MSDU Fragmentation Support	Indicates support for the reception of fragmented A-MSDUs.	If the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield is not 0: Set to 1 to indicate support for the receipt of fragmented A-MSDUs. Set to 0 to indicate that reception of fragmented A-MSDUs is not supported. Reserved if the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield is 0.
Flexible TWT Schedule Support	Indicates support for the reception of TWT Information frames with flexible TWT schedules as defined in 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time).	Set to 1 if the STA supports reception of a TWT Information frame with flexible TWT schedules. Set to 0 otherwise.
Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS	For a non-AP STA associated with a BSS corresponding to a non-transmitted BSSID, indicates support for the reception of a Control frame with TA equal to the transmitted BSSID.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved for an AP.
BSRP BQRP A-MPDU Aggregation	For a non-AP STA, indicates whether or not the STA accepts a BSRP Trigger frame or BQRP Trigger frame that is aggregated with other Control, Data and Management frames in an A-MPDU destined to the STA.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved for an AP.
QTP Support	Indicates support for quiet time period (QTP) operation as described in 26.17.5 (Quiet HE STAs in an HE BSS).	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
BQR Support	For an AP, indicates support for receiving a frame with a BQR Control subfield. For a non-AP STA, indicates support for generating a frame with a BQR Control subfield.	If +HTC-HE Support is 1: Set to 1 if the STA supports the BQR Control subfield functionality. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved if +HTC-HE Support is 0.

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field (continued)

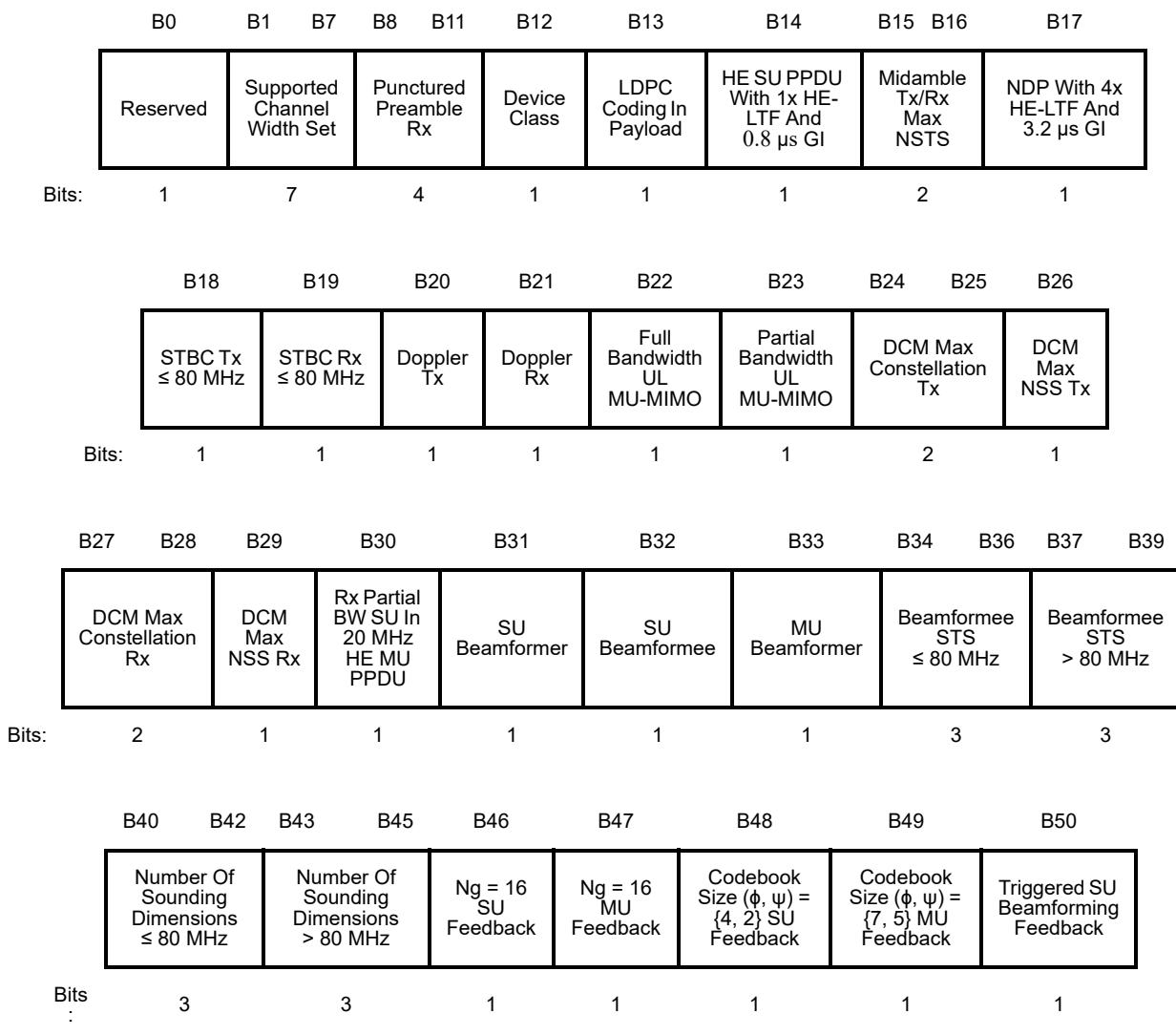
Subfield	Definition	Encoding
SRP Responder	Indicates support for the role of SRP responder.	Set to 1 if the STA supports the role of SRP responder. Set to 0 otherwise.
NDP Feedback Report Support	For an AP, indicates support for the NDP feedback report procedure. For a non-AP STA, indicates support for responding to an NFRP Trigger frame.	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
OPS Support	For an AP, indicates support for encoding OPS information in the TIM element of FILS Discovery frames, TIM frames or OPS frames as described in 26.14.3.2 (AP operation for opportunistic power save). For a non-AP STA, indicates support for receiving the opportunistic power save encoded TIM elements.	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
A-MSDU Not Under BA In Ack-Enabled A-MPDU Support	Indicates support by a STA to receive an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU that carries an A-MSDU that is not under a block ack agreement.	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
HE Subchannel Selective Transmission Support	Indicates whether an HE STA supports an HE subchannel selective transmission operation described in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission).	Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise.
UL 2×996-tone RU Support	Indicates support by a non-AP STA to receive a TRS Control subfield or a Trigger frame with a User Info field addressed to the STA with the RU Allocation subfield of the TRS Control subfield or the User Info field indicating 2×996-tone RU.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 1 if the STA supports reception of a TRS Control subfield with the RU Allocation subfield indicating a 2×996-tone RU or a Trigger frame with a User Info field addressed to the STA with the RU Allocation subfield indicating 2×996-tone RU. Set to 0, otherwise. Reserved for an AP.
OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support	Indicates whether an AP supports interpretation of the UL MU Data Disable subfield of the OM Control subfield as described in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).	For an AP: Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved for a non-AP STA.
HE Dynamic SM Power Save	Indicates the spatial multiplexing power save mode after receiving a Trigger frame that is in operation immediately after (re)association. See 26.14.4 (HE dynamic SM power save).	For a non-AP STA: Set to 0 if HE dynamic SM power save is not supported. Set to 1 if HE dynamic SM power save is supported. Reserved for an AP.

Table 9-321a—Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Punctured Sound-ing Support	Indicates support for punctured sounding as described in 26.7 (HE sounding protocol).	Set to 1 if dot11HEPuncturedSoundingOptionImple-mented is true (see 26.7 (HE sounding protocol)). Set to 0 otherwise.
HT And VHT Trigger Frame Rx Sup-port	Indicates support for receiving a Trigger frame in an HT PPDU and receiving a Trigger frame in a VHT PPDU.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 1 if supported. Set to 0 otherwise. Reserved for an AP.

9.4.2.247.3 HE PHY Capabilities Information field

The format of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is defined in Figure 9-787c (HE PHY Capabilities Information field format).



B51	B52	B53	B54	B55	B56	B57	B58
Triggered MU Beamforming Partial BW Feedback	Triggered CQI Feedback	Partial Bandwidth Extended Range	Partial Bandwidth DL MU-MIMO	PPE Thresholds Present	SRP-based SR Support	Power Boost Factor Support	HE SU PPDU And HE MU PPDU With 4x HE-LTF And 0.8 µs GI
Bits: 1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
B59 B61	B62	B63	B64	B65	B66	B67	B68
Max Nc	STBC Tx > 80 MHz	STBC Rx > 80 MHz	HE ER SU PPDU With 4x HE-LTF And 0.8 µs GI	20 MHz In 40 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz Band	20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU	80 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU	HE ER SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 µs GI
Bits: 3	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
B69	B70 B71	B72	B73	B74	B75	B76	B77
Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF	DCM Max RU	Longer Than 16 HE-SIG-B OFDM Symbols Support	Non-Triggered CQI Feedback	Tx 1024-QAM < 242-tone RU Support	Rx 1024-QAM < 242-tone RU Support	Rx Full BW SU Using HE MU PPDU With Compressed HE-SIG-B	Rx Full BW SU Using HE MU PPDU With Non-Compressed HE-SIG-B
Bits: 1	2	1	1	1	1	1	1
B78 B79	B80 B87						
Nominal Packet Padding	Reserved						
Bits: 2	8						

Figure 9-787c—HE PHY Capabilities Information field format

1 The subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field are defined in Table 9-321b (Subfields of the
 2 HE PHY Capabilities Information field).

5 **Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field**

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Supported Channel Width Set	<p>B0 indicates support for a 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz band.</p> <p>B1 indicates support for a 40 MHz and 80 MHz channel width in the 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band.</p> <p>B2 indicates support for a 160 MHz channel width in the 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band.</p> <p>B3 indicates support for a 160/80+80 MHz channel width in the 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band.</p> <p>If a non-AP STA operates with a 20 MHz channel width and the 20 MHz In 40 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz subfield is 1, then B4 indicates support of 242-tone RUs in a 40 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 2.4 GHz band. Otherwise, B4 is reserved.</p> <p>If a non-AP STA operates with 20 MHz channel width and the 20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU subfield is set to 0, then B5 indicates support of 242-tone RUs in a 40 MHz and 80 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band. If a non-AP STA operates with 20 MHz channel width and the 20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU subfield is set to 1, then B5 indicates support of 242-tone RUs in a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz bands. Otherwise, B5 is reserved.</p> <p>B0 and B4 are applicable to 2.4 GHz band operation and reserved for 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band operation.</p> <p>B1, B2, B3 and B5 are applicable to 5 GHz band and 6 GHz band operation and reserved for 2.4 GHz band operation.</p>	<p>B0 is set to 0 if not supported. B0 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>B1 is set to 0 if not supported, i.e., it indicates a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA in the 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band. B1 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>B2 is set to 0 if not supported. B2 set to 1 if supported. If B2 is 1, then B1 is set to 1.</p> <p>B3 is set to 0 if not supported. B3 is set to 1 if supported. If B3 is 1, then B2 is set to 1.</p> <p>B4 is set to 0 if not supported. B4 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>B5 set to 0 if not supported. B5 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>NOTE 1—If a non-AP STA operates with 20 MHz channel width and the 20 MHz In 40 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz subfield is 0, then B4 is set to 0.</p> <p>B6 is reserved.</p> <p>NOTE 2—If a non-AP STA operates with 20 MHz channel width and the 20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU subfield is 0, then the 242-tone RU in a 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band is not supported.</p>

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Punctured Preamble Rx	<p>B0 indicates support for the reception of an 80 MHz preamble where the secondary 20 MHz subchannel is punctured.</p> <p>B1 indicates support for the reception of an 80 MHz preamble where one of the two 20 MHz subchannels in the secondary 40 MHz is punctured.</p> <p>B2 indicates support for the reception of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz preamble where only the secondary 20 MHz channel in the primary 80 MHz channel is punctured.</p> <p>B3 indicates support for the reception of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz preamble where the primary 40 MHz channel in the primary 80 MHz channel is present.</p>	<p>B0 is set to 0 if not supported. B0 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>B1 set to 0 if not supported. B1 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>B2 set to 0 if not supported. B2 set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>B3 set to 0 if not supported. B3 set to 1 if supported.</p>
Device Class	For a non-AP STA, indicates whether the STA is a Class A or a Class B device.	<p>For a non-AP STA:</p> <p>Set to 1 for a Class A device.</p> <p>Set to 0 for a Class B device.</p> <p>Reserved for an AP.</p>
LDPC Coding In Payload	Indicates support for the transmission and reception of LDPC encoded PPDU.	<p>Set to 0 if not supported.</p> <p>Set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>NOTE—Set to 1 by a STA that supports more than 4 spatial streams, an HE PPDU bandwidth greater than 20 MHz, HE-MCS 10 or HE-MCS 11.</p>
HE SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI	Indicates support of the reception of an HE SU PPDU with 1x HE-LTF and 0.8 μ s guard interval duration.	<p>Set to 0 if not supported.</p> <p>Set to 1 if supported.</p>
Midamble Tx/Rx Max NSTS	<p>If the Doppler Rx subfield is 1, indicates the maximum number of space-time streams supported for reception when a midamble is present in the Data field.</p> <p>If the Doppler Tx subfield is 1, indicates the maximum number of space-time streams supported for transmission when a midamble is present in the Data field.</p> <p>If both Doppler Rx and Doppler Tx subfields are 1, indicates the maximum number of space-time streams supported for transmission and reception when a midamble is present in the Data field.</p>	<p>Set to 0 for 1 space-time stream</p> <p>Set to 1 for 2 space-time streams</p> <p>Set to 2 for 3 space-time streams</p> <p>Set to 3 for 4 space-time streams</p>
NDP With 4x HE-LTF And 3.2 μ s GI	For a beamformee, indicates support for receiving an HE sounding NDP with 4x HE-LTF and 3.2 μ s guard interval duration.	<p>If the SU Beamformee field is 1:</p> <p>Set to 0 if not supported.</p> <p>Set to 1 if supported.</p>
STBC Tx \leq 80 MHz	Indicates support for the transmission of an HE TB PPDU using STBC that has a bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz.	<p>For a non-AP STA:</p> <p>Set to 0 if not supported.</p> <p>Set to 1 if supported.</p> <p>Reserved for an AP.</p>

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
STBC Rx \leq 80 MHz	Indicates support for the reception of an HE PPDU using STBC that has a bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Doppler Tx	Indicates support for transmitting HE PPDUs with midamble.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Doppler Rx	Indicates support for receiving HE PPDUs with midamble.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Full Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO	For an AP, indicates support for MU-MIMO reception of an HE TB PPDU on an RU that spans the entire PPDU bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO). For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the transmission of an HE TB PPDU on an RU that spans the entire PPDU bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO).	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO	For an AP, indicates support for receiving an HE TB PPDU on an RU where MU-MIMO is employed and where the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO in OFDMA). For a non-AP STA, indicates support for transmitting an HE TB PPDU on an RU where MU-MIMO is employed and where the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO in OFDMA). NOTE—The RU is a 106-tone or larger RU.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
DCM Max Constellation Tx	Indicates the maximum supported constellation for DCM in the Data field of an HE TB PPDU that the STA is capable of transmitting.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 0 if DCM is not supported. Set to 1 for BPSK. Set to 2 for QPSK. Set to 3 for 16-QAM. Reserved for an AP.
DCM Max NSS Tx	Indicates the maximum number of spatial streams supported for transmission when DCM is used in the Data field of an HE TB PPDU.	For a non-AP STA, if the DCM Max Constellation Tx subfield is not 0: Set to 0 for 1 spatial stream. Set to 1 for 2 spatial streams. Reserved for an AP or if the DCM Max Constellation Tx subfield is 0.
DCM Max Constellation Rx	Indicates the maximum supported constellation for DCM in both the Data field and HE-SIG-B field that the STA is capable of receiving.	Set to 0 if DCM is not supported. Set to 1 for BPSK. Set to 2 for QPSK. Set to 3 for 16-QAM.
DCM Max NSS Rx	Indicates the maximum number of spatial streams supported for reception when DCM is used in the Data field.	Set to 0 for 1 spatial stream. Set to 1 for 2 spatial streams.
Rx Partial BW SU In 20 MHz HE MU PPDU	Indicates support for the reception of a 20 MHz HE MU PPDU with just a 106-tone RU.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
SU Beamformer	Indicates support for operation as an SU beamformer.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. NOTE—Set to 1 by an AP with support for 4 or more spatial streams.
SU Beamformee	Indicates support for operation as an SU beamformee.	For an AP: Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. Set to 1 for a non-AP STA.
MU Beamformer	Indicates support for operation as an MU beamformer.	For an AP: Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if the SU Beamformer field is 1 and operation as an MU beamformer is supported. Set to 0 for a non-AP STA. NOTE—Set to 1 by an AP with support for 4 or more spatial streams.
Beamformee STS \leq 80 MHz	For a PPDU bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz, indicates the maximum number of space-time streams that the STA can receive in an HE sounding NDP, which is also the maximum total number of space-time streams over all the users that can be sent in a DL MU-MIMO transmission on an RU that includes that STA, where the RU might or might not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.	If the SU Beamformee subfield is 1: Set to the maximum number of space-time streams that the STA is capable of receiving in an HE sounding NDP minus 1. The minimum value of this field is 3. Reserved if the SU Beamformee field is 0.
Beamformee STS $>$ 80 MHz	For a PPDU bandwidth greater than 80 MHz, indicates the maximum number of space-time streams that the STA can receive in an HE sounding NDP, which is also the maximum total number of space-time streams over all the users that can be sent in a DL MU-MIMO transmission on an RU that includes that STA, where the RU might or might not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.	If the SU Beamformee subfield is 1: Set to the maximum number of space-time streams that the STA is capable of receiving in an HE sounding NDP minus 1. The minimum value of this field is 3. Reserved if the SU Beamformee subfield is 0 or the Supported Channel Width Set field does not indicate support for bandwidths greater than 80 MHz.
Number Of Sound- ing Dimensions \leq 80 MHz	For bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz, it indicates the beamformer's capability indicating the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS for an HE sounding NDP.	If the SU Beamformer subfield is 1: Set to the supported maximum TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS value minus 1. Reserved if the SU Beamformer subfield is 0.

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Number Of Sounding Dimensions > 80 MHz	For bandwidth greater than 80 MHz, indicates the beamformer's capability indicating the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS for an HE sounding NDP.	If the SU Beamformer subfield is 1: Set to the supported maximum TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS value minus 1. Reserved if the SU Beamformer subfield is 0 or the Supported Channel Width Set field does not indicate support for bandwidths greater than 80 MHz.
Ng = 16 SU Feedback	Indicates HE beamformee support for a subcarrier grouping of 16 in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for SU feedback.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Ng = 16 MU Feedback	Indicates HE beamformee support for a subcarrier grouping of 16 in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for MU feedback.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Codebook Size (ϕ, ψ) = {4, 2} SU Feedback	Indicates HE beamformee support for a codebook size (ϕ, ψ) = {4, 2} in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for SU feedback.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Codebook Size (ϕ, ψ) = {7, 5} MU Feedback	Indicates HE beamformee support for a codebook size (ϕ, ψ) = {7, 5} in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for MU feedback.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Triggered SU Beamforming Feedback	For an AP, indicates support for the reception of partial and full bandwidth SU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence. For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the transmission of partial and full bandwidth SU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Triggered MU Beamforming Partial BW Feedback	For an AP, indicates support for the reception of partial bandwidth MU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence. For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the transmission of partial bandwidth MU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Triggered CQI Feedback	For an AP, indicates support for the reception of partial and full bandwidth CQI feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence. For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the transmission of partial and full bandwidth CQI feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Partial Bandwidth Extended Range	Indicates support for the transmission and reception of an HE ER SU PPDU in which the HE modulated fields are transmitted over the higher frequency 106-tone RU within primary 20 MHz channel.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Partial Bandwidth DL MU-MIMO	For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the reception of a DL MU-MIMO transmission on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth (DL MU-MIMO within OFDMA).	For a non-AP STA: Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. NOTE—A non-AP STA that sets this field to 0 supports receiving a partial bandwidth RU allocated to a single user within an HE MU PPDU where some other RU is employing DL MU-MIMO. Reserved for an AP.
PPE Thresholds Present	Indicates whether or not the PPE Thresholds field is present.	Set to 1 if PPE Thresholds field is present. Set to 0, otherwise
SRP-based SR Support	Indicates support for SRP-based SR operation.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Power Boost Factor Support	Indicates that the STA supports a power boost factor for the RUs in an HE MU PPDU in the range [0.5, 2].	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
HE SU PPDU And HE MU PPDU With 4x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI	Indicates support for the reception of an HE SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU with 4x HE-LTF and 0.8 μ s guard interval duration.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. This subfield is set to 1 if the HE ER SU PPDU With 4x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1.
Max Nc	Indicates the maximum supported N_c for an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report.	If the SU Beamformee subfield is 1: Set to the maximum supported N_c for an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report minus 1. Reserved if the SU Beamformee subfield is 0.
STBC Tx > 80 MHz	Indicates support for the transmission of an HE TB PPDU using STB that has a bandwidth greater than 80 MHz.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. Reserved for an AP or if the Supported Channel Width Set field does not indicate support for bandwidths greater than 80 MHz.
STBC Rx > 80 MHz	Indicates support for the reception of an HE PPDU using STBC that has a bandwidth greater than 80 MHz.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. Reserved if the Supported Channel Width Set field does not indicate support for bandwidths greater than 80 MHz.
HE ER SU PPDU With 4x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI	Indicates support for the reception of an HE ER SU PPDU with 4x HE-LTF and 0.8 μ s guard interval duration.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
20 MHz In 40 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz Band	Indicates support for 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU mapping for a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA that is the receiver of a 40 MHz HE MU PPDU in 2.4 GHz band, or the transmitter of a 40 MHz HE TB PPDU in 2.4 GHz band.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. NOTE—Set to 1 if B0 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield is 1. Reserved for an AP.
20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU	Indicates support for 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU mapping for a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA that is the receiver of an 80+80 MHz or a 160 MHz HE MU PPDU, or the transmitter of an 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz HE TB PPDU.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. NOTE—Set to 1 if B2 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield is 1. Reserved for an AP.
80 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU	Indicates supports of 160/80+80 MHz OFDMA for a non-AP HE STA that sets B1 of Supported Channel Width Set to 1, and sets B2 and B3 of Supported Channel Width Set each to 0, when operating with 80 MHz channel width. The capability bit is applicable while receiving an 80+80 MHz or a 160 MHz HE MU PPDU, or transmitting an 80+80 MHz or a 160 MHz HE TB PPDU.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. NOTE—Set to 1 if B2 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield is 1. Reserved for an AP.
HE ER SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI	Indicates support of the reception of an HE ER SU PPDU with 1x HE-LTF and 0.8 μ s guard interval duration.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF	If the Doppler Rx subfield is 1, indicates support for receiving midambles with 2x HE-LTF, 1x HE-LTF in HE SU PPDU if the HE SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1, and 1x HE-LTF in HE ER SU PPDU if the HE ER SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1. If the Doppler Tx subfield is 1, indicates support for transmitting midambles with 2x HE-LTF, 1x HE-LTF in HE TB PPDU when allowed. If both the Doppler Rx and Doppler Tx subfields are 1, indicates support for receiving midambles with 2x HE-LTF, 1x HE-LTF in HE SU PPDU if the HE SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1, and 1x HE-LTF in HE ER SU PPDU if the HE ER SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1; and also support for transmitting midambles with 2x HE-LTF, 1x HE-LTF in HE TB PPDU when allowed.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

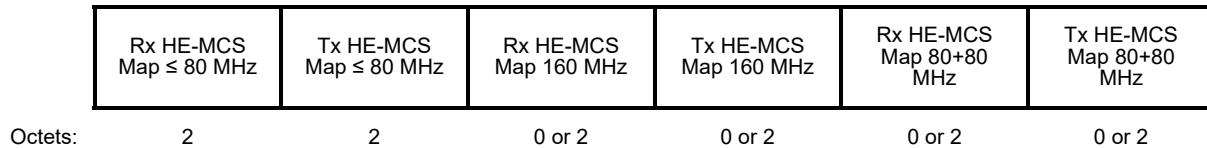
Subfield	Definition	Encoding
DCM Max RU	<p>If the DCM Max Constellation Tx subfield is greater than 0, then the DCM Max RU subfield indicates the maximum RU size that the STA might transmit with DCM applied.</p> <p>If the DCM Max Constellation Rx subfield is greater than 0, then the DCM Max RU subfield indicates the maximum RU size with DCM applied that the STA can receive.</p> <p>If both the DCM Max Constellation Tx subfield and DCM Max Constellation Rx subfield are 0, then this subfield is reserved.</p>	Set to 0 for 242-tone RU Set to 1 for 484-tone RU Set to 2 for 996-tone RU Set to 3 for 2×996-tone RU
Longer Than 16 HE-SIG-B OFDM Symbols Support	For a non-AP STA, indicates support for receiving a DL HE MU PPDU where the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field is greater than 16.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. A 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA sets this to 0.
Non-Triggered CQI Feedback	<p>For an AP, indicates support for the reception of full bandwidth non-triggered CQI feedback.</p> <p>For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the transmission of full bandwidth non-triggered CQI feedback.</p>	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Tx 1024-QAM < 242-tone RU Support	For a non-AP STA, indicates support for the transmission of 1024-QAM on a 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU.	For a non-AP STA: Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported. Reserved for an AP.
Rx 1024-QAM < 242-tone RU Support	Indicates support for the reception of 1024-QAM on a 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Rx Full BW SU Using HE MU PPDU With Compressed HE-SIG-B	Indicates support for reception of an HE MU PPDU with a single user allocated an RU spanning the entire PPDU bandwidth and a compressed HE-SIG-B format.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.
Rx Full BW SU Using HE MU PPDU With Non-Compressed HE-SIG-B	Indicates support for reception of an HE MU PPDU with a bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz, a single user allocated an RU spanning the entire PPDU bandwidth and a noncompressed HE-SIG-B format.	Set to 0 if not supported. Set to 1 if supported.

Table 9-321b—Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Nominal Packet Padding	Indicates the nominal packet padding to be used for all constellations, NSS and RU allocations the STA supports if the PPE Thresholds Present subfield is set to 0.	Set to 0 if the nominal packet padding is 0 μ s for all constellations, NSS and RU allocations the STA supports. Set to 1 if the nominal packet padding is 8 μ s for all constellations, NSS and RU allocations the STA supports. Set to 2 if the nominal packet padding is 16 μ s for all constellations, NSS and RU allocations the STA supports. The value 3 is reserved. Reserved if the PPE Thresholds Present subfield is 1.

9.4.2.247.4 Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field

The Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field indicates the combinations of HE-MCSs and spatial streams that a STA supports for reception and the combinations that it supports for transmission. The structure of the field is shown in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format).

**Figure 9-787d—Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format**

1 The subfields of the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field, and their presence, are defined in Table 9-321c
 2 (Subfields of the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field).

5 **Table 9-321c—Subfields of the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field**

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Rx HE-MCS Map ≤ 80 MHz	If the operating channel width of the STA is greater than 80 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the RXVECTOR parameter MCS of a PPDU that can be received by the STA for a PPDU with bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz for each number of spatial streams. If the operating channel width of this STA is less than or equal to 80 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the RXVECTOR parameter MCS for a PPDU that can be received by the STA for each number of spatial streams.	The format and encoding of this subfield are defined in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format) and the associated description. The Rx HE-MCS Map ≤ 80 MHz subfield is always present in the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field.
Tx HE-MCS Map ≤ 80 MHz	If the operating channel width of this STA is greater than 80 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parameter MCS of a PPDU that can be transmitted by the STA for a PPDU with bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz for each number of spatial streams. If the operating channel width of this STA is less than or equal to 80 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parameter MCS for a PPDU that can be transmitted by the STA for each number of spatial streams.	The format and encoding of this subfield are defined in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format) and the associated description. The Tx HE-MCS Map ≤ 80 MHz subfield is always present in the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field.
Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz	If the operating channel width of the STA is 160 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the RXVECTOR parameter MCS for a 160 MHz PPDU that can be received by this STA for each number of spatial streams.	The format and encoding of this subfield are defined in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format) and the associated description. The Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz subfield is present if B2 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 1; otherwise, it is not present.
Tx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz	If the operating channel width of the STA is 160 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parameter MCS for a 160 MHz PPDU that can be transmitted by this STA for each number of spatial streams.	The format and encoding of this subfield are defined in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format) and the associated description. The Tx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz subfield is present if B2 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 1; otherwise, it is not present.

Table 9-321c—Subfields of the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field (continued)

Subfield	Definition	Encoding
Rx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz	If the operating channel width of the STA is 160 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the RXVECTOR parameter MCS for an 80+80 MHz PPDU that can be received by this STA for each number of spatial streams.	The format and encoding of this subfield are defined in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format) and the associated description. The Rx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz subfield is present if B3 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 1; otherwise, it is not present.
Tx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz	If the operating channel width of the STA is 160 MHz, indicates the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parameter MCS for an 80+80 MHz PPDU that can be transmitted by this STA for each number of spatial streams.	The format and encoding of this subfield are defined in Figure 9-787d (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field format) and the associated description. The Tx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz subfield is present if B3 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 1; otherwise, it is not present.

The Rx HE-MCS Map and Tx HE-MCS Map subfields have the structure shown in Figure 9-787e (Rx HE-MCS Map subfield, Tx HE-MCS Map subfield and Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field format).

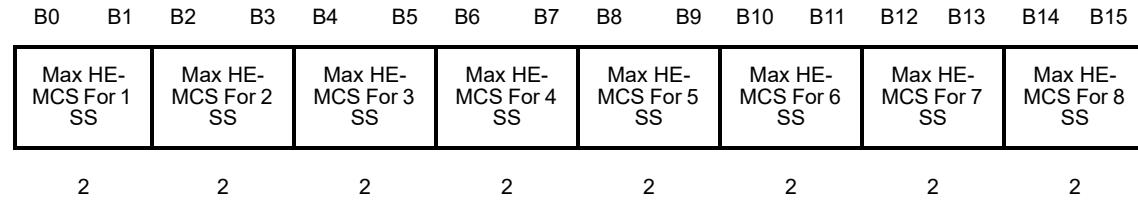


Figure 9-787e—Rx HE-MCS Map subfield, Tx HE-MCS Map subfield and Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field format

The Max HE-MCS For n SS subfield (where $n = 1, \dots, 8$) is encoded as follows:

- 0 indicates support for HE-MCS 0-7 for n spatial streams
- 1 indicates support for HE-MCS 0-9 for n spatial streams
- 2 indicates support for HE-MCS 0-11 for n spatial streams
- 3 indicates that n spatial streams is not supported for HE PPDUs

The maximum received HE NSS for a given HE-MCS is equal to the smaller of:

- The maximum value of n for which the Max HE-MCS For n SS has a value that indicates support for that HE-MCS
- The maximum supported NSS as indicated by the value of the Rx NSS field of the Operating Mode Notification frame if the value of Rx NSS Type is 0 or of the OM Control subfield

NOTE—An HE-MCS indicated as supported in the Rx HE-MCS Map fields for a particular number of spatial streams might not be valid at all bandwidths (see 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)) and might be affected by 26.15.4.3 (Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPDUs).

The maximum transmit HE NSS for a given HE-MCS is equal to the smaller of:

- The maximum value of n for which the Max HE-MCS For n SS has a value that indicates support for that HE-MCS (0, 1, or 2 for HE-MCS 0-7, 1 or 2 for HE-MCS 8-9, 2 for HE-MCS 10-11)
- The maximum supported NSTS as indicated by the value of the Tx NSTS field of the OM Control subfield sent by a non-AP STA

NOTE—An HE-MCS indicated as supported in the Tx HE-MCS Map fields for a particular number of space-time streams might not be valid at all bandwidths (see 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)) and might be affected by 26.15.4.3 (Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPDUs).

9.4.2.247.5 PPE Thresholds field

The PPE Thresholds field determines the nominal packet padding value (see 26.12 (HE PPDU post-FEC padding and packet extension)) for an HE PPDU of a particular RU allocation size and NSTS value. The format of the PPE Thresholds field is defined in Figure 9-787f (PPE Thresholds field format).

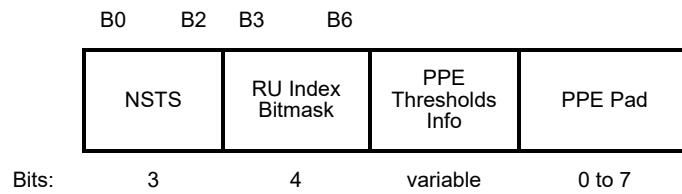


Figure 9-787f—PPE Thresholds field format

The NSTS subfield contains an unsigned integer that is the number of NSTS values minus 1 for which PPE threshold values are included in the PPE Thresholds List subfield.

The RU Index Bitmask subfield contains a bitmask that indicates whether the PPE Thresholds Info field contains PPET16 and PPET8 values for the four possible RU sizes indicated in Table 9-321e (RU allocation index). The PPET16 and PPET8 values for RU allocation index k is present in the PPE Thresholds Info field only if bit k of the RU Index Bitmask subfield (bit $3 + k$ of the PPE Thresholds field) is 1. For example, if B0 of the RU Index Bitmask subfield (B3 of the PPE Thresholds field) is 1, PPET16 and PPET8 values are present in the PPE Thresholds Info field for the RU allocation size corresponding to RU allocation index 0 (242-tone RU). If B0 of the RU Index Bitmask subfield is 0, PPET16 and PPET8 values are not present in the PPE Thresholds Info field for the RU allocation size corresponding to RU allocation index 0.

The PPE Thresholds List field contains $6 \times (NSTS + 1)$ bits, where $NSTS$ is the value in the NSTS field, for every bit in the RU Index Bitmask subfield that is nonzero. The format of the PPE Thresholds Info field is defined in Figure 9-787g (PPE Thresholds Info field format).

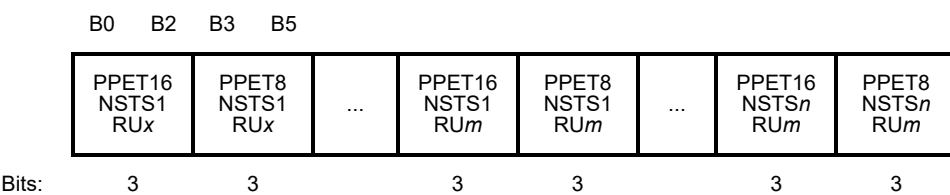


Figure 9-787g—PPE Thresholds Info field format

The PPET16 and PPET8 subfields for various NSTS and RU values appear in increasing NSTS value and increasing RU index value order. Lower numbered PPE Thresholds Info field bits contain PPET16 and PPET8 subfields corresponding to lower numbered NSTS values. Within a set of PPET16 and PPET8 subfields corresponding to a single value of $NSTS$, lower numbered PPE Thresholds Info field bits contain PPET16 and PPET8 subfields corresponding to lower numbered RU index values. The PPET16 $NSTS_n$

1 RUb and PPET8 NSTS n RUb subfields are present for all values of n and b where $1 \leq n \leq (NSTS + 1)$ and
 2 where $b = [x, \dots, m]$ is the set of integers equal to the ordered list of bit positions of all bits that are set to 1
 3 in the RU Index Bitmask subfield, with x being the lowest value.
 4

5 Each PPET8 NSTS n RUb and PPET16 NSTS n RUb subfield contains an integer as defined in Table 9-321d
 6 (Constellation index), which is used to compute the nominal packet padding value.
 7

Table 9-321d—Constellation index

Constellation Index	Corresponding Transmission Constellation
0	BPSK
1	QPSK
2	16-QAM
3	64-QAM
4	256-QAM
5	1024-QAM
6	Reserved
7	None

37 The value of the PPET8 NSTS n RUb subfield is always less than the value of the PPET16 NSTS n RUb sub-
 38 field, except if the PPET8 subfield is 7.
 39

40 The RU allocation index for each RU allocation size is defined in Table 9-321e (RU allocation index).
 41

Table 9-321e—RU allocation index

RU allocation index	RU allocation size
0	242
1	484
2	996
3	2×996

60 The PPE Pad field contains all 0s. The number of bits in the PPE Pad field is the least number of bits
 61 required to round the length of the PPE Thresholds Info field to an integer number of octets.
 62

9.4.2.248 HE Operation element

The operation of HE STAs in an HE BSS is controlled by the following:

- the HT Operation element and the HE Operation element if operating in the 2.4 GHz band
- the HT Operation element, VHT Operation element (if present) and the HE Operation element if operating in the 5 GHz band
- The HE Operation element if operating in the 6 GHz band

The format of the HE Operation element is defined in Figure 9-787h (HE Operation element format).

Element ID	Length	Element ID Extension	HE Operation Parameters	BSS Color Information	Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set	VHT Operation Information	Max Co-Hosted BSSID Indicator	6 GHz Operation Information	
Octets:	1	1	1	3	1	2	0 or 3	0 or 1	0 or 5

Figure 9-787h—HE Operation element format

The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

The format of the HE Operation Parameters field is defined in Figure 9-787i (HE Operation Parameters field format).

B0	B2	B3	B4	B13	B14	B15	B16	B17	B18	B23
Default PE Duration	TWT Required	TXOP Duration RTS Threshold	VHT Operation Information Present	Co-Hosted BSS	ER SU Disable	6 GHz Operation Information Present	Reserved			
Bits:	3	1	10	1	1	1	1	1	6	

Figure 9-787i—HE Operation Parameters field format

The Default PE Duration subfield indicates the PE field duration in units of 4 μ s for an HE TB PPDU that is solicited with a TRS Control subfield and its use is defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation). Values 5-7 of the Default PE Duration subfield are reserved.

The TWT Required subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the AP requires its associated non-AP HE STAs that have declared support for TWT by setting any one of TWT Requester Support or TWT Responder Support or Broadcast TWT Support subfield in HE Capabilities element that it transmits to 1 to operate in the role of either TWT requesting STA by following the rules in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements), or TWT scheduled STA by following the rules in 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation) and set to 0 otherwise.

The TXOP Duration RTS Threshold subfield enables an HE AP to manage RTS/CTS usage by non-AP HE STAs that are associated with it (see 26.2.1 (TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS)). The TXOP Duration RTS Threshold subfield contains the TXOP duration RTS threshold in units of 32 μ s, which enables the use of RTS/CTS except for the value 1023. The value 1023 indicates that TXOP duration-based RTS is disabled. The value of 0 is allowed in Beacon and Probe Response frames and indicates that the previously announced TXOP duration RTS threshold remains in effect. In all other frames, the value of 0 is reserved.

1 The VHT Operation Information Present subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the VHT Operation Information
 2 field is present in the HE Operation element and set to 0 otherwise. The VHT Operation Information Present
 3 subfield is set as defined in 26.17 (HE BSS operation).

5
 6 The Co-Hosted BSS subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the AP transmitting this element shares the same
 7 operating class, channel and antenna connectors with at least one other AP that is providing its BSS informa-
 8 tion by transmitting Beacon and Probe Response frames. Otherwise the subfield is set to 0. An AP operating
 9 in the 6 GHz band, a TDLS STA, an IBSS STA, a mesh STA, or an AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented
 10 true sets the subfield to 0.

12
 13 The ER SU Disable subfield indicates whether 242-tone HE ER SU PPDU reception by the AP is disabled
 14 or enabled. The ER SU Disable subfield is set to 1 to indicate that it is disabled and set to 0 to indicate that it
 15 is enabled.

17
 18 The 6 GHz Operation Information Present field is set to 1 to indicate that the 6 GHz Operation Information
 19 field is present and set to 0, otherwise. The 6 GHz Operation Information Present field is set to 1 by an AP
 20 operating in the 6 GHz band.

22 The BSS Color Information field is defined in Figure 9-787j (BSS Color Information field format).

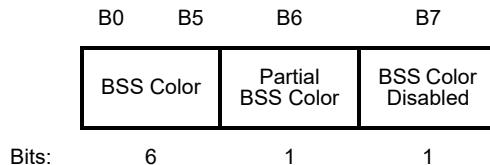


Figure 9-787j—BSS Color Information field format

35 The BSS Color subfield is an unsigned integer whose value is the BSS Color of the BSS corresponding to
 36 the AP, IBSS STA, mesh STA or TDLS STA that transmitted this element and is set as defined in 26.11.4
 37 (BSS_COLOR).

40 The Partial BSS Color subfield is set to 1 to indicate that an AID assignment rule based on the BSS color as
 41 defined in 26.17.4 (AID assignment) is applied for the BSS. Otherwise, the Partial BSS Color subfield is set
 42 to 0.

45 The BSS Color Disabled subfield is set to 1 to temporarily disable the use of color for the BSS as described
 46 in 26.11.4 (BSS_COLOR); otherwise it is set to 0.

49 The Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field indicates the HE-MCSs for each number of spatial streams in HE
 50 PPDUs that are supported by all HE STAs in the BSS (including IBSS and MBSS) in transmit and receive.
 51 The Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field is defined in Figure 9-787e (Rx HE-MCS Map subfield, Tx HE-
 52 MCS Map subfield and Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field format).

55 The structure of the VHT Operation Information field is defined in Figure 9-564 (VHT Operation Informa-
 56 tion field) and its subfields are defined in Table 9-252 (VHT Operation Information subfields). The VHT
 57 Operation Information field is present if the VHT Operation Info Present field is 1; otherwise not present.

59 The Max Co-Hosted BSSID Indicator field contains a value assigned to n , where 2^n is the maximum number
 60 of BSSIDs in the co-hosted BSSID set as defined in 26.17.7 (Co-hosted BSSID set). This field is present if
 61 the Co-Hosted BSS subfield in HE Operation Parameters field is 1 and is not present otherwise.

63 NOTE—The Max Co-Hosted BSSID Indicator field doesn't provide the exact number or the identity of each co-hosted
 64 BSSIDs.

1 The 6 GHz Operation Information field provides channel and bandwidth information related to 6 GHz operation
 2 (see 27.3.22.2 (Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band)). The format of the 6 GHz Operation Information field
 3 is defined in Figure 9-787k (6 GHz Operation Information field format).

Primary Channel	Control	Channel Center Frequency Segment 0	Channel Center Frequency Segment 1	Minimum Rate
Octets:	1	1	1	1

15 **Figure 9-787k—6 GHz Operation Information field format**

17 The Primary Channel field indicates the channel number of the primary channel in the 6 GHz band.

20 The Control field is defined in Figure 9-787l (Control field format).

B0	B1	B2	B3	B7
Channel Width	Duplicate Beacon	Reserved		
Bits:	2	1	6	

30 **Figure 9-787l—Control field format**

32 The Channel Width field indicates the BSS channel width and is set to 0 for 20 MHz, 1 for 40 MHz, 2 for 80 MHz, and 3 for 80+80 or 160 MHz.

36 The Duplicate Beacon subfield is set to 1 if the AP transmits Beacon frames in non-HT duplicate PPDU with a TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH value that is up to the BSS bandwidth and is set to 0 otherwise.

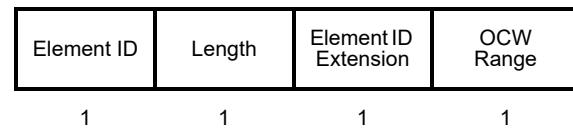
41 The Channel Center Frequency Segment 0 field indicates the channel center frequency index for the 20 MHz, 40 MHz, or 80 MHz, or 80+80 MHz channel on which the BSS operates in the 6 GHz band. If the BSS channel width is 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz then the Channel Center Frequency Segment 0 field indicates the channel center frequency index of the primary 80 MHz.

47 The Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 field indicates the channel center frequency index of the 160 MHz channel on which the BSS operates in the 6 GHz band. If the channel width is 80+80 MHz then it indicates the channel center frequency index of the secondary 80 MHz.

52 The Minimum Rate field indicates the minimum rate, in units of 1 Mbps, that the non-AP STA is allowed to use for sending PPDU (see 26.15.4.3 (Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPDU)), where the rate is obtained with an NSS that is less than or equal to 3 and an MCS that is less than or equal to 3.

1 **9.4.2.249 UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element**

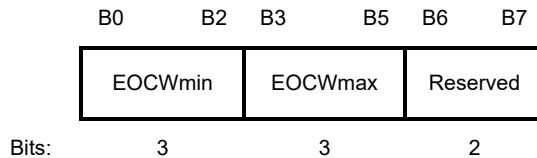
2
3 The metrics of the OFDMA-based random access mechanism (see 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random
4 access (UORA))) are signaled in the UORA Parameter Set element. The format of the UORA Parameter Set
5 element is defined in Figure 9-787m (UORA Parameter Set element format).



16 **Figure 9-787m—UORA Parameter Set element format**

17
18 The Element ID, Length, Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

19
20
21 The OCW Range field indicates the minimum and maximum values of the OCW (OFDMA contention window)
22 derived from the fields defined in Figure 9-787n (OCW Range field format).



27 **Figure 9-787n—OCW Range field format**

28
29
30 The EOCWmin subfield indicates the minimum value of OCW for the initial HE TB PPDU transmission
31 using UL OFDMA-based random access. The *OCWmin* parameter is used by a STA either for an initial
32 transmission or following a successful HE TB PPDU transmission and is derived as follows:

33
34
$$OCWmin = 2^{EOCWmin} - 1$$

35 where

36 *EOCWmin* is the value in the EOCWmin subfield

37
38 The EOCWmax subfield indicates the maximum value of OCW for UL OFDMA-based random access. The
39 *OCWmax* parameter used by a STA for its retransmission attempts of UL OFDMA-based random access and
40 is derived as follows:

41
42
$$OCWmax = 2^{EOCWmax} - 1$$

43 where

44 *EOCWmax* is the value in the EOCWmax subfield

1 **9.4.2.250 MU EDCA Parameter Set element**
 2
 3

4 The format of the MU EDCA Parameter Set element is defined in Figure 9-787o (MU EDCA Parameter Set
 5 element format).
 6
 7
 8
 9

10

Element ID	Length	ElementID Extension	QoS Info	MUAC_BE Parameter Record	MU AC_BK Parameter Record	MU AC_VI Parameter Record	MU AC_VO Parameter Record
------------	--------	---------------------	----------	--------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

11 Octets: 1 1 1 1 3 3 3 3

16 **Figure 9-787o—MU EDCA Parameter Set element format**
 17
 18

19 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).
 20
 21

22 For an infrastructure BSS, the MU EDCA Parameter Set element is used by an AP to control the EDCA
 23 from non-AP HE STAs as defined in 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters). The most
 24 recent MU EDCA Parameter Set element received by a non-AP HE STA is used to update the appropriate
 25 MIB values.
 26
 27

28 The format of the QoS Info field is defined in 9.4.1.17 (QoS Info field) when sent by the AP. The QoS Info
 29 field contains the EDCA Parameter Set Update Count subfield, which is initially set to 0 and is incremented
 30 each time any of the MU EDCA parameters in the MU EDCA Parameter Set element changes. This subfield
 31 is used by a non-AP HE STA to determine whether the MU EDCA Parameter Set has changed and requires
 32 updating the appropriate MIB attributes.
 33
 34

35 The format of the MU AC_BE, MU AC_BK, MU AC_VI, and MU AC_VO Parameter Record fields are
 36 identical and defined in Figure 9-787p (MU AC Parameter Record field format).
 37
 38

42

ACI/AIFSN	ECWmin/ ECWmax	MU EDCA Timer
-----------	-------------------	------------------

43 Octets: 1 1 1

48 **Figure 9-787p—MU AC Parameter Record field format**
 49
 50

51 The format of the ACI/AIFSN field is defined in Figure 9-262 (ACI/AIFSN field) and the encoding of its
 52 subfields is defined in 9.4.2.29 (EDCA Parameter Set element), except that the value 0 in the AIFSN field
 53 indicates that EDCA is disabled for the duration specified by the MUEDCATimer for the corresponding
 54 AC.
 55
 56

57 The format of the ECWmin/ECWmax field is defined in Figure 9-263 (ECWmin and ECWmax fields) and
 58 the encoding of its subfields is defined in 9.4.2.29 (EDCA Parameter Set element).
 59
 60

62 The MU EDCA Timer field indicates the duration of time, in units of 8 TUs, during which the HE STA uses
 63 the MU EDCA parameters for the corresponding AC, as defined in 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU
 64 EDCA parameters), except that the value 0 is reserved.
 65

1 9.4.2.251 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element

2
3
4 The Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element provides information needed by STAs when performing OBSS
5 PD-based spatial reuse as defined in 26.10.2 (OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation) and SRP-based spa-
6 tial reuse as defined in 26.10.3 (SRP-based spatial reuse operation). The format of the Spatial Reuse Param-
7 eter Set element is defined in Figure 9-787q (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element format).

Element ID	Length	Element ID Extension	SR Control	Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset	SRG OBSS PD Min Offset	SRG OBSS PD Max Offset	SRG BSS Color Bitmap	SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap
Octets:	1	1	1	1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 8	0 or 8

19 **Figure 9-787q—Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element format**

20
21
22 The Element ID, Element ID extension and Length fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

23
24
25 The SR Control field is defined in Figure 9-787r (SR Control field format).

B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B7
SRP Disallowed	Non-SRG OBSS PD SR Disallowed	Non-SRG Offset Present	SRG Information Present	HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_value15_allowed	Reserved	
Bits:	1	1	1	1	1	3

37 **Figure 9-787r—SR Control field format**

38
39
40 The SRP Disallowed subfield in the SR Control field indicates whether or not SRP-based SR transmis-
41 sions are allowed at non-AP STAs that are associated with the AP that transmitted this element. SRP-based SR
42 transmissions are disallowed when the SRP Disallowed subfield is 1. SRP-based SR transmissions are
43 allowed when the SRP Disallowed subfield is 0. The SRP Disallowed subfield also affects the value of the
44 SPATIAL_REUSE parameter of the TXVECTOR as described in 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE).

45
46
47 The Non-SRG OBSS PD SR Disallowed subfield in the SR Control field indicates whether non-SRG OBSS
48 PD SR transmissions are allowed or not at non-AP STAs that are associated with the AP that transmitted this
49 element. Non-SRG OBSS PD SR transmissions are disallowed when the Non-SRG OBSS PD SR Disal-
50 lowed subfield is 1. Non-SRG OBSS PD SR transmissions are allowed when the Non-SRG OBSS PD SR
51 Disallowed subfield is 0.

52
53
54
55 The Non-SRG Offset Present subfield in the SR Control field indicates whether or not the Non-SRG OBSS
56 PD Max Offset field is present in the element. If the Non-SRG Offset Present subfield is 1, then the Non-
57 SRG OBSS PD Max Offset field is present; otherwise the Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset field is not pres-
58 ent.

59
60
61 The SRG Information Present subfield in the SR Control field indicates whether or not the SRG OBSS PD
62 Min Offset, SRG OBSS PD Max Offset, SRG BSS Color Bitmap and SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap fields are
63 present in the element. If the SRG Information Present subfield is 1, then the subfields are present; otherwise
64 the fields are not present.

1 The HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_value15_allowed subfield in the SR Control field indicates whether non-AP
 2 STAs that are associated with the AP that transmitted this element can set the TXVECTOR parameter SPA-
 3 TIAL_REUSE to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED. The subfield is set as described in
 4 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE).
 5

6
 7 The Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset field contains an unsigned integer that is added to -82 dBm to generate
 8 the value of the Non-SRG OBSS PD Max parameter.
 9

10
 11 The SRG OBSS PD Min Offset field contains an unsigned integer that is added to -82 dBm to generate the
 12 value of the SRG OBSS PD Min parameter.
 13

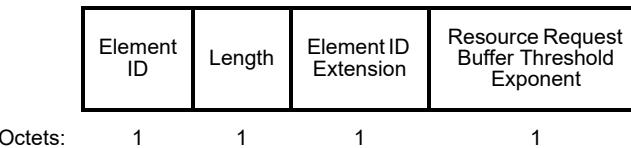
14
 15 The SRG OBSS PD Max Offset field contains an unsigned integer that is added to -82 dBm to generate the
 16 value of the SRG OBSS PD Max parameter.
 17

18
 19 The SRG BSS Color Bitmap field is a bitmap that indicates the BSS color values used by members of the
 20 SRG of which the transmitting STA is a member. Each bit of the bitmap corresponds to one of the 64 BSS
 21 colors, where the lowest numbered bit corresponds to BSS color value 0 and the highest numbered bit corre-
 22 sponds to BSS color value 63. A BSS color value is used by at least one BSS that is a member of the same
 23 SRG of the transmitting STA if the corresponding bit of the bitmap is 1. If a bit in the bitmap is 0, then no
 24 BSS in the same SRG of the transmitting STA uses the corresponding BSS color value. The bit in the bitmap
 25 that corresponds to the BSS color value 0 is reserved.
 26

27
 28 The SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap field is a bitmap that indicates the Partial BSSID values used by members
 29 of the SRG of which the transmitting STA is a member. Each bit of the bitmap corresponds to one of the 64
 30 possible values of BSSID[39:44], where the lowest numbered bit corresponds to Partial BSSID value 0 and
 31 the highest numbered bit corresponds to Partial BSSID value 63. A Partial BSSID value is used by at least
 32 one BSS that is a member of the same SRG of the transmitting STA if the corresponding bit of the bitmap is
 33 1. If a bit in the bitmap is 0, then no BSS in the same SRG of the transmitting STA uses the corresponding
 34 Partial BSSID value.
 35

36 **9.4.2.252 NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element**

37
 38 The format of the NDP feedback report Parameter Set element is defined in Figure 9-787s (NDP Feedback
 39 Report Parameter Set element format).
 40



53 **Figure 9-787s—NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element format**
 54

55
 56 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).
 57

58
 59 The Resource Request Buffer Threshold Exponent field is used to calculate the buffer threshold between
 60 two different resource requests as defined in 26.5.7.4 (NDP feedback report for a resource request). The
 61 resource request buffer threshold value is equal to $2^{(\text{Resource Request Buffer Threshold Exponent})}$ octets.
 62

63
 64 The resource request buffer threshold is equal to 256 octets if no NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set ele-
 65 ment is sent by the AP.

1 **9.4.2.253 BSS Color Change Announcement element**

2

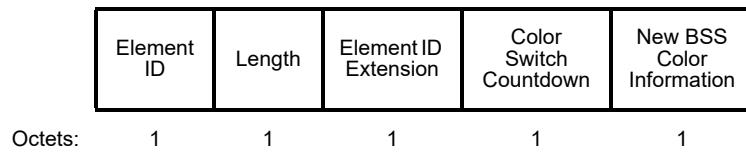
3

4 The BSS Color Change Announcement element is used by an AP to advertise an upcoming BSS color
 5 change and the new BSS color that will take effect after the BSS color change (see 26.17.3.4 (Selecting and
 6 advertising a new BSS color)). The format of the BSS Color Change Announcement element is shown in
 7 Figure 9-787t (BSS Color Change Announcement element format).

8

9

10



18 **Figure 9-787t—BSS Color Change Announcement element format**

19

20 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

21

22

23 The Color Switch Countdown field is set to the number of TBTTs that remain until the HE AP sending the
 24 BSS Color Change Announcement element switches to the new BSS color. A value of 0 indicates that the
 25 switch occurs at the current TBTT if the element is carried in a Beacon frame or at the next TBTT following
 26 the frame that carried the element if the frame is not a Beacon frame.

27

28

29

30 The format of the New BSS Color Information field is defined in Figure 9-787u (New BSS Color Informa-
 31 tion field format). The New BSS Color subfield is set to the new BSS color value that the HE AP intends to
 32 use starting from the TBTT at which the color switch countdown reaches 0.

33

34



42 **Figure 9-787u—New BSS Color Information field format**

43

44 **9.4.2.254 Quiet Time Period element**

45

46 **9.4.2.254.1 General**

47

48 The format of the Quiet Time Period element is shown in Figure 9-787v (Quiet Time Period element for-
 49 mat).

50

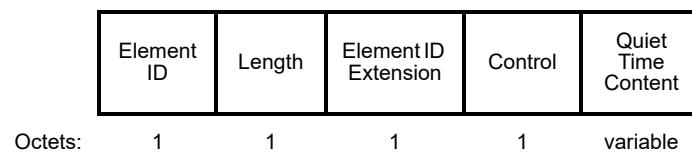
51

52

53

54

55



62 **Figure 9-787v—Quiet Time Period element format**

63

64

65 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

A one octet Control field specifies the subtype of the Quiet Time Period element. The two LSBs define the subtype and are referred to as the Quiet Time Period Subtype field. The remaining 6 bits are reserved. Table 9-321f (Quiet Time Period Subtype field encoding) shows the encoding of the Quiet Time Period Subtype field.

Table 9-321f—Quiet Time Period Subtype field encoding

Quiet Time Period Subtype field value	Meaning
0	Quiet Time Period Setup
1	Quiet Time Period Request
2	Quiet Time Period Response
3	Reserved

The Quiet Time Content field is a variable length field and carries information of quiet time operation indicated by the value in the Control field.

9.4.2.254.2 Quiet Time Period Setup

The Quiet Time Period Setup subtype defines a period of time for QTP (see 26.17.5 (Quiet HE STAs in an HE BSS)). The QTP can be used by an AP to mitigate interference by reducing the contention from HE STAs in a period that gives preference to HE STAs participating in the exchange of specific frames using peer-to-peer link.

The content of the Quiet Time Content subfield in the Quiet Time Period Setup subtype is shown Figure 9-787w (Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Setup subtype).



Octets: 1 2

Figure 9-787w—Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Setup subtype

The Quiet Period Duration field is set to the duration of the QTP period, in units of 32 µs, that is no larger than the value indicated in the Quiet Period Interval subtype field of the Quiet Time Period Request subtype sent by the QTP requesting STA.

The Service Specific Identifier field contains an identifier assigned by a peer-to-peer application to identify specific frame exchanges using peer-to-peer links during which HE STAs that have requested participation of the specified frame exchanges might transmit frames during the quiet time period.

1 **9.4.2.254.3 Quiet Time Period Request**

2

3 The Quiet Time Period Request subtype defines a periodic sequence of QTP periods that the QTP requesting
4 STA requests the QTP AP to schedule.

5
6 The content of the Quiet Time Content subfield in the Quiet Time Period Request subtype is shown
7 Figure 9-787x (Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Request subtype).

Dialog Token	Quiet Period Offset	Quiet Period Duration	Quiet Period Interval	Repetition Count	Service Specific Identifier
Octets:	2	1	2	1	2

19 **Figure 9-787x—Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Request subtype**

20
21 The Dialog Token field identifies the Quiet Time Period Response subtype to which the Quiet Time Period
22 Request subtype corresponds.

23
24 The Quiet Period Offset field is set to the offset of the first QTP period from the TBTT expressed in TUs.

25
26 The Quiet Period Interval field is set to the requested interval between the start of two consecutive QTP peri-
27 ods, expressed in TUs.

28
29 The Quiet Period Duration field is set to the duration of the QTP in units of 32 µs.

30
31 The Repetition Count field is set to the number of requested QTP periods. A repetition count equal to 0 indi-
32 cates the setup time of the QTP period is for an one time operation. Repetition count equals to 0xFF indi-
33 cates the setup of the QTP period is canceled.

34
35 The Service Specific Identifier field contains an identifier assigned by a peer-to-peer application to identify
36 frame exchanges using peer-to-peer links during which HE STAs that have requested the participation of the
37 specified frame exchanges might transmit frames during the quiet time period.

38
39 **9.4.2.254.4 Quiet Time Period Response**

40
41 The Quiet Period Response subtype defines the feedback information from the AP that received the Quiet
42 Time Period Request element. If an AP decides not to accept the value requested by the QTP requesting
43 STA, the AP can set different values carried in the Quiet Period Response frame.

44
45 The content of the Quiet Time Content subfield in the Quiet Time Period Response subtype is shown in
46 Figure 9-787y (Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Response subtype).

Dialog Token	Status Code	Quiet Period Offset	Quiet Period Duration	Quiet Period Interval	Repetition Count	Service Specific Identifier
Octets:	2	1	1	2	1	2

64 **Figure 9-787y—Quiet Time Content subfield format in Quiet Time Period Response subtype**

1
2
3
4 The Dialog Token field identifies the Quiet Time Period Request subtype to which this Quiet Time Period
5 Response subtype corresponds.
6
7

8 The Status Code field indicates the status of a requested operation. The value of the status code is shown in
9 Table 9-321g (Status Code).
10
11

12 **Table 9-321g—Status Code**
13

Value	Meaning
0	Success
1	Reject
2	Counter
3-255	Reserved

28
29 The Quiet Period Offset field is set to the offset of the start of the first QTP period from the transmission
30 time of the preamble of the PPDU that contains the Quiet Time Period Response subtype, expressed in TUs.
31 The reference time is the start of the preamble of the PPDU that contains this element.
32
33

34 The Quiet Period Interval field is set to the interval between the start of two consecutive quiet time periods,
35 expressed in TUs.
36
37

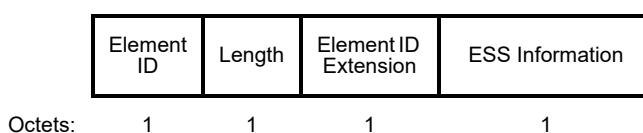
38 The Quiet Period Duration field is a one octet field with resolution of 32 μ s.
39
40

41 The Repetition Count field is set to the number of requested QTP periods.
42
43

44 The Service Specific Identifier field contains an identifier assigned by a peer-to-peer application to identify
45 specific frame exchanges using peer-to-peer links which HE STAs that have requested the participation of
46 the specific frame exchanges might transmit frames during the quiet time period.
47
48

49 **9.4.2.255 ESS Report element** 50

51 The format of the ESS Report element is shown in Figure 9-787z (ESS Report element format).
52
53



60 **Figure 9-787z—ESS Report element format**
61
62

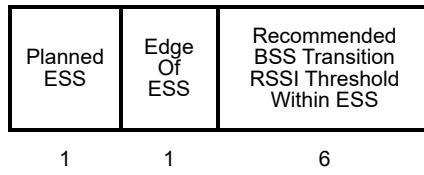
63 The Element ID, Length and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).
64
65

1 The format of the ESS Information field is defined in Figure 9-787aa (ESS Information field format).

2

3

4



12 **Figure 9-787aa—ESS Information field format**

13

14

15 The Planned ESS subfield indicates whether the BSS is part of an ESS that is planned with several BSSs in
 16 an overlapping configuration. This subfield is set to 1 to indicate that the ESS is deployed to ensure blanket
 17 coverage over the Extended Service Area (ESA). Otherwise this subfield is set to 0 and the Edge Of ESS and
 18 Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfields are reserved.

19

20

21 The Edge Of ESS subfield indicates whether the BSS is at the edge of the ESS. This subfield is set to 1 to
 22 indicate the BSS is at the edge of the ESS. Otherwise this subfield is set to 0.

23

24

25 The Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield indicates the RSSI below which an
 26 associated STA is recommended to initiate BSS transition to a neighbor BSS belonging to the ESS.

27

28

29 The resolution for the Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield is 1 dB. The
 30 encoding is defined in Table 9-321h (Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield
 31 encoding).

32

33

34 **Table 9-321h—Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield
 35 encoding**

36

37

Value	Description
0–62	–100 dBm to –38 dBm
63	No recommendation

47 The use of the ESS Report element is described in 11.22.7.5 (Planned ESS).

48

49

50 **9.4.2.256 OPS element**

51

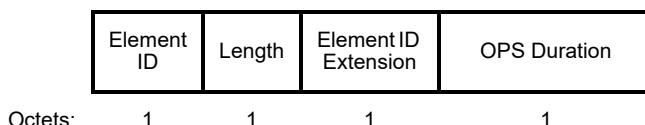
52 The OPS element provides information needed by STAs when operating with OPS as defined in 27.14.3
 53 (Opportunistic power save). The format of the OPS element is shown in Figure 9-787ab (OPS element for-
 54 mat).

55

56

57

58



64 **Figure 9-787ab—OPS element format**

65

1 The Element ID, Element ID extension and Length fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).
 2
 3

4 If the OPS element is included in an OPS frame or a FILS Discovery frame, the OPS Duration field indicates
 5 the OPS period duration, during which a STA can go to doze state if it is explicitly not scheduled during that
 6 period, as defined in 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save). The OPS Duration field is encoded in units of mil-
 7 liseconds.
 8

9
 10 **9.4.2.257 HE BSS Load element**
 11
 12

13 The HE BSS Load element reported by the AP contains information on utilization, frequency underutilization
 14 and spatial stream underutilization. The element format is defined in Figure 9-787ac (HE BSS Load ele-
 15 ment format). A STA receiving the element might use the information it conveys in an implementation-
 16 specific AP selection algorithm.
 17

Element ID	Length	Element ID Extension	HE STA Count	Utilization	Frequency Underutilization	Spatial Stream Underutilization
Octets:	1	1	1	2	1	1

27 **Figure 9-787ac—HE BSS Load element format**
 28
 29

30 The Element ID, Length and Element ID extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).
 31

32 The HE STA Count field indicates the total number of STAs currently associated with this BSS that declare
 33 that they are HE STAs by transmitting their HE Capabilities elements.
 34

35 The Utilization field, Frequency Underutilization field and Spatial Stream Underutilization field are defined
 36 as the percentage of time, linearly scaled with 255 representing 100%.
 37

38 The Utilization field is that AP sensed the medium was busy due to a transmission between the AP and HE
 39 STAs, as indicated by the physical carrier sense (CS) mechanism. When more than one channels are in use
 40 for the BSS, the Utilization field value is calculated only for the primary channel. This percentage is com-
 41 puted using Equation (9-3a).
 42

$$43 \text{Utilization} = \left\lfloor \frac{T_{busy}}{\text{dot11ChannelUtilizationBeaconInterval} \times \text{dot11BeaconPeriod} \times 1024} \times 255 \right\rfloor \quad (9-3a)$$

44 The Frequency Underutilization field is that AP has underutilized frequency domain resources for given
 45 busy time of the medium. This percentage is computed using Equation (9-3b).
 46

$$47 \text{Frequency Underutilization} = \left\lfloor \frac{T_{busy} - \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left\{ \left(\sum_{j=1}^{B_{j,i}} R_{U,j,i} \right) \times T_i \right\}}{T_{busy}} \times 255 \right\rfloor \quad (9-3b)$$

48 The Spatial Stream Underutilization field is that AP has underutilized spatial domain resources for given
 49 busy time of the medium. This percentage is computed using Equation (9-3c).
 50

$$\text{Spatial Stream Underutilization} = \left\lfloor \frac{N_{maxSS} \times T_{busy} - \sum_{i=1}^{\dot{N}_{ChannelUtilizationBeaconIntervals}} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{RUM_j} N_{SS,j,i} \right) \times T_i}{N_{maxSS} \times T_{busy}} \times 255 \right\rfloor \quad (9-3c)$$

where

$\dot{N}_{ChannelUtilizationBeaconIntervals}$ represents the number of consecutive beacon intervals during which the channel busy time is measured (see 9.4.2.28 (BSS Load element)).

T_{busy} is the number of microseconds during which CCA indicated the channel was busy due to a transmission between the AP and HE STAs during the measurement duration. The resolution of the CCA busy measurement is in microseconds

T_i is the time interval, in units of microseconds, during which the primary 20 MHz channel is busy due to a transmission between the AP and HE STAs

N is the number of busy events that occurred during the total measurement time that is less than or equal to $\dot{N}_{ChannelUtilizationBeaconIntervals}$ consecutive beacon intervals

N_{RU} is the number of RUs that are allocated within the BSS bandwidth during time interval T_i

RU_j is a normalizing factor depending on the RU size and equals the ratio of the j -th RU size to the maximum RU size within the BSS bandwidth, i.e., if the j -th RU is a 26-tone RU and the BSS bandwidth is 20 MHz, then $RU_j = 26/242$

$B_{j,i}$ is 1 if the j -th RU is occupied or interfered in the busy time T_i , otherwise it is 0. Any 20 MHz subchannels that are not occupied by a PPDU are regarded as interfered RUs if the bandwidth of PPDU is less than the BSS bandwidth.

N_{maxSS} is the maximum number of spatial streams supported by the AP

N_{RUM} is the number of RUs with a size of at least 106 tones and that are allocated within the BSS bandwidth during time interval T_i

RUM_j is a normalizing factor depending on the RU size. RUM is applied to RUs with a size of at least 106 tones and equals the ratio of the j -th RU size to the maximum RUM size within the BSS bandwidth, i.e., if the j -th RUM is a 106-tone RU and the BSS bandwidth is 20 MHz, then $RUM_j = 106/242$.

$N_{SS,j,i}$ is the number of streams over the j -th RUM in the busy time T_i .

If T_{busy} is 0, the Utilization field, Frequency Underutilization field and Spatial Stream Underutilization field are reserved.

9.4.2.258 Multiple BSSID Configuration element

The Multiple BSSID Configuration element is used to provide configuration information for a multiple BSSID set.

The format of the Multiple BSSID Configuration element is shown in Figure 9-787ad (Multiple BSSID Configuration element format).

Element ID	Length	Element ID Extension	BSSID Count	Profile Periodicity
Octets:	1	1	1	1

Figure 9-787ad—Multiple BSSID Configuration element format

The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

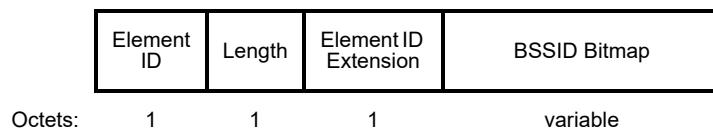
1 The BSSID Count field carries the total number of active BSSIDs in the multiple BSSID set.
 2

3 Profile Periodicity field indicates the least number of Beacon frames or DMG Beacon frames a STA needs
 4 to receive in order to discover all the active nontransmitted BSSIDs in the set.
 5

6 **9.4.2.259 Known BSSID element**
 7

8 The Known BSSID element identifies the nontransmitted BSSIDs that a non-AP STA has discovered so far.
 9 A non-AP STA can include this element in a directed Probe Request frame to discover other nontransmitted
 10 BSSIDs not known to the requesting STA.
 11

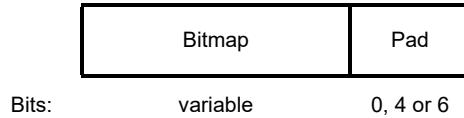
12 The format of the Known BSSID element is defined in Figure 9-787ae (Known BSSID element format).
 13



24 **Figure 9-787ae—Known BSSID element format**
 25

26 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).
 27

28 The format of the BSSID Bitmap field is as defined in Figure 9-787af (BSSID Bitmap field format).
 29



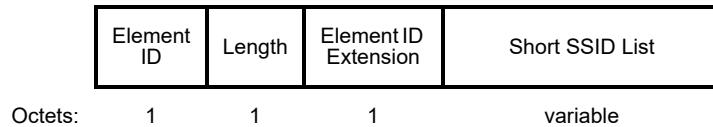
39 **Figure 9-787af—BSSID Bitmap field format**
 40

41 The Bitmap subfield has a length of 2^n bits where n is the value carried in the MaxBSSID Indicator field of
 42 the Multiple BSSID element advertised by the AP to which the Probe Request frame is being sent. Bit posi-
 43 tion 0 is reserved. The remainder of the bits represent one of $2^n - 1$ possible BSSID Index values (see
 44 9.4.2.73 (Multiple BSSID-Index element)) in the multiple BSSID set. A value of 1 at bit position k indicates
 45 that the non-AP STA has knowledge of nontransmitted BSSID with BSSID index k . Otherwise the bit is set
 46 to 0.
 47

48 The Pad subfield contains additional bits set to 0 to make the total number of bits in the BSSID Bitmap field
 49 equal to an integer number of octets.
 50

1 **9.4.2.260 Short SSID List element**

2
3 The format of the Short SSID List Element is shown in Figure 9-787ag (Short SSID List element format).



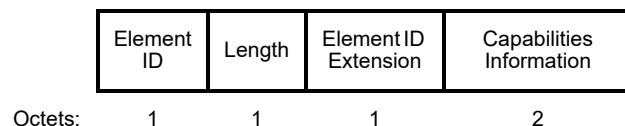
13 **Figure 9-787ag—Short SSID List element format**

14
15 The Element ID, Length and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

16 The Short SSID List field contains the one or more four octet Short SSID fields for which the STA is
17 requesting information. The use of the Short SSID List element and frames is described in 11.1.4.3.2 (Active
18 scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA). The Short SSID field is defined in 9.4.2.170.3 (Calculating the
19 Short SSID).

20 **9.4.2.261 HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element**

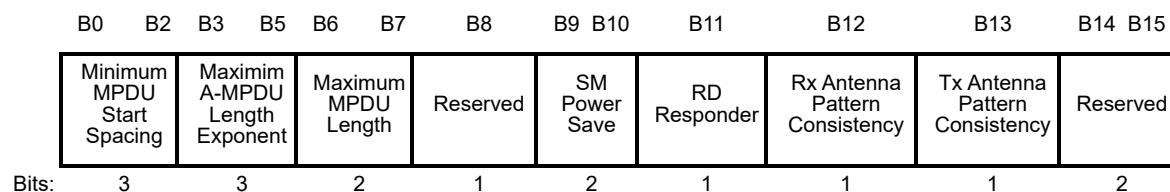
21 An HE STA operating in the 6 GHz band declares its extended capabilities by transmitting the HE 6 GHz
22 Band Capabilities element. The HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element is defined in Figure 9-787ah (HE 6
23 GHz Band Capabilities element format).



34 **Figure 9-787ah—HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element format**

35 The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

36 The Capabilities Information field is defined in Figure 9-787ai (Capabilities Information field format).



55 **Figure 9-787ai—Capabilities Information field format**

56 The Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfield is defined in 9.4.2.55.3 (A-MPDU Parameters field).

57 The Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield is defined in Table 9-272 (Subfield of the VHT Capabilities Information field).

58 The Maximum MPDU Length subfield is defined in Table 9-272 (Subfield of the VHT Capabilities Information field).

The SM Power Save subfield is defined in Table 9-184 (Subfields of the HT Capabilities Information field).

The RD Responder subfield is defined in Table 9-187 (Subfields of the HT Extended Capabilities field).

The Rx Antenna Pattern Consistency subfield is defined in Table 9-272 (Subfield of the VHT Capabilities Information field).

The Tx Antenna Pattern Consistency subfield is defined in Table 9-272 (Subfield of the VHT Capabilities Information field).

9.4.2.262 UL MU Power Capabilities element

The UL MU Power Capability element specifies the relative maximum transmit powers with which a STA is capable of transmitting an HE TB PPDU when using an RU size greater than or equal to 242 tones, as a function of HE-MCS. The UL MU Power Capabilities element indicates the relative maximum transmit power that a STA is capable of transmitting an HE TB PPDU for each HE-MCS in the operating channel width when using RU size greater than or equal to 242 subcarriers. The format of the UL MU Power Capability element is shown in Figure 9-787aj (UL MU Power Capabilities element format).

Element ID	Length	Element ID Extension	Relative Max Transmit Power HE-MCS 1	...	Relative Max Transmit Power HE-MCS 11
------------	--------	----------------------	--------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------

Figure 9-787aj—UL MU Power Capabilities element format

The Element ID, Length, and Element ID Extension fields are defined in 9.4.2.1 (General).

The UL MU Power Capabilities element contains 11 Relative Max Transmit Power HE-MCS n fields in ascending order of HE-MCS from 1 to 11.

The Relative Max Transmit Power HE-MCS n field (where $n = 1, \dots, 11$) is an unsigned integer in dB and contains the difference between the nominal maximum transmit power in dBm of an HE TB PPDU using an RU size greater than or equal to 242 subcarriers for HE-MCS 0 and that for HE-MCS n . The Relative Max Transmit Power HE-MCS n fields corresponding to HE-MCSs that are not supported by the HE STA that transmits this element are reserved.

1 **9.6 Action frame format details**

2

3

4 **9.6.7 Public Action details**

5

6 **9.6.7.16 TDLS Discovery Response frame format**

7

8 *Insert the following row into Table 9-374 (TDLS Discovery Response Action field format) after the row
9 for Order 18:*

10

11

12

13 **Table 9-374—TDLS Discovery Response Action field format**

14

Order	Information	Notes
19	HE Capabilities	The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present. The HE Capabilities element is defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)

22

23

24 **9.6.7.36 FILS Discovery frame format**

25

26

27 *Insert the following rows into Table 9-383 (FILS Discovery frame format):*

28

29

30 **Table 9-383—FILS Discovery frame format**

31

Order	Information	Notes
7	TIM element	The TIM element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, otherwise it is not present.
8	TWT element	The TWT element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, otherwise it is not present. If present, the Broadcast field of the TWT element is 1
9	OPS element	The OPS element is optionally present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, otherwise it is not present.

46

47

48 *Change the header row of Table 9-384 (BSS Operating Channel Width) as follows:*

49

50

51

52 **Table 9-384—BSS Operating Channel Width**

53

BSS Operating Channel Width field	HR/DSSS, OFDM, ERP, HT, or VHT <u>or</u> HE BSS operating channel width	TVHT BSS operating channel width

1 *Insert a new row in Table 9-386 (PHY Index subfield) as follows and update the Reserved row as
2 appropriate:*

Table 9-386—PHY Index subfield

PHY Index subfield	PHY
4	HE (see Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification))

17 *Change Table 9-386 (PHY Index subfield) as follows:*

Table 9-387—FILS Minimum Rate

FILS Minimum Rate subfield	PHY Index subfield is 0 (HR/DSSS)	PHY Index subfield is 1 (ERP-OFDM)	PHY Index subfield is 2 (HT)	PHY Index subfield is 3 (VHT or TVHT)	PHY Index subfield is 4 (HE)
0	1 Mbps	6 Mbps	MCS 0	MCS 0	<u>HE-MCS 0</u>
1	2 Mbps	9 Mbps	MCS 1	MCS 1	<u>HE-MCS 1</u>
2	5.5 Mbps	12 Mbps	MCS 2	MCS 2	<u>HE-MCS 2</u>
3	11 Mbps	18 Mbps	MCS 3	MCS 3	<u>HE-MCS 3</u>
4	Reserved	24 Mbps	MCS 4	MCS 4	<u>HE-MCS 4</u>
5-7	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	<u>Reserved</u>

44 *Change the following paragraph:*

47 The Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 subfield is set to the index of the channel center frequency of the
48 frequency segment 1 for an 80+80 MHz VHT or HE BSS, if the FILS Discovery frame is transmitted as a
49 non-HT duplicate PPDUs at an 80+80 MHz channel bandwidth; otherwise, the subfield is not present.

52 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

55 The TIM element is defined in 9.4.2.5 (TIM element) and is included for operation as defined in 26.14.3
56 (Opportunistic power save).

58 The TWT element is defined in 9.4.2.199 (TWT element) and is included with the Broadcast field set to 1 to
59 aid an unassociated STA determine the target transmission time of Trigger frames that contain at least one
60 User Info field that allocates RA-RUs for unassociated STAs (see 26.5.4.5 (Additional considerations for
61 unassociated STAs) and 26.8.3.1 (General)).

64 The OPS element is defined in 9.4.2.256 (OPS element).

1 **9.6.12 TDLS Action field formats**

2

3 **9.6.12.2 TDLS Setup Request Action field format**

4

5 *Change Table 9-414 (Information for TDLS Setup Request Action field) as follows (maintaining numeric
6 order):*

7

8 **Table 9-414—Information for TDLS Setup Request Action field**

9

Order	Information	Notes
19	AID	The AID element containing the AID of the STA sending the frame is present if dot11VHTOptionImplemented, <u>dot11HE-OptionImplemented</u> , or dot11S1GOptionImplemented is true.
<u>23</u>	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present. The HE Capabilities element is defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)</u>
<u>24</u>	<u>TWT</u>	<u>The TWT element is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true; otherwise not present.</u> <u>The Trigger subfield and the Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element are set to 0.</u>

30

31

32 **9.6.12.3 TDLS Setup Response Action field format**

33

34 *Change Table 9-415 (Information for TDLS Setup Response Action field) as follows (maintaining numeric
35 order):*

36

37 **Table 9-415—Information for TDLS Setup Response Action field**

38

Order	Information	Notes
20	AID	The AID element containing the AID of the STA sending the frame is present if dot11VHTOptionImplemented, <u>dot11HE-OptionImplemented</u> , or dot11S1GOptionImplemented is true.
<u>25</u>	<u>HE Capabilities</u>	<u>The HE Capabilities element is present if dot11HEOptionImplemented is true and the Status Code is SUCCESS; otherwise it is not present. The HE Capabilities element is defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)</u>
<u>26</u>	<u>TWT</u>	<u>The TWT element is present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true and the TWT element is present in the TDLS Setup Request frame that elicited this TDLS Setup Response frame.</u> <u>The TWT element is optionally present if dot11TWTOptionActivated is true and the TWT Requester Support field in the HE Capabilities in the TDLS Setup Request frame that elicited this TDLS Setup Response frame is 1. Otherwise, the TWT element is not present.</u> <u>The Trigger subfield and the Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element are set to 0.</u>

1 **9.6.12.4 TDLS Setup Confirm Action field format**

2

3

4 *Insert the following row in Table 9-416 (Information for TDLS Setup Confirm Action field):*

5

6

7 **Table 9-416—Information for TDLS Setup Confirm Action field**

8

9

Order	Information	Notes
14	HE Operation	The HE Operation element is present when dot11HEOptionImplemented is true, the TDLS Setup Response frame contained an HE Capabilities element and the Status Code is SUCCESS; otherwise it is not present. The HE Operation element is defined in 9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element).

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20 **9.6.15 Self-protected Action frame details**

21

22

23 **9.6.15.2 Mesh Peering Open frame format**

24

25

26 **9.6.15.2.2 Mesh Peering Open frame details**

27

28

29 *Insert the following rows in Table 9-436 (Mesh Peering Open frame Action field format):*

30

31

32 **Table 9-436—Mesh Peering Open frame Action field format**

33

Order	Information	Notes
22	HE Capabilities	The HE Capabilities element is present when dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.
23	HE Operation	The HE Operation element is present when dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.

34

35

36 **9.6.15.3 Mesh Peering Confirm frame format**

37

38

39

40 **9.6.15.3.2 Mesh Peering Confirm frame details**

41

42

43 *Insert the following rows in Table 9-437 (Mesh Peering Confirm frame Action field format):*

44

45

46 **Table 9-437—Mesh Peering Confirm frame Action field format**

47

48

Order	Information	Notes
18	HE Capabilities	The HE Capabilities element is present when dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.
19	HE Operation	The HE Operation element is present when dot11HEOptionImplemented is true; otherwise it is not present.

9.6.24 Unprotected S1G Action frame details

9.6.24.1 Unprotected S1G Action field

Change the 1st paragraph as follows:

~~Several Action frame formats are defined to support S1G functionality.~~ An Unprotected S1G Action field, in the octet immediately after the Category field, differentiates the Unprotected S1G Action frame formats. The Unprotected S1G Action field values associated with each frame format within the Unprotected S1G category are defined in Table 9-493 (Unprotected S1G Action field values).

9.6.24.8 TWT Setup frame format

Change the last paragraph as follows:

In a TWT Setup frame with a TWT Request field that is equal to 1, the Dialog Token field is set to a nonzero value chosen by the transmitting STA to identify the request/response transaction. In a TWT Setup frame with a TWT Request field equal to 0 that is sent in response to a TWT Setup frame with a TWT Request field that is equal to 1, the Dialog Token field is set to the value copied from the corresponding received TWT Setup frame with a TWT Request field equal to 1. In a TWT Setup frame with a TWT Request field set to 0 that is not sent in response to a TWT Setup frame with a TWT Request field equal to 1, the Dialog Token field is set to 0.

9.6.24.9 TWT Teardown frame format

Change the 4th paragraph as follows:

The TWT Flow field contains the TWT Flow Identifier field and 5 reserved bits as shown in Figure 9-943 (TWT Flow field format). The format of the TWT Flow field if the Negotiation Type subfield is 0 or 1 is defined in Figure 9-957 (TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 0 or 1). The format of the TWT Flow field if the Negotiation Type subfield is 3 is defined in Figure 9-957b (TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 3). The format of the TWT Flow field if the Negotiation Type field is 2 is defined in Figure 9-957a (TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 2).

Change Figure 9-957 (TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 0 or 1) as follows:

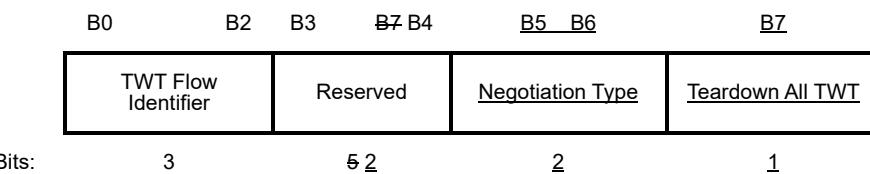


Figure 9-957—TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 0 or 1

Insert two figures as follows:

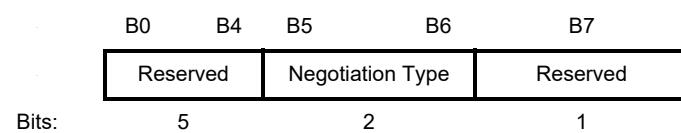
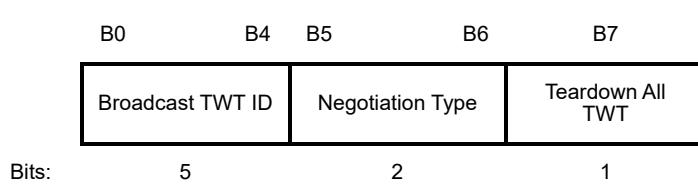


Figure 9-957a—TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 2



9 **Figure 9-957b—TWT Flow field format if the Negotiation Type subfield is 3**

10 *Change the last paragraph as follows (splitting it into two paragraphs and adding a third):*

11 The TWT Flow Identifier/Broadcast TWT ID field contains the TWT Flow Identifier when the Negotiation
 12 Type subfield is 0 or 1 and contains the Broadcast TWT ID field when the Negotiation Type subfield is 3.
 13 The TWT Flow Identifier field and the Broadcast TWT ID field are reserved if the Teardown All TWT field is 1.

14 In a TWT Teardown frame, the TWT Flow Identifier field in a TWT Teardown frame is set to the value
 15 of the TWT Flow Identifier field of the TWT element in the frame that successfully concluded the setup of
 16 the TWT that is the subject of the teardown request. The Broadcast TWT ID field of a TWT Teardown
 17 frame is set to the value of the Broadcast TWT identifier of the broadcast TWT schedule that is subject of
 18 the teardown request.

19 The Negotiation Type subfield indicates the type of negotiation that is subject to the teardown request and is
 20 set as defined in Table 9-296a (Interpretation of Negotiation Type subfield, Target Wake Time, TWT Wake
 21 Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields). An S1G STA sets the Negotiation Type sub-
 22 field to 0. The Negotiation Type subfield is reserved if the Teardown All TWT field is 1.

23 The Teardown All TWT field is set to 1 by an HE STA to indicate that the TWT Teardown frame tears down
 24 all TWTs as defined in 26.8 (TWT operation). Otherwise, it is set to 0.

36 **9.6.24.12 TWT Information frame format**

37 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

38 The TWT Information frame is sent by a STA to request or deliver information about a TWT agreement and
 39 is transmitted by either STA of an existing TWT agreement or is transmitted by a STA to a peer STA that
 40 has indicated support of its reception. The Action field of the TWT Information frame contains the informa-
 41 tion shown in Table 9-505 (TWT Information frame Action field format).

42 *Insert subclauses 9.6.31 and 9.6.32 to at the end of 9.6:*

43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **9.6.31 HE Action frame details**

2

3 **9.6.31.1 HE Action field**

4

5 An HE Action field, in the octet immediately after the Category field, differentiates the HE Action frame
 6 formats. The HE Action field values associated with each frame format within the HE category are defined
 7 in Table 9-526a (HE Action field values).

8

9

10

11 **Table 9-526a—HE Action field values**

12

Value	Meaning
0	HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI
1	Quiet Time Period
2	OPS
3-255	Reserved

27 **9.6.31.2 HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame format**

28

29 The HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame is an Action No Ack frame of category HE. The Action field
 30 of an HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame contains the information shown in Table 9-526b (HE Com-
 31 pressed Beamforming/CQI frame Action field format).

32

33

34

35 **Table 9-526b—HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame Action field format**

36

Order	Information
1	Category
2	HE Action
3	HE MIMO Control (see 9.4.1.64 (HE MIMO Control field))
4	HE Compressed Beamforming Report (see 9.4.1.65 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report field))
5	HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report (see 9.4.1.66 (HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field))
6	HE CQI Report (see 9.4.1.67 (HE CQI Report field))

58 The Category field is defined in Table 9-53 (Category values).

59

60 The HE Action field is defined in Table 9-526a (HE Action field values).

61

62 The HE MIMO Control field is always present in the frame. The presence and contents of the HE Com-
 63 pressed Beamforming Report field, HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field and HE CQI Report field

64

65

1 are dependent on the values of the Feedback Type subfield of the HE MIMO Control field (see 9.4.1.65 (HE
 2 Compressed Beamforming Report field), 9.4.1.66 (HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field) and
 3 9.4.1.67 (HE CQI Report field)).
 4

5 A Vendor Specific element is not present in the HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame.
 6

8 **9.6.31.3 Quiet Time Period Action frame details**

10 The Quiet Time Period action frame is an Action No Ack frame of category HE. The Action field of a Quiet
 11 Time Period contains the information shown in Table 9-526c (Quiet Time Period Frame Body).
 12

13
 14
15 Table 9-526c—Quiet Time Period Frame Body
 16

Order	Information
1	Category
2	HE Action
3	Quiet Time Period element (see 9.4.2.254 (Quiet Time Period element))

28 The Category field is defined in Table 9-53 (Category values).
 29

30 The HE Action field is defined in Table 9-526a (HE Action field values).
 31

32 The Quiet Time Period element is defined in 9.4.2.254 (Quiet Time Period element).
 33

34 **9.6.31.4 OPS frame format**

35 The OPS frame is an Action No Ack frame of category HE. The Action field of an OPS frame contains the
 36 information shown in Table 9-526d (OPS frame Action field format).
 37

38
39 Table 9-526d—OPS frame Action field format
 40

Order	Information
1	Category
2	HE Action
3	TIM element (see 9.4.2.5 (TIM element))
4	OPS element (see 9.4.2.256 (OPS element))

58 The Category field is defined in Table 9-53 (Category values).
 59

60 The HE Action field is defined in Table 9-526a (HE Action field values).
 61

62 The TIM element and OPS element are always present in the frame.
 63

1 **9.6.32 Protected HE Action frame details**

2

3 **9.6.32.1 Protected HE Action field**

4

5 A Protected HE Action field, in the octet immediately after the Category field, differentiates the Protected
 6 HE Action frame formats. The Protected HE Action field values associated with each frame format within
 7 the HE category are defined in Table 9-526e (Protected HE Action field values).

8

9

10 **Table 9-526e—Protected HE Action field values**

11

Value	Meaning
0	HE BSS Color Change Announcement
1	MU EDCA Control
1-255	Reserved

23

24 **9.6.32.2 HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame format**

25

26 The HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame is an Action or Action No Ack frame of category Protected
 27 HE. The Action field of an HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame contains the information
 28 shown in Table 9-526f (HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame Action field format).

29

30

31 **Table 9-526f—HE BSS Color Change Announcement frame Action field format**

32

Order	Information
1	Category
2	Protected HE Action
3	BSS Color Change Announcement element (see 9.4.2.253 (BSS Color Change Announcement element))

46

47 The Category field is defined in Table 9-53 (Category values).

48

49 The Protected HE Action field is defined in Table 9-526e (Protected HE Action field values).

50

51 A BSS Color Change Announcement element is always present in the frame.

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

1 **9.6.32.3 MU EDCA Control frame format**

2

3 The MU EDCA Control frame is an Action frame of category Protected HE. The Action field of an MU
 4 EDCA Control frame contains the information shown in Table 9-526g (MU EDCA Control frame Action
 5 field format).

6

7

8

9 **Table 9-526g—MU EDCA Control frame Action field format**

10

Order	Information
1	Category
2	Protected HE Action
3	MU EDCA Control

21

22

23 The Category field is defined in Table 9-53 (Category values).

24

25

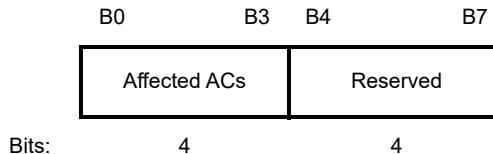
26 The Protected HE Action field is defined in Table 9-526e (Protected HE Action field values).

27

28 The MU EDCA Control field is defined in Figure 9-959a (MU EDCA Control field format).

29

30



31

32

33 **Figure 9-959a—MU EDCA Control field format**

34

35

36

37

38 The Affected ACs subfield contains a bitmap that indicates the ACs for which the MUEDCATimer[AC] as
 39 defined in 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters) are reset to 0 upon receipt of the MU
 40 EDCA Control frame for affected STAs. Each bit in the bitmap corresponds to one AC with B0 mapped to
 41 AC_BK, B1 mapped to AC_BE, B2 mapped to AC_VI and B3 mapped to AC_VO. A value of 1 in the bit
 42 position corresponding to a given AC indicates that the MUEDCATimer[AC] for that AC is reset to 0, oth-
 43 erwise, the value of the bit is 0.

44

45

46

47

48

49 **9.7 Aggregate MPDU (A-MPDU)**

50

51

52 **9.7.1 A-MPDU format**

53

54

55 **Change the 4th paragraph as follows:**

56

57

58 The EOF Padding field is shown in Figure 9-961 (EOF Padding field format). This is present only in a VHT
 59 or HE PPDU.

60

61 **Change the 6th and subsequent paragraphs as follows:**

62

63

64 In a VHT or HE PPDU, the following padding is present, as determined by the rules in 10.12.6 (A-MPDU
 65 padding for VHT, HE or S1G PPDU):

- 0–3 octets in the Padding subfield of the final A-MPDU subframe (see Figure 9-740 (A-MPDU subframe format)) before any EOF padding subframes. The content of these octets is unspecified.
- Zero or more EOF padding subframes in the EOF Padding Subframes subfield.
- 0–3 octets in the EOF Padding Octets subfield. The content of these octets is unspecified.

An A-MPDU pre-EOF padding refers to the contents of the A-MPDU up to, but not including, the EOF Padding field.

NOTE—A-MPDU pre-EOF padding includes any A-MPDU subframes with 0 in the MPDU Length field and 0 in the EOF field inserted in order to meet the minimum MPDU start spacing requirement.

The maximum length of an A-MPDU in an HT PPDU is 65 535 octets. The maximum length of an A-MPDU in a DMG PPDU is 262 143 octets. The maximum length of an A-MPDU pre-EOF padding in a VHT PPDU is 1 048 575 octets. The maximum length of an A-MPDU pre-EOF padding in an HE PPDU is 6 500 631 octets. The length of an A-MPDU addressed to a particular STA can be further constrained as described in 10.12.2 (A-MPDU length limit rules).

Change Table 9-527 (MPDU delimiter fields (non-DMG)) as follows:

Table 9-527— MPDU delimiter fields (non-DMG)

Field	Size (bits)	Description
EOF	1	End of frame indication <u>and/or ack soliciting indication in combination with the MPDU Length field</u> . Set to 1 in an A-MPDU subframe that has 0 in the MPDU Length field and that is used to pad the A-MPDU in a VHT <u>or HE</u> PPDU as described in 10.13.6 (A-MPDU padding for VHT PPDU). Set to 1 in the MPDU delimiter of an S-MPDU as described in 10.13.7 (Setting the EOF field of the MPDU delimiter) <u>, and set to 1 in an MPDU delimiter preceding a QoS Data frame or Management frame soliciting an Ack or Per AID TID Info field with Ack Type field set to 1 in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame in a response that is contained in an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU as described in 26.6.3.4 (Ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU operation) and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU as described in 26.6.3.1 (General)</u> . Set to 0 otherwise.
Reserved	1	
MPDU Length	14	Length of the MPDU in octets. Set to 0 if no MPDU is present. An A-MPDU subframe with 0 in the MPDU Length field is used as defined in 10.13.3 (Minimum MPDU Start Spacing field) to meet the minimum MPDU start spacing requirement and also to pad the A-MPDU to fill the available octets in a VHT <u>or HE</u> PPDU as defined in 10.13.6 (A-MPDU padding for VHT PPDU or S1G PPDU).
CRC	8	8-bit CRC of the preceding 16 bits
Delimiter Signature	8	Pattern that may be used to detect an MPDU delimiter when scanning for an MPDU delimiter. The unique pattern is 0x4E, <u>which is the ASCII value of the character 'N' (see NOTE below)</u> .
NOTE —The ASCII value of the character 'N' was chosen as the unique pattern for the value in the Delimiter Signature field.		

Change the 12th paragraph as follows:

The format of the MPDU Length field when transmitted by a non-DMG STA is shown in Figure 9-965 (MPDU Length field (non-DMG)). The MPDU Length Low subfield contains the 12 low order bits of the

1 MPDU length. In a VHT or HE PPDU, the MPDU Length High subfield contains the two high order bits of
 2 the MPDU length. In an HT PPDU, the MPDU Length High subfield is reserved.
 3

4 ***Replace Equation (9-5) with the equation below (introductory sentence and variable list unchanged):***
 5

6 The MPDU length value is derived from the MPDU Length field subfields as follows:
 7

$$10 \quad L_{MPDU} = \begin{cases} L_{low} + L_{high} \times 4096, & \text{for a VHT and HE PPDU} \\ L_{low}, & \text{for an HT PPDU} \\ L, & \text{for a DMG PPDU} \end{cases} \quad (9-5)$$

11
 12
 13
 14

15 where

- 16 L_{low} is the value of the MPDU Length Low subfield
 17 L_{high} is the value of the MPDU Length High subfield
 18 L is the value of the MPDU Length field

22 ***Change the NOTE as follows:***
 23

24 NOTE—The format of the MPDU Length field maintains a common encoding structure for both HE_VHT and HT
 25 PPDUs. For HT PPDUs, only the MPDU Length Low subfield is used, while for VHT and HE PPDUs, both subfields
 26 are used.
 27

28 9.7.3 A-MPDU contents

31 ***Change the 1st paragraph of this subclause as follows:***
 32

33 In a non-DMG PPDU, an A-MPDU is a sequence of A-MPDU subframes carried in a single PPDU with one
 34 of the following combinations of RXVECTOR or TXVECTOR parameter values:
 35

- 36 — The FORMAT parameter set to VHT
- 37 — The FORMAT parameter set to HT_MF or HT_GF and the AGGREGATION parameter set to 1
- 38 — The FORMAT parameter set to S1G, S1G_DUP_1M, or S1G_DUP_2M and the AGGREGATION
 39 parameter set to 1
- 40 — The FORMAT parameter set to HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_TB or HE_ER_SU

44 ***Insert the following after the 1st paragraph:***
 45

46 An A-MPDU carried in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, HE TB PPDU or HE MU PPDU can include
 47 MPDUs with different values of the TID field as described in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled
 48 single-TID A-MPDU).
 49

51 ***Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:***
 52

54 All of the MPDUs within an A-MPDU are addressed to the same RA. All of the MPDUs within an A-
 55 MPDU have the same TA. All QoS Data frames within an A-MPDU that have a TID for which an HT-
 56 immediate block ack agreement exists have the same value for the Ack Policy Indicator subfield of the QoS
 57 Control field.
 58

60 ***Change paragraphs 5-7 and Table 9-529 (A-MPDU Contexts) as follows:***
 61

62 The Duration/ID fields in the MAC headers of all MPDUs in an A-MPDU carry the same value. The Duration/ID
 63 fields in the MAC headers of the MPDUs in the A-MPDUs carried in the same a VHT MU PPDU
 64 and an HE MU PPDU all carry the same value.
 65

1 NOTE—The reference point for the Duration/ID field is the end of the PPDU carrying the MPDU. Setting the Duration/
 2 ID field to the same value in the case of A-MPDU aggregation means that each MPDU consistently specifies the same
 3 NAV setting.
 4

5 An A-MPDU is transmitted in one of the contexts specified in Table 9-529 (A-MPDU Contexts) as defined
 6 by the description in the “Definition of context” column, ~~independently of whether the A-MPDU is contained in a VHT MU PPDU or an SU PPDU. The content of an A-MPDU depends on the context in which it is transmitted as defined in the tables below.~~ Ordering of MPDUs within an A-MPDU is not constrained,
 7 except where noted in these tables. See 10.12.1 (A-MPDU contents).
 8
 9
 10
 11
 12

Table 9-529—A-MPDU Contexts

Name of Context	Definition of Context	Table defining permitted contents
Non-HE Data Enabled Immediate Response	The A-MPDU is transmitted outside a PSMP sequence by a TXOP holder or an RD responder including potential immediate responses.	Table 9-530 (A-MPDU contents in the non-HE data enabled immediate response context)
Data Enabled No Immediate Response	The A-MPDU is transmitted outside a PSMP sequence by a TXOP holder, <u>TXOP responder when transmitted by an HE STA to another HE STA, and the A-MPDU that</u> does not include or solicit an immediate response. See NOTE.	Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context)
PSMP	The A-MPDU is transmitted within a PSMP sequence.	Table 9-530 (A-MPDU contents in the PSMP context)
Control Response	The A-MPDU is transmitted by a STA that is neither a TXOP holder nor an RD responder <u>or the A-MPDU is transmitted by an HE AP in response to an HE TB PPDU, and the transmitter that also needs to transmit one of the following immediate response frames:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — Ack frame — BlockAck frame with a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists — <u>Multi-STA BlockAck frame for acknowledging multi-TID A-MPDU</u> 	Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context)
S-MPDU context	The A-MPDU is transmitted within a VHT PPDU <u>or an HE PPDU</u> and contains an S-MPDU.	Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the S-MPDU context)
HE Non-Ack-Enabled Single-TID Immediate Response	<u>The A-MPDU is transmitted by a TXOP holder or TXOP responder in an HE PPDU and solicits block acknowledgement for single TID.</u>	<u>Table 9-532a (A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context)</u>
HE Ack-Enabled Single-TID Immediate Response	<u>The A-MPDU is transmitted by a TXOP holder or TXOP responder in an HE PPDU and solicits single acknowledgement.</u>	<u>Table 9-532b (A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context)</u>

Table 9-529—A-MPDU Contexts

Name of Context	Definition of Context	Table defining permitted contents
<u>HE Non-Ack Enabled Multi-TID Immediate Response</u>	<u>The A-MPDU is transmitted by a TXOP holder or TXOP responder in an HE PPDU, and solicits block acknowledgments for multiple TIDs.</u>	<u>Table 9-532c (A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context)</u>
<u>HE Ack-Enabled Multi-TID Immediate Response</u>	<u>The A-MPDU is transmitted by a TXOP holder or TXOP responder in an HE PPDU, and solicits at least one acknowledgment and zero or more block acknowledgments.</u>	<u>Table 9-532d (A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context)</u>
NOTE—This context includes cases when no response is generated or when a response is generated later by the operation of the HT-delayed block ack rules.		

NOTE—If the number qualifier for a frame subtype doesn't exist, zero or more frames of the frame subtype can be aggregated in the A-MPDU.

A VHT MU PPDU, or S1G MU PPDU and HE MU PPDU does not carry more than one A-MPDU that contains one or more MPDUs soliciting an immediate response if the immediate response is carried in a PPDU that is not an HE TB PPDU. An HE MU PPDU can carry more than one A-MPDU each of which contains one or more MPDUs soliciting an immediate response if the immediate response is carried in an HE TB PPDU.

NOTE 1—The TIDs present in a data enabled A-MPDU context are also constrained by the channel access rules (for a TXOP holder; see 10.23.2 (HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)) and 10.23.3 (HCF controlled channel access (HCCA))), the TXOP responder rules (see 26.6 (A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU), and 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)) and the RD response rules (for an RD responder, see 10.29.4 (Rules for RD responder)). This is not shown in these tables.

NOTE 2—If a STA supports A-MSDUs of 7935 octets (indicated by the Maximum A-MSDU Length field in the HT Capabilities element), A-MSDUs transmitted by that STA within an A-MPDU carried in a PPDU with FORMAT HT_MF or HT_GF are constrained so that the length of the QoS Data frame carrying the A-MSDU is no more than 4095 octets. The 4095-octet MPDU length limit does not apply to A-MPDUs carried in VHT, HE or DMG PPDUs. The use of A-MSDU within A-MPDU might be further constrained as described in 9.4.1.13 (Block Ack Parameter Set field) through the operation of the A-MSDU Supported field.

1 ***Change Table 9-530 (A-MPDU contents in the non-HE data enabled immediate response context) as fol-***
 2 ***lows:***

4 **Table 9-530—A-MPDU contents in the non-HE data enabled immediate response context**

MPDU Description	Conditions
Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an MPDU that requires an Ack frame response, a single Ack frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
HT-immediate BlockAck	In a non-DMG STA: if the preceding PPDU contains an implicit or explicit block ack request for a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists, at most one BlockAck frame for this TID, in which case it occurs at the start of the A-MPDU. In a DMG STA: if the preceding PPDU contains an implicit or explicit block ack request for a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists, one or more copies of the same BlockAck for this TID.
HT-delayed BlockAcks	BlockAck frames with the BA Ack Policy subfield equal to No Acknowledgment with a TID for which an HT-delayed block ack agreement exists.
HT-delayed block ack data	QoS Data frames with a TID that corresponds to an HT-delayed block ack agreement. These have Block Ack ack policy.
Action No Ack	Action No Ack frames.
HT-delayed BlockAckReqs	BlockAckReq frames with a TID that corresponds to an HT-delayed block ack agreement, and in which the BAR Ack Policy subfield is equal to No Acknowledgment.
Data frames sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement	QoS Data frames with the same TID, which corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement. See NOTE.
QoS Null frames with the No Ack ack policy	In a DMG BSS, QoS Null frames with the No Ack ack policy.
Immediate BlockAckReq	At most one BlockAckReq frame with a TID that corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement. This is the last MPDU in the A-MPDU. It is not present if any QoS Data frames for that TID are present.
NOTE—These MPDUs all have the same ack policy, which is either Implicit BAR or Block Ack.	

1 Change Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context) as follows:

2
3 **Table 9-531—A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context**

MPDU Description	Conditions
Delayed BlockAcks	<u>For a non-HE STA:</u> BlockAck frames for a TID for which an HT-delayed block ack agreement exists with the BA Ack Policy subfield equal to No Acknowledgment.
Delayed Block Ack data	<u>For a non-HE STA:</u> QoS Data frames with a TID that corresponds to an HT-delayed block ack agreement. These have the Block Ack ack policy.
Data without a block ack agreement	QoS Data frames with a TID that does not correspond to a block ack agreement. These have No Ack ack policy and the A-MSDU Present subfield equal to 0.
Action No Ack	Action No Ack frames.
HT-delayed BlockAckReqs	<u>For a non-HE STA:</u> BlockAckReq frames with the BAR Ack Policy subfield equal to No Acknowledgment and with a TID that corresponds to an HT-delayed block ack agreement.
Trigger	<u>For an HE AP:</u> Trigger frames where the Trigger Type field is Basic Trigger frame or BSRP Trigger frame. <u>The Trigger frames are the first MPDUs of the A-MPDU unless the A-MPDU also carries an Ack or BlockAck frame in which case the Trigger frames are included immediately after the Ack or BlockAck frame.</u>
<u>QoS Null frame with No Ack ack policy</u>	<u>For an HE STA:</u> QoS Null frames with No Ack ack policy.

1 *Change Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context) as follows:*

2
3 **Table 9-532—A-MPDU contents in the control response context**

MPDU	Conditions
Ack	Ack frame transmitted in response to an MPDU that requires an Ack frame.
BlockAck	<p><u>Compressed BlockAck frame with a TID that corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement.</u></p> <p><u>Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the preceding PPDU is either an HE TB PPDU that solicits an immediate response (see 26.4.4.5 (Responding to an HE TB PPDU with an SU PPDU)) or is an HE PPDU that carries a multi-TID A-MPDU or ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU (see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)).</u></p>
Action No Ack	<p><u>In an A-MPDU between two STAs that are not both HE STAs: +HTC Action No Ack frames carrying a Management Action Body containing an explicit feedback response or BRP frame.</u></p> <p><u>Flow Control Action No Ack frames carrying a flow suspension frame or a flow resumption frame.</u></p> <p><u>In an A-MPDU between two HE STAs: Action No Ack frames.</u></p>
<u>QoS Null frame with No Ack ack policy</u>	<u>For an HE STA: QoS Null frames with No Ack ack policy.</u>

1 *Insert new tables as follows:*
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6

7 **Table 9-532a—A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response
 8 context**

MPDU	Conditions
Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an MPDU that requires an Ack frame response, a single Ack frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
HT-immediate Block-Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an implicit or explicit block ack request for a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists, at most one Compressed BlockAck frame for this TID at the start of the A-MPDU. If the preceding PPDU contains explicit block ack requests for multiple TIDs or a multi-TID A-MPDU, at most one Multi-STA BlockAck frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
Action No Ack	Non-EOF MPDUs that are Action No Ack frames.
QoS Null frame with Ack Policy subfield set to No Ack	non-EOF-MPDUs that are QoS Null frames with Ack Policy subfield set to No Ack.

32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

1 **Table 9-532a—A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response**
 2 **context (continued)**

MPDU	Conditions
Data frames sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement	<p>One or more QoS Data frames with the same TID, which corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement</p> <p>See NOTE 1.</p>
Compressed BlockAck-Req	<p>At most one BlockAckReq frame with a TID that corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement.</p> <p>This frame is the last MPDU in the A-MPDU.</p> <p>BlockAckReq is not present if any QoS Data frames are present.</p>
Trigger	<p>Trigger frames where the Trigger Type field is Basic Trigger, MU-BAR Trigger, BQRP Trigger or BSRP Trigger.</p> <p>MU BAR Trigger frame is not present if any QoS Data frames are present.</p> <p>The Trigger frames are the first MPDUs of the A-MPDU unless the A-MPDU also carries an Ack or BlockAck frame in which case the Trigger frames are included immediately after the Ack or BlockAck frame.</p> <p>See NOTE 2 and NOTE 3.</p>

NOTE 1—MPDUs from the same TID all have the same ack policy, which is Implicit BAR, HTP Ack or Block Ack.

NOTE 2—Only an HE AP is allowed to include a Trigger frame in the A-MPDU. The presence of more than one copy of a Trigger frame in an A-MPDU might increase the probability of the successful reception of the Trigger frame. The content of all Trigger frames in the A-MPDU is the same.

NOTE 3—The BSRP and BQRP Trigger frames can be aggregated with other MPDUs in the A-MPDU if the receiver has indicated the support of receiving these trigger types in the BSRP BQRP A-MPDU Aggregation field of the HE Capabilities element.

Table 9-532b—A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context

MPDU	Conditions
Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an MPDU that requires an Ack frame response, a single Ack frame at the start of the A MPDU.
HT-immediate Block-Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an implicit or explicit block ack request for a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists, at most one Compressed BlockAck frame for this TID at the start of the A-MPDU. If the preceding PPDU contains explicit block ack requests for multiple TIDs or a multi-TID A-MPDU, at most one Multi-STA BlockAck frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
Action No Ack	Non-EOF MPDUs that are Action No Ack frames.
Data frames not sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement	At most one Data frame with a TID that does not correspond to an HT-immediate block ack agreement
Data frames sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement	At most one QoS Data frame with a TID that corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement
QoS Null frame with No Ack ack policy	QoS Null frames with No Ack ack policy.
Management frame	At most one Management frame that does not solicit acknowledgment
Trigger	Basic Trigger, BQRP Trigger or BSRP Trigger frames. The Trigger frames are the first MPDUs of the A-MPDU unless the A-MPDU also carries an Ack or BlockAck frame in which case the Trigger frames are included immediately after the Ack or BlockAck frame. See NOTE 2.

NOTE 1—Only an HE AP is allowed to include a Trigger frame in the A-MPDU. Multiple Trigger frames in one A-MPDU increases robustness. The content of all Trigger frames in the A-MPDU is the same.

NOTE 2—The BSRP Trigger and BQRP Trigger frames can be aggregated with other MPDUs in the A-MPDU if the receiver has indicated the support of receiving these Trigger frame types in the BSRP BQRP A-MPDU Aggregation field of the HE Capabilities element.

NOTE 3—The single Management frame that solicits the acknowledgement in ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU is treated as single-TID frame, e.g. soliciting Ack of TID 15 in multi-STA BlockAck frame.

1 **Table 9-532c—A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response**
 2 **context**

MPDU	Conditions
Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an MPDU that requires an Ack frame response, a single Ack frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
HT-immediate Block-Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an implicit or explicit block ack request for a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists, at most one Compressed BlockAck frame for this TID at the start of the A-MPDU. If the preceding PPDU contains explicit block ack requests for multiple TIDs or a multi-TID A-MPDU, at most one Multi-STA BlockAck frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
Action No Ack	Non-EOF MPDUs that are Action No Ack frames.
QoS Null frame with Ack Policy subfield set to No Ack	non-EOF-MPDUs that are QoS Null frames with Ack Policy subfield set to No Ack.

1
2
3
4
Table 9-532c—A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response
context (continued)

MPDU	Conditions
Data frames sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement	<p>QoS Data frames with different TIDs each of which corresponds to an HT-immediate block ack agreement.</p> <p>See NOTE 1.</p>
Immediate BlockAck-Req	<p>At most one multi-TID BlockAck-Req frame with TIDs that correspond to HT-immediate block ack agreements</p> <p>This frame is the last MPDU in the A-MPDU.</p> <p>Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame is not present if any QoS Data frames are present.</p>
Trigger	<p>Basic Trigger, MU-BAR Trigger, BQRP Trigger or BSRP Trigger frames.</p> <p>MU-BAR Trigger frame is not present if any QoS Data frames are present.</p> <p>The Trigger frames are the first MPDUs of the A-MPDU unless the A-MPDU also carries an Ack or BlockAck frame in which case the Trigger frames are included immediately after the Ack or BlockAck frame.</p> <p>See NOTE 2 and NOTE 3.</p>

45 NOTE 1—MPDUs from the same TID all have the same ack policy, which is Implicit BAR, HTP Ack or Block Ack.
 46 NOTE 2—Only an HE AP is allowed to include a Trigger frame in the A-MPDU. Multiple Trigger frames in one A-
 47 MPDU increases the robustness. The content of all Trigger frames in the A-MPDU is the same.
 48 NOTE 3—The BSRP Trigger and BQRP Trigger frames can be aggregated with other MPDUs in the A-MPDU if
 49 the receiver has indicated the support of receiving these trigger types in the BSRP BQRP A-MPDU Aggregation
 50 field of the HE Capabilities element.

1 **Table 9-532d—A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response**
 2 **context**

MPDU	Conditions
Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an MPDU that requires an Ack frame response, a single Ack frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
HT-immediate Block-Ack	If the preceding PPDU contains an implicit or explicit block ack request for a TID for which an HT-immediate block ack agreement exists, at most one Compressed BlockAck frame for this TID at the start of the A-MPDU. If the preceding PPDU contains explicit block ack requests for multiple TIDs or a multi-TID A-MPDU, at most one Multi-STA BlockAck frame at the start of the A-MPDU.
Action No Ack	Non-EOF MPDUs that are Action No Ack frames.
QoS Null frame with Ack Policy subfield set to No Ack	non-EOF-MPDUs that are QoS Null frames with Ack Policy subfield set to No Ack.

1 **Table 9-532d—A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response con-**
 2 **text (continued)**

MPDU	Conditions
Data frames without an HT-immediate block ack agreement	<p>One or more QoS Data frames with each with different TIDs where none of the TID have HT-immediate block ack agreement</p> <p>See NOTE 1.</p>
Data frames sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement	<p>One of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — One or more QoS Data frames with a TID that corresponding to an HT-immediate block ack agreement — QoS Data frames with TIDs that correspond to two or more HT-immediate block ack agreements <p>See NOTE 1.</p>
Management	<p>At most one Management frame that solicits an acknowledgment</p>
Trigger	<p>One or more Basic Trigger, BQRP Trigger or BSRP Trigger frames.</p> <p>The Trigger frames are the first MPDUs of the A-MPDU unless the A-MPDU also carries an Ack or BlockAck frame in which case the Trigger frames are included immediately after the Ack or BlockAck frame.</p> <p>See NOTE 2 and NOTE 3.</p>
<p>NOTE 1—MPDUs with the same TID all have the same ack policy, which is Implicit BAR, HTP Ack or Block Ack.</p> <p>NOTE 2—Only an HE AP is allowed to include a Trigger frame in the A-MPDU. Multiple Trigger frames in one A-MPDU increases the robustness. The content of all Trigger frames in the A-MPDU is the same.</p> <p>NOTE 3—The BSRP Trigger and BQRP Trigger frames can be aggregated with other MPDUs in the A-MPDU if the receiver has indicated the support of receiving these trigger types in the BSRP BQRP A-MPDU Aggregation field of the HE Capabilities element.</p>	

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

10. MAC sublayer functional description

10.1 Introduction

Change as follows:

The MAC functional description is presented in this clause. The architecture of the MAC sublayer, including the distributed coordination function (DCF), the hybrid coordination function (HCF), the mesh coordination function (MCF), the triggered UL access (TUA), and their coexistence in an IEEE 802.11 LAN are introduced in 10.2 (MAC architecture). These functions are expanded on in 10.3 (DCF), 10.23 (HCF), and 10.24 (Mesh coordination function (MCF)), and 26.2 (HE channel access). Fragmentation and defragmentation are defined in 10.4 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU fragmentation) and 10.5 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU defragmentation). Multirate support is addressed in 10.6 (Multirate support). A number of additional restrictions to limit the cases in which MSDUs are reordered or discarded are described in 10.7 (MSDU transmission restrictions). Operation across regulatory domains is defined in 10.22 (Operation across regulatory domains). The block ack mechanism is described in 10.25 (Block acknowledgment (block ack)). The No Ack mechanism is described in 10.26 (No Acknowledgment (No Ack)). The protection mechanism is described in 10.27 (Protection mechanisms). Rules for processing MAC frames are described in 10.28 (MAC frame processing).

10.2 MAC architecture

10.2.1 General

Replace Figure 10-1 (Non-DMG non-CMMG non-SIG STA MAC architecture) with the following:

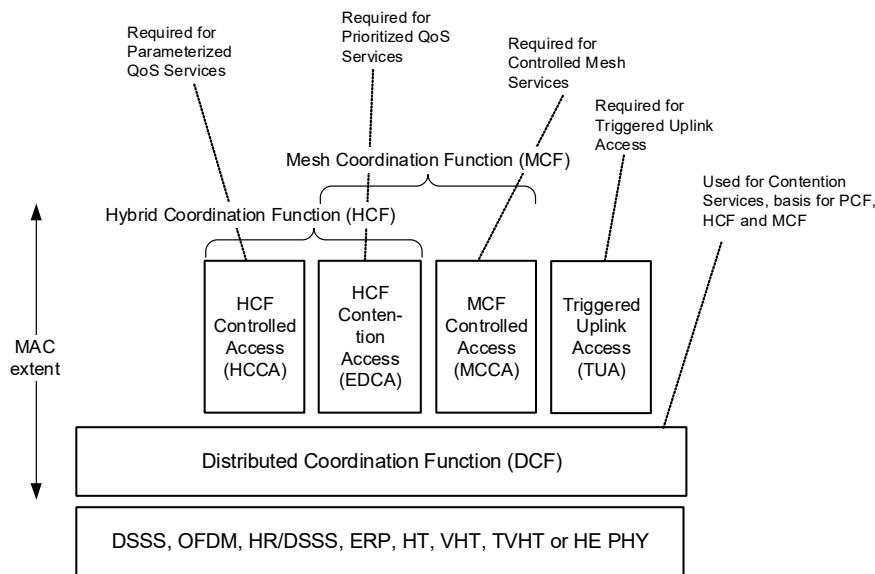


Figure 10-1—Non-DMG non-CMMG non-SIG STA MAC architecture

Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:

In a non-DMG non-CMMG non-SIG STA:

- The MAC provides the HCF, and MCF, and TUA services using the services of the DCF.

- The HCF is present in QoS STAs and absent otherwise.
- The MCF is present in mesh STAs and absent otherwise.
- The TUA is present in non-AP HE STAs and absent otherwise.

10.2.3 Hybrid coordination function (HCF)

10.2.3.2 HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)

Change the 4th paragraph as follows:

The QoS AP shall announce the EDCA parameters in selected Beacon frames and in all Probe Response and (Re)Association Response frames by the inclusion of the EDCA Parameter Set element using the information from the MIB entries in dot11ECDATable, if the MIB entries in dot11EDCATable are different from the default EDCA parameters (see Table 9-156 (Default EDCA Parameter Set element parameter values if dot11OCBActivated is false)). If no such element is received, a STA shall use the default values for the parameters. The fields following the QoS Info field in the EDCA Parameter Set element shall be included in all Beacon frames occurring within two (optionally more) delivery traffic indication map (DTIM) periods following a change in AC parameters, which provides all STAs an opportunity to receive the updated EDCA parameters. If any associated STAs are in WNM sleep mode or using FMS, these fields should be included by the AP for as many DTIM periods as needed to exceed the longest interval any STA is expected to not receive Beacon frames.

An HE AP can additionally provide MU EDCA parameters for non-AP HE STAs as defined in 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters).

Change the 13th paragraph as follows:

BlockAckReq and BlockAck frames shall be sent using the same access category for medium access as the corresponding QoS Data frames. If an HE STA transmits a BlockAckReq, Multi-TID BlockAckReq or Multi-STA BlockAck frame, then further constraints defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure) apply.

Insert a new subclause as follows after 10.2.4:

10.2.4a Triggered uplink access (TUA)

A non-AP HE STA also implements trigger-based UL access methods. Triggered UL access (TUA) is used when an HE AP triggers one or more non-AP HE STAs to transmit HE TB PPDUs simultaneously. The optional UORA additionally allows a non-AP HE STA to access one of a number of resource units designated for random access by the HE AP. See 26.5.2 (UL MU operation) and 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)).

Change the title and first paragraph of 10.2.5 as follows:

10.2.5 Combined use of DCF, and HCF, and TUA

The DCF, and the hybrid coordination function and TUA are defined so they may operate within the same BSS. The HCF access methods (controlled and contention based) operate sequentially. Sequential operation allows the polled and contention based access methods to alternate, within intervals as short as the time to transmit a frame exchange sequence, under rules defined in 10.23 (HCF).

1 **10.3 DCF**

2

3 **10.3.1 General**

4

5 *Change the 6th paragraph as follows:*

6

7

8 The virtual CS mechanism is achieved by distributing reservation information announcing the impending
 9 use of the medium. The exchange of RTS and CTS frames prior to the actual Data frame is one means of dis-
 10 tribution of this medium reservation information. The RTS and CTS frames contain a Duration field that
 11 defines the period of time that the medium is to be reserved to transmit the actual Data frame and the return-
 12 ing Ack frame. A STA receiving either the RTS frame (sent by the originating STA) or the CTS frame (sent
 13 by the destination STA) shall process the medium reservation. Thus, a STA might be unable to receive from
 14 the originating STA and yet still know about the impending use of the medium to transmit a Data frame. The
 15 exchange of an MU-RTS Trigger frame and simultaneous CTS frame responses by HE STAs prior to the
 16 actual Data frames is another means of distribution of this medium reservation information.

17

18

19 *Change the 11th paragraph as follows:*

20

21

22 The use of the RTS/CTS mechanism under control of dot11RTSThreshold if dot11TXOPDurationRTS-
 23 Threshold is 1023 or it is not present is described in 10.3.5 (Individually addressed MPDU transfer proce-
 24 dure).

25

26

27 The use of the RTS/CTS mechanism is under control of dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold if dot11TXOP-
 28 DurationRTSThreshold is not 1023. If this mechanism is enabled, a non-AP HE STA shall use an RTS/CTS
 29 exchange for individually addressed frames if the duration of the TXOP is greater than or equal to dot11TX-
 30 OPDurationRTSThreshold as defined in 26.2.1 (TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS).

31

32

33 **10.3.2 Procedures common to the DCF and EDCAF**

34

35

36 **10.3.2.1 CS mechanism**

37

38 *Change the 4th paragraph of the subclause as follows:*

39

40

41 The NAV maintains a prediction of future traffic on the medium based on duration information that is
 42 announced in RTS/CTS frames by non-DMG STAs, MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frames by HE STAs as defined
 43 in 26.2.6 (MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure), and RTS/DMG CTS frames by DMG STAs
 44 prior to the actual exchange of data. The duration information is also available in the MAC headers of all
 45 frames other than PV1 MAC frames and PS-Poll frames, and during the BTI, the A-BFT, the ATI, the
 46 CBAP, and the SP. The duration information in a frame transmitted by an S1G STA is also available in PS-
 47 Poll+BDT frames, in NDP CTS frames, in NDP Ack frames whose Idle Indication field value is 0, and in
 48 NDP_2M PS-Poll-Ack frames whose Idle Indication field is 0. The duration information might also be
 49 available in the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION when an HE PPDU is received (see 26.11.5
 50 (TXOP_DURATION)).

51

52

53 *Change the 7th paragraph as follows:*

54

55

56 The CS mechanism combines the NAV state, and in S1G STAs also the RID state, and the STA's transmitter
 57 status with physical CS to determine the busy/idle state of the medium. The NAV and RID may be thought of
 58 as a counter, which counts down to 0 at a uniform rate. In non-S1G STAs, when the NAV counter is 0, the vir-
 59 tual CS indication is that the medium is idle; when the counter is nonzero, the indication is busy. In S1G STAs,
 60 when both NAV and RID counters are 0, the virtual CS indication is that the medium is idle; when either the
 61 NAV counter or the RID counter is nonzero the indication is that the medium is busy. The virtual CS indica-
 62 tion of medium for HE STAs with two NAVs is described in 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs). If a DMG STA supports
 63 multiple NAVs as defined in 10.40.10 (Updating multiple NAV) and all counters are 0, the virtual CS indica-
 64

65

1 tion is that the medium is idle; when at least one of the counters is nonzero, the indication is busy. The medium
 2 shall be determined to be busy when the STA is transmitting.
 3

4 **10.3.2.3 IFS**
 5

6 **10.3.2.3.3 SIFS**
 7

8 *Insert the following before the 1st paragraph:*
 9

10 An HE STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU a SIFS after the end of a received PPDU follows the procedure
 11 in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
 12

13 **10.3.2.3.7 EIFS**
 14

15 *Change as follows:*
 16

17 A DCF shall use EIFS before transmission, when it determines that the medium is idle following reception
 18 of a frame for which the PHY-RXEND.indication primitive contained an error or a frame for which the FCS
 19 value was not correct. Similarly, a STA's EDCA mechanism under HCF shall use the EIFS-
 20 DIFS+AIFS[AC] interval. The duration of an EIFS is defined in 10.3.7 (DCF timing relations). The EIFS or
 21 EIFS-DIFS+AIFS[AC] interval shall begin following indication by the PHY that the medium is idle after
 22 detection of the erroneous frame, without regard to the virtual CS mechanism. The STA shall not begin a
 23 transmission until the expiration of the later of the NAV and EIFS or EIFS-DIFS+AIFS[AC]. The EIFS and
 24 EIFS-DIFS+AIFS[AC] are defined to provide enough time for another STA to acknowledge what was, to
 25 this STA, an incorrectly received frame before this STA commences transmission. Reception of an error-
 26 free frame or reception of an HE PPDU with the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION that is not set
 27 to UNSPECIFIED during the EIFS or EIFS-DIFS+AIFS[AC] resynchronizes the STA to the actual busy/
 28 idle state of the medium, so the EIFS or EIFS-DIFS+AIFS[AC] is terminated and medium access (using
 29 DIFS or AIFS as appropriate and, if necessary, backoff) continues following reception of that the error-free
 30 frame or following an expected end of the received HE PPDU. At the expiration or termination of the EIFS
 31 or EIFS-DIFS+AIFS[AC], the STA reverts to the NAV and physical CS to control access to the medium.
 32

33 EIFS shall not be invoked if the NAV is updated by the frame that would have caused an EIFS. EIFS shall
 34 not be invoked for an A-MPDU if one or more of its frames are received correctly. EIFS shall not be
 35 invoked if the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION of a received HE PPDU is not set to UNSPEC-
 36 IFIED.
 37

38 **10.3.2.4 Setting and resetting the NAV**
 39

40 *Change paragraphs 1-2 as follows:*
 41

42 This subclause describes the setting and resetting of the NAV for non-DMG STAs and DMG STAs that sup-
 43 port a single NAV. DMG STAs that support multiple NAVs shall update their NAVs according to the proce-
 44 dures described in 10.40.10 (Updating multiple NAVs). HE STAs with two NAV timers shall update their
 45 NAV timers according to the procedures described in 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs).
 46

47 A STA that receives at least one valid frame in a PSDU can update its NAV with the information from any
 48 valid Duration field in the PSDU. When the received frame's RA is equal to the STA's own MAC address,
 49 the STA shall not update its NAV. Further, when the received frame is a DMG CTS frame and its TA is
 50 equal to the STA's own MAC address, the STA shall not update its NAV. For all other received frames the
 51 STA shall update its NAV when the received Duration is greater than the STA's current NAV value. Upon
 52 receipt of a PS-Poll frame, a STA(11ah), except for an S1G STA for which the RXVECTOR parameter
 53 RESPONSE_INDICATION of the received PS-Poll frame is NDP Response, shall update its NAV settings
 54 as appropriate under the data rate selection rules using a duration value equal to the time, in microseconds,
 55

1 required to transmit one Ack frame plus one SIFS, but only when the new NAV value is greater than the current NAV value. If the calculated duration includes a fractional microsecond, that value is rounded up to the next higher integer. When the NAV is reset, a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive shall be issued. This NAV update operation is performed when the PHY-RXEND.indication primitive is received, except when the PHY-RXEND.indication primitive is received before the end of the PPDU, in which case the NAV update is performed at the expected end of the PPDU.

9 ***Insert the following after the 4th paragraph:***

10 An HE AP that is not a TXOP holder shall update the NAV with the duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION for an HE PPDU if all of the following conditions are met, and shall not update the NAV otherwise:

- 11 — The RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is not UNSPECIFIED
- 12 — The HE AP does not receive a frame with a Duration field in the PPDU
- 13 — The duration indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is greater than the current NAV value of the HE AP

14 An HE AP that is a TXOP holder shall update the NAV with the duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION for an HE PPDU if all of the following conditions are met, and shall not update the NAV otherwise:

- 15 — The RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is not UNSPECIFIED
- 16 — The HE AP does not receive a frame with a Duration field in the PPDU
- 17 — The duration indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is greater than the current NAV value of the HE AP
- 18 — The RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is not equal to the BSS color of the HE AP

19 NOTE 1—A non-AP HE STA maintains two NAVs, but an HE AP might only maintain one NAV (see 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)).

20 NOTE 2—If a STA receives an HE PPDU with the duration information indicated by both frame with a Duration field and the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION, then the duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is ignored.

21 ***Change the 6th and 7th paragraph as follows:***

22 A STA that used information from an RTS frame or MU-RTS Trigger frame as the most recent basis to update its NAV setting is permitted to reset its NAV if no PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive is received from the PHY during a NAVTimeout period starting when the MAC receives a PHY-RXEND.indication primitive corresponding to the detection of the RTS frame or MU-RTS Trigger frame.

23 In non-DMG BSS, NAVTimeout period is equal to $(2 \times aSIFSTime) + (CTS_Time) + aRxPHYStartDelay + (2 \times aSlotTime)$ $(2 \times aSIFSTime) + (CTS_Time) + aRxPHYStartDelay + (2 \times aSlotTime)$. In a non-S1G STA, if an RTS frame is used for the most recent NAV update, the "CTS_Time" shall be calculated using the length of the CTS frame and the data rate at which the RTS frame used for the most recent NAV update was received. If an MU-RTS Trigger frame was used for the most recent NAV update, CTS_Time shall be calculated using the length of the CTS frame and the 6 Mb/s data rate (see 26.2.6 (MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure)). In an S1G STA, the "CTS_Time" shall be calculated using the time required to transmit an NDP CTS frame that is equal to NDPTxTime, which is specified in 10.3.2.5.2 (RID update).

24 **10.3.2.13 MU acknowledgment procedure**

25 ***Insert a new subclause heading before the 1st paragraph as follows:***

1 **10.3.2.13.1 Acknowledgment procedure for DL MU PPDU in SU PPDU**

2

3

4 *Change the subclause as follows:*

5

6

7 The acknowledgment procedure performed by a STA that receives MPDUs that were transmitted within a
 8 VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU is the same as the acknowledgment procedure for MPDUs that were
 9 not transmitted within a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU sent by an AP, except if the STA is an HE
 10 STA that follows the rules defined in 26.3 (Fragmentation and defragmentation) and in 26.4 (HE acknowl-
 11 edgment procedure).

12

13

14

15 NOTE—All MPDUs transmitted within a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU are contained within A-MPDUs, and
 16 the rules specified in 9.7.3 (A-MPDU contents) prevent an immediate response carried in an SU PPDU to more than one
 17 of the A-MPDUs.

18

19

20 Responses to A-MPDUs within a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU for DL transmission that are not
 21 immediate responses to the VHT MU PPDU or the HE MU PPDU are transmitted in response to explicit
 22 BlockAckReq frames by the AP. Examples of VHT MU PPDU frame exchange sequences are shown in Fig-
 23 ure 10-11 (An example of a TXOP containing a VHT MU PPDU transmission with an immediate acknowl-
 24 edgment to the VHT MU PPDU) and Figure 10-15 (An example of a TXOP containing a VHT MU PPDU
 25 transmission with no immediate acknowledgment to the VHT MU PPDU).

26

27

28

29

30 Recovery within the TXOP that contains a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU can be performed accord-
 31 ing to the rules of 10.23.2.8 (Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP). BlockAckRequest frames
 32 related to A-MPDUs within a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU can be transmitted in a TXOP separate
 33 from the one that contained the VHT MU PPDU or the HE MU PPDU.

34

35

36

37 NOTE 1—A BlockAck frame or an Ack frame is sent in immediate response to the BlockAckReq frame for HT-imme-
 38 diate or HT-delayed block ack, respectively. An Ack frame might be sent in immediate response carried in an SU PPDU
 39 to an S-MPDU in the VHT MU PPDU or the HE MU PPDU. Responses to S-MPDUs for more than one STA contained
 40 in an HE MU PPDU are transmitted as specified in 10.3.2.13.2 (Acknowledgment procedure for DL MU PPDU in MU
 41 format). A Multi-STA BlockAck frame is sent in immediate response to a Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame.

42

43

44 NOTE 2—A BlockAckRequest frame would typically not be sent to a STA in the case where the A-MPDU to the STA
 45 contained no MPDUs requiring immediate acknowledgment. It could be sent if MPDUs in a previous A-MPDU remain
 46 unacknowledged.

47

48

49 *Insert a new subclauses 10.3.2.13.2 and 10.3.2.13.3 as follows:*

50

51

52 **10.3.2.13.2 Acknowledgment procedure for DL MU PPDU in MU format**

53

54

55 A non-AP STA shall not set the ack policy to HTP Ack.

56

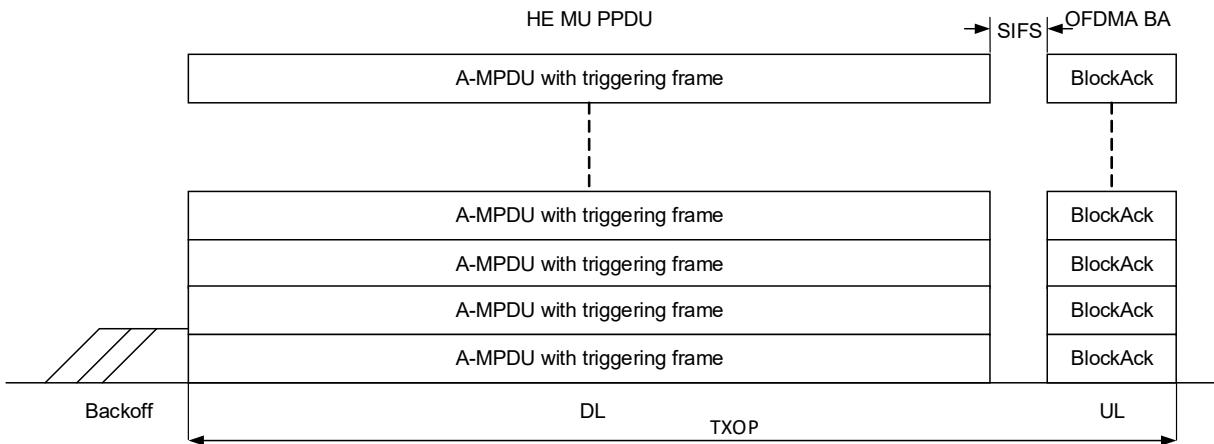
57

58 A non-AP STA that is the recipient, within an HE MU PPDU, of a QoS Data frame or QoS Null frame with
 59 ack policy HTP Ack, of an MU-BAR Trigger frame or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame, or of a Management
 60 frame that solicits acknowledgment, shall send the immediate response according to the scheduling informa-
 61 tion that is carried either in the Trigger frame(s) or TRS Control subfield. If a Basic Trigger frame (see
 62 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format)) or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield (see 9.2.4.6a.1 (TRS Control)) is
 63 not received, then the STA shall not respond.

64

65

1 An example of UL OFDMA acknowledgment to an HE MU PPDU is shown in Figure 10-15a (An example
 2 of an HE MU PPDU transmission with an immediate UL OFDMA acknowledgment).



23 **Figure 10-15a—An example of an HE MU PPDU transmission with an immediate UL OFDMA
 24 acknowledgment**

25 An AP may use an MU-BAR Trigger frame or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame to solicit acknowledgment
 26 frames from multiple HE STAs to which the AP has sent QoS Data frames with Block Ack ack policy or
 27 from which the AP has not received immediate acknowledgment frames after sending QoS Data frames with
 28 HTP Ack ack policy in an HE MU PPDU.

32 **10.3.2.13.3 Acknowledgment procedure for an UL MU transmission**

33 An AP that receives frames from more than one STA that are part of an UL MU transmission (see 9.42.2)
 34 and that require an immediate acknowledgment (i.e., the ack policy of the eliciting QoS Data frame is Normal
 35 Ack or Implicit BAR), shall send an immediate acknowledgment in either an SU PPDU (see 26.4.4.5
 36 (Responding to an HE TB PPDU with an SU PPDU)) or an HE MU PPDU (see 26.4.4.6 (Responding to an
 37 HE TB PPDU with an HE MU PPDU)). The Multi-STA BlockAck frame may be transmitted in a non-HT
 38 PPDU, non-HT duplicate PPDU, HT PPDU, VHT PPDU, HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU
 39 PPDU. After a successful reception of an UL frame requiring acknowledgment, transmission of the DL
 40 acknowledgment shall commence after a SIFS, without regard to the busy/idle state of the medium. When an
 41 AP transmits an immediate acknowledgment in an HE MU PPDU in response to an A-MPDU sent in an HE
 42 TB PPDU, the AP should send it within the 20 MHz channel(s) where the pre-HE modulated fields of the
 43 HE TB PPDU sent by the STA are located. The immediate acknowledgment is an Ack frame, Compressed
 44 BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame.

An example of multiple BlockAck frames sent in DL MU is shown in Figure 10-15b (An example of an UL MU transmission with an immediate DL MU transmission containing individually addressed BlockAck frames acknowledging the frames received from the respective STAs).

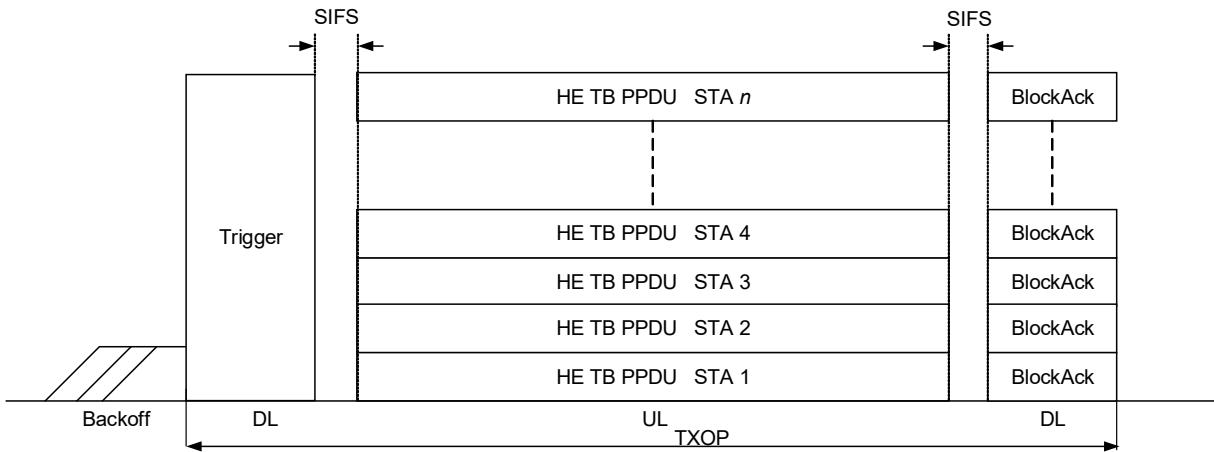


Figure 10-15b—An example of an UL MU transmission with an immediate DL MU transmission containing individually addressed BlockAck frames acknowledging the frames received from the respective STAs

An example of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame acknowledgment in a non-HT PPDU, HT PPDU, VHT PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU is given in Figure 10-15c (An example of UL MU transmissions with an immediate Multi-STA BlockAck frame acknowledging the MPDUs).

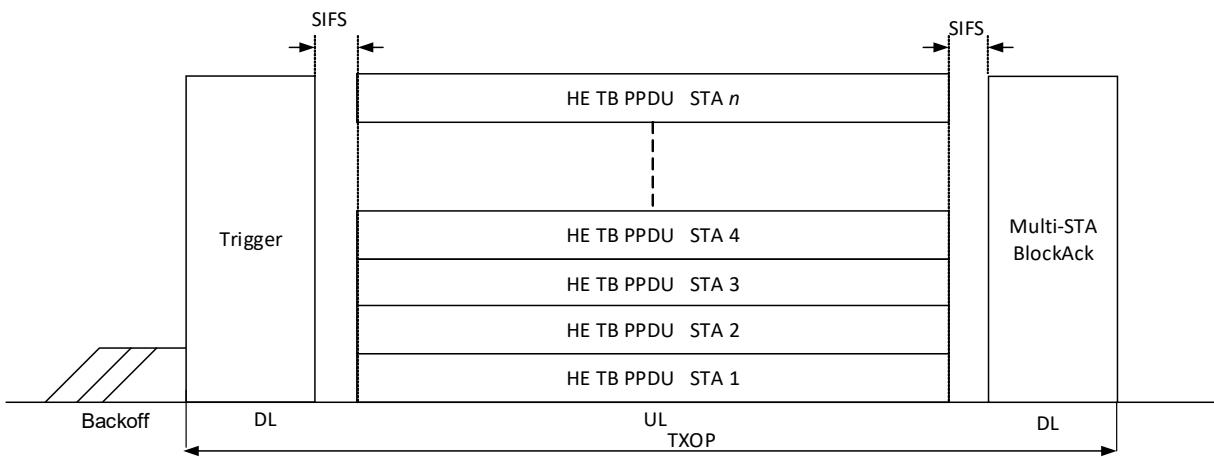
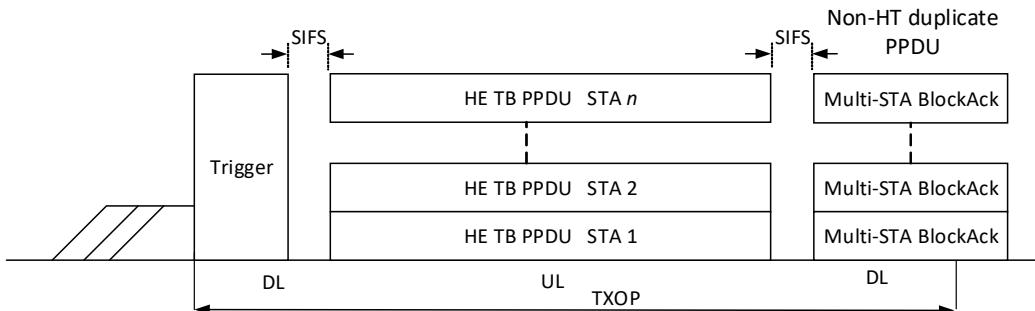


Figure 10-15c—An example of UL MU transmissions with an immediate Multi-STA BlockAck frame acknowledging the MPDUs

1 An example of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame acknowledgment in a non-HT Duplicate PPDU is given in
 2 Figure 10-15d (An example of UL MU transmissions with an immediate DL non-HT duplicate PPDU con-
 3 taining the Multi-STA BlockAck frame).



21 **Figure 10-15d—An example of UL MU transmissions with an immediate DL non-HT dupli-
 22 cate PPDU containing the Multi-STA BlockAck frame**

25 The Ack Policy Indication subfield of a QoS Data frame sent in an HE TB PPDU shall not be set to Block
 26 Ack.
 27

29 A STA may send a BlockAckReq frame or Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame to solicit the acknowledgment
 30 frame(s) from an AP.
 31

33 10.3.5 Individually addressed MPDU transfer procedure

36 *Change as follows:*

39 ~~A-If dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold is 1023 or not present, a STA shall use an RTS/CTS preceding a~~
 40 ~~frame exchange including an individually addressed Data or Management frame when the length of the~~
 41 ~~PSDU is greater than the length threshold indicated by dot11RTSThreshold. If dot11TXOPDurationRTS-~~
 42 ~~Threshold is present and is not 1023, a non-AP HE STA using EDCA shall use an RTS/CTS exchange as~~
 43 ~~defined in 26.2.1 (TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS). A STA may also use an RTS/CTS exchange to protect~~
 44 ~~the transmission of for individually addressed frames when it is necessary to distribute the NAV, or when it~~
 45 ~~is necessary to establish protection (see 10.27 (Protection mechanisms)), or for other purposes.~~
 46

48 ~~NOTE 1—If dot11RTSThreshold is 0, an RTS/CTS exchange precedes all frame exchanges including an individually~~
 49 ~~addressed Data or Management frame, except for a non-AP STA with dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold present and~~
 50 ~~not equal to 1023, in which case use of an RTS/CTS exchange is controlled by dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold (see~~
 51 ~~26.2.1 (TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS)).~~

53 ~~NOTE 2—A non-AP STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU outside the context of an RDG is exempt from requirements~~
 54 ~~related to dot11RTSThreshold and dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold because the STA is not the TXOP holder.~~

56 ~~When If an RTS/CTS exchange is used, the PPDU containing the PSDU shall be transmitted starting one~~
 57 ~~SIFS after the end of the CTS frame.~~

59 NOTE—No regard is given to the busy or idle status of the medium when transmitting this PSDU.

62 ~~When If an RTS/CTS exchange is not used, the PSDU shall be transmitted following the success of the basic~~
 63 ~~access procedure. With or without the use of the RTS/CTS exchange procedure, the STA that is the destina-~~
 64 ~~tion of a Data frame shall follow the acknowledgment procedure.~~

1 **10.3.7 DCF timing relations**

2
3 *Change the 9th paragraph as follows:*

4
5 When dot11DynamicEIFSActivated is true, if the PPDU that causes the EIFS does not contain a single
6 MPDU with a length equal to 14 or 32 octets, and the modulation of the PPDU that causes the EIFS is
7 included in Table 10-8 (Determination of the EstimatedAckTxTime based on properties of the PPDU caus-
8 ing the EIFS), then EIFS is determined as shown in Equation (10-8).

9
10
$$\text{EIFS} = \text{aSIFSTime} + \text{EstimatedAckTxTime} + \text{DIFS} \quad (10-8)$$

11 where

12 EstimatedAckTxTime is based on an estimated duration of the PPDU that is the possible response to the
13 PPDU that causes the EIFS, as specified in Table 10-8 (Determination of the EstimatedAckTx-
14 Time based on properties of the PPDU causing the EIFS).

15 NOTE—This also applies to an HE STA with dot11DynamicEIFSActivated set to true that receives an HE PPDU with
16 the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION set to UNSPECIFIED that causes the EIFS.

17 **10.3.8 Signal extension**

18 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

19 Transmissions of frames with TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT of type NON_HT with NON_HT_MOD-
20 ULATION values of ERP-OFDM and NON_HT_DUP_OFDM and transmissions of frames with TXVEC-
21 TOR parameter FORMAT with values of HT_MF_and, HT_GF, HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB
22 include a period of no transmission of duration aSignalExtension, except for RIFS transmissions. The pur-
23 pose of this signal extension is to enable the NAV value of Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread
24 spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification) STAs to be set correctly.

25 *Change the title of 10.4 as follows:*

26 **10.4 MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU fragmentation**

27 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*

28 A STA shall be capable of receiving MPDUs, containing all or part of an MSDU, of arbitrary length that is
29 less than or equal to the maximum MSDU size as specified in Table 9-25 (Maximum data unit sizes (in
30 octets) and durations (in microseconds)) defined in 9.2.3 (General frame format), plus any security encapsu-
31 lation overhead, plus MAC header and FCS.

32 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

33 An HE STA may also use the dynamic fragmentation as defined in 26.3.2 (Dynamic fragmentation) if the
34 conditions in 26.3.1 (General) are met. Dynamic fragmentation allows A-MSDUs to be fragmented.

35 *Change the title of 10.5 as follows:*

36 **10.5 MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU defragmentation**

37 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

38 An HE STA may also use the dynamic defragmentation as defined in 26.3.3 (Dynamic defragmentation) if
39 the conditions in 26.3.1 (General) are met. Dynamic fragmentation allows A-MSDUs to be fragmented.

10.6 Multirate support

10.6.1 Overview

6 *Change paragraphs 5-6 as follows:*

8 For specific PHYs, the value of the Duration/ID field is determined using the PLME-TXTIME.request primitive
 9 and the PLME-TXTIME.confirm primitive. These specific PHYs are defined in:
 10

- 11 — Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification) for HR/DSSS
- 12 — Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) for OFDM
- 13 — Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) for ERP
- 14 — Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) for HT
- 15 — Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) for DMG
- 16 — Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) for VHT
- 17 — Clause 22 (Television Very High Throughput (TVHT) PHY specification) for TVHT
- 18 — Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) for CDMG
- 19 — Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multi-gigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) for CMMG
- 20 — Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) for HE

27 The two PLME-TXTIME primitives are defined in the respective PHY specifications:

- 28 — 16.3.4 (HR/DSSS TXTIME calculation) for HR TXTIME calculation
- 29 — 17.4.3 (OFDM TXTIME calculation) for OFDM TXTIME calculation
- 30 — 18.5.3.2 (ERP-OFDM TXTIME calculations)
- 31 — 19.4.3 (TXTIME calculation) for HT TXTIME calculation
- 32 — 20.11.3 (TXTIME calculation) for DMG PLME TXTIME calculation
- 33 — 21.4.3 (TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation) for VHT PLME TXTIME calculation
- 34 — 22.4.3 (TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation) for TVHT PLME TXTIME calculation
- 35 — 25.14.3 (TXTIME calculation) for CMMG PLME TXTIME calculation
- 36 — 27.4.3 (TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation) for HE PLME TXTIME calculation

10.6.5 Rate selection for Data and Management frames

10.6.5.1 Rate selection for non-STBC Beacon and non-STBC PSMP frames

48 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

50 If the BSSBasicRateSet parameter is not empty, a non-STBC PSMP frame or a non-STBC Beacon frame,
 51 ER beacon or HE SU beacon shall be transmitted in a non-HT PPDU using one of the rates included in the
 52 BSSBasicRateSet parameter. An ER beacon is transmitted as defined 26.15.5 (Additional rules for ER beacons and group addressed frames) and an HE SU beacon is transmitted as defined in 26.15.6 (Additional rules for HE SU beacons and group addressed frames).
 53

10.6.5.3 Rate selection for other group addressed Data and Management frames

60 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

62 This subclause describes the rate selection rules for group addressed Data and Management frames, excluding
 63 the following:
 64

- 65 — Non-STBC Beacon, ER Beacon, HE SU Beacon, and non-STBC PSMP frames

- STBC group addressed Data and Management frames
- Data frames located in an FMS stream (see 11.22.8 (FMS multicast rate processing))
- Group addressed frames transmitted to the GCR concealment address (see 11.22.16.3.5 (Concealment of GCR transmissions))
- Group addressed Data and Management frames transmitted in an HE ER SU PPDU (see 26.15.5 (Additional rules for ER beacons and group addressed frames))
- Group addressed Data and Management frames transmitted in an HE SU PPDU (see 26.15.6 (Additional rules for HE SU beacons and group addressed frames))
- Group addressed Data and Management frames transmitted in an HE MU PPDU (see 26.15.7 (Additional rules for group addressed frames in an HE MU PPDU))

10.6.6 Rate selection for Control frames

10.6.6.1 General rules for rate selection for Control frames

Insert the following as the last bullet to the 3rd paragraph:

The following rules determine whether a Control frame is carried in a non-HT, HT or VHT PPDU:

- f) A control response frame may be carried in a VHT PPDU or HT PPDU if the eliciting frame was a Fine Timing Measurement frame carried in a VHT PPDU or HT PPDU respectively.

Insert the following at the end of the subclause:

An HE STA that transmits a Trigger frame, Multi-STA BlockAck frame or HE/VHT NDP Announcement frame addressed to more than one STA shall use a rate, HT-MCS, <VHT-MCS, NSS> tuple or <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple that is supported by all recipient STAs.

10.6.6.6 Channel Width selection for Control frames

Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:

If a VHT or HE STA transmits to another VHT or HE STA a Control frame that is not an RTS frame or a CF-End frame, if that Control frame is an HE NDP Announcement frame or elicits a control response frame, or a VHT Compressed Beamforming frame, or an HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame, and

- If the Control frame is transmitted in a non-HT duplicate PPDU (channel width 40 MHz or wider), the transmitting VHT or HE STA shall set the TA field to a bandwidth signaling TA.
- If the Control frame is transmitted in a non-HT PPDU (channel width 20 MHz), the transmitting VHT or HE STA may set the TA field to a bandwidth signaling TA.

1 **10.6.10 Modulation classes**
 2
 3
 4

5
 6 *Change Table 10-9 (Modulation classes) as follows:*
 7
 8

9 **Table 10-9—Modulation classes**
 10
 11

Description of modulation	Condition that selects this modulation class			
	Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) to Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) PHYs or Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) PHY or Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) PHY, or Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multigigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 19 (High-throughput (HT) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) PHY	<u>Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification)</u>
DSSS and HR/DSSS	Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) or Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification) transmission	FORMAT is NON_HT.	N/A	<u>FORMAT is NON_HT.</u> <u>NON_HT_MODULATION is ERP-DSSS or ERP-CCK.</u>
ERP-OFDM	18.4 (ERP operating specifications (general)) transmission	FORMAT is NON_HT. NON_HT_MODULATION is ERP-OFDM.	N/A	<u>FORMAT is NON_HT.</u> <u>NON_HT_MODULATION is ERP-OFDM.</u>
OFDM	Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) transmission	FORMAT is NON_HT. NON_HT_MODULATION is OFDM or NON_HT_DUP_OFDM.	FORMAT is NON_HT. NON_HT_MODULATION is OFDM or NON_HT_DUP_OFDM.	<u>FORMAT is NON_HT.</u> <u>NON_HT_MODULATION is OFDM</u> or <u>NON_HT_DUP_OFDM.</u>
HT	N/A	FORMAT is HT_MF or HT_GF.	FORMAT is HT_MF or HT_GF.	<u>FORMAT is HT_MF</u> <u>or HT_GF.</u>

Table 10-9—Modulation classes (continued)

Description of modulation	Condition that selects this modulation class			
	Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) to Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) PHYs or Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) PHY or Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) PHY, or Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multigigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 19 (High-throughput (HT) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification)
DMG Control	Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) transmission and MCS is 0	NA	NA	<u>N/A</u>
DMG SC	Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) transmission and $1 \leq \text{MCS} \leq 12.6$	NA	NA	<u>N/A</u>
DMG Low-power SC	Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) transmission and $25 \leq \text{MCS} \leq 31$	NA	NA	<u>N/A</u>
VHT	N/A	N/A	FORMAT is VHT.	<u>FORMAT is VHT</u>
CDMG Control	Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) transmission and MCS is 0	NA	NA	<u>N/A</u>
CDMG SC	Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) transmission and $1 \leq \text{MCS} \leq 16$	NA	NA	<u>N/A</u>

Table 10-9—Modulation classes (continued)

Description of modulation	Condition that selects this modulation class			
	Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) to Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) PHYs or Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit (DMG) PHY specification) PHY or Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) PHY, or Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multigigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 19 (High-throughput (HT) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) PHY	Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification)
CDMG Low-power SC	Clause 24 (China directional multi-gigabit (CDMG) PHY specification) transmission and $17 \leq \text{MCS} \leq 23$	N/A	N/A	<u>N/A</u>
CMMG Control	Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multi-gigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) transmission and MCS is 0	N/A	N/A	<u>N/A</u>
CMMG SC	Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multi-gigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) transmission and $1 \leq \text{MCS} \leq 8$	N/A	N/A	<u>N/A</u>
CMMG OFDM	Clause 25 (China millimeter-wave multi-gigabit (CMMG) PHY specification) transmission and $9 \leq \text{MCS} \leq 16$	N/A	N/A	<u>N/A</u>
HE	<u>N/A</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_ER_SU, HE_MU or HE_TB</u>

1 **10.6.11 Non-HT basic rate calculation**

2

3

4 *Change as follows:*

5

6 This subclause defines how to convert an HT-MCS or a VHT-MCS or an HE-MCS to a non-HT basic rate for
7 the purpose of determining the rate of the response frame. It consists of two steps as follows:
8

- 9
- 10 a) Use the modulation and coding rate determined from the HT-MCS (defined in 19.5 (Parameters for
11 HT-MCSs)) or VHT-MCS (defined in 21.5 (Parameters for VHT-MCSs)) or HE-MCS (defined in
12 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)) to locate a non-HT reference rate by lookup into Table 10-10
13 (Non-HT reference rate).¹ In the case of an MCS with UEQM, the modulation of stream 1 is used.
14
- 15 b) The non-HT basic rate is the highest rate in the BSSBasicRateSet that is less than or equal to this
16 non-HT reference rate.
17

18

19 NOTE 1—The selection of a non-HT basic rate for the frame sent in response to an HE PPDU is not influenced by DCM
20 encoding in the HE PPDU.

21 NOTE 2—In a TVWS band, the non-HT reference rate is scaled as described in 22.2.4.
22

23

24 *Change Table 10-10 (Non-HT reference rate) as follows:*
25

26

27 **Table 10-10—Non-HT reference rate**

28

Modulation	Coding rate (R)	Non-HT reference rate (Mb/s)
BPSK	1/2	6
BPSK	3/4	9
QPSK	1/2	12
QPSK	3/4	18
16-QAM	1/2	24
16-QAM	3/4	36
64-QAM	1/2	48
64-QAM	2/3	48
64-QAM	3/4	54
64-QAM	5/6	54
256-QAM	3/4	54
256-QAM	5/6	54
<u>1024-QAM</u>	<u>3/4</u>	<u>54</u>
<u>1024-QAM</u>	<u>5/6</u>	<u>54</u>

61 NOTE—In a TVWS band, the non-HT reference rate is scaled as described in 22.2.4 (Support for NON_HT and HT for-
62 mats).

63

64 ¹ For example, if an HT PPDU transmission uses 64-QAM and coding rate of 3/4, the related non-HT reference rate is 54 Mb/s.
65

1 **10.6.13 Rate selection constraints for VHT STAs**

2
3 **10.6.13.3 Additional rate selection constraints for VHT PPDUs**

4
5 *Replace the 1st paragraph with the following:*

6
7
8 A STA should not transmit a 20 MHz or 40 MHz VHT PPDU with a <VHT-MCS, NSS> tuple that has
9 VHT-MCS 0, 1, 2 or 3 and NSS less than or equal to 4 to a receiver STA that has marked as unsupported the
10 HT-MCS with value VHT-MCS + 8 × (NSS – 1) in the Rx MCS Bitmask subfield in the Supported MCS
11 Set field in the HT Capabilities element it transmits. The transmission of a 20 MHz or 40 MHz VHT PPDU
12 with VHT-MCS greater than 3 is not subject to this constraint.

13
14
15 A STA should not transmit an 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz VHT PPDU with a <VHT-MCS, NSS>
16 tuple that has VHT-MCS 0 or 1 and NSS less than or equal to 4 to a receiver STA that has marked as unsup-
17 ported the HT-MCS values of both $2 \times$ VHT-MCS + 8 × (NSS – 1) and $2 \times$ VHT-MCS + 1 + 8 × (NSS – 1)
18 in the Rx MCS Bitmask subfield in the Supported MCS Set field in the HT Capabilities element it transmits.
19 The transmission of an 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz VHT PPDU with VHT-MCS greater than 1 is not
20 subject to this constraint.

21
22
23 **10.8 HT Control field operation**

24
25 *Change as follows:*

26
27
28 If the value of dot11HTControlFieldSupported is true, a STA shall set the +HTC Support subfield of the HT
29 Extended Capabilities field of the HT Capabilities element to 1 in HT Capabilities elements that it transmits.
30 If the value of dot11VHTControlFieldOptionImplemented is true, a STA shall set the +HTC-VHT Support
31 subfield of the VHT Capabilities Information field of the VHT Capabilities element to 1 in VHT Capabili-
32 ties elements that it transmits. If dot11HEControlFieldOptionImplemented is true, a STA shall set the
33 +HTC-HE Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1 of the HE Capabilities ele-
34 ments that it transmits.

35
36
37 A STA that has a value of true for at least one of dot11RDResponderOptionImplemented, dot11MCSFeed-
38 backOptionImplemented, and dot11AlternateEDCAActivated shall set dot11HTControlFieldSupported or
39 dot11VHTControlFieldOptionImplemented or both to true. A STA that has at least one of dot11TRSOption-
40 Implemented, dot11OMIOptionImplemented, dot11HEBSRControllImplemented, dot11HEBQRContro-
41 lImplemented, dot11RDResponderOptionImplemented or dot11SRResponderOptionImplemented equal to
42 true or has has dot11HEMCSFeedbackOptionImplemented greater than zero shall set dot11HEControlFiel-
43 dOptionImplemented to true. An HE AP shall set dot11HEControlFieldOptionImplemented to true.

44
45
46 An HT variant HT Control field shall not be present in a frame addressed to a STA unless that STA declares
47 support for +HTC-HT in the HT Extended Capabilities field of its HT Capabilities element (see 9.2.4.6 (HT
48 Control field)).

49
50 A VHT variant HT Control field shall not be present in a frame addressed to a STA unless that STA declares
51 support for +HTC-VHT in the VHT Capabilities Information field of its VHT Capabilities element or in the
52 S1G Capabilities Information field of S1G Capabilities elements that it transmits.

53
54 NOTE—An HT STA that does not support +HTC (HT or VHT variant) that receives a +HTC frame addressed to another
55 STA still performs the CRC on the actual length of the MPDU and uses the Duration/ID field to update the NAV, as
56 described in 10.3.2.4 (Setting and resetting the NAV).

57
58
59 An HE variant HT Control field shall not be present in a frame addressed to a STA unless that STA declares
60 support for +HTC-HE in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element. The

1 HE variant HT Control field carried in the frame may contain one or more Control subfields under the con-
 2 ditions listed in Table 10-11a (Conditions for including Control subfield variants).
 3
 4
 5

6 **Table 10-11a—Conditions for including Control subfield variants**

<u>Control subfield variant</u>	<u>Condition</u>
<u>TRS</u>	The transmitting STA expects an HE TB PPDU that follows the TRS information as described in 26.5.2.2 (Rules for soliciting UL MU frames) and the recipient STA has set the TRS Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to 1.
<u>OM</u>	The transmitting STA changes its operating mode, as described in 26.9 (Operating mode indication) and the recipient STA has set the OM Control Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to 1.
<u>HLA</u>	The transmitting STA follows the HE link adaptation procedure, as described in 26.13 (Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield) and the recipient STA has set the HE Link Adaptation Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to a nonzero value.
<u>BSR</u>	The transmitting STA follows the corresponding buffer status report procedure, as described in 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence) and the recipient STA has set the BSR Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to 1.
<u>UPH</u>	The transmitting STA follows the UL MU operation procedure, as described in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
<u>BQR</u>	The transmitting STA follows the bandwidth query report procedure, as described in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation) and the recipient STA has set the BQR Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to 1.
<u>CAS</u>	The transmitting STA follows either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — The reverse direction protocol procedure described in 10.28 (Reverse Direction Protocol) and the recipient STA has set the RD Responder of the HT Extended Capabilities field in the HT Capabilities elements it transmits to 1, or — The SRP procedure described in 26.10.3 (SRP-based spatial reuse operation) and the recipient STA has set the SR Responder subfield of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to 1.
<u>ONES</u>	The transmitting STA includes an A-Control subfield that contains a Control subfield with Control ID subfield equal to 15 and Control Information subfield equal to all 1s and whose content can be ignored by the HE recipient STA.

If the HT Control field is present in an MPDU aggregated in an A-MPDU, then all MPDUs of the same frame type (i.e., having the same value for the Type subfield of the Frame Control field) aggregated in the same A-MPDU shall contain an HT Control field. The HT Control field of all MPDUs containing the HT Control field aggregated in the same A-MPDU shall be set to the same value.

An HE STA that transmits a frame containing an A-Control subfield shall include at least one Control subfield in the A-Control subfield and the Control subfields included shall be supported by the receiving STAs unless the Control ID subfield is 15.

An HE STA that receives a Control subfield in an A-Control subfield with a Control ID subfield value that is not recognized or not supported by the HE STA shall ignore the Control subfield and the remainder of the A-Control subfield. If more than one Control subfield is present in an A-Control subfield, the Control subfields shall not have the same Control ID value.

An HE STA that receives a Control subfield with Control ID subfield equal to 15 shall ignore the remainder of the A-Control subfield.

If the HT variant HT Control field is present in an MPDU, the DEI subfield provides information on the drop eligibility of the contents of the received MPDU. When there are insufficient resources in a STA, the STA arbitrarily discards frames in order to recover from the lack of resources. With the information from the DEI subfield, a STA may selectively drop frames with the DEI subfield set to 1 in preference to frames with the DEI subfield set to 0, if resources are insufficient. Note that this might not help in the recovery in all conditions, and the STA might still have to fall back to the arbitrary discard strategy. The mechanisms for determining whether resources are insufficient or when to discard MSDUs or A-MSDUs are beyond the scope of this standard.

If the value of dot11S1GControlFieldOptionImplemented is true, an S1G STA shall set the +HTC-VHT Capable subfield of the S1G Capabilities Information field of the S1G Capabilities element that it transmits to 1.

An S1G shall not use an HT Control field other than a VHT variant HT Control field. An S1G STA shall not use a VHT variant HT Control field for any purpose other than link adaptation (see 10.32.3 (Link adaptation using the VHT variant HT Control field)).

10.9 Control Wrapper operation

Change as follows:

A STA supporting the HT Control field that receives a Control Wrapper frame shall process it as though it received a frame of the subtype of the wrapped frame. An HE STA shall not send a Control Wrapper frame to another HE STA.

10.11 A-MSDU operation

Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:

If the A-MSDU Fragmentation Support subfield in the MAC Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the recipient STA is 0, then an A-MSDU shall be carried, without fragmentation, within a single QoS Data frame. If the A-MSDU Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the recipient STA is 1, then an A-MSDU may be fragmented and each fragment sent to the recipient in a QoS Data frame.

Change the 5th paragraph as follows:

1 The channel access rules for a QoS Data frame carrying an A-MSDU (or a fragment thereof) are the same as
 2 a Data frame carrying an MSDU (or fragment thereof) of the same TID.
 3

4 ***Change the 16th paragraph as follows:***
 5

6 A STA shall support the reception of an A-MSDU, where the A-MSDU is carried in a QoS Data frame with
 7 Normal Ack ack policy in the following cases:
 8

- 9 — By an HT STA when-if the A-MSDU is not aggregated within an A-MPDU
- 10 — By a VHT or HE STA when-if the A-MSDU is sent as an S-MPDU
- 11 — For a CMMG STA if the A-MSDU is not aggregated within an A-MPDU

12 ***Insert the following after the 17th paragraph:***
 13

14 An HE STA shall not transmit an A-MSDU that is carried in a QoS Data frame for which no block ack
 15 agreement exists and that is part of an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU unless the recipient indicates sup-
 16 port for the reception of A-MSDU in an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU by setting the A-MSDU Not
 17 Under BA In Ack-Enabled A-MPDU Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the
 18 HE Capabilities element to 1.

19 ***Change the 20th paragraph as follows:***
 20

21 The length of an A-MSDU transmitted in a VHT PPDU or HE PPDU is limited by the maximum MPDU
 22 size supported by the recipient STA (see 10.12.5 (Transport of A-MPDU by the PHY data service)).
 23

24 NOTE 1—An A-MSDU that meets the A-MSDU length limit for transmission in a VHT PPDU or HE PPDU might
 25 exceed the A-MSDU length limit for an HT PPDU, in which case it cannot be retransmitted in an HT PPDU.
 26

27 NOTE 2—Support for A-MSDU aggregation does not affect the maximum size of MSDU transported by the MA-
 28 UNITDATA primitives.
 29

30 **10.12 A-MPDU operation**
 31

32 **10.12.1 A-MPDU contents**
 33

34 ***Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:***
 35

36 When If an A-MPDU contains multiple QoS Control fields, then bits 4 of all the QoS Control fields shall
 37 have the same value and bits 8–15 of these QoS Control fields that have the same TID shall be identical have
 38 the same value.
 39

40 **10.12.2 A-MPDU length limit rules**
 41

42 ***Change as follows:***
 43

44 A STA indicates in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its HT Capabilities element the maxi-
 45 mum A-MPDU length that it can receive in an HT PPDU. A STA indicates in the Maximum A-MPDU Length
 46 Exponent field in its VHT Capabilities element the maximum length of the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding that it
 47 can receive in a VHT PPDU. A STA indicates in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its S1G
 48 Capabilities element the maximum length of the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding that it can receive in an S1G
 49 PPDU. A STA indicates in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its DMG Capabilities element
 50 the maximum A-MPDU length that it can receive. A STA indicates the maximum length of the A-MPDU pre-
51 EOF padding that it can receive in an HE PPDU in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its HT
52 Capabilities, VHT Capabilities, and HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities elements (if present) and the Maximum A-
53 MPDU Length Exponent Extension field in its HE Capabilities element.
 54

1 A VHT STA that sets the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its VHT Capabilities element to a
 2 value in the range 0 to 3 shall set the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent in its HT Capabilities to the same
 3 value. A VHT STA that sets the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in the VHT Capabilities element
 4 to a value larger than 3 shall set the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent in its HT Capabilities element to 3.
 5

6
 7 Using the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent fields in the HT Capabilities, ~~and~~ VHT Capabilities, HE
 8 Capabilities and HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities elements (if present), the STA establishes at association the max-
 9 imum length of an A-MPDU pre-EOF padding that can be sent to it. An HT STA shall be capable of receiving
 10 A-MPDUs of length up to the value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its HT
 11 Capabilities element. A VHT STA shall be capable of receiving A-MPDUs where the A-MPDU pre-EOF pad-
 12 ding length is up to the value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its VHT Capabil-
 13 ities element. An S1G STA that sets the A-MPDU Supported subfield in the S1G Capabilities element to 1
 14 shall be capable of receiving A-MPDUs where the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding length is up to the value indi-
 15 cated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its S1G Capabilities element.
 16

17
 18 An HE STA shall be capable of receiving A-MPDUs where the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding length is up to the
value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in its HT Capabilities and VHT Capabilities
elements, and the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension field in its HE Capabilities element in the
2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands. An HE STA shall be capable of receiving A-MPDUs where the A-MPDU pre-EOF
padding length is up to the value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension field in the
HE Capabilities element and the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities
element in the 6 GHz band.
 19

20
 21 A STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU in an HT PPDU that is longer than the value indicated by the Maximum
 22 A-MPDU Length Exponent field in the HT Capabilities element received from the intended receiver. MPDUs
 23 in an A-MPDU carried in an HT PPDU shall be limited to a maximum length of 4095 octets. A STA shall not
 24 transmit an A-MPDU in a VHT PPDU where the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding length is longer than the value
 25 indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in the VHT Capabilities element received from
 26 the intended receiver. An S1G STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU in an S1G PPDU where the AMPDU pre-
 27 EOF padding length field is longer than the value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field
 28 in the S1G Capabilities element received from the intended receiver. A STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU in
 29 a DMG PPDU that is longer than the value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in the
 30 DMG Capabilities element received from the intended receiver.
 31

32
 33 A STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU in an HE PPDU where the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding length is greater
than the value indicated by the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent field in the HT Capabilities and VHT
Capabilities elements, and the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension field in its HE Capabilities
elements received from the intended receiver in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz bands. A STA shall not transmit an A-
MPDU in an HE PPDU where the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding length is greater than the value indicated by the
Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension field in the HE Capabilities element and the Maximum A-
MPDU Length Exponent field in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element received from the intended receiver
in the 6 GHz band.
 34

35
 36 An S1G STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU, except for an S-MPDU, to an S1G STA from which it received a
 37 frame containing an S1G Capability element with the A-MPDU Supported subfield equal to 0.
 38

39
 40 ***Change the title and content of 10.13.3 as follows:***
 41

52 **10.12.3 Minimum MPDU ~~S~~start ~~S~~spacing field rules**

53
 54 If the intended receiver is a non-HE STA, a STA shall not start the transmission of more than one MPDU
 55 within the time limit described in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing field declared by the intended receiver. If
 56 the intended receiver is an HE STA, an HE STA shall not start the transmission of more than one QoS Data
 57 frame, QoS Null frame or Management frame within the time limit described in the Minimum MPDU Start
 58

1 Spacing field declared by the intended receiver. To satisfy this requirement, the number of octets between the
 2 start of two consecutive MPDUs in an A-MPDU, N , measured at the PHY SAP, shall be equal to or greater
 3 than meet the condition defined by Equation (10-9).

$$6 \quad t_{MMSS} \times r/8 \\ 7 \\ 8$$

$$9 \quad N \geq \begin{cases} t_{MMSS} \times r/8, & \text{if the A-MPDU is not carried in an HE TB PPDU} \\ 10 \quad t_{MMSS} \times 2^{MMSF} \times r/8, & \text{if the A-MPDU is carried in an HE TB PPDU} \end{cases} \\ 11 \\ 12 \quad (10-9)$$

14 where

17 t_{MMSS} is the time (in microseconds) defined in the “Encoding” column of Table 9-185 (Subfields of
 18 the A-MPDU Parameters field) for an HT STA, of Table 9-301 (Subfields of the S1G Capabil-
 19 ities Information field) for an S1G STA for the value of the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing
 20 field and of Table 9-251 (Subfields of the A-MPDU Parameters subfield) for a DMG STA for
 21 the value of the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing field

23 MMSF is the value of the MPDU MU Spacing Factor subfield of the User Info field addressed to the
 24 HE STA in the Trigger frame soliciting the HE TB PPDU (see 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame for-
 25 mat))

27 r is the value of the PHY Data Rate (in megabits per second) defined in 19.5 (Parameters for
 28 HT-MCSs) for HT PPDUs, in 21.5 (Parameters for VHT-MCSs) for VHT PPDUs, in 23.5
 29 (Parameters for S1G-MCSs) for S1G PPDUs, and in Clause 20 (Directional multi-gigabit
 30 (DMG) PHY specification) for a DMG STA

33 If necessary, in order to satisfy this requirement, a STA shall add padding between MPDUs in an A-MPDU.
 34 Any such padding shall be in the form of one or more MPDU delimiters with the MPDU Length field set to 0.

37 QoS Null frames transmitted by DMG STAs are not subject to this spacing, i.e., no MPDU delimiters with zero
 38 length need to be inserted after the MPDU immediately preceding the QoS Null frame in an A-MPDU.

40 10.12.4 A-MPDU aggregation of group addressed Data frames

43 *Change the second note following the first paragraph as follows:*

46 A STA that is neither an AP nor a mesh STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU containing an MPDU with an
 47 RA that is a group address.

49 NOTE 1—An HT AP and an HT mesh STA can transmit an A-MPDU containing MPDUs with an RA that is a group
 50 address.

52 NOTE 2—As a VHT STA and an HE STA is an HT STA, NOTE 1 also applies to VHT APs, and VHT mesh STAs, HE
 53 APs, and HE mesh STAs.

56 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*

58 When a STA transmits a PPDU containing at least one A MPDU that contains MPDUs with an RA that is a group
 59 address, the following shall apply:

- 61 — If the PPDU is an HT PPDU transmitted by an AP, the maximum A-MPDU length exponent value is
 62 the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the A-MPDU Parame-
 63 ters field of the HT Capabilities elements across of all HT STAs associated with the transmitting AP
 64 or across all peer HT mesh STAs.

- If the PPDU is an HT PPDU transmitted by a mesh STA, the maximum A-MPDU length exponent value is the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the A-MPDU Parameters field of the HT Capabilities element of all peer HT mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is a VHT PPDU, the value of maximum A-MPDU length exponent value that applies is the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfields of the A-MPDU Parameters fields of the VHT Capabilities elements across all VHT STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer VHT mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is an HE PPDU sent in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band, the maximum A-MPDU length exponent value is the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the VHT Capabilities elements across all HE STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer HE mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is an HE PPDU sent in the 6 GHz band, the maximum A-MPDU length exponent value is the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities elements across all HE STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer HE mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is a VHT PPDU, the value of minimum MPDU start spacing value that applies is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfields of the A-MPDU Parameters fields of the HT Capabilities elements across all VHT STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer VHT mesh STAs of the transmitting mesh STA.
- If the PPDU is an HT PPDU transmitted by an AP, the minimum MPDU start spacing value that applies is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfield of the A-MPDU Parameters field of the HT Capabilities element across of all HT STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer HT mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is an HT PPDU transmitted by a mesh STA, the minimum MPDU start spacing value that applies is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfield of the A-MPDU Parameters field of the HT Capabilities element of all peer HT mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is an HE PPDU sent in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band, the minimum MPDU start spacing value is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfield of the A-MPDU Parameters field of the HT Capabilities element across all HE STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer HE mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is an HE PPDU sent in the 6 GHz band, the minimum MPDU start spacing value is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfield of the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities elements across all HE STAs associated with the transmitting AP or across all peer HE mesh STAs.
- If the PPDU is a DMG PPDU, the maximum A-MPDU length exponent value that applies is the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the A-MPDU Parameters field of the DMG Capabilities element of all DMG STAs associated with the AP or PCP.
- If the PPDU is a DMG PPDU, the minimum MPDU start spacing value that applies is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfield of the A-MPDU Parameters field of the DMG Capabilities element of all DMG STAs associated with the AP or PCP.
- If the PPDU is an S1G PPDU, the value of maximum A-MPDU length exponent value that applies is the minimum value in the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfields of the S1G Capabilities Information field of the S1G Capabilities elements across all S1G STAs associated with the transmitting AP.
- If the PPDU is an S1G PPDU, the value of minimum MPDU start spacing value that applies is the maximum value in the Minimum MPDU Start Spacing subfields of the S1G Capabilities Information field of the S1G Capabilities elements across all S1G STAs associated with the transmitting AP.

65 Change the title of 10.13.6 as follows:

1 **10.12.6 A-MPDU padding for VHT,HE or S1G PPDU**

2 *Change the second to last paragraph as follows:*

3 An A-MPDU subframe with EOF set to 0 shall not be added after any A-MPDU subframe with EOF set to 1,
 4 except if the A-MPDU subframe is in an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU or ack-enabled multi-TID A-
 5 MPDU (see 9.7.3 (A-MPDU contents)).

6 **10.13 PPDU duration constraint**

7 *Insert the following at the end of 10.14:*

8 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE PPDU that has a duration (as determined by the PHY-TXTIME.confirm
 9 primitive defined in 6.5.6 (PLME-TXTIME.confirm) that is greater than *aPPDUMaxTime* defined in
 10 Table 27-55 (HE PHY characteristics).

11 **10.15 LDPC operation**

12 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

13 An HE STA shall not transmit a frame in an HE PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter FEC_CODING set
 14 to LDPC_CODING unless frame is addressed to an HE STA for which the LDPC Coding In Payload sub-
 15 field of the HE Capabilities element received from that STA contained a value of 1 and dot11HELDPC-
 16 CodingInPayloadImplemented is true.

17 **10.23 HCF**

18 **10.23.1 General**

19 *Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:*

20 HCCA is not used by ~~either~~ DMG, ~~or~~ S1G and HE STAs.

21 **10.23.2 HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)**

22 **10.23.2.2 EDCA backoff procedure**

23 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

24 For the purposes of this subclause, transmission failure of an MPDU is defined as follows:

- 25 — After transmitting an MPDU (even if it is carried in an A-MPDU or as part of a VHT or S1G MU
 26 PPDU or as part of an HE MU PPDU that is sent using TXVECTOR parameter NUM_USERS > 1)
 27 that requires an immediate response:
 - 28 • The STA shall wait for a timeout interval of duration aSIFSTime + aSlotTime + aRxPHYStart-
 29 Delay, starting when the MAC receives a PHY-TXEND.confirm primitive. If a PHY-
 30 RXSTART.indication primitive does not occur during the timeout interval, the transmission of
 31 the MPDU has failed.
 - 32 • If a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive does occur during the timeout interval, the STA shall
 33 wait for the corresponding PHY-RXEND.indication primitive to recognize a valid response
 34 MPDU (see Annex G) that either does not have a TA field or is sent by the recipient of the

1 MPDU requiring a response. If anything else, including any other valid frame, is recognized, the
 2 transmission of the MPDU has failed.
 3

- 4 — The nonfinal (re)transmission of an MPDU that is delivered using the GCR unsolicited retry retrans-
- 5 mission policy (10.23.2.12.2 (Unsolicited retry procedure)) is defined to be a failure.
- 6 — In all other cases, the transmission of the MPDU has not failed.

8 ***Change the 4th and 5th paragraph as follows:***

9 The backoff procedure shall be invoked by an EDCAF when-if any of the following events occurs:
 10

- 11 a) An MA-UNITDATA.request primitive is received that causes a frame with that AC to be queued for
 12 transmission such that one of the transmit queues associated with that AC has now become non-
 13 empty and any other transmit queues associated with that AC are empty; the medium is busy on the
 14 primary channel as indicated by any of the following:
 15 — physical CS;
 16 — virtual CS;
 17 — a nonzero TXNAV timer value;
 18 — a mesh STA that has dot11MCCAActivated true and a nonzero RAV timer value, and the
 19 backoff counter has a value of 0 for that AC.
- 20 b) The transmission of the MPDU in the final PPDU transmitted by the TXOP holder during the TXOP
 21 for that AC has completed and the TXNAV timer has expired, the PPDU does not solicit an HE TB
 22 PPDU, and the AC was a primary AC. (See 10.23.2.7).
- 23 c) The transmission of an MPDU in the initial PPDU of a TXOP fails, as defined in this subclause, the
 24 PPDU doesn't solicit HE TB PPDU, and the AC was a primary AC.
- 25 d) The transmission attempt collides internally with another EDCAF of an AC that has higher priority,
 26 that is, two or more EDCAFs in the same STA are granted a TXOP at the same time.
- 27 e) The transmission of at least one MPDU in the final PPDU transmitted by the TXOP holder during
 28 the TXOP for that AC has completed, the PPDU contains an MPDU that solicits an HE TB PPDU
 29 and the TXNAV timer has expired.
- 30 f) The transmission of all MPDUs in the initial PPDU of a TXOP fails, as defined in this subclause,
 31 and the PPDU contains an MPDU that solicits an HE TB PPDU.
- 32 g) If explicitly indicated, such as in 26.17.2.3.3 (Non-AP STA scanning behavior)

33 In addition, the backoff procedure may be invoked by an EDCAF when-if:

- 34 h) The transmission by the TXOP holder of an MPDU in a non-initial PPDU of a TXOP fails, as
 35 defined in this subclause, and an MPDU in the non-initial PPDU does not solicit an HE TB PPDU.
- 36 i) The transmission by the TXOP holder of all MPDUs in a non-initial PPDU of a TXOP fails, as
 37 defined in this subclause, and the PPDU contains an MPDU that solicits an HE TB PPDU.

38 ***Change the last two paragraphs as follows:***

39 If the backoff procedure is invoked for reason a) above, the value of CW[AC] shall be left unchanged. If the
 40 backoff procedure is invoked for reason b) and f) above, the value of CW[AC] shall be reset to CWmin[AC].
 41

42 If the backoff procedure is invoked for reason c), d), e), g), h) or f-i) above, the value of CW[AC] shall be
 43 updated as follows before invoking the backoff procedure:

- 44 — If the QSRC[AC] is less than dot11ShortRetryLimit,
 - 45 • QSRC[AC] shall be incremented by 1
 - 46 • CW[AC] shall be set to the lesser of CWmax[AC] and $2^{QSRC[AC]} \times (CWmin[AC] + 1) - 1$
- 47 — Else

- 1 • QSRC[AC] shall be set to 0
 2 • CW[AC] shall be set to CWmin[AC]
 3 — When dot11RobustAVStreamingImplemented is true and either the QSDRC[AC] or the
 4 QLDRC[AC] has reached dot11ShortDEIRetryLimit or dot11LongDEIRetryLimit, respectively,
 5 CW[AC] shall be reset to CWmin[AC].
 6
 7

8 **NOTE—An HE STA updates its local MIB variables related to CWmin and CWmax as defined in 26.2.7 (EDCA opera-**
 9 **tion using MU EDCA parameters).**

10 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

11 After transmission of an MPDU in an HE TB PPDU, an HE STA resumes the EDCA backoff procedure
 12 without modifying CW or the backoff counter for the associated EDCAF regardless of whether the STA has
 13 received the corresponding acknowledgment frame in response to the MPDU sent in the HE TB PPDU.
 14
 15

16 **10.23.2.4 Obtaining an EDCA TXOP**

17 *Change the last paragraph as follows:*

18 A STA shall save the TXOP holder address for the BSS in which it is associated, ~~which~~. The TXOP holder
 19 address is the MAC address from the Address 2 field of the frame that initiated a frame exchange sequence
 20 except ~~when_if~~ this is a CTS frame, in which case the TXOP holder address is the Address 1 field. If the
 21 TXOP holder address is obtained from a Control frame, a VHT STA or HE STA shall save the nonband-
 22 width signaling TA value obtained from the Address 2 field. If a non-VHT non-HE STA receives an RTS
 23 frame with the RA address matching the MAC address of the STA and the MAC address in the TA field in
 24 the RTS frame matches the saved TXOP holder address, then the STA shall send the CTS frame after SIFS,
 25 without regard for, and without resetting, its NAV. If a VHT STA or HE STA receives an RTS frame with
 26 the RA address matching the MAC address of the STA and the nonbandwidth signaling TA value obtained
 27 from the Address 2 field in the RTS frame matches the saved TXOP holder address, then the STA shall send
 28 the CTS frame after SIFS, without regard for, and without resetting, its NAV. When a STA receives a frame
 29 addressed to it that requires an immediate response, except for RTS and Trigger frames (see 26.5.2.5 (UL
 30 MU CS mechanism)), it shall transmit the response independent of its NAV. The saved TXOP holder
 31 address shall be cleared when the NAV is reset or when the NAV counts down to 0.
 32
 33

34 During an EDCA TXOP, the Address 2 field excluding the Individual/Group bit of all Control frames car-
 35 ried in a PPDU that is not an HE MU PPDU sent by an HE STA that is a TXOP holder shall be set to the
 36 same address value.

37 *Change the title of subclause 10.23.2.5 as follows:*

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

1 **10.23.2.5 EDCA channel access in a VHT, HE or TVHT BSS**

2
3 *Change Table 10-16 (Channels indicated idle by the channel-list parameter) as follows:*

4
5 **Table 10-16—Channels indicated idle by the channel-list parameter**

6 7 PHY-CCA.indication primitive channel-list element	8 Idle channels
9 10 primary	11 None
12 secondary	13 Primary 20 MHz channel
14 secondary40	15 Primary 20 MHz channel and secondary 20 MHz channel
16 secondary80	17 Primary 20 MHz channel, secondary 20 MHz channel, and secondary 40 MHz channel
18 19 <u>per20bitmap</u>	20 Each bit of the per20bitmap that is equal to 0 indicates an idle channel (see 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity))

21
22 *Insert the following after the 1st paragraph:*

23
24 If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is present, the channel-list parameter in a PHY-CCA.indication primitive may contain per20bitmap. Otherwise, the channel-list parameter in a PHY-CCA.indication primitive does not contain per20bitmap.

25
26 If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is present, the channel-list parameter in a PHY-CCA.indication primitive contains the following:

- 27 — primary if dot11HECCAIndicationMode is singleelement or per20bitmap
- 28 — secondary, secondary40, or secondary80 if dot11HECCAIndicationMode is singleelement
- 29 — per20bitmap if dot11HECCAIndicationMode is per20bitmap or per20bitmapsifs

30 An HE STA shall set dot11HECCAIndicationMode to singleelement except as follows:

- 31 — The STA shall set dot11HECCAIndicationMode to per20bitmap to obtain the CCA status (see 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity)) for each of the 20 MHz subchannels if the STA intends to transmit an HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing.
- 32 — The STA shall set dot11HECCAIndicationMode to 2 (per20bitmapsifs) to obtain the CCA status (see 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity)) for each of the 20 MHz subchannels during the SIFS that follows the reception of a Trigger frame addressed to the STA and that has the CS Required subfield equal to 1 (see 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism)).

33
34 *Change 4th paragraph as follows:*

35
36 If a STA is permitted to begin a TXOP (as defined in 10.23.2.4 (Obtaining an EDCA TXOP)) and the STA has at least one MSDU pending for transmission for the AC of the permitted TXOP, the STA shall perform exactly one of the following actions:

- 37 a) Transmit a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz mask PPDU if the secondary channel, the secondary 40 MHz channel, and the secondary 80 MHz channel were idle during an interval of PIFS immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.

- 1 b) Transmit an 80 MHz mask PPDU on the primary 80 MHz channel if both the secondary channel and
2 the secondary 40 MHz channel were idle during an interval of PIFS immediately preceding the start
3 of the TXOP.
- 4 c) Transmit a 40 MHz mask PPDU on the primary 40 MHz channel if the secondary channel was idle
5 during an interval of PIFS duration 1) DIFS if the PPDU is transmitted in the 2.4 GHz band or 2)
6 PIFS otherwise, immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.
- 7 d) Transmit a 20 MHz mask PPDU on the primary 20 MHz channel.
- 8 e) Restart the channel access attempt by invoking the backoff procedure as specified in 10.23.2 (HCF
9 contention based channel access (EDCA)) as though the medium is busy on the primary channel as
10 indicated by either physical or virtual CS and the backoff counter has a value of 0.
- 11 f) Transmit a TVHT_4W or TVHT_2W+2W mask PPDU if the secondary TVHT_W channel and the
12 secondary TVHT_2W channel were idle during an interval of PIFS immediately preceding the start
13 of the TXOP.
- 14 g) Transmit a TVHT_2W or TVHT_W+W mask PPDU if the secondary TVHT_W channel was idle
15 during an interval of PIFS immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.
- 16 h) Transmit a TVHT_W mask PPDU on the primary TVHT_W channel.
- 17 i) Transmit an HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing in 80 MHz where in the preamble only the
18 secondary 20 MHz is punctured if the secondary 40 MHz channel was idle during an interval of
19 PIFS immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.
- 20 j) Transmit an HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing in 80 MHz where in the preamble only one of
21 the two 20 MHz subchannels in the secondary 40 MHz is punctured if the secondary 20 MHz chan-
22 nel, and one of the two 20 MHz subchannels of the secondary 40 MHz were idle during an interval
23 of PIFS immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.
- 24 k) Transmit an HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing in 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz where in the pri-
25 mary 80 MHz of the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz is punctured if the secondary 40 MHz
26 channel, and at least one of the four 20 MHz subchannels in the secondary 80 MHz channel were
27 idle during an interval of PIFS immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.
- 28 l) Transmit an HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing in 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz where in the pri-
29 mary 80 MHz of the preamble only the primary 40 MHz is present if the secondary 20 MHz channel,
30 and at least one of the four 20 MHz subchannels in the secondary 80 MHz channel were idle during
31 an interval of PIFS immediately preceding the start of the TXOP.

42 NOTE 1—In the case of rule e), the STA selects a new random number using the current value of CW[AC], and the retry
43 counters are not updated (as described in 10.23.2.8 (Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP); backoff procedure
44 invoked for event a)).

46 NOTE 2—For both an HT, and a VHT STA, an EDCA TXOP is obtained. An HT, VHT or HE STA obtains an EDCA
47 TXOP based on activity on the primary channel (see 10.23.2.4 (Obtaining an EDCA TXOP)). The width of transmission
48 is determined by the CCA status of the nonprimary channels during the PIFS an interval of duration 1) DIFS if transmit-
49 tting in the 2.4 GHz band or 2) PIFS otherwise, before transmission (see VHT description in 10.3.2 (Procedures common
50 to the DCF and EDCAF)).

51 NOTE 3—In the case of rule j), there is only one idle 20 MHz subchannel in the secondary 40 MHz channel and the
52 other 20 MHz subchannel in the secondary 40 MHz is preamble punctured.

54 10.23.2.7 Sharing an EDCA TXOP

57 **Change paragraphs 1-3 as follows:**

59 The AC associated with the EDCAF that gains an EDCA TXOP is referred to as the primary AC. Frames
60 from ACs other than the primary AC shall not be included in the TXOP, with the following exceptions
61 (TXOP sharing):

- 64 — Frames from a higher priority AC may be included when at least one frame from the primary AC has
65 been transmitted and all frames from the primary AC have been transmitted and frames from the

1 AC(s) defined in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU) for HE
 2 PPDUs.

- 3
- 4 — When an AP supports ~~DL MU-MIMO MU PPDUs~~, frames from a higher or lower priority AC may
 5 be included in a VHT or S1G MU PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_USERS > 1 or an
 6 HE MU PPDU, when these frames do not increase the duration of the VHT or S1G beyond that
 7 required for the transmissions of the frames of the primary AC, targeting up to four STAs if it is
 8 transmitted in a VHT MU PPDU. In a non-HE MU PPDU, frames from the primary AC shall be
 9 transmitted first. The inclusion of secondary AC traffic in an HE MU PPDU is described in 10.23.2.8
 10 (Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP). The inclusion of secondary AC traffic in an HE
 11 MU PPDU shall not cause the TXOP limit of the primary AC to be exceeded.

12

13

14 When sharing, the TXOP limit that applies is the TXOP limit of the primary AC.

15

16

17 With respect to admission control (see 10.23.4.2 (Contention based admission control procedures)), all
 18 frames transmitted under TXOP sharing shall be treated as if they were from the primary AC.

19

20 NOTE—An AP can protect an immediate response by preceding the VHT or SIG or the HE MU PPDU (which might
 21 have TXVECTOR parameter NUM_USERS > 1) with an RTS/CTS or MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange or a
 22 CTS-to-self transmission.

23 **10.23.2.8 Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP**

24

25 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

26

27 A frame exchange, in the context of multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP, may be one of the following:

- 28 — A frame not requiring immediate acknowledgment (such as a group addressed frame or a frame
 29 transmitted with an ack policy that does not require immediate acknowledgment) or an A-MPDU
 30 containing only such frames
- 31 — A frame requiring immediate acknowledgment (such as an individually addressed frame transmitted
 32 with an ack policy that requires immediate acknowledgment) or an A-MPDU containing at least one
 33 such frame, followed after SIFS by a corresponding acknowledgment frame
- 34 — A triggering frame or an A-MPDU containing at least one such frame, followed after SIFS by an HE
 35 TB PPDU where the HE TB PPDU is optionally followed after SIFS by an acknowledgment
- 36 — Either
 - 37 — a VHT NDP Announcement frame followed after SIFS by a VHT NDP followed after SIFS by a
 38 PPDU containing one or more VHT Compressed Beamforming frames, or
 - 39 — a Beamforming Report Poll frame followed after SIFS by a PPDU containing one or more VHT
 40 Compressed Beamforming frames
 - 41 — an HE NDP Announcement frame followed after SIFS by an HE sounding NDP followed after
 42 SIFS by a PPDU containing one or more HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frames, or
 - 43 — a broadcast HE NDP Announcement frame followed after SIFS by an HE sounding NDP
 44 followed after SIFS by a BFRP Trigger frame followed by HE TB PPDUs, or
 - 45 — a BFRP Trigger frame followed after SIFS by an HE TB PPDU containing one or more HE
 46 Compressed Beamforming/CQI frames

47

48 *Change the paragraphs 7-9 as follows:*

49

50 If a TXOP is protected by an RTS or CTS frame carried in a non-HT or a non-HT duplicate PPDU, the
 51 TXOP holder shall set the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of a PPDU as follows:

- 52 — To be the same or narrower than the RXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT of
 53 the last received CTS frame in the same TXOP, if the RTS frame with a bandwidth signaling TA and

1 TXVECTOR parameter DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT set to Dynamic has been sent by the
 2 TXOP holder in the last RTS/CTS exchange.
 3

- 4 — Otherwise, to be the same or narrower than the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the
 5 RTS frame that has been sent by the TXOP holder in the last RTS/CTS exchange in the same TXOP.
 6

7 If a TXOP is protected by an MU-RTS Trigger frame or CTS frame carried in a non-HT or a non-HT duplicate
 8 PPDU, the TXOP holder shall set the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of a PPDU as follows:
 9

- 10 — To be the same or narrower than the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the MU-RTS
 11 Trigger frame that has been sent by the TXOP holder in the last MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame
 12 exchange in the same TXOP, if the RU Allocation subfields of the MU-RTS Trigger frame for all
 13 intended receivers are equal to a value that corresponds to the channel bandwidth that is indicated in
 14 the UL BW subfield in the Common Info field of the MU-RTS Trigger frame.
- 15 — Otherwise, to be the same or narrower than the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the
 16 preceding PPDU that it has transmitted in the same TXOP.

17 If there is no RTS/CTS or MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange in non-HT duplicate format in a TXOP,
 18 and the TXOP includes at least one non-HT duplicate frame exchange that does not include a PS-Poll, then
 19 the TXOP holder shall set the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter in TXVECTOR of a PPDU sent after the first
 20 non-HT duplicate frame that is not a PS-Poll to be the same or narrower than the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter
 21 in TXVECTOR of the initial frame in the first non-HT duplicate frame exchange in the same TXOP.
 22

23 If there is no non-HT duplicate frame exchange in a TXOP, the TXOP holder shall set the TXVECTOR
 24 parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of a non-initial PPDU to be the same or narrower than the TXVECTOR
 25 parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the preceding PPDU that it has transmitted in the same TXOP, subject to
 26 the following constraints:
 27

- 28 — If the preceding PPDU is a DL HE MU PPDU with preamble puncture, the TXOP holder shall set
 29 the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the non-initial PPDU to a value whose corre-
 30 sponding 20 MHz channels are within a set of 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields of
 31 the preceding PPDU are located.
- 32 — If the non-initial PPDU is a DL HE MU PPDU with preamble puncture, the TXOP holder shall set
 33 the TXVECTOR parameter RU_ALLOCATION of the non-initial PPDU to a value whose corre-
 34 sponding RU is within a set of 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields of the preceding
 35 PPDU are located.

45 10.23.2.9 TXOP limits

46 *Change as follows:*

47 The duration of a TXOP is the time a STA obtaining a TXOP (the TXOP holder) maintains uninterrupted
 48 control of the medium, and it includes the time required to transmit frames sent as an immediate response to TXOP
 49 holder transmissions. The TXOP holder shall, subject to the exceptions below, ensure that the duration of a
 50 TXOP does not exceed the TXOP limit, when nonzero.
 51

52 The TXOP limits are advertised by the AP in the EDCA Parameter Set element in Beacon and Probe Response
 53 frames transmitted by the AP.
 54

55 A TXOP limit of 0 indicates that the TXOP holder may transmit or cause to be transmitted (as responses) the
 56 following within the current TXOP:
 57

- 58 a) One of the following at any rate, subject to the rules in 10.6 (Multirate support)
- 59 1) One or more SU PPDUs carrying fragments of a single MSDU or MMPDU

- 1 2) An SU PPDU or a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU or an HE TB PPDU carrying a single
2 MSDU, a single MMPDU, a single A-MSDU, or a single A-MPDU
- 3 3) A VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU carrying A-MPDUs to different users (a single A-
4 MPDU to each user)
- 5 4) A QoS Null frame or PS-Poll frame that is not an PS-Poll+BDT frame
- 6 5) A Basic Trigger frame, BSRP Trigger frame or BQRP Trigger frame
- 7 6) An HE TB PPDU carrying A-MPDUs from different users (a single A-MPDU from each user)
- 8 b) Any required acknowledgments
- 9 c) Any frames required for protection, including one of the following:
 - 10 1) An RTS/CTS or MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange
 - 11 2) CTS to itself
 - 12 3) Dual CTS as specified in 10.3.2.10 (Dual CTS protection)
- 13 d) Any frames required for beamforming as specified in 10.32 (Sounding PPDUs), 10.37.5 (VHT
14 sounding protocol), 26.7 (HE sounding protocol) and 10.43 (DMG beamforming).
- 15 e) Any frames required for link adaptation as specified in 10.33 (Link adaptation) and 27.13 (Link
16 adaptation using the HE variant HT Control field).
- 17 f) Any number of BlockAckReq, MU-BAR Trigger or Multi-TID BlockAckReq or GCR MU-BAR
18 Trigger frames

27 NOTE 1—This is a rule for the TXOP holder. A TXOP responder need not be aware of the TXOP limit nor of when the
28 TXOP was started.

29 NOTE 2—This rule prevents the use of RD, BDT, and TXOP sharing when the TXOP limit is 0.

30 When dot11OCBActivated is true, TXOP limits shall be 0 for each AC.

31 The TXOP holder may exceed the TXOP limit only if it does not transmit more than one Data or Management
32 frame in the TXOP, only if it does not transmit a DL-MU-MIMO PPDU in the TXOP, and only for the
33 following situations:

- 34 — Retransmission of an MPDU, not in an A-MPDU consisting of more than one MPDU, where the size
35 of the retransmitted MPDU is the same as the initially transmitted MPDU
- 36 — Transmission of an MSDU or MMPDU less than 600 octets by an S1G non-sensor STA
- 37 — Transmission of a fragment of an MSDU or MMPDU, the fragment being less than 256 octets, by an
38 S1G non-sensor STA
- 39 — Initial transmission of an MSDU under a block ack agreement, where the MSDU is not in an A-
40 MPDU consisting of more than one MPDU and the MSDU is not in an A-MSDU
- 41 — Transmission of a Control frame or a QoS Null frame, not in an A-MPDU consisting of more than
42 one MPDU
- 43 — Initial transmission of a non-dynamic fragment of an MSDU or MMPDU (see 10.4 (MSDU, A-
44 MSDU, and MMPDU fragmentation)), if a previous fragment of that MSDU or MMPDU was
45 retransmitted
- 46 — Transmission of a non-dynamic fragment of an MSDU or MMPDU fragmented into 16 fragments
- 47 — Transmission of the 16th dynamic fragment of an MSDU or MMPDU
- 48 — Initial transmission of the first dynamic fragment of an MSDU or MMPDU, where the size of the
49 first fragment is equal to the minimum fragment size specified by the receiver STA and the MSDU
50 or MMPDU is not in an A-MPDU consisting of more than one MPDU
- 51 — Transmission of an A-MPDU consisting of the initial transmission of a single MPDU not containing
52 an MSDU and that is not an individually addressed Management frame
- 53 — Transmission of a group addressed MPDU, not in an A-MPDU consisting of more than one MPDU

- Transmission of a null data PPDU (NDP)
- Transmission of a VHT NDP Announcement frame and NDP or transmission of a Beamforming Report Poll frame, where these fit within the TXOP limit and it is only the response and the immediately preceding SIFS that cause the TXOP limit to be exceeded.
- Transmission of one of the following sequences, provided that the sequence fits within the TXOP limit and it is only the response and the immediately preceding SIFS that causes the TXOP limit to be exceeded:
 - An HE NDP Announcement frame and HE sounding NDP
 - An HE NDP Announcement frame and HE sounding NDP and BFRP Trigger frame
 - A BFRP Trigger frame

Except as described above, a STA shall fragment an individually addressed MSDU or MMPDU so that the initial transmission of the first fragment does not cause the TXOP limit to be exceeded.

NOTE—The TXOP limit is not exceeded for the following situations:

- Initial transmission of an MPDU containing an unfragmented though fragmentable (see 10.2.7 and 26.3 (Frag-mentation and defragmentation)) MSDU/MMPDU
- Initial transmission of the first fragment of a fragmented MSDU/MMPDU, except ~~for an if the~~ MSDU/MMPDU is fragmented into 16 fragments
- Initial transmission of an A-MSDU
- Initial transmission of a non-dynamic fragment of a fragmented MSDU/MMPDU, if no previous fragment of that MSDU/ MMPDU was retransmitted, except ~~for an if the~~ MSDU/MMPDU is fragmented into 16 fragments
- Initial transmission of a dynamic fragment of a fragmented MSDU/MMPDU, except for, either the first dynamic fragment of a fragmented MSDU/MMPDU using the minimum fragment size specified by the receiver STA, or the 16th dynamic fragment of a fragmented MSDU/MMPDU
- Transmission of an A-MPDU consisting of a single MPDU containing an A MSDU or individually addressed Management frame, unless this is a retransmission of that MPDU
- Transmission of an A-MPDU consisting of more than one MPDU, even if some or all of the MPDUs are retransmissions
- Transmission of a Trigger frame, other than a BFRP Trigger frame, where either the Trigger frame or its response does not fit within the TXOP limit

If the TXOP holder exceeds the TXOP limit, it should use as high a PHY rate as possible to minimize the duration of the TXOP.

The duration of a TXOP for a mesh STA that has dot11MCCAActivated true shall not exceed the time between the start of the TXOP and the end of the current MCCAOP reservation.

NOTE—The rules in this subclause also apply to priority-downgraded MSDUs and A-MSDUs (see 10.23.4.2 (Contention based admission control procedures)).

If the Duration field in a frame carried in an HE TB PPDU is set to 0, the HE TB PPDU shall not include any frames that solicit a control response frame from the AP.

10.23.2.10 Truncation of TXOP

Change the 7th paragraph as follows:

In a non-DMG BSS, a non-S1G non-HE STA shall interpret the reception of a CF-End frame as a NAV reset, i.e., it resets its NAV to 0 at the end of the PPDU containing this frame. After receiving a CF-End frame with a matching BSSID(TA) without comparing Individual/Group bit, an AP may respond by transmitting a CF-End frame after SIFS. An HE STA interprets the reception of a CF-End frame as defined in 26.2.5 (Truncation of TXOP).

1 *Change the 10th paragraph as follows:*

2

3 Non-DMG non-SIG non-HE STAs that are not SIG STAs that receive a CF-End frame reset their NAV and
 4 can start contending for the medium without further delay. An HE STA that receive a CF-End frame may
 5 start contending for the medium without further delay as defined in 26.2.5 (Truncation of TXOP). A DMG
 6 STA that receives a CF-End frame can start contending for the medium at the end of the time interval equal
 7 to the value in Duration/ID field of the frame if none of its NAVs has a nonzero value (10.40.10 (Updating
 8 multiple NAVs)).
 9

10 **10.23.2.11 Termination of TXOP**

11

12 *Insert the following row at the end of Table 10-18 (Modulation classes eligible for TXOP termination) as*
 13 *follows:*

14

15 **Table 10-18—Modulation classes eligible for TXOP termination**

16

Modulation classes eligible for TXOP termination (see Table 10-9)
HE

17 *Change Table 10-19 (Rate and modulation class of a final transmission in a TXOP) as follows:*

18

19 **Table 10-19—Rate and modulation class of a final transmission in a TXOP**

20

Modulation class and data rate of immediately preceding frame in TXOP	Rate and modulation class of final transmission
DSSS or HR/DSSS with long preamble, data rate > 1 Mb/s	1 Mb/s DSSS
HR/DSSS with short preamble, data rate > 2 Mb/s	2 Mb/s HR/DSSS short preamble
<u>HE, any data rate.</u>	<u>6 Mb/s OFDM</u>
Other eligible modulation classes, data rate > 6 Mb/s except 6 Mb/s OFDM	6 Mb/s OFDM

21 **10.23.2.12 Retransmit procedures**

22

23 **10.23.2.12.1 General**

24

25 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

26

27 If an HE STA transmits an HE TB PPDU, the QSRC[AC] and QLRC[AC] for the associated EDCAF are
 28 not changed.
 29

30 **10.25 Block acknowledgment (block ack)**

31

32 **10.25.2 Setup and modification of the block ack parameters**

33

34 *Change the 11th paragraph as follows:*

35

When a block ack agreement is established between two HT STAs, DMG STAs, or two S1G STAs, the originator may change the size of its transmission window if the value in the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Response frame is larger than the value in the ADDBA Request frame. ~~If the value in the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Response frame is smaller than the value in the ADDBA Request frame, the originator shall change the size of its transmission window (WinSizeO) so that it is not greater than the value in the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Response frame and is not greater than the value 64. If the value in the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Response frame is smaller than the value in the ADDBA Request frame, the originator shall change the size of its transmission window (WinSizeO) so that it meets the following conditions:~~

- ~~— Not greater than the value in the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Response frame~~
- ~~— Not greater than 64 if the sender of the ADDBA Response frame is a non-HE STA~~
- ~~— Not greater than 256 if the sender of the ADDBA Response frame is an HE STA~~

10.25.5 Selection of BlockAck and BlockAckReq variants

Replace the content of this subclause with the following:

The Basic BlockAck and Basic BlockAckReq variants shall be used for all BlockAck and BlockAckReq frames sent where a block ack agreements exists but the agreement is not an HT-immediate agreement and shall not be used otherwise.

The Multi-TID BlockAck variant shall be used for all BlockAck frames related to an HT-immediate agreement transmitted inside a PSMP sequence and shall not be used otherwise. For non-HE STAs, the Multi-TID BlockAckReq variant shall be used for all BlockAckReq frames related to an HT-immediate agreement transmitted inside a PSMP sequence and shall not be used otherwise. The Multi-TID BlockAckReq variant can be used between HE STAs to solicit a Multi-STA BlockAck frame for Multi-TID A-MPDUs.

In a DMG BSS, if the Compressed BlockAckReq variant is used related to an HT-immediate agreement, then all of the following BlockAck and BlockAckReq frames transmitted as part of the HT-immediate agreement shall use the Compressed BlockAck and Compressed BlockAckReq variants.

In a DMG BSS, if the Extended Compressed BlockAckReq variant is used related to an HT-immediate agreement, then all of the following BlockAck and BlockAckReq frames transmitted as part of the HT-immediate agreement shall use the Extended Compressed BlockAck and Extended Compressed BlockAckReq variants.

Where the terms BlockAck and BlockAckReq are used within 10.25.6 (HT-immediate block ack extensions) and 10.23.8, the appropriate variant according to this subclause (e.g., Compressed, Multi-TID) is referenced by the generic term. The BAR Type subfield of the BAR Control field shall be set to GCR in all BlockAck-Req frames where the block ack agreement is for a group address delivered using the GCR block ack retransmission policy. The BA Type subfield of the BA Control field shall be set to GCR in all BlockAck frames where the block ack agreement is for a group address delivered using the GCR block ack retransmission policy.

10.25.6 HT-immediate block ack extensions

10.25.6.1 Introduction to HT-immediate block ack extensions

Insert the following as the last paragraph in this subclause:

The parameter *BitmapLength* represents the maximum length, in bits, of the Block Ack Bitmap field in the Compressed BlockAck frame and Multi-STA BlockAck frame for a particular TID. For a non-HE STA, *BitmapLength* is 64. For an HE STA, *BitmapLength* is negotiated when the block ack agreement is established as defined in 26.4.3 (Negotiation of block ack bitmap lengths).

1 **10.25.6.3 Scoreboard context control during full-state operation**

2
3 *Change the first paragraph as follows (replace 64 with BitmapLength):*
4

5
6 For each HT-immediate block ack agreement that uses full-state operation, a recipient shall maintain a block
7 acknowledgment record. This record includes a bitmap, indexed by sequence number; a 12-bit unsigned
8 integer starting sequence number, $WinStart_R$, representing the lowest sequence number position in the bit-
9 map; a variable $WinEnd_R$; and the maximum transmission window size, $WinSize_R$, which is set to the smaller
10 of ~~64~~-BitmapLength and the value of the Buffer Size field of the associated ADDBA Response frame that
11 established the block ack agreement. $WinEnd_R$ is defined as the highest sequence number in the current
12 transmission window. A STA implementing full-state operation for an HT-immediate block ack agreement
13 shall maintain the block acknowledgment record for that agreement according to the following rules:
14

15
16 **10.25.6.5 Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or**
17 **S1G STA**
18

19 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*
20

21
22 When responding with a BlockAck frame to either a received BlockAckReq frame or a received A-MPDU
23 with Implicit BAR ack policy during either full-state operation or partial-state operation, any adjustment to the
24 value of $WinStart_R$ according to the procedures defined within 10.25.6.3 (Scoreboard context control during
25 full-state operation) and 10.25.6.4 (Scoreboard context control during partial-state operation) shall be per-
26 formed before the generation and transmission of the response BlockAck frame. The Starting Sequence Num-
27 ber subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield of the BlockAck frame shall be set to any
28 value in the range ($WinEnd_R - 63$ -BitmapLength + 1) to $WinStart_R$. The Starting Sequence Number subfield
29 stored in the Starting Sequence Control field of NDP BlockAck and BAT frames shall be set to $WinStart_R$.
30 The values in the recipient's record of status of MPDUs beginning with the MPDU for which the Sequence
31 Number subfield value is equal to $WinStart_R$ and ending with the MPDU for which the Sequence Number
32 subfield value is equal to $WinEnd_R$ shall be included in the bitmap of the BlockAck frame. The bitmap of
33 the NDP BlockAck frame is protected using the encoding procedure described in 10.58 (Bitmap protection
34 for NDP BlockAck frames).
35

36 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*
37

38
39 When responding with a BlockAck frame to either a received BlockAckReq frame or a received A-MPDU
40 with Ack Policy equal to Normal Ack (i.e., implicit block ack request) during either full-state or partial-state
41 operation, if the adjusted value of $WinEnd_R$ is less than the value of the starting sequence number of the Block-
42 Ack frame plus ~~63~~-BitmapLength - 1, within the bitmap of the BlockAck frame, the status of MPDUs with
43 sequence numbers that are greater than the adjusted value of $WinEnd_R$ shall be reported as unsuccessfully
44 received (i.e., the corresponding bit in the bitmap shall be set to 0).
45

46 **10.25.6.6 Receive reordering buffer control operation**
47

48 **10.25.6.6.1 General**
49

50 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*
51

52
53 $WinEnd_B$ is initialized to $WinStart_B + WinSize_B - 1$, where $WinSize_B$ is set to the smaller of ~~64~~-BitmapLength
54 and the value of the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Response frame that established the block ack agree-
55 ment.
56

57 **10.25.9 GCR and GLK-GCR block ack**
58

59 *Change the title of 10.25.9.1 as follows:*
60

1 **10.25.9.1 Introduction-General**
 2
 3
 4 *Insert as the last paragraph:*
 5
 6

7 An HE AP shall not send a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame to a non-AP HE STA if the most recently received
 8 Extended Capabilities element from the STA does not indicate support for Robust AV Streaming or
 9 Advanced GCR.
 10
 11
 12 **10.25.9.4 GCR block ack BlockAckReq and BlockAck frame exchanges**
 13
 14
 15 *Change paragraphs 2-3 as follows:*
 16
 17
 18 When If the retransmission policy for a group address is GCR Block Ack, an originator shall not transmit
 19 more than the GCR buffer size number of A-MSDUs with RA field set to the GCR concealment address and
 20 the DA field of the A-MSDU subframe set to the GCR group address before sending a BlockAckReq frame
 21 to one of the STAs that has a GCR block ack agreement for this group address. The RA field of the Block-
 22 AckReq frame shall be set to the MAC address of the destination STA. Upon reception of the BlockAck
 23 frame, an originator may send a BlockAckReq frame to another STA that has a block ack agreement for this
 24 group address, and this process may be repeated multiple times. If the originator has a GCR block ack agree-
 25 ment with one or more of the HE STAs for this group address, the originator may send a GCR MU-BAR
 26 Trigger frame to one or more of the HE STAs that are in the awake state. Upon reception of the BlockAck
 27 frame from one or more HE STAs, the originator may send a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame to one or more
 28 other HE STAs that have a GCR block ack agreement, and this process may be repeated multiple times.
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33

34 NOTE—If the originator sends a BlockAckReq frame to a STA with a MAC address that matches the SA in any of the
 35 A-MSDUs transmitted during the GCR TXOP, the Block Ack Bitmap subfield does not indicate the MSDUs sourced
 36 from this STA. This is because the STA will have discarded all group addressed MPDUs transmitted by the AP that have
 37 the source address equal to their MAC address (see 10.3.6 (Group addressed MPDU transfer procedure)).
 38
 39

40 When If a recipient receives a BlockAckReq frame with the GCR Group Address subfield equal to a GCR
 41 group address, the recipient shall transmit a BlockAck frame at a delay of SIFS after the BlockAckReq
 42 frame. The BlockAck frame acknowledges the STA's reception status of the block of group addressed
 43 frames requested by the BlockAckReq frame. If an HE STA receives a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame with
 44 the AID12 subfield set to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the HE STA, the HE STA shall include the BlockAck
 45 frame in the HE TB PPDU sent in response to the Trigger frame. The BlockAck frames acknowledge the HE
 46 STA's reception status of the block of group addressed frames requested by the GCR MU-BAR Trigger
 47 frame.
 48
 49
 50
 51

52
 53 *Insert the following paragraph and associated figure after the 4th paragraph:*
 54
 55
 56 Figure 10-37a (Example of a frame exchange with GCR MU-BAR Trigger frames) shows another example
 57 of a frame exchange when the GCR block ack retransmission policy is used. The HE AP sends several A-
 58 MSDUs using the GCR block ack retransmission policy. The HE AP then sends a GCR MU-BAR Trigger
 59 frame to group members 1 and 2 of the GCR group, waits for the BlockAck frames, and then sends a GCR
 60 MU-BAR Trigger frame to group members 3 and 4 and then waits for the BlockAck frames. The HE AP
 61 then sends a BlockAckReq frame to group member 5, which is a non-HE STA, and waits for the BlockAck
 62 frame. After receiving the BlockAck frames, the HE AP determines whether any A-MSDUs need to be
 63
 64
 65

retransmitted and sends additional A-MSDUs (some of which might be retransmissions of previous A-MSDUs) using the GCR block ack retransmission policy.

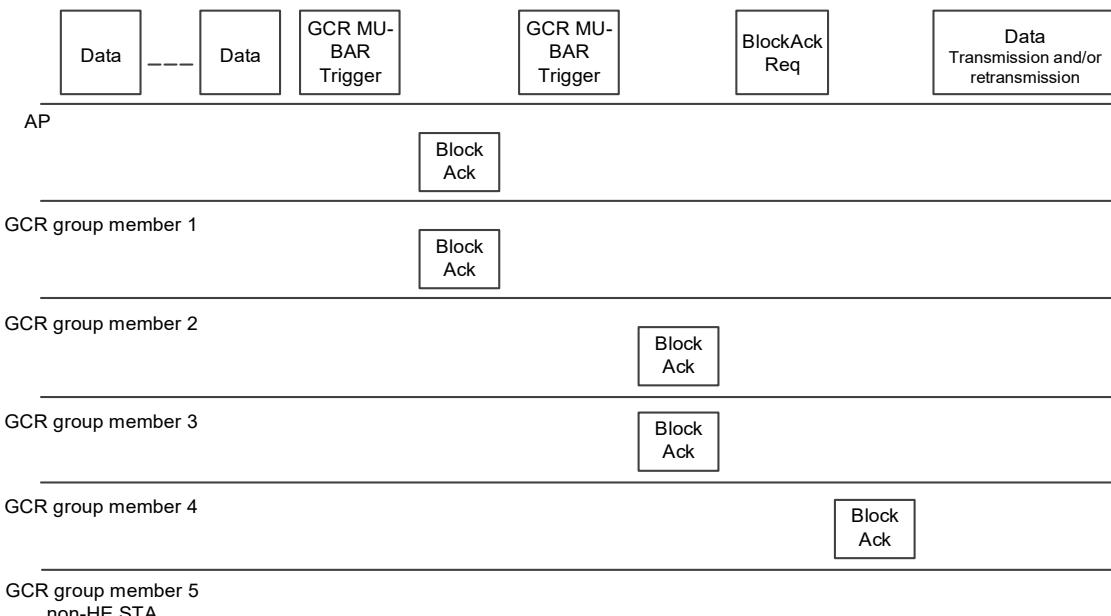


Figure 10-37a—Example of a frame exchange with GCR MU-BAR Trigger frames

Change paragraphs 6-8 as follows:

After completing the BlockAckReq or GCR MU-BAR Trigger and BlockAck frame exchanges, the originator determines from the information provided in the BlockAck bitmap and from the missing BlockAck frame—which, if any—the A-MSDUs, if any, that need to be retransmitted.

An originator adopting the GCR block ack retransmission policy for a GCR group address chooses a lifetime limit for the group address. The originator may vary the lifetime limit for the group address at any time and may use different lifetime limits for different GCR group addresses. The originator transmits and retries each A-MSDU until the appropriate lifetime limit is reached or until each one has been received by all group members to which a BlockAckReq frame or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame has been sent, whichever occurs first.

For GCR streams with retransmission policy equal to GCR Block Ack, an originator may regularly send a BlockAckReq frame with the GCR Group Address subfield in the BAR Information field set to the GCR group address and the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield set to the Sequence Number field of the earliest A-MSDU of the GCR stream that has not been acknowledged by all group members and has not expired due to lifetime limits, in order to minimize buffering latency at receivers in the GCR group. An originator may also send a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame with the AID12 fields set to 12 LSBs of the AIDs of HE STAs that transmit the BlockAck frames and the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control subfield set to the Sequence Number field of the earliest A-MSDU of the GCR stream that has not been acknowledged by all group members and has not expired due to lifetime limits, in order to minimize buffering latency at receivers in the GCR group.

NOTE—This is because an originator might transmit Management frames, QoS Data frames with a group address in the Address 1 field (including different GCR streams), and non-QoS Data frames intermingled. Since these are transmitted using a single sequence counter, missing frames or frames sent to group addresses absent from a receiving STA's dot11GroupAddresses table complicate receiver processing for GCR streams with a GCR block ack retransmission pol-

1 icy since the cause of a hole in a receiver's block ack bitmap is ambiguous: it is due either to an MPDU being lost from
 2 the GCR stream or to transmissions of MPDUs not related to the GCR service using the same sequence number counter.
 3

4 ***Change the last paragraph as follows:***
 5

6 If the beginning of such reception does not occur during the first slot time following a SIFS, then the originator
 7 may perform error recovery by retransmitting a BlockAckReq frame or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger
 8 frame PIFS after the previous BlockAckReq frame or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame if when both of the
 9 following conditions are met:
 10

- 11 — The carrier sense mechanism (see 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism)) indicates that the medium is idle at the
 12 TxPIFS slot boundary (see Figure 10-26 (EDCA mechanism timing relationships)) after the
 13 expected start of a BlockAck frame, and
 14
- 15 — The remaining duration of the GCR TXOP is longer than the total time required to retransmit the
 16 GCR BlockAckReq frame or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame plus one slot time.
 17

18 NOTE—If an originator fails to receive a BlockAck frame in response to a BlockAckReq frame and there is insufficient
 19 time to transmit a recovery frame, the AP retransmits the BlockAckReq frame in a new TXOP.
 20

21

22 **10.27 Protection mechanisms**

23

24 ***Change the title of 10.28.5 as follows:***

25 **10.27.5 Protection rules for VHT STAs and HE STAs**

26 ***Insert the following new paragraph at the end of the subclause:***

27 An HE STA is subject to all of the rules for HT STAs that apply to its operating band, except that a PPDU
 28 with the TXECTOR FORMAT parameter set to HE may be substituted for a PPDU with the TXVECTOR
 29 FORMAT parameter set to HT_MF.
 30

31 ***Insert a new subclause at the end of 10.28 as follows:***

32 **10.27.6 Protection rules for HE STAs**

33 An HE STA operating in the 2.4 GHz band is subject to all of the rules for HT STAs that apply to that band,
 34 except that a PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT set to HE_SU, HE_ER_SU, HE_MU or
 35 HE_TB may be substituted for a PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT set to HT_MF.
 36

37 An HE STA operating in the 5 GHz band is subject to all of the rules for VHT STAs that apply to that band,
 38 except that a PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT set to HE_SU, HE_ER_SU, HE_MU or
 39 HE_TB may be substituted for a PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT set to VHT.
 40

41 Additionally, an HE STA can use the MU-RTS/CTS frame exchange procedure.
 42

43 **10.29 Reverse direction protocol**

44 **10.29.1 General**

45 ***Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:***

46 An HT STA indicates support of the RD feature as an RD responder using the RD Responder subfield of the
 47 HT Extended Capabilities field of the HT Capabilities element or the RD Responder subfield of the HE
 48 6 GHz Band Capabilities element. A STA shall set the RD Responder subfield to 1 in frames that it transmits
 49

1 containing the HT Capabilities element in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band and sets the RD Responder subfield to
 2 1 in frames that it transmits containing the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element in the 6 GHz band if
 3 dot11RDRDResponderOptionImplemented is true. Otherwise, the STA shall set the RD Responder subfield to
 4 0. In an a non-HE HT STA the RDG/More PPDU subfield and the AC Constraint subfield are present in the
 5 HTC field. In an HE STA the RDG/More PPDU subfield and the AC Constraint subfield are present in the
 6 CAS Control subfield.

10.29.2 Reverse direction (RD) exchange sequence

Change NOTE 2 following the 1st paragraph as follows:

NOTE 2—If the RD responder is a VHT AP, the RD response burst can contain VHT MU PPDUs that might have TXVECTOR parameter NUM_USERS > 1. If the RD responder is an HE AP, the RD response burst can contain HE MU PPDUs that might have TXVECTOR parameter NUM_USERS > 1.

Insert the following after the 1st paragraph:

If the RD initiator is an HE STA and the RD responder is an HE AP, the RD response burst may contain one or more Basic Trigger frames. The Basic Trigger frames shall trigger the RD initiator and at least one other STA in a full bandwidth UL MU-MIMO transmission.

10.29.3 Rules for RD initiator

Change the 3rd and subsequent 3 paragraphs as follows:

Transmission of a +HTC or DMG frame by an RD initiator with the RDG/More PPDU subfield equal to 1 (either transmitted as a non-A-MPDU frame or within an A-MPDU) indicates that the duration indicated by the Duration/ID field is available for the RD response burst and RD initiator final PPDU (if present). Transmission of an MPDU by an HE RD initiator that contains a CAS Control subfield with the RDG/More PPDU subfield equal to 1 indicates that the duration indicated by the Duration/ID field is available for the RD response burst and RD initiator final PPDU (if present).

An RD initiator that sets the RDG/More PPDU field to 1 in a +HTC or DMG frame transmitted during a TXOP shall set the AC Constraint subfield to 1 in that frame if the TXOP was gained through the EDCA channel access mechanism and shall otherwise set it to 0. An RD initiator that sets the RDG/More PPDU field to 1 in a DMG frame transmitted during an SP can set the AC Constraint subfield to 1 to limit the Data frames transmitted by the RD responder. An HE STA RD initiator that sets the RDG/More PPDU field to 1 in a CAS Control subfield in a frame transmitted during a TXOP may set the AC Constraint subfield in the CAS Control subfield to 1.

An RD initiator shall not transmit a +HTC or DMG frame with the RDG/More PPDU subfield set to 1 that requires a response MPDU that is not one of the following frames:

- Ack
- Compressed BlockAck
- Extended Compressed BlockAck
- Multi-STA BlockAck

Subject to TXOP or SP constraints, after transmitting an RDG PPDU, an RD initiator may transmit its next PPDU as follows:

- a) *Normal continuation:* The RD initiator may transmit its next PPDU a minimum of a SIFS after receiving a response PPDU that meets one of the following conditions:
 - 1) Contains one or more received +HTC or DMG frames with the RDG/More PPDU subfield equal to 0

- 1 2) In an HT STA, contains one or more received frames that are capable of carrying the HT
 2 Control field but did not contain an HT Control field
 3 3) Contains a received frame that requires an immediate response
 4 4) In a DMG STA, none of the correctly received frames in the PPDU carry the QoS Control field
 5 b) *Error recovery:* The RD initiator may transmit its next PPDU ~~when_if~~ the CS mechanism (see
 6 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism)) indicates that the medium is idle at the TxPIFS slot boundary (see
 7 Figure 10-26 (EDCA mechanism timing relationships)) (this transmission is a continuation of the
 8 current TXOP or SP).

12 NOTE 1—Error recovery of the RDG mechanism is the responsibility of the RD initiator.

14 NOTE 2—After transmitting a PPDU containing an RDG, if the response is corrupted so that the state of the RDG/More
 15 PPDU subfield is unknown, the RD initiator of the RD exchange is not allowed to transmit after a SIFS. Transmission
 16 can occur a PIFS after deassertion of CS.

18 NOTE 3—Control response frames generated by HE STAs do not carry the HT Control field.

20 **10.29.4 Rules for RD responder**

23 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

26 The recipient of an RDG may decline the RDG by

- 27 — Not transmitting any frames following the RDG PPDU ~~when_if~~ no response is otherwise required, or
- 28 — Transmitting a control response frame with the RDG/More PPDU subfield set to 0, or
- 29 — Transmitting a control response frame that contains no HT Control field
- 30 — Transmitting a control response frame aggregated with other MPDUs with the RDG/More PPDU
 31 subfield set to 0

35 *Change paragraphs 5-7 as follows:*

38 An RD responder shall not transmit an MPDU (either individually or aggregated within an A-MPDU) that is
 39 not one of the following frames:

- 41 — Ack
- 42 — Compressed BlockAck
- 43 — Compressed BlockAckReq
- 44 — Extended Compressed BlockAck
- 45 — Extended Compressed BlockAckReq
- 46 — Multi-STA BlockAck
- 47 — QoS Data
- 48 — QoS Null
- 49 — Management
- 50 — Basic Trigger

57 ~~If the AC Constraint subfield is equal to 1, the RD responder shall transmit Data frames of only the same AC
 58 as the last frame received from the RD initiator. If the AC Constraint subfield is equal to 1 in last frame
 59 received from an RD initiator:~~

- 61 — A non-HE RD responder shall transmit Data frames of only the same AC as the last frame received
 62 from the RD initiator
- 63 — An HE RD responder may transmit A-MPDU with or multi-TID A-MPDU with MPDUs from one or
 64 more ACs that have a priority that is equal to or higher than the lowest priority AC of the MPDU(s)

1 carried in the last PPDU received from the RD initiator (see 10.12 (A-MPDU operation) and if the
 2 RD initiator is an HE STA subject to the additional rules defined in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and
 3 ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU).

5
 6 For a BlockAckReq or BlockAck frame, the AC is determined by examining the TID field. For a Management frame, the AC is AC_VO. The RD initiator shall not transmit a +HTC or DMG MPDU with the RDG/
 7 More PPDU subfield set to 1 from which the AC cannot be determined. If the AC Constraint subfield is
 8 equal to 0, the RD responder may transmit Data frames of any TID.
 9
 10 NOTE—If the RD initiator's last PPDU contained an A-MPDU, the last frame is the last Data frame in the A-MPDU.

11
 12 During an RD response burst any PPDU transmitted by an RD responder shall contain at least one MPDU with
 13 an Address 1 field that matches the MAC address of the RD initiator or at least one Trigger frame that
 14 addresses the RD initiator, and the inclusion of traffic to STAs other than the RD initiator in a VHT MU PPDU,
 15 or an S1G MU PPDU or HE MU PPDU shall not increase the duration of the VHT MU PPDU beyond that
 16 required to transport the traffic to the RD initiator. The RD responder shall not transmit any frame causing a
 17 frame that is not a Basic Trigger frame and that causes a response after SIFS with an Address 1 field that does
 18 not match the MAC address of the RD initiator. The RD responder shall not transmit any PPDU with a
 19 CH_BANDWIDTH that is wider than the CH_BANDWIDTH of the PPDU containing the frame(s) that delivered
 20 the RD grant.
 21
 22
 23
 24

25
 26 An RD responder that transmits a Basic Trigger frame shall set the CS Required subfield to 1 and shall allocate
 27 a number of streams for the RD initiator that is not smaller than the number of streams of the RD initiator's last
 28 PPDU.

29
 30 If an RD initiator sets the RDG/More PPDU field to 1 in a +HTC frame transmitted during a TXOP and sets
 31 the AC Constraint subfield to 1 in that frame, the RD responder shall set the Preferred AC subfield of the Trig-
 32 ger Dependent User Info field in the Trigger frame to the same AC as the last frame received from the RD ini-
 33 tiator.

37 **10.36 null data PPDU (NDP) sounding**

40 **10.36.6 Transmission of a VHT NDP**

42 *Insert the following after the 2nd paragraph:*

45 If an HE STA transmits a VHT NDP where at least one of the intended recipients of the VHT NDP is an HE STA, then the following conditions apply:

- 48 — If the bandwidth of an VHT NDP is less than or equal to 80 MHz, the number of space-time streams sounded as indicated by the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS shall not exceed the value indicated in the Beamformee STS \leq 80 MHz subfield in the HE Capabilities element of any intended HE STA recipient of the VHT NDP.
- 53 — If the bandwidth of an VHT NDP is greater than 80 MHz, the number of space-time streams sounded as indicated by the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS shall not exceed the value indicated in the Beamformee STS $>$ 80 MHz subfield in the HE Capabilities element of any intended HE STA recipient of the VHT NDP.

59 **10.48 Target wake time (TWT)**

62 **10.48.1 TWT overview**

65 *Change the 5th paragraph as follows:*

1 STAs that request a TWT agreement are called TWT requesting STAs and the STAs that respond to their
 2 requests are TWT responding STAs. A TWT requesting STA is assigned specific times to wake and
 3 exchange frames with the TWT responding STA. A TWT requesting STA communicates wake scheduling
 4 information to its TWT responding STA and the TWT responding STA devises a schedule and delivers
 5 TWT values to the TWT requesting STA when a TWT agreement has been established between them. When
 6 explicit TWT is employed, a TWT requesting STA wakes and performs a frame exchange and receives the
 7 next TWT information in a response from the TWT responding STA as described in 10.48.3 (Explicit TWT
operation). When implicit TWT is used, the TWT requesting STA calculates the Next TWT by adding a
 8 fixed value to the current TWT value as described in 10.48.4 (Implicit TWT operation). STAs need not be
 9 made aware of the TWT values of other STAs. A TWT requesting STA and a TWT responding STA shall
set the Negotiation Type subfield to 0 in the TWT element of transmitted frames containing the TWT ele-
ment, except when the STAs are HE STAs. Additional TWT setup exchanges between HE STAs for individ-
ual TWT operation are defined in 26.8 (TWT operation).

17
 18 ***Change paragraphs 7-9 as follows:***

20 An S1G STA with dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true and that operates in the role of TWT requesting
 21 STA shall set the TWT Requester Support subfield to 1 in all S1G Capabilities elements that it transmits. An
 22 S1G STA with dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true and that operates in the role of TWT responding
 23 STA shall set the TWT Responder Support subfield to 1 in all S1G Capabilities elements that it transmits.

26 A STA that is not an S1G STA and is not an HE STA and with dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true and
that operates in the role of TWT requesting STA shall set the TWT Requester Support subfield to 1 in all
Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits. A STA that is not an S1G STA and is not an HE STA and
with dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true and that operates in the role of TWT responding STA shall set
the TWT Responder Support subfield to 1 in all Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits.

34 If the TWT Responder Support subfield of the S1G Capabilities element, HE Capabilities element or
 35 Extended Capabilities element received from its associated AP is equal to 1, a non-AP STA with
 36 dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true may transmit a TWT element to the AP with a value of Request
 37 TWT, Suggest TWT or Demand TWT in the TWT Setup Command field and with the TWT Request field
 38 equal to 1.

41 An AP with dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true shall transmit a TWT element to a STA that is associated
 42 to the AP and from which it received a frame containing a TWT element that contained a value of
 43 Request TWT, Suggest TWT or Demand TWT in the TWT Setup Command field and with the TWT
 44 Request field equal to 1. The transmitted TWT element shall be included in the frame that is the appropriate
 45 response frame to the received frame. The AP shall include a value of Accept TWT, Alternate TWT, Dictate
 46 TWT or Reject TWT in the TWT Setup Command field of the response and shall set the TWT Request field
 47 to 0. If the AP response's TWT Setup Command field includes anything other than Accept TWT or Reject
 48 TWT, the STA should send a new request for a TWT value by sending another frame that contains a TWT
 49 element, modifying the parameters of the request to indicate, for example, an acceptance of a proposed alter-
 50 nate TWT or dictated TWT value. If the STA receives a TWT response to a TWT request with the TWT
 51 Setup Command field value of Accept TWT, then the STA has successfully completed a TWT setup with
 52 that STA for the TWT Flow Identifier indicated in the TWT response and the STA becomes a TWT request-
 53 ing STA and the STA may enter the doze state until the TSF matches the next TWT value of the STA, pro-
 54 vided that the STA has indicated that it is in a power save mode and no other condition requires the STA to
 55 remain awake. The AP becomes a TWT responding STA of the TWT requesting STA.

59
 60 NOTE 1—A TWT responding STA might choose a TWT Flow Identifier for the TWT response that is different from the
TWT Flow Identifier of a received TWT request.

62
 63 NOTE 2—A TWT requesting STA might renegotiate the TWT parameters of an existing TWT agreement by sending to
the TWT responding STA a TWT request with a Flow Identifier that corresponds to that TWT agreement. The TWT
response sent by the TWT responding STA containing the TWT Setup Command field of Accept TWT will indicate

1 whether the newly requested TWT parameters are accepted or whether the previously negotiated TWT parameters are
 2 still in place.

4
 5 ***Insert new paragraphs and table as follows after the 9th paragraph:***

6
 7
 8 The result of an exchange of TWT Setup frames between a TWT requesting STA and a TWT responding
 9 STA is defined in Table 10-31a (TWT setup exchange command interpretation). The meaning of "Request
 10 TWT" is that the requesting STA does not provide a set of TWT parameters for a TWT agreement, leaving
 11 the choice of parameters to the responding STA, "Suggest TWT" indicates that the requesting STA offers a
 12 set of preferred TWT parameters for a TWT agreement but might accept alternative TWT parameters that
 13 the responding STA indicates and "Demand TWT" indicates that the requesting STA will currently accept
 14 only the indicated TWT parameters for a TWT agreement. When transmitted by a responding STA, "Accept
 15 TWT" indicates that the responding STA has initiated a TWT agreement with the given parameters, "Alter-
 16 nate TWT" indicates a counter-offer of TWT parameters (although alternative TWT parameters might be
 17 accepted as well) without the creation of a TWT agreement, "Dictate TWT" indicates that no TWT agree-
 18 ment is created, but one is likely to be accepted only if the requesting STA transmits a new TWT setup
 19 request with the indicated TWT parameters (i.e., no other TWT parameters will be accepted), and "Reject
 20 TWT" transmitted by a responding STA as part of a negotiation for a new TWT agreement is used to indi-
 21 cate that the negotiation has ended in failure to create a new TWT agreement.
 22
 23
 24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29

Table 10-31a—TWT setup exchange command interpretation

TWT Setup Command field in an initiating frame	TWT Setup Command field value in a response frame	TWT condition after the completion of the exchange
Request TWT or Suggest TWT or Demand TWT	No frame transmitted	No new individual TWT agreement exists with the TWT flow identifier corresponding to the TWT flow identifier in the initiating frame. No new individual TWT agreement exists.
Demand TWT	Accept TWT	An individual TWT agreement exists that uses the TWT parameters identified in the initiating frame. The TWT parameters in the response frame match the TWT parameters of the initiating frame.
Suggest TWT or Request TWT	Accept TWT	An individual TWT agreement exists and that uses the TWT parameters identified in the response frame.
Demand TWT or Suggest TWT	Alternate TWT	No individual TWT agreement exists with the associated TWT flow identifier. The responder is offering an alternative set of parameters vs. those indicated in the initiating frame. The requesting STA can send a new request with any set of TWT parameters and the responder might create an individual TWT agreement using those parameters.
Demand TWT or Suggest TWT	Dictate TWT	No individual TWT agreement exists with the associated TWT flow identifier. The responder offers an alternative set of parameters vs. those indicated in the TWT request. By selecting "Dictate TWT", the responder indicates that it is not willing to accept any other TWT parameters for the requesting STA at this time. The requesting STA can send a new request, but will only receive an Accept TWT if it uses the dictated TWT parameters.

Table 10-31a—TWT setup exchange command interpretation

Request TWT or Suggest TWT or Demand TWT	Reject TWT	No individual TWT agreement exists with the associated TWT flow identifier. The responding STA will not create any new individual TWT agreement with the requester at this time.
NOTE 1—Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element contained in these frames is equal to 0.		
NOTE 2—The initiating frame is a TWT request and the response frame is a TWT response.		

Change the last paragraph of 10.48.1 as follows:

A TWT requesting STA indicates which single channel it desires to use as a temporary primary channel during a TWT SP by setting a single bit to 1 within the TWT Channel field of the TWT element, according to the mapping described for that field. A TWT responding STA indicates which single channel the TWT requesting STA is permitted to use as a temporary primary channel during a TWT SP by setting a single bit to 1 within the TWT Channel field of the TWT element, according to the mapping described for that field. In an S1G BSS, during ~~During~~ a TWT SP, access to a channel that is not the primary channel of the BSS shall be performed according to the procedure described in 10.53 (Subchannel selective transmission (SST)).

In an HE BSS, during a trigger-enabled TWT SP, access to a channel that is not the primary channel of the BSS shall be performed according to the procedure described in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission).

1 11. MLME

2 11.1 Synchronization

3 11.1.3 Maintaining synchronization

4 11.1.3.8 Multiple BSSID procedure

5 *Insert a subclause heading before the 1st paragraph:*

6 11.1.3.8.1 General

7 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

8 A STA that supports the Multiple BSSID capability has dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true and
 9 shall set to 1 the Multiple BSSID field of the Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits. Support for
 10 the Multiple BSSID capability is mandatory for a FILS STA and non-AP HE STA. An AP that supports
enhancements related to the discovery and advertisement of a nontransmitted BSSID shall set the Enhanced
Multi-BSSID Advertisement Support bit in the Extended Capabilities element to 1 and is referred to as an
EMA AP. A 6 GHz AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true and advertising a partial list of
 11 nontransmitted BSSID profiles shall operate as an EMA AP. When an AP that does not operate in the 6 GHz
 12 band, has dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true and advertises a partial list of nontransmitted BSSID
 13 profiles intends a non-AP STA to discover the complete list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles, where a com-
 14 plete list of nontransmitted BSSID profile comprises only BSSIDs that are discoverable, the AP shall oper-
 15 ate as an EMA AP.

16 *Replace the 2nd paragraph and NOTE with the following:*

17 An AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true shall set the Co-Hosted BSS subfield in HE Operation
 18 element that it transmits to 0.

19 The BSSID of the AP belonging to a multiple BSSID set is referred to as the transmitted BSSID if the AP
 20 includes the Multiple BSSID element in the Beacon frame that it transmits. In a multiple BSSID set, there
 21 shall not be more than one AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID. The BSSID of an AP belonging to a
 22 multiple BSSID set is a nontransmitted BSSID if the AP's BSSID is derived according to 9.4.2.45 (Multiple
 23 BSSID element) and 9.4.2.73 (Multiple BSSID-Index element). Among all AP STAs in multiple BSSID set,
 24 only the AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID shall transmit a Beacon frame.

25 *The 3rd paragraph remains unchanged:*

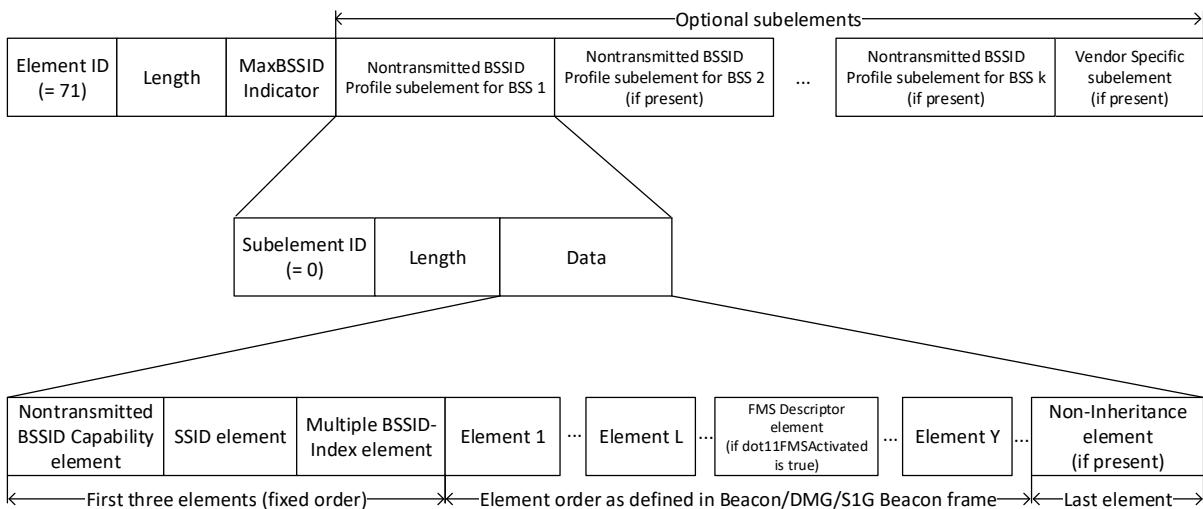
26 See 11.1.4.3.4 (Criteria for sending a response) for the rules governing transmission of Probe Response
 27 frames in a multiple BSSID set.

28 *Insert new subclauses 11.1.3.8.2 and 11.1.3.8.3 as follows:*

29 11.1.3.8.2 Nontransmitted BSSID profile

30 A nontransmitted BSSID profile represents information about a particular nontransmitted BSSID and
 31 consists of a set of elements that are carried in one or more Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelements
 32 across one or more multiple BSSID elements in the same frame. Each nontransmitted BSSID profile, at a
 33 minimum, shall include the elements that are mandatory for that BSS (i.e., Nontransmitted BSSID
 34 Capability element), SSID element, Multiple BSSID-Index element as described in 9.4.2.45 (Multiple
 35 BSSID element). An example of Multiple BSSID element carrying one or more Nontransmitted BSSID

1 Profile subelements is shown in Figure 11-3a (Example of a Multiple BSSID element carrying
 2 Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelements). The figure also shows the order in which the elements are
 3 present within each Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement.
 4



28 **Figure 11-3a—Example of a Multiple BSSID element carrying Nontransmitted BSSID Profile sub-
29 elements**

30 A nontransmitted BSSID profile consists of all elements carried in all such Multiple BSSID elements
 31 sharing the same BSSID index. An AP shall not carry a nontransmitted BSSID profile across multiple
 32 Multiple BSSID elements in a frame unless the nontransmitted BSSID profile cannot be carried in one
 33 multiple BSSID element due to the size limit of the multiple BSSID element.
 34

35 If there is a need to split a nontransmitted BSSID profile across more than one Multiple BSSID element in a
 36 frame, an AP shall not split an element in the profile into multiple Multiple BSSID elements, and it shall
 37 place the next element in the nontransmitted BSSID profile as the first element in the first nontransmitted
 38 BSSID profile subelement of the immediately following Multiple BSSID element.
 39

An example of a nontransmitted BSSID profile split across two Multiple BSSID elements in a frame is shown in Figure 11-3b (Example of a nontransmitted BSSID profile split across multiple Multiple BSSID elements).

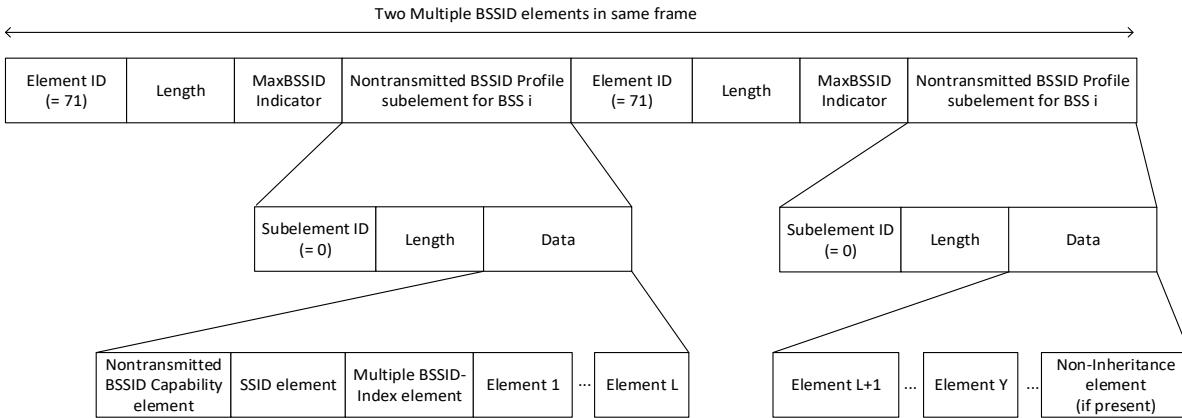


Figure 11-3b—Example of a nontransmitted BSSID profile split across multiple Multiple BSSID elements

NOTE—As described in 9.4.3 (Subelements), the Length field of the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement indicates the number of octets only in the Data field of the subelement.

11.1.3.8.3 Discovery of a nontransmitted BSSID profile

An AP or PCP may choose to include only a partial list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles in the Beacon frame, S1G Beacon frame or DMG Beacon frame or to include different sets of nontransmitted BSSID profiles in different Beacon frames, S1G Beacon frames or DMG Beacon frames. An AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID may choose to include only a partial list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles in an unsolicited broadcast Probe Response frame or a Probe Response frame sent in response to a Probe Request frame with Address 3 field set to wildcard BSSID and SSID set to wildcard. An AP advertising a complete list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles shall set the Complete List Of NonTxBSSID Profiles field of Extended Capabilities element to 1.

An EMA AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band should include in Beacon or Probe Response frames a Reduced Neighbor Report element carrying information about nontransmitted BSSIDs that are not advertised in the Multiple BSSID element carried in that frame. The EMA AP does this to aid the fast discovery of all nontransmitted BSSIDs in the multiple BSSID set that are discoverable.

An EMA AP advertising a partial list of BSSID profiles, shall include the Multiple BSSID Configuration element (see 9.4.2.258 (Multiple BSSID Configuration element)) in its Beacon frame, S1G Beacon frame, or DMG Beacon frame and in any Probe Response frame it sends to indicate the configuration of the multiple BSSID set.

An AP shall set the BSSID Count field of the Multiple BSSID Configuration element to indicate the number of active BSSIDs in the multiple BSSID set, and shall set the Profile Periodicity field to indicate the number of beacons a scanning STA is required to receive in order to discover all the active nontransmitted BSSIDs in the set. An AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID shall send a Probe Response frame carrying Multiple BSSID element that includes, at a minimum, the nontransmitted BSSID profiles requested by the soliciting Probe Request frame.

1 An unassociated non-AP STA may send a directed Probe Request frame containing a Known BSSID
 2 element (see 9.4.2.259 (Known BSSID element)) to an EMA AP that advertises partial list of nontransmitted
 3 BSSID profiles to gather information on nontransmitted BSSIDs it has not discovered. An EMA AP, when
 4 transmitting a Probe Response frame in response to a Probe Request frame containing Known BSSID
 5 element, should not include the nontransmitted BSSID profiles for BSSIDs listed in the Known BSSID
 6 element and shall, at a minimum, include the nontransmitted BSSID profiles requested by the soliciting
 7 Probe Request frame.
 8

9
 10 An EMA AP that includes a partial list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles in its Beacon frame, S1G Beacon
 11 frame, or DMG Beacon frame, shall advertise a particular nontransmitted BSSID profile in a repeating
 12 pattern such that the profile is present in at least one beacon in a sequence of beacons indicated by the Profile
 13 Periodicity field of the Multiple BSSID Configuration element unless the membership of the multiple
 14 BSSID set changes. If there is a change in a particular nontransmitted BSSID's profile (i.e., set of elements
 15 belong to the profile or the element values), the EMA AP shall include the profile in the next DTIM beacon
 16 of that BSS so that STAs with that BSS become aware of the change immediately.
 17

18 NOTE 1—It is recommended that an AP select the periodicity in which a nontransmitted BSSID's profile repeats to be a
 19 multiple of the DTIM interval of the BSS with that nontransmitted BSSID so that STAs in PS mode that are associated
 20 with that BSSID don't have to wake for additional beacons.
 21

22 NOTE 2—In order to aid fast discovery of nontransmitted BSSIDs via passive scanning, it is recommended that an AP
 23 select a small value for the Profile Periodicity field.
 24

25 ***Insert a new subclause heading:***

26 **11.1.3.8.4 Inheritance of element values**

27 ***Change the 4th paragraph as follows:***

28 When a station receives a Beacon frame or DMG Beacon frame with a Multiple BSSID element that consists
 29 of a nontransmitted BSSID profile with only the mandatory elements, it may inherit the complete profile
 30 from a previously received Beacon frame, DMG Beacon frame, or Probe Response frame, or it may send a
 31 Probe Request frame to obtain the complete BSSID profiles. Each Beacon element not transmitted in a non-
 32 transmitted BSSID subelement is inherited from previous Beacon, DMG Beacon, or Probe Response frame
 33 in which the element is present, except for the Quiet element, which shall take effect only in the Beacon
 34 frame or DMG Beacon frame that contains it and not carry forward as a part of the inheritance. An AP or
 35 PCP is not required to include all supported nontransmitted BSSID profiles in a Probe Response frame, and
 36 may choose to only include a subset based on any criteria. When a nontransmitted BSSID profile is present
 37 in the one or more Multiple BSSID elements of the a Probe Response frame or a Beacon frame, the AP or
 38 PCP shall include all elements that are specific to this BSS. An element is considered to be specific to a BSS
 39 if its value is different from the corresponding element advertised by the transmitted BSSID or if the non-
 40 transmitted BSSID satisfies the condition as specified in the Table 9-34 (Beacon frame body) for a non-
 41 DMG non-S1G AP, Table 9-47 (DMG Beacon frame body) for a DMG AP or Table 9-48 (Minimum and
 42 full set of optional elements) for a S1G AP for that element to be present while the transmitted BSSID does
 43 not satisfy the corresponding condition. If any of the optional elements carried in the Probe Response frame,
 44 Beacon frame or DMG Beacon frame or S1G Beacon frame of the transmitted BSSID are not present in a
 45 nontransmitted BSSID profile, the corresponding values are the element values to use for the nontransmitted
 46 BSSID are the values of the corresponding element of the transmitted BSSID unless the element is listed in
 47 the Non-Inheritance element (if included) in the nontransmitted BSSID profile for that BSS.
 48

49 ***The 5th paragraph remains unchanged:***

50 A non-AP and non-PCP STA derives its nontransmitted BSSID value according to 9.4.2.45 (Multiple
 51 BSSID element) and 9.4.2.73 (Multiple BSSID-Index element).
 52

53 ***Insert a new subclause heading:***

1 **11.1.3.8.5 Traffic advertisement in a multiple BSSID set**

2 *Change the 6th paragraph as follows:*

3 The Partial Virtual Bitmap field of the TIM element carried in the Beacon, S1G Beacon, DMG Beacon, or
 4 TIM frame shall indicate the presence or absence of traffic to be delivered to all stations associated to a
 5 transmitted or nontransmitted BSSID. The first 2^n bits of the bitmap are reserved for the indication of group
 6 addressed frame for the transmitted and all nontransmitted BSSIDs (see 9.4.2.5.1 (General)). The AID space
 7 is shared by all BSSs and the lowest AID value that shall be assigned to a non-S1G STA is 2^n (see 9.4.2.5
 8 (TIM element)). The decimal value of the 11 LSBs of the AID assigned to an S1G STA shall be greater than
 9 2^n . The Encoded Blocks that contain these first 2^n AIDs (if any) shall precede the Encoded Blocks that con-
 10 tain AIDs for the S1G STAs in the S1G Partial Virtual Bitmap field of each page. Each BSS of the Multiple
 11 BSSID set may have a different DTIM interval which is signaled in the DTIM Period and DTIM Count
 12 fields that are present in the Multiple BSSID-Index element carried in the nontransmitted BSSID profile for
 13 that BSS.

14 *Insert the following paragraph and NOTE:*

15 Based upon its knowledge of the capability of associated non-AP STAs to support the multiple BSSID
 16 capability, as indicated by the corresponding field in the Extended Capabilities element and the content of
 17 the traffic indication virtual bitmap, an AP shall encode the Partial Virtual Bitmap and the Bitmap Control
 18 field of the TIM element using one of the three methods (Method A, Method B or Method C) defined in
 19 9.4.2.5.1 (General). Specifically, a non-S1G AP shall use Method B if it determines that the bit for each
 20 associated non-AP STA in the traffic indication virtual bitmap that is reconstructed by each non-AP STA
 21 from the received TIM element encoded using Method B is set correctly. Otherwise, a non-S1G AP shall use
 22 Method A and an S1G AP shall use Method C.

23 NOTE—If all the recipients of the TIM element are STAs that support the multiple BSSID capability, for example when
 24 the TIM element is carried in HE (ER) Beacon, FILS Discovery frame or OPS frame where all the addressees are non-
 25 AP HE STAs, the transmitting AP uses Method B to encode the Partial Virtual Bitmap and the Bitmap Control fields of
 26 the TIM element.

27 *The final paragraph remains unchanged:*

28 Multiple BSSID rate selection is defined in 10.6.9 (Multiple BSSID Rate Selection).

29 **11.1.4 Acquiring synchronization, scanning**

30 **11.1.4.3 Active scanning**

31 **11.1.4.3.2 Active scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA**

32 *Change item b), c) and d) in the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

33 For each channel to be scanned:

- 34 b) If the STA is a FILS STA or a 6 GHz HE STA, set the FILSProbeTimer to 0 and starts the FILSPro-
 35 beTimer. While the FILS ProbeTimer is less than dot11FILSProbeDelay the STA may skip a probe
 36 request transmission and proceed to step i) after setting the ActiveScanningTimer to 0 and starting
 37 the ActiveScanningTimer, if one of the following conditions matches:
 - 38 1) The STA receives a broadcast addressed Probe Request frame that the SME considers to be
 39 suitable to discover a candidate AP for association.
 - 40 2) The STA receives one or more of Probe Response, Beacon, Measurement Pilot, or FILS Dis-
 41 covery frame that identify an AP that the SME considers a suitable candidate for association.

- 1 3) The STA successfully sent a Probe Request frame by following the UORA procedure as
 2 defined in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)).

4 NOTE—How an SME considers a probe request or AP suitable is outside the scope of this standard.

- 5 c) Perform the basic access procedure as defined in 10.3.4.2 (Basic access). While waiting for access to
 6 WM, STA may send one or more Probe Request frames by following the UORA procedure and pro-
 7 ceed to step i)
- 8 d) Send a probe request to the broadcast destination address. The probe request is sent with the SSID
 9 and BSSID from the received MLME-SCAN.request primitive. When either the SSID List or Short
 10 SSID List or both are present in the MLME-SCAN.request primitive, send one or more Probe
 11 Request frames, each with an SSID one or more SSIDs indicated in either the SSID List or Short
 12 SSID List or both, and the BSSID from the MLME-SCAN.request primitive

17 11.1.4.3.4 Criteria for sending a response

18 *Change item g) in the first paragraph as follows:*

19 A STA that receives a Probe Request frame shall not respond if any of the following apply:

- 20 g) The STA is not a mesh STA and none of the following criteria are met:
- 21 1) The SSID in the Probe Request frame is the wildcard SSID.
- 22 2) The SSID in the Probe Request frame matches the SSID of the STA's.
- 23 2a) The STA is an AP that is in the same co-located AP set as a 6 GHz AP, the SSID in the Probe
 24 Request frame matches the SSID of the 6 GHz AP, and the STA reports the co-located 6 GHz
 25 AP in Beacon and Probe Response frames, see 26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz
 26 BSS).
- 27 3) The STA is a member of a multiple BSSID set and the SSID in the Probe Request frame
 28 matches any of the SSIDs of the members of that multiple BSSID set.
- 29 4) The dot11SSIDListImplemented is true, the SSID List element is present in the Probe Request
 30 frame and includes the SSID of the STA's BSS.
- 31 5) dot11SSIDListImplemented is true, the STA is an AP that is in the same co-located AP set as a
 32 6 GHz AP, the SSID List element is present in the Probe Request frame and includes the SSID
 33 corresponding to the co-located 6 GHz AP, and the AP reports the co-located 6 GHz AP in
 34 Beacon and Probe Response frames, see 26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS).
- 35 6) dot11ShortSSIDListImplemented is true, the Short SSID List element is present in the Probe
 36 Request frame and includes the Short SSID field corresponding to the SSID of the STA's BSS.
- 37 7) dot11ShortSSIDListImplemented is true, the STA is an AP that is in the same co-located AP
 38 set as a 6 GHz AP, the Short SSID List element is present in the Probe Request frame and
 39 includes the Short SSID field corresponding to the SSID of the 6 GHz AP and the AP reports
 40 this 6 GHz AP in its Beacon and Probe Response frames, see 26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery
 41 of a 6 GHz BSS).

42 *Change the 2nd paragraph, inserting a new item in the list following item 3) as follows:*

43 A FILS STA shall not respond to a Probe Request frame if any of the following criteria is met for a FILS
 44 Request Parameters element contained in the Probe Request frame:

- 45 3a) If the FILS Criteria field is present in the FILS Requests Parameters element and the PHY Support
 46 Criterion of the FILS Criteria field of the FILS Request Parameters element is 3 and the responding
 47 STA is not HE capable.

1 **11.1.4.3.10 Enhanced FILS active scanning to preferred AP**

2
3 *Insert the following into bulleted list of the 1st paragraph after Fragment element and before Vendor*
4 *specific element:*

- 5
6 — TWT element
7 — MU-EDCA Parameter Set element
8 — NDP Feedback Report Parameter set element
9 — UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element
10 — Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element
11 — HE BSS Load element
12 — Quiet Time Parameter element
13
14
15
16
17

18 **11.2 Power management**

19 **11.2.3 Power management in a non-DMG infrastructure network**

20 **11.2.3.2 Non-AP STA power management modes**

21 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

22 A non-AP STA can be in one of two power management modes:

- 23
24 — Active mode: The STA receives and transmits frames at any time if the STA is in awake state. The
25 non-HE STA remains in the awake state. The HE STA remains in the awake state unless the STA is
26 unavailable. A STA that is unavailable is not capable of receiving PPDUs. A STA is permitted to be
27 unavailable as described in 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save), 26.14.1 (Intra-PPDU power save for
28 non-AP HE STAs) and 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time).
29
30 — Power save (PS) mode: The STA enters the awake state to receive or transmit frames. The STA
31 remains in the doze state otherwise.
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39

40 **11.2.3.6 AP operation**

41 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

42 An AP shall maintain for each currently associated STA a Power Management status that indicates in which
43 power management mode the STA is currently operating. APs that implement and signal their support of
44 APSD shall maintain for each currently associated STA an APSD and an access policy status that indicates
45 whether the STA is presently using APSD and shall maintain the schedule (if any) for the STA. An AP shall,
46 depending on the power management mode of the STA, temporarily buffer BUs destined to the STA. An AP
47 implementing APSD shall, if a STA is using APSD and is in PS mode, temporarily buffer BUs destined to
48 that STA. No BUs addressed directly to STAs operating in the active mode shall be buffered for power man-
49 agement reasons. An HE AP should not transmit to an HE STA if the STA might be unavailable, as defined
50 in 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time), 26.14.1 (Intra-PPDU power save for
51 non-AP HE STAs), 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save), unless the transmission is solicited by the STA.
52
53
54
55
56
57

58 *Change items f) and g) in the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

59 The following rules describe the operation:

- 60 f) When dot11FMSActivated is false, the AP shall transmit all buffered non-GCR-SP (11ak)non-
61 SYNRA group addressed BUs immediately after every DTIM or during broadcast TWT SPs within
62 that beacon interval as defined in 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP).
63
64
65

When dot11FMSActivated is true and the AP has established an FMS delivery interval for a multi-cast stream, the AP shall transmit all non-GCR-SP (11ak)non-SYNRA group addressed BUs belonging to particular FMS stream immediately after the DTIM that has the Current Count field of the FMS Counter field(M101) set to 0 for that particular FMS stream or during broadcast TWT SPs within that beacon interval as defined in 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP).

The More Data subfield of each group addressed frame shall be set to indicate the presence of further buffered non-GCR-SP group addressed BUs that will be delivered using MPDUs with an RA other than a SYNRA. If the AP is unable, before the primary or secondary TBTT following the DTIM, to transmit all of the buffered non-GCR-SP group addressed BUs(11ak) that will be delivered using MPDUs with an RA other than a SYNRA, then the AP shall set the bit for AID 0 (zero) in the TIM element to 1 for a single BSSID or set the corresponding group address bit to 1 for multiple BSSIDs, as defined in 9.4.2.5 (TIM element), and when dot11FMSActivated is true, shall set the appropriate bits in the FMS Descriptor element as described in 9.4.2.74 (FMS Descriptor element) to indicate for which non-GCR-SP non-SYNRA group addresses there are still buffered BUs, until all buffered non-GCR-SP group addressed BUs that will be delivered using MPDUs with an RA other than a SYNRA have been transmitted.

When the AP transmits an STBC DTIM or TIM Beacon frame, the AP shall retransmit all non-GCR-SP group addressed BUs that will be delivered using MPDUs with an RA other than a SYNRA and that were transmitted following the non-STBC DTIM or TIM Beacon frame except that they are transmitted using the basic STBC MCS. It may be the case that a complete set of buffered non-GCR-SP non-SYNRA group addressed BUs is sent over a period of time during which non-STBC and STBC transmissions are interleaved, but the transition from non-STBC group addressed transmissions to STBC group addressed transmissions shall be preceded by the transmission of an STBC Beacon frame and the transition from STBC group addressed transmissions to non-STBC group addressed transmissions shall be preceded by the transmission of a non-STBC Beacon frame.

- g) When the AP receives a PS-Poll frame from a STA that is in PS mode, it shall forward to the STA a single buffered BU. The AP shall respond after a SIFS either with a Data or Management frame, or with an Ack frame; in which case the corresponding Data or Management frame is delayed. Until the transmission of this BU either has succeeded or is presumed failed (when maximum retries are exceeded), the AP shall acknowledge but ignore all PS-Poll frames from the same STA. This prevents a retried PS-Poll frame from being treated as a new request to deliver a buffered BU.

For a STA using U-APSD, the AP transmits one BU destined for the STA from any AC that is not delivery-enabled in response to PS-Poll frame from the STA. The AP should transmit the BU from the highest priority AC that is not delivery-enabled and that has a buffered BU. When all ACs associated with the STA are delivery-enabled, the AP transmits one BU from the highest priority AC that has a BU.

For a STA in PS mode and not using U-APSD, the AP shall set the More Data subfield of the response Data or Management frame to 1 to indicate the presence of further buffered BUs (not including the BU currently being transmitted) for the polling STA. For a STA using U-APSD, the AP shall set the More Data subfield to 1 to indicate the presence of further buffered BUs (not including the BU currently being transmitted) that do not use delivery-enabled ACs. When all ACs associated with the STA are delivery-enabled, the AP shall set the More Data subfield to 1 to indicate the presence of further buffered BUs (not including the BU currently being transmitted) using delivery-enabled ACs.

If there are buffered BUs to transmit to the STA, the AP may set the More Data bit in a QoS +CFAck frame to 1 in response to a QoS Data frame to indicate that it has one or more pending BUs buffered for the PS STA identified by the RA in the QoS +CF-Ack frame. An AP may also set the More Data bit in an Ack frame to 1 in response to a QoS Data frame to indicate that it has one or more pending BUs buffered for the PS STA identified by the RA in the Ack frame, if that PS STA

1 has set the More Data Ack subfield in the QoS Info field ~~QoS Capability element~~ to 1. An HE AP
 2 may also set the More Data bit in a BlockAck or Multi-STA BlockAck frame to 1 to indicate that it
 3 has one or more pending BUs buffered for the HE PS STA identified by the RA in the BlockAck or
 4 Multi-STA Blockack frame, if that HE PS STA has set the More Data Ack subfield in the QoS Info
 5 field to 1. An HE AP indicates support of sending Ack, BlockAck, or Multi-STA BlockAck frames
 6 with a nonzero More Data subfield by setting the More Data Ack subfield to 1 in the QoS Info field
 7 of frames it transmits.
 8

9 Unless indicated above, the AP shall set the More Data bit to 0.

11.2.3.7 Receive operation for STAs in PS mode

16 *Change item e) in the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

19 The following rules describe operation of a STA in PS mode:

- 21 e) When dot11FMSActivated is false and ReceiveDTIMs is true, the STA shall wake up early enough
 22 to be able to receive either every non-STBC DTIM or every STBC DTIM sent by the AP of the BSS.

24 When dot11FMSActivated is true and ReceiveDTIMs is true and the STA has been granted by the
 25 AP an alternate delivery interval for a multicast stream, the STA shall wake up before the non-STBC
 26 DTIM or STBC DTIM having Current Count of FMS Counter field set to 0 for that particular FMS
 27 stream.

30 A STA that stays awake to receive group addressed BUs shall elect to receive all group addressed
 31 non-STBC transmissions or all group addressed STBC transmissions and remain awake until the
 32 More Data subfield of the appropriate type (non-STBC or STBC) of group addressed BUs indicates
 33 there are no further buffered group addressed BUs of that type, or until a TIM is received indicating
 34 there are no more buffered group addressed BUs of that type, or until an FMS Descriptor element is
 35 received indicating that there are no further buffered group addressed BUs for which the STA has
 36 previously received an FMS Response element in a frame that has a value in Address 1 that matches
 37 its MAC address or that has an Address 1 value that is a group address corresponding to a group of
 38 which it is a member and that was transmitted by the AP with which it is associated and which had
 39 an Element Status value in the FMS Status subelement of "Accept". If a STA receives a QoS
 40 +CFACK frame from its AP with the More Data bit equal to 1, then the STA shall operate ~~exactly~~ as
 41 if it received a TIM with its AID bit equal to 1. If a STA has set the More Data Ack subfield in ~~the~~
 42 ~~QoS Info field~~~~QoS Capability element~~ to 1, then if it receives an ACK frame from its AP with the
 43 More Data bit equal to 1, the STA shall operate ~~exactly~~ as if it received a TIM with its AID bit equal
 44 to 1. ~~If an HE STA has set the More Data Ack subfield in the QoS Info field to 1, then if it receives~~
 45 ~~a BlockAck or Multi-STA BlockAck frame from its AP with the More Data bit equal to 1, the STA~~
 46 ~~shall operate as if it received a TIM with its AID bit equal to 1.~~ For example, a STA that is using the
 47 PS-Poll delivery method shall issue a PS-Poll frame to retrieve a buffered BU. See also 10.3.6
 48 (Group addressed MPDU transfer procedure).

11.2.3.9 STAs operating in active mode

57 *Change as follows:*

60 A STA operating in this mode shall have its receiver activated continuously, ~~unless the STA is allowed to be~~
 61 ~~temporarily unavailable with opportunistic power save procedure as defined in 26.14.3 (Opportunistic~~
 62 ~~power save), or with intra-PPDU power save procedure as defined in 26.14.1 (Intra-PPDU power save for~~
 63 ~~non-AP HE STAs) or in 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time); such STAs do~~
 64 ~~not need to interpret the TIM elements in Beacon frames.~~
 65

1 **11.2.3.15 TIM Broadcast**

2

3 *Change the 3rd paragraph as follows (splitting it into two paragraphs):*

4

5 A non-AP STA may activate the TIM broadcast service by including a TIM Broadcast Request element in a
 6 TIM Broadcast Request frame, Association Request frame or Reassociation Request frame that is transmit-
 7 ted to the AP, which specifies the requested interval between TIM frame transmissions (the TIM broadcast
 8 interval). On receipt of a properly formatted TIM Broadcast Request element in a TIM Broadcast Request
 9 frame, Association Request frame or Reassociation Request frame, the AP shall include a TIM Broadcast
 10 Response element in the corresponding TIM Broadcast Response frame, Association Response frame or
 11 Reassociation Response frame, when dot11TIMBroadcastActivated is true. A non-AP STA shall transmit a
 12 TIM Broadcast Request only if the associated AP has indicated support for TIM Broadcast by setting the
 13 TIM Broadcast field of the Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits to 1.

14

15

16 NOTE—An OPS AP that transmits TIM frames as described in 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save) is expected to
 17 encode the TIM bits such that an associated non-AP STA that does not support OPS operation can use the information
 18 received in the TIM frame as it would do when receiving a TIM frame transmitted following the TIM Broadcast proce-
 19 dure.

20

21

22 When the requested TIM broadcast interval is acceptable, the AP shall include a TIM Broadcast Response
 23 element specifying the requested TIM broadcast interval and a Status field indicating “Accept” when no
 24 valid TSF timestamp is present in the TIM frames, or “Accept, valid timestamp present in TIM frames”
 25 when a valid TSF timestamp is present in the TIM frames. When the AP overrides the requested TIM broad-
 26 cast interval, it shall include a TIM Broadcast Response element specifying a different TIM broadcast inter-
 27 val and a Status field indicating “Overridden” when no valid TSF timestamp is present in the TIM frames, or
 28 “Overridden, valid timestamp present in TIM frames” when a valid TSF timestamp is present in the TIM
 29 frames, and include in the TIM Broadcast Response element the smallest TIM broadcast interval that is cur-
 30 rently active. Otherwise, the AP shall include a TIM Broadcast Response element with a Status field indicat-
 31 ing “Denied.” The Status field in a TIM Broadcast Response element that is included in an Association
 32 Response frame or Reassociation Response frame has implications only for the TIM Broadcast negotiation.

33

34

35 *Change the 11th paragraph as follows:*

36

37 The AP shall increase the value (modulo 256) of the Check Beacon field in the next transmitted TIM
 38 frame(s) when a critical update occurs to any of the elements inside the Beacon frame. The following events
 39 shall classify as a critical update:

40

- 41 a) Inclusion of a Channel Switch Announcement element
- 42 b) Inclusion of an Extended Channel Switch Announcement element
- 43 c) Modification of the EDCA parameters element
- 44 d) Inclusion of a Quiet element
- 45 e) Modification of the DSSS Parameter Set
- 46 f) Modification of the CF Parameter Set element
- 47 g) Modification of the HT Operation element
- 48 h) Inclusion of a Wide Bandwidth Channel Switch element
- 49 i) Inclusion of a Channel Switch Wrapper element
- 50 j) Inclusion of an Operating Mode Notification element
- 51 k) Inclusion of a Quiet Channel element
- 52 l) Modification of the VHT Operation element
- 53 m) Modification of the HE Operation element
- 54 n) Insertion of a Broadcast TWT element
- 55 o) Inclusion of the BSS Color Change Announcement element

- 1 p) Modification of the MU EDCA Parameter Set element
 2 q) Modification of the Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element

4 NOTE—Modification of an element means that at least one value of a field in the element is changed. Inclusion of an
 5 element means that the element is included in a Beacon frame. The Insertion of an element means that the element was
 6 not present in the previous Beacon frame and is present in the current Beacon frame will be carried in the next Beacon
 7 frame.

9 **11.2.6 SM power save**

10 *Insert the following after the 2nd paragraph:*

14 The basic rules for a STA are defined below. Additional rules for an HE STA that sets the HE Dynamic SM
 15 Power Save subfield to 1 in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element it
 16 transmits in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band, or sets the SM Power Save subfield to 1 in the HE 6 GHz Band
 17 Capabilities element it transmits in the 6 GHz band is defined in 26.14.4 (HE dynamic SM power save).

20 *Change the 4th paragraph as follows:*

23 The STA can determine the end of the frame exchange sequence through any of the following:

- 25 — It receives an individually addressed frame addressed to another STA.
- 26 — It receives a frame with a TA that differs from the TA of the frame that started the TXOP.
- 28 — It receives a PPDU and classifies the PPDU as inter-BSS PPDU (see 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-
BSS PPDU classification))
- 30 — It receives an HE MU PPDU where the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is the BSS color of
the BSS with which the STA is associated, the RXVECTOR parameter array STA_ID does not
include the identifier of the STA or the broadcast identifier(s) intended for the STA, and the BSS
Color Disabled subfield in the most recently received HE Operation element from the AP to which
the STA is associated is 0.
- 37 — The CS mechanism (see 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism)) indicates that the medium is idle at the TxPIFS
 38 slot boundary (defined in 10.3.7 (DCF timing relations)).

41 **11.3 STA authentication and association**

43 **11.3.3 Frame filtering based on STA state**

46 *Insert a new item xiv) under item 1) under item a) in the 5th paragraph as follows:*

49 The frame classes are defined as follows:

- 50 a) Class 1 frames
 - 51 1) Control frames
 - 53 xiv) In an HE BSS Basic Trigger frame and Multi-STA BlockAck frame

55 **11.3.5 Association, reassociation, and disassociation**

58 **11.3.5.3 AP or PCP association receipt procedures**

61 *Insert the following list item after item h:*

- 62 h1) The SME shall refuse an association request from an HE STA that does not support all of the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples indicated by the Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Operation parameter in the MLME-START.request primitive.

1 **11.3.5.5 AP or PCP reassociation receipt procedures**

2 *Insert the following list item after item h:*

- 3 h1) The SME shall refuse a reassociation request from an HE STA that does not support all of the <HE-
 4 MCS, NSS> tuples indicated by the Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Operation parameter
 5 in the MLME-START.request primitive.

6 **11.3.8 Neighbor report information upon rejection with suggested BSS transition**

7 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

8 An HE STA that has received from an HE AP an Authentication or (Re)Association Response frame that has
 9 the Status Code field set to REJECTED_WITH_SUGGESTED_BSS_TRANSITION and that includes one
 10 or more Neighbor Report elements for BSSs that are part of the ESS of the HE AP shall, if it re-attempts to
 11 associate with the ESS, select an AP from (one of) the Neighbor Report element(s).

12 **11.4 TS operation**

13 **11.4.4 TS setup**

14 **11.4.4.4 TS setup procedures for both AP and non-AP STA initiation**

15 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

16 The non-AP STA's SME decides that a TS needs to be created or HE non-AP STA traffic characteristics and
 17 QoS requirements needs to be provided. The mechanism to provide traffic characteristics and QoS require-
 18 ments are described in 26.5.8 (Use of TSPEC by HE STAs). How it does this, and how it selects the TSPEC
 19 or DMG TSPEC parameters, is beyond the scope of this standard. The SME generates an MLMEAD-
 20 DTS.request primitive containing a TSPEC or DMG TSPEC. A TSPEC or DMG TSPEC may also be gener-
 21 ated autonomously by the MAC without any initiation by the SME.

22 **11.7 TPC procedures**

23 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

24 Regulations that apply to the 5 GHz band—in most regulatory domains require RLANs operating in the 5 GHz
 25 band and 6 GHz band to use transmitter power control, involving specification of a regulatory maximum
 26 transmit power and a mitigation requirement for each allowed channel. This standard describes such a mech-
 27 anism, referred to as transmit power control (TPC).

28 **11.10 Radio measurement procedures**

29 **11.10.14 Multiple BSSID set**

30 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

31 A multiple BSSID set is characterized as follows:

- 32 — All members of the set use a common operating class, channel, Channel Access Functions, and
 33 antenna connector.
- 34 — The set has a maximum range of 2^n for at least one n, where $1 \leq n \leq 46$
 - 35 • $1 \leq n \leq 8$ if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true

- $1 \leq n \leq 46$ if `dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented` (if present) is false and `dot11RMMeasurementPilotActivated` is nonzero
- Members of the set have the same 48-n bits (`BSSID[0:(47-n)]`) in their BSSIDs.
- All BSSIDs within the multiple BSSID set are assigned in a way that they are not available as MAC addresses for STAs using a different operating class, channel or antenna connector.

NOTE—For example, if the APs within BSSs with BSSIDs 16, 17, and 27 share the same operating class, channel and antenna connector, and the range of MAC addresses from 16–31 inclusive are not assigned to other STAs using a different antenna connector, then the BSSIDs 16, 17, and 27 are members of a multiple BSSID set. The set is described by $n = 4$ ($2^n = 16$) with BSSIDs in the range 16–31. The set cannot be described by $n = 8$ for instance since at least one of the BSSIDs in the range 0–255 might be used as a BSSID by an AP that does not share the same operating class, channel, and antenna connector.

11.21 Tunneled direct-link setup

11.21.1 General

Insert the following before the last paragraph:

The HE Operation element shall be present in a TDLS Setup Confirm frame when both STAs are HE capable.

11.22 Wireless network management procedures

11.22.2 Event request and report procedures

11.22.2.1 Event request and event report

Change the 1st paragraph as follows:

The Event Request and Event Report frames enable network real-time diagnostics. A STA whose `dot11EventsActivated` equal to true shall support event requests and reports and shall set to 1 the Event field of the Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits. If `dot11EventsActivated` is true and the Event Type field is neither BSS Color Collision nor BSS Color In Use, a STA shall log all Transition, RSNA, peer-to-peer, and WNM log events, including the corresponding TSF, UTC Offset and Event Time Error. An HE STA that has `dot11EventsActivated` equal to true and reports BSS color collisions shall log all BSS color collision events, including the TSF value when the STA finished logging the events that are reported (see 11.22.2.7 (BSS color collision event)).

A STA with either `dot11AutonomousBSSColorCollisionReportingImplemented` equal to true or `dot11AutonomousBSSColorInUseReportingImplemented` equal to true shall set the Event field of the Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits to 1.

Insert two new subclauses at the end of 11.22.2:

11.22.2.7 BSS color collision event

The BSS color collision event report enables a non-AP HE STA to inform its associated AP whether a BSS color collision has occurred. The report carries information about the BSS color used by OBSSs that the reporting STA is able to detect (see 26.17.3.5.2 (Autonomous reporting of BSS color collision)).

1 **11.22.2.8 BSS color in use event**

2

3 If a non-AP HE STA communicates with a peer STA with a BSS color that is different from the BSS color
 4 used by its associated AP, the non-AP HE STA may send a BSS color in use event report to its associated
 5 AP in which the Event Report field has the BSS color used in the communication with the peer STA.
 6

7 A non-AP HE STA shall send a BSS color in use event report to its associated AP with the Event Report
 8 field set to 0 to cancel a previously sent BSS color in use event report.
 9

10 An AP shall not transmit frames to a non-AP HE STA during a TXOP, if it has received a BSS color in use
 11 event report from that non-AP HE STA with a nonzero BSS color in the Event Report field and the AP
 12 ignores an inter-BSS PPDU with the same BSS color value as the one carried in the Event Report field to
 13 obtain a TXOP by following the procedure in 26.10.2.2 (General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level)
 14 and 26.10.2.3 (General operation with SRG OBSS PD level).
 15

16 **11.22.6 Fine timing measurement (FTM) procedure**

17

18 **11.22.6.4 Measurement exchange**

19

20 *Change the 10th paragraph as follows:*

21

22 For the Fine Timing Measurement frames transmitted during the FTM session:

23

- 24 — The responding STA shall not use a bandwidth wider than that indicated by the STA in the initial
 25 Fine Timing Measurement frame.
 - 26 — The responding STA shall not use an HE format if the STA indicated VHT or HT-mixed or non-HT
 27 format in the initial Fine Timing Measurement frame.
 - 28 — The responding STA shall not use a VHT format if the STA indicated HT-mixed or non-HT format
 29 in the initial Fine Timing Measurement frame.
 - 30 — The responding STA shall not use an HT format if the STA indicated non-HT format in the initial
 31 Fine Timing Measurement frame.
- 32

33 **11.22.7 BSS transition management for network load balancing**

34

35 **11.22.7.1 BSS transition capability**

36

37 *Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:*

38

39 Implementation of BSS transition management is optional for a WNM STA that is not a non-AP HE STA. A
 40 STA that implements BSS transition management has dot11BSSTransitionImplemented equal to true. When
 41 If dot11BSSTransitionImplemented is true, dot11WirelessManagementImplemented shall be true. A STA
 42 with dot11BSSTransitionActivated equal to true shall support BSS transition management and shall set to 1
 43 the BSS Transition field of the Extended Capabilities elements that it transmits. A non-AP HE STA shall
 44 have dot11BSSTransitionImplemented and dot11BSSTransitionActivated equal to true.
 45

46 **11.22.7.4 BSS transition management response**

47

48 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

49

50 The STA's SME may include the result of its BSS transition decision in the Target BSSID field and BTM
 51 Status Code field in the MLME-BTM.response primitive. A BTM Status Code field set to a value of 0 (i.e.,
 52 Accept) indicates the STA will transition from the current BSS. If a non-HE STA's SME receives an
 53 MLME-BTM.indication primitive indicating a BSS transition management request that it is unable to com-
 54 ply with, it may issue an MLME-BTM.response primitive with a status code indicating rejection may issue
 55

1 an MLME-BTM.response primitive with a valid status code not equal to a value of 0 (i.e., Accept) indicating
 2 rejection if it is unable to comply with this BSS transition management request.
 3

4 *Insert a new subclause at the end of 11.22.7 as follows:*
 5

6 **11.22.7.5 Planned ESS**
 7

8 The AP may transmit an ESS Report element (see 9.4.2.255 (ESS Report element)) to indicate whether or
 9 not it is in a planned ESS, to assist associated STAs' roaming. If it indicates that it is in a planned ESS, it
 10 indicates whether or not it is at the physical edge of the ESS and can provide a recommendation on the RSSI
 11 level to consider for BSS transition.
 12

13 If the AP transmits an ESS Report element, it shall set the Planned ESS subfield in the ESS Information field
 14 to 1 if it is part of an ESS that is planned with several BSSs in overlapping configuration, whereby an asso-
 15 ciated STA may adjust its BSS transition algorithms accordingly. Otherwise, it shall set the Planned ESS
 16 subfield to 0.
 17

18 If the Planned ESS subfield is 1, then the AP shall set the Edge Of ESS subfield in the ESS Information field
 19 of the ESS Report element to 1 if the AP's BSS is at the edge of an ESS (e.g., exit of a building). Otherwise,
 20 it shall set the Edge Of ESS subfield to 0.
 21

22 NOTE—A non-AP STA could then prepare for more aggressive roaming or the device the non-AP STA is in could then
 23 prepare for switching to a different system. However, how the non-AP STA uses the edge of ESS information is imple-
 24 mentation specific and beyond the scope of this standard.
 25

26 If the Planned ESS subfield is 1, then the AP shall set the Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold
 27 Within ESS subfield in the ESS Information field of the ESS Report element to indicate the Beacon RSSI
 28 below which an associated STA should initiate a BSS transition. Otherwise, it shall set the Recommended
 29 BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield to 0.
 30

31 NOTE—A non-AP STA could then use the Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS subfield to
 32 modify when it starts scanning for a new BSS. However, how the non-AP STA adjusts its BSS transition algorithms is
 33 implementation specific and beyond the scope of this standard.
 34

35 The value of the Edge Of ESS subfield and the Recommended BSS Transition RSSI Threshold Within ESS
 36 subfield may be changed by the AP if conditions in the ESS change. An AP shall not change the value of the
 37 Planned ESS subfield over the lifetime of the BSS.
 38

39 **11.32 Multi-band operation**
 40

41 **11.32.5 On-channel Tunneling (OCT) operation**
 42

43 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*
 44

45 Either of the following conditions indicates that a STA supports OCT and has the dot11OCTOptionImple-
 46 mented equal to true:
 47

- 48 — A STA supports the OCT if the OCT Not Supported subfield within the STA's Multi-band element is
 49 0
- 50 — A non-AP STA supports OCT if the OCT field is equal to true in the Extended Capabilities elements
 51 it transmits.
- 52 — If a reporting AP sends a frame with a Reduced Neighbor Report element with a TBTT Information
 53 field describing a reported AP that has the OCT Recommended subfield equal to 1, then both the
 54 reporting AP and the reported AP support OCT.

- 1 = If a reporting AP sends a frame with a Neighbor Report element describing a reported AP that has
 2 the OCT Supported With Reporting AP subfield equal to 1, then both the reporting AP and the
 3 reported AP support OCT.

4
 5 A STA should not perform OCT with a peer STA that does not support the OCT. A STA that does not sup-
 6 port the OCT shall ignore a received OCT MMPDU.
 7
 8

9 *Change the 2nd paragraph as follows:*

10
 11 OCT allows a STA of a multi-band capable device to transmit an MMPDU that was constructed by a differ-
 12 ent STA of the same device. OCT provides the following:
 13
 14

- 15 = allows a STA of a multi-band capable device or a STA that is in the same device as another STA to
 16 transmit or forward an MMPDU that was constructed by, addressed by or addressed to a different
 17 STA in the same device
- 18 = allows an AP to transmit or forward an MMPDU that was constructed by, addressed by, or addressed
 19 to another AP if either one of the APs sends a Reduced Neighbor Report element with a TBTT Infor-
 20 mation field describing the other AP or if either one of the APs sends a Neighbor Report element
 21 describing the other AP, and where both APs support OCT

22
 23 An MMPDU transmitted this way is referred to as an *OCT MMPDU*. The MLME of the nontransmitting
 24 STA that constructs or is the destination of an OCT MMPDU is referred to as an *NT-MLME*. The MLME of
 25 the STA that transmits or receives an OCT MMPDU over the air is referred to as a *TR-MLME*. An NT-
 26 MLME that constructs an OCT MMPDU destined to a peer NT-MLME does so according to the capabilities
 27 of the STA that contains the peer NT-MLME.
 28
 29

30 NOTE—OCT can be used in conjunction with or independent from the FST setup protocol.
 31
 32

33 *Change the 7th paragraph as follows:*

34
 35 To transmit a tunneled MMPDU, the SME of a ~~multi-band capable device~~ STA that supports OCT generates
 36 an OCT MLME request primitive that includes the peer Multi-band element and the local Multi-band ele-
 37 ment. If the OCT MLME request primitive is the MLME-SCAN.request primitive with ScanType parameter
 38 set to ACTIVE, the BSSID field within the peer Multi-band element shall be set to the value of the BSSID
 39 parameter in the MLME-SCAN.request primitive and the BSSID field within the local Multi-band element
 40 shall be set to an individual MAC address.
 41
 42

43 **11.46 Fast Initial Link Setup (FILS) procedures**

44 **11.46.2 FILS Discovery frame generation and usage**

45 **11.46.2.1 FILS Discovery frame transmission**

46 *Change the 3rd paragraph as follows:*

47
 48 If an AP transmits a FILS Discovery frame as a non-HT duplicate PPDU in an 80+80 MHz channel band-
 49 width, the Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 field shall be present in the FILS Discovery frame and shall
 50 be set to the channel center frequency of the frequency segment 1 for an 80+80 MHz VHT or HE operating
 51 channel.
 52
 53

54 *Insert the following at the end of the subclause:*

55
 56 The Address 1 field of the FILS Discovery frame shall be set to the broadcast address.
 57
 58

1 For the APs in a multiple BSSID set, only the AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID may transmit a
 2 FILS Discovery frame. If `dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented` is true, then the following applies to the fields in
 3 the FILS Discovery frame:

- 4
- 5 — The SSID or Short SSID field shall be set to the SSID or short SSID, respectively, of the transmitted
 BSSID
 - 6 — The FILS Capability field shall be present and the Multiple BSSIDs Presence Indicator subfield shall
 be set to 1

11.50 Reduced neighbor report

15 *Change the 1st paragraph as follows:*

16

17 In Beacon and Probe Response frames, a Reduced Neighbor Report element may be transmitted by an AP
 18 with `dot11TVHTOptionImplemented`, or `dot11FILSAActivated` or `dot11ColocatedRNRImplemented` equal to
 19 true. In FILS Discovery frames, a Reduced Neighbor Report element is optionally sent by a FILS AP. An
 20 AP that operates in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band and that is in the same co-located AP set as one or more 6
 21 GHz APs shall follow the rules in 26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS) for including a
 22 Reduced Neighbor Report element in Beacon and Probe Response frames. A Reduced Neighbor Report ele-
 23 ment contains information on neighbor APs. A Reduced Neighbor Report element might not be exhaustive
 24 either by choice or by the fact that there may be neighbor APs not known to the AP.

25

26 An AP with `dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented` equal to true shall not include Reduced Neighbor Report ele-
 27 ment in the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement of the Multiple BSSID element.

28

29 NOTE—The Beacon, Probe Response or FILS Discovery frame of an AP with `dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented` equal
 30 true can carry the Reduced Neighbor Report element.

35 *Insert the following paragraphs after the 1st paragraph*

36

37 If an AP reported in a TBTT Information field in a Reduced Neighbor Report element is not part of a multi-
 38 ple BSSID set, then the BSS Parameters subfield, if included, shall have the Multiple BSSID subfield set to
 39 0. If an AP reported in a TBTT Information field in a Reduced Neighbor Report element is a transmited
 40 BSSID, then the BSS Parameters subfield, if included, shall have the Multiple BSSID subfield set to 1 and
 41 the Transmitted BSSID subfield set to 1. If an AP reported in a TBTT Information field in a Reduced Neigh-
 42 bor Report element is a nontransmitted BSSID, then the BSS Parameters subfield, if included, shall have the
 43 Multiple BSSID subfield set to 1 and the Transmitted BSSID subfield set to 0.

44

45 A reporting AP should set the OCT Recommended subfield to 1 in the BSS Parameters subfield of a TBTT
 46 Information field in a Reduced Neighbor Report element if both the reporting AP and the reported AP have
 47 the `dot11OCTOptionImplemented` equal to true and the Co-Located AP subfield is 1 in the same BSS
 48 Parameters subfield. A reporting AP may set the OCT Recommended subfield to 1 in the BSS Parameters
 49 subfield of a TBTT Information field in a Reduced Neighbor Report element if both the reporting AP and
 50 the reported AP have the same SSID and have the `dot11OCTOptionImplemented` equal to true and the Co-
 51 Located AP subfield is 0 in the same BSS Parameters subfield. If the OCT Recommended subfield is 1 and
 52 the Co-Located AP subfield is 1 in the Neighbor AP Information field describing a reported HE AP in the
 53 Reduced Neighbor Report element, then a non-AP STA that has the `dot11OCTOptionImplemented` equal to
 54 true should use the OCT procedure described in 11.32.5 (On-channel Tunneling (OCT) operation) to per-
 55 form active scanning, authentication and/or association with the reported AP through over-the-air transmis-
 56 sions with the AP that sent the Reduced Neighbor Report element. If the OCT Recommended subfield is 1
 57 and the Co-Located AP subfield is 0 in the Neighbor AP Information field describing a reported HE AP in
 58 the Reduced Neighbor Report element, then a non-AP STA that has the `dot11OCTOptionImplemented`
 59 equal to true may use the OCT procedure described in 11.32.5 (On-channel Tunneling (OCT) operation) to

1 perform active scanning, authentication and/or association with the reported AP through over-the-air trans-
2 missions with the AP that sent the Reduced Neighbor Report element.
3

4 ***Change the last paragraph of the subclause as follows:***
5

6 A STA that receives a Neighbor AP Information field with a recognized TBTT Information Field Type sub-
7 field but an unrecognized TBTT Information Length subfield ~~shall ignore that Neighbor AP Information~~
8 ~~field and continue to process remaining Neighbor AP Information fields~~
9 ~~has two possible ways of processing the received information: (1) ignore that Neighbor AP Information field and continue to process the sub-~~
10 ~~sequent Neighbor AP Information fields or (2) process the first 12 octets of each TBTT Information field of~~
11 ~~the Neighbor AP Information field as if the TBTT Information Length subfield had value 12, ignore the~~
12 ~~remaining TBTT Information Length minus 12 octets of each TBTT Information field of the Neighbor AP~~
13 ~~Information field, and continue to process the subsequent Neighbor AP Information fields. If the unrecog-~~
14 ~~nized TBTT Information Length value is less than or equal to 12, the STA shall follow the alternative (1). If~~
15 ~~the unrecognized TBTT Information Length value is greater than 12, an HE STA shall follow the alternative~~
16 ~~(2) and a non-HE STA shall follow either the alternative (1) or (2).~~
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

14. MLME mesh procedures

14.2 Mesh discovery

14.2.4 Mesh STA configuration

Change as follows:

The mesh STA configuration consists of the mesh profile (see 14.2.3 (Mesh profile)), the Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element, the Extended Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element, the HT Operations element (if present), and the VHT Operations element (if present), and the HE Operation element (if present).

Mesh STA configurations are identical if the following conditions hold:

- The mesh profiles are identical.
- The BSSBasicRateSet parameter of the MLME-START.request primitive is identical to the basic rate set indicated by the Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element and Extended Supported Rates and BSS Membership Selectors element, if present, received in the MLME-MESH-PEERINGMANAGEMENT.indication primitive.
- For HT mesh STAs, the Basic HT-MCS Set field of the HT Operation parameter of the MLME-START.request primitive is identical to the HT Operation element received in the MLME-MESH-PEERINGMANAGEMENT.indication primitive.
- For VHT mesh STAs, the Basic VHT-MCS and NSS fields in the VHT Operation element of the MLME-START.request primitive are identical to the Basic VHT-MCS and NSS fields in the VHT Operation element received in the MLME-MESHPEERINGMANAGEMENT.indication primitive.
- For HE mesh STAs, the Basic HE-MCS and NSS Set field in the HE Operation element of the MLME-START.request primitive are identical to the Basic HE-MCS and NSS Set field in the HE Operation element received in the MLME-MESHPEERINGMANAGEMENT.indication primitive.

14.2.7 Candidate peer mesh STA

Insert a new bullet after bullet e) in the second paragraph and reletter:

The discovered neighbor mesh STA shall be considered a candidate peer mesh STA if and only if all of the following conditions are met:

- e1) If both the scanning mesh STA and the discovered neighbor STA are HE STAs, the mesh STA uses the same value for the Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field in its HE Operation element as received in the Beacon or Probe Response frame from the neighbor mesh STA.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **18. Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification**
 2
 3
 4

5 **18.2 PHY-specific service parameter list**
 6
 7

8 *Insert the following rows after the last row in Table 18-1:*
 9
 10

11 **Table 18-1—TXVECTOR parameters**

Parameter	Value
CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	If present, CBW20 or CBW40
DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	If present, Static or Dynamic

19
 20 *Insert the following rows after the last row in Table 18-3:*
 21
 22
 23

24 **Table 18-3—RXVECTOR parameters**

Parameter	Value
CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	If present, CBW20 or CBW40
DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	If present, Static or Dynamic

35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 *Insert new Clauses 26 and 27 following Clause 25 as follows:*
 2
 3
 4
 5

6 26. High Efficiency (HE) MAC specification

8 26.1 Introduction

10 An HE STA supports the MAC and MLME functions defined in Clause 26 in addition to the MAC functions
 11 defined in Clause 10, the MLME functions defined in Clause 11, and the security functions defined in
 12 Clause 12 except when the functions in Clause 26 supersede the functions in Clause 10 or Clause 11. A suc-
 13 cessfully acknowledged frame transmitted by a non-AP STA in response to a Basic Trigger frame is a suc-
 14 cessful frame exchange initiated by the STA as referred to in Clause 11 and Clause 12.

18 26.2 HE channel access

21 26.2.1 TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS

24 In an HE BSS, the use of RTS/CTS can be TXOP duration-based or PSDU length-based. An HE AP can
 25 configure a non-AP HE STA to use the TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS exchanges to help mitigate interfer-
 26 ence in dense environments.

29 An HE AP may set the TXOP Duration RTS Threshold subfield of HE Operation element it transmits to a
 30 value between 1 and 1022 to enable TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS exchanges of its associated STAs. The
 31 AP may set the TXOP Duration RTS Threshold field to 1023 to disable TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS
 32 exchanges of its associated STAs. The AP may in Beacon and Probe Response frames set the TXOP Dura-
 33 tion RTS Threshold field to 0 to make no changes to TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS exchanges of its asso-
 34 ciated STAs.

37 If the TXOP Duration RTS Threshold subfield in the most recently received HE Operation element sent by
 38 the AP to which a non-AP HE STA is associated is equal to a nonzero value, then the non-AP HE STA shall
 39 set dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold to the value of the TXOP Duration RTS Threshold subfield. Other-
 40 wise, the non-AP HE STA shall not update dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold.

43 The TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS exchange is disabled at a non-AP HE STA if dot11TXOPDurationRT-
 44 SThreshold is 1023. The TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS exchange is enabled at a non-AP HE STA when
 45 dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold is less than 1023.

49 A non-AP HE STA shall use an RTS/CTS exchange to initiate a TXOP if TXOP duration-based RTS/CTS
 50 exchange is enabled at a non-AP HE STA and the following conditions are met:

- 51 — The STA intends to transmit individually addressed frames to the HE AP or to a TDLS peer STA
- 52 — The TXOP duration is greater than or equal to $32 \mu\text{s} \times \text{dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold}$

55 Otherwise, the non-AP HE STA follows the rules defined in 10.3.1 (General).

58 26.2.2 Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification

61 A STA shall classify a received PPDU as an inter-BSS PPDU if at least one of the following conditions is
 62 true:

- 63 — The RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is not 0 and is not the BSS color of the BSS of which the
 64 STA is a member.

- The PPDU is a VHT PPDU with RXVECTOR parameter PARTIAL_AID not equal to the BSSID[39:47] of the BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs and the RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID is 0.
- The PPDU is a VHT PPDU with RXVECTOR parameter PARTIAL_AID[5:8] not equal to the 4 LSBs of the BSS color announced by the BSS of which the STA whose dot11PartialBSSColorImplemented is equal to true is a member and RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID equal to 63 when the Partial BSS Color field in the most recent HE Operation element is 1.
- The PPDU is either a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU with the RXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG equal to 0 and the STA is an AP.
- The PPDU carries a frame that has a BSSID field, the value of which is not the BSSID of the BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs or the wildcard BSSID.
- The PPDU carries a frame that does not have a BSSID field but has both an RA field and TA field, neither value of which is equal to the BSSID of the BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs. The Individual/Group bit in the TA field value is forced to 0 prior to comparison.

A STA shall classify the received PPDU as an intra-BSS PPDU if at least one of the following conditions is true:

- The RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of the PPDU carrying the frame is the BSS color of the BSS of which the STA is a member or the BSS color of any TDLS links to which the STA belongs if the STA is an HE STA associated with a non-HE AP.
- The PPDU is a VHT PPDU with RXVECTOR parameter PARTIAL_AID equal to the BSSID[39:47] of the BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs and the RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID equal to 0.
- The PPDU is a VHT PPDU with RXVECTOR parameter PARTIAL_AID[5:8] equal to the 4 LSBs of the BSS color announced by of the BSS of which the STA whose dot11PartialBSSColorImplemented is equal to true is a member, the RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID is equal to 63 and the Partial BSS Color field in the most recent HE Operation element is 1.
- The PPDU carries a frame that has an RA, TA or BSSID field value that is equal to the BSSID of the BSS or the BSSID of any BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs. The Individual/Group bit in the TA field value is forced to the value 0 prior to the comparison.
- The PPDU carries a Control frame that does not have a TA field and that has an RA field value that matches the saved TXOP holder address of the BSS or any BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs.

NOTE—See 10.20 (Group ID and partial AID in VHT and CMMG PPDUs) for the definition of PARTIAL_AID[5:8] and BSSID[39:47].

Otherwise, the PPDU cannot be determined as an intra-BSS or inter-BSS PPDU.

If the received PPDU satisfies both intra-BSS and inter-BSS conditions by using the MAC address information of a frame carried in the PPDU, then the received PPDU is classified as an intra-BSS PPDU.

If the received PPDU satisfies the intra-BSS conditions using the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR and also satisfies the inter-BSS conditions using MAC address information of a frame carried in the PPDU, then the classification made using the MAC address information takes precedence.

1 A frame carried in a PPDU identified as an intra-BSS PPDU is an intra-BSS frame. A frame carried in a
 2 PPDU identified as an inter-BSS PPDU is an inter-BSS frame.
 3

4 If a STA determines that the BSS color is temporarily disabled (see 26.17.3.3 (Disabling BSS color)), then
 5 the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of a PPDU shall not be used to classify the PPDU.
 6

7 26.2.3 SRG PPDU identification

8 Identification of SRG and non-SRG PPDUs is used during SRG OBSS PD spatial reuse operation as
 9 described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).
 10

11 A non-AP HE STA that has received a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP with a
 12 value of 1 in the SRG Information Present subfield shall use information provided in the Spatial Reuse
 13 Parameter Set element to identify BSSs that are members of the STA's SRG to determine if a received inter-
 14 BSS PPDU is an SRG PPDU. An HE AP may use an SRG that is different from the SRG that it transmits to
 15 other STAs in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set elements to determine whether or not a received inter- BSS
 16 PPDU is an SRG PPDU.
 17

18 A received HE PPDU that is an inter-BSS PPDU is an SRG PPDU if the bit in the SRG BSS Color Bitmap
 19 field indexed by the value of the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is 1 (see 9.4.2.251 (Spatial Reuse
 20 Parameter Set element)). A received VHT PPDU that is an inter-BSS PPDU is an SRG PPDU if the
 21 GROUP_ID parameter of the RXVECTOR has a value of 0 and the bit in the SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap
 22 field that corresponds to the numerical value of PARTIAL_AID[0:5] of the RXVECTOR is 1 (see 9.4.2.251
 23 (Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element)).
 24

25 A received PPDU that is an inter-BSS PPDU is an SRG PPDU if BSSID information from a frame carried in
 26 the PPDU is correctly received and the bit in the SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap field that corresponds to the
 27 numerical value of BSSID[39:44] is 1.
 28

29 A VHT PPDU that is an inter-BSS PPDU and that is received with RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID
 30 equal to 0 is an SRG PPDU if the bit in the SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap field that corresponds to the numeri-
 31 cal value of bits [39:44] of the RA field of any correctly received frame from the PPDU is 1.
 32

33 A VHT PPDU that is an inter-BSS PPDU and that is received with RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID
 34 equal to 63 is an SRG PPDU if the bit in the SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap field that corresponds to the numeri-
 35 cal value of bits [39:44] of the TA field of any correctly received frame from the PPDU is 1.
 36

37 An HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU that is an inter-BSS PPDU and that is received with
 38 the RXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG equal to 1 is an SRG PPDU if the bit in the SRG Partial
 39 BSSID Bitmap field that corresponds to the numerical value of bits [39:44] of the RA field of any correctly
 40 received frame from the PPDU is 1.
 41

42 Otherwise, the PPDU is not determined to be an SRG PPDU. A non-AP HE STA that has not received a
 43 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP with a value of 1 in the SRG Information Pres-
 44 ent subfield shall not classify any received PPDUs as an SRG PPDU. An HE AP that has not transmitted a
 45 Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element with a value of 1 in the SRG Information Present subfield may classify
 46 received PPDUs as SRG PPDUs using information that it has not transmitted.
 47

48 26.2.4 Updating two NAVs

49 A non-AP HE STA shall maintain two NAVs and an HE AP may maintain two NAVs: an intra-BSS NAV
 50 and a basic NAV. The intra-BSS NAV is updated by an intra-BSS PPDU. The basic NAV is updated by an
 51 inter-BSS PPDU or a PPDU that cannot be classified as intra-BSS or inter-BSS. The mechanism by which a
 52

1 PPDU is classified intra-BSS or inter-BSS is defined in 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification).
 2
 3

4 Maintaining two NAVs is beneficial in dense deployment scenarios in which a STA requires protection from
 5 frames transmitted by STAs within its BSS, i.e., intra-BSS, and avoid interference from frames transmitted
 6 by STAs in a neighboring BSS, i.e., inter-BSS. For example, in a TXOP initiated by the AP with which a
 7 STA is associated for an HE TB PPDU transmission, the intra-BSS NAV of the STA is set by the AP to pre-
 8 vent the STA from contending for the channel. The basic NAV of the STA is not updated by transmissions
 9 from the AP during the TXOP so that if the basic NAV of the STA is nonzero and the STA receives, from
 10 the AP, a Trigger frame with the CS Required subfield equal to 1, the STA will not respond (see 26.5.2.5
 11 (UL MU CS mechanism)).
 12
 13

14 The requirements in 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism) apply to an HE STA maintaining two NAVs with the excep-
 15 tion of the virtual CS indication of medium. For an HE STA maintaining two NAVs, if both the NAV timers
 16 are 0, the virtual CS indication is that the medium is idle; if at least one of the two NAV timers is nonzero,
 17 the virtual CS indication is that the medium is busy.
 18
 19

20 The procedure in 10.3.2.9 (CTS and DMG CTS procedure) applies to an HE STA maintaining two NAVs,
 21 and the NAV referred by the description in 10.3.2.7 is the basic NAV.
 22
 23

24 The duration information is indicated by a frame as follows:
 25

- 26 — If there is a Duration field in the frame, then the duration information is indicated by the Duration
 27 field.
- 28 — If the frame is a PS-Poll, then the duration information is equal to the time, in microseconds, required
 29 to transmit one Ack frame plus one SIFS under the data rate selection rules. If the calculated dura-
 30 tion information includes a fractional microsecond, that duration information is rounded up to the
 31 next higher integer.

32 A STA shall update the intra-BSS NAV with the duration information indicated by the received frame in a
 33 PSDU if and only if all the following conditions are met:
 34

- 35 — The frame is identified as intra-BSS according to the rule described in 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-
 36 BSS PPDU classification).
- 37 — The indicated duration is greater than the current intra-BSS NAV value.
- 38 — The RA of the received frame is not the STA's MAC address, or the STA is not a TXOP holder and
 39 the PPDU carrying the frame does not contain a frame that solicits an immediate response from the
 40 STA, or the STA is not a TXOP holder and the received frame is a Trigger frame.

41 A STA shall update the basic NAV with the duration information indicated by the received frame in a PSDU
 42 if and only if all the following conditions are met:
 43

- 44 — The frame is identified as inter-BSS or cannot be identified as intra-BSS or inter-BSS according to
 45 the rule described in 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification).
- 46 — The indicated duration is greater than the current basic NAV value.
- 47 — The RA of the received frame is not the STA's MAC address.

48 A STA that is a TXOP holder shall not update the intra-BSS NAV with the duration information indicated
 49 by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION.
 50
 51

52 A STA that is not a TXOP holder shall update the intra-BSS NAV with the duration information indicated
 53 by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION for an HE PPDU if and only if all the following condi-
 54 tions are met:
 55

- 56 — The RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is not UNSPECIFIED.

- The PPDU that carried information of the RXVECTOR parameter is identified as intra-BSS according to the rule described in 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification).
- The STA does not receive a frame with a Duration field in the PPDU.
- The duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is greater than the current intra-BSS NAV of the STA.

A STA shall update the basic NAV with the duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION for an HE PPDU if and only if all the following conditions are met:

- The RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is not UNSPECIFIED.
- The PPDU that carried information for the RXVECTOR parameter is identified as inter-BSS or cannot be identified as intra-BSS or inter-BSS according to the rule described in 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification).
- The STA does not receive a frame with a Duration field in the PPDU.
- The duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is greater than the current basic NAV of the STA.

NOTE 1—if a PS-Poll frame is received in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, or HE MU PPDU, then the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION does not indicate duration information (see 26.11.5 (TXOP_DURATION)).

NOTE 2—if a STA receives an HE PPDU with the duration information indicated by both a frame with a Duration field and the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION, then the duration information indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is ignored.

NOTE 3—the additional rules of NAV consideration for a STA that is solicited for an immediate response are described in 10.3.2.7 (CTS and DMG CTS procedure), 10.3.2.9 (Acknowledgment procedure), and 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism).

A PHY-CCARESET.request primitive shall be issued if one of the following condition is met:

- One NAV is reset, and the other NAV timer is 0.
- Both NAVs are reset simultaneously.

The NAVs (if any) are updated at the expected end of the PPDU as defined in 10.3.2.4 (Setting and resetting the NAV).

An HE STA that used information from an RTS or MU-RTS Trigger frame as the most recent basis to update its NAV is permitted to reset the NAV that is updated by the RTS or MU-RTS Trigger frame if no PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive is received from the PHY during a period with a duration of $2 \times \text{aSIFSTime} + \text{CTS_Time} + \text{aRxPHYStartDelay} + 2 \times \text{aSlotTime}$ starting when the MAC receives a PHY-RXEND.indication primitive corresponding to the detection of the RTS or MU-RTS Trigger frame (see 10.3.2.4 (Setting and resetting the NAV) for the definition of CTS_Time).

26.2.5 Truncation of TXOP

A non-AP HE STA that is not associated with an HE AP shall interpret the reception of a CF-End frame as a NAV reset, i.e., it reset its maintained NAV to 0 at the end of the PPDU containing this frame.

An HE AP that maintains one NAV (see 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism)) and receives a CF-End frame should reset the NAV unless either of following conditions are met:

- The received CF-End frame is an inter-BSS frame and the most recently updated NAV was due to an intra-BSS frame (see 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification)).
- The received CF-End frame is an intra-BSS frame and the most recently updated NAV was due to an inter-BSS frame (see 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification)).

1 An HE STA that maintains two NAVs (see 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)) and receives a CF-End frame
 2 should reset the basic NAV if the received CF-End frame is an inter-BSS frame and reset the intra-BSS
 3 NAV if the received CF-End frame is an intra-BSS frame.
 4

5 An HE STA that maintains two NAVs may reset both NAVs if the received CF-End frame is an intra-BSS
 6 frame and the basic NAV was updated due to a frame that cannot be identified as either inter-BSS frame or
 7 intra-BSS frame.
 8

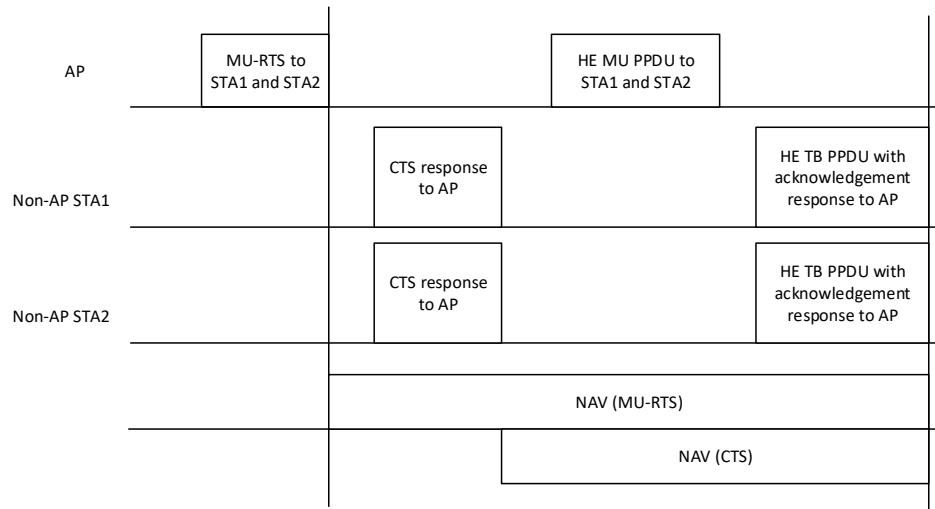
9 An HE STA that receives a CF-End frame and resets all its maintained NAV(s) can start contending for the
 10 medium without further delay.
 11

14 **26.2.6 MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure**

16 **26.2.6.1 General**

18 The MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure allows an AP to initiate a TXOP and protect the
 19 TXOP frame exchanges. An AP may transmit an MU-RTS Trigger frame to solicit simultaneous CTS frame
 20 responses from one or more non-AP STAs.
 21

23 Figure 26-1 (Example of MU-RTS/CTS/DL MU PPDU/Acknowledgment Response and NAV setting)
 24 shows an example of the exchange of MU-RTS and simultaneous CTS responses to protect the DL MU
 25 PPDU and the acknowledgment responses.
 26



50 **Figure 26-1—Example of MU-RTS/CTS/DL MU PPDU/Acknowledgment Response and NAV
 51 setting**

Figure 26-2 (Example of MU-RTS/CTS/Trigger/HE TB PPDU/Multi-STA BlockAck and NAV setting) shows an example of the exchange of MU-RTS and simultaneous CTS responses to protect the HE TB PPDU and Multi-STA BlockAck frame.

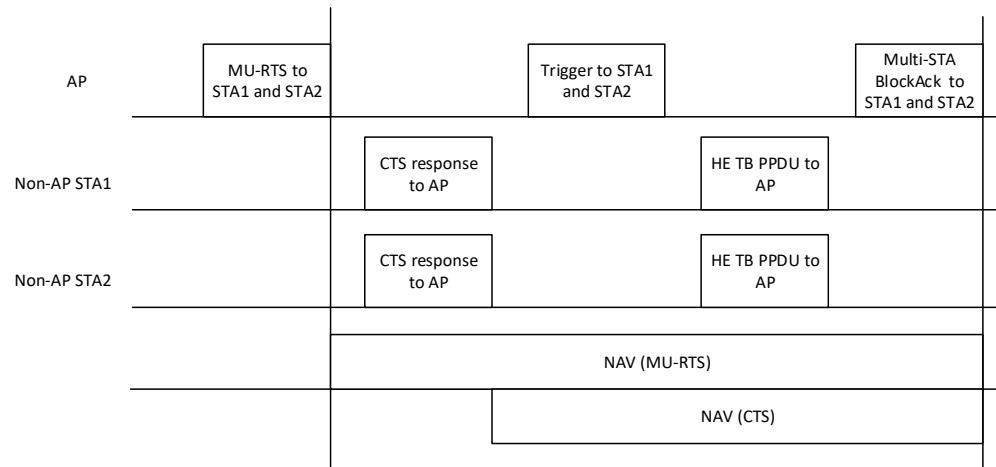


Figure 26-2—Example of MU-RTS/CTS/Trigger/HE TB PPDU/Multi-STA BlockAck and NAV setting

26.2.6.2 MU-RTS Trigger frame transmission

In each 20 MHz channel occupied by the PPDU that contains an MU-RTS Trigger frame, the transmitter of the MU-RTS Trigger frame shall request at least one non-AP STA to send a CTS frame response that occupies the 20 MHz channel. The transmitter of an MU-RTS Trigger frame shall not request a non-AP STA to send a CTS frame response in a 20 MHz channel that is not occupied by the PPDU that contains the MU-RTS Trigger frame.

After transmitting an MU-RTS Trigger frame, the AP shall wait for a CTSTimeout interval of aSIFSTime + aSlotTime + aRxPHYStartDelay that begins when the MAC receives the PHY-TXEND.confirm primitive for the transmitted MU-RTS Trigger frame. If the MAC does not receive a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive during the CTSTimeout interval, the AP shall conclude that the transmission of the MU-RTS Trigger frame has failed, and, if the MU-RTS Trigger frame initiated a TXOP, the AP shall invoke its backoff procedure. If the MAC receives a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive during the CTSTimeout interval, then the MAC shall wait for the corresponding PHY-RXEND.indication primitive to determine whether the MU-RTS Trigger frame transmission was successful. The receipt of a CTS frame from any non-AP STA addressed by the MU-RTS Trigger frame before the PHY-RXEND.indication primitive shall be interpreted as the successful transmission of the MU-RTS Trigger frame, permitting the frame exchange sequence to continue. The receipt of any other type of frame shall be interpreted as a failure of the MU-RTS Trigger frame transmission. In this instance, the AP may process the received frame and, if the MU-RTS Trigger frame initiated a TXOP, shall invoke its backoff procedure at the PHY-RXEND.indication primitive.

NOTE—If an AP transmits an MU-RTS Trigger frame in an already initiated TXOP and the MU-RTS Trigger frame transmission fails, then the AP might perform a PIFS recovery as described in 10.23.2.8 (Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP) or invoke the backoff procedure described in 10.23.2.2 (EDCA backoff procedure).

An MU-RTS Trigger frame shall not be carried in a VHT MU PPDU or an HE MU PPDU.

1 **26.2.6.3 CTS frame response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame**

2

3

4 If a non-AP STA receives an MU-RTS Trigger frame, the non-AP STA shall commence the transmission of
 5 a CTS frame response at the SIFS time boundary after the end of a received PPDU when all the following
 6 conditions are met:

7

- 8 — The MU-RTS Trigger frame has one of the User Info fields addressed to the non-AP STA. The User
 9 Info field is addressed to a non-AP STA if the AID12 subfield is equal to the 12 LSBs of the AID of
 10 the STA and the MU-RTS Trigger frame is sent by the AP with which the non-AP STA is associated
 11 or by the AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID if the non-AP STA is associated with a non-
 12 transmitted BSSID and has indicated support for receiving Control frames with TA field set to the
 13 transmitted BSSID by setting the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield to 1 in the HE Capabili-
 14 ties element that the non-AP STA transmits.
- 15 — The UL MU CS condition indicates that the medium is idle (see 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism)).

16 Otherwise, the non-AP STA shall not send a CTS frame response.

17

18 NOTE 1—The RU Allocation subfield in the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA indicates whether the CTS
 19 frame response is to be sent on the primary 20 MHz channel, primary 40 MHz channel, primary 80 MHz channel,
 20 160 MHz channel, or 80+80 MHz channel as described in 9.3.1.22.5 (MU-RTS variant).

21 NOTE 2—A combination of virtual CS and ED-based CCA during the SIFS after the PPDU containing the MU-RTS
 22 Trigger frame is used to determine the state of the medium (see 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism)).

23 The CTS frame sent in response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame shall be carried in a non-HT or non-HT dupli-
 24 cate PPDU (see Clause 17) with a 6 Mb/s rate and with the TXVECTOR parameter SCRAMBLER_INI-
 25 TIAL_VALUE set to the same value as the RXVECTOR parameter SCRAMBLER_INITIAL_VALUE of
 26 the PPDU carrying the MU-RTS Trigger frame. The PPDU carrying the CTS frame shall be transmitted on
 27 the 20 MHz channels indicated in the RU Allocation subfield of the User Info field of the MU-RTS Trigger
 28 frame.

29 NOTE—A bandwidth signaling TA is not used in an MU-RTS Trigger frame or a CTS frame response to an MU-RTS
 30 Trigger frame (see 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format) and 9.3.1.3 (CTS frame format)). As a result, the TXVECTOR
 31 parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT is not present when transmitting an MU-RTS Trigger frame or CTS frame
 32 response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame. In Figure 17-7 (Data scrambler) the first 7 bits of scrambling sequence of an
 33 MU-RTS Trigger frame or CTS frame response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame are not defined by Table 17-7 (Contents of
 34 the first 7 bits of the scrambling sequence).

35 The Power Management and More Data subfields in a CTS frame sent in response to an MU-RTS Trigger
 36 frame shall be set to 0.

37 NOTE—Other subfields of the Frame Control field of the CTS frames sent in response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame are
 38 set as described in Figure 9-26 ((Frame Control field subfield values within Control frames carried in a non-S1G
 39 PPDU)).

40 Figure 26-3 (An example of an MU-RTS Trigger frame soliciting CTS frame responses on the primary 40
 41 MHz channel) shows an example of the exchange of an MU-RTS Trigger frame and simultaneous CTS
 42 frame responses on the primary 40 MHz channel. In this example, MU-RTS Trigger frame is transmitted in
 43 a 40 MHz non-HT duplicate PPDU on the primary 40 MHz channel. Further, the MU-RTS Trigger frame
 44 requests non-AP STA1 to transmit a CTS frame response in a non-HT PPDU on the primary 20 MHz chan-

nel and non-AP STA2 to transmit a CTS frame response in a 40 MHz non-HT duplicate PPDU on the primary 40 MHz channel.

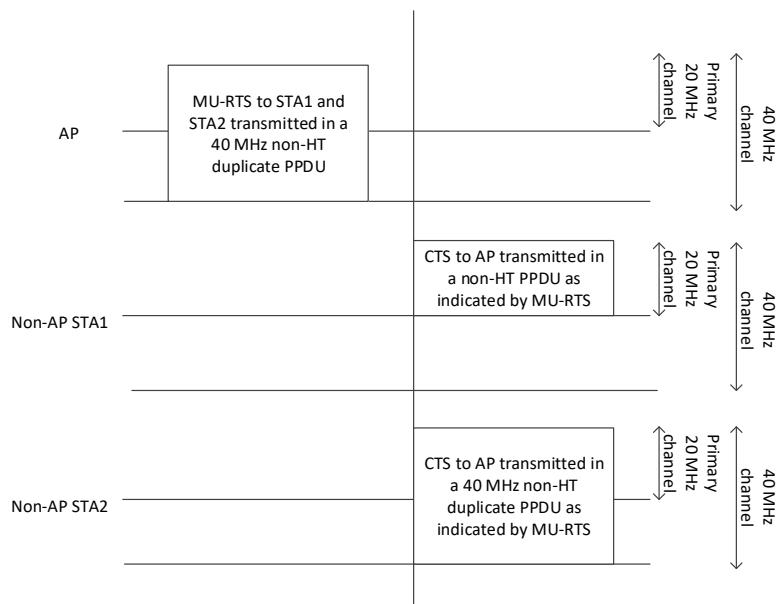


Figure 26-3—An example of an MU-RTS Trigger frame soliciting CTS frame responses on the primary 40 MHz channel

A non-AP STA that transmits a CTS frame in response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame shall follow the synchronization requirement defined in 27.3.14.3 (Pre-correction accuracy requirements).

26.2.7 EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters

A non-AP STA that receives an MU EDCA Parameter Set element from the AP to which it is associated follows the procedure defined in this subclause.

An HE AP that has dot11MUEDCAParametersActivated equal to true includes the MU EDCA Parameter Set element in the Management frames it transmits that include the EDCA Parameter Set element, if the AP announces non-default EDCA parameters following the rules defined in 10.2.3.2 (HCF contention based channel access). An HE AP shall set the QoS Info field of an MU EDCA Parameter Set element (if present) to the same value as the QoS Info field of an EDCA Parameter Set element (if present). An HE AP may change the MU EDCA parameters by including the MU EDCA Parameter Set element with updated MU EDCA parameters in the Beacon frames and Probe Response frames it transmits. The EDCA Parameter Set Update Count subfield in the QoS Info field of the EDCA Parameter Set element and MU EDCA Parameter Set element is incremented every time any of the EDCA parameters or the MU EDCA parameters change.

An HE STA shall update the dot11EDCATable and dot11MUEDCATable that correspond to fields in an EDCA Parameter Set element or an MU EDCA Parameter Set element within an interval of time equal to one beacon interval after receiving an updated EDCA or MU EDCA parameter set. When updating its MIB attributes, an HE STA stores the value of the EDCA Parameter Set Update Count subfield in the QoS Info field of the received EDCA Parameter Set element or MU EDCA Parameter Set element.

An HE STA shall check the EDCA Parameter Set Update Count subfield value in the QoS Info field of the QoS Capability element in the most recently received Beacon frame against the stored value to determine if the HE STA is using the current EDCA and MU EDCA parameters. If the EDCA Parameter Set Update

1 Count subfield value is different from the stored value, then the HE STA shall send a Probe Request frame
 2 to the AP to solicit an update.
 3

4 NOTE—If the QoS Capability element is present in a Beacon frame, the EDCA Parameter Set element and the MU
 5 EDCA Parameter Set element are not present. In this case, the only way for an HE STA to obtain the updated parameters
 6 is to send a Probe Request frame to the AP.
 7

8 A non-AP HE STA that receives a Basic Trigger frame that contains a User Info field addressed to the STA
 9 shall update its CWmin[AC], CWmax[AC], AIFSN[AC] and MUEDCATimer[AC] state variables to the
 10 values contained in the most recently received MU EDCA Parameter Set element sent by the AP with which
 11 the STA is associated, for all the ACs from which at least one QoS Data frame was transmitted successfully
 12 in an HE TB PPDU in response to the Trigger frame. A QoS Data frame is transmitted successfully by the
 13 STA in an HE TB PPDU for an AC if it requires immediate acknowledgment and the STA receives an
 14 immediate acknowledgment for that frame, or if the QoS Data frame does not require immediate acknowl-
 15 edgment..
 16

17
 18 The MUEDCATimer[AC] state variable is updated with the value contained in the MU EDCA Timer sub-
 19 field of the MU EDCA Parameter Set element. The backoff counter maintenance corresponding to the
 20 updated state variables shall follow the rules in 10.22.2.2 (EDCA backoff procedure). The updated MUED-
 21 CATimer[AC] shall start at the end of the immediate response if the transmitted HE TB PPDU contains at
 22 least one QoS Data frame for that AC that requires immediate acknowledgment, and shall start at the end of
 23 the HE TB PPDU if the transmitted HE TB PPDU does not contain any QoS Data frames for that AC that
 24 require immediate acknowledgment.
 25

26 In a non-AP HE STA, each MUEDCATimer[AC] shall uniformly count down without suspension to 0 when
 27 its value is nonzero.
 28

29 NOTE 1—A non-AP STA that sends a frame to the AP with an OM Control subfield containing a value of 1 in the UL
 30 MU Disable subfield or a value of 0 in the UL MU Disable subfield and a value of 1 in the UL MU Data Disable subfield
 31 does not participate in UL MU operation. As such it is exempt from updating its EDCA access parameters to the values
 32 contained in the MU EDCA Parameter Set element as defined in this subclause.
 33

34 NOTE 2—A non-AP STA is not required to update its state variables to the values contained in the MU EDCA Parame-
 35 ter Set element when:
 36

- 37 — The Trigger frame addressed to the STA is not a Basic Trigger frame
 38 — The STA does not include QoS Data frames in the HE TB PPDU response sent in response to the Basic Trigger
 39 frame
 40 — The STA transmits the HE TB PPDU in response to a Basic Trigger frame following the rules defined in 26.5.4
 41 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)).
 42

43 NOTE 3—The TXOP limits are not updated by the procedure defined in this subclause, but by that in 10.22.2.8 (TXOP
 44 limits).
 45

46 A non-AP STA that sends frames that are not addressed to its associated AP may use the EDCA parameters
 47 values that are contained in the most recently received EDCA Parameter Set element sent by the AP with
 48 which the STA is associated, or to the default EDCA parameter values (see Table 9-137 (Default EDCA
 49 Parameter Set element parameter values if dot11OCBActivated is false)), following the rules in 10.2.3.2
 50 (HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)).
 51

52 When the MUEDCATimer[AC] of a non-AP HE STA reaches zero, either by counting down or due to a
 53 reset following the reception of an MU EDCA Control frame, then the STA shall update CWmin[AC],
 54 CWmax[AC] and AIFSN[AC] either to the values that are contained in the most recently received EDCA
 55 Parameter Set element sent by the AP with which the STA is associated, or to the default EDCA parameter
 56 values (see Table 9-137 (Default EDCA Parameter Set element parameter values if dot11OCBActivated is
 57 false)) if an EDCA Parameter Set element has not been received.
 58

1 A non-AP HE STA that sends a frame with an OM Control subfield with the UL MU Disable subfield set to
 2 1 or with the UL MU Disable subfield set to 0 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield set to 1 as defined in
 3 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication) may set the MUEDCATimer[AC] for all ACs to 0 on
 4 receiving an immediate acknowledgment from the OMI responder. The STA continues the current EDCA
 5 backoff procedure without modifying the QSRC[AC], QLRC[AC] or the backoff counter for the associated
 6 EDCAF, regardless of whether the MUEDCATimer[AC] has reached zero, until the STA invokes a new
 7 EDCA backoff procedure. The STA follows the rules defined in 10.22.2.2 (EDCA backoff procedure) for
 8 updating CW[AC].
 9

10
 11 A non-AP HE STA that receives an individually addressed MU EDCA Control frame from its associated AP
 12 may reset the MUEDCATimer[AC] to 0 for an AC if the bit corresponding to that AC in the Affected ACs
 13 subfield is equal to 1. The STA may invoke a new EDCA backoff procedure after the MUEDCATimer[AC]
 14 is reset for that AC and after CWmin[AC], CWmax[AC] and AIFSN[AC] are updated for that AC, as per
 15 this subclause, in response to the MUEDCATimer[AC] reset.
 16
 17

26.2.8 Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP in the 6 GHz band

18 A STA that operates in the 6 GHz band and transmits multiple frames shall follow the rules defined in
 19 10.22.2.7 with the exceptions listed below.
 20

21 NOTE—In the 6 GHz band, the TXOP field in the HE-SIG-A field can be understood by all STAs. The TXOP field pro-
 22 vides TXOP protection equivalent to non-HT duplicate RTS/CTS.
 23
 24

25 In a TXOP without non-HT duplicate PPDUs, if the TXOP is protected by the TXOP field in the HE-SIG-A
 26 field of the first HE PPDU in the TXOP, i.e., the TXOP field is not set to UNSPECIFIED, the TXOP holder
 27 shall set the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the subsequent PPDUs in the TXOP to indicate
 28 a bandwidth that is the same or narrower than the bandwidth indicated by the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter
 29 of the first HE PPDU in the TXOP.
 30
 31

32 NOTE—Frame exchanges in a TXOP that is protected by RTS/CTS follow the rules in 10.23.2.8 (Multiple frame trans-
 33 mission in an EDCA TXOP).
 34

35 Additionally, if the first HE PPDU whose TXOP field in HE-SIG-A is not set to UNSPECIFIED is a DL HE
 36 MU PPDU with preamble puncture, then the TXOP holder shall use the 20 MHz channels for the non-initial
 37 PPDU that are within the set of 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields of the first HE PPDU
 38 whose TXOP field in HE-SIG-A is not set to UNSPECIFIED are located.
 39
 40

41 Within an obtained TXOP that does not include HE PPDUs whose TXOP field in HE-SIG-A is not
 42 UNSPECIFIED nor non-HT duplicate PPDUs, the TXOP holder shall set the TXVECTOR parameter
 43 CH_BANDWIDTH of a non-initial PPDU to be the equal to or less than the TXVECTOR parameter
 44 CH_BANDWIDTH of the preceding PPDU that was transmitted in the same TXOP, subject to the following
 45 constraints:
 46
 47

- 48 — If the preceding PPDU is a DL HE MU PPDU with preamble puncture, the TXOP holder shall set
 49 the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the non-initial PPDU to a value whose corre-
 50 sponding 20 MHz channels are within a set of 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields of
 51 the preceding PPDU are located.
 52
- 53 — If the non-initial PPDU is a DL HE MU PPDU with preamble puncture, the TXOP holder shall set
 54 the TXVECTOR parameter RU_ALLOCATION of the non-initial PPDU to a value whose corre-
 55 sponding RU is within a set of 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields of the preceding
 56 PPDU are located.
 57

1 26.3 Fragmentation and defragmentation

3 26.3.1 General

4 An HE STA shall follow the fragmentation procedures defined in 10.2.6 (Fragmentation/defragmentation
 5 overview), 10.4 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU fragmentation), and 10.5 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and
 6 MMPDU defragmentation) except that some of the rules are relaxed as defined in the subclauses below.
 7 Dynamic fragmentation provides further flexibility in aggregating data to fit in a constrained PPDU duration
 8 (see 26.5 (MU operation)).
 9

10 Subclauses 10.2.6 (Fragmentation/defragmentation overview) and 10.4 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU
 11 fragmentation) define the procedure to generate uniformly fragmented MSDU or MMPDU, where the length
 12 of each fragment is the same, except for the last fragment. These fragments are not included in an A-MPDU
 13 under HT-immediate block ack agreements.
 14

15 An HE STA can negotiate the use of different levels of dynamic fragmentation:
 16

- 17 — Level 1: support for one dynamic fragment that is a non-A-MPDU, no support for dynamic frag-
 18 ments in an A-MPDU that is does not contain an S-MPDU.
- 19 — Level 2: support for up to one dynamic fragment for each MSDU, each A-MSDU (if supported by
 20 the recipient) and one MMPDU (see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-
 21 MPDU)) in an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU, where the A-MPDU contains at least
 22 one dynamic fragment and is sent under an HT-immediate block ack agreement.
- 23 — Level 3: support for up to 4 dynamic fragments for each MSDU and each A-MSDU (if supported by
 24 the recipient) in an A-MPDU and up to one dynamic fragment for one MMPDU (see 26.6.3 (Multi-
 25 TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)) in an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-
 26 MPDU, where the A-MPDU contains at least one dynamic fragment and is sent under an HT-imme-
 27 diate block ack agreement that has enabled dynamic level 3 fragmentation.
 28

29 NOTE—An HE STA that is operating in Level 2 or Level 3 can still transmit and receive the dynamic fragments under
 30 Level 1.
 31

32 This subclause defines the procedure for generating nonuniformly fragmented MSDUs, A-MSDUs or
 33 MMPDUs, where the length of each fragment is not necessarily the same. The length of the first fragment
 34 shall be greater than or equal to the minimum fragment size indicated in the Minimum Fragment Size sub-
 35 field of the HE Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element sent by the recipient STA. If
 36 the length of the MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU is less than the minimum fragment size, then the MSDU, A-
 37 MSDU or MMPDU shall not be fragmented. The fragments generated with dynamic fragmentation are
 38 referred to as dynamic fragments.
 39

40 These procedures allow the inclusion of one dynamic fragment that is a non-A-MPDU in level 1, level 2 and
 41 level 3, and allow the inclusion of one or more dynamic fragments within an A-MPDU that contains one or
 42 more MPDUs in level 2 and level 3.
 43

44 An HE STA follows the rules defined in 26.3.2 (Dynamic fragmentation) for generating these fragments and
 45 the rules defined in 26.3.3 (Dynamic defragmentation) for defragmenting of the received dynamic frag-
 46 ments. In the subclauses 26.3.2 (Dynamic fragmentation) and 26.3.3 (Dynamic defragmentation), the HE
 47 STA follows the fragmentation level that is indicated in the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the
 48 HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits unless an ADDBA
 49 Extension element is included in the ADDBA Request and ADDBA Response frames exchanged during the
 50 block ack setup procedure, in which case the HE STA follows the fragmentation level that is indicated in an
 51 ADDBA Extension element in the ADDBA Response frame it receives (see the subclause 26.3.3.1 (Gen-
 52 eral)) during the block ack setup procedure.
 53

1 An HE STA shall set the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield in the ADDBA Extension element, if present,
 2 in the ADDBA Request or ADDBA Response frame to a value that is less than or equal to the value of
 3 the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element it transmits.
 4

5 An HE STA shall set the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield in the ADDBA Extension element, if present,
 6 in the ADDBA Response frame to a value that is less than or equal to the value of HE Fragmentation
 7 Operation subfield in the ADDBA Extension element, if present, in the received ADDBA Request frame.
 8
 9

10 26.3.2 Dynamic fragmentation

11 26.3.2.1 General

12 With level 1 and level 2 dynamic fragmentation, the following apply:
 13

- 14 — An originator STA transmitting one or more dynamic fragments shall solicit an immediate response
 from the recipient STA for each of the fragments.
- 15 — The originator STA shall transmit the fragments in order as defined in 10.4 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and
 MMPDU fragmentation).

16 With level 3 dynamic fragmentation, not all dynamic fragments require an immediate response and dynamic
 17 fragments are not required to be sent in order.
 18

19 An HE STA may transmit dynamic fragments of an A-MSDU provided the A-MSDU Fragmentation Sup-
 20 port subfield of the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the recipient is 1.
 21

22 The originator STA shall not transmit concurrently the dynamic fragments of a number of outstanding
 23 MPDUs and A-MSDUs (if supported) to the same recipient STA that is greater than N_{max} , where N_{max} for
 24 MSDUs and A-MSDUs (if supported) is calculated based on the Maximum Number of Fragments Exponent
 25 subfield of the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the recipient STA. The term *outstanding* refers to an
 26 MPDU containing all or part of an MSDU or A-MSDU for which transmission has been started, and for
 27 which delivery of the MSDU or A-MSDU has not yet been completed (i.e., an acknowledgment of the final
 28 fragment has not been received and the MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU has not been discarded due to retries,
 29 lifetime, or for some other reason).
 30

31 An originator STA may retransmit the full MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU if all the previously transmitted
 32 dynamic fragments of that MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU have explicitly failed at the receiving STA. An
 33 originator STA may retransmit a failed fragment if one or more of the previously transmitted fragments of
 34 that MSDU, A-MSDU, or MMPDU have explicitly failed at the receiving STA (see below for a definition of
 35 this term). The frame body length and contents of the retransmitted fragment shall be the same as the ini-
 36 tially transmitted fragment and shall remain fixed for the lifetime of the MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU at
 37 that STA except when all the fragments preceding the initial transmitted fragment were received and all the
 38 fragments following the initial transmitted fragment have either explicitly failed or have not been trans-
 39 mitted, in which case the frame body length and contents of the retransmitted fragment may be different from
 40 the initially transmitted fragment.
 41

42 A fragment has explicitly failed at the receiving STA if the originator STA receives an immediate response
 43 that contains:
 44

- 45 — A valid first MPDU that is not an Ack frame, Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck
 frame, of which all the preceding pre-EOF MPDU delimiters are received.
- 46 — A Multi-STA BlockAck frame that does not contain a BA Information field with TID equal to that of
 the fragment
- 47 — A Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame that contains a BA Information field
 with TID equal to that of the fragment, but does not acknowledge receipt of the fragment

1 An originator STA shall not transmit to a recipient STA an MPDU that is not carried in an A-MPDU or an
 2 A-MPDU that carries dynamic fragments that do not satisfy the conditions in 26.3.2.2 (Level 1 dynamic
 3 fragmentation), 26.3.2.3 (Level 2 dynamic fragmentation) and 26.3.2.4 (Level 3 dynamic fragmentation).
 4

5 **26.3.2.2 Level 1 dynamic fragmentation**

6 An originator STA may transmit one dynamic fragment of an MSDU, A-MSDU (if supported by the recipi-
 7 ent) or MMPDU that is a non-A-MPDU and that is not sent under a block ack agreement to a recipient STA
 8 using level 1 dynamic fragmentation if the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE MAC Capa-
 9 bilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element received from the recipient STA is 1, 2 or 3.
 10

11 An originator STA may transmit a fragmented MSDU or A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) under a
 12 block ack agreement to a recipient STA using level 1 dynamic fragmentation provided one of the following
 13 conditions is met:
 14

- 15 — The Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element received from the
 16 recipient STA is 1, and for the block ack agreement associated with the TID of the MSDU or A-
 17 MSDU, the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield is 1 if the ADDBA Extension element is present
 18 in the ADDBA Response frame received from the recipient STA.
 19
- 20 — The Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element received from the
 21 recipient STA is 2 or 3, and for the block ack agreement associated with the TID of the MSDU or A-
 22 MSDU, the ADDBA Extension element is present and the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield is 1
 23 in the ADDBA Response frame received from the recipient STA.
 24

32 **26.3.2.3 Level 2 dynamic fragmentation**

33 An originator STA may transmit fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) under a
 34 block ack agreement to a recipient STA using level 2 dynamic fragmentation provided one of the following
 35 conditions is met:
 36

- 37 — The Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element received from the
 38 recipient STA is 2, and for the block ack agreement associated with the TID of the MSDU or A-
 39 MSDU, the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield is 2 if the ADDBA Extension element is present
 40 in the ADDBA Response frame received from the recipient STA.
 41
- 42 — The Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element received from the
 43 recipient STA is 3, and for the block ack agreement associated with the TID of the MSDU or A-
 44 MSDU, the ADDBA Extension element is present and the HE Fragmentation Operation subfield is 2
 45 in the ADDBA Response frame received from the recipient STA.
 46

47 An originator STA may transmit to a recipient STA the following:
 48

- 49 — One dynamic fragment of an MSDU, A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient), or MMPDU that is a
 50 non-A-MPDU using level 1 dynamic fragmentation.
 51
- 52 — Up to one dynamic fragment of an MSDU or A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) for each
 53 MSDU or A-MSDU and up to one dynamic fragment of an MMPDU in an A-MPDU format where
 54 the A-MPDU contains at least one dynamic fragment using level 2 dynamic fragmentation under a
 55 block ack agreement.
 56

57 NOTE—The originator STA follows the rules in 10.12.8 (Transport of S-MPDUs) for generating the S-MPDU, the rules
 58 in 10.25.6.7 (Originator's behavior) for generating the A-MPDU and the rules in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-
 59 enabled single-TID A-MPDU) for generating a multi-TID A-MPDU that can contain the fragment of the MMPDU.
 60

1 **26.3.2.4 Level 3 dynamic fragmentation**

2
3 An originator STA may transmit fragmented MSDUs or A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) under a
4 block ack agreement or fragmented MMPDU to a recipient STA using level 3 dynamic fragmentation pro-
5 vided the following conditions are met:

- 6
7 — The Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element received from the
8 recipient STA is 3.
- 9
10 — For the block ack agreement associated with the TID of the MSDU or A-MSDU, the HE Fragmenta-
11 tion Operation subfield is 3 if the ADDBA Extension element is present in the ADDBA Response
12 frame received from the recipient STA.

13
14 Level 3 fragmentation allows multiple fragments of an MSDU or A-MSDU included in the same A-MPDU,
15 reducing the fragments' transmission delay.

16
17 An originator STA may transmit to a recipient STA the following:

- 18
19 — One dynamic fragment of an MSDU, A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient), or MMPDU that is a
20 non-A-MPDU using level 1 dynamic fragmentation.
- 21 • The originator STA shall follow the rules defined in 10.13.8 (Transport of S-MPDUs) for gener-
22 ating the S-MPDU.
- 23 — Up to four dynamic fragments of an MSDU or A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) for each
24 MSDU or A-MSDU, and up to one dynamic fragment of an MMPDU in an A-MPDU, where the A-
25 MPDU contains at least one dynamic fragment using level 3 dynamic fragmentation under block ack
26 agreement.
- 27 • The originator STA shall set the Fragment Number subfield of each MPDU to a value less than
28 4.
- 29 • The originator STA shall follow the rules defined in 10.25.6.7 (Originator's behavior) for gener-
30 ating the A-MPDU with the exception that the A-MPDU shall contain MPDUs whose range of
31 the Sequence Number subfields does not exceed $B_L/4$, where B_L is the length of the Block Ack
32 Bitmap field of the BlockAck or Multi-STA BlockAck frame that corresponds to a TID of a
33 transmitted fragment (see 10.25.6 (HT-immediate block ack extensions) and 26.4 (HE acknowl-
34 edgment procedure)).

35 **26.3.3 Dynamic defragmentation**

36 **26.3.3.1 General**

37 An HE STA shall set the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information
38 field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 0 if it does not support dynamic fragments. Otherwise,
39 the HE STA shall set the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield as follows:

- 40
41 — Set to 1, 2 or 3 if the STA supports reception of dynamic fragments following the procedure defined
42 in 26.3.2.2 (Level 1 dynamic fragmentation)
- 43 — Set to 2 or 3 if the STA supports reception of dynamic fragments following the procedure defined in
44 26.3.2.3 (Level 2 dynamic fragmentation)
- 45 — Set to 3 if the STA supports reception of dynamic fragments following the procedure defined in
46 26.3.2.4 (Level 3 dynamic fragmentation)

47
48 An HE STA shall set dot11HEDynamicFragmentationLevel to the value of Dynamic Fragmentation Support
49 subfield of the HE Capabilities element it transmits if it supports reception of dynamic fragments.

50
51 If a fragment is sent under level 1, level 2 or level 3 fragmentation, it belongs to dynamic fragment.

1 Defragmentation of dynamic fragments shall follow the rules defined in 10.5 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and
 2 MMPDU defragmentation) with the following exceptions:
 3

- 4 — The recipient STA shall support the concurrent reception of dynamic fragments of a number of *out-*
 5 *standing* MSDUs and A-MSDUs when supported from the same transmitting STA that is equal to
 6 N_{max} , where N_{max} for MSDUs and A-MSDUs (if supported) is obtained from the Maximum Number
 7 Of Fragmented MSDUs/A-MSDUs Exponent subfield of the HE Capabilities element transmitted
 8 by the STA. The term *outstanding* refers to an MPDU containing all or part of an MSDU or A-
 9 MSDU for which transmission has been started, and for which delivery of the MSDU or A-MSDU
 10 has not yet been completed (i.e., an acknowledgment of the final fragment has not been received and
 11 the MSDU, A-MSDU or MMPDU has not been discarded due to retries, lifetime, or for some other
 12 reason). The recipient STA shall support the concurrent reception of dynamic fragments of one out-
 13 standing MMPDU from a transmitting STA.
 14
- 15 — The recipient STA may be subject to the receive timer rules for each of the MSDUs, A-MSDUs and
 16 MMPDUs defined in 10.6 (Defragmentation).
 17

18 A STA that has dot11AMSDUFragmentationOptionImplemented true shall set the A-MSDU Fragmentation
 19 Support subfield in the HE Capability element to 1. Otherwise, the STA shall set the A-MSDU Fragmenta-
 20 tion Support subfield in the HE Capability element to 0.
 21

26.3.3.2 Level 1 dynamic defragmentation

27 Upon reception of a non-A-MPDU or A-MPDU that carries a dynamic fragment, the recipient STA
 28 responds with an Ack frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the received fragment is contained in an
 29 MPDU that solicits an immediate response. The receiver STA shall follow the rules defined in 10.3.2.9 (Ack
 30 procedure) for generating the Ack frame for the soliciting dynamic fragment that is an MPDU, or carried in
 31 an S-MPDU or ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU and the rules defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment pro-
 32 cedure) for generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame that contains the acknowledgment for the soliciting S-
 33 MPDU that carries one dynamic fragment and carried in an HE TB PPDU, ack-enabled single-TID A-
 34 MPDU or ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU.
 35

26.3.3.3 Level 2 dynamic defragmentation

41 Upon reception of a non-A-MPDU that is a dynamic fragment or A-MPDU that carries one or more dynamic
 42 fragments, the recipient STA responds with one of the following frames:
 43

- 44 — An Ack frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the received fragment is a non-A-MPDU or con-
 45 tained in an A-MPDU and solicits the immediate response. The recipient STA shall follow the rules
 46 defined in 10.3.2.9 (Ack procedure) for generating the Ack frame for the soliciting dynamic frag-
 47 ment that is an MPDU or carried in an S-MPDU or ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU and the rules
 48 defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure) for generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame that
 49 contains the acknowledgment for the soliciting S-MPDU carried in an HE TB PPDU, ack-enabled
 50 single-TID A-MPDU or ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU.
 51
- 52 — A Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the received fragments of an
 53 MSDU or A-MSDU (if any), up to one fragment for each MSDU or A-MSDU, are contained in an
 54 A-MPDU that contains an MPDU that solicits an immediate response. The recipient STA shall fol-
 55 low the rules defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA,
 56 DMG STA, or S1G STA) for generating the BlockAck frame and the rules in 26.4 (HE acknowledg-
 57 ment procedure) for generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame, except that the STA shall:
 58
 - 59 • Set to 0 the LSB of the Fragment Number subfield in the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control
 60 subfield of the Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame that corresponds to
 61 a TID of a received fragment that is sent under a block ack agreement.

- 1 • Set to 1 each bit of the Block Ack Bitmap field that corresponds to a Sequence Number subfield
2 and TID subfield of a received fragment that is sent under a block ack agreement contained in
3 the soliciting A-MPDU that is not an S-MPDU.
4
- 5 — The STA shall update the corresponding block acknowledgment record for an MSDU or A-MSDU
6 for which fragments are received only if that MSDU or A-MSDU is successfully reconstructed (see
7 10.6 (Defragmentation)). Otherwise the STA shall not update the block ack record for that MSDU or
8 A-MSDU.
9

10 NOTE—The recipient STA sets the bits of the Block Ack Bitmap field that correspond to a Sequence Number and TID
11 subfield of an MPDU that is not a fragment as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by
12 an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA).
13

14 A recipient STA shall discard any fragments of incomplete MSDUs or A-MSDUs that have been received
15 during an HT-immediate block ack session for a TID if it receives a BlockAckReq frame from the originator
16 STA for that TID if the fragments have a Sequence Number field value that is less than the value of the
17 Starting Sequence Number field of the BlockAckReq frame or that have a sequence number that is less than
18 *WinStartB* (see 10.25.6.6 (Receive reordering buffer control operation)). The comparison of the two values
19 is performed circular modulo 4096 as described in 10.25.1 (Introduction).
20

26.3.3.4 Level 3 dynamic defragmentation

26 Upon reception of a non-A-MPDU that is a dynamic fragment or A-MPDU that carries one or more dynamic
27 fragments, the recipient STA responds with one of the following frames:
28

- 29 — An Ack frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the received fragment is a non-A-MPDU or con-
30 tained in an A-MPDU that solicits the immediate response. The recipient STA shall follow the rules
31 defined in 10.3.2.9 (Ack procedure) for generating the Ack frame for the soliciting dynamic frag-
32 ment that is a MPDU, or carried in an S-MPDU or ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU and the rules
33 defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure) for generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame that
34 contains the acknowledgment for the soliciting S-MPDU carried in an HE TB PPDU, ack-enabled
35 single-TID A-MPDU or ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU.
36
- 37 — A Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the received fragments of an
38 MSDU or A-MSDU (if any) corresponding to a TID, one or more fragments for each MSDU or A-
39 MSDU, are contained in an A-MPDU where at least one received MPDU's Fragment Number field
40 corresponding to the same TID as the received fragments is of nonzero value that solicits the imme-
41 diate response. The recipient STA shall follow the rules in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of
42 BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA) for generating the BlockAck frame and
43 the rules in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure) for generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame,
44 except that the STA shall:
 - 45 • Set to 1 the LSB of the Fragment Number subfield in the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control
46 subfield of the Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame that corresponds to
47 a TID of a received fragment that is sent under a block ack agreement.
 - 48 • Set to 1 each bit in position *B* of the Block Ack Bitmap field that corresponds to a received frag-
49 ment that is sent under a block ack agreement and shall set it to 0 otherwise, with *B* calculated
50 as:
51
$$B = 4 \times (SN - SSN) + FN$$
, where the operations on the sequence numbers are performed modulo
52 4096.
53 *SN* is the value of the Sequence Number subfield of an MPDU containing the fragment for which
54 the receive status is indicated.
55 *SSN* is the value of the Starting Sequence Number subfield of the Block Ack Starting Sequence
56 Control subfield of the BlockAck frame.
57 *FN* is the value in the Fragment Number subfield.
- 58 — A Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame if the received fragments of an
59 MSDU or A-MSDU (if any) corresponding to a TID, one or more fragments for each MSDU or A-

1 MSDU, are contained in an A-MPDU where all the received MPDUs' Fragment Number fields corresponding to the same TID as the received fragments are of zero values that solicit the immediate response. The recipient STA shall follow the rules in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA) for generating the BlockAck frame and the rules in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure) for generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame, except that the STA shall:

- 8 • Set to 0 the LSB of the Fragment Number subfield in the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control
9 subfield of the Compressed BlockAck frame or Multi-STA BlockAck frame that corresponds to
10 a TID of a received fragment that is sent under a block ack agreement.
- 11 • Set to 1 each bit of the Block Ack Bitmap field that corresponds to a Sequence Number subfield
12 and TID subfield of a received fragment that is sent under a block ack agreement contained in the
13 soliciting A-MPDU that is not an S-MPDU.
- 14 — The STA shall update the corresponding block acknowledgment record for an MSDU or A-MSDU
15 for which fragments are received only if that MSDU or A-MSDU is successfully reconstructed (see
16 10.5 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU defragmentation)). Otherwise the STA shall not update the
17 block ack record for that MSDU or A-MSDU.

21 NOTE—The recipient STA sets the bits of the Block Ack Bitmap field that correspond to a Sequence Number and TID
22 subfield of an MPDU that is not a fragment as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by
23 an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA).

26 The recipient STA shall discard any fragments of incomplete MSDUs or A-MSDUs that have been received
27 during an HT-immediate block ack session for a TID if it receives a BlockAckReq frame from the originator
28 STA for that TID and the fragments have a Sequence Number field value that is less than the value of the
29 Starting Sequence Number field of the BlockAckReq frame or that have a sequence number that is less than
30 *WinStartB* (see 10.25.6.6 (Receive reordering buffer control operation)). The comparison of the two values
31 is performed circular modulo 4096 as described in 10.25.1 (Introduction).

35 **26.4 HE acknowledgment procedure**

36 **26.4.1 Overview**

40 The HE acknowledgment procedure builds on the features defined for HT-immediate block ack (see 10.25.6
41 (HT-immediate block ack extensions)), with the following extensions:

- 43 — Support for a Multi-STA BlockAck frame
- 44 — Support for a MU-BAR Trigger frame
- 45 — Support for a Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame
- 46 — Support for BlockAck Bitmap field lengths of 32, 64, 128 and 256
- 47 — Acknowledging QoS Data frames with two or more TIDs using a Multi-STA BlockAck frame
- 48 — Acknowledging QoS Data frames with one or more TIDs, and a Management frame using a Multi-
49 STA BlockAck frame
- 50 — Acknowledging all MPDUs in a PPDU using a variant of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame
- 51 — Acknowledging MPDUs from multiple associated STAs using a single Multi-STA BlockAck frame
- 52 — Acknowledging MPDUs from multiple unassociated STAs with a single Multi-STA BlockAck
53 frame

61 An HE STA shall be able to respond with Compressed BlockAck frames if HT-immediate block ack is sup-
62 ported in the role of recipient (see 10.25.6.1 (Introduction)). An HE STA shall be able to respond with a
63 Multi-STA BlockAck frame if multi-TID A-MPDU operation (26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-
64 enabled single-TID A-MPDU)) is supported in the role of recipient.

1 A non-AP HE STA that is associated with an AP and that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame shall set the
 2 AID11 subfield in the Per AID TID Info field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to 0 and the RA field to the
 3 MAC address of the intended recipient. A non-AP HE STA that is not associated with an AP shall not send
 4 a Multi-STA BlockAck frame.
 5

6 An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame where the Per AID TID Info fields are addressed to
 7 more than one STA shall set the RA field to the broadcast address. An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA
 8 BlockAck frame where the Per AID TID Info fields are all addressed to a single recipient STA and that is
 9 sent in response to an HE TB PPDU may set the RA field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to either the
 10 address of the recipient STA or to the broadcast address. An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck
 11 frame where the Per AID TID Info fields are all addressed to a single recipient STA and that is not sent in
 12 response to an HE TB PPDU shall set the RA field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to the address of the
 13 recipient STA.
 14

15 An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame to an associated STA shall set the AID11 subfield in the
 16 Per AID TID Info field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to the 11 LSBs of the AID of the intended STA.
 17 An HE AP that sends a Multi-STA BlockAck frame to an unassociated STA shall set the AID11 subfield in
 18 the Per AID TID Info field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to 2045.
 19

20 An HE STA that transmits a Multi-STA BlockAck frame shall use a rate, HT-MCS, <VHT-MCS, NSS>
 21 tuple or <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple that is supported by all recipient STAs.
 22

23 An HE STA that receives a Multi-STA BlockAck frame that is a response to frames requiring acknowledgment
 24 shall examine Per AID TID Info field received in the Multi-STA BlockAck frame, and shall process
 25 each Per AID TID Info field using the procedure defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-
 26 STA BlockAck frame).
 27

28 A non-AP HE STA that receives a Multi-STA BlockAck frame that is a response to frames requiring
 29 acknowledgment but that do not belong to an established a block ack agreement shall examine each Per AID
 30 TID Info field received in the Multi-STA BlockAck frame as follows:
 31

- 32 — If the Ack Type field is 1 and the TID field is less than 8, then the Per AID TID Info field indicates
 33 the acknowledgment of an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data frame with the indicated TID. The BA
 34 Information field is addressed to the STA if the AID of the BA Information field contains the STA's
 35 AID, and is processed according to the procedure defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-
 36 STA BlockAck frame).
 37
- 38 — If the Ack Type field is 1 and the TID field is 15, then the Per AID TID Info field indicates the
 39 acknowledgment of an EOF MPDU that is a Management frame that solicits acknowledgment or a
 40 PS-Poll frame. The BA Information field is addressed to the STA if the AID of the BA Information
 41 field contains the STA's AID, and is processed according to the procedure defined in 26.4.2
 42 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).
 43
- 44 — If the Ack Type field is 0, and the AID field is 2045, and the TID field is 15, then Per AID TID Info
 45 field indicates the acknowledgment of an EOF MPDU that is a Management frame soliciting imme-
 46 diate acknowledgment. The RA field in the Per AID TID Info field is the MAC address of an unasso-
 47 ciated STA for which the Per AID TID Info subfield is intended. The BA Information field is
 48 addressed to the STA if the RA field of the BA Information field contains the STA's MAC address,
 49 and is processed according to the procedure defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-
 50 STA BlockAck frame).
 51
- 52 — If the Ack Type field is 0, and the AID field is 2045, and the TID field is 15, then Per AID TID Info
 53 field indicates the acknowledgment of an EOF MPDU that is a Management frame soliciting imme-
 54 diate acknowledgment. The RA field in the Per AID TID Info field is the MAC address of an unasso-
 55 ciated STA for which the Per AID TID Info subfield is intended. The BA Information field is
 56 addressed to the STA if the RA field of the BA Information field contains the STA's MAC address,
 57 and is processed according to the procedure defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-
 58 STA BlockAck frame).
 59

60 An HE AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true shall not send to a non-AP STA that is associ-
 61 ated with a nontransmitted BSSID in the multiple BSSID set a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the TA
 62 field set to the transmitted BSSID unless the HE AP has received from the non-AP STA an HE Capabilities
 63 element with the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield in HE MAC Capabilities Information field equal
 64 to 1.
 65

1 An AP that transmits a Multi-STA BlockAck frame addressed to HE STAs shall set the TA field of the
 2 frame to the MAC address of the AP unless dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true and the Multi-STA
 3 BlockAck frame is directed to STAs from at least two different BSSs of the multiple BSSID set, in which
 4 case, the AP shall set the TA field of the frame to the transmitted BSSID.
 5

6 NOTE—An AP sets the TA field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame that is not carried in HE MU PPDU to the transmitted
 7 BSSID when the TXOP is obtained from the transmitted BSSID (see 10.23.2.4 (Obtaining an EDCA TXOP)).
 8

9 An HE STA that transmits a Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame in a PPDU that is not an HE TB PPDU shall set
 10 the TID subfields in the AID TID Info fields in the Per TID Info subfields of the BAR Information field of
 11 the Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame to TIDs that correspond to ACs that have the same or higher priority as
 12 the primary AC. An HE STA that transmits a Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame in an HE TB PPDU may set
 13 the TID subfields in the AID TID Info fields in the Per TID Info subfields of the BAR Information field of
 14 the Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame to a TID that corresponds to any AC.
 15

16 An HE STA that transmits a BlockAckReq frame in an HE TB PPDU may set the TID subfield in the AID
 17 TID Info field in the BAR Information field of the BlockAckReq frame to a TID that corresponds to any
 18 AC.
 19

20 26.4.2 Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame

21 A recipient of an A-MPDU shall set the Ack Type subfield and TID subfield in the Per AID TID Info field
 22 of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame sent as a response depending on the acknowledgment context as follows:
 23

- 24 — An HE AP that receives an A-MPDU that includes one MPDU, and the MPDU is an EOF MPDU
 25 that is a Management frame that solicits an acknowledgment prior to association may generate a
 26 Multi-STA BlockAck frame using the procedure described in the pre-association ack context defined
 27 below.
- 28 — An HE STA that receives an A-MPDU that does not include an EOF MPDU but does include one or
 29 more non-EOF MPDUs that are QoS Data frames with Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack policy
 30 belonging to the same block ack agreement may generate a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as follows:
 - 31 • If all MPDUs in the A-MPDU are received successfully, then the recipient may follow the proce-
 32 dure described in the all ack context as defined below.
 - 33 • Otherwise, the recipient shall follow the procedure described in the BlockAck context defined
 34 below.
- 35 — If an HE STA supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support
 36 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1 and the A-MPDU includes an EOF
 37 MPDU that is a Management frame that solicits acknowledgment, and one or more MPDUs (either
 38 EOF MPDUs or non-EOF MPDUs) that are QoS Data frames with Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack
 39 policy, then the recipient shall generate Multi-STA BlockAck frame as follows:
 - 40 • If all the MPDUs in the A-MPDU are received successfully, then the recipient may follow the
 41 procedure described in the all ack context.
 - 42 • Otherwise:
 - 43 • For the MPDU that is a Management frame, the recipient shall create a Per AID TID info field
 44 using the procedure described below in Ack context with the TID value set to 15.
 - 45 • For the EOF MPDUs that are QoS Data frames, the recipient shall create a Per AID TID info
 46 field using the procedure described below in Ack context with the TID set to the TID of the
 47 QoS Data frame
 - 48 • For the non-EOF MPDUs that are QoS Data frames, the recipient shall create a Per AID TID
 49 info field using the procedure described below in BlockAck context with the TID set to the
 50 TID of the QoS Data frame
- 51 — If an HE STA supports multi-TID aggregation and the A-MPDU does not include an EOF MPDU
 52 but does include non-EOF MPDUs that are QoS Data frames with Implicit BAR ack policy and are
 53

1 belonging to more than one block ack agreement, then the recipient shall generate a Multi-STA
 2 BlockAck frame as follows:
 3

- 4 • If all MPDUs in the A-MPDU are received successfully, then the recipient may follow the proce-
 5 dure described in the all ack context
- 6 • Otherwise, for each TID included the received A-MPDU, the recipient shall create a per AID
 7 TID info field using the procedure described in BlockAck context with the TID set to the TID of
 8 the QoS Data frame
 9

10
 11 NOTE—A STA indicates the maximum number of Per AID TID Info fields with the same AID excluding the one for a
 12 Management frame that it can include in the Multi-STA BlockAck frame in the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support field
 13 in the HE Capabilities element it transmits.
 14

15 The procedure for different acknowledgment contexts for generating Multi-STA BlockAck frame is defined
 16 below:
 17

- 18 a) All ack context: if the originator had set the All Ack Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element
 19 to 1, then the recipient may set the Ack Type field to 1 and the TID subfield to 14 to indicate the
 20 reception of all the MPDUs carried in the eliciting A-MPDU or multi-TID A-MPDU. Otherwise the
 21 recipient shall not set the Ack Type field to 1 and the TID subfield to 14. The Multi-STA BlockAck
 22 frame shall contain only one Per AID TID Info field addressed to an originator in the Multi-STA
 23 BlockAck frame. The recipient determines that all the MPDUs carried in the eliciting A-MPDU
 24 were received if there were no MPDU delimiter CRC errors and no MPDU FCS errors in that A-
 25 MPDU.
 26
- 27 b) Pre-association ack context: A recipient receiving a Management frame from an unassociated STA,
 28 that requires an acknowledgment, shall set the Ack Type field to 0, AID subfield to 2045, and the
 29 TID field to 15 in the Per AID TID Info field, and the RA field of the Per AID TID Info field to the
 30 intended recipient's MAC address to indicate the successful reception of that Management frame.
 31
- 32 c) Ack context: A recipient that sets the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield in the HE Capabil-
 33 ities element to 1 and that receives an EOF MPDU soliciting acknowledgment shall set the Ack
 34 Type field to 1 and, if the EOF MPDU is a QoS Data frame, set the TID field to the TID of the QoS
 35 Data frame, or, if the EOF MPDU is a Management frame or PS-Poll frame, set the TID field to 15.
 36

37 If a received A-MPDU contains more than one EOF MPDU that solicits an immediate acknowledg-
 38 ment, then the Multi-STA BlockAck frame shall contain multiple Per AID TID Info fields, with Ack
 39 Type field equal to 1, one for each such received EOF MPDU requesting an acknowledgment.
 40

41 The TID field is set to the TID of the QoS Data or QoS Null frame that is being acknowledged and
 42 set to 15 for a PS Poll frame or Management frame that is being acknowledged.
 43

- 44 d) BlockAck context: The recipient shall set the Ack Type field to 0 and the TID field of a Per AID
 45 TID Info field to the TID value of MPDUs requesting block acknowledgment that are carried in the
 46 eliciting A-MPDU or multi-TID A-MPDU.
 47

48 The Multi-STA BlockAck frame may contain multiple occurrences of these Per AID TID Info fields
 49 addressed to an originator, one for each MPDU that is requesting block acknowledgment, in which
 50 case the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control and Block Ack Bitmap fields shall be set according to
 51 10.25.6 (HT-immediate block ack extensions) for each block ack session, and according to 26.3
 52 (Fragmentation and defragmentation) for each block ack session with dynamic fragmentation.
 53

54 The allowed values for the TID field in this context are 0 to 7 (for indicating block acknowledgment
 55 of QoS Data frames).
 56

57 Variable bitmap lengths may be included in the Per AID TID Info field when the originator and
 58 recipient negotiate their use as defined in 26.4.3 (Negotiation of block ack bitmap lengths).
 59

1 The Ack Type subfield(s) in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame shall be set to 0 if the Multi-STA BlockAck
 2 frame is sent in response to an MU-BAR Trigger frame.
 3

4
 5 Upon receipt of a Multi-STA BlockAck frame the originator shall examine each Per AID TID Info field and
 6 shall perform the following operations:
 7

- 8 — If the AID subfield is 0 for an AP originator or the non-AP STA's AID for a non-AP STA originator,
 9 the Ack Type field is 0 and the TID field is less than 8 then the BlockAck Starting Sequence Con-
 10 trol, TID and Block Ack Bitmap fields of the Per AID TID Info field are processed according to
 11 10.25.6 (HT-immediate block ack mechanism), 26.3 (Fragmentation and defragmentation), and as
 12 defined below.
 13
- 14 — If the AID subfield is 2045, the Ack Type field is 0 and the TID field is 15, then the Per AID TID
 15 Info field indicates the acknowledgment of a single Management frame sent by the unassociated
 16 STA as defined by the acknowledgment context.
 17
- 18 — If the AID subfield is 0 for an AP originator or the non-AP STA's AID for a non-AP STA originator,
 19 the Ack Type field is 1 and the TID is less than or equal to 7 or is equal to 15, then the Per AID TID
 20 Info field indicates the acknowledgment of an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data frame identified by
 21 the value of the TID, a Management frame or a PS-Poll frame.
 22
- 23 — If the AID subfield is 0 for an AP originator or the non-AP STA's AID for a non-AP STA originator,
 24 the Ack Type field is 1 and the TID subfield of AID TID Info field is 14, then the Per AID TID Info
 25 field indicates the acknowledgment of all MPDUs carried in the eliciting A-MPDU as defined by the
 26 acknowledgment context.
 27
- 28
- 29
- 30
- 31

32 If an associated non-AP STA that does not support the UORA procedure receives a Multi-STA BlockAck
 33 frame in response to an eliciting frame, and if the Multi-STA BlockAck frame contains a Per AID TID Info
 34 subfield with the AID11 subfield set to 2045, then the STA shall ignore the 10 octets following the AID TID
 35 Info subfield, and shall continue to parse the following Per AID TID Info subfields (if any).
 36

37 26.4.3 Negotiation of block ack bitmap lengths

41 Both the Compressed BlockAck frame and Multi-STA BlockAck frame allow different Block Ack Bitmap
 42 subfield lengths. The length of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield is indicated in the Fragment Number subfield
 43 of the Block Ack Starting Sequence Control field as defined in 9.3.1.8 (BlockAck frame format). The
 44 allowed Block Ack Bitmap lengths for each of the negotiated buffer sizes are defined in Table 26-1 (Negoti-
 45 ated buffer size and Block Ack Bitmap subfield length).
 46

47
 48 **Table 26-1—Negotiated buffer size and Block Ack Bitmap subfield length**

Negotiated buffer size	Block Ack Bitmap subfield length (bits) in a Compressed BlockAck frame	Block Ack Bitmap subfield length (bits) in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame
1–64	64	32 or 64
65–128	64 or 256	32, 64 or 128
129–256	64 or 256	32, 64, 128 or 256

62 NOTE—A 32-bit Block Ack Bitmap subfield length is not allowed unless the origi-
 63 nator has set the 32-bit BA Bitmap Support field in the HE MAC Capabilities Infor-
 64 mation field in the HE Capabilities element to 1.
 65

1 An HE STA that transmits a Compressed BlockAck frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame shall use a
 2 Block Ack Bitmap subfield length identified in Table 26-1 (Negotiated buffer size and Block Ack Bitmap
 3 subfield length) for the negotiated buffer size of the block ack agreement to which the BA Information field
 4 corresponds.
 5

7 The recipient is allowed to respond with a Block Ack Bitmap subfield in the BA Information field that is less
 8 than the maximum allowed Block Ack Bitmap for the negotiated buffer size. The length of the Block Ack
 9 Bitmap subfield in a Compressed BlockAck frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame may be less than the
 10 negotiated buffer size but shall be sufficient to include the recipient's scoreboard state for MPDUs beginning
 11 with the MPDU for which the Sequence Number subfield value is *WinStartR* and ending with the MPDU for
 12 which the Sequence Number subfield is *WinEndR*.
 13

16 The recipient shall not include in the Buffer Size field of an ADDBA Response frame a value that would
 17 cause the BlockAck Bitmap length of its block ack responses to exceed the BlockAck Bitmap length that is
 18 derived by the Buffer Size field of the ADDBA Request frame sent by the originator. When the Buffer Size
 19 field in the ADDBA Request frame is 0, the Buffer Size field of an ADDBA Response frame is in the range
 20 1 to 64.
 21

23 NOTE—Refer to Block Ack Bitmap subfield length identified in Table 26-1 (Negotiated buffer size and Block Ack Bit-
 24 map subfield length) for the negotiated buffer size of the block ack agreement.
 25

26 A recipient shall not include in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame a Per AID TID Info field with a 32-bit Block-
 27 Ack Bitmap field addressed to an originator if the 32-bit BA Bitmap Support field in the HE MAC Capabil-
 28 ities Information field in the HE Capabilities element received from that originator is 0.
 29

31 NOTE—A Multi-STA BlockAck frame might include Per AID TID Info fields with a 32-bit BlockAck Bitmap field
 32 addressed to other originators and the nonsupporting originator needs to able to parse these fields to locate a possible Per
 33 AID TID Info field addressed to it.
 34

35 The originator of a BlockAckReq frame, MU-BAR Trigger frame, GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame or a A-
 36 MPDU that includes QoS Data frames that solicits an immediate BlockAck frame response or Mangement
 37 frame that solicits acknowledgment shall set the Duration field accounting for the largest BlockAck Bitmap
 38 length based on negotiated buffer size.
 39

42 A recipient shall not transmit a Compressed BlockAck frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the LSB
 43 of the Fragment Number subfield set to 1 unless the recipient has received from the originator an HE Capa-
 44 bilities element with the Dynamic Fragmentation Support subfield equal to 3. If the LSB of the Fragment
 45 Number subfield of the BlockAck frame is 1, then the Block Ack Bitmap fields are set as defined in 26.3.2.4
 46 (Level 3 dynamic fragmentation).
 47

49 **26.4.4 Per-PPDU acknowledgment selection rules**

52 **26.4.4.1 General**

55 A STA that transmits a PPDU can solicit different immediate responses for frames contained in the PPDU
 56 by using the Ack Policy Indication subfield of QoS Data or QoS Null frames, the type of the frame, PPDU
 57 format, number of TIDs in the A-MPDU and the EOF field setting of the A-MPDU delimiter.
 58

59 **26.4.4.2 Responding to an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with an SU PPDU**

62 An HE STA that receives an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU carrying an A-MPDU that includes MPDUs
 63 that solicits acknowledgment and that does not include a triggering frame shall respond using an SU PPDU
 64 as follows:
 65

- 1 1) If the A-MPDU includes only one MPDU and the MPDU is an EOF MPDU that is either a QoS
2 Data frame or QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy, or a Management frame that solic-
3 its acknowledgment, then the STA shall respond with an Ack frame.
4
- 5 2) If the A-MPDU includes only one MPDU and the MPDU is an EOF MPD that is a PS-Poll
6 frame the STA shall respond with an Ack frame or a QoS Data frame.
7
- 8 3) If the HE STA supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Sup-
9 port subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes
10 more than one MPDU, only one of which solicits acknowledgment and the MPDU that solicits
11 acknowledgment is an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data frame or a QoS Null frame with Normal
12 Ack ack policy, or a Management frame that solicits acknowledgment, then the HE STA shall
13 respond with an Ack frame.
14
- 15 4) If the A-MPDU does not include an EOF MPDU but does include one or more non-EOF
16 MPDUs that are QoS Data frames belonging to the same block ack agreement and with the Ack
17 Policy Indication subfield equal to Implicit BAR for at least one MPDU, then the STA shall
18 either respond with a Compressed BlockAck frame as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and
19 transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA) or a Multi-STA
20 BlockAck frame with Ack Type field set to 1 and the TID field set to 14 as defined in 26.4.2
21 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame) if the recipient has indicated sup-
22 port for the all ack context by setting the All Ack Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities
23 Information field to 1.
24
- 25 5) If the HE STA supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Sup-
26 port subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes a
27 Management frame that solicits an acknowledgment, and one or more QoS Data frames with
28 ack policy Normal Ack or Implicit BAR, then the STA shall respond with a Multi-STA Block-
29 Ack frame as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).
30
- 31 6) If the HE STA supports multi-TID aggregation and if the A-MPDU includes two or more QoS
32 Data frames with ack policy Implicit BAR and belonging to more than one block ack agree-
33 ment, then the STA shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in 26.4.2
34 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).
35

38 26.4.4.3 Responding to an HE MU PPDU with an SU PPDU

40 If an AP intends to solicit an immediate response in an SU PPDU the following apply:

- 41 — An AP shall set the Ack Policy Indication subfield in the QoS Data and QoS Null frames to Normal
42 Ack or Implicit BAR in at most one A-MPDU in the HE MU PPDU (see 10.3.2.13.1 (Acknowledg-
43 ment procedure for DL MU PPDU in SU PPDU) for an example of this sequence).
- 44 — The A-MPDUs in the HE MU PPDU shall not contain a Management frame that solicits acknowl-
45 edgment.

46 An HE STA that receives an HE MU PPDU with an A-MPDU that contains MPDUs that solicit acknowledg-
47 ment and that does not include a triggering frame shall respond using an SU PPDU as follows:

- 48 1) If the A-MPDU carries only one MPDU and the MPDU is an EOF MPDU that is either a QoS Data
49 frame or QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy, then the STA shall respond with an Ack
50 frame.
51
- 52 2) If the HE STA supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support
53 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes more than
54 one MPDU, only one of which solicits acknowledgment and the MPDU that solicits acknowledg-
55 ment is an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data frame or a QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy,
56 then the HE STA shall respond with an Ack frame.
57
- 58 3) If the A-MPDU does not include an EOF MPDU but does include one or more non-EOF MPDUs
59 that are QoS Data frame belonging to the same block ack agreement and with the Ack Policy Indica-
60 tion subfield equal to Implicit BAR for at least one MPDU, then the STA shall respond with an
61 Ack frame.
62

tion subfield equal to Implicit BAR for at least one MPDU, then the STA shall either respond with a Compressed BlockAck frame as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA) or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type set to 1 and the TID field set to 14 as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame) if the recipient has indicated support for the all ack context by setting the All Ack Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1.

- 4) If the HE STA supports multi-TID aggregation and if the A-MPDU includes two or more QoS Data frames with Implicit BAR ack policy addressed to it and belonging to more than one block ack agreement, then the STA shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).

NOTE—A control response frame carried in an SU PPDU that is an immediate response to an HE MU PPDU follows the rules defined in 10.7.6.5 (Rate selection for control response frames).

An AP that sends an HE MU PPDU shall not set the Ack Policy Indication subfield to Normal Ack or Implicit BAR for any of the MPDUs carried in the HE MU PPDU if the solicited PPDU containing a control response would occupy one or more 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields of the soliciting PPDU are not located.

26.4.4.4 Responding to an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with an HE TB PPDU

An AP that sends an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU that contains an MPDU that solicits an immediate response carried in an HE TB PPDU shall set the Ack Policy Indication subfield to HTP Ack for each of the QoS Data frames for which it intends to solicit an immediate response (see 10.3.2.13.2 (Acknowledgment procedure for DL MU PPDU in MU format)). If a Management frame that solicits acknowledgment is carried in an HE MU PPDU, then the response is carried in an HE TB PPDU. A non-AP STA that receives an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with an A-MPDU that contains a QoS Data frame addressed to it and with HTP Ack ack policy, or a Management frame that solicits an immediate acknowledgment shall not respond if it has not received the UL resource allocation information either through TRS Control subfield or a Trigger frame in the soliciting PPDU.

A non-AP STA that receives an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with an A-MPDU that contains one or more MPDUs that solicits acknowledgment and includes a triggering frame shall respond with an HE TB PPDU as follows:

- 1) If the A-MPDU includes only one MPDU, and the MPDU is an EOF MPDU that is either a QoS Data or QoS Null frame with HTP Ack ack policy or a Management frame that solicits acknowledgment, then the STA shall respond with an Ack frame.
- 2) If the HE STA supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes more than one MPDU, only one of which solicits acknowledgment and the MPDU that solicits acknowledgment is an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data or QoS Null frame with HTP Ack ack policy, or a Management frame that solicits acknowledgment, then the HE STA shall respond with an Ack frame.
- 3) If the A-MPDU does not include an EOF MPDU but does include one or more non-EOF MPDUs that are QoS Data frames belonging to the same block ack agreement and with the Ack Policy Indication subfield equal to HTP Ack for at least one MPDU, then the STA shall respond with a Compressed BlockAck frame as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA) or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type set to 1 and the TID field set to 14 as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame) if the recipient has indicated support for the all ack context by setting the All Ack Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1.
- 4) If the HE STA supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes a Manage-

1 ment frame that solicits an acknowledgment, and one or more QoS Data frames with ack policy HTP
 2 Ack or Implicit BAR, then the STA shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in
 3 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).

- 4
- 5) If the HE STA supports multi-TID aggregation and if the A-MPDU includes two or more QoS Data
 6 frames with HTP Ack ack policy and belonging to more than one block ack agreement, then the
 7 STA shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame.
- 8

9

10 **26.4.4.5 Responding to an HE TB PPDU with an SU PPDU**

11

12

13 A non-AP STA that sends an HE TB PPDU as a response to a Basic Trigger frame shall set the Ack Policy
 14 Indication subfield of the QoS Data frames or QoS Null frames to Normal Ack or Implicit BAR (see
 15 10.3.2.13.3 (Acknowledgment procedure for an UL MU transmission) for an example of this sequence).

16

17

18 If the HE TB PPDU carries MPDUs only from one STA and if the HE AP intends to send the response in an
 19 SU PPDU, then the HE AP shall respond using an SU PPDU as follows:

20

- 21
- 1) If the A-MPDU includes only one MPDU, and the MPDU is an EOF MPDU that is either a QoS
 22 Data frame or QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy, or a Management frame that solicits
 23 acknowledgment then the HE AP shall respond with either an Ack frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck
 24 frame with the Ack Type field set to 1.
- 25
- 2) If the HE AP supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support
 26 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes more than
 27 one MPDU, only one of which solicits acknowledgment and the MPDU that solicits acknowledgment
 28 is an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data or QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy, or a
 29 Management frame that solicits acknowledgment, then the HE AP shall respond with an Ack frame
 30 or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type field set to 1.
- 31
- 3) If the A-MPDU does not include an EOF MPDU but does include one or more non-EOF MPDUs
 32 that are QoS Data frames belonging to the same block ack agreement and with Ack Policy Indica-
 33 tion subfield equal to Implicit BAR for at least one MPDU, then the HE AP shall respond with a
 34 Compressed BlockAck frame as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck
 35 frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA), a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type
 36 field set to 1 and the TID field set to 14 if the recipient has indicated support for the all ack context
 37 by setting the All Ack Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1 or a
 38 Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type field set to 0 as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment
 39 context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).
- 40
- 4) If the HE AP supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support
 41 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU carries a Manage-
 42 ment frame that solicits acknowledgment, and one or more QoS Data frames with Implicit BAR ack
 43 policy, then the HE AP shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in 26.4.2
 44 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).
- 45
- 5) If the HE AP supports multi-TID aggregation and if the A-MPDU includes two or more QoS Data
 46 frames with Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack policy and belonging to more than one block ack
 47 agreement, then the HE AP shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in 26.4.2
 48 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).
- 49

50

51 If the AP receives HE TB PPDUs from more than one STA, and if the AP intends to send the response in an
 52 SU PPDU, then the AP shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame carried in an SU PPDU that con-
 53 tains the appropriate settings in each Per AID TID Info field addressed to each STA as defined in 26.4.2
 54 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame).

55

1 **26.4.4.6 Responding to an HE TB PPDU with an HE MU PPDU**

2

3 A non-AP STA that sends an HE TB PPDU as a response to a Basic Trigger frame that solicits an immediate
 4 response shall set the Ack Policy Indication subfield to Normal Ack or Implicit BAR for each of the QoS
 5 Data frames carried in the A-MPDU (see 10.3.2.13.3 (Acknowledgment procedure for an UL MU transmis-
 6 sion) for an example of this sequence).

7

8

9 If an HE AP sends response to an HE TB PPDU that it received using an HE MU PPDU, then the AP shall
 10 respond to each A-MPDU that it received using the following procedure:

11

- 12 1) If the A-MPDU received from a STA includes only one MPDU, and the MPDU is an EOF MPDU
 that is either a QoS Data frame or QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy, or a Management
 frame that solicits acknowledgment, then the STA shall respond with an Ack frame or a Multi-STA
 BlockAck frame with the Ack Type field set to 1 carried in the HE MU PPDU.
- 13 2) If the HE AP supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support
 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1, and if the A-MPDU includes more than
 one MPDU, only one of which solicits acknowledgment and the MPDU that solicits acknowledg-
 ment is an EOF MPDU that is a QoS Data frame with Normal Ack ack policy, or a Management
 frame that solicits acknowledgment, then the HE AP shall respond with an Ack frame or a Multi-
 STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type field set to 1 carried in the HE MU PPDU.
- 14 3) If the A-MPDU does not include an EOF MPDU but does include one or more non-EOF MPDUs
 that are QoS Data frames belonging to the same block ack agreement and with the Ack Policy Indi-
 cation subfield equal to Implicit BAR for at least one MPDU, then the HE AP shall respond with a
 Compressed BlockAck frame as defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck
 frames by an HT STA, DMG STA, or S1G STA), a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type
 field set to 1 and the TID field set to 14 or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the Ack Type field set
 to 0 as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame) carried in the
 HE MU PPDU.
- 15 4) If the HE AP supports ack-enabled aggregation by setting the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support
 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field to 1 and the A-MPDU carries a Management
 frame that solicits acknowledgment and one or more QoS Data frames with Implicit BAR ack pol-
 icy, then the HE AP shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in 26.4.2
 (Acknowledgment context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame), carried in the HE MU PPDU.
- 16 5) If the HE AP supports multi-TID aggregation and if the A-MPDU includes two or more QoS Data
 frames with Implicit BAR ack policy and are belonging to more than one block ack agreement, then
 the HE AP shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame as defined in 26.4.2 (Acknowledgment
 context in a Multi-STA BlockAck frame),

47

48 In addition, an AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true may do one of the following:

49

- 50 — For each BSS belonging to the multiple BSSID set for which the AP has received an HE TB PPDU,
 the AP responds with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with RA field set to the broadcast address and
 carried in a DL HE MU PPDU. The Ack Type field and AID11 field of the Multi-STA BlockAck
 frame are set as described in 9.3.1.8.7 (Multi-STA BlockAck variant). The AP shall set the TXVEC-
 TOR parameter STA_ID for the RU carrying the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to the value of the
 BSSID Index field as defined in 26.11.1 (STA_ID).
- 51 — The AP may respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame with the TA field set to the transmitted
 BSSID and carried in a DL HE MU PPDU to acknowledge the STA's transmission, if the recipient
 non-AP STA is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID of the multiple BSSID set and the AP has
 received an HE Capabilities element from the STA with the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield
 equal to 1. The Ack Type field and AID11 field of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame are set as
 described in 9.3.1.8.7 (Multi-STA BlockAck variant). The AP shall set the TXVECTOR parameter
 STA_ID for the RU carrying the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to 2047.

1 NOTE—An AP includes at most one Ack or BlockAck frame (group addressed Multi-STA BlockAck frame included)
 2 in an A-MPDU as specified in Table 9.7.3 (A-MPDU contents).

4 **26.4.5 HE block acknowledgment request and response rules**

5
 6 An HE AP may solicit BlockAck frame responses from multiple HE STAs using an MU-BAR Trigger frame
 7 or GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame. The MU-BAR Trigger frame shall contain either Compressed BlockAck-
 8 Req variant or Multi-TID BlockAckReq variant in each of the User Info fields. An HE AP shall not send a
 9 Multi-TID BlockAckReq (neither as part of a User Info field addressed to the STA in an MU-BAR Trigger
 10 frame nor as a BlockAckReq frame) to a STA that has not indicated support for multi-TID A-MPDU. The
 11 Block Ack Bitmap length of the block ack sent in response to an eliciting Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame,
 12 BlockAckReq frame, GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame, or MU-BAR Trigger frame is determined as defined in
 13 26.4.3 (Negotiation of block ack bitmap lengths).

14
 15 An HE STA that receives a BlockAckReq frame or an MU-BAR Trigger frame that contains a Compressed
 16 BlockAckReq variant in the User Info field addressed to the STA, or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame that
 17 contains a Compressed BlockAckReq variant in the Common Info field shall respond with a Compressed
 18 BlockAck frame as defined in 10.25.6 (HT-immediate block ack extensions) or a Multi-STA BlockAck
 19 frame as defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure), with Starting Sequence Number subfield set to
 20 the Starting Sequence Number subfield of the Block Ack Request Starting Sequence Control subfield and
 21 the length of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield calculated as defined in 26.4.3 (Negotiation of block ack bit-
 22 map lengths).

23
 24 An HE STA that receives a Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame or an MU-BAR Trigger frame that contains a Multi-TID
 25 BlockAckReq variant in the User Info field addressed to the STA or a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame that
 26 contains a Multi-TID BlockAckReq variant in the Common Info field shall respond with a Multi-
 27 STA BlockAck frame that contains a Per AID TID Info field with a Block Ack Bitmap subfield for each of
 28 the TIDs (with values less than 8) contained in the BlockAckReq frame, with Starting Sequence Number
 29 subfield set to the Starting Sequence Number subfield of the Block Ack Request Starting Sequence Control
 30 subfield and the length of the Block Ack Bitmap subfield calculated as defined in 26.4.3 (Negotiation of
 31 block ack bitmap lengths).

32
 33 A non-AP HE STA that responds to a Compressed BlockAckReq frame, Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame,
 34 MU-BAR Trigger frame, or GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame shall set the
 35 Ack Type subfield of the Multi-STA BlockAck frame to 0.

45 **26.5 MU operation**

46 **26.5.1 HE DL MU operation**

47 **26.5.1.1 General**

48 HE DL MU operation allows an AP to transmit simultaneously to one or more non-AP STAs in DL
 49 OFDMA, DL MU-MIMO or both.

50 The PSDU on each RU in an HE MU PPDU shall be padded to end at the same time, indicated by the L-SIG
 51 field as described in 27.3.10.5 (L-SIG).

52 The padding procedure for each A-MPDU in an HE MU PPDU is defined in 26.6.2.2 (A-MPDU padding in
 53 an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU).

54 An AP shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU with an RU that is narrower than the PPDU bandwidth and that
 55 is allocated to more than one STA (DL MU-MIMO) unless the AP has received from each STA an HE

1 Capabilities element with the Partial Bandwidth DL MU-MIMO subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

4 An AP shall not send to a STA an A-MPDU contained in an HE MU PPDU that contains one of the following
5 combinations of frames unless the AP has received from the STA an HE Capabilities element with the
6 Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field equal to 1:
7

- 9 — A QoS Data frame with HTP Ack ack policy carried in an A-MPDU subframe with the EOF field set
10 to 1 and a Trigger frame.
- 11 — A Management frame carried in an A-MPDU subframe with the EOF field set to 1 where the Man-
12 agement frame is a Disassociation frame, (Re)Association Response frame, Authentication frame or
13 Action frame, and a Trigger frame.
14

16 The AP shall follow the EDCA procedure defined in 10.23 (HCF) and the following additional rules:
17

- 18 — If at least one of the frame exchanges in HE DL MU operation requires an immediate response (i.e.,
19 the AP includes at least one Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield) and if the AP
20 receives an immediate response with at least one correct MPDU from at least one of the solicited
21 STAs, the frame exchange is successful.
- 22 — If at least one of the frame exchanges in HE DL MU operation requires an immediate response (i.e.,
23 the AP includes at least one Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield) and if the AP
24 receives no immediate response, the frame exchange is not successful.
- 25 — The AP follows the MPDU aggregation rules in 26.6 (A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU), that
26 supersedes the rules in 10.23.2.7 (Sharing an EDCA TXOP).

31 An AP shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU where the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field is
32 greater than 16 to a non-AP STA with a 20 MHz operating channel width.
33

35 **26.5.1.2 RU addressing in an HE MU PPDU**

38 The Type and Subtype subfields in the Frame Control field and address type (individually addressed or
39 group addressed) of MPDUs may be different across A-MPDUs in different PSDUs within the same HE MU
40 PPDU.

42 An AP includes in the TXVECTOR for an HE MU PPDU at least one parameter STA_ID for each RU in the
43 HE MU PPDU as defined in 26.11.1 (STA_ID). The AP shall not include in the TXVECTOR more than one
44 parameter STA_ID with the same value unless the value is 2046 (indicating an unallocated RU).

47 A non-AP STA that receives an HE MU PPDU where the RXVECTOR includes a parameter STA_ID that
48 matches the 11 LSBs of the non-AP STA's AID may disregard any broadcast RU in the HE MU PPDU. A
49 non-AP STA that receives an HE MU PPDU where the RXVECTOR includes a parameter STA_ID that is
50 equal to the BSSID Index of the BSSID of the AP with which the STA is associated (see 9.4.2.73 (Multiple
51 BSSID-Index element)) may disregard a broadcast RU (parameter STA_ID equal to 2047).

55 An MPDU of an HE MU PPDU sent in a broadcast RU shall not include information intended for a STA that
56 is identified as the recipient of another RU in the same HE MU PPDU.

58 **26.5.1.3 RU allocation in an HE MU PPDU**

61 An AP shall not transmit a 40 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 2.4 GHz band with an RU allocated to a 20 MHz
62 operating non-AP HE STA unless the AP has received from the 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an HE
63 Capabilities element with the 20 MHz In 40 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz Band subfield in the HE PHY
64 Capabilities Information field equal to 1.
65

1 An AP shall not transmit a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU with an RU allocated to a 20 MHz operating
 2 non-AP HE STA unless the AP has received from the 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an HE
 3 Capabilities element with the 20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities
 4 Information field equal to 1.

5
 6 An AP shall not transmit a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU with an RU allocated to an 80 MHz
 7 operating non-AP HE STA unless the AP has received from the 80 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an HE
 8 Capabilities element with the 80 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities
 9 Information field equal to 1.

10
 11 An AP shall follow the RU restriction rules defined in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) when
 12 assigning an RU to a 20 MHz operating non-AP STA in a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz HE
 13 MU PPDU. An AP shall follow the rules in 27.3.2.7 (20 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs), and 27.3.2.9 (80
 14 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs) or the SST subchannel (if applicable) in which the STA is operating (see
 15 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission)) if allocating RUs to a non-AP STA.

16
 17 An AP shall not transmit a 40 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 2.4 GHz band with a 242-tone RU allocated to a 20
 18 MHz operating non-AP HE STA unless the AP has received from the 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an
 19 HE Capabilities element with B4 of the Supported Channel Width Set subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities
 20 Information field equal to 1.

21
 22 An AP shall not transmit a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 5 GHz band
 23 with a 242-tone RU allocated to a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA unless the AP has received from the
 24 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an HE Capabilities element with B5 of the Supported Channel Width
 25 Set subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

26 An HE MU PPDU shall have a sufficient number of RUs allocated to users such that all of the following
 27 conditions are satisfied:

- 35 — At least $N \times 4 \times 26$ subcarriers are modulated by the allocated RUs within the entire PPDU, where N
 36 is the number of 20 MHz subchannels that are not preamble punctured in the PPDU.
- 37 — For each 20 MHz subchannel S within the bandwidth of the HE MU PPDU, at least 2×26 subcarri-
 38 ers are modulated by the allocated RUs in the 20 MHz subchannel S if all of the following are true:
 39
 - 40 • At least one RU is allocated in the 20 MHz subchannel S .
 - 41 • Transmitter is an AP.
 - 42 • The AP is operating in an operating class for which the behavior limits set listed in Annex E
 43 includes the DFS_50_100_Behavior.
 - 44 • The AP has received at least one Beacon frame from OBSS B within the past dot11ObssNbRu-
 45 ToleranceTime in the current operating channel in which any of the following are true:
 46
 - 47 • The Extended Capabilities element is not present.
 - 48 • The OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field in the Extended Capa-
 49 bilities element is not present.
 - 50 • The OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field in the Extended Capa-
 51 bilities element is 0.
 - 52 • The 20 MHz subchannel S overlaps with the operating bandwidth of the OBSS B .
 - 53 — At least one RU is allocated in the primary 20 MHz.

57 26.5.2 UL MU operation

58 26.5.2.1 General

62 UL MU operation allows an AP to solicit simultaneous immediate response frames from one or more non-
 63 AP HE STAs. A non-AP HE STA shall follow the rules in this subclause for the transmission of response
 64 frames in an HE TB PPDU unless the Trigger frame is an MU-RTS Trigger frame, in which case the
 65

1 response is a CTS frame sent in a non-HT PPDU (see 26.2.6 (MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure)).
 2
 3

4 A non-AP STA shall not send a triggering frame.
 5
 6

7 A non-AP HE STA shall set the TRS Support subfield of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 if its
 8 dot11TRSOPTIONIMPLEMENTED is true; otherwise the STA shall set it to 0.
 9

10 A non-AP HE STA shall set the UL 2×996-tone RU Support subfield in HE Capabilities element to 1 if it
 11 supports receiving a frame that carries a TRS Control subfield that allocates a 2×996-tone RU or a Trigger
 12 frame with User Info field addressed to the STA with RU Allocation subfield indicating a 2×996-tone RU.
 13
 14

15 A non-AP HE STA with dot11ULMUMIMOOPTIONIMPLEMENTED equal to true shall set the Full Bandwidth
 16 UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element it
 17 transmits to 1, if it supports transmitting an HE TB PPDU that uses UL MU-MIMO within an RU that spans
 18 the entire PPDU bandwidth. Otherwise, the HE STA shall set the Full Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield
 19 to 0.
 20
 21

22 A non-AP HE STA with dot11ULMUMIMOOPTIONIMPLEMENTED equal to true shall set the Partial Band-
 23 width UL MU-MIMO subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element
 24 it transmits to 1, if it supports transmitting an HE TB PPDU that uses UL MU-MIMO within an RU that
 25 does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth. Otherwise, the non-AP HE STA shall set the Partial Bandwidth
 26 UL MU-MIMO subfield to 0.
 27
 28

29 If a non-AP STA indicates Class A in the Device Class subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information
 30 field of the HE Capabilities element then the HE TB PPDU transmitted by the non-AP STA shall meet the
 31 class A requirements in 27.3.14 (Transmit requirements for PPDUs sent in response to a triggering frame).
 32 Otherwise, the HE TB PPDU transmitted by the non-AP STA shall meet the class B requirements in 27.3.14
 33 (Transmit requirements for PPDUs sent in response to a triggering frame).
 34
 35

36 A non-AP HE STA with dot11HTVHTTriggerOPTIONIMPLEMENTED equal to true shall set the HT And VHT
 37 Trigger Frame Rx Support field to 1 in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in HE Capabilities ele-
 38 ments that it transmits. A non-AP HE STA with dot11HTVHTTriggerOPTIONIMPLEMENTED equal to false
 39 shall set the HT And VHT Trigger Frame Rx Support field to 0.
 40
 41

42 **26.5.2.2 Rules for soliciting UL MU frames**

43 **26.5.2.2.1 General**

44 An HE AP shall not allocate an RU for a 40 MHz HE TB PPDU to a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA in
 45 the 2.4 GHz band unless the AP has received from the 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an HE Capabili-
 46 ties element with the 20 MHz In 40 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz Band subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities
 47 Information field in its HE Capabilities element equal to 1.
 48
 49

50 An HE AP shall not allocate an RU for an 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE TB PPDU to a 20 MHz operating
 51 non-AP HE STA unless the AP has received from the 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA an HE Capabili-
 52 ties element with the 20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field
 53 equal to 1.
 54
 55

56 An AP shall not allocate to a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA a 242-tone RU for a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160
 57 MHz, or 80+80 MHz HE TB PPDU transmission.
 58
 59

60 An AP shall not transmit a Trigger frame soliciting an HE TB PPDU that uses UL MU-MIMO within an RU
 61 that does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth to a non-AP STA from which it has not received an HE Capa-
 62
 63

1 bilities element with the Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

4 An AP shall not transmit a Trigger frame soliciting an HE TB PPDU that uses UL MU-MIMO within an RU
5 that spans the full bandwidth to a non-AP STA from which it has not received an HE Capabilities element
6 with the Full Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.
7

9 An AP shall not send a frame that carries a TRS Control subfield to a non-AP STA that has not set the TRS
10 Support subfield to 1 in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element it trans-
11 mits.
12

14 An AP shall not send a frame that carries a TRS Control subfield that allocates a 2×996 -tone RU to a non-
15 AP STA or a Trigger frame with a User Info field that allocates a 2×996 -tone RU to a non-AP STA unless
16 the AP has received from the non-AP STA an HE MAC Capabilities element with the UL 2×996 -tone RU
17 Support subfield in the MAC Capabilities Information field equal to 1.
18

19 NOTE—An AP does not send a Trigger frame containing a User Info field with AID12 subfield carrying the 12 LSBs of
20 the AID of a non-AP STA or a frame addressed to a non-AP STA that carries a TRS Control subfield if the AP has
21 received from the non-AP STA an OM Control subfield with UL MU Disabled subfield set to 1 and UL MU Data Dis-
22 able subfield set to 0 (see 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication)).
23

25 An AP that transmits a PPDU may solicit an HE TB PPDU from one or more non-AP STAs through one of
26 the following mechanisms:
27

- Including in the PPDU one or more Trigger frames that include one or more User Info fields with one of the following AID12 subfield settings:
 - The AID12 subfield is set to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA if the User Info field is addressed to a STA that is associated with the AP.
 - The AID12 subfield is set to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA if the User Info field is addressed to a STA that is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID in a multiple BSSID set to which the AP belongs, the TA field of the Trigger frame is set to the transmitted BSSID and the non-AP STA has set the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1.
 - The AID12 subfield is set to 0 if the User Info field is addressed to non-AP STAs that are associated with the AP and that support the UORA procedure (see 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA))).
 - The AID12 subfield is set to 2045 if the User Info field is addressed to non-AP STAs that are not associated with the AP and that support the UORA procedure (see 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA))).
- Including in the PPDU one or more individually addressed frames that include a TRS Control subfield and that:
 - Are carried in an S-MPDU format that solicits an immediate Ack frame (see 10.13.8 (Transport of S-MPDUs))
 - Are carried in an A-MPDU format that solicits an immediate BlockAck frame (see 10.25.6.7 (Originator's behavior))
 - Are carried in a multi-TID A-MPDU format that solicits an immediate Multi-STA BlockAck frame (see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU))

57 The AP shall follow the rules in 26.3.2 (Dynamic fragmentation) if any of the MPDUs are fragments.
58

59 More than one Trigger frame may be aggregated in an A-MPDU. If more than one Trigger frame is aggre-
60 gated in an A-MPDU, all of them shall have the same content. An AP may include a frame carrying a TRS
61 Control subfield in an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU.
62

64 NOTE—The TRS Control subfields within MPDUs carried in an A-MPDU have the same value (see 10.9 (HT Control
65 field operation)).

1 An A-MPDU shall not include both a Trigger frame and a frame carrying a TRS Control subfield.
 2

3 An AP shall not transmit a triggering frame if all of the following conditions are satisfied:
 4

- 5 — The AP is operating in an operating class for which the behavior limits set listed in Annex E includes
 6 the DFS_50_100_Behavior (see Table E-1)
- 7 — The AP has received at least one Beacon frame from OBSS *B* within the past dot11ObssNbRuToler-
 8 anceTime in the current operating channel in which any of the following are true:
 9
 - 10 • The Extended Capabilities element is not present.
 - 11 • The OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field in the Extended Capabil-
 12 ities element is not present.
 - 13 • The OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field in the Extended Capabil-
 14 ities element is 0.
- 15 — The Trigger frame or the frame containing a TRS Control subfield allocates at least one 26-tone RU
 16 whose location in frequency overlaps with the operating bandwidth of the OBSS *B*.
 17

18 If a non-AP HE STA operating in an operating class for which the behavior limits set listed in Annex E
 19 includes the DFS_50_100_Behavior does not respond to a triggering frame in which the non-AP HE STA is
 20 allocated a 26-tone RU, then the AP should not allocate a 26-tone RU to the non-AP HE STA in the next
 21 triggering frame.
 22

23 An AP shall not transmit a Trigger frame with a User Info field addressed to a non-AP STA in an HT or
 24 VHT PPDU unless the AP has received from the non-AP STA an HE Capabilities element with the HT And
 25 VHT Trigger Frame Rx Support subfield in HE MAC Capabilities Information field equal to 1.
 26

27 An AP shall not use the short guard interval for an HT or VHT PPDU that carries a Trigger frame. A Trigger
 28 frame shall not be carried in a DSSS or HR/DSSS PPDU. An AP shall not use STBC encoding for a PPDU
 29 that carries a triggering frame.
 30

31 **26.5.2.2 Requirements for allocating resources**

32 An AP that sends a Basic Trigger frame, a BQRP Trigger frame or a BSRP Trigger frame that is not aggre-
 33 gated with a QoS Data frame with HTP Ack ack policy or with a Management frame that solicits acknowl-
 34 edgment shall allocate sufficient resources for the responding STA indicated by each User Info field for the
 35 solicited associated non-AP STA or the UORA response from an associated non-AP STA to send at least
 36 one QoS Null frame that carries an HT Control field.
 37

38 NOTE—An AP that sends a Basic Trigger frame uses an implementation specific method to decide the amount of
 39 resources indicated for UORA allocations.
 40

41 An AP that solicits an Ack or BlockAck frame carried in an HE TB PPDU from a non-AP STA shall allocate
 42 sufficient resources for the non-AP STA to send the expected acknowledgment. If the AP solicits a Block-
 43 Ack frame, the allocated resource shall be sufficient for the non-AP STA to send the BlockAck frame with
 44 Block Ack Bitmap subfields that are the negotiated block ack bitmap length (see 26.4.3 (Negotiation of
 45 block ack bitmap lengths)).
 46

47 An AP that sends a BFRP Trigger frame shall allocate sufficient resources for the HE TB PPDU response
 48 form each HE beamformee to include all the solicited feedback, including feedback that is segmented and
 49 including an HT Control field in each frame.
 50

51 **26.5.2.3 Padding for Trigger frame or frame containing TRS Control subfield**

52 An AP transmitting a PPDU that contains a BCC encoded Trigger frame or frame containing a TRS Control
 53 subfield soliciting a response from a non-AP STA shall ensure that the number of bits in the PSDU follow-
 54 ing the last bit of SCH is at least $L_{PAD,MAC}$ as defined in Equation (26-1), which is based on the *MinTrig-*
 55

ProcTime indicated by the non-AP STA (see Table 9-321a (Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field)), where

SCH is either:

- the User Info field addressed to the STA of the last or only Trigger frame, or
 - the last TRS Control subfield in the PSDU.

$$L_{PAD,MAC} = N_{DBPS} m_{PAD} \quad (26-1)$$

where

N_{DBPS} is defined in Table 17-4 (Modulation-dependent parameters) for a non-HT PPDU, Table 19-7 (Frequently used parameters) for an HT PPDU, Table 21-6 (Frequently used parameters) for a VHT PPDU and Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters) for an HE PPDU. If the Trigger frame or TRS Control subfield is carried in HE MU PPDU, N_{DBPS} is replaced by $N_{DBPS,u}$ of the target user in Equation (26-1).

For a non-HT PPDU, HT PPDU and VHT PPDU:

$$m_{PAD} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } MinTrigProcTime \text{ is 0} \\ 2, & \text{if } MinTrigProcTime \text{ is } 8 \mu\text{s} \\ 4, & \text{if } MinTrigProcTime \text{ is } 16 \mu\text{s} \end{cases}$$

For an HE PPDU:

$$m_{PAD} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } MinTrigProcTime \text{ is 0} \\ 1, & \text{if } MinTrigProcTime \text{ is 8 or 16 } \mu\text{s} \end{cases}$$

An AP transmitting a Trigger frame that contains at least one User Info field with AID12 subfield set to 0 (i.e., an RA-RU for associated STAs) shall ensure that the number of bits following the last bit of SCH is at least $L_{PAD,MAC}$ as defined in Equation (26-1), which is based on the largest *MinTrigProcTime* of all associated non-AP STAs, where SCH is the last User Info field with AID12 subfield equal to either 0 or 2046.

An AP transmitting a Trigger frame that contains at least one User Info field with AID12 subfield set to 2045 (i.e., an RA-RU for unassociated non-AP STAs) should ensure that the number of bits following the last bit of SCH is at least $4 \times N_{DBPS}$ for a non-HT PPDU, HT PPDU or VHT PPDU, or N_{DBPS} for an HE PPDU, where SCH is the last User Info field with AID12 subfield equal to either 2045 or 2046.

An AP transmitting an NFRP Trigger frame shall ensure that the number of bits following the last User Info field with the AID12 not equal to 4095 is at least $4 \times N_{DBPS}$ for a non-HT PPDU, HT PPDU or VHT PPDU, or N_{DBPS} for an HE PPDU.

An AP may use any type of padding to satisfy the *MinTrigProcTime* requirement of a non-AP STA, such as using the Padding field in a Trigger frame, post-EOF A-MPDU padding, or aggregating other MPDUs in the A-MPDU.

If a Trigger frame or frame containing a TRS Control subfield is LDPC encoded, then the transmitting AP ensures that $T_{TrigProc}$ meets the following requirements:

- $T_{TrigProc}$ shall be greater than or equal to the *MinTrigProcTime* specified by the non-AP STAs that are the recipients of the Trigger frame.
 - For Trigger frame that contains at least one User Info field with AID12 subfield set to 0, $T_{TrigProc}$ shall be greater than or equal to the largest *MinTrigProcTime* of all associated non-AP STAs.
 - For Trigger frame that contains at least one User Info field with AID12 subfield set to 2045, $T_{TrigProc}$ should be at least 16 μ s.
 - For NFRP Trigger frame, $T_{TrigProc}$ shall be at least 16 μ s.

T_{TrigProc} is defined as the duration of PPDU that is after the OFDM symbol containing the last coded bit of the LDPC codeword that encodes the last bit of SCH minus *T_{PE,nominal}* defined in 27.3.12 (Packet extension).

26.5.2.2.4 Allowed settings of the Trigger frame fields and TRS Control subfield

An AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true shall not send a Trigger frame (other than an NFRP Trigger frame) with the TA field set to the transmitted BSSID to a non-AP STA that is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID in the multiple BSSID set unless the AP has received an HE Capabilities element from non-AP STA with the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field equal to 1. An AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true may send an NFRP Trigger frame with the TA field set to the transmitted BSSID to a non-AP STA that is associated with a non-transmitted BSSID in a multiple BSSID set.

An AP that transmits a Trigger frame shall set the TA field of the frame to the MAC address of the AP, except if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true and the Trigger frame is directed to non-AP STAs from at least two different BSSs of a multiple BSSID set, in which case, the AP shall set the TA field of the frame to the transmitted BSSID.

An AP shall not set any subfields of the Common Info field of a Trigger frame to a value that is not supported by all the recipient non-AP STAs of the Trigger frame and the AP.

The AP shall set the UL Length subfield of a Trigger frame to the value given by Equation (27-11) with $m = 2$.

If an AP transmits a Trigger frame that allocates an RU that spans the entire HE TB PPDU bandwidth and assigns the RU to more than one non-AP STA (i.e., for UL MU-MIMO) and with the GI And LTF Type subfield of the Common Info field set to indicate either 2x HE-LTF + 1.6 μ s GI or 4x HE-LTF + 3.2 μ s GI, the AP may set the MU-MIMO LTF Mode subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame to indicate either HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode or HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode. Otherwise, the AP shall set the MU-MIMO LTF Mode subfield in the Common Info field to indicate HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode.

An AP that transmits Trigger frames in more than one A-MPDU in an HE MU PPDU shall set each subfield, except the Trigger Type, More TF, CS Required and Trigger Dependent Common Info subfields, in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame in one A-MPDU to the same value as the corresponding subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frames in the other A-MPDUs.

An AP that transmits frames carrying a TRS Control subfield in more than one A-MPDU in an HE MU PPDU shall set the UL Data Symbols and AP Tx Power subfields of the TRS Control subfield in the frames of one A-MPDU to the same value as the corresponding subfields of the TRS Control subfield in the frames of the other A-MPDUs.

An AP that transmits one or more Trigger frames in one or more A-MPDUs and frames carrying a TRS Control subfield in one or more other A-MPDUs in an HE MU PPDU shall set the Common Info field of the Trigger frames and the TRS Control subfields in each A-MPDU as follows:

- The UL Length subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frames and the UL Data Symbols subfield in the TRS Control subfields indicate the same HE TB PPDU duration
- The AP Tx Power subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frames and the AP Tx Power subfield in the TRS Control subfields indicate the same transmit power
- In the Common Info field of the Trigger frames:
 - The MU-MIMO LTF Mode and UL STBC subfields are set to 0
 - The Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Periodicity subfield is set to 0

- 1 • The Doppler subfield is set to 0
- 2 • The Pre-FEC Padding Factor subfield is set to the default PE duration value, which is indicated
- 3 by the AP in the Default PE Duration subfield of the HE Operation element it transmits and the
- 4 pre-FEC padding factor is set to 4
- 5 • The UL Spatial Reuse subfield is set to SRP_AND_NON_SRQ_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED
- 6 • If the TXVECTOR parameters HE_LTF_TYPE and GI_TYPE of the HE PPDU carrying the
- 7 Trigger frame are either 4xHE-LTF and 3u2s_GI, respectively, or 2xHE-LTF and 1u6s_GI,
- 8 respectively, then the GI And LTF Type subfield is set to 2. Otherwise, the GI And LTF Type
- 9 subfield is set to 1.
- 10 • The other remaining subfields are set to any valid value

14 NOTE—A non-AP STA obtains the information required to prepare an HE TB PPDU explicitly and implicitly. Explicit
 15 information is obtained in the Common Info field of a Trigger frame, or in the UL Data Symbols and AP Tx Power sub-
 16 fields of the TRS Control subfield contained in the soliciting PPDU. Implicit information is obtained in previously
 17 exchanged frames with the AP, e.g., in the BSS Color and the Default PE Duration subfields of the HE Operation ele-
 18 ment, or from default values specified in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).

20 An AP shall not set any subfields of the User Info field of a Trigger frame to a value that is not supported by
 21 the recipient non-AP STA of the User Info field and the AP. An AP shall not set any subfields of a TRS
 22 Control subfield to a value that is not supported by the recipient non-AP STA of the TRS Control subfield
 23 and the AP. If an RU is allocated to only one non-AP STA the Starting Spatial Stream subfield for that non-
 24 AP STA shall be set to 0.

27 An AP shall follow the RU restriction rules defined in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) when
 28 assigning an RU to a 20 MHz operating non-AP STA for a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz HE
 29 TB PPDU. An AP shall not set the RU Allocation subfield of the User Info field of a Trigger frame or TRS
 30 Control subfield that is addressed to a non-AP STA to a value such that the RU allocated to the STA lies out-
 31 side the channel in which the STA is operating (see 27.3.2.6 (Resource allocation for an HE TB PPDU), and
 32 27.3.2.9 (80 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs)) or outside the SST subchannel (if applicable) in which the
 33 STA is operating (see 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission)).

36 If a Trigger frame is transmitted in the broadcast RU of an HE MU PPDU, then the Trigger frame shall not
 37 include any User Info fields addressed to a non-AP STA that is identified as recipient of another RU or spa-
 38 tial stream of the same HE MU PPDU.

41 A TRS Control subfield shall not be included in a group addressed frame.

44 If an AP transmits one or more Trigger frames or frames carrying a TRS Control subfield, then the frames
 45 shall collectively elicit HE TB PPDU responses such that at least one scheduled RU is allocated for each
 46 20 MHz channel occupied by the eliciting PPDU. An AP shall not allocate an RU in any 20 MHz channel
 47 that is not occupied by the immediately preceding DL PPDU.

50 An AP may indicate an unallocated RU in a Trigger frame by including a User Info field with the AID12
 51 subfield set to 2046. The AP shall place any User Info fields with the AID12 subfield set to 2046 after User
 52 Info fields with the AID12 subfield set to a value less than 2046.

55 An AP shall not transmit a Trigger frame that contains more than one User Info field with the same value in
 56 the AID12 subfield unless the value in the AID12 subfield is 0 or greater than 2007. The AP shall place User
 57 Info fields with the same value in the AID12 subfield together as a contiguous block in the Trigger frame.
 58 The AP shall place User Info fields with the AID12 subfield set to 0 or a value greater than 2007 after User
 59 Info fields with the AID12 subfield set to a value in the range 1 to 2007 (if any present).

62 An AP that transmits an individually addressed Trigger frame shall include only one User Info field in the
 63 Trigger frame with the AID12 subfield set to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA addressed by the
 64 RA field.

An example of User Info field ordering in a Trigger frame and the relationship to RU locations is shown in Figure 26-4 (Example of User Info field ordering and RU location mapping).

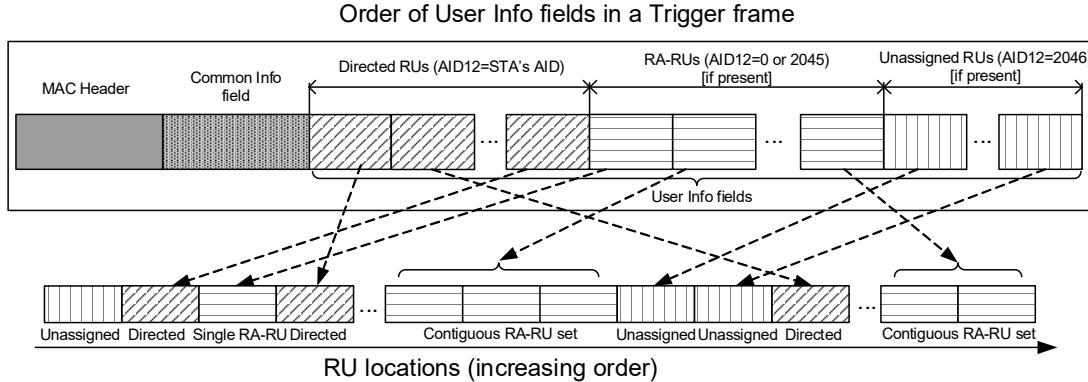


Figure 26-4—Example of User Info field ordering and RU location mapping

An AP that sends a Basic Trigger frame shall set the TID Aggregation Limit subfield of a User Info field that is addressed to a non-AP STA to a value between 0 and 1 plus the value of the Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element most recently received from the non-AP STA. A value 0 in the TID Aggregation Limit subfield indicates to the non-AP STA that it shall not solicit any immediate response for the MPDUs that the non-AP STA aggregates in the HE TB PPDU. A value of 7 in the TID Aggregation Limit subfield indicates to the non-AP STA that it may aggregate QoS Data frames from any number of different TID values in the multi-TID A-MPDU. Table 26-2 (Relation between TID Aggregation Limit field, Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support field and solicited immediate response) provides a summary of the possible combinations.

Table 26-2—Relation between TID Aggregation Limit field, Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support field and solicited immediate response

AP: TID Aggregation Limit field	Non-AP STA: Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support field	Non-AP STA: Solicited immediate response?
0	Any value	No
1	Any value	Yes for at most 1 TID and/or 1 Management frame
<i>tal</i> (0 to <i>mta</i> + 1)	<i>mta</i>	Yes at most <i>tal</i> TIDs and/or at most one Management frame

where
tal is the value in the TID Aggregation Limit field
mta is the value in the Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support field

The AP may assign any ACI value defined in Table 9-154 (ACI-to-AC encoding) in the Preferred AC subfield in the Trigger Dependent User Info field for an HE STA and identified by the AID12 subfield of the User Info field of a Basic Trigger frame. If the AP does not have a recommendation then it shall set the Preferred AC subfield to the value 0 (AC_BE).

1 When transmitting a PPDU carrying a triggering frame, an AP should not apply transmit beamforming to:

- 2 — Non-HT PPDUs
- 3 — Fields prior to the HT-STF field of an HT mixed format PPDU
- 4 — Pre-VHT modulated fields of an VHT PPDU
- 5 — Pre-HE modulated fields of an HE PPDU

6
7 An AP shall transmit an HE PPDU that carries a Trigger frame or frame that includes a TRS Control subfield with the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE set to 1.

8
9 An AP should set the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in the User Info fields of a Basic Trigger frame to 0 if
10 the CS Required subfield in the Common Info field of the Basic Trigger frame is 0.

11 An AP shall set the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in the User info fields of a Basic Trigger frame to 0 if
12 the solicited HE TB PPDU is the last PPDU of the TXOP.

13 NOTE—An HE TB PPDU is the last PPDU if the Duration/ID field is equal to 0 in the MPDU(s) contained in the HE
14 TB PPDU.

15 **26.5.2.2.5 AP access procedures for UL MU operation**

16 The AP shall follow the EDCA procedure defined in 10.23 (HCF) and the additional rules in this subclause.

17 If an AP receives an immediate response with at least one frame from at least one non-AP STA solicited by
18 a Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield, the frame exchange is successful.

19 If an AP does not receive an immediate response with at least one frame from at least one non-AP STA
20 solicited by a PPDU that contains at least one Trigger frame, then the frame exchange is not successful and
21 the AP shall follow the backoff procedure in 10.23.2.2 (EDCA backoff procedure).

22 An AP may use any AC for sending a PPDU that contains only Trigger frames.

23 If the PPDU contains frames that are not Trigger frames in addition to a Trigger frame, then the AP follows
24 the MPDU aggregation rules in 26.6 (A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU), which supersedes the rules in
25 10.23.2.7 (Sharing an EDCA TXOP).

26.5.2.3 Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation

26.5.2.3.1 General

27 A non-AP STA shall not send an HE TB PPDU unless it is explicitly triggered by an AP in one of the operation
28 modes described in this subclause.

29 The inter-frame space between a PPDU that contains a Trigger frame or frame that includes a TRS Control
30 subfield and the HE TB PPDU is a SIFS.

31 A non-AP STA shall not transmit an HE TB PPDU if all of the conditions in 26.5.2.3.2 (Conditions for not
32 responding with an HE TB PPDU) are satisfied. Otherwise, a non-AP STA shall transmit an HE TB PPDU a
33 SIFS after a received PPDU if all of the following conditions are met:

- 34 — The received PPDU contains either a Trigger frame (that is not an MU-RTS variant) with a User Info
35 field addressed to the non-AP STA, or a frame addressed to the non-AP STA that contains an TRS
36 Control subfield. A User Info field in the Trigger frame is addressed to a non-AP STA if one of the
37 following conditions are met:

- The AID12 subfield is equal to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA and the Trigger frame is sent by the AP with which the non-AP STA is associated with or by the AP corresponding to the transmitted BSSID if the non-AP STA is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID and has indicated support for receiving Control frames with TA field set to the transmitted BSSID by setting the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities element that the STA transmits.
- The AID12 subfield is 0, the non-AP STA is associated with the AP that sent the Trigger frame, the non-AP STA supports the UORA procedure, and the conditions the conditions in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)) are satisfied.
- The AID12 subfield is 2045, the non-AP STA is not associated with the AP that sent the Trigger frame, the non-AP STA supports the UORA procedure, the conditions in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)) are satisfied, and the resource that the non-AP STA gains access to is sufficient for the non-AP STA to include the pending frame.
- The CS Required subfield in the Trigger frame is 1 and the UL MU CS condition described in 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism) indicates the medium is idle, or the CS Required subfield in a Trigger frame is 0 or the response was solicited by a frame containing a TRS Control subfield.
- The UL MU Disable subfield is 0 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield is 0 in the most recent OM Control subfield (if any) sent by the non-AP STA to the AP or the UL MU Disable subfield is 0 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield is 1 in the most recent OM Control subfield (if any) sent by the non-AP STA to the AP and the frame that is being triggered is an acknowledgment (see 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication)).

A non-AP STA addressed by a User Info field in a Trigger frame (i.e., the AID12 subfield is equal to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA) may ignore the remainder of User Info fields in the Trigger frame.

A non-AP STA generates the A-MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU as defined in 26.5.2.4 (A-MPDU contents in an HE TB PPDU).

26.5.2.3.2 Conditions for not responding with an HE TB PPDU

A non-AP STA shall not transmit an HE TB PPDU that is not an HE TB feedback NDP if all the following conditions are satisfied:

- The non-AP STA is operating in an operating class for which the behavior limits set listed in Annex E includes the DFS_50_100_Behavior (see Table E-1).
- The HE TB PPDU would be in response to one of the following:
 - A Trigger frame containing a User Info field with AID12 subfield carrying the 12 LSBs of the AID of the STA.
 - A frame addressed to the non-AP STA that includes a TRS Control subfield.
 - A Trigger frame that allocates at least one RA-RU.
- The RU is a 26-tone RU.
- If the non-AP STA has received at least one Beacon frame within the past dot11ObssNbRuToleranceTime from an AP with which the non-AP STA is not associated and the Beacon frame meets any of the following conditions:
 - The Extended Capabilities element is not present.
 - The OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field in the Extended Capabilities element is not present.
 - The OBSS Narrow Bandwidth RU In OFDMA Tolerance Support field in the Extended Capabilities element is 0.

A non-AP STA may choose to not respond to a Trigger frame that contains one or more subfields in the Common Info field or in the User Info field addressed to or selected by the non-AP STA with values that are not recognized, not supported or cannot be satisfied by the non-AP STA.

1 NOTE—The User Info field in this context corresponds to the one directed to the non-AP STA (i.e., value in the AID12
 2 subfield matches the STA's AID) or the one allocating an RA-RU (single or within a contiguous set) that is selected by
 3 the non-AP STA.

4
 5 A non-AP STA may choose to not respond a TRS Control subfield in a frame addressed to the non-AP STA
 6 if the TRS Control subfield contains one or more subfields with values that are not recognized, not sup-
 7 ported or cannot be satisfied by the non-AP STA. A non-AP STA shall update the intra-BSS NAV (see
 8 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)) based on the duration information of the Trigger frame or frame containing
 9 TRS Control subfield even if it decides to not respond to the frame.
 10

12 **26.5.2.3.3 TXVECTOR parameters for HE TB PPDU response to Trigger frame**

13 A non-AP STA transmitting an HE TB PPDU in response to a Trigger frame shall set the TXVECTOR
 14 parameters as follows:
 15

- 16 — The FORMAT parameter is set to HE_TB.
 17 — The TRIGGER_METHOD parameter is set to TRIGGER_FRAME.
 18 — The TXOP_DURATION parameter is set as defined in 26.11.5 (TXOP_DURATION).
 19 — The BSS_COLOR parameter is set as follows:
 - 20 • If the Trigger frame was received in an HE PPDU, then set to the value of the RXVECTOR
 21 parameter BSS_COLOR of the HE PPDU.
 - 22 • If the Trigger frame was received in a non-HE PPDU, then set to the value of the active BSS
 23 color as defined in 26.11.4 (BSS_COLOR).
- 24 — The L_LENGTH parameter is set to the value indicated by the UL Length subfield in the Common
 25 Info field of the Trigger frame.
 26 — The GI_TYPE and HE_LTF_TYPE parameters are set to the value indicated by the GI and LTF
 27 Type subfield of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 28 — The NUM_STS parameter is set to the number of space-time streams indicated by the Number Of
 29 Spatial Streams subfield of the SS Allocation field of the User Info field and UL STBC subfield in
 30 the Common Info field of the Trigger frame. The NUM_STS parameter is set to 1 if the HE TB
 31 PPDU is sent on an RA-RU following the UORA procedure.
 32 — The CH_BANDWIDTH parameter is set to the value of the UL BW subfield in the Common Info
 33 field of the Trigger frame.
 34 — The HE_LTF_MODE parameter is set to the value indicated by the MU-MIMO LTF Mode subfield
 35 of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 36 — The NUM_HE_LTF parameter is set to the value indicated by the Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And
 37 Midamble Periodicity subfield of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 38 — The STBC parameter is set to the value indicated by the UL STBC subfield of the Common Info
 39 field of the Trigger frame.
 40 — The LDPC_EXTRA_SYMBOL parameter is set to the value indicated by the LDPC Extra Symbol
 41 Segment subfield of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 42 — The SPATIAL_REUSE parameter is set to the value of the UL Spatial Reuse subfield in the Com-
 43 mon Info field of the eliciting Trigger frame.
 44 — The DOPPLER parameter is set to the value of the Doppler subfield in the Common Info field of the
 45 Trigger frame.
 46 — The MIDAMBLE_PERIODICITY parameter is present if the Doppler subfield in the Common Info
 47 field of the Trigger frame is 1. If present, it is set to the value indicated by the Number Of HE-LTF
 48 Symbols And Midamble Periodicity subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 49 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 50 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 51 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 52 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 53 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 54 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 55 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 56 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 57 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 58 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 59 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 60 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 61 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 62 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 63 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 64 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 65 — The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved sub-
 66 field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.

- The MCS parameter is set to the value of the UL HE-MCS subfield in the User Info field of the Trigger frame.
- The DCM parameter is set to the value indicated by the UL DCM subfield of the User Info field of the Trigger frame.
- The STARTING_STS_NUM parameter is set to the value of the Starting Spatial Stream subfield in the SS Allocation field in the User Info field of the Trigger frame. The STARTING_STS_NUM parameter is set to 0 if the HE TB PPDU is sent on an RA-RU following the UORA procedure.
- The FEC_CODING parameter is set to the value indicated by the UL FEC Coding Type subfield of the User Info field of the Trigger frame.
- The RU_ALLOCATION parameter is set as follows:
 - If the RU is not an RA-RU or an RA-RU with Number Of RA-RU subfield of the User Info subfield of the Trigger frame set to 0, it is set to the value indicated by the RU Allocation subfield of the User Info subfield of the Trigger frame.
 - If the RU is the k -th RU of a set of contiguous RA-RUs starting with an RA-RU with Number Of RA-RU subfield of the User Info subfield of the Trigger frame set to a nonzero value, it is set to the value indicated by the RU Allocation subfield of the corresponding User Info subfield of the Trigger frame plus k minus 1.
- The TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX parameter is set to a value based on the computed transmission power (see 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction)) for an HE TB PPDU and the value of the AP Tx Power subfield in the Common Info field and the UL Target RSSI subfield in the User Info field of the Trigger frame.
- The HE_TB_PE_DISAMBIGUITY parameter is set to the value indicated by the PE Disambiguity subfield in the Common Info field in the Trigger frame.

26.5.2.3.4 TXVECTOR parameters for HE TB PPDU response to TRS Control subfield

A non-AP STA transmitting an HE TB PPDU in response to a frame containing a TRS Control subfield shall set the TXVECTOR parameters as follows:

- The FORMAT parameter is set to HE_TB
- The TRIGGER_METHOD parameter is set to TRS
- The L_LENGTH parameter is computed as described in Equation (27-11) using the TXTIME value. The TXTIME is defined by Equation (27-136) where N_{SYM} is set to $F_{VAL} + 1$, where F_{VAL} is the value of the UL Data Symbols subfield of the TRS Control subfield
- The RU_ALLOCATION and MCS parameters are set to the values of the RU Allocation and UL HE-MCS subfields of the TRS Control subfield, respectively.
- The CH_BANDWIDTH parameter is set to the value of the RXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the soliciting DL HE PPDU (see Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters))
- The BSS_COLOR and DCM parameters are set to the values of the RXVECTOR parameters BSS_COLOR and DCM of the soliciting DL HE PPDU, respectively
- The DOPPLER parameter is set to 0 and the MIDAMBLE_PERIODICITY parameter is absent
- The NUM_HE_LTF parameter is set to 1
- The STARTING_STS_NUM parameter is set to 0
- The HE_LTF_MODE and STBC parameters are set to 0, and the NUM_STS parameter is set to 1
- The FEC_CODING parameter is set to 0 if the RU Allocation subfield indicates an RU that is smaller than a 484-tone RU; otherwise set to 1
- The LDPC_EXTRA_SYMBOL parameter is not present if the RU Allocation subfield indicates less than a 484-tone RU; otherwise set to 1
- The SPATIAL_REUSE parameter is set to SRP_AND_NON_SRQ_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED

- The DEFAULT_PE_DURATION parameter is set to the default PE duration value for UL MU response scheduling, which is indicated by the AP in the Default PE Duration subfield of the HE Operation element it transmits
- The TXOP_DURATION parameter is set as defined in 26.11.5 (TXOP_DURATION)
- The HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED parameter is set to 511 (all 1s)
- If the RXVECTOR parameters HE_LTF_TYPE and GI_TYPE of HE MU PPDU carrying the frame with the TRS Control subfield are either 4xHE-LTF and 3u2s_GI, respectively, or 2xHE-LTF and 1u6s_GI, respectively, then the HE_LTF_TYPE and GI_TYPE parameters are set to 4xHE-LTF and 3u2s_GI, respectively. Otherwise, the HE_LTF_TYPE and GI_TYPE parameters are set to 2xHE-LTF and 1u6s_GI, respectively.
- The TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX parameter is set to a value based on the computed transmission power (see 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction)) for an HE TB PPDU and the value of the AP Tx Power subfield of the TRS Control subfield and the UL Target RSSI subfield of the TRS Control subfield.

NOTE 1—A non-AP STA transmitting an HE TB PPDU in response to a frame carrying a TRS Control subfield considers both physical CS and virtual CS to be 0 (see 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism)).

NOTE 2—The only permissible values for CH_BANDWIDTH are CBW20, CBW40, CBW80, CBW80+80, and CBW160 if the soliciting PPDU is an HE SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU. The only permissible value for CH_BANDWIDTH is CBW20 if the soliciting PPDU is an HE ER SU PPDU.

26.5.2.3.5 RA field for frames carried in an HE TB PPDU

The RA field of the frames sent in response to a MU-RTS Trigger frame is set as defined in 9.3.1.3 (CTS frame format). The RA field of the frames sent in response of a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame or MU-BAR Trigger frame is set as defined in 9.3.1.8 (BlockAck frame format). The RA field of the QoS Null frames, QoS Data frames and Management frames sent in response to a Trigger frame shall be set to the MAC address of the destination AP (see 9.3.2.1 (Format of Data frames) and 9.3.3.2 (Format of Management frames)). The RA field of a QoS Null frame or Action No Ack frame sent in response to a frame carrying TRS Control subfield shall be the MAC address of the destination AP (see 9.3.2.1 (Format of Data frames) and 9.3.3.2 (Format of Management frames)).

NOTE 1—if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true and the TA field of the soliciting Trigger frame contains the transmitted BSSID, the destination AP is the BSSID to which the non-AP STA intends to send the frame.

NOTE 2—all MPDUs within an A-MPDU carried in an HE TB PPDU have the same RA (see 9.7.3 (A-MPDU contents)). The settings of the address fields of MPDUs within the A-MPDU depend on the type and subtype of the MPDU as defined in 9.3 (Format of individual frame types).

26.5.2.4 A-MPDU contents in an HE TB PPDU

A non-AP STA that receives a triggering frame other than an MU-RTS Trigger frame or an NFRP Trigger frame and that transmits an HE TB PPDU response shall follow the A-MPDU padding procedure described in 26.6.2.3 (A-MPDU padding in an HE TB PPDU) and construct the A-MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU as described below provided the AP allocates sufficient resources for the non-AP STA to include MPDU(s) in the A-MPDU. Otherwise, the non-AP STA is not required to include MPDUs in the A-MPDU and includes only padding in the A-MPDU.

NOTE—The responses to a MU-RTS Trigger frame and a NFRP Trigger frame are exempt from these construction rules since the MU-RTS Trigger frame does not solicit an HE TB PPDU and the NFRP Trigger frame solicits an HE TB PPDU that does not carry an A-MPDU.

A non-AP STA shall follow the rules in 26.5.4.5 (Additional considerations for unassociated STAs) to construct an HE TB PPDU in response to a Trigger frame from an AP with which it is not associated and that allocates RA-RUs for unassociated.

1 A non-AP STA that responds to a DL MU PPDU containing one or more frames addressed to it that include
 2 a TRS Control subfield follows the rules defined in 10.3.2.9 (Ack procedure) for generating the Ack frame,
 3 the rules defined in 10.25.6.5 (Generation and transmission of BlockAck frames by an HT STA or DMG
 4 STA) for generating the BlockAck frame, and the rules defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure) for
 5 generating the Multi-STA BlockAck frame if at least one of the received MPDUs solicits an immediate
 6 acknowledgment. The contents of the A-MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU shall be as defined in:
 7

- 8 — Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context) if at least one of the received
 9 MPDUs solicits an immediate acknowledgment.
- 10 — Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context) with the excep-
 11 tion that the A-MPDU does not contain QoS Data frames, if none of the received MPDUs solicit an
 12 immediate acknowledgment.
- 13

14 NOTE 1—The non-AP STA additionally follows the rules in 26.3.2 (Dynamic fragmentation) if fragments are present in
 15 the soliciting A-MPDU.

16 NOTE 2—An AP might transmit an HE MU PPDU with an RU allocated to STA-ID 2045 with an A-MPDU that
 17 includes a Management frame addressed to an unassociated non-AP STA, that solicits an acknowledgment and that car-
 18 ries a TRS Control subfield. The TRS Control subfield allocates resources for the unassociated non-AP STA to respond
 19 with an HE TB PPDU that carries the acknowledgment.

20 An associated non-AP STA that responds to a Basic Trigger frame addressed to it shall construct the A-
 21 MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU as defined in the following:

- 22 — Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context), if the Trigger frame is contained in
 23 an A-MPDU and the non-AP STA received in the same A-MPDU at least one MPDU that solicits an
 24 immediate acknowledgment. The TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the
 25 non-AP STA may have any value.
- 26 — Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context) with the excep-
 27 tion that the A-MPDU does not contain QoS Data frames, if the Trigger frame is either not carried in
 28 an A-MPDU or is carried in an A-MPDU but the non-AP STA receives no other MPDUs that solicit
 29 an immediate acknowledgment. The TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to
 30 the non-AP STA may have any value.
- 31 — Table 9-429 (A-MPDU contents in the S-MPDU context) with the following restrictions:
 32 • The S-MPDU shall be a control response frame if the non-AP STA received in the same A-
 33 MPDU at least one MPDU that solicits an immediate acknowledgment. The TID Aggregation
 34 Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA may have any value.
 35 • The S-MPDU may be a Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame provided that the number of TIDs pres-
 36 ent in the Multi-TID BlockAckReq frame does not exceed the TID aggregation limit indicated
 37 by the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA.
 38 • The S-MPDU may be a QoS Data, QoS Null, Management, BlockAckReq or PS-Poll frame if
 39 the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA is greater
 40 than 0.
 41 • Otherwise the S-MPDU shall be a QoS Data, QoS Null, or Management frame that does not
 42 solicit an immediate acknowledgment.
- 43 — Table 9-532a (A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response con-
 44 text) or Table 9-532c (A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response
 45 context) if the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA in
 46 the Trigger frame is greater than 0 and the non-AP STA intends to carry one or more non-EOF
 47 MPDUs (see 10.12 (A-MPDU operation) and 26.6.3.3 (Non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU oper-
 48 ation)). The A-MPDU is subject to the following restrictions:
 49 • It shall contain a control response frame if the non-AP STA received in the same A-MPDU at
 50 least one MPDU that solicits an immediate acknowledgment.
 51 • The number of TIDs present in the A-MPDU shall count towards reaching the TID aggregation
 52 limit indicated by the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP
 53 STA in the Trigger frame.

- 1 — Table 9-532b (A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context) or
 2 Table 9-532d (A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context) if
 3 the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA in the Trigger
 4 frame is greater than 0 and the non-AP STA intends to carry an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU
 5 (see 26.6.3.1 (General) and 26.6.3.4 (Ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU operation). The A-MPDU is
 6 subject to the following restrictions:
 7 • It shall contain a control response frame if the non-AP STA receives at least another MPDU that
 8 solicits an immediate acknowledgment.
 9 • The number of TIDs present in the A-MPDU, in either QoS Data or BlockAckReq frames, shall
 10 count towards reaching the TID aggregation limit that is obtained from the TID Aggregation
 11 Limit field of the User Info field addressed to the non-AP STA in the Trigger frame.

12
 13
 14
 15
 16
 17
 18 A non-AP STA shall follow the rules in 26.5.4.5 (Additional considerations for unassociated STAs) to construct an HE TB PPDU in response to a Trigger frame from an AP with which it is not associated and that allocates RA-RUs for unassociated STAs.

19 If the associated non-AP STA has no frames pending or is unable to include pending frames in response to a
 20 Basic Trigger frame because the allocated resource is insufficient, then the associated non-AP STA shall
 21 include in the A-MPDU at least one QoS Null frame if the allocated resource is sufficient for containing a
 22 QoS Null frame.

23 NOTE---The non-AP STA can transmit one QoS Null frame as defined in Table 9-429 (A-MPDU contents
 24 in the S-MPDU context) or one or more QoS Null frames as defined in Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in
 25 the data enabled no immediate response context).

26 A non-AP STA that responds to a BFRP Trigger frame addressed to it shall construct an A-MPDU carried in
 27 the HE TB PPDU with one or more HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frames (see 26.7 (HE sounding protocol)); other frames shall not be allowed in the A-MPDU.

28
 29 NOTE—It is not always possible to fragment an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report (see 26.7.4 (Rules for generating segmented feedback)). If the length is insufficient to contain the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report
 30 requested by a BFRP Trigger frame, no feedback is sent.

31 A non-AP STA that responds to an MU-BAR Trigger frame addressed to it shall construct the A-MPDU carried
 32 in the HE TB PPDU as defined in Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context). The
 33 non-AP STA includes either a BlockAck frame or a Multi-STA BlockAck frame in the A-MPDU as defined
 34 in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure).

35 A non-AP STA that responds to a GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame addressed to it shall construct the A-MPDU
 36 carried in the HE TB PPDU as defined in Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context).
 37 The non-AP STA includes a GCR BlockAck frame in the A-MPDU as defined in 10.25.10 (GCR and GLK-GCR
 38 block ack).

39 A non-AP STA that responds to a BSRP or BQRP Trigger frame addressed to it and that is not aggregated
 40 with any MPDUs that solicit an immediate acknowledgement shall construct the A-MPDU carried in the HE
 41 TB PPDU as defined in Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context)
 42 with the exception that the A-MPDU does not contain QoS Data frames. The non-AP STA shall include in
 43 the A-MPDU at least one QoS Null frame. A non-AP STA that responds to a BSRP or BQRP Trigger frame
 44 addressed to it and that is aggregated with at least one MPDU that solicits an immediate acknowledgement,
 45 shall construct the A-MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU as defined in Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in
 46 the control response context).

1 NOTE 1—The frame type of MPDUs may be different across A-MPDUs within the same HE TB PPDU subject to A-
 2 MPDU context.

3 NOTE 2—A non-AP STA follows the rules in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU) for
 4 aggregating the QoS Data frames with multiple TIDs in HE TB PPDUs.

5
 6 A non-AP STA may set dot11HEUPHControlActivated to false if the most recent OM Control field sent (if
 7 any) to the AP had the UL MU Disable field equal to 1; otherwise, the non-AP STA shall set dot11HEUPH-
 8 ControlActivated to true.
 9
 10

11 A STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU transmits the dB value of its UL power headroom, HR_{STA} , in the
 12 UPH Control subfield of frames (that can carry an HE-variant HT Control field) carried in the HE TB
 13 PPDU, to assist in the AP's HE-MCS selection. The UL power headroom for the assigned HE-MCS is
 14 defined in Equation (26-2).
 15
 16

$$17 \quad HR_{STA} = Tx_{pwr}^{Max} - Tx_{pwr}^{STA} \quad (26-2)$$

18 where
 19
 20

21 Tx_{pwr}^{Max} represents the maximum UL transmit power of an HE TB PPDU with the assigned HE-MCS after
 22 considering hardware capability, regulatory requirements and local maximum transmit power
 23 levels (see 11.8.5 (Specification of regulatory and local maximum transmit power levels)), as
 24 well as non-802.11 in-device coexistence requirements
 25
 26

27 Tx_{pwr}^{STA} represents the current UL transmit power of the HE TB PPDU for the assigned HE-MCS, which is
 28 determined by power control and subject to the non-AP STA's capabilities and other require-
 29 ments as defined in 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction)
 30
 31

32 HR_{STA} is the UL power headroom, in dB, of the HE TB PPDU, the encoding of which is specified in
 33 9.2.4.6a.5 (UPH Control).
 34
 35

36 NOTE—If the Minimum Transmit Power Flag subfield in the UPH Control subfield is 1, then the non-AP STA is trans-
 37 mitting the HE TB PPDU at its minimum Tx_{pwr}^{STA} for the assigned HE-MCS. The UL power headroom is calculated for
 38 the assigned HE-MCS and is independent of TOM parameters provided in any OM Control field contained in the same
 39 A-Control field (see 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication)).
 40
 41

42 A non-AP STA shall include an HE variant HT Control field containing the UPH Control subfield in the
 43 frames carried in the A-MPDU of the HE TB PPDU with the following exceptions:
 44

- 45 — A UPH Control subfield is not included in any frame if the remaining space in the A-MPDU, after
 46 inclusion of solicited frames that cannot contain an HE variant HT Control field, is not sufficient to
 47 contain frame(s) that contain an HE variant HT Control field.
- 48 — A UPH Control subfield is not included in a frame if the other Control subfields in the HE variant HT
 49 Control field and the available space in the HE variant HT Control field, other than Control subfields
 50 with a Control ID subfield equal to 15, are included in the HE variant HT Control field of the frame,
 51 is not sufficient to contain an additional UPH Control subfield as well.
- 52 — A UPH Control subfield is not included in a frame that is a Control frame.

53 A non-AP STA shall not include a Control subfield with a Control ID subfield set to 15 in the HE variant HT
 54 Control field of the frames carried in an HE TB PPDU.
 55
 56

57 26.5.2.5 UL MU CS mechanism 58 59

60 The ED-based CCA and virtual CS functions are used to determine the state of the medium if CS is required
 61 before responding to a received Trigger frame. ED-based CCA for the UL MU CS mechanism is defined in
 62
 63

1 27.3.19.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel) and virtual CS is
 2 defined in 10.3.2.1 (CS mechanism).

4 If the CS Required subfield in a received Trigger frame is 0 or a frame that includes a TRS Control subfield
 5 and solicits a response is received, then the non-AP STA may respond without regard to the busy/idle state
 6 of the medium.

8 NOTE—Responding without regard to the busy/idle state of the medium means that a non-AP STA can respond without
 9 the need to check the medium indication from physical CS and virtual CS (i.e., basic NAV and intra-BSS NAV).

11 The intra-BSS NAV is not considered in virtual CS by a non-AP STA in determining whether to respond to
 12 a Trigger frame sent by the AP with which the non-AP STA is associated.

15 The basic NAV is considered in virtual CS by a non-AP STA in determining whether to respond to a Trigger
 16 frame sent by the AP with which the non-AP STA is associated if the counter of the basic NAV is not 0.

19 A NAV is considered in virtual CS by a non-AP STA in determining whether to respond to a Trigger frame
 20 sent by an AP with which the non-AP STA is not associated, through the UORA procedure (see 26.5.4 (UL
 21 OFDMA-based random access (UORA))) unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 23 — The NAV was set by a frame originating from the AP sending the Trigger frame
- 24 — The NAV counter is 0

26 NOTE 1—The intra-BSS NAV is considered in virtual CS by a non-AP STA associated with an AP in determining
 27 whether to respond to a Trigger frame with RU allocations for unassociated STAs sent by another AP.

29 NOTE 2—The details of how a non-AP STA is solicited by the Trigger frame for transmission are described in
 30 26.5.2.2.4 (Allowed settings of the Trigger frame fields and TRS Control subfield).

32 NOTE 3—if a non-AP STA responds to a Trigger frame from an AP with which it is not associated through the UORA
 33 procedure, the method to identify that a NAV was set by a frame originating from the AP sending the Trigger frame is
 34 implementation specific. For example, the non-AP STA can save the TXOP holder address and match the saved TXOP
 35 holder address with the TA field of the Trigger frame.

37 For a non-AP STA that is solicited by a Trigger frame for transmission, the indication of the virtual CS is
 38 described as follows. If no NAV is considered, then the virtual CS indicates idle. Otherwise, the virtual CS
 39 indicates busy.

42 If the CS Required subfield in a Trigger frame is 1, then the non-AP STA shall consider the status of the
 43 CCA (using Energy Detect defined in 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity) and the virtual carrier sense
 44 (NAV)) during the SIFS between the Trigger frame and the PPDU sent in response to the Trigger frame. In
 45 this case, the non-AP STA shall sense the medium using energy-detect (ED) after receiving the PPDU that
 46 contains the Trigger frame (i.e., during the SIFS), and it shall perform the energy-detect (ED) at least in the
 47 subchannel that contains the non-AP STA's UL allocation, where the sensed subchannel consists of one or
 48 more 20 MHz channels. The non-AP STA may transmit the solicited PPDU if the 20 MHz channels contain-
 49 ing the RUs allocated in the Trigger frame are considered idle. If the non-AP STA detects that the 20 MHz
 50 channels containing the allocated RUs are not all idle, then the non-AP STA shall not transmit.

53 NOTE—The solicited PPDU is a non-HT or non-HT duplicate PPDU if the Trigger frame is an MU-RTS Trigger frame
 54 (see 26.2.6 (MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure)); otherwise, the solicited PPDU is an HE TB PPDU (see
 55 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation)).

57 The CS Required subfield in the MU-RTS Trigger frame shall be set to 1.

60 An AP that transmits a BFRP Trigger frame with the UL Length subfield in the Common Info field set to a
 61 value greater than 76 shall set the CS Required subfield in the Common Info field to 1.

63 An AP that transmits a Basic, BSRP, MU-BAR, BQRP or GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame shall set the CS
 64 Required subfield to 1 unless one of the following conditions is met:

- The RA of the Trigger frame is an individually addressed non-AP STA's MAC address and a QoS Data frame with HTP Ack ack policy and/or a Management frame that solicits an acknowledgment are aggregated with the Trigger frame in an A-MPDU, and the UL Length subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame is less than or equal to 418.
- The Trigger frame is either an MU-BAR or GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame and the UL Length subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame is less than or equal to 418.
- The UL Length subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame is less than or equal to 76.

NOTE 1—The threshold value 418 of the UL Length subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame is obtained from the maximum HE TB PPDU duration, 584 μ s, that can be solicited by the TRS Control subfield based on Equation (27-16). This duration is the sum of 20 μ s for the L-STF, L-LTF and L-SIG fields, 20 μ s for the RL-SIG, HE-SIG-A and HE-STF fields, 16 μ s for the 4x HE-LTF field with 3.2 μ s GI, 512 μ s for 32 OFDM symbols in the Data field with 3.2 μ s GI, and 16 μ s PE field (see 9.2.4.6.1 (TRS Control), 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation), and 27.3.4 (HE PPDU formats)).

NOTE 2—The UL Length subfield value 76 is derived from the duration 128 μ s, which is the duration of an HE TB PPDU with 4 HE-LTF symbols and a PE field.

An AP may transmit an NFRP Trigger frame with the CS Required subfield set to 0 or 1.

26.5.3 MU cascading sequence

An MU cascading sequence is a frame exchange sequence between an AP and one or more non-AP STAs carried in an HE MU PPDU in the downlink and HE TB PPDU in the uplink and characterized by the exchange of Control, Data and/or Management frames in both directions. An example of an MU cascading sequence is shown in Figure 26-5 (An example of an MU cascading sequence).

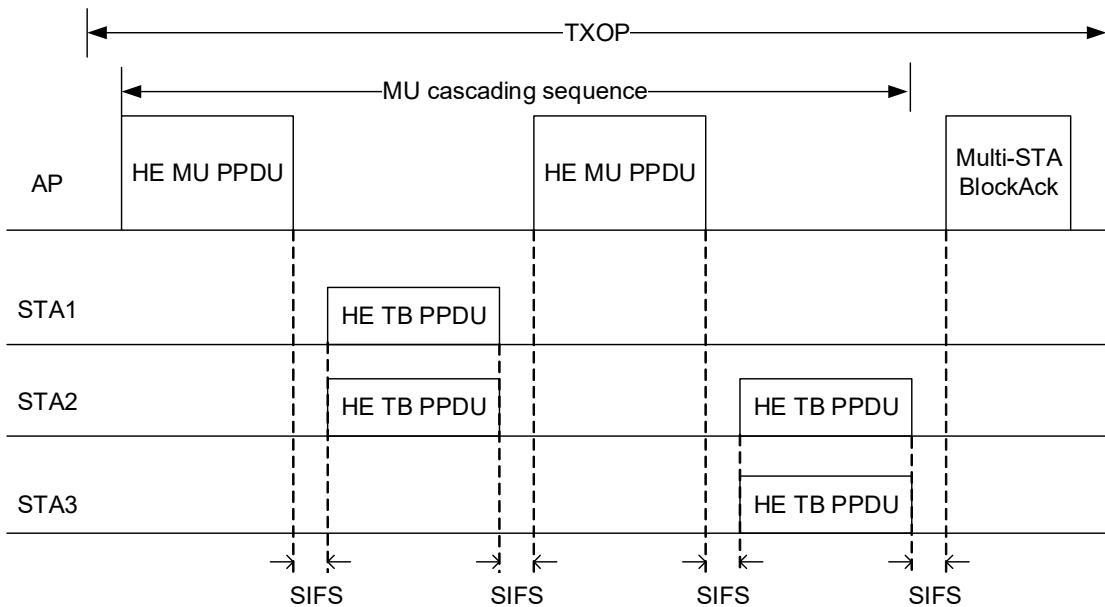


Figure 26-5—An example of an MU cascading sequence

An AP shall not transmit an A-MPDU to a non-AP STA that includes an Ack or BlockAck frame together with a triggering frame unless both the AP and the non-AP STA have indicated support by setting the MU Cascading Support subfield to 1 in the MAC Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element they transmit. The A-MPDU may additionally contain one or more MPDUs and is constructed following the rules in 26.6 (A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU).

1 The MU cascading sequence may have a different set of transmitters in HE TB PPDUs as compared to the
 2 receivers of the HE MU PPDU that immediately follows the HE TB PPDUs within the same TXOP. The
 3 MU cascading sequence may have a different set of receivers in the HE MU PPDU as compared to the set of
 4 transmitters of HE TB PPDUs that immediately follow the HE MU PPDU within the same TXOP.
 5

6 An AP follows the procedure in 26.5.2.2.5 (AP access procedures for UL MU operation).
 7

9 26.5.4 UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA) 10

11 26.5.4.1 General 12

14 An HE STA with dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented equal to true shall set the OFDMA RA
 15 Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element to 1. Other-
 16 wise, it shall set the OFDMA RA Support subfield to 0.
 17

18 NOTE—A non-AP STA that does not support UORA can contend for the WM using EDCA for sending UL frames to
 19 the AP with which it intends to communicate.
 20

21 A non-AP STA with dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented set to true shall follow the proce-
 22 dure defined in 26.5.4.3 (Transmission procedure for UORA) and 26.5.4.5 (Additional considera-
 23 tions for unassociated STAs) to contend for an eligible RA-RU.
 24

25 An HE AP that transmits a Trigger frame for random access shall set the AID12 subfield of a User Info field
 26 in the Trigger frame to 0 to indicate that one or more RA-RUs are available for non-AP STAs associated
 27 with it, and shall set the AID12 subfield in a User Info field in the Trigger frame to 2045 to indicate that one
 28 or more RA-RUs are available for non-AP STAs not associated with it.
 29

30 An HE AP may transmit a Basic Trigger frame, BQRP Trigger frame or BSRP Trigger frame that contains
 31 one or more RUs for random access. An AP that transmits a Trigger frame that is not a Basic Trigger frame,
 32 BQRP Trigger frame or BSRP Trigger frame shall not set the AID12 subfield of any User Info field of the
 33 frame to 0 or 2045.
 34

35 NOTE—An HE non-AP STA that changes the maximum number of receiving spatial streams to 1 and sets the OFDMA
 36 RA Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element to 1 cannot receive a
 37 Trigger frame sent with more than one spatial stream. As a result, if the Trigger frame indicates eligible RA-RUs for
 38 associated non-AP STAs, the HE non-AP STA cannot perform UORA defined in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random
 39 access (UORA))). An AP might take this behavior into consideration when sending a Trigger frame indicating eligible
 40 RA-RUs for associated non-AP STAs.
 41

42 An HE AP that transmits a Basic Trigger frame should set the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in the User
 43 Info field indicating an RA-RU to 0 or 1.
 44

45 An AP shall set the More RA-RU subfield in the User Info field to 1 if it intends to transmit additional Trig-
 46 ger frames in the current broadcast TWT SP that allocate RA-RUs matching the AID12 subfield value in the
 47 User Info field (see Table 9-31g (AID12 subfield encoding)).
 48

49 An HE non-AP STA shall ignore the More RA-RU subfield if the More TF field in the Trigger frame is
 50 equal to 0.
 51

52 The HE AP may include the UORA Parameter Set element (see 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random
 53 Access (UORA) Parameter Set element) in Management frames that it transmits. The AP shall indicate the
 54 range of OFDMA contention window (OCW) in the UORA Parameter Set element for non-AP STAs to ini-
 55 tiate random access following the Trigger frame transmission. An AP corresponding to a nontransmitted
 56 BSSID in a multiple BSSID set shall follow the rules in 11.1.3.8.4 (Inheritance of element values).
 57

58 NOTE—An AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true can allocate RA-RUs for non-AP STAs associated
 59 with different BSSIDs in a multiple BSSID set by transmitting a DL MU PPDU carrying broadcast RUs, one per BSS in
 60

1 the set (see 26.5.1.2 (RU addressing in an HE MU PPDU)), with an A-MPDU in each broadcast RU carrying a Trigger
 2 frame with at least one User Info field with the AID12 subfield set to 0.

4 A non-AP HE STA shall maintain an internal OCW and an internal OBO counter. OCW is an integer in the
 5 range OCW_{min} to OCW_{max} . A non-AP HE STA shall obtain OCW_{min} and OCW_{max} from the most
 6 recently received UORA Parameter Set element carried in a Beacon, Probe Response or (Re)Association
 7 Response frame transmitted by its associated AP unless the non-AP HE STA is associated with a nontrans-
 8 mitted BSSID of a multiple BSSID set, in which case it shall determine OCW_{min} and OCW_{max} by follow-
 9 ing the rules in 11.1.3.8.4 (Inheritance of element values).

12 A non-AP HE STA that has not received a UORA Parameter Set element from the AP with which it intends
 13 to communicate shall use the default values $OCW_{min} = 7$ and $OCW_{max} = 31$ if contending for RA-RUs
 14 allocated by that AP.

18 Each time a non-AP HE STA associates with a different AP (or a different BSSID for non-AP STA with
 19 dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented set to true), and prior an initial attempt of RA-RU transmission towards it,
 20 the non-AP STA shall set the value of OCW to the OCW_{min} value, and shall initialize its OBO counter in
 21 the range 0 to OCW as defined in 26.5.4.3 (Transmission procedure for UORA).

26.5.4.2 Eligible RA-RUs

26 A non-AP STA that is the intended receiver of a User Info field in a Trigger frame (i.e., the AID12 subfield
 27 equal to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA) shall not contend for an RA-RU that is indicated by a
 28 Trigger frame contained in the same PPDU and shall not decrement its OBO counter.

32 A non-AP STA shall consider an RU as an eligible RA-RU if it supports all the transmit parameters indicated
 33 in the Common Info field and in the User Info field that allocates that RU (as described in 26.5.2.3
 34 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation)), the non-AP STA is associated with the BSS whose BSSID
 35 is the value in the TA field of the Trigger frame and the RA-RU is allocated for associated STAs.

37 A non-AP STA may consider an RU as an eligible RA-RU if it supports all the transmit parameters indicated
 38 in the Common Info field and in the User Info field that allocates that RU (as described in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP
 39 STA behavior for UL MU operation)), the non-AP STA is not associated with the BSS and the RA-RU is
 40 allocated for unassociated STAs.

44 An HE AP may allocate a contiguous set of RUs for random access by setting the Number Of RA-RU sub-
 45 field in the User Info field of the Trigger frame to a value greater than 1. The RA-RU indicated by the RU
 46 Allocation subfield in the User Info field shall represent the starting RU of the set. The size of all RA-RUs in
 47 the set shall be the same and equal to the size of the RA-RU indicated by the RU Allocation subfield in the
 48 User Info field. The remaining subfields of the User Info field apply to each RA-RU in the set. An AP allo-
 49 cating a contiguous set of RA-RUs in a Trigger frame with an UL BW subfield that indicates 80+80 MHz or
 50 160 MHz shall set the Number Of RA-RUs subfield such that all the RA-RUs in the set lie in one 80 MHz
 51 frequency segment.

54 NOTE—An AP can transmit a Trigger frame carrying more than one User Info field, each allocating a single or a contig-
 55 uous set of RA-RUs, to ensure that an RA-RU set does not overlap with other RUs allocated by the frame.

57 A non-AP HE STA shall determine the number of eligible RA-RUs in a contiguous set by adding the value
 58 carried in the Number Of RA-RU subfields plus one for the User Info field corresponding to an eligible RA-
 59 RU.

62 A non-AP HE STA may consider as eligible RA-RUs all or a subset of the RA-RUs indicated by the User
 63 Info fields in a Trigger frame that carries more than one User Info field that allocates RA-RUs. The number
 64 of eligible RA-RUs that the non-AP STA considers for OBO countdown and transmission (see 26.5.4.3

(Transmission procedure for UORA)) shall be the total number of eligible RA-RUs indicated by the selected subset of User Info fields.

NOTE—A STA that considers only a subset of User Info fields, can randomly select User Info fields from the available set of User Info fields that allocate RA-RUs so that the UORA contention is not concentrated at the RA-RU set indicated by the first User Info field.

26.5.4.3 Transmission procedure for UORA

In this subclause, the transmit procedure using RA-RUs is described with respect to UORA parameters. The procedure is also illustrated in Figure 26-6 (Illustration of the UORA procedure).

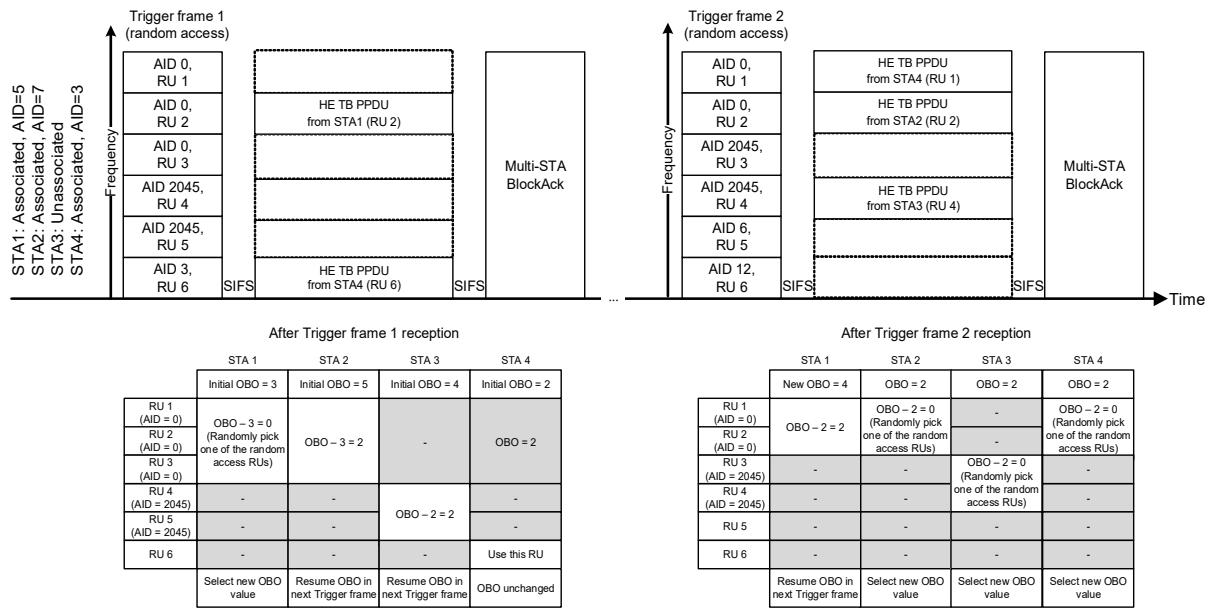


Figure 26-6—Illustration of the UORA procedure

A non-AP STA shall not contend for an eligible RA-RU or decrement its OBO counter if it does not have pending frames for the AP.

An HE STA that has a pending frame for the AP, upon the reception of a Trigger frame containing at least one eligible RA-RU, if the OBO counter of an HE STA is not greater than the number of eligible RA-RUs in a Trigger frame from that AP, then the HE STA shall set its OBO counter to zero and randomly select one of the eligible RA-RUs to be considered for transmission. Otherwise, the HE STA decrements its OBO counter by the number of eligible RA-RUs in the Trigger frame.

In the example in Figure 26-6 (Illustration of the UORA procedure):

- Before Trigger frame 1 was sent by the AP, HE STA 1, STA 2, STA 3 and STA 4 had initial OBO values of 3, 5, 4 and 2 respectively.
- Upon receiving Trigger frame 1:
 - STA 4, which is associated with the AP and has pending frames for the AP, is allocated a dedicated RU (RU6). The STA does not contend for RA-RUs and instead transmits its pending frames on RU6.
 - STA 1 and STA 2, both associated with the AP and having pending frames for the AP, decrement their respective OBO counters by the number of eligible RA-RUs indicated in the Trigger frame (i.e., three RA-RUs for associated STAs). Since STA 1's OBO counter decrements to 0, it trans-

mits its pending frames on RU2 that it randomly selects from the eligible set of RUs (i.e., RU1, RU2, and RU3). Since STA 2's OBO counter decrements to a nonzero value, it maintains the new OBO value (2) until it receives a later Trigger frame carrying RA-RUs for associated STAs.

- STA 3, which is not associated with the AP but has a pending frame for the AP, decrements its OBO counter by the number of eligible RA-RUs indicated in the Trigger frame (i.e., two RA-RUs for unassociated STAs). Since STA 3's OBO counter decrements to a nonzero value, it maintains the new OBO value (2) until it receives a later Trigger frame carrying RA-RUs for unassociated STAs.
- After transmission of HE TB PPDU in response to Trigger frame 1:
 - STA 4 has additional frames pending for the AP. Therefore, it maintains its initial OBO value (2) until it receives a later Trigger frame carrying RA-RUs for associated STAs.
 - STA 1 has additional frames pending for the AP and randomly selects a new OBO value (4).
- Upon receiving Trigger frame 2:
 - STA 1, STA 2 and STA 4 decrement their respective OBO counters by number of eligible RA-RUs (two in this case). Since STA 2 and STA 4's OBO counters decrements to 0, they both transmit their pending frames on a randomly selected RU (RU2 in case of STA 2 and RU1 in case of STA 4). If either STAs have additional frames pending for the AP, each would randomly select a new OBO value. Since STA 1's OBO decrements to a nonzero value, it maintains the new OBO value (2) until it receives a later Trigger frame carrying RA-RUs for associated STAs.
 - STA 3 decrements its OBO counter by the number of eligible RA-RUs (two in this case). Since the STA's OBO counter decrements to 0, it transmits its pending frame on a randomly selected RU (RU4 in this case).

A non-AP STA shall follow the rules in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) to construct an HE TB PPDU and shall follow the rules as defined in 26.5.2.5 (UL MU CS mechanism) to determine the state of the medium before transmitting the HE TB PPDU. If CS is required and the selected RU is considered busy, then the non-AP STA shall not transmit the HE TB PPDU and the non-AP STA shall set its OBO counter to a random value drawn from a uniform distribution in the range 0 to OCW.

The MU acknowledgment procedure for UORA follows the procedure as defined in 10.3.2.13.3 (Acknowledgment procedure for an UL MU transmission).

If a non-AP STA transmits an HE TB PPDU that contains a frame that solicits an immediate response in an RA-RU and the expected response is not received, the transmission is considered unsuccessful. Otherwise, the transmission is considered successful. After each successful HE TB PPDU transmission in an RA-RU, a non-AP HE STA shall set the value of OCW to the *OCWmin* obtained from the most recent *OCWmin* indicated in the UORA Parameter Set element from the HE AP or the default (if UORA Parameter Set element was not received) and shall initialize its OBO counter to an integer value randomly selected from a uniform distribution in the range 0 to OCW. The non-AP STA shall follow the retransmission procedure defined in 26.5.4.4 (Retransmission procedure for UORA) if the transmission is not successful.

NOTE—A non-AP STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU in response to a Trigger frame that allocates RA-RU(s) by following the UORA procedure does not update its state variables to the values contained in the MU EDCA Parameter Set element (see 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters)).

26.5.4.4 Retransmission procedure for UORA

A non-AP STA whose HE TB PPDU transmission sent in an RA-RU of a Trigger frame is unsuccessful, may attempt to retransmit the failed PPDU using EDCA or as a response to a Trigger frame.

If the HE TB PPDU is not successfully transmitted in the selected RA-RU, then the non-AP STA shall update its OCW to $2 \times \text{OCW} + 1$ when the OCW is less than the value of *OCWmax*, and shall randomly select its OBO counter in the range of 0 and OCW. Once the OCW reaches *OCWmax* for successive retrans-

mission attempts, the OCW shall remain at the value of $OCWmax$ until the OCW is reset as described in 26.5.4.3 (Transmission procedure for UORA).

A non-AP STA shall update its OCW value under the condition that the updated OCW remains in the range $OCWmin$ to $OCWmax$ obtained from the most recently received UORA Parameter Set element (see 9.4.2.249 (UL OFDMA-based Random Access (UORA) Parameter Set element)). If the updated OCW becomes greater than $OCWmax$ as consequence of receiving a modified UORA Parameter Set element, then the non-AP STA shall set the value of OCW to the new $OCWmax$ value.

26.5.4.5 Additional considerations for unassociated STAs

An AP transmitting a Trigger frame that allocates one or more RA-RUs for unassociated STAs shall transmit the Trigger frame in an HE PPDU so that an unassociated non-AP STA can determine the AP's BSS color.

An HE AP that supports the UORA procedure and broadcast TWT operation and that intends to transmit Trigger frames that allocate one or more RA-RUs for unassociated STAs shall schedule the transmission of at least one such Trigger frame within each TWT SP corresponding to a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field in a TWT element with a Broadcast TWT ID subfield equal to 0, Flow Type subfield equal to 0, Trigger subfield equal to 1 and Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield equal to 2.

An AP that receives an Authentication frame within an RA-RU should schedule for transmission at a time no less than 3 TU and no greater than 5 TU subsequent to the transmission of the Authentication frame that is a response to that reception, a Trigger frame that allocates one or more RA-RUs for unassociated STAs.

NOTE—This Trigger frame provides a potential opportunity for an unassociated STA that transmitted the Authentication frame to transmit another Authentication frame or an Association Request frame.

An AP that supports the UORA procedure and broadcasts TWT operation and that operates a BSS with a width of 80 MHz or greater and transmitting a Trigger frame that allocates one or more RA-RUs for unassociated STAs shall include at least 2 RA-RUs for unassociated STAs for at least one transmission of such a Trigger frame within a Broadcast TWT SP that meets the conditions described above.

An HE AP shall not transmit a BQRP Trigger frame or a BSRP Trigger frame that contains RA-RUs for unassociated non-AP STAs.

An AP that intends to transmit Trigger frames that allocates one or more RA-RUs for unassociated STAs should transmit FILS Discovery frames as described in 11.46.2.1 (FILS Discovery frame transmission) at regular intervals within a beacon period to assist unassociated STA discovery of the BSS and its operating parameters.

The TWT scheduling AP (see 26.8.3.1 (General)) that supports the UORA procedure may include a broadcast TWT element in FILS Discovery frames and in broadcast Probe Response frames to indicate the TWT SPs during which the AP intends to schedule for transmission at least one Trigger frame allocating one or more RA-RUs for STAs not associated with the AP. The broadcast TWT element shall carry only a broadcast TWT parameter set with the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield set to 2, the Trigger subfield set to 1, the Flow Type subfield set to 0, and the Broadcast TWT ID subfield set to 0. The AP transmits broadcast Probe Response frames if it has dot11FILSOmitReplicateProbeResponses equal to true.

A non-AP STA that receives a FILS Discovery frame from an AP with which it is not associated, may use the values carried in the frame to determine the operating parameters for that AP and may use the information when responding to a Trigger frame from the AP containing RA-RUs for unassociated non-AP STAs.

An unassociated non-AP STA that has not received an UORA Parameter Set element from the AP with which it intends to communicate shall use the default OCW values as defined in 26.5.4.1 (General). Each

time an unassociated non-AP STA communicates with a different AP using random access it shall initialize its OCW using the default values or the parameters from the UORA Parameter Set element received from that AP and shall initialize its OBO counter as defined in 26.5.4.3 (Transmission procedure for UORA).

An unassociated non-AP STA that supports the UORA and TWT procedure may begin listening for Trigger frames at the start of a particular broadcast TWT SP after receiving a Beacon frame, a broadcast Probe Response frame or a FILS Discovery frame containing a TWT element with a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field that has the Broadcast TWT ID subfield equal to 0, the Flow Type subfield equal to 0, the Trigger subfield equal to 1, and the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield equal to 2.

A non-AP STA shall include at most one Management frame in S-MPDU format when it transmits an HE TB PPDU in response to a Trigger frame sent by an AP to which the non-AP STA is not associated.

An AP that receives Management frames from one or more unassociated non-AP STAs carried in HE TB PPDUs transmitted on RA-RUs shall respond with a Multi-STA BlockAck frame carried either in an SU PPDU or in a DL HE MU PPDU on a broadcast RU with STA-ID 2045.

An AP with dot11FILSOmitReplicateProbeResponses equal to true shall follow the procedure defined in 11.1.4.3.4 (Criteria for sending a response) to respond with a broadcast Probe Response frame or the next Beacon frame if it receives one or more Probe Request frames via the UORA procedure.

26.5.5 Buffer status report operation

A non-AP STA delivers buffer status reports (BSRs) to assist its AP in allocating UL MU resources. The non-AP STA can either implicitly deliver BSRs in the QoS Control field or BSR Control subfield of any frame transmitted to the AP (unsolicited BSR) or explicitly deliver BSRs in any frame sent to the AP in response to a BSRP Trigger frame (solicited BSR). The buffer status reported in the QoS Control field consists of a queue size value for a given TID (see 9.2.4.5.6 (Queue Size subfield)). The buffer status reported in the BSR Control field consists of an ACI bitmap, delta TID, a high priority AC, and two queue sizes (see 9.2.4.6a.4 (BSR Control)).

An HE STA shall set the BSR Support subfield of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 if dot11HEBSRControlImplemented is true; otherwise the HE STA shall set the BSR Support subfield to 0.

A non-AP STA reports its buffer status (unsolicited BSR) to the AP to which it is associated in the QoS Control field in QoS Null and QoS Data frames and in the BSR Control subfield (if present) in QoS Null, QoS Data and Management frames as defined below:

- The HE STA shall report the queue size for a given TID in the Queue Size subfield of the QoS Control field in QoS Data or QoS Null frames it transmits; the STA may set the Queue Size subfield to 255 to indicate an unknown/unspecified queue size for that TID.
 - The HE STA may aggregate multiple QoS Data frames or QoS Null frames in an A-MPDU to report the queue size for different TIDs. The HE STA shall follow the A-MPDU aggregation rules defined in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU) for aggregating QoS Data frames with multiple TIDs. The HE STA does not follow the rules defined in 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU) for QoS Null frames with No Ack ack policy.
- The HE STA may report the buffer status in the BSR Control subfield of frames it transmits if the AP has indicated its support in the BSR Support subfield of its HE Capabilities element; otherwise the STA shall not report the buffer status in the BSR Control subfield.
 - The HE STA shall report the queue size for its preferred AC, indicated by the ACI High subfield, in the Queue Size High subfield of the BSR Control subfield; the STA may set the Queue Size High subfield to 255 to indicate an unknown/unspecified queue size for that AC.

- 1 • The HE STA shall report the queue size for the ACs, indicated by the ACI Bitmap subfield, in
2 the Queue Size All subfield of the BSR Control subfield; the STA may set the Queue Size All
3 subfield to 255 to indicate an unknown/unspecified BSR for those ACs.
- 4 • The HE STA shall set the Delta TID subfield according to Table 9-24d (Delta TID subfield
5 encoding), and the Scaling Factor subfield as defined in 9.2.4.6a.4 (BSR Control).
- 6
- 7

8 NOTE 1—The STA can send an unsolicited BSR in response to certain Trigger frames except MU-RTS and BSRP (with
9 or without RA-RUs, as defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) and in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-
10 based random access (UORA))) or it can send the unsolicited BSR after accessing the WM using EDCA.

11 NOTE 2—The STA might include a BSR Control subfield in a QoS Data or QoS Null frame. In this case the Queue Size
12 subfield in the QoS Control field and the Queue Size High and Queue Size All subfields in the BSR Control subfield
13 might differ, and either or both might be 255 to indicate unspecified or unknown queue size. The STA might include
14 only the BSR Control subfield in a Management frame.

15 An AP can also solicit one or more associated non-AP STAs for their BSR(s) by sending a BSRP Trigger
16 frame (see 9.3.1.22.6 (Buffer Status Report Poll (BSRP) variant)). The non-AP STA responds (solicited
17 BSR) as defined below:

- 18 — The non-AP STA that receives a BSRP Trigger frame shall follow the rules defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-
19 AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) to generate the HE TB PPDU if the Trigger frame contains
20 the 12 LSBs of the non-AP STA’s AID in any of the User Info fields; otherwise if the non-AP STA’s
21 buffers are not empty and the non-AP STA supports the UL OFDMA-based random access proce-
22 dure, it may follow the rules defined in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)) to gain
23 access to an RA-RU and generate the HE TB PPDU when the Trigger frame contains one or more
24 RA-RUs.
- 25 — The non-AP STA shall include in the HE TB PPDU one or more QoS Null frames containing one or
26 more of the following:
 - 27 • The QoS Control field(s) with Queue Size subfields for each of the TIDs for which the non-AP
28 STA has queue size to report to the AP.
 - 29 • The BSR Control subfield with the Queue Size All subfield indicating the queue size for the
30 ACs, indicated by the ACI Bitmap subfield, for which the non-AP STA has queue size to report
31 to the AP if the AP has indicated its support in the BSR Support subfield of its HE Capabilities
32 element. The non-AP STA shall set Delta TID, SF, ACI High and Queue Size High subfields of
33 the BSR Control subfield as defined in 9.2.4.6a.4 (BSR Control).
- 34 — The non-AP STA shall not solicit an immediate response for the frames carried in the HE TB PPDU
35 (e.g., the Ack Policy Indication subfield of a QoS Null frame shall not be set to Normal Ack or
36 Implicit BAR).

37 NOTE 1—As with unsolicited BSR, the STA might include a BSR Control subfield in a QoS Null frame that is sent in
38 response to the BSRP Trigger frame. In this case, the Queue Size subfield in the QoS Control field and the Queue Size
39 High and Queue Size All subfields in the BSR Control subfield might differ, and either or both might be 255 to indicate
40 an unspecified or unknown queue size.

41 NOTE 2—An AP does not send a BSRP Trigger frame containing the 12 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA that sets the
42 UL MU Disable field to 1.

43 An AP may include a BSRP Trigger frame together with other Control, Data and Management frames in one
44 A-MPDU to a non-AP STA if the HE Capabilities element received from the non-AP STA has the BSRP
45 BQRP A-MPDU Aggregation field equal to 1. A non-AP STA constructs the A-MPDU contained in the HE
46 TB PPDU sent in response to a BSRP Trigger frame as described in 26.5.2.4 (A-MPDU contents in an HE
47 TB PPDU).

48 The NDP feedback report procedure described in 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure) can be used for
49 buffer status feedback operation. An AP that sent an NFRP Trigger frame to one or more non-AP STAs may
50 send a BSRP Trigger frame to those non-AP STAs to get more precise buffer status information.

1 **26.5.6 Bandwidth query report operation**

2

3 A non-AP STA may send bandwidth query reports (BQRs) to assist its AP in allocating DL MU and UL MU
 4 resources. The non-AP STA may either implicitly deliver BQRs in the BQR Control subfield of a frame
 5 transmitted to the AP (unsolicited BQR) or explicitly deliver BQRs in a frame sent to the AP in response to
 6 a BQRP Trigger frame (solicited BQR).

7

8 An HE STA shall set the BQR Support subfield of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 if
 9 dot11HEBQRCtrlImplemented is true; otherwise the HE STA shall set the BQR Support subfield to 0.

10

11 The HE STA may report the channel availability information as specified in 27.3.19.6.5 (Per 20 MHz CCA
 12 sensitivity) in the BQR Control subfield of frames it transmits if the AP has indicated its support in the BQR
 13 Support subfield of its HE Capabilities element; otherwise the STA shall not report the channel availability
 14 information in the BQR Control subfield.

15

16 NOTE—The STA can send an unsolicited BQR in response to certain Trigger frames except NFRP, MU-RTS and
 17 BQRP (with or without RA-RUs, as defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) and in 26.5.4
 18 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA))) or it can send the unsolicited BQR after accessing the WM using EDCA.

19

20 An AP may solicit BQRs from a non-AP STA only if the non-AP STA has indicated support by setting the
 21 BQR Support field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1; otherwise the AP shall not solicit BQRs
 22 from the non-AP STA. An AP may solicit BQRs from one or more non-AP HE STAs that support generating
 23 BQRs, by sending a BQRP Trigger frame (see 9.3.1.22.8 (Bandwidth Query Report Poll (BQRP) vari-
 24 ant)). A non-AP STA that supports generating a BQR responds (solicited BQR) as defined below:

25

- 26 — The STA that receives a BQRP Trigger frame shall follow the rules defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP
 27 STA behavior for UL MU operation) to generate the HE TB PPDU if the Trigger frame contains the
 28 STA's AID in any of the User Info fields; otherwise the STA shall follow the rules defined in 26.5.4
 29 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)) to gain access to an RA-RU and generate the HE TB
 30 PPDU if the Trigger frame contains one or more RA-RUs.
 - 31 — The STA shall include in the HE TB PPDU one or more QoS Null frames containing the BQR Con-
 32 trol subfield with the channel availability information of the STA. The HE STA shall not solicit an
 33 immediate response for the frames carried in the HE TB PPDU. The Ack Policy Indication subfield
 34 of the frame shall be set to No Ack.
- 35

36 NOTE—An AP does not send a BQRP Trigger frame addressed to a STA that has set the UL MU Disable field to 1.

37

38 An AP may include a BQRP Trigger frame together with other Control, Data and Management frames in
 39 one A-MPDU to a STA if the HE Capabilities element received from the STA has the BSRP BQRP A-
 40 MPDU Aggregation field equal to 1. A non-AP STA constructs the A-MPDU contained in the HE TB
 41 PPDU sent in response to a BQRP Trigger frame as described in 26.5.2.4 (A-MPDU contents in an HE TB
 42 PPDU).

43

44 **26.5.7 NDP feedback report procedure**

45

46 **26.5.7.1 General**

47

48 The NDP feedback report procedure allows an HE AP to collect feedback that is not channel sounding from
 49 multiple non-AP HE STAs.

50

51 An HE AP sends an NFRP Trigger frame to solicit NDP feedback report response from many non-AP STAs
 52 that are identified by a range of scheduled AIDs in the Trigger frame. The NDP feedback report response
 53 from a non-AP STA is an HE TB feedback NDP (see 27.3.17 (HE TB feedback NDP)). A non-AP STA uses
 54 the information carried in the NFRP Trigger frame to know if it is scheduled, and in this case, to derive the
 55 parameters for the transmission of the response.

56

1 In this subclause, the NDP feedback report procedure is described.
 2
 3
 4

26.5.7.2 STA behavior

5
 6 A non-AP STA shall set the NDP Feedback Report Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element to 1 if it
 7 supports NDP feedback report and set it 0, otherwise.
 8
 9

10 A non-AP STA shall not transmit an NDP feedback report response unless it is explicitly enabled by an AP
 11 in one of the operation modes described in this subclause. The inter frame space between a PPDU that con-
 12 tains an NFRP Trigger frame and the NDP feedback report poll response is SIFS. A non-AP STA shall com-
 13 mence the transmission of an NDP feedback report response at the SIFS time boundary after the end of a
 14 received PPDU, if all the following conditions are met:
 15

- 16 — The received PPDU contains an NFRP Trigger frame
 17
- 18 — The non-AP STA is scheduled by the NFRP Trigger frame
 19
- 20 — The NDP feedback report support subfield in HE MAC Capabilities Information field is set to 1
 21
- 22 — The non-AP STA intends to provide a response to the type of the NDP feedback contained in the
 23 NFRP Trigger frame, as described in 26.5.7.4 (NDP feedback report for a resource request).
 24

25 A non-AP STA that does not satisfy all of the above conditions shall not respond to the NFRP Trigger
 26 frame.
 27

28 A non-AP STA is scheduled to respond to the NFRP Trigger frame if all the following conditions are met:
 29

- 30 — The non-AP STA is associated with the BSSID indicated in the TA field of the NFRP Trigger frame
 31 or the non-AP STA is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID of a multiple BSSID set and the TA
 32 field of the NFRP Trigger frame is set to the transmitted BSSID of that multiple BSSID set.
 33
- 34 — The non-AP STA's AID is greater than or equal to the starting AID and less than starting AID +
 35 N_{STA} , using the Starting AID subfield in the eliciting Trigger frame, and with N_{STA} the total number
 36 of non-AP STAs that are scheduled to respond to the NFRP Trigger frame. N_{STA} is calculated by the
 37 following equation, with UL BW subfield and Multiplexing Flag subfield from the eliciting Trigger
 38 frame:
 39
$$N_{STA} = 18 \times 2^{BW} \times (\text{Multiplexing Flag} + 1)$$

 40

41
 42 A non-AP STA shall obtain NDP feedback report parameter values from the most recently received NDP
 43 Feedback Report Parameter Set element carried in a Beacon, Probe Response, or (Re)Association Response
 44 frame from its associated AP unless the non-AP STA is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID of a multi-
 45 ple BSSID set, in which case it shall follow the rules in 11.1.3.8.4 (Inheritance of element values) to deter-
 46 mine the NDP feedback parameter values. If the NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element is not
 47 received in a Management frame with a TA equal to the BSSID of the associated AP or to the transmitted
 48 BSSID of the multiple BSSID set, the non-AP STA shall use default values for the NDP Feedback Report
 49 parameters.
 50

51 An NDP feedback report response is an NDP feedback report response, as defined in 27.3.4 (HE PPDU for-
 52 mats).
 53

54 A non-AP STA transmitting an NDP feedback report shall set the TXVECTOR parameter as for transmis-
 55 ting an HE TB PPDU in response to a Trigger frame as described in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL
 56 MU operation), except for the following parameters:
 57

- 58 — The FORMAT parameter shall be set to HE_TB
 59
- 60 — The APEP_LENGTH parameter shall be set to 0
 61
- 62 — The RU_ALLOCATION parameter shall be set to be maximum RU size for the BW
 63

- The RU_TONE_SET_INDEX parameter shall be set with the following equation, with the value of the Starting AID subfield in the User Info field of the eliciting Trigger frame:
 - $\text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} = 1 + ((\text{AID} - \text{Starting AID}) \bmod (18 \times 2^{BW}))$
- The NUM_STS parameter shall be set to 1
- The SPATIAL_REUSE parameter shall be set to SRP_DISALLOW
- The STARTING_STS_NUM parameter shall be set with the following equation, with the values of the Starting AID subfield in the User Info field of the eliciting Trigger frame:
 - $\text{STARTING_STS_NUM} = \lfloor (\text{AID} - \text{Starting AID}) / 18 / 2^{BW} \rfloor$
- The MCS parameter shall be set to 0
- The DCM parameter shall be set to 0
- The FEC_CODING parameter shall be set to 0
- The TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX parameter shall be set to the value based on the Transmit Power Control for an HE TB PPDU and based on the value of the AP Tx Power subfield and the UL Target RSSI subfield in the User Info field of the eliciting Trigger frame (see 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction))

NOTE—The subcarriers for each RU_TONE_SET index are contained in a 20 MHz channel and can be transmitted by a 20 MHz operating STA.

26.5.7.3 AP behavior

An AP shall set the NDP Feedback Report Support subfield in the HE Capabilities element to 1 if it supports NDP feedback report and set it 0 otherwise.

An AP may include the NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element in Beacon frames, Probe Response frames and (Re)Association Response frames in order to modify parameters for NDP Feedback Report operation. The procedure of NDP Feedback report described in this subclause allows operation even if the NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element is not sent by the AP.

The NFRP Trigger frame shall be transmitted in a non-HT PPDU or HT PPDU, or as an EOF MPDU in a VHT, HE ER SU PPDU or HE SU PPDU.

An AP that transmits an NFRP Trigger frame shall set the TA field of the frame to the MAC address of the AP, unless `dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented` is true and the Trigger frame is directed to STAs from at least two different BSSs of a multiple BSSID set, in which case, the AP shall set the TA field of the frame to the transmitted BSSID.

Following the transmission from an AP of an NFRP Trigger frame, multiple STAs may simultaneously send NDP feedback report responses to the AP. Based on the RXVECTOR parameter `NDP_REPORT`, which provides the detected status array for the resources of each spatial stream and tone set assigned by the Trigger frame, the AP can derive the list of AIDs from the resources of which an NDP feedback report response was sent, and their response.

The AP shall not send any acknowledgment in response to the reception of NDP feedback report responses.

26.5.7.4 NDP feedback report for a resource request

If the Feedback Type subfield in the User Info field of the NFRP Trigger frame is 0, a STA that is scheduled may send an NDP feedback report response in order to signal to the AP that it is in the awake state and that it might have frames in its queues for UL MU. If the STA does not satisfy either of the conditions in Table 26-3 (FEEDBACK_STATUS description), then the STA shall not respond to the NFRP Trigger frame.

Each STA that is scheduled is assigned a STARTING_STS_NUM and an RU_TONE_SET_INDEX to transmit a FEEDBACK_STATUS bit.

The meaning of the FEEDBACK_STATUS bit is defined in Table 26-3 (FEEDBACK_STATUS description):

Table 26-3—FEEDBACK_STATUS description

Feedback_Status	Condition
0	<p>The STA is in the awake state and reports buffered octets for transmission between 0 and the resource request buffer threshold.</p> <p>NOTE - The STA can use this value to indicate it is in the awake state even if it does not have any buffered octets for transmission, for example to solicit delivery of BUs known to be buffered at the AP.</p>
1	The STA is in the awake state and reports buffered octets for transmission above the resource request buffer threshold.

The resource request buffer threshold is equal to $2^{(\text{Resource request buffer threshold exponent})}$ octets, using the Resource Request Buffer Threshold Exponent subfield in the most recently received NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element sent by the AP with which the STA is associated. The resource request buffer threshold is equal to 256 octets if the STA did not receive an NDP Feedback Report Parameter Set element from the AP with which the STA is associated.

26.5.7.5 Power save operation with NDP feedback report procedure

An HE AP that sends an NFRP Trigger frame to a non-AP STA in PS mode and receives an NDP feedback report response from the STA shall assume the STA to be or to have transitioned to the awake state and:

- follow the rules defined in 11.2.3.5 (Power management with APSD) to deliver BUs to the STA as if the STA had sent a U-APSD trigger frame, if the STA is using U-APSD
 - follow the rules defined in 11.2.3.1 (General) to deliver BUs to the STA as if the STA had sent a PS-Poll frame, if the STA is not using U-APSD
 - in addition, the AP shall follow the rules defined in 26.8 (TWT operation) for delivery of BUs during the TWT SP if the STA operates with TWT.

NOTE—As the AP does not send an acknowledgment in response to the NDP Feedback Report response, a STA that sends an NDP Feedback Report response and indicates that it is in the awake state might still schedule for transmission a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame in order to indicate that it is in the awake state.

26.5.8 Use of TSPEC by HE STAs

In addition to the TS Setup operations as described in 11.4.4 (TS setup), a non-AP HE STA may use a TSPEC contained in a Basic ADDTS Request frame to provide its traffic characteristics and QoS requirements to an HE-AP that supports the reception of Basic ADDTS Request frame in order to facilitate efficient scheduling for HE APs' UL and DL MU operations. A TSPEC provided by a non-AP HE STA is used by a receiving HE AP to facilitate the creation of a schedule for MU operation. A TSPEC provided by a non-AP HE STA to an HE AP is uniquely identified by the TSID subfield and the MAC address of the non-AP HE

1 STA. The method that a non-AP HE STA uses to collect traffic information and construct TSPECs is
 2 beyond the scope of this specification.
 3

4 A non-AP HE STA transmits an ADDTS Request with Schedule and APSD subfields set to 0 in the TSPEC
 5 to signal its traffic characteristics and QoS requirements to the associated HE AP. An HE AP does not trans-
 6 mit an ADDTS Response frame as a response to the ADDTS Request frame to an HE STA that transmitted
 7 ADDTS Request with Schedule and APSD subfields of the TSPEC set to 0. The acknowledgment of the
 8 ADDTS Request frame confirms the receipt of the TSPEC at the HE AP.
 9

10
 11 A non-AP HE STA should send a DELTS frame with the corresponding TSID if the traffic associated with
 12 the TSID has been terminated. When receiving a DELTS from a non-AP HE STA, the HE AP shall consider
 13 the information provided in the TSPEC as no longer valid.
 14

15 **26.5.9 UL MU transmit power capabilities**

16
 17 An non-AP HE STA may include the UL MU Power Capabilities element in an (Re)Association Request
 18 frame in order to inform an HE AP of the relative maximum transmit power that the non-AP HE STA is
 19 capable of transmitting an HE TB PPDU for each HE-MCS in the current operating channel width when
 20 using an RU size greater than or equal to 242 subcarriers.
 21

22
 23 An HE AP might use this information as an input into the algorithm used to schedule the HE non-AP STA
 24 for UL MU transmission. The specification of the algorithm is beyond the scope of this standard.
 25

26.6 A-MPDU operation in an HE PPDU

30 **26.6.1 General**

31
 32 A-MPDU operation for an HE PPDU follows the procedures defined in 10.13 (A-MPDU operation) and,
 33 additionally, the procedures defined in this subclause.
 34

35
 36 An HE STA that sends a Class 1 frame or a Class 2 frame in an HE PPDU shall send the frame as an S-
 37 MPDU (see Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the S-MPDU context)).
 38

39 An HE STA that sends a VHT Capabilities element, an HT Capabilities element, or an HE 6 GHz Band
 40 Capabilities element and an HE Capabilities element with Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension
 41 field of 0 shall support in reception an A-MPDU pre-EOF padding with maximum length defined in 10.13.2
 42 (A-MPDU length limit rules).
 43

44 An HE STA that sends a VHT Capabilities element and an HE Capabilities element with Maximum A-
 45 MPDU Length Exponent Extension subfield greater than 0 shall support reception of an HE PPDU with an
 46 A-MPDU pre-EOF padding as defined in 10.13.2 (A-MPDU length limit rules) except that the maximum
 47 length for the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding shall be equal to
 48 $\min(2^{(20 + \text{Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension})} - 1, 6\,500\,631)$. An HE STA that sets the Maximum A-
 49 MPDU Length Exponent Extension subfield of the HE Capabilities element to a value greater than 0 shall
 50 set the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the VHT Capabilities element to 7.
 51

52 NOTE—6 500 631 is defined in Table 9-25 (Maximum data unit sizes (in octets) and durations (in microseconds)) as the
 53 upper bound of A-MPDU size.
 54

55 An HE STA that does not send a VHT Capabilities element but sends an HT Capabilities element and an HE
 56 Capabilities element with Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension subfield greater than 0 shall
 57 support in reception an A-MPDU pre-EOF padding in an HE PPDU as defined in 10.13.2 (A-MPDU length
 58 limit rules) except that the maximum length for the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding shall be equal to $2^{(16 + \text{Maxi-}}
 59 \text{mum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension}) - 1$. An HE STA that sets the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent
 60

1 Extension subfield of the HE Capabilities element to a value greater than 0 shall set the Maximum A-MPDU
 2 Length Exponent subfield of the HT Capabilities element to 3.

4 NOTE—An HE STA that is a VHT STA sends a VHT Capabilities element. An HE STA that is not a VHT STA does
 5 not send a VHT Capabilities element.

7 An HE STA that sends an HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element and an HE Capabilities element with Maxi-
 8 mum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield greater than 0 shall support in reception an A-MPDU
 9 pre-EOF padding in an HE PPDU as defined in 10.12.2 (A-MPDU length limit rules) except that the maxi-
 10 mum length for the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding shall be equal to
 11 $\min(2^{(20 + \text{Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension})} - 1, 6\,500\,631)$. An HE STA that sets the Maximum A-
 12 MPDU Length Exponent Extension field of the HE Capabilities element to a value greater than 0 shall set
 13 the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield of the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element to 7.

14
 15 An HE STA shall not transmit an A-MPDU in an HE PPDU to a STA that exceeds the maximum A-MPDU
 16 length capability indicated in the HE Capabilities, VHT Capabilities, and HT Capabilities elements received
 17 from the recipient STA. If a VHT Capabilities element is received from the recipient STA, then the maxi-
 18 mum A-MPDU length capability is derived from the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent Extension sub-
 19 field in the HE Capabilities and the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent subfield in the VHT Capabilities
 20 element. Otherwise the maximum A-MPDU length capability is derived from the Maximum A-MPDU
 21 Length Exponent subfields in the HE Capabilities element and the Maximum A-MPDU Length Exponent
 22 subfield in the HT Capabilities element or in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element.

23
 24 An HE STA may transmit an HE SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU that carries an A-MPDU with contents
 25 defined in Table 9-531 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate response context) or Table 9-
 26 532a (A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context).

27
 28 An A-MPDU with any number of QoS Null frames with any TID and with No Ack ack policy and aggre-
 29 gated with or without other frames may be transmitted to a recipient STA in an HE PPDU that is not an HE
 30 TB PPDU regardless of the value of the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx/Tx Support subfield in the HE MAC
 31 Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element received from the recipient STA.

32
 33 An A-MPDU with any number of QoS Null frames with any TID and with No Ack ack policy and aggre-
 34 gated with or without other frames in an A-MPDU may be transmitted in the HE TB PPDU regardless of the
 35 value of the TID Aggregation Limit subfield and the value of the Preferred AC subfield in the Basic Trigger
 36 frame, and the value of the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support of the AP that solicits the A-MPDU.

37
 38 NOTE—A QoS Null frame with Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack policy is not allowed to be sent in an A-MPDU,
 39 except for a QoS Null frame with Normal Ack ack policy in an S-MPDU (as defined in Table 9-532a (A-MPDU con-
 40 tents in the HE non-ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context) in HE PPDU context), Table 9-532b (A-
 41 MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context), Table 9-532c (A-MPDU contents in
 42 the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context), Table 9-532d (A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-
 43 enabled multi-TID immediate response context), Table 9-426 (A-MPDU contents in the data enabled no immediate
 44 response context) and Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the control response context)).

52 26.6.2 A-MPDU padding in an HE PPDU

53 26.6.2.1 General

54
 55 In an HE PPDU, a STA shall not add an A-MPDU subframe with the EOF field set to 1 and with the MPDU
 56 Length field set to 0 before an A-MPDU subframe with a nonzero MPDU Length field.

57 26.6.2.2 A-MPDU padding in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU

58
 59 An HE STA that transmits a DL HE MU PPDU that contains one or more PSDUs, each of which carries an
 60 A-MPDU, shall construct the A-MPDUs as described in 10.13.6 (A-MPDU padding for VHT PPDU) except

1 that one or more A-MPDU subframes with a nonzero MPDU Length field and with an EOF field equal to 1
 2 may be added if the A-MPDU is an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU (see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and
 3 ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)).
 4

5 An HE STA that transmits an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or UL HE MU PPDU that contains one A-
 6 MPDU shall construct the A-MPDU as described in 10.13.6 (A-MPDU padding for VHT PPDU) except that
 7 one or more A-MPDU subframes with a nonzero MPDU Length field and with an EOF field equal to 1 may
 8 be added if the A-MPDU is an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU (see 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-
 9 enabled single-TID A-MPDU)).
 10

13 26.6.2.3 A-MPDU padding in an HE TB PPDU

14 A non-AP STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU shall construct the PSDU carried in the HE TB PPDU as
 15 described in this subclause.
 16

17 The STA calculates the PSDU_LENGTH as defined in 6.5 (PLME SAP interface) and initializes A-
 18 MPDU_Length to 0.
 19

20 The STA may add A-MPDU subframes to the A-MPDU contained in the PSDU provided that the following
 21 constraints are fulfilled:
 22

- 23 — The A-MPDU content constraints (see 10.13.1 (A-MPDU contents) and 26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-
 MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)) for the intended recipient
 30
- 24 — The Length limit constraints (see 9.7.1 (A-MPDU format) and 10.13.2 (A-MPDU length limit rules))
 31 for the intended recipient
 32
- 25 — The MPDU start spacing constraints (see 10.13.3 (Minimum MPDU Start Spacing field)) for the
 33 intended recipient
 34

35 provided that the following conditions are met:
 36

- 37 — The A-MPDU subframes have a value greater than 0 in the MPDU Length field, or have a value 0 in
 38 the MPDU Length field and a value 0 in the EOF field.
 39
- 40 — After incrementing the A-MPDU_Length with the length of each such added A-MPDU subframe,
 41 the relationship A-MPDU_Length ≤ PSDU_LENGTH is true.
 42

43 Padding is then added such that the resulting A-MPDU contains exactly PSDU_LENGTH octets as follows:
 44

- 45 — First, while A-MPDU_Length < PSDU_LENGTH and A-MPDU_Length mod 4 ≠ 0, add an octet to
 46 the final A-MPDU subframe's Padding subfield and increment A-MPDU_Length by 1.
 47
- 48 — Then, while A-MPDU_Length + 4 ≤ PSDU_LENGTH, add an EOF padding subframe to the EOF
 49 Padding Subframes field and increment A-MPDU_Length by 4.
 50
- 51 — Finally, while A-MPDU_Length < PSDU_LENGTH, add an octet to the EOF Padding Octets sub-
 52 field and increment A-MPDU_Length by 1.
 53

54 An A-MPDU pre-EOF padding is constructed from each user from any of the following:
 55

- 56 — A-MPDU subframes constructed from the MPDUs available for transmission from any AC that is
 57 selected by the STA
 58
- 59 — A-MPDU subframes with 0 in the MPDU Length field and 0 in the EOF field
 60

1 **26.6.3 Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU**

2

3

4 **26.6.3.1 General**

5

6 A non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU is an A-MPDU that does not contain an EOF MPDU but does con-
 7 tain non-EOF MPDUs from at least two TIDs (see Table 9-532c (A-MPDU contents in the HE non-ack-
 8 enabled multi-TID immediate response context)).
 9

10 An ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU is an A-MPDU that contains at least one EOF MPDU that solicits
 11 acknowledgement and one or more MPDUs from at least one TID (see Table 9-532d (A-MPDU contents in
 12 the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context)).
 13

14 An ack-enabled single TID A-MPDU is an A-MPDU that contains one EOF MPDU that solicits acknowl-
 15 edgment and one or more non-EOF MPDUs that do not solicit an immediate response (see Table 9-532b (A-
 16 MPDU contents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context)).
 17

18 An HE STA with dot11HEAMPDUwithMultipleTIDOptionImplemented equal to true shall set the Multi-
 19 TID Aggregation Rx Support subfield to a nonzero value in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in
 20 the HE Capabilities element it transmits. An HE STA with dot11HEAMPDUwithMultipleTIDOptionImple-
 21 mented equal to false shall set the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support subfield to 0.
 22

23 An HE STA with dot11AckEnabledAMPDUOptionImplemented equal to true shall set the Ack-Enabled
 24 Aggregation Support subfield to 1 in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities ele-
 25 ment it transmits. An HE STA with dot11AckEnabledAMPDUOptionImplemented equal to false shall set
 26 the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield to 0.
 27

28 A multi-TID A-MPDU is either a non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU or an ack-enabled multi-TID A-
 29 MPDU. A first HE STA may transmit a non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU to a second HE STA if the
 30 first HE STA has received from the second STA an HE Capabilities element where the Multi-TID Aggrega-
 31 tion Rx Support subfield is nonzero. A first HE STA may transmit an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU or a
 32 non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU to a second HE STA if the first HE STA has received from the second
 33 HE STA an HE Capabilities element where the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support subfield is nonzero and
 34 where the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield is 1. Otherwise the first HE STA shall not transmit a
 35 multi-TID A-MPDU to the second HE STA.
 36

37 An HE STA shall not transmit a multi-TID A-MPDU or ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU in a VHT PPDU
 38 or a HT PPDU.
 39

40 A non-AP STA shall not send a non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU in an HE TB PPDU unless it is in
 41 response to a Basic Trigger frame where the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User Info field addressed to
 42 the STA is greater than 1. A non-AP STA shall not send an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU in an HE TB
 43 PPDU unless it is in response to a Basic Trigger frame where the TID Aggregation Limit field of the User
 44 Info field addressed to the STA is greater than 0.
 45

46 NOTE—An ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU solicited by a Basic Trigger frame with TID Aggregation Limit field
 47 equal to 1 can contain one Management frame that solicits acknowledgement and one or more QoS Data frames from the
 48 same TID if the AP supports reception of ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDUs.
 49

50 A multi-TID A-MPDU shall not be transmitted in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU,
 51 unless the TXOP limit is greater than 0 for the AC that is used to gain access to the medium. The AC used to
 52 gain access to the medium is the primary AC (see 10.22.2.8 (TXOP limits)). If the TXOP limit of the pri-
 53 mary AC is greater than 0, then the STA may aggregate QoS Data frames from one or more TIDs in the A-
 54 MPDU under the following conditions:
 55

- The A-MPDU shall be carried in either an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU PPDU transmitted by the STA within the obtained TXOP or an HE MU PPDU transmitted by a non-AP STA within the obtained TXOP
- The A-MPDU shall contain one or more MPDUs with any of the TIDs that correspond to the primary AC
- If no more MPDUs can be aggregated in the A-MPDU from any of the TIDs that correspond to the primary AC then the A-MPDU may additionally contain one or more MPDUs with TIDs that do not correspond to the primary AC if the TIDs correspond to any AC that has a higher priority with respect to the primary AC and the addition of these MPDUs does not cause the STA to exceed the current TXOP duration

An HE AP may aggregate MPDUs from any TIDs in multi-TID A-MPDU for DL HE MU PPDU transmission and the number of TIDs in multi-TID A-MPDU shall not be more than the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support announced by the recipient.

The Multi-STA BlockAck frame is used to acknowledge the MPDUs in a multi-TID A-MPDU as defined in 26.4 (HE acknowledgment procedure).

In a multi-TID A-MPDU, MPDUs with the same TID are not necessarily contiguous.

If the AP specifies a value defined in Table 9-154 (ACI-to-AC encoding) in the Preferred AC subfield in the Trigger Dependent User Info field of a Basic Trigger frame, then an HE STA that transmits a multi-TID A-MPDU to the AP should aggregate QoS Data frames with TIDs that are from the same AC as or a higher priority AC than indicated in the Preferred AC subfield of the Trigger Dependent User Info field that is addressed to the STA in the Trigger frame. The number of TIDs from which QoS Data frames and the Management frame that solicits Ack frame are aggregated in an HE TB PPDU by a STA shall follow the restriction defined in Table 26-2 (Relation between TID Aggregation Limit field, Multi-TID Aggregation Tx Support field and solicited immediate response).

NOTE—While it is recommended that the STA transmit QoS Data from the AC that has the same or a higher priority than the preferred AC, the STA might still aggregate QoS Data from an AC that has lower priority than the preferred AC.

The STA may aggregate MPDUs from TIDs in other ACs within the remaining time to the HE TB PPDU duration value indicated in the UL Length subfield in the Common Info field of the received Trigger frame, up to the limit indicated in the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in Trigger Dependent User Info field of the Trigger frame.

NOTE—if the AP indicates AC_BK in the Preferred AC subfield in the Trigger Dependent User Info field of a Basic Trigger frame, then an HE STA that transmits a multi-TID A-MPDU to the AP might aggregate MPDUs from any AC/TID or combination of TIDs, up to the limit indicated in the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in Trigger Dependent User Info field of the Trigger frame.

An HE STA that intends to send QoS Data frames from a single TID should select a TID from the same AC as or a higher priority AC than indicated in the Preferred AC field in the Trigger Dependent User Info field of a Basic Trigger frame. If the HE STA has no buffered MPDU for TIDs belonging to the same AC as or a higher priority AC than indicated in the Preferred AC subfield in the Trigger Dependent User Info field of a Basic Trigger frame, then the HE STA may include MPDUs for a TID belonging to any other AC in that A-MPDU carried in the HE TB PPDU.

NOTE—A multi-TID A-MPDU allows the aggregation of a Management frame regardless of the value indicated in the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element as long as the indicated in the value of the TID Aggregation Limit subfield in the Trigger Dependent User Info field of a Basic Trigger frame is nonzero.

1 **26.6.3.2 Ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU operation**

2

3

4 An ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU is an A-MPDU with contents defined in Table 9-532b (A-MPDU con-
5 tents in the HE ack-enabled single-TID immediate response context).

6

7 NOTE—An ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU does not contain more than one of the following frames: QoS Data
8 frames, Management frame that solicits acknowledgment. In this case the Management frame that solicits acknowledge-
9 ment is treated as if it were a QoS Data frame with TID equal to 15.

10

11 An HE STA shall not transmit an ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU to a recipient STA unless it has received
12 from the recipient STA an HE Capabilities element with the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield
13 equal to 1.

14

15 **26.6.3.3 Non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU operation**

16

17 A non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU is an A-MPDU with contents defined in Table 9-532c (A-MPDU con-
18 tents in the HE non-ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context).

19

20 NOTE—A non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU might include other frames such as a Trigger frame, BlockAck frame,
21 or QoS Null frame (see Table 9-530 (A-MPDU contents in the non-HE data enabled immediate response context))

22

23 An HE STA shall not transmit a non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU to a recipient STA unless it has received
24 from the recipient STA an HE Capabilities element where the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support
25 subfield is nonzero.

26

27 A STA that receives a non-ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU responds as defined in 26.4.4 (Per-PPDU
28 acknowledgment selection rules).

29

30 **26.6.3.4 Ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU operation**

31

32 An ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU is an A-MPDU with contents defined in Table 9-532d (A-MPDU con-
33 tents in the HE ack-enabled multi-TID immediate response context).

34

35 QoS Data frames with the same TID shall have the same ack policy.

36

37 QoS Data frames with the same TID shall be carried in A-MPDU subframes with the same value in the EOF
38 field setting.

39

40 In an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU, the EOF field in the MPDU delimiter of each A-MPDU subframe
41 carrying a frame that solicits an Ack frame as defined in Table 9-532d (A-MPDU contents in the HE ack-
42 enabled multi-TID immediate response context) shall be set to 1. The EOF field in all other A-MPDU sub-
43 frames in the A-MPDU that carry frames shall be set to 0.

44

45 An HE STA shall not transmit an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU to a recipient STA unless it has received
46 from the recipient STA an HE Capabilities element where the Multi-TID Aggregation Rx Support subfield
47 is nonzero and the Ack-Enabled Aggregation Support subfield is 1.

48

49 A STA that receives an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU responds as defined in 26.4.4 (Per-PPDU
50 acknowledgment selection rules).

51

52 A STA that transmits an ack-enabled multi-TID A-MPDU that contains at least two EOF MPDUs shall
53 ignore the immediate response if it is an Ack frame.

54

1 **26.7 HE sounding protocol**

2 **26.7.1 General**

3 Transmit beamforming and DL MU-MIMO require knowledge of the channel state to compute a steering
 4 matrix that is applied to the transmit signal to optimize reception at one or more receivers. HE STAs use the
 5 HE sounding protocol to determine the channel state information. The HE sounding protocol provides
 6 explicit feedback mechanisms, defined as HE non-trigger-based (non-TB) sounding and HE trigger-based
 7 (TB) sounding, where the HE beamformee measures the channel using a training signal (i.e., an HE sound-
 8 ing NDP) transmitted by the HE beamformer and sends back a transformed estimate of the channel state.
 9 The HE beamformer uses this estimate to derive the steering matrix.

10 The HE beamformee returns an estimate of the channel state in an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report
 11 carried in one or more HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frames. There are three types of HE compressed
 12 beamforming/CQI report:

- 13 — SU feedback: The HE compressed beamforming/CQI report consists of an HE Compressed Beam-
 14 forming Report field
- 15 — MU feedback: The HE compressed beamforming/CQI report consists of an HE Compressed Beam-
 16 forming Report field and HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field
- 17 — CQI feedback: The HE compressed beamforming/CQI report consists of an HE CQI Report field

18 NOTE—Use of HE TB sounding does not necessarily imply MU feedback. HE TB sounding is also used to obtain SU
 19 feedback and CQI feedback.

20 The HE compressed beamforming/CQI report is carried in a single HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI
 21 frame if the resulting frame is less than or equal to 11 454 octets in length (see 26.7.3 (Rules for HE sound-
 22 ing protocol sequences)). Otherwise, the HE beamforming feedback is segmented and each segment is car-
 23 ried in an HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame.

24 An HE beamformer shall support a maximum MPDU length for the HE compressed beamforming/CQI
 25 report that is the minimum of 11 454 octets and the maximum length of the HE compressed beamforming/
 26 CQI report that the HE beamformer intends to solicit from its HE beamformees.

27 **26.7.2 Sounding sequences and support**

28 An SU beamformer is an HE STA that sets the SU Beamformer subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Infor-
 29 mation field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1.

30 An SU beamformee is an HE STA that sets the SU Beamformee subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Infor-
 31 mation field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1. A non-AP HE STA shall set the SU Beamfor-
 32 mee subfield to 1. An HE AP may set the SU Beamformee subfield to 1.

33 An MU beamformer is an HE AP that sets the MU Beamformer subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Infor-
 34 mation field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1. An HE AP that indicates support for 4 or more
 35 space-time streams in the Tx HE-MCS Map \leq 80 MHz subfield in the Supported HE-MCS And NSS field in
 36 the HE Capabilities element shall set the MU Beamformer subfield to 1. A non-AP HE STA shall set the
 37 MU Beamformer subfield to 0. An MU beamformer is also an SU beamformer and shall set the SU Beam-
 38 former subfield to 1.

39 A non-AP HE STA shall support operation as an MU beamformee. An HE AP does not support operation as
 40 an MU beamformee.

41 The term HE beamformer refers to both the SU beamformer and MU beamformer. The term HE beamfor-
 42 mee refers to both the SU beamformee and MU beamformee.

1 The type of feedback (SU, MU or CQI) solicited by an HE beamformer from an HE beamformee is indicated
 2 in the Feedback Type And Ng and Codebook subfields in the STA Info field identifying the HE beamformee
 3 in the HE NDP Announcement frame as defined in Table 9-31a (Feedback Type And Ng subfield
 4 and Codebook Size subfield encoding).

7 The bandwidth (partial or full) of the feedback solicited by an HE beamformer from an HE beamformee
 8 depends on the Partial BW Info subfield in the STA Info field identifying the HE beamformee in the HE
 9 NDP Announcement frame, the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame and the value of the Disal-
 10 lowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield, if present. Full bandwidth feedback is solicited if the RU Start Index
 11 subfield in the Partial BW Info subfield is 0, the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield is absent or con-
 12 tains all zeroes and the RU End Index subfield in the Partial BW subfield is the value shown in Table 26-4
 13 (Settings for BW, RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announcement frame) where partial
 14 bandwidth is not supported by the HE beamformer, for the bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame.

18 Other settings of the Partial BW Info subfield solicit partial bandwidth feedback. Punctured sounding is
 19 indicated by the inclusion of a nonzero Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield in the HE NDP Announce-
 20 ment frame and in such a case, the disallowed subchannels are applied to the tone information to be included
 21 in the feedback after selecting tones for feedback based on the RU Start Index and RU End Index subfield
 22 values and HE NDP Announcement frame bandwidth as described above. See Table 26-4 (Settings for BW,
 23 RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announcement frame).

26 The RU Start Index and RU End Index subfields shall cover at least one allowed subchannel.

29 An SU beamformer may solicit full bandwidth SU feedback from an SU beamformee in an HE non-TB
 30 sounding sequence. An SU beamformer shall not solicit partial bandwidth SU feedback in an HE non-TB
 31 sounding sequence. An SU beamformer may solicit partial bandwidth or full bandwidth SU feedback from
 32 an SU beamformee in an HE TB sounding sequence if the SU beamformee indicates support by setting the
 33 Triggered SU Beamforming Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE
 34 Capabilities element it transmits to 1.

37 An MU beamformer may solicit full bandwidth MU feedback from an MU beamformee in an HE TB sound-
 38 ing sequence. An MU beamformer may solicit partial bandwidth MU feedback from an MU beamformee in
 39 an HE TB sounding sequence if the MU beamformee indicates support by setting the Triggered MU Beam-
 40 forming Partial BW Feedback subfield to 1. An MU beamformer shall not solicit MU feedback in an HE
 41 non-TB sounding sequence.

44 An MU beamformer may solicit full bandwidth or partial bandwidth CQI feedback from an MU beamfor-
 45 mbee in an HE TB sounding sequence if the MU beamformee indicates support by setting the Triggered CQI
 46 Beamforming Feedback subfield to 1.

49 An MU beamformer may solicit full bandwidth CQI feedback from an MU beamformee in an HE non-TB
 50 sounding sequence if the MU beamformee indicates support by setting the Non-Triggered CQI Beamform-
 51 ing Feedback subfield to 1.

55 An HE beamformer may solicit punctured SU feedback from an HE beamformee in an HE TB sounding
 56 sequence if the HE beamformee indicates support for punctured sounding by setting the Punctured Sounding
 57 Support subfield in the HE Capabilities elements it transmits to 1. An HE beamformer shall indicate punct-
 58 ured subchannels in the HE sounding NDP of an HE TB sounding sequence by setting the appropriate bits
 59 of the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield of the STA Info field with the AID11 subfield set to 2047 in
 60 the preceding HE NDP Announcement frame. An SU beamformer that includes a STA Info field with the
 61 AID11 subfield set to 2047 in an HE NDP Announcement frame shall place that STA Info field as the first
 62 STA Info field of the frame. An SU beamformer that indicates punctured subchannels in an HE NDP
 63 Announcement frame in an HE TB sounding sequence shall set the TXVECTOR parameter INACTIVE_-

1 SUBCHANNELS of the non-HT duplicate PPDU carrying the HE NDP Announcement frame and the HE
 2 sounding NDP as described in 26.11.7 (INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS and RU_ALLOCATION).
 3

4 An SU beamformee that supports punctured sounding shall generate feedback corresponding to the subchan-
 5 nels indicated in the STA Info field addressed to it in an HE NDP Announcement frame, but excluding sub-
 6 carriers that are disallowed according to the value of the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield in that
 7 frame.
 8

9 An HE beamformer shall not send an HE NDP Announcement frame that initiates an HE TB sounding
 10 sequence with a STA Info field identifying an HE beamformee if the STA Info field and the PHY Capabili-
 11 ties Information field in the HE Capabilities element most recently received from the HE beamformee meet
 12 any of the following conditions (see Table 9-31a (Feedback Type And Ng subfield and Codebook Size sub-
 13 field encoding)):
 14

- 15 — The Feedback Type And Ng subfield in the STA Info field indicates SU and $Ng = 16$, and the $Ng =$
 16 SU Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 17 — The Feedback Type And Ng subfield in the STA Info field indicates MU and $Ng = 16$, and the $Ng =$
 18 MU Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 19 — The Feedback Type And Ng subfield in the STA Info field indicates SU, the Codebook Size subfield
 20 indicates codebook resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$ and the Codebook Size $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$ SU Feedback
 21 subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 22 — The Feedback Type And Ng subfield in the STA Info field indicates MU, the Codebook Size sub-
 23 field in the STA Info field indicates codebook resolution $(\phi, \psi) = \{7, 5\}$ and the Codebook Size $(\phi,$
 24 $\psi) = \{7, 5\}$ MU Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 25 — The Feedback Type And Ng and Codebook Size subfields in the STA Info field indicate CQI and the
 26 Triggered CQI Beamforming Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 27 — The Feedback Type And Ng subfield in the STA Info field indicates MU, the Partial BW Info sub-
 28 field in the STA Info field indicates partial bandwidth and the Triggered MU Beamforming Partial
 29 BW Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 30 — The Feedback Type And Ng subfield indicates SU and the Triggered SU Beamforming Feedback
 31 subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field is 0
- 32

33 An HE beamformee indicates the maximum number of HE-LTF symbols it can receive in a 20 MHz,
 34 40 MHz or 80 MHz HE sounding NDP in the Beamformee STS ≤ 80 MHz subfield in the PHY Capabilities
 35 Information field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits.
 36

37 An HE beamformee shall set the Beamformee STS ≤ 80 MHz subfield to indicate a maximum number of
 38 HE-LTF symbols of 4 or greater.
 39

40 An HE beamformee that supports neither 80+80 MHz nor 160 MHz channel widths sets the Beamformee
 41 STS > 80 MHz subfield to 0.
 42

43 An HE beamformee that supports 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz channel widths indicates the maximum number
 44 of HE-LTF symbols it can receive in a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE sounding NDP in the Beamformee STS
 45 > 80 MHz subfield in the PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits.
 46

47 An HE beamformee that supports 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz channel widths shall set the Beamformee STS
 48 > 80 MHz subfield to indicate a maximum number of HE-LTF symbols of 4 or greater.
 49

50 An HE beamformer shall not transmit a 20 MHz, 40 MHz or 80 MHz HE sounding NDP with a TXVEC-
 51 TOR parameter NUM_STS that is greater than the maximum number of HE-LTF symbols indicated in the
 52 Beamformee STS ≤ 80 MHz subfield of any STA identified by a STA Info field in the preceding HE NDP
 53 Announcement frame.
 54

1 An HE beamformer shall not transmit a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE sounding NDP with a TXVECTOR
 2 parameter NUM_STS that is greater than the maximum number of HE-LTF symbols indicated in the Beam-
 3 formee STS > 80 MHz subfield of any STA identified by a STA Info field in the preceding HE NDP
 4 Announcement frame.
 5

7 An HE beamformer indicates the maximum number of HE-LTF symbols it might transmit in a 20 MHz,
 8 40 MHz or 80 MHz HE sounding NDP in the Number Of Sounding Dimensions \leq 80 MHz subfield.
 9

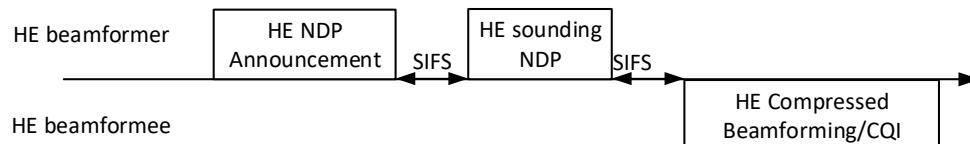
11 An HE beamformer indicates the maximum number of HE-LTF symbols it might transmit in an 80+80 MHz
 12 or 160 MHz HE sounding NDPP in the Number Of Sounding Dimensions > 80 MHz subfield.
 13

15 An HE beamformer shall not transmit a 20 MHz, 40 MHz or 80 MHz HE sounding NDP where the number
 16 of HE-LTF symbols exceeds the value indicated in the Number Of Sounding Dimensions \leq 80 MHz sub-
 17 field.
 18

20 An HE beamformer shall not transmit an 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz HE sounding NDP where the number of
 21 HE-LTF symbols exceeds the value indicated in the Number Of Sounding Dimensions > 80 MHz subfield.
 22

26.7.3 Rules for HE sounding protocol sequences

28 An HE non-TB sounding sequence is a sounding sequence initiated by an HE beamformer with a burst of
 29 two frames comprising an individually addressed HE NDP Announcement frame with only one STA Info
 30 field that has a value in the AID11 field other than 2047 followed after a SIFS by an HE sounding NDP. An
 31 example of an HE non-TB sounding protocol with a single HE beamformee is shown in Figure 26-7 (An
 32 example of the sounding protocol with a single HE beamformee).
 33



43 **Figure 26-7—An example of the sounding protocol with a single HE beamformee**
 44

46 An HE beamformer that initiates the HE non-TB sounding sequence shall transmit the HE NDP Announce-
 47 ment frame with a single STA Info field that has a value in the AID11 field other than 2047 and with the
 48 AID11 field in that STA Info field set to the AID of the STA identified by the RA field or to 0 if the STA
 49 identified by the RA field is a mesh STA, AP or IBSS member STA.
 50

52 An HE beamformer may initiate an HE non-TB sounding sequence with an HE beamformee to solicit SU
 53 feedback over full bandwidth.
 54

56 An HE beamformer shall not initiate an HE non-TB sounding sequence with an HE NDP Announcement
 57 frame that has a Partial BW Info subfield that indicates less than full bandwidth (see Table 26-4 (Settings for
 58 BW, RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announcement frame)).
 59

62 An HE TB sounding sequence is a sounding sequence initiated by an HE beamformer with a burst of three
 63 frames comprising a broadcast HE NDP Announcement frame with two or more STA Info fields followed
 64 after a SIFS by an HE sounding NDP followed after a SIFS by a BFRP Trigger frame. An example of an HE
 65

1 TB sounding protocol with more than one HE beamformee is shown in Figure 26-8 (An example of the
 2 sounding protocol with more than one HE beamformee).

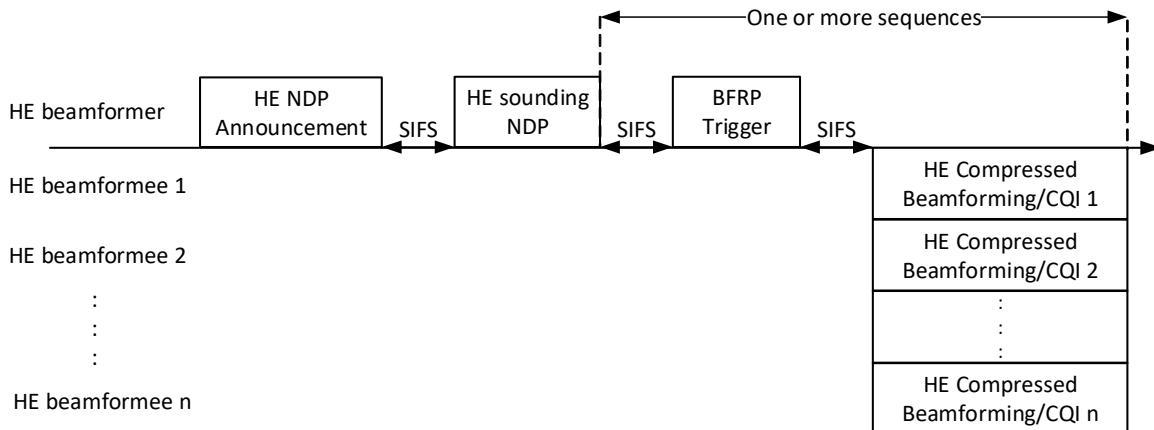


Figure 26-8—An example of the sounding protocol with more than one HE beamformee

An HE beamformer that initiates an HE TB sounding sequence shall transmit the HE NDP Announcement frame with two or more STA Info fields and the RA field set to the broadcast address.

An HE beamformer may initiate an HE TB sounding sequence to solicit MU feedback over full bandwidth.

An HE beamformer may initiate an HE TB sounding sequence to solicit a feedback variant only if the feedback variant is computed based on parameters supported by the HE beamformee; otherwise the HE beamformer shall not solicit a feedback variant computed based on parameters not supported by the HE beamformee (see 26.7.2 (Sounding sequences and support)).

An HE beamformer that initiates an HE non-TB sounding sequence or an HE TB sounding sequence shall transmit an HE sounding NDP a SIFS after the HE NDP Announcement frame.

An HE AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true shall not send an HE NDP Announcement frame with the TA field set to the transmitted BSSID to a non-AP STA that is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID in the multiple BSSID set unless the AP has received from the non-AP STA an HE Capabilities element with the Rx Control Frame To MultiBSS subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

An AP that transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame identifying HE STAs shall set the TA field of the frame to the MAC address of the AP, unless dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true and the HE NDP Announcement frame identifies STAs from at least two different BSSs of the multiple BSSID set, in which case, the AP shall set the TA field of the frame to the transmitted BSSID. If the HE NDP Announcement frame is transmitted in a non-HT duplicate PPDU then the TA field of the HE NDP Announcement frame is a bandwidth signaling TA (see 10.6.6.6 (Channel Width selection for Control frames)).

An HE beamformer that transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame to an HE beamformee that is an AP, TDLS peer STA, mesh STA or IBSS STA, shall include one STA Info field in the HE NDP Announcement frame and shall set the AID11 field in the STA Info field of the frame to 0. An HE beamformer that is an AP and that transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame to one or more HE beamformees shall set the AID11 field in the STA Info field identifying a non-AP STA to the 11 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA. An HE NDP Announcement frame shall not include multiple STA Info fields that have the same value in the AID11 subfield. An HE beamformer that transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame may include a STA Info field

1 with an AID11 subfield value of 2047 to indicate disallowed subchannels during punctured channel operation.
 2 When present, the STA Info field with AID11 value of 2047 shall be the first STA Info field in the
 3 frame.
 4

5 In an HE TB sounding sequence, a STA Info field in the HE NDP Announcement frame that solicits SU or
 6 MU feedback indicates the subcarrier grouping, N_g , codebook size and the number of columns, N_c , to be
 7 used by the HE beamformee identified by the STA Info field for the generation of the SU or MU feedback.
 8

9 In an HE non-TB sounding sequence where the STA Info field in the HE NDP Announcement frame solicits
 10 SU feedback, the subcarrier grouping, N_g , codebook size and the number of columns, N_c , used for the gen-
 11 eration of the SU feedback are determined by the HE beamformee.
 12

13 In an HE TB sounding sequence, a STA Info field in the HE NDP Announcement frame that solicits CQI
 14 feedback indicates the N_c to be used by the HE beamformee identified by the STA Info field for the genera-
 15 tion of the CQI feedback.
 16

17 In an HE non-TB sounding sequence where the STA Info field in the HE NDP Announcement frame solicits
 18 CQI feedback, the N_c used for the generation of the CQI feedback is determined by the HE beamformee.
 19

20 An HE beamformer that has initiated an HE TB sounding sequence may send another BFRP Trigger frame
 21 in the same TXOP as shown in Figure 26-8 (An example of the sounding protocol with more than one HE
 22 beamformee). The HE beamformer uses the additional BFRP Trigger frames to solicit HE compressed
 23 beamforming/CQI reports from HE beamformees not addressed in a previous BFRP Trigger frame or to
 24 solicit retransmission of an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report. An HE beamformer shall not transmit
 25 a BFRP Trigger frame that identifies a STA identified in the HE NDP Announcement frame of an HE TB
 26 sounding sequence unless it is in the same TXOP as the HE TB sounding sequence.
 27

28 An HE beamformer that transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame as part of an HE TB sounding
 29 sequence shall set the N_c subfield of the STA Info field to indicate a value less than or equal to the minimum
 30 of:
 31

- 32 — The maximum number of supported spatial streams according to the corresponding HE beamfor-
 33 mée's Rx HE-MCS Map ≤ 80 MHz, Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz, and Rx HE-MCS Map
 34 80+80 MHz subfields in the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Capabilities element
 35 sent by the HE beamformee.
- 36 — The maximum number of supported spatial streams according to the Rx NSS subfield value in the
 37 most recently received Operating Mode Notification frame, Operating Mode Notification element
 38 with the Rx NSS Type subfield equal to 0, or OM Control subfield sent by the corresponding HE
 39 beamformee (see 26.9 (Operating mode indication)).
- 40 — The maximum N_c indicated by the Max N_c subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of
 41 the HE Capabilities element sent by the HE beamformee.

42 An HE beamformee may support $N_g = 16$ in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for both SU and
 43 MU feedback types. A beamformer shall not request $N_g = 16$ for SU or MU feedback in an HE NDP
 44 Announcement frame unless the beamformee indicates support in the $N_g = 16$ For SU Feedback subfield or
 45 $N_g = 16$ For MU Feedback subfield, respectively, in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE
 46 Capabilities element it transmits (see 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)).
 47

48 An HE beamformee may support a codebook size $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$ in the HE Compressed Beamforming
 49 Report field for SU feedback type. A beamformer shall not request codebook size $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$ in an HE
 50 NDP Announcement frame unless the beamformee indicates support in the Codebook Size $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$
 51 SU Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element it trans-
 52 mits (see 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)).
 53

1 An HE beamformee may support a codebook size $(\phi, \psi) = \{7, 5\}$ in the HE Compressed Beamforming
 2 Report field for MU feedback type. A beamformer shall not request the codebook size $(\phi, \psi) = \{7, 5\}$ in an
 3 HE NDP Announcement frame unless the beamformee indicates support for the Codebook Size
 4 $(\phi, \psi) = \{7, 5\}$ MU Feedback subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities
 5 element it transmits (see 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)).
 6

7
 8 An HE beamformer that transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame shall set the RU Start Index and RU
 9 End Index subfields in a STA Info field to indicate the starting 26-tone RU and the ending 26-tone RU,
 10 respectively, of the solicited HE compressed beamforming/CQI report (see 9.3.1.19 (VHT/HE NDP
 11 Announcement frame format)). For preamble punctured sounding, the RU Start Index and RU End Index
 12 correspond to the bandwidth before puncturing and the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield is used to
 13 indicate the subcarriers that are punctured in the HE sounding NDP and in the solicited feedback.
 14

15
 16 The bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame is obtained from the RXVECTOR parameter
 17 CH_BANDWIDTH of the HE NDP Announcement frame if received in an HE, VHT or HT PPDU and from
 18 the RXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT if the HE NDP Announcement frame is
 19 received in a non-HT duplicate PPDU and is 20 MHz if the HE NDP Announcement frame is received in a
 20 non-HT PPDU.
 21

22
 23 In an HE non-TB sounding sequence, an HE beamformer shall solicit full bandwidth feedback. In an HE TB
 24 sounding sequence, an HE beamformer shall solicit full bandwidth feedback in a STA Info field identifying
 25 an HE beamformee that has not indicated support for partial bandwidth feedback. In an HE TB sounding
 26 sequence, an HE beamformer may solicit full bandwidth or partial bandwidth feedback in a STA Info field
 27 identifying an HE beamformee that has indicated support for partial bandwidth feedback (see 26.7.2 (Sound-
 28 ing sequences and support)).
 29

30
 31 For 80+80 MHz, feedback is not requested for the gap between the 80 MHz segments.
 32

33
 34 The HE beamformer shall set the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH or CH_BAND-
 35 WIDTH_IN_NON_HT, the RU Start Index field, and the RU End Index field of the HE NDP Announce-
 36 ment frame, depending on the operating channel width and partial BW support of the HE beamformee, as
 37 defined in Table 26-4 (Settings for BW, RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announce-
 38 ment frame). The bandwidth of the HE NDP Announcement frame is determined before applying punctur-
 39 ing based on disallowed subchannels.
 40

41
 42 **Table 26-4—Settings for BW, RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announce-
 43 ment frame**
 44

Partial bandwidth supported by HE beamformer	Operating channel width of the HE beamformee (MHz)	Bandwidth of HE NDP Announcement frame	RU Start Index field	RU End Index field
No	20, 40, 80, 160/80+80	20 MHz	0	8
Yes	20, 40, 80, 160/80+80		0–8	0–8
No	40, 80, 160/80+80	40 MHz	0	17
Yes	40, 80, 160/80+80		0–17	0–17
No	80, 160/80+80	80 MHz	0	36
Yes	80, 160/80+80		0–36	0–36

1 **Table 26-4—Settings for BW, RU Start Index, and RU End Index fields in HE NDP Announcement frame**

2

3

4

5 Partial bandwidth supported by HE beamformer	6 Operating channel width of the HE beamformee (MHz)	7 Bandwidth of HE NDP Announcement frame	8 RU Start Index field	9 RU End Index field
10 No	11 160/80+80	12 160 MHz or 13 80+80 MHz	14 0	15 73
16 Yes	17 160/80+80		18 0–73	19 0–73

20 NOTE 1—The value of the RU Start Index field is always less than or equal to the value of the RU End
21 Index field.

22 NOTE 2—Partial BW feedback can only be solicited with an HE TB sounding sequence and cannot be
23 solicited with an HE non-TB sounding sequence.

24 The HE beamformer shall use a lowest 26-tone RU, which is the lower bound of the starting 26-tone in the
25 RU Start Index subfield of a STA Info field that is equal to the maximum of:

- 26 — The minimum 26-tone RU located within the channel width indicated in the VHT Operation Information field of either the HE Operation element or the VHT Operation element, whichever is present, and within the channel width indicated in the HT Operation element
- 27 — The minimum 26-tone RU located within the channel width indicated in the most recently received Operating Mode Notification frame, Operating Mode Notification element with the Rx NSS Type subfield equal to 0, or OM Control subfield sent by the corresponding HE beamformee (see 26.9 (Operating mode indication))

34 The HE beamformer shall use a highest 26-tone RU, which is the upper bound of the ending 26-tone RU in the RU End Index subfield of a STA Info field that is equal to the minimum of:

- 35 — The maximum 26-tone RU located within the channel width indicated in the VHT Operation Information field of either the HE Operation element or the VHT Operation element, whichever is present, and within the channel width indicated in the HT Operation element
- 36 — The maximum 26-tone RU located within the channel width indicated in the most recently received Operating Mode Notification frame, Operating Mode Notification element with the Rx NSS Type subfield equal to 0, or OM Control field sent by the corresponding HE beamformee (see 26.9 (Operating mode indication))

47 An HE beamformer soliciting SU or CQI feedback in an HE non-TB sounding sequence shall set the Feedback Type And Ng, Codebook Size and Nc subfields in the HE NDP Announcement frame to 0. An HE beamformee that receives an HE NDP Announcement frame soliciting SU feedback as part of an HE non-TB sounding sequence shall generate an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report for SU feedback with Nc in the range 1 to 8, Ng = 4 or Ng = 16, and codebook size $(\phi, \psi) = \{4, 2\}$ or $(\phi, \psi) = \{6, 4\}$. The HE beamformee shall transmit the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report a SIFS after the HE sounding NDP.

57 An HE beamformee that receives an HE NDP Announcement frame soliciting CQI feedback as part of an HE non-TB sounding sequence shall generate an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report for CQI feedback with Nc determined by the HE beamformee.

62 An HE beamformee that receives an HE NDP Announcement frame soliciting CQI feedback as part of an HE TB sounding sequence shall generate an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report for CQI feedback with Nc determined by the HE beamformer.

1 An HE beamformee that receives an HE NDP Announcement frame from an HE beamformer with which it
 2 is associated and that contains the HE beamformee's MAC address in the RA field (indicating a non-TB
 3 sounding sequence) and also receives an HE sounding NDP a SIFS after the HE NDP Announcement frame
 4 shall transmit its HE compressed beamforming/CQI report a SIFS after the HE sounding NDP. The
 5 TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH for the PPDU containing the HE compressed beamforming/
 6 CQI report shall be set to indicate a bandwidth not wider than that indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter
 7 CH_BANDWIDTH of the HE sounding NDP.
 8

9
 10 An HE beamformee that receives an HE NDP Announcement frame as part of an HE TB sounding sequence
 11 with a STA Info field identifying it soliciting SU or MU feedback shall generate an HE compressed beam-
 12 forming/CQI report using the feedback type, Ng , codebook size, and Nc indicated in the STA Info field. If
 13 the HE beamformee then receives a BFRP Trigger frame with a matching STA Info field, the HE beamfor-
 14 mee transmits an HE TB PPDU containing the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report following the rules
 15 defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation). If the HE NDP Announcement frame has
 16 the TA field set to the transmitted BSSID, and the HE beamformee is a non-AP STA associated to a non-
 17 transmitted BSSID that supports receiving Control frames with TA field set to the transmitted BSSID, then
 18 the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report sent in response shall have the RA field set to as defined in
 19 26.5.2.3.5 (RA field for frames carried in an HE TB PPDU).
 20

21
 22 NOTE—A non-AP HE beamformee that transmits an OM Control subfield with the UL MU Disable field set to 1 does
 23 not respond to BFRP Trigger frames (see 26.9 (Operating mode indication)).
 24

25
 26 An HE beamformee that is a non-AP STA that transmits an HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI Report shall
 27 set the RU Start Index and RU End Index subfields of the HE MIMO Control field to indicate the range of
 28 tones for which compressed beamforming/CQI information is provided. If the HE NDP Announcement
 29 frame that solicited the feedback includes a Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap field with a nonzero value, then
 30 a beamformee that indicates support for punctured sounding by setting the Punctured Sounding Support sub-
 31 field in the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits to 1 shall include a Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap
 32 subfield in the solicited feedback with the same value as the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield of the
 33 HE NDP Announcement frame that solicited the feedback to indicate subcarriers for which feedback in-
 34 formation is not provided from within the range of subcarriers indicated by the RU Start Index and RU End
 35 Index subfields.
 36

37
 38 The Sounding Dialog Token Number field in the HE MIMO Control field shall be set to the same value as
 39 the Sounding Dialog Token Number field in the corresponding HE NDP Announcement frame.
 40

41
 42 An HE beamformer that sends a BFRP Trigger frame shall set the Feedback Segment Retransmission Bit-
 43 map fields of the BFRP Trigger frame to all 1s except when the HE beamformer intends to solicit the
 44 retransmission of segmented feedback as defined in 26.7.4 (Rules for generating segmented feedback).
 45

46
 47 NOTE—The BFRP Trigger frame contains one or more User Info fields, each of which identifies an HE beamformee.
 48

49
 50 The SNR per subcarrier computation is recommended to be done on at least 4 subcarriers in a 26-tone RU.
 51

52 **26.7.4 Rules for generating segmented feedback**

53
 54 If the HE compressed beamforming/CQI report solicited by the HE beamformer would result in an HE Com-
 55 pressed Beamforming/CQI frame that exceeds 11 454 octets in length, then the HE compressed beamform-
 56 ing/CQI report shall be split into up to 8 feedback segments. Each feedback segment shall be included in a
 57 separate HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame and shall contain successive portions of the HE com-
 58 pressed beamforming/CQI report. Each feedback segment shall be of equal length except the last feedback
 59 segment that may be smaller. Each HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI frame that includes a feedback seg-
 60 ment that is not the last feedback segment shall have a length of 11 454 octets. Each feedback segment is
 61 identified by the value of the Remaining Feedback Segments subfield and the First Feedback Segment sub-
 62 field in the HE MIMO Control field as defined in 9.4.1.64 (HE MIMO Control field); the other nonreserved
 63
 64

1 subfields of the HE MIMO Control field shall be the same for all feedback segments. All feedback segments
 2 shall be sent in a single A-MPDU contained in a PPDU and shall be included in the A-MPDU in the
 3 descending order of the Remaining Feedback Segments subfield values.
 4

5 An HE beamformer that sends a BFRP Trigger frame, in its first attempt to retrieve an HE compressed
 6 beamforming/CQI report from an HE beamformee, shall solicit all possible feedback segments by setting all
 7 of the bits in the Feedback Segment Retransmission Bitmap subfield to 1 in the User Info field identify-
 8 ingthe HE beamformee.
 10

11 An HE beamformer that fails to receive some or all of the feedback segments of the HE compressed beam-
 12 forming/CQI report from the HE beamformee, may solicit the selective retransmission of missing feedback
 13 segments by sending a BFRP Trigger frame that indicates in the Feedback Segment Retransmission Bitmap
 14 subfield of the User Info field identifying the HE beamformee the list of feedback segments solicited for
 15 retransmission (see 9.3.1.22.3 (Beamforming Report Poll (BFRP) variant)).
 16

17 NOTE—In an HE non-TB sounding sequence, if the HE beamformer does not receive all feedback segments from the
 18 HE beamformee, the HE beamformer cannot use a BFRP Trigger frame to request retransmission of the feedback seg-
 19 ments. In this case the HE beamformee can only repeat the entire non-TB sounding sequence.
 21

22 An HE beamformer that fails to receive the first feedback segment (identified by the First Feedback Seg-
 23 ment field set to 1), may solicit the selective retransmission of the missing feedback segments assuming the
 24 HE compressed beamforming/CQI report is split into 8 feedback segments. The HE beamformer may also
 25 solicit the retransmission of all feedback segments by setting all of the bits in the Feedback Segment
 26 Retransmission Bitmap subfield to 1 in the User Info field identifyingthe HE beamformee.
 28

29 An HE beamformee that transmits an HE compressed beamforming/CQI report including the HE Com-
 30 pressed Beamforming Report information and any HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report information in
 31 response to a BFRP Trigger frame shall either transmit only the feedback segments indicated in the Feed-
 32 back Segment Retransmission Bitmap field in the User Info field of the BFRP Trigger frame identifying the
 33 HE beamformee or transmit all the feedback segments available at the HE beamformee, excluding the feed-
 34 back segments that do not exist at the HE beamformee.
 36

37 NOTE—If an HE beamformer solicits the missing feedback segments from a beamformee and does not receive a
 38 response from the beamformee, the HE beamformer might either initiate an HE TB sounding sequence or transmit an
 39 additional BFRP Trigger frame to the HE beamformee.
 41

42 26.7.5 HE sounding NDP transmission

44 The TXVECTOR parameters for an HE sounding NDP shall be set as follows:
 45

- 46 — FORMAT is set to HE_SU
- 47 — APEP_LENGTH is set to 0
- 48 — HE_LTF_TYPE is set to either 2xHE-LTF or 4xHE-LTF
- 49 — If HE_LTF_TYPE is 2xHE-LTF, then GI_TYPE is set to either 0u8s_GI or 1u6s_GI
- 50 — If HE_LTF_TYPE is 4xHE-LTF, then GI_TYPE is set to 3u2s_GI
- 51 — NUM_STS indicates two or more space-time streams if the Feedback Type field in the HE MIMO
 52 Control field of the preceding HE NDP Announcement frame indicates either SU or MU. See below
 53 for additional constraints on NUM_STS.
- 54 — CH_BANDWIDTH is set to the same value as the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH in
 55 the preceding HE NDP Announcement frame
- 56 — SPATIAL_REUSE is set to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED (see 26.11.6 (SPA-
 57 TIAL_REUSE))
- 58 — BSS_COLOR is set to the value indicated in the BSS Color subfield of the HE Operation element
 59 received or transmitted by the HE AP

- TXOP_DURATION set to either 127 or a value defined in Equation (26-3)

$$\max(\min(8 \left\lfloor \frac{[D_{HE_NDPA} - SIFS - TXTIME]}{8} \right\rfloor, 504), \\ \min(128 \left\lfloor \frac{[D_{HE_NDPA} - SIFS - TXTIME]}{128} \right\rfloor, 8448)) \quad (26-3)$$

where

D_{HE_NDPA} is the value of the Duration/ID field in the MAC header of the preceding HE NDP Announcement frame

TXTIME is the transmission time of an HE sounding NDP defined in Equation (27-136)

The Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set field of the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the transmitter and the receiver of the HE sounding NDP do not affect the values used for the NUM_STS parameter for the TXVECTOR of an HE sounding NDP.

The destination of an HE sounding NDP is equal to the RA of the immediately preceding HE NDP Announcement frame.

The source of an HE sounding NDP is equal to the TA of the immediately preceding HE NDP Announcement frame.

26.8 TWT operation

26.8.1 General

Target wake time (TWT) allows an AP to manage activity in the BSS in order to minimize contention between STAs and to reduce the required amount of time that a STA in PS mode needs to be awake. This is achieved by allocating STAs to operate at nonoverlapping times and/or frequencies, and concentrate the frame exchanges in predefined service periods.

An HE STA negotiates individual TWT agreements, as defined in 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)), subject to the additional rules and restrictions that are defined in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements) and 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission). A non-AP HE STA establishes membership in broadcast TWT schedules, as defined in 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation), which are used as defined in 26.8.3.3 (Rules for TWT scheduled STA), 26.14.2 (Power save with UORA and TWT), and 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save). An HE AP delivers broadcast TWT parameter sets to non-AP HE STAs as described in 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP), 26.14.2 (Power save with UORA and TWT) and 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save).

A STA does not need to be aware of the values of TWT parameters of the TWT agreements of other STAs in the BSS of the STA or of TWT agreements of STAs in other BSSs. A STA does not need to be aware that a TWT service period (SP) is used to exchange frames with other STAs. Frames transmitted during a TWT SP are carried in any PPDU format supported by the pair of STAs that have established the TWT agreement corresponding to that TWT SP, including HE MU PPDU, HE TB PPDU, etc.

An HE STA with dot11TWTOptionImplemented equal to true shall set:

- The TWT Requester Support subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities element that it transmits if it supports operating in the role of a TWT requesting STA; otherwise set to 0.
- The TWT Responder Support subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits if it supports operating in the role of a TWT responding STA; otherwise set to 0.

- 1 — The Broadcast TWT Support subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities element that it transmits if it sup-
 2 ports operating in the role of a TWT scheduled STA or in the role of a TWT scheduling AP; other-
 3 wise set to 0.

4
 5 An HE AP shall set the TWT Responder Support subfield of the Extended Capabilities element and HE
 6 Capabilities element to 1.
 7
 8

9 An HE AP may request TWT participation by all associated STAs that have declared support for TWT. A
 10 non-AP STA declares support for the role of TWT requesting STA by setting the TWT Requester Support
 11 subfield in the Extended Capabilities element or in the HE Capabilities element to 1 and declares support for
 12 the role of TWT scheduled STA by setting the Broadcast TWT Support subfield in the HE Capabilities ele-
 13 ment to 1. The HE AP makes the request for TWT participation by setting the TWT Required subfield to 1
 14 in HE Operation elements it transmits. A STA that supports TWT and that has received an HE Operation
 15 element with the TWT Required subfield equal to 1 from the HE AP with which it is associated shall either
 16 negotiate individual TWT agreements, as defined in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements), or participate in
 17 broadcast TWT operation, as defined in 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation).
 18
 19

20 NOTE—The AP sets the TWT Required subfield to 1 if it is not available outside TWT SPs (see 26.8.2 (Individual TWT
 21 agreements) and 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation)). The AP might not be available outside TWT SPs if it sets the
 22 Responder PM Mode subfield to 1 (see 10.48.7 (TWT Sleep Setup)).
 23
 24

26.8.2 Individual TWT agreements

25 An HE STA may negotiate individual TWT agreements with another HE STA as defined in 10.48.1 (TWT
 26 overview), except that the STA:

- 27 — May set the Responder PM Mode subfield to 1 if it is a TWT responding STA that intends to go to
 28 doze state outside of TWT SPs.
- 29 • If the TWT responding STA is an AP then it may set the Responder PM Mode subfield to 1 only
 30 if all non-AP STAs that are associated to it indicate support of TWT and the AP has set the TWT
 31 Required subfield to 1 in the HE Operation element it transmits; otherwise it shall set the
 32 Responder PM Mode subfield to 0.
 - 33 • An AP that sets the Responder PM Mode subfield to 1 follows the rules defined in 10.48.7 (TWT
 34 Sleep Setup).
- 35 — Shall set the Implicit subfield to 1 and the NDP Paging Indicator subfield to 0 in all TWT elements
 36 that it transmits during the TWT setup.
- 37 — May set the Trigger subfield to 1 in the TWT element it transmits during the TWT setup to negotiate
 38 a trigger-enabled TWT.
- 39 • A successful TWT agreement whose Trigger subfield in the TWT response sent by the AP is 1 is
 40 a trigger-enabled TWT; otherwise it is not a trigger-enabled TWT.
- 41 — Shall set the TWT Channel subfield in the TWT element it transmits to 0 unless the HE STA sets up
 42 a subchannel selective transmission operation as defined in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective trans-
 43 mission).
- 44 — May set the TWT Protection field to 1 to indicate that TXOPs within the TWT SPs shall be initiated
 45 with a NAV protection mechanism, such as (MU) RTS/CTS, or CTS-to-self frame; otherwise it shall
 46 set it to 0.
- 47 — An HE STA shall not use the RAW mechanism for protection of TWT SPs.

48 An HE STA that successfully sets up a TWT agreement with another HE STA shall follow the rules defined
 49 in 10.48.1 (TWT overview) and 10.48.4 (Implicit TWT operation), except that all the additional rules
 50 defined in 26.8 (TWT operation) supersede all the respective rules defined in 10.48.1 (TWT overview) and
 51 10.48.4 (Implicit TWT operation). A TWT or TWT SP that is set up under an implicit TWT agreement is an
 52 implicit TWT or implicit TWT SP, respectively (see 10.48.1 (TWT overview)). A TWT or TWT SP that is
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59

set up under a trigger-enabled TWT agreement is a trigger-enabled TWT or trigger-enabled TWT SP, respectively.

An example of individual TWT operation is shown in Figure 26-8a (Example of individual TWT operation), where the AP is the TWT responding STA and STA 1 and STA 2 are the TWT requesting STAs.

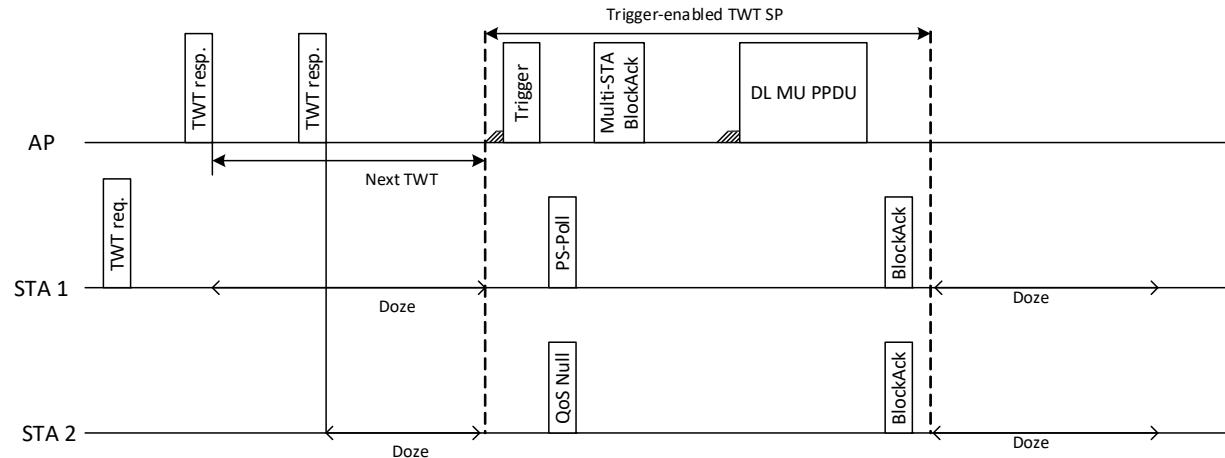


Figure 26-9—Example of individual TWT operation

In this example, STA 1 sends a TWT request to the TWT responding STA to setup a trigger-enabled TWT agreement. The TWT responding STA accepts the TWT agreement with STA 1 and confirms the acceptance in the TWT response sent to STA 1. Subsequently, the TWT responding STA sends an unsolicited TWT response to STA 2 to setup a trigger-enabled TWT agreement with STA 2. Both these TWT agreements are setup as announced TWTs. During the trigger-enabled TWT SP, the TWT responding STA sends a Trigger frame to which the TWT requesting STAs indicate that they are awake during the TWT SP. STA 1 indicates that it is awake by sending a PS-Poll frame and STA 2 indicates that it is awake by sending a QoS Null frame in response to the Trigger frame. STA 1 and STA 2 receive their DL BUs in a subsequent exchange with the TWT responding STA and go to doze state outside of this TWT SP.

An HE STA may execute the individual TWT setup exchanges defined in Table 26-5 (TWT setup exchange for unsolicited TWT and recommended broadcast TWT switch) in addition to the exchanges defined in 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)). An HE STA that intends to set up an individual TWT shall set the Negotiation Type subfield to 0 as defined in 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)) or as defined in Table 26-5 (TWT setup exchange for unsolicited TWT and recommended broadcast TWT switch). The HE STA may respond to the TWT request with a TWT response that has the Negotiation Type subfield equal to 3 as indicated in Table 26-5 (TWT setup exchange for unsolicited TWT and recommended broadcast TWT switch) to provide recommended broadcast TWT schedules for the requesting STA.

Table 26-5—TWT setup exchange for unsolicited TWT and recommended broadcast TWT switch

TWT Setup Command field in an initiating frame	TWT Setup Command field in a response frame	TWT condition after the completion of the exchange
Request TWT or Suggest TWT or Demand TWT with Broadcast subfield = 0	Accept TWT with Broadcast subfield = 1	This response is not allowed.

1 **Table 26-5—TWT setup exchange for unsolicited TWT and recommended broadcast TWT
2 switch**

5 Request TWT, Suggest TWT or 6 Demand TWT with Broadcast 7 subfield = 0	8 Dictate TWT with Broad- 9 cast subfield = 1	10 No individual TWT agreement exists with the 11 associated TWT Flow identifier. One or more 12 broadcast TWT schedule exists that uses the TWT 13 parameters identified in the response frame 14 including a Broadcast TWT IDs. The broadcast 15 TWT schedules are not necessarily newly created. 16 The responding STA will not create any new indi- 17 vidual TWT agreement with the requester at this 18 time. The STA transmitting the initiating frame is 19 not a member of the broadcast TWT, however the 20 STA is recommended to join any of the broadcast 21 TWT schedules.
17 Accept TWT with Broadcast 18 subfield set to 0	19 No frame transmitted	20 The STA receiving this frame now has an individ- 21 ual TWT agreement with the transmitter of the 22 frame where the parameters of the individual 23 TWT agreement are identified by the initiating 24 frame.
25 Alternate TWT or Dictate TWT 26 with Broadcast subfield = 0	27 No frame transmitted	28 The STA receiving this frame is not, through the 29 receipt of this frame, a member of the TWT identi- 30 fied by the initiating frame but can use the infor- 31 mation provided to create a request to set up a 32 TWT in a subsequent initiating frame that it trans- 33 mits.
<p>34 NOTE 1—The Negotiation Type subfield in the TWT element contained in these frames is 0 if the Broadcast sub- 35 field is 0 and is 3 if the Broadcast subfield is 1.</p> <p>36 NOTE 2—The initiating frame and response frame settings not listed in the tables in 10.48 (Target wake time 37 (TWT)) or 26.8 (TWT operation) are not allowed. The initiating frame is a TWT request if the TWT element carried 38 in the frame has the TWT Request field set to 1; otherwise it is a TWT response (see Table 9-297 (TWT Setup 39 Command field values)). The response frame is a TWT response if the TWT element contained in the frame has the 40 TWT Request field equal to 0.</p>		

41 An HE STA that successfully sets up an individual TWT agreement and operates in PS mode may listen to
42 Beacon frames, but is exempt from the requirements for receiving Beacon frames as defined in 11.2.3.1
43 (General). The HE STA follows the rules in 11.2.3 (Power management in a non-DMG infrastructure net-
44 work) to receive group-addressed frames.

45 NOTE 1—An HE AP sets the bit in the TIM element of the Beacon frame that corresponds to the AID of the TWT
46 requesting STA to 1 to indicate the presence of available buffered BUs for the STA (see 11.2.3.7 (Receive operation for
47 STAs in PS mode)).

48 NOTE 2—The TWT responding STA is expected to inform the TWT requesting STA of any critical update (as defined
49 in 11.2.3.15 (TIM Broadcast)) by sending a Management frame to the TWT requesting STA when the STA is in the
50 awake state.

51 An HE STA may tear down an individual TWT agreement by sending a TWT Teardown frame with the
52 Negotiation Type subfield set to 0. An HE STA may tear down all individual TWT agreements by sending a
53 TWT Teardown frame with the Teardown All TWT field set to 1.

54 An HE AP may send an unsolicited TWT response with the Trigger subfield equal to 1 to a non-AP HE STA
55 that has set the TWT Requester Support subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits to the
56 AP. The TWT response shall have one of these values in the TWT Setup Command field: Accept TWT,
57 Alternate TWT or Dictate TWT. An unsolicited TWT response with TWT Setup Command field of Alter-
58 nate TWT or Dictate TWT contains an advisory notification to the recipient of TWT parameters that are
59 likely to be accepted by the AP if the recipient transmits a subsequent TWT request to the AP that includes

1 those TWT parameters. An unsolicited TWT response with the TWT Setup Command field of Accept TWT
 2 creates a TWT agreement between the two STAs. A STA that received an unsolicited TWT response with
 3 the TWT Setup Command field of Accept TWT may transmit a TWT Teardown frame to delete the unsolicited
 4 individual TWT agreement.
 5

6 NOTE—The HE AP might send an unsolicited TWT response to a non-AP HE STA with a TWT Flow Identifier that
 7 corresponds to an existing TWT agreement. The unsolicited TWT response with TWT Setup Command field of Accept
 8 TWT will indicate new TWT parameters that are different from the previously negotiated TWT parameters for that TWT
 9 agreement.
 10

11 An HE STA shall not transmit BAT, TACK, or STACK frames, which are allowed in 10.48.2 (TWT
 12 acknowledgment procedure).
 13

14 A TWT requesting STA should not transmit frames to the TWT responding STA outside of negotiated TWT
 15 SPs and should not transmit frames that are not contained within HE TB PPDUs to the TWT responding
 16 STA within trigger-enabled TWT SPs.
 17

18 NOTE—The TWT requesting STA decides which frames to transmit within or outside a TWT SP and while it is recom-
 19 mended that the TWT requesting STA not transmit using EDCA within or outside TWT SPs the TWT requesting STA is
 20 still permitted to do so. If the STA decides to transmit then the STA might contend for access to the medium as defined
 21 in 10.23.2 (HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)) and in 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA par-
 22 ameters).
 23

24 The TWT responding STA of a trigger-enabled TWT agreement shall schedule for transmission a Trigger
 25 frame for the TWT requesting STA, as described in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation), within each TWT SP for that
 26 TWT agreement. The TWT responding STA should solicit buffer status reports from the TWT requesting
 27 STA at the start of the TWT SP following the procedure described in 26.5.3 (MU cascading sequence) or as
 28 described in 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure). The TWT responding STA that intends to schedule
 29 for transmission additional Trigger frames during a trigger-enabled TWT SP shall set the More TF subfield
 30 in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame to 1 to indicate that it will schedule for transmission another
 31 Trigger frame within the same TWT SP. The TWT responding STA shall set the More TF subfield to 0
 32 when the Trigger frame is the last scheduled Trigger frame of the TWT SP or when the Trigger frame is
 33 scheduled for transmission outside of a TWT SP.
 34

35 NOTE 1—The TWT responding STA can cancel the transmission of a scheduled Trigger frame if the STA gains access
 36 to the wireless medium outside of the TWT SP. The TWT responding STA does not schedule for transmission a Trigger
 37 frame for the TWT requesting STA when the TWT agreement is not a trigger-enabled TWT agreement or when the
 38 TWT requesting STA has sent an OM Control subfield that has the UL MU Disable subfield equal to 1 (see 26.9 (Oper-
 39 ating mode indication)).
 40

41 NOTE 2—The Trigger frame can also be a TRS Control subfield contained in a frame carried in a DL MU PPDU, pro-
 42 vided that the AP allocates enough resources in the HE TB PPDU for the STA to at least deliver its BSRs in response to
 43 the soliciting DL MU PPDU, and is recommended to allocate enough resources in subsequent Trigger frames sent
 44 during the TWT SP so that the STA can send as much as possible of the data reported in the BSR.
 45

46 A TWT requesting STA transmits an HE TB PPDU as a response to a Trigger frame that identifies it and is
 47 sent during a trigger-enabled TWT SP (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)). A TWT requesting STA that is in PS
 48 mode and is awake shall include a PS-Poll frame or a U-APSD trigger frame in the HE TB PPDU if the
 49 TWT is an announced TWT unless the STA has already transmitted a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame or
 50 transmitted any other indication that the STA is in the awake state within that TWT SP or has, previous to
 51 the start of the TWT SP but after the end of the most recent TWT SP, indicated to the AP that it is currently
 52 in the awake state. The STA may include other frames in the HE TB PPDU when other rules do not prohibit
 53 their inclusion, see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).
 54

55 NOTE 1—A Trigger frame identifies a TWT requesting STA if it is sent by the AP with which the STA is associated and
 56 the frame contains the 12 LSBs of the STA's AID in any of its User Info fields. The Trigger frame can have multiple
 57 recipients, each of which is identified by the presence of the 12 LSBs of the recipient's AID in any of its User Info fields
 58 (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)), and can have in the TA field the MAC address of the AP or the transmitted BSSID
 59 under the conditions defined in 26.5.2.2.4 (Allowed settings of the Trigger frame fields and TRS Control subfield).
 60

1 NOTE 2—Other indications that the STA is in the awake state are the transmission of an HE TB feedback NDP in
 2 response to an NFRP Trigger frame (see 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure)) or the transmission of a frame that
 3 indicates that the STA is in active mode (see 11.2.3.2 (STA power management modes)).
 4

5 A TWT responding STA that receives a PS-Poll frame or a U-APSD trigger frame or any other indication
 6 from a TWT requesting STA that is in PS mode during or before an announced TWT SP but after the end of
 7 the most recent TWT SP, that the TWT requesting STA is in the awake state during the TWT SP shall fol-
 8 low the rules defined in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation during the CP) except that the TWT responding STA should
 9 deliver to the TWT requesting STA as many buffered BUs as are available at the TWT responding STA,
 10 provided that the BU delivery does not exceed the duration of the TWT SP, the TWT requesting STA has
 11 indicated that it is in the awake state for that TWT SP and as long as the TWT requesting STA has not
 12 entered the doze state (see 26.8.4.2 (TWT Information frame exchange for individual TWT) and 26.8.5
 13 (Power save operation during TWT SPs)).
 14

15
 16 NOTE—The indication that the TWT requesting STA is in the awake state for that TWT SP might be a PS-Poll, U-
 17 APSD trigger frame, or any frame for which an immediate response is solicited and that follows the rules in 11.2.3.2
 18 (Non-AP STA power management modes) but the corresponding immediate response frame is not received by the TWT
 19 requesting STA. Other indications that the STA is in the awake state are the transmission of an HE TB feedback NDP in
 20 response to an NFRP Trigger frame (see 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure)) or the transmission of a frame that
 21 indicates that the STA is in active mode (see 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power management modes)).
 22

23
 24 A TWT responding STA that sends frames to a TWT requesting STA that is in PS mode during an unan-
 25 nounced TWT SP shall follow the rules defined in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation during the CP) except that the
 26 TWT responding STA should deliver to the TWT requesting STA as many buffered BUs as are available at
 27 the TWT responding STA, provided that the BU delivery does not exceed the duration of the TWT SP and
 28 as long as the TWT requesting STA has not entered the doze state (see 26.8.4.2 (TWT Information frame
 29 exchange for individual TWT) and 26.8.5 (Power save operation during TWT SPs)).
 30

31
 32 NOTE—The TWT responding STA can deliver the buffered BUs in A-MPDUs sent under a block ack agreement if the
 33 TWT is an announced TWT and the TWT requesting STA is awake for that TWT SP, or if the TWT is an unannounced
 34 TWT (at the start of which the TWT requesting STA is assumed to already be awake). The buffered BUs can be deliv-
 35 ered in multiple PPDUs transmitted within the TWT SP. The TWT responding STA can transmit frames to TWT
 36 requesting STA after the end of the TWT SP if the STA is in Active mode.
 37

38
 39 A TWT responding STA may transmit to a TWT requesting STA that is in Active mode at any time (see
 40 11.2.3.2 (STA power management modes)). A TWT responding STA may transmit to a TWT requesting
 41 STA that is in PS mode and awake outside of a TWT SP following the rules in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation).
 42

43 26.8.3 Broadcast TWT operation

44 26.8.3.1 General

45
 46 A TWT scheduling AP is an HE AP with dot11TWTOptionActivated equal to true that sets the Broadcast
 47 TWT Support field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 and that follows the rules in 26.8.3.2
 48 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP), 26.14.2 (Power save with UORA and TWT), and those for scheduled OPS
 49 defined in 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save).
 50

51
 52 A TWT scheduling AP includes a broadcast TWT element in the Beacon frame as described in 26.8.3.2
 53 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP). An AP corresponding to a nontransmitted BSSID in a multiple BSSID set
 54 shall follow the rules in 11.1.3.8.4 (Inheritance of element values).
 55

56
 57 A TWT scheduling AP may include a TWT element with the Negotiation Type subfield equal to 3 in an
 58 (Re)Association Response frame or in a TWT setup frame to assign the recipient STA to a broadcast TWT
 59 schedule without having received a request from the STA to become a member of the broadcast TWT sched-
 60 ule if that STA has set the Broadcast TWT Support field of HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1.
 61

A non-AP HE STA shall obtain TWT parameter values from the most recently received TWT element carried in a Beacon, Probe Response, or (Re)Association Response frame from its associated AP unless the non-AP HE STA is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID of a multiple BSSID set, in which case it shall follow the rules in 11.1.3.8.4 (Inheritance of element values) to determine the TWT parameter values.

A TWT scheduled STA is an non-AP HE STA that sets the Broadcast TWT Support field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 and receives a broadcast TWT element transmitted by an HE AP that is a TWT scheduling AP.

A TWT scheduled STA follows the schedule provided by the TWT scheduling AP as described in 26.8.3.3 (Rules for TWT scheduled STA), and, in addition, the rules in 26.14.2 (Power save with UORA and TWT) if the STA supports the UORA procedure, and the rules in 26.14.3 (Opportunistic power save) if the STA supports OPS operation. A TWT scheduled STA can negotiate the wake TBTT and wake interval for Beacon frames it intends to receive as described in 26.8.6 (Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval) or can join a particular broadcast TWT as described below.

An example of broadcast TWT operation is shown in Figure 26-10 (Example of broadcast TWT operation with optional TBTT negotiation), where the AP is the TWT scheduling AP and STA 1 and STA 2 are the TWT scheduled STAs.

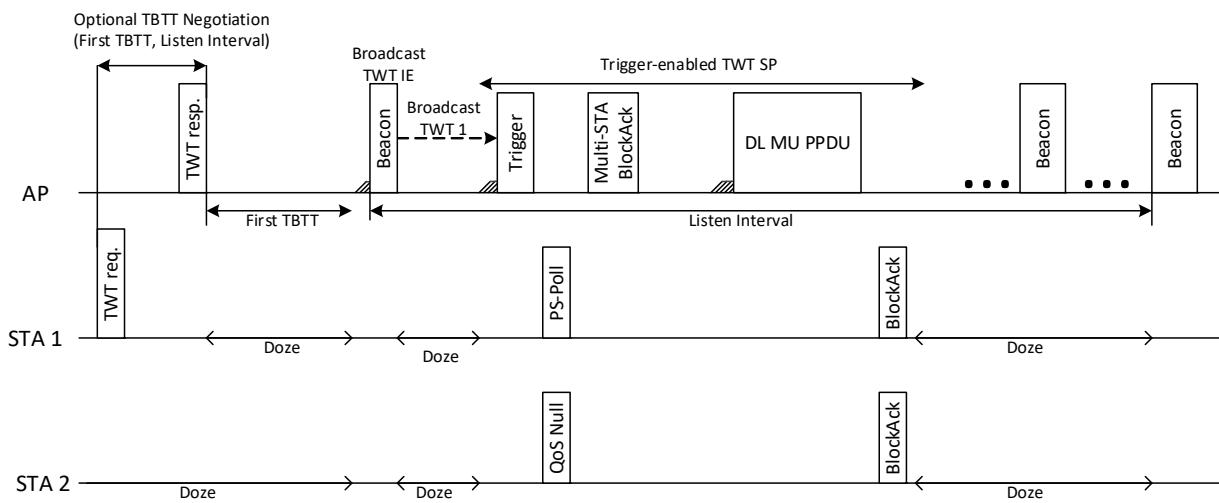


Figure 26-10—Example of broadcast TWT operation with optional TBTT negotiation

The TWT scheduling AP includes a broadcast TWT element in the Beacon frame that indicates a broadcast TWT SP during which the AP intends to send Trigger frames, or DL BUs to the TWT scheduled STAs. STA 1 and STA 2 wake to receive the Beacon frame to determine the broadcast TWT. During the trigger-enabled TWT SP the AP sends a Trigger frame to which STA 1 and STA 2 indicate that they are awake during the TWT SP. STA 1 indicates that it is awake by sending a PS-Poll and STA 2 indicates that it is awake by sending a QoS Null frame in response to the Trigger frame. STA 1 and STA 2 receive their DL BUs in a subsequent exchange with the AP and go to doze state outside of this TWT SP.

Each broadcast TWT is uniquely identified by the <broadcast TWT ID, MAC address> tuple, where the broadcast TWT ID is the value of the Broadcast TWT ID subfield and is greater than 0 and the MAC address is the address of the TWT scheduling AP.

Broadcast TWT schedules are advertised by the TWT scheduling AP in frames that carry TWT elements with the Negotiation Type subfield set to 2 as described in 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP). Broad-

cast TWT schedules that are intended for member TWT scheduled STAs are identified by a Broadcast TWT ID subfield that is greater than 0 and broadcast TWT schedules that are intended for all TWT scheduled STAs are identified by a Broadcast TWT ID subfield equal to 0.

Negotiations to become a member of or terminate membership in a broadcast TWT, identified by a Broadcast TWT ID subfield greater than 0, are performed with an exchange of frames that carry TWT elements with the Negotiation Type subfield set to 3 as described in 26.8.3.3 (Rules for TWT scheduled STA).

The TWT scheduling AP may send an unsolicited TWT response with the Trigger subfield set to 1 to a non-AP HE STA that has set the Broadcast TWT Support subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits to the AP. The TWT response shall indicate one of the following values in the TWT Setup Command field: Accept TWT, Alternate TWT, or Dictate TWT. An unsolicited TWT response with TWT Setup Command field indicating Alternate TWT or Dictate TWT contains an advisory notification to the recipient of TWT parameters that are likely to be accepted by the AP if the recipient transmits a subsequent TWT request to the AP that includes those TWT parameters. An unsolicited TWT response with a TWT Setup Command field that indicates Accept TWT allocates a broadcast TWT schedule to the receiving STA. A STA that receives an unsolicited TWT response with a TWT Setup Command field that indicates Accept TWT may transmit a TWT Teardown frame or a TWT response with TWT Setup Command field indicating Reject TWT to withdraw from the unsolicited broadcast TWT schedule.

26.8.3.2 Rules for TWT scheduling AP

A TWT scheduling AP may include a broadcast TWT element in a Beacon frame that is scheduled at a TBTT (see 11.1.3.2 (Beacon generation in non-DMG infrastructure networks)). The TWT scheduling AP shall include one or more TWT parameter sets in the TWT element, and each TWT parameter set may indicate a periodic occurrence of TWTs. The TWT scheduling AP shall set the Last Broadcast Parameter Set subfield to 0 in each TWT parameter set except for that the last (or only) TWT parameter set of the TWT element that shall have the Last Broadcast Parameter Set subfield set to 1. The TWT scheduling AP shall set the NDP Paging Indicator subfield to 0 and the Negotiation Type subfield to 2, and may set the Responder PM Mode subfield to 0 in the TWT element (see 10.48.7 (TWT Sleep Setup)). Each TWT parameter set specifies the TWT parameters of a specific broadcast TWT that are valid within a broadcast TWT SP. Each specific broadcast TWT is identified as indicated in 26.8.3.1 (General). Individual STAs may have membership in broadcast TWTs as the result of negotiation with a TWT scheduling AP as described in 26.8.3.1 (General).

The TWT scheduling AP sets the TWT parameters of each TWT parameter set as described below.

The TWT scheduling AP shall set the TWT Request subfield to 0 and the TWT Setup Command subfield as defined in Table 26-6 (Broadcast TWT announcements) and shall include the broadcast TWT element in the Beacon frames for as long as there is at least one active broadcast TWT schedule. Broadcast TWT announcements are broadcast TWT schedules advertised in broadcast TWT elements contained in broadcast Management frames (see Table 26-6 (Broadcast TWT announcements)).

The TWT scheduling AP shall set the Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield for each broadcast TWT to the number of TBTTs for which the Broadcast TWT schedule will be in existence, counting forward from the current TBTT. The AP may change the value of the Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield for any Broadcast TWT within any transmitted TWT element. If the AP reduces the value of the subfield, it shall not reduce the value by more than one as compared to the value transmitted during the immediately preceding beacon interval. If the AP increases the value of the Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield, it may increase the value by any amount as compared to the value transmitted during the immediately preceding TBTT.

A TWT scheduling AP that sets the TWT Setup Command subfield to Reject TWT shall indicate the TBTT at which the periodic broadcast TWT will be terminated by setting the value of the Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield to indicate the number of TBTTs that remain until the broadcast TWT schedule is termi-

1 nated. The broadcast TWT schedule terminates at the next TBTT that follows the TBTT at which the TWT
 2 scheduling AP transmits the broadcast TWT element with Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield for that
 3 broadcast TWT schedule equal to 0. A TWT scheduling AP may terminate the membership of a TWT sched-
 4 uled STA in all broadcast TWTs by transmitting a TWT Teardown frame with the Teardown All TWT field
 5 set to 1.
 6

7
 8 A TWT scheduling AP that sets the TWT Setup Command subfield to Alternate TWT shall indicate the
 9 TBTT at which the periodic broadcast TWT parameter set will be modified by setting the Broadcast TWT
 10 Persistence subfield to indicate the number of TBTTs that remain until the broadcast TWT schedule is mod-
 11 ified. The broadcast TWT schedule will be modified at the next TBTT, which follows the TBTT at which
 12 the TWT scheduling AP transmits the broadcast TWT element with Broadcast TWT Persistence subfield for
 13 that broadcast TWT schedule equal to 0. The AP shall include in the broadcast TWT element the future
 14 broadcast TWT parameter set that will take effect at that TBTT. The future broadcast TWT parameter set
 15 shall have the same values in the TWT Setup Command and Broadcast TWT ID subfields as the current
 16 broadcast TWT parameter set that is being modified and switch the TWT Setup Command subfield from
 17 Alternate TWT to Accept TWT at that TBTT. The future broadcast TWT parameter set shall be in a Broad-
 18 cast TWT Parameter Set field that is located after the Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field that contains the
 19 current broadcast TWT parameter set.
 20

21
 22 NOTE—TWT scheduled STAs follow the broadcast TWT parameters that are included in the current broadcast TWT
 23 parameter set and only switch to following the broadcast TWT parameters in the future broadcast TWT parameter set if
 24 the TWT Setup Command field is equal to Accept TWT in the Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field that contains the
 25 future broadcast TWT parameter set.
 26

27
 28 A TWT scheduling AP should indicate Alternate TWT or Reject TWT in the TWT Setup Command field of
 29 the broadcast TWT element for as many TBTTs as needed to exceed the longest interval any STA is
 30 expected to not receive Beacon frames either when the TWT parameters of a periodic TWT will change, or
 31 when the periodic TWT specified by that TWT parameter set will be terminated.
 32

33
 34 The TWT scheduling AP shall set the Trigger field to 1 to indicate a trigger-enabled TWT. Otherwise, it
 35 shall set the Trigger field to 0 (i.e., the TWT is not a trigger-enabled TWT). The AP is not expected to sched-
 36 ule for transmission Trigger frames during a non-trigger-enabled TWT SP and is expected to schedule Trig-
 37 ger frames during a trigger-enabled TWT SP as described below.
 38

39
 40 The TWT scheduling AP shall schedule for transmission of a Trigger frame addressed to one or more TWT
 41 scheduled STAs during a trigger-enabled TWT SP. A TWT scheduling AP should not include the 12 LSBs
 42 of the STA's AID in a User Info field of a Trigger frame transmitted within a broadcast TWT SP unless the
 43 STA is in the awake state, has established membership in the broadcast TWT with that Broadcast TWT ID,
 44 or has indicated to receive the Beacon frame preceding the beacon interval that contains this TWT SP (see
 45 26.8.6 (Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval)).
 46

47
 48 The TWT scheduling AP that schedules for transmission additional Trigger frames during a trigger-enabled
 49 TWT SP shall set the More TF subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame to 1 to indicate that it
 50 will schedule for transmission another Trigger frame within the same TWT SP. The TWT scheduling AP
 51 shall set the More TF subfield to 0 if the Trigger frame is the last scheduled Trigger frame of the TWT SP or
 52 if the Trigger frame is scheduled for transmission outside of a trigger-enabled TWT SP. The TWT schedul-
 53 ing AP should poll as many STAs as possible among TWT scheduled STAs that are members of that non-
 54 zero Broadcast TWT ID so that the STAs can perform a frame exchange with the TWT scheduling AP
 55 during that TWT SP.
 56

57
 58 NOTE 1—The TWT scheduling AP does not intend to schedule for transmission of a Trigger frame for the TWT sched-
 59 uled STA when the broadcast TWT is not a trigger-enabled TWT or when the TWT scheduled STA has sent an OM
 60 Control subfield that has the UL MU disable bit equal to 1 (see 26.9 (Operating mode indication)).
 61

62
 63 NOTE 2—The TWT scheduling AP can cancel the transmission of a scheduled Trigger frame if the AP gains access to
 64 the wireless medium outside of the TWT SP.
 65

1 NOTE 3—The Trigger frame can also be a TRS Control subfield contained in a frame carried in a DL MU PPDU, provided
 2 that the AP allocates enough resources in the HE TB PPDU for the STA to at least deliver its BSRs in response to
 3 the soliciting DL MU PPDU and is recommended to allocate enough resources in subsequent Trigger frames sent during
 4 the TWT SP so that the STA can send as much as possible of the data reported in the BSR.
 5

6 The TWT scheduling AP shall set the Flow Type field to 1 to indicate an unannounced TWT. Otherwise, it
 7 shall set the Flow Type field to 0 to indicate an announced TWT.
 8

9
 10 The TWT scheduling AP should schedule delivery of individually addressed DL BUs during unannounced
 11 TWT SPs with nonzero Broadcast TWT ID subfield.
 12

13
 14 The TWT scheduling AP shall set the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield according to Table 9-297a
 15 (Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast TWT element). The TWT scheduling AP shall set
 16 the Trigger field to 1 if the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield is 1 or 2, and may set the Trigger field
 17 to any value if the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield is 0 or 3.
 18

19
 20 A TWT scheduling AP that has advertised a broadcast TWT with a Broadcast TWT ID equal to 0 shall
 21 schedule the following:
 22

- 23 — The delivery of group addressed DL BUs during the broadcast TWT SPs located within the beacon
 24 interval that follows the DTIM Beacon frame if the TWT parameter set indicated non-trigger enabled
 25 unannounced TWT SP and had the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield equal to 0.
- 26 — The transmission of a Trigger frame that does not contain an RA-RU during the broadcast TWT SPs
 27 if the TWT parameter set indicated trigger-enabled announced TWT SP and had the Broadcast TWT
 28 Recommendation subfield equal to 1. The Trigger frame shall contain at least one User Info field
 29 addressed to a TWT scheduled STA whose TIM bit in the Beacon frame is 1 and that is not a mem-
 30 ber of any nonzero broadcast TWT during this beacon interval.
- 31 — The transmission of a Trigger frame that contains at least one RA-RU (see 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-
 32 based random access (UORA))) during the broadcast TWT SPs if the TWT parameter set indicated a
 33 trigger enabled announced TWT SP and had the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield set to 2
 34 (see 26.14.2 (Power save with UORA and TWT)).
- 35 — The transmission of a TIM frame or FILS Discovery frame at the start of a broadcast TWT SP if the
 36 TWT parameter set indicated a non-trigger enabled unannounced TWT SP and had the Broadcast TWT
 37 Recommendation subfield set to 3 (see 26.14.3.2 (AP operation for opportunistic power save)).
 38

39
 40 A Trigger frame transmitted during a broadcast TWT SP whose TWT parameter set has the Broadcast TWT
 41 Recommendation subfield equal to 0 or 3 may contain zero or more RA-RUs (see 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-
 42 based random access (UORA))). A Trigger frame transmitted during a broadcast TWT SP whose TWT
 43 parameter set has the Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield equal to 1 shall contain no RA-RU.
 44

45
 46 The TWT scheduling AP shall set the TWT field to the TSF timer [10: 25] that corresponds to the next TWT
 47 that is scheduled for this TWT parameter set when it queues for transmission the frame that contains the
 48 TWT element. The TSF timer at which the next TWT is scheduled has bits 0 to 9 equal to 0 and bits 26 to 63
 49 equal to the same value as the respective bits in the current TSF timer.
 50

51
 52 The TWT scheduling AP shall include a nonzero value for the TWT wake interval in the TWT Wake Inter-
 53 val Exponent and TWT Wake Interval Mantissa fields for a periodic TWT and a zero value for an aperiodic
 54 TWT.
 55

56
 57 The TWT parameters are valid for each successive TWT of a periodic TWT and for the only TWT of an ape-
 58 riodic TWT.
 59

1 The TWT scheduling AP shall include a unique value in the Broadcast TWT ID subfield for each Broadcast
 2 TWT to allow identification of each Broadcast TWT unless the TWT Setup Command field is Alternate
 3 TWT or the Broadcast TWT ID subfield is zero.

5 NOTE—The broadcast TWT element contains two Broadcast TWT Parameter Set fields with the same Broadcast TWT
 6 ID subfield value if the TWT Setup Command field indicates Alternate TWT in one of the Broadcast TWT Parameter
 7 Set fields. The broadcast TWT element might contain multiple Broadcast TWT Parameter Set fields with the Broadcast
 8 TWT ID subfield equal to 0.

10 A TWT scheduling AP that receives a PS-Poll or a U-APSD trigger frame or any other indication from a
 11 TWT scheduled STA that is in PS mode during or before an announced TWT SP but after the end of the
 12 most recent TWT SP, that the TWT scheduled STA is in the awake state during the TWT SP shall follow the
 13 rules defined in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation) except that the AP should deliver to the TWT scheduled STA as
 14 many buffered BUs as are available at the AP, provided that the BU delivery does not exceed the duration of
 15 the TWT SP, the TWT scheduled STA has indicated that it is in the awake state for that TWT SP and as long
 16 as the TWT scheduled STA has not entered the doze state (see 26.8.4.3 (TWT Information frame exchange
 17 for broadcast TWT) and 26.8.5 (Power save operation during TWT SPs)).

22 NOTE—The indication that the TWT scheduled STA is in the awake state for that TWT SP might be a PS-Poll, U-
 23 APSD trigger frame, or any frame for which an immediate response is solicited and that follows the rules in 11.2.3.2
 24 (Non-AP STA power management modes) but the corresponding immediate response frame is not received by the TWT
 25 scheduled STA. Other indications that the STA is in the awake state are the transmission of an HE TB feedback NDP in
 26 response to an NFRP Trigger frame (see 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure)) or the transmission of a frame that
 27 indicates that the STA is in active mode (see 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power management modes)).

30 A TWT scheduling AP that sends frames to a TWT scheduled STA that is in PS mode during an unan-
 31 nounced TWT SP shall follow the rules defined in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation) except that the AP should deliver
 32 to the TWT scheduled STA as many buffered BUs as available at the AP, provided that the BU delivery
 33 does not exceed the duration of the TWT SP and as long as the TWT scheduled STA has not entered the
 34 doze state (see 26.8.4.3 (TWT Information frame exchange for broadcast TWT) and 26.8.5 (Power save
 35 operation during TWT SPs)).

38 NOTE—The TWT scheduling AP can deliver the buffered BUs in A-MPDUs sent under a BlockAck agreement if the
 39 TWT is an announced TWT and the TWT scheduled STA is awake for that TWT SP, or if the TWT is an unannounced
 40 TWT (at the start of which the TWT scheduled STA is assumed to already be awake). The buffered BUs can be deliv-
 41 ered in multiple PPDUs transmitted within the TWT SP. The TWT scheduling AP can exceed the duration of the TWT
 42 SP if the TWT scheduled STA is in Active mode.

45 A TWT scheduling AP may transmit to a TWT scheduled STA that is in Active mode at any time (see
 46 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power management modes)). A TWT scheduling AP may transmit to a TWT sched-
 47 uled STA that is in PS mode and awake outside of a TWT SP following the rules in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation).

50 A TWT scheduling AP that receives a TWT element with the TWT Request field equal to 1, the Negotiation
 51 Type subfield equal to 3 and the TWT Setup Command field set to Suggest or Demand may respond with a
 52 frame containing a TWT element as shown in Table 26-7 (Broadcast TWT membership exchanges).

56 A TWT scheduling AP that receives a TWT element with the TWT Request field equal to 1, the Negotiation
 57 Type subfield equal to 3 and the TWT Setup Command field set to Reject shall delete the membership of the
 58 STA corresponding to the TA of the MMPDU that contained the TWT element from the broadcast TWT
 59 schedule that has the Broadcast TWT ID value that is equal to the value of the Broadcast TWT ID field of
 60 the TWT element.

63 A TWT scheduling AP may transmit a broadcast TWT announcement at any time. Valid broadcast TWT
 64 announcements are described in Table 26-6 (Broadcast TWT announcements).

Table 26-6—Broadcast TWT announcements

TWT Setup Command field in an initiating frame	TWT Setup Command field in a response frame	Condition after the completion of the exchange
Accept TWT	No frame transmitted	<p>Only an HE AP is permitted to transmit this sequence.</p> <p>TWT scheduled STAs that receive this frame use the provided TWT parameters to determine the broadcast TWT schedule.</p> <p>The broadcast TWT schedule is identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the initiating frame.</p>
Alternate TWT	No frame transmitted	<p>When transmitted by a TWT scheduling AP, some of the parameters of the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the initiating frame will change at the TBTT that occurs after the Broadcast TWT Persistence field of that broadcast TWT parameter set reaches 0. The new parameters will be present in the first Beacon frame transmitted by the TWT scheduling AP at the TBTT, which has a broadcast TWT parameter set with the same broadcast TWT ID and same TA, but with the TWT command value set to Accept TWT.</p>
Reject TWT	No frame transmitted	<p>When transmitted by a TWT scheduling AP, the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the initiating frame will be terminated at the TBTT that occurs after the Broadcast TWT Persistence field of that broadcast TWT parameter reaches 0. The termination occurs at the TBTT at which a Beacon frame is transmitted by the TWT scheduling AP that does not include a broadcast TWT parameter set with the same broadcast TWT ID and same TA as the initiating frame.</p>
<p>NOTE 1—The Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element contained in these frames is 2.</p> <p>NOTE 2—The initiating frame and response frame settings not listed in the tables in 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)) or 26.8 (TWT operation) are not allowed. The initiating frame is a TWT response.</p> <p>NOTE 3—MMPDUs that contain a broadcast TWT element generated by a TWT scheduling AP can be broadcast Probe Response, FILS Discovery, and Beacon frames. The TWT element has the TWT Request field equal to 0 and the Negotiation Type subfield equal to 2. The TWT scheduling AP can include a TWT parameter set with Broadcast TWT ID value 0 to indicate a TWT allocated for all STAs, and Broadcast TWT ID greater than 0 to indicate a TWT intended to TWT scheduled STAs that are members of that broadcast TWT.</p>		

26.8.3.3 Rules for TWT scheduled STA

A TWT scheduled STA that receives a broadcast TWT element in a Beacon frame shall follow the rules defined in this subclause to interact with the TWT scheduling AP.

A TWT scheduled STA should not transmit frames to the TWT scheduling AP outside of broadcast TWT SPs and should not transmit frames that are not contained within HE TB PPDUs to the TWT scheduling AP within trigger-enabled broadcast TWT SPs, except that the STA can transmit frames within negotiated individual TWT SPs as defined in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements).

1 NOTE—The TWT scheduled STA decides which frames to transmit within or outside a TWT SP and while it is recommended that the TWT scheduled STA not transmit using EDCA within or outside TWT SPs, the TWT scheduled STA is still permitted do so. If the STA decides to transmit then the STA might contend for accessing the medium as defined in
 2 10.23.2 (HCF contention based channel access (EDCA)) and in 26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters).
 3
 4
 5

6 A TWT scheduled STA may request to become a member of a broadcast TWT by transmitting a frame to its
 7 associated AP that contains a TWT element with the Negotiation Type subfield set to 3 and the TWT Setup
 8 Command field set to Request TWT or Suggest TWT or Demand TWT. The TWT Parameter set indicates
 9 the Broadcast TWT ID of the broadcast TWT that the STA is requesting to join. See Table 26-7 (Broadcast
 10 TWT membership exchanges).
 11
 12

13 A TWT scheduled STA may terminate membership in a broadcast TWT by transmitting a frame to its associated AP that contains a TWT element with the Negotiation Type subfield set to 3 and the TWT Setup
 14 Command field set to Reject TWT or by transmitting a TWT Teardown frame that has the Negotiation Type
 15 subfieldset to 3. A TWT scheduled STA may terminate membership in all broadcast TWTs by transmitting a
 16 TWT Teardown frame with the Teardown All TWT field set to 1.
 17
 18

19 A TWT scheduled STA that receives a TWT element with the TWT Request field equal to 0, the Negotiation
 20 Type subfield equal to 3 and the TWT Setup Command field indicating Accept TWT is a member of the
 21 broadcast TWT identified by the <broadcast TWT ID, MAC address> tuple, where the broadcast TWT ID is
 22 the value of the Broadcast TWT ID subfield in the TWT element and the MAC address that is the TA of the
 23 MMPDU that contained the TWT element is equal to the MAC address of the AP with which the STA is
 24 associated, regardless of whether the TWT scheduled STA had previously transmitted a corresponding TWT
 25 element to the AP with the TWT Setup Command field indicating Request TWT, Suggest TWT or Demand
 26 TWT.
 27
 28

29 Valid broadcast TWT membership exchanges are described in Table 26-7 (Broadcast TWT membership
 30 exchanges).
 31
 32

33 **Table 26-7—Broadcast TWT membership exchanges**

34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 TWT Setup Command field in an initiating frame	44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 TWT Setup Command field in a response frame	47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 Condition after the completion of the exchange
57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 Demand TWT	65 66 67 68 69 70 Accept TWT	71 72 73 74 75 76 A broadcast TWT schedule exists or has been created with the TWT parameters indicated in the initiating frame and repeated in the responding frame. 77 78 79 80 81 82 The TWT scheduled STA transmitting the initiating frame is a member of the Broadcast TWT schedule identified by the Broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the response frame.
83 84 85 86 87 88 Request TWT or Suggest TWT	89 90 91 92 93 94 Accept TWT	95 96 97 98 99 100 A broadcast TWT schedule exists or has been created with the TWT parameters indicated in the response frame. 101 102 103 104 105 106 The TWT scheduled STA transmitting the initiating frame is a member of the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the response frame.

Table 26-7—Broadcast TWT membership exchanges

Suggest TWT or Demand TWT	Alternate TWT	<p>No new broadcast TWT schedule has been created with the TWT parameters indicated in the initiating frame.</p> <p>The TWT scheduling AP is offering an alternative set of parameters vs. those indicated in the initiating frame, as a means of negotiating TWT parameters with the TWT scheduled STA.</p> <p>The TWT scheduled STA can send a new request with any set of TWT parameters and the TWT scheduling AP might create a new broadcast TWT schedule using the parameters indicated in the responding frame.</p>
Suggest TWT or Demand TWT	Dictate TWT	<p>A broadcast TWT schedule is either created or already exists and is using the TWT parameters identified in the response frame, including a broadcast TWT ID.</p> <p>The TWT scheduling AP will not create any new broadcast TWT schedule with the TWT scheduled STA at this time.</p> <p>The TWT scheduled STA transmitting the initiating frame is not a member of the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the response frame.</p> <p>The TWT scheduled STA can send a new request, but will receive an Accept TWT only if it uses the dictated TWT parameters.</p>
Request TWT or Suggest TWT or Demand TWT	Reject TWT	<p>The TWT scheduled STA transmitting the initiating frame is not a member of a broadcast TWT identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the response frame, if such a broadcast TWT exists.</p> <p>The TWT scheduling AP will not accept any new request from the TWT scheduled STA to join or create a broadcast TWT at this time.</p>
Accept TWT	No frame transmitted	<p>Not permitted to be transmitted by a TWT scheduled STA.</p> <p>When transmitted by a TWT scheduling AP, the recipient STA's membership in the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the initiating frame is established.</p>

Table 26-7—Broadcast TWT membership exchanges

Alternate TWT or Dictate TWT	No frame transmitted	<p>Not permitted to be transmitted by a TWT scheduled STA.</p> <p>When transmitted by a TWT scheduling AP, the TWT scheduled STA receiving this frame is not, through the receipt of this frame, a member of the broadcast TWT identified by the initiating frame.</p> <p>The TWT scheduled STA can use the information provided to create a request to join a TWT in a subsequent initiating frame that it transmits.</p>
Reject TWT	No frame transmitted	<p>When transmitted by a TWT scheduled STA, the transmitting STA's membership in the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the RA of the initiating frame is terminated.</p> <p>When transmitted by a TWT scheduling AP, the receiving STA's membership in the broadcast TWT schedule identified by the broadcast TWT ID and the TA of the initiating frame is terminated.</p>

NOTE 1—The Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element contained in these frames is 3.

NOTE 2—The initiating frame and response frame settings not listed in the tables in 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)) or 26.8 (TWT operation) are not allowed. The initiating frame is a TWT request if the TWT element contained in the frame has the TWT Request field equal to 1 (see Table 9-297 (TWT Setup Command field values)); otherwise it is a TWT response. The response frame is a TWT response.

NOTE 3—In addition to these exchanges, the TWT scheduling AP might respond to an initiating frame that solicits membership in a broadcast TWT schedule with an indication or solicitation of the establishment of an individual TWT agreement.

NOTE 4—MMPDUs that contain a broadcast TWT element generated by a TWT scheduled STA can be (Re)Association Request, and TWT Setup frames with TWT Request field equal to 1. The TWT element has the Negotiation Type subfield equal to 3 and the Broadcast TWT ID(s) that the STA intends to join or withdraw. MMPDUs that contain a broadcast TWT element generated by a TWT scheduled AP can be (Re)Association Response, and TWT Setup frames with TWT Request field equal to 0. The TWT element has the Negotiation Type subfield equal to 3 and the Broadcast TWT ID(s) to which the STA is assigned or from which the STA is withdrawn.

A TWT scheduled STA that is in PS mode may enter the doze state after receiving a Beacon frame with a TWT element indicating the existence of a broadcast TWT and shall be in the awake state at the broadcast TWT start times for which the STA has indicated it will be awake by any of the following means:

- Establishing a membership for the unannounced broadcast TWT with those broadcast TWT IDs
- Negotiating a wake TBTT and wake interval between Beacon frames that the STA receives, as defined in 26.8.6 (Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval)
- Having sent a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame during the beacon interval
- Having sent another indication that it is in the awake state during that beacon interval

NOTE 1—Other indications that the STA is in the awake state are the transmission of an HE TB feedback NDP in response to an NFRP Trigger frame (see 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure)) or the transmission of a frame that indicates that the STA is in active mode (see 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power management modes)).

NOTE 2—The STA might indicate that it will not be awake at certain broadcast TWT start times by sending a TWT Information frame. The AP might indicate to a STA that it need not be awake at certain broadcast TWT start times by sending a TWT information frame (see 26.8.4 (Use of TWT Information frames)).

1 A TWT scheduled STA is not required to be in the awake state at broadcast TWT SP start times corresponding
 2 to the broadcast TWT that has the broadcast TWT ID value of 0.
 3

4 A TWT scheduled STA that did not receive a Beacon frame at a TBTT shall act as if it had received the
 5 expected Beacon frame containing a TWT element for a broadcast TWT, if the missed beacon corresponds
 6 to a TBTT that is within the next n TBTTs beyond the most recently received Beacon frame that included a
 7 TWT element for that broadcast TWT, where n is equal to one plus the value obtained from the Broadcast
 8 TWT Persistence subfield of the corresponding Broadcast TWT, except that n is infinite if the Broadcast
 9 TWT Persistence subfield is 255.
 10

11 A TWT scheduled STA transmits an HE TB PPDU as a response to a Trigger frame that is addressed to it
 12 and is sent during a trigger-enabled TWT SP (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)). A TWT scheduled STA that
 13 is in PS mode and is awake during an announced TWT SP shall include a PS-Poll frame or a U-APSD trig-
 14 ger frame in the HE TB PPDU if it intends to solicit buffered BUs from the TWT scheduling AP (see
 15 11.2.3.7 (Receive operation for STAs in PS mode)) unless the STA has already transmitted within that TWT
 16 SP a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame or has transmitted any other indication that the STA is in the awake
 17 state within that TWT SP, or has, previous to the start of the TWT SP but after the end of the most recent
 18 TWT SP, indicated to the AP that it is currently in the awake state. A TWT scheduled STA that is in PS
 19 mode shall transition to the awake state at the start of an unannounced TWT SP of which it is a member. The
 20 STA may include other frames in the HE TB PPDU when other rules do not prohibit their inclusion (see
 21 26.5.2 (UL MU operation))
 22

23 NOTE 1—A TWT scheduling AP sets the bit in the TIM element of the Beacon frame that corresponds to the AID of the
 24 TWT scheduled STA to 1 to indicate that it expects the TWT scheduled STA to solicit available buffered BUs (see
 25 11.2.3.7 (Receive operation for STAs in PS mode)).
 26

27 NOTE 2—Other indications that the STA is in the awake state are the transmission of an HE TB feedback NDP in
 28 response to an NFRP Trigger frame (see 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure)) or the transmission of a frame that
 29 indicates that the STA is in active mode (see 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power management modes)).
 30

31 A TWT scheduled STA should not send frames that do not satisfy the Broadcast TWT Recommendation
 32 subfield recommendations in Table 9-297a (Broadcast TWT Recommendation field for a broadcast TWT
 33 element) during the corresponding TWT SP(s). Frames sent as a response to a Trigger frame are subject to
 34 further restrictions as defined in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).
 35

41 **26.8.4 Use of TWT Information frames**

42 **26.8.4.1 General**

43 An HE STA may transmit a TWT Information frame to its peer STA during an individual TWT agreement,
 44 broadcast TWT schedule, or at any time as defined in 26.8.4.2 (TWT Information frame exchange for indi-
 45 vidual TWT), 26.8.4.3 (TWT Information frame exchange for broadcast TWT) and 26.8.4.4 (TWT Informa-
 46 tion frame exchange for flexible wake time), respectively.
 47

48 NOTE—An HE AP might include multiple TWT Information frames, each addressed to a different peer STA, in an HE
 49 MU PPDU (see 26.5.1 (HE DL MU operation)).
 50

51 The TWT Information frame shall have the Response Requested subfield equal to 0, the Next TWT Request
 52 subfield equal to 0, and one of the following:
 53

- 54 — A nonzero value in the Next TWT subfield if the frame is transmitted by a TWT responding STA, a
 55 TWT scheduling AP, or by any HE STA to a peer STA that has set the Flexible TWT Schedule Sup-
 56 port field to 1 in the HE Capabilities element it transmits.
 - 57 • The value of the Next TWT subfield shall be selected from existing TWT values for an individ-
 58 ual TWT agreement if the Flexible TWT Schedule Support field in the HE Capabilities element
 59 received from the peer STA is 0 and shall be selected from existing TWT values for a broadcast
 60 TWT.

- 1 TWT schedule regardless of the value of the Flexible TWT Schedule Support field received from
 2 the peer STA.
- 3 • The Next TWT subfield may contain any nonzero value if Flexible TWT Schedule Support field
 in the HE Capabilities element received from the peer STA is 1.
 - 4 • The All TWT field is 1 if the resumption applies to all broadcast TWT schedules followed by the
 TWT scheduled STA and/or to all individual TWT agreements followed by the TWT responding
 STA.
 - 5 — A Next TWT subfield that is present if the frame is transmitted by a TWT requesting STA, a TWT
 scheduled STA, or if the frame is transmitted by any HE STA to a peer STA that has set the Flexible
 TWT Schedule Support field to 1 in the HE Capabilities element it transmits.
 - 6 • The Next TWT subfield indicates the earliest TWT at which the individual TWT agreement or
 broadcast TWT schedule is resumed and shall be selected from existing TWT values for that
 TWT agreement or broadcast TWT schedule if the Flexible TWT Schedule Support field in the
 HE Capabilities element received from the peer STA is 0.
 - 7 • The All TWT field is 1 if the resumption applies to all broadcast TWT schedules followed by the
 TWT scheduled STA and/or to all individual TWT agreements followed by the TWT requesting
 STA.
 - 8 • The Next TWT subfield may contain any nonzero value if Flexible TWT Schedule Support field
 in the HE Capabilities element received from the peer STA is 1.
 - 9 — A Next TWT subfield that is not present if the frame is transmitted by a TWT requesting STA or a
 TWT scheduled STA to indicate suspension of the individual TWT agreement or broadcast TWT
 schedule.
 - 10 • The All TWT subfield is 1 if the suspension applies to all broadcast TWT schedules followed by
 the TWT scheduled STA and/or to all individual TWT agreements followed by the TWT
 requesting STA.

34 NOTE—Information exchanged with TWT Information frames does not modify the TWT parameters of any existing
 35 TWT session except if the TWT Information frame is sent under flexible TWT (see 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame
 36 exchange for flexible wake time)).

38 The use of TWT Information frames for suspending and/or resuming existing individual TWT agreements is
 39 described in 26.8.4.2 (TWT Information frame exchange for individual TWT). The use of TWT Information
 40 frames for suspending and/or resuming existing broadcast TWT schedules is described in 26.8.4.3 (TWT
 41 Information frame exchange for broadcast TWT). The use of TWT Information frames for providing a flexi-
 42 ble TWT that is independent of any existing TWT agreements or TWT schedules is described in 26.8.4.4
 43 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time).

46 **26.8.4.2 TWT Information frame exchange for individual TWT**

49 An HE STA that has an individual TWT agreement may transmit a TWT Information frame to a peer STA
 50 with which it has the agreement if the peer STA has set the TWT Information Frame Disabled field to 0 in
 51 the TWT element sent during TWT setup; otherwise the HE STA shall not transmit a TWT Information
 52 frame to the peer STA. The HE STA sets the fields of the TWT Information frame as defined in 26.8.4.1
 53 (General).

56 A TWT requesting STA that receives a TWT Information frame containing a Next TWT subfield follows
 57 the rules defined in 10.48.4 (Implicit TWT operation).

60 A TWT requesting STA that receives an acknowledgment in response to a TWT Information frame trans-
 61 mitted by the STA:

- 62 — That does not contain a Next TWT subfield shall consider the corresponding TWT agreement sus-
 pended until the TWT session is resumed.

- That contains a Next TWT subfield shall consider the corresponding TWT agreement suspended and shall resume the TWT agreement starting from the value indicated in the Next TWT subfield of the transmitted TWT Information frame.
- Assumes that any other individual TWT agreements, broadcast TWT schedules (see 26.8.3 (Broadcast TWT operation)), are not affected by the transmission of this frame except when the All TWT subfield of the TWT Information frame is equal to 1. Other default PS procedures are not affected by the transmission of this frame (see 11.2 (Power management)).

NOTE—The TWT Flow Identifier, together with the MAC addresses of the TWT requesting STA and TWT responding STA identifies the TWT agreement for which the TWT Information frame is sent (see 10.48.1 (TWT overview)).

If the TWT Information frame contains an All TWT subfield equal to 1 then the above rules apply to all individual TWT agreements, except that the resumptions of the respective TWTs shall occur at the first TWT of the respective TWT agreement that occurs not earlier than the Next TWT value contained in the TWT Information frame, regardless of the value of the Flexible TWT Schedule Support field in the HE Capabilities element exchanged between the two STAs.

A TWT requesting STA that is in PS mode and that transmits a TWT Information frame to a TWT responding STA shall suspend the corresponding TWT agreement and may transition to doze state after receiving the acknowledgment even if it has previously transmitted a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame and has not yet received the expected frames from the AP in response and shall resume TWT operation for the corresponding TWT agreement at the specified TWT indicated (if any) in the TWT Information frame. A TWT requesting STA that is in PS mode and that receives a TWT Information frame from a TWT responding STA shall suspend the TWT agreement and may go to doze state after transmitting the acknowledgment even if it has previously transmitted a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame and has not yet received the expected frames from the TWT responding STA in response and shall resume TWT operation for the corresponding TWT agreement at the specified TWT indicated (if any) in the TWT Information frame.

26.8.4.3 TWT Information frame exchange for broadcast TWT

An HE STA that is a TWT scheduling AP may transmit a TWT Information frame to any of the members of a broadcast TWT schedule if the member has set the TWT Information Frame Disabled field to 0 in the TWT element sent when joining the broadcast TWT schedule. An HE STA that is a TWT scheduled STA may transmit a TWT Information frame to the TWT scheduling AP corresponding to a broadcast TWT schedule established by that STA if the AP has set the TWT Information Frame Disabled field to 0 in the broadcast TWT element it transmits. The HE STA sets the fields of the TWT Information frame as defined in 26.8.4.1 (General).

A TWT scheduled STA that receives a TWT Information frame that contains an All TWT subfield equal to 1 follows the rules defined in 26.8.3.3 (Rules for TWT scheduled STA), except that the TWT scheduled STA shall consider all the broadcast TWT schedules as suspended and shall resume each broadcast TWT schedule at the first TWT that occurs not earlier than the Next TWT subfield value contained in the received TWT Information frame.

A TWT scheduled STA that receives an acknowledgment in response to a TWT Information frame transmitted by the STA that contains an All TWT subfield equal to 1 and that does not contain a Next TWT subfield shall consider all broadcast TWT schedules suspended, and can follow the default PS procedure defined in 11.2 (Power management) until the broadcast TWT schedules are resumed.

A TWT scheduled STA that receives an acknowledgment in response to a TWT Information frame transmitted by the STA that contains an All TWT subfield equal to 1 and that contains a Next TWT subfield shall suspend all broadcast TWT schedules and shall resume the broadcast TWT schedules at the first scheduled TWT for each respective broadcast TWT schedule that occurs not earlier than the value indicated in the Next

1 TWT subfield contained in the transmitted TWT Information frame, regardless of the values of the Flexible
 2 TWT Schedule Support field in the HE Capabilities element exchanged between the two STAs.
 3

4 NOTE—TWT suspension and resumption as indicated by a TWT Information frame with the All TWT subfield equal to
 5 1 applies to all broadcast TWT schedules of the TWT scheduling AP.
 6

7 A TWT scheduled STA that is in PS mode and that transmits a TWT Information frame to a TWT scheduling
 8 AP shall suspend the corresponding broadcast TWT schedule and may transition to doze state after
 9 receiving the acknowledgment, even if it has previously transmitted a PS-Poll or U-APSD trigger frame and
 10 has not yet received the expected frames from the TWT scheduling AP in response, and shall resume TWT
 11 operation for the corresponding broadcast TWT schedule at the specified TWT indicated (if any) in the
 12 TWT Information frame. A TWT scheduled STA that is in PS mode and that receives a TWT Information
 13 frame from a TWT scheduling AP shall suspend the corresponding broadcast TWT schedule and may transi-
 14 tion to doze state after transmitting the acknowledgment, even if it has previously transmitted a PS-Poll or
 15 U-APSD trigger frame and has not yet received the expected frames from the TWT scheduling AP in
 16 response, and shall resume TWT operation for the corresponding broadcast TWT schedule at the specified
 17 TWT indicated (if any) in the TWT Information frame.
 18

21 **26.8.4.4 TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time**

22 An HE STA may transmit a TWT Information frame that contains a flexible TWT to a peer STA if the peer
 23 STA has set the Flexible TWT Schedule Support field of the HE Capabilities it transmits to 1; otherwise the
 24 HE STA shall not transmit a TWT Information frame that contains a flexible TWT to the peer STA.
 25

26 A flexible TWT is a nonzero value indicated in the Next TWT subfield of a TWT Information frame with
 27 All TWT subfield equal to 0, which is independent from any existing TWT values of TWT agreements that
 28 the HE STA might be following (if any). The HE STA sets the fields of the transmitted TWT Information
 29 frame as defined in 26.8.4.1 (General).
 30

31 NOTE—Flexible TWT support does not depend on the STA's TWT capabilities, i.e., the STA can use flexible TWT
 32 without being required to set up an individual TWT agreement or broadcast TWT schedule.
 33

34 An HE STA that receives acknowledgement for a TWT Information frame with flexible TWT and that con-
 35 tains a TWT Flow Identifier that identifies an existing individual TWT agreement shall replace the next
 36 TWT SP start time for that TWT agreement with the value contained in the Next TWT subfield of the TWT
 37 Information frame.
 38

39 A non-AP HE STA that receives acknowledgement for a TWT Information frame with flexible TWT and
 40 that contains a TWT Flow Identifier that does not identify any existing individual TWT agreement preserves
 41 the PM mode from the time the TWT Information frame was sent to the time indicated in the Next TWT
 42 subfield of the TWT Information frame as described below.
 43

44 NOTE—If the TWT Information frame has the All TWT field equal to 1 then the TWTS are suspended and resumed as
 45 described in 26.8.4.2 (TWT Information frame exchange for individual TWT) and 26.8.4.3 (TWT Information frame
 46 exchange for broadcast TWT).
 47

48 A non-AP HE STA that transmits a TWT Information frame that contains a flexible TWT to a peer STA
 49 may go to doze state after receiving the acknowledgment sent in response to the TWT Information frame if
 50 it is in PS mode (i.e., the PM subfield of the Frame Control field of the TWT Information frame is 1) and
 51 may be unavailable if it is in active mode (i.e., the PM subfield of the Frame Control field of the TWT Infor-
 52 mation frame is 0) and shall be in the awake state at the time it indicated in the Next TWT subfield of the
 53 TWT Information frame and shall be in the PS mode if the PM subfield of the TWT Information frame was
 54 1 and in active mode if the PM subfield of the TWT Information frame was 0. The STA, once in the awake
 55 state, shall follow the rules that correspond to the power management mode of the STA, which are defined in
 56 11.2.3 (Power management in a non-DMG infrastructure network) for the Active and PS mode, and in 26.8
 57 (TWT operation) when the STA operates within TWT SPs.
 58

1 NOTE—An HE AP delivers DL BUs to the STA at or after the flexible TWT indicated in the flexible TWT by following
 2 the rules in 11.2.3.6 (AP operation) if the STA does not follow TWT, and by following the rules in 26.8 (TWT operation)
 3 if the STA follows TWT and the delivery falls within a TWT SP. The STA is not required to send a frame at or
 4 after the flexible TWT to indicate its awake state to the AP. If the STA is following U-APSD then the operation is
 5 resumed at a time that occurs at the flexible TWT and if the STA is following an APSD schedule then the operation is
 6 resumed at a time that occurs at or after the flexible TWT.
 7

8 A non-AP HE STA that receives a TWT Information frame that contains a flexible TWT from a peer STA
 9 may go to doze state after transmitting the acknowledgment if it is in PS mode and may be unavailable if it is
 10 in active mode and shall be in the awake state at the time it indicated in the Next TWT subfield of the
 11 TWT Information frame and shall be in the PS mode if the STA was in PS mode when it received the TWT
 12 Information frame and in active mode if the STA was in active mode when it received the TWT Information
 13 frame. The STA, once in the awake state, shall follow the rules that correspond to the power management
 14 mode of the STA, which are defined in 11.2.3 (Power management in a non-DMG infrastructure network)
 15 for the Active and PS mode, and in 26.8 (TWT operation) when the STA operates within TWT SPs.
 16

17 26.8.5 Power save operation during TWT SPs

18 The following rules apply to TWT SPs for both broadcast TWT schedules and individual TWT agreements
 19 where the TWT SP of a broadcast TWT is uniquely identified by the <broadcast TWT ID, MAC address of
 20 TWT scheduling AP> tuple and the TWT SP of an individual TWT is uniquely identified by the <TWT flow
 21 identifier, MAC address of TWT requesting STA, MAC address of TWT responding STA> triple.
 22

23 A TWT requesting STA or a TWT scheduled STA that is not in PS mode and that transmits a frame with the
 24 Power Management subfield set to 1 during a TWT SP shall remain in the awake state until the Adjusted-
 25 MinimumTWTWakeDuration time has elapsed from the TWT SP start time or until a TWT SP termination
 26 event is detected, whichever occurs first for that particular TWT SP.
 27

28 A TWT requesting STA or a TWT scheduled STA in PS mode that is in the awake state for a TWT SP may
 29 transition to the doze state after AdjustedMinimumTWTWakeDuration time has elapsed from the TWT SP
 30 start time even if it has previously transmitted a PS-Poll frame or U-APSD trigger frame and has not yet
 31 received the expected frames from the AP in response. For a trigger-enabled TWT SP, if the AdjustedMin-
 32 imumTWTWakeDuration time has elapsed from the scheduled TWT SP start time and no Trigger frames are
 33 received by the STA, the HE STA may enter doze state if no other condition requires the STA to remain
 34 awake.
 35

36 When a TWT SP termination event is detected within a TWT SP by a STA in PS mode that is participating
 37 in the TWT SP, the STA may transition to the doze state without waiting for the expiration of the Adjusted-
 38 MinimumTWTWakeDuration time as described in 10.48.1 (TWT overview), even if it has previously trans-
 39 mitted a PS-Poll frame or U-APSD trigger frame and has not yet received the expected frames from the AP
 40 in response.
 41

42 A TWT requesting STA or a TWT scheduled STA shall classify any of the following events as a TWT SP
 43 termination event:
 44

- 45 1) The transmission by the TWT requesting STA or TWT scheduled STA of an acknowledgment
 46 in response to an individually addressed QoS Data or QoS Null frame sent by the TWT
 47 responding STA or TWT scheduling AP, respectively, that had the EOSP subfield equal to 1.
 48
- 49 2) The transmission by the TWT requesting STA or TWT scheduled STA of an acknowledgment
 50 in response to an individually addressed frame that is neither a QoS Data frame nor a QoS Null
 51 frame, sent by the TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP, respectively, with the More
 52 Data field equal to 0.
 53
- 54 3) The reception of an individually addressed or broadcast QoS Data or QoS Null frame sent by
 55 the TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP, that does not solicit an immediate response
 56 and with the EOSP subfield equal to 1.
 57

- 1 4) The reception of an individually addressed frame that is neither a QoS Data frame nor a QoS
 2 Null frame, sent by the TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP, that does not solicit an
 3 immediate response and with the More Data field equal to 0.
 4
 5) The reception of a Trigger frame sent by the TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP that
 6 has the More TF field equal to 0 and is not addressed to the TWT requesting STA or TWT
 7 scheduled STA provided that the TWT requesting STA or TWT scheduled STA is either awake
 8 for an announced trigger-enabled TWT SP but did not transmit an indication that it is in the
 9 awake state to the TWT responding STA or TWT scheduling AP or is awake for an unan-
 10 nounced trigger-enabled TWT SP.

13 The classification of a More Data field equal to 0 in an Ack, BlockAck and individually addressed Multi-
 14 STA BlockAck frame as an event that terminates a TWT SP is only possible when both STAs have indicated
 15 support of transmitting or receiving the frame with a nonzero More Data subfield, which is indicated in the
 16 More Data Ack subfield of the QoS Info field of frames they transmit (see 11.2.3 (Power management in a
 17 non-DMG infrastructure network)).

20 NOTE 1—A STA participating in multiple TWT SPs that overlap in time stays in the awake state until the latest AdjustedMinimumTWTWakeDuration time of all of the TWT SPs expires, except that a TWT SP termination event causes all
 21 of the overlapping TWT SPs to terminate.

24 NOTE 2—A Trigger frame is addressed to the STA if the Trigger frame contains the AID of the STA in one of its User
 25 Info fields (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)), and has in its TA field either the MAC address of its associated AP or the
 26 transmitted BSSID (see 26.5.2.2.4 (Allowed settings of the Trigger frame fields and TRS Control subfield)). Otherwise,
 27 the Trigger frame is not addressed to the STA. If the Trigger frame contains one or more RA-RUs for which the STA can
 28 gain access according to 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA)) then the STA can follow the rules defined
 29 in 26.14.2 (Power save with UORA and TWT) to determine an early TWT SP termination event.

32 Additional TWT SP termination events for a TWT requesting STA occur after the acknowledgment of a TWT Information frame as defined in 26.8.4.2 (TWT Information frame exchange for individual TWT) and in 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time).

36 Additional TWT SP termination events for a TWT scheduled STA occur after the acknowledgment of a TWT Information frame as defined in 26.8.4.3 (TWT Information frame exchange for broadcast TWT) and in 26.8.4.4 (TWT Information frame exchange for flexible wake time).

40 **26.8.6 Negotiation of wake TBTT and wake interval**

43 A TBTT scheduled STA that intends to operate in power save mode (see 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power
 44 management modes)) may transmit a TWT request to the TBTT scheduling AP that identifies the wake
 45 TBTT of the first Beacon frame and the wake interval between subsequent Beacon frames it intends to
 46 receive. The TWT request shall contain:

- 48 — The Negotiation Type subfield equal to 1 and the TWT Setup Command field to Suggest TWT or
 49 Demand TWT
- 51 — The requested first wake TBTT in the Target Wake Time field
- 52 — The requested wake interval between consecutive TBTTs in the TWT Wake Interval Mantissa and
 53 TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields
- 55 — The requested TBTT wake duration in the Nominal Minimum TWT Wake Duration field
- 56 — All other fields in the TWT element are reserved.

59 A TBTT scheduling AP that receives a TWT request from a STA whose value of the Negotiation Type sub-
 60 field is 1 shall respond with a TWT response that contains either Accept TWT, Alternate TWT, or Reject
 61 TWT in the TWT Setup Command field and, in the case of an Accept TWT, it shall also contain:

- 63 — The Negotiation Type subfield equal to 1
- 64 — The allocated first wake TBTT in the Target Wake Time field

- The allocated wake interval between consecutive TBTTs in the TWT Wake Interval Mantissa and TWT Wake Interval Exponent fields
 - The allocated TBTT wake duration in the Nominal Minimum TWT Wake Duration field
 - All other fields in the TWT element are reserved

After successfully completing the negotiation, the TBTT scheduled STA may go to doze state until its TSF matches the next negotiated wake TBTT provided that the STA is in power save mode, and no other condition requires the STA to remain awake. The TBTT scheduled STA shall be in the awake state to listen to Beacon frames transmitted at negotiated wake TBTTs and shall operate as described in 26.8.3.3 (Rules for TWT scheduled STA).

If the TBTT scheduled STA receives a Beacon frame from the TBTT scheduling AP at or after TBTT, the TBTT scheduled STA may go to doze state until the next wake TBTT if no other condition requires the STA to remain awake. The TBTT scheduled STA may go to doze state after a nominal minimum TBTT wake duration time has elapsed from the TBTT start time if no other condition requires the STA to remain awake.

Either STA that is a party to an established wake TBTT agreement can tear down the wake TBTT agreement by following the tear down procedure described in 10.48.8 (TWT Teardown) and by setting the Negotiation Type subfield to 1 in the TWT Teardown frame.

Table 26-8 (Wake TBTT negotiation exchanges) summarizes the interactions between devices that negotiate a Wake TBTT agreement.

Table 26-8—Wake TBTT negotiation exchanges

TWT Setup Command field in an initiating frame	TWT Setup Command field in a response frame	Condition after the completion of the exchange
Request TWT	Accept TWT or Alternate TWT or Dictate TWT or Reject TWT or no response	This exchange is not allowed.
Demand TWT or Suggest TWT	Accept TWT	A Wake TBTT agreement has been created with the Wake TBTT parameters indicated in the initiating frame.
Demand TWT or Suggest TWT	Reject TWT	No Wake TBTT agreement has been created.
Demand TWT or Suggest TWT	Alternate TWT	<p>No Wake TBTT agreement has been created. The TBTT scheduling AP is offering an alternative set of parameters vs. those indicated in the initiating frame. The TBTT scheduled STA can send a new request with any set of Wake TBTT parameters and the responder might create a Wake TBTT agreement using those parameters.</p> <p>The TBTT scheduled STA is unlikely to send a new request if the TWT Setup Command is Demand TWT and is very likely to send a new request if the TWT Setup Command is Suggest TWT.</p>

NOTE 1—The Negotiation Type subfield of the TWT element contained in these frames is equal to 1.

NOTE 2—The initiating frame and response frame settings not listed in the tables in 10.48 (Target wake time (TWT)) or 26.8 (TWT operation) are not allowed. The initiating frame is a TWT request and the response frame is a TWT response.

1 **26.8.7 HE subchannel selective transmission**

2

3

4 **26.8.7.1 General**

5

6 An HE STA that supports HE subchannel selective transmission (SST) operation shall set dot11HESubchan-
 7 nelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented to true and shall set the HE Subchannel Selective Transmission Sup-
 8 port field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1. An HE STA that does not support HE SST
 9 operation shall set the HE Subchannel Selective Transmission Support field in the HE Capabilities element
 10 it transmits to 0.

11

12

13 An HE non-AP STA with dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented to true is an HE SST
 14 STA.

15

16

17 An HE AP with dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented to true is an HE SST AP.

18

19

20 An HE SST STA may set up SST operation by negotiating a trigger-enabled TWT as defined in 26.8.2 (Indi-
 21 vidual TWT agreements) except that:

22

- The TWT request may have a TWT Channel field with up to one bit set to 1 to indicate the secondary
 channel requested to contain the RU allocations addressed to the HE SST STA that is a 20 MHz
 operating STA
- The TWT request may have a TWT Channel field with all the four LSBs or all the four MSBs set to
 1 to indicate whether the primary 80 MHz channel or the secondary 80 MHz channel is requested to
 contain the RU allocations addressed to the HE SST STA that is an 80 MHz operating STA
- The TWT response shall have a TWT Channel field with up to one bit set to 1 to indicate the second-
 ary channel that will contain the RU allocations addressed to the HE SST STA that is a 20 MHz
 operating STA
- The TWT response shall have a TWT Channel field with all the 4 LSBs or all the 4 MSBs to indicate
 whether the primary 80 MHz channel or the secondary 80 MHz channel will contain the RU alloca-
 tions addressed to the HE SST STA that is a 80 MHz operating STA.

40 **26.8.7.2 SST operation**

41

42

43 An HE SST STA and HE SST AP that successfully sets up SST operation shall follow the rules defined in
 44 this subclause.

45

46

47 When an HE SST AP causes its operating channel or channel width to a change, if a secondary channel of a
 48 negotiated trigger-enabled TWT is not within the new operating channel or channel width, the HE SST AP
 49 and the HE SST STA implicitly terminate the negotiated trigger-enabled TWT.

50

51

52 The HE SST AP follows the rules defined in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements) to exchange frames with
 53 the HE SST STA during negotiated trigger-enabled TWT SPs, except that the AP shall ensure that:

54

- The individually addressed RUs allocated in DL MU PPDUs and in Trigger frames addressed to the
 HE SST STA are within the subchannel indicated in the TWT Channel field of the TWT response
 and follows the RU restriction rules defined in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) if the
 HE SST STA is a 20 MHz operating STA and in 27.3.2.9 (80 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs) if
 the HE SST STA is an 80 MHz operating STA.
- The trigger-enabled TWT SPs do not overlap with TBTTs at which DTIM Beacon frames are sent
- The same subchannel is used for all trigger-enabled TWT SPs with the same HE SST STA that over-
 lap in time

1 An HE SST STA operating on the secondary channel shall not conduct OMI operation as defined in 26.9
 2 (Operating mode indication) or OMN operation as defined in 11.41 (Notification of operating mode
 3 changes) to change the operating bandwidth.

5 The HE SST STA follows the rules defined in 26.8.2 (Individual TWT agreements) to exchange frames with the
 6 HE SST AP during negotiated trigger-enabled TWT SPs, except that the STA:
 7

- 9 — Shall be available in the subchannel indicated in the TWT Channel field of the TWT response at
 10 TWT start times
- 11 — Shall not access the medium in the subchannel using DCF or EDCAF
- 12 — Shall not respond to Trigger frames addressed to it (see 26.5 (MU operation) and 26.8.2 (Individual
 13 TWT agreements)) unless it has performed CCA until a frame is detected by which it can set its NAV,
 14 or until a period equal to NAVSyncDelay has transpired, whichever is earlier.
- 15 — Shall update its NAV according to 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs) if it receives a PPDU in the sub-
 16 channel
- 17
- 18
- 19

20 An HE SST STA may include a Channel Switch Timing element in (Re-)Association Request frames it
 21 transmits to an HE SST AP to indicate the time required by the STA to switch between different subchan-
 22 nels. The received channel switch time informs the HE SST AP of the duration of time that the HE SST STA
 23 might not be available to receive frames before the TWT start time and after the end of the trigger-enabled
 24 TWT SP.

25 NOTE—An HE SST STA in PS mode is not required to move to the primary channel after the end of the trigger-enabled
 26 TWT SP.

32 **26.9 Operating mode indication**

33 **26.9.1 General**

37 OMI is a procedure used between an OMI initiator and an OMI responder. An HE STA that transmits a
 38 frame including an OM Control subfield is defined as an OMI initiator. An HE STA with dot11OMIOption-
 39 Implemented equal to true that receives a frame including an OM Control subfield is defined as an OMI
 40 responder.

42 An HE STA with dot11OMIOptionImplemented equal to true shall set the OM Control Support subfield in
 43 the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1; otherwise the
 44 HE STA shall set the OM Control Support subfield to 0. An HE AP shall set dot11OMIOptionImplemented
 45 to true and the HE AP shall implement the reception of the OM Control subfield.

48 An OMI initiator may send to an OMI responder an individually addressed QoS Data, QoS Null or Class 3
 49 Management frame after association that contains the OM Control subfield and that solicits an immediate
 50 acknowledgment to indicate a change in its receive operating mode (ROM) as defined in 26.9.2 (Receive
 51 operating mode (ROM) indication) and/or transmit operating parameters (TOM) as defined in 26.9.3 (Trans-
 52 mit operating mode (TOM) indication). An OMI responder implements the reception of an individually
 53 addressed QoS Data, QoS Null or Class 3 Management frame that contains the OM Control subfield that
 54 indicates a change in ROM and/or TOM parameters.

58 The OMI initiator shall indicate a change in its ROM parameters by including the OM Control subfield in a
 59 QoS Data, QoS Null or Class 3 Management frame that solicits acknowledgment and is addressed to the
 60 OMI responder as defined in 26.9.2 (Receive operating mode (ROM) indication).

63 NOTE—Frames that solicit an immediate acknowledgment are, for example, QoS Null frames and QoS Data frames
 64 with Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack policy and Action frames.

An HE STA can change its operating mode setting using either operating mode notification as described in 11.42 (Notification of operating mode changes), or the operating mode indication (OMI) procedure described in this subclause. An HE STA should not transmit an OM Control subfield and an Operating Mode field in the same PPDU. If a STA transmits both an OM Control subfield and Operating Mode field in the same PPDU, then the OMI responder shall use the channel width and the maximum number of spatial streams indicated by the most recently received OM Control subfield or Operating Mode field from the OMI initiator.

NOTE—An OM Control field is transmitted before an Operating Mode field in the same frame.

The OMI initiator supports receiving PPDU with a bandwidth up to the value indicated by the Channel Width subfield and with a number of spatial streams, N_{SS} , as indicated in the Rx NSS subfield of the OM Control subfield and calculated in the Equation (26-4).

If the operating channel width of the STA is greater than 80 MHz, then the maximum number of spatial streams that the STA supports in reception for a given HE-MCS as a function of the received HE PPDU bandwidth BW at an HE STA transmitting an OM Control subfield is defined in Equation (26-4).

$$\text{floor}(\text{Rx-NSS-from-OMI} \times (\text{Max-HE-NSS-at-BW} / \text{Max-HE-NSS-at-80})) \quad (26-4)$$

where

Rx-NSS-from-OMI is Rx NSS from the OM Control subfield transmitted by the STA

Max-HE-NSS-at-BW is the maximum HE NSS among all HE-MCS at BW MHz from the Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set field transmitted by the STA as described in 26.15.4 (Rate selection constraints for HE STAs)

Max-HE-NSS-at-80 is the maximum HE NSS among all HE-MCS at 80 MHz from the Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set field transmitted by the STA

NOTE—If the operating channel width of the STA is greater than 80 MHz, then the Rx NSS subfield indicates the maximum number of spatial streams for PPDU bandwidths that are equal to or less than 80 MHz. If the operating channel width of the STA is less than or equal to 80 MHz, then the Rx NSS subfield indicates the maximum number of spatial streams, N_{SS} , that the STA supports in reception.

The VHT channel width and the VHT NSS allowed at an HE STA transmitting an OM Control subfield are defined in Table 26-9 (Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT NSS at an HE STA transmitting the OM Control subfield) to determine the allowed NSS when operating as HE STA using channel bandwidth of 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz.

Table 26-9—Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT NSS at an HE STA transmitting the OM Control subfield

OM Control subfield	VHT capabilities of STA transmitting OM Control subfield			VHT NSS support of STA transmitting the OM Control subfield as a function of the PPDU bandwidth (\times Max VHT NSS) (see requirements R1 and R2)					Location of 160 MHz center frequency if BSS bandwidth is 160 MHz	Location of secondary 80 MHz center frequency if BSS bandwidth is 80+80 MHz
	Channel Width	Supported Channel Width	Extended NSS BW Support	20 MHz	40 MHz	80 MHz	160 MHz	80+80 MHz		
0	0-2	0-3	1							
1	0-2	0-3	1	1						
2	0-2	0-3	1	1	1					
3	0	1	1	1	1	1	1/2		CCFS2	

1 **Table 26-9—Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT NSS at an HE STA transmitting the OM
2 Control subfield (continued)**

OM Control subfield	VHT capabilities of STA transmitting OM Control subfield		VHT NSS support of STA transmitting the OM Control subfield as a function of the PPDU bandwidth (\times Max VHT NSS) (see requirements R1 and R2)					Location of 160 MHz center frequency if BSS bandwidth is 160 MHz	Location of secondary 80 MHz center frequency if BSS bandwidth is 80+80 MHz
Channel Width	Supported Channel Width	Extended NSS BW Support	20 MHz	40 MHz	80 MHz	160 MHz	80+80 MHz		
3	0	2	1	1	1	1/2	1/2	CCFS2	CCFS2
3	0	3	1	1	1	3/4	3/4	CCFS2	CCFS2
3	1	0	1	1	1	1		CCFS1	
3	1	1	1	1	1	1	1/2	CCFS1	CCFS2
3	1	2	1	1	1	1	3/4	CCFS1	CCFS2
3	1	3	2	2	2	2	1	CCFS1	CCFS1
3	2	0	1	1	1	1	1	CCFS1	CCFS1
3	2	3	2	2	2	1	1	CCFS1	CCFS1

28 R1: NSS support shall be rounded down to the nearest integer.

29 R2: The maximum NSS support shall be 8.

30 NOTE 1—Max VHT NSS as indicated by the value of the Rx NSS field. The Rx NSS field indicates the same Max HE NSS and Max VHT NSS. Max VHT NSS is at the bandwidth indicated in the VHT Capabilities element. For all allowed MCS values, the Max VHT NSS values are same, but the supported NSS can be different.

31 NOTE 2—1/2 \times or 3/4 \times Max VHT NSS support might end up being 0, indicating no support.

32 NOTE 3—Any other combination than the ones listed in this table is reserved.

33 NOTE 4—CCFS1 refers to the value of the Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 field of the most recently transmitted VHT Operation element (if any) or HE Operation element.

34 NOTE 5—CCFS2 refers to the value of the Channel Center Frequency Segment 2 field of the most recently transmitted HT Operation element.

35 NOTE 6—CCFS1 is nonzero when the current BSS bandwidth is 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz and the NSS support is at least Max VHT NSS. CCFS2 is zero in this case.

36 NOTE 7—CCFS2 is nonzero when the current BSS bandwidth is 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz and the NSS support is less than Max VHT NSS. CCFS1 is zero in this case.

37 NOTE 8—at most one of CCFS1 and CCFS2 is nonzero.

38 NOTE 9—A supported multiple of Max VHT NSS applies to both transmit and receive. A supported multiple of Max HE NSS applies to receive.

39 NOTE 10—Some combinations of Supported Channel Width Set and Extended NSS BW support might not occur in practice.

40 The OMI initiator shall indicate a change in its TOM parameters by including the OM Control subfield in a QoS Data, QoS Null or Class 3 Management frame that solicits an immediate acknowledgment frame and is addressed to the OMI responder as defined in 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication).

41 A non-AP STA OMI initiator that sends an OM Control subfield with UL MU Disable subfield equal to 0, supports transmitting an HE TB PPDU with an RU allocation that is within the operating channel width indicated in the Channel Width subfield and with a number of space-time streams, N_{STS} , that is up to the value

1 indicated by the Tx NSTS subfield of the OM Control subfield as defined in 27.8.3 (Transmit operating
 2 mode (TOM) indication).

4 NOTE 1—To avoid possible frame loss, an OMI initiator can continue with its current operating channel width and
 5 active receive chains and active transmit chains in HE TB PPDUs and not suspend HE TB PPDUs or Data frames in HE
 6 TB PPDUs until it infers that the OMI responder has processed an OM Control subfield from the OMI initiator indicating
 7 any of the following changes:

- 8 — Reduced operating channel width
- 9 — Reduction in the number of active receive chains
- 10 — Reduction in the number of active transmit chains in HE TB PPDUs
- 11 — Suspension of UL MU operation

15 The OMI initiator might make this inference from any combination of the following:

- 17 — By receiving a frame addressed to itself from the second HE STA in a PPDU with a bandwidth and NSS that are
 less than or equal to the channel width and NSS, respectively, indicated in the OM Control subfield
- 18 — Based on the passage of time in some implementation dependent way, which is outside the scope of this Stan-
 dard

22 NOTE 2—It might take a long time for a STA to change its operating mode following the transmission of the OM Con-
 23 trol subfield and during that time the STA might not be able to receive frames resulting in frame loss. If a non-AP STA
 24 cannot tolerate frame loss during that period it can set the Power Management subfield of the Frame Control field of the
 25 frame that carries the OM Control subfield to 1 to indicate that the STA has entered power save. When the non-AP STA
 26 has completed its operating mode change, it can send another frame (such as a QoS Null) with the Frame Control Power
 27 Management subfield set to 0 to indicate that the STA has exited power save.

30 **26.9.2 Receive operating mode (ROM) indication**

32 ROM indication allows the OMI initiator to adapt the maximum operating channel width and/or the maxi-
 33 mum number of spatial streams, N_{SS} , it can receive from the OMI responder.

36 An OMI initiator that sends a frame that includes an OM Control subfield should change its OMI parame-
 37 ters, Rx NSS and Channel Width, as follows:

- 39 — When the OMI initiator changes a ROM parameter from higher to lower, it should make the change
 for that parameter only after the TXOP in which it received the immediate acknowledgment from
 the OMI responder.
- 41 — When the OMI initiator changes a ROM parameter from lower to higher, it should make the change
 for that parameter only after the TXOP in which it expects to receive acknowledgment from the
 OMI responder.

48 An OMI initiator that is an HE AP should be capable of receiving within an operating channel width and
 49 with N_{SS} that are up to the values of the most recently transmitted Channel Width subfield and Rx NSS sub-
 50 field that the OMI initiator has successfully indicated in the OM Control subfield or in the Operating Mode
 51 field sent to any associated STA.

54 NOTE—In the event of transmission failure of the frame containing the OM Control subfield, the OMI initiator attempts
 55 the recovery procedure defined in 10.22.2.7 (Multiple frame transmission in an EDCA TXOP).

57 The OMI responder shall update the operating channel width and the maximum N_{SS} values as obtained from
 58 the Channel Width and Rx NSS subfields, respectively, of the most recently received OM Control subfield
 59 sent by the OMI initiator to send SU PPDUs and to assign an RU allocation in sent MU PPDUs, subject to
 60 restrictions defined in 27.3.1.2 (OFDMA), addressed to the OMI initiator in subsequent TXOPs. The OMI
 61 responder shall update the maximum N_{SS} value to a value determined from the Rx NSS subfield and
 62 Table 26-9 (Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT NSS at an HE STA transmitting the OM Control
 63 subfield) if the Channel Width subfield of the OM Control field indicates 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz.

1 After transmitting the acknowledgment for the frame containing the OM Control subfield, the OMI
 2 responder may transmit subsequent SU PPDUs or MU PPDUs that are addressed to the OMI initiator.
 3

4 NOTE—The acknowledgment is transmitted a SIFS after the frame. A subsequent PPDU is a PPDU that is intended for
 5 the OMI initiator and need not be the PPDU immediately following the acknowledgment.
 6

7 An OMI initiator that is a non-AP STA may set the DL MU-MIMO Resound Recommendation subfield to 1
 8 in the OM Control field in frames addressed to an OMI responder that is an AP to indicate that the non-AP
 9 STA suggests that the AP resound the channel with the non-AP STA. An OMI initiator that is a non-AP
 10 STA and that has no recommendation on the AP's DL MU-MIMO operation shall set DL MU-MIMO
 11 Resound Recommendation subfield to 0.
 12

13 An OMI responder that receives a frame that carries an OM Control field with the DL MU-MIMO Resound
 14 Recommendation field equal to 1 from an OMI initiator may resound the channel or increase the frequency
 15 of the channel sounding with the OMI initiator if the OMI responder sends a DL MU-MIMO PPDU
 16 addressed to the OMI initiator.
 17

26.9.3 Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication

23 TOM indication allows the OMI initiator to suspend and resume responding to variants of the Trigger frame
 24 and TRS Control subfields per the UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable subfields settings as indicated
 25 in Table 9-24a (UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable subfields encoding), or to adapt the maximum
 26 operating channel width and/or the maximum number of space-time streams, N_{STS} , that it can transmit in
 27 response to a triggering frame sent by the OMI responder
 28

29 NOTE—TOM indication does not relate to transmissions in PPDUs other than HE TB PPDUs. An AP does not perform
 30 TOM indication as an OMI initiator.
 31

32 An OMI initiator that is a non-AP STA may indicate changes in its transmit parameters by sending a frame
 33 that contains the OM Control subfield to the OMI responder. The OMI initiator shall set:

- 36 — The UL MU Disable subfield to 1 to indicate suspension to response to a triggering frame (see 26.5.2
 37 (UL MU operation).
 - 38 • An AP that is an OMI initiator shall set the UL MU Disable subfield to 0.
- 40 — The Tx NSTS subfield to the maximum N_{STS} that the STA will use for an HE TB PPDU sent in
 41 response to a Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield.
- 43 — The Channel Width subfield to the maximum operating channel width that the STA will use for an
 44 HE TB PPDU sent in response to a Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield.

46 If a non-AP HE STA has received the OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support field in the HE Capabilities
 47 element set to 1, then the HE non-AP STA, acting as an OMI initiator, may set the UL MU Disable
 48 subfield to 0 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield to 1 to indicate that only UL MU Data frame transmis-
 49 sion is suspended but UL MU control response frame transmissions in response to a Basic Trigger frame is
 50 not suspended (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)) Responses to other Trigger frame variants are not suspended.
 51 management frame transmissions are not suspended.
 52

54 An OMI initiator shall set the UL MU Disable subfield to 0 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield to 0 to
 55 indicate resumption or continuation of participation in all triggered UL MU operations.
 56

58 If an HE AP has set the OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support field in the HE Capabilities element
 59 it transmits to 0, an associated STA shall not set the UL MU Data Disable subfield in the OM Control field
 60 to 1.
 61

63 An OMI initiator that sent a frame including the OM Control subfield should change its TOM parameters,
 64 Tx NSTS, UL MU Disable, UL MU Data Disable and Channel Width, as follows:
 65

- If the OMI initiator changes a TOM parameter from higher to lower, it should make the change for that parameter only after the TXOP in which it received the immediate acknowledgment from the OMI responder.
- If the OMI initiator changes a TOM parameter from lower to higher, it should make the change for that parameter only after the TXOP in which it expects to receive acknowledgment from the OMI responder.

The TOM parameters UL MU Disable and UL MU Data Disable changes from higher to lower if its value changes from 0 to 1. The change of UL MU Disable from 1 to 0 and UL MU Data Disable from 0 to 1 is a change from lower to higher.

An OMI responder that receives a frame containing an OM Control subfield from an OMI initiator performs the following operations.

An AP OMI responder shall not send any Trigger frames or frames carrying a TRS Control subfield to a non-AP STA OMI initiator for subsequent TXOPs (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)) if the UL MU Disable subfield is 1 in the most recently received OM Control subfield sent by the STA.

NOTE—A device might have multiple radios that can create difficult in-device coexistence challenges. The device might set UL MU Disable subfield to 1 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield to 0 if it has trouble responding to a triggering frame because the timing or high transmit power would cause interference with another radio in the device.

An OMI responder shall consider the OMI initiator as participating in UL MU operation for subsequent TXOPs if the UL MU Disable subfield is 0 in the most recently received OM Control subfield with the following restrictions:

- The maximum N_{STS} that the OMI initiator can transmit in an HE TB PPDU is indicated in the Tx NSTS subfield of the OM Control subfield
- The maximum operating channel width over which the OMI initiator can transmit in an HE TB PPDU is indicated in the Channel Width subfield of the OM Control subfield

An OMI responder that has transmitted the OM Control UL MU Data Disable RX Support subfield set to 1 shall regard an OMI initiator as capable of participating in UL MU operation only for the purpose of transmission of acknowledgments if the UL MU Disable subfield is equal to 0 and the UL MU Data Disable subfield is equal to 1 in the most recently received OM Control subfield from that OMI initiator.

The OMI responder shall indicate a number of spatial streams, N_{SS} , in the User Info field of a Trigger frame, which contains the AID of the OMI initiator, that is less than or equal to the N_{STS} that is calculated from the Tx NSTS subfield of the OM Control subfield received from the OMI initiator.

The OMI responder shall indicate an RU allocation in the RU Allocation subfield of the User Info field of a Trigger frame or TRS Control subfield addressed to the OMI initiator, that is within the operating channel width specified in the Channel Width subfield of the OM Control subfield received from the OMI initiator and subject to the restrictions defined in 27.3.1.2 (OFDMA).

26.10 Spatial reuse operation

26.10.1 General

The objective of HE spatial reuse operation is to allow the medium to be reused more often between OBSSs in dense deployment scenarios by the early identification of signals from overlapping basic service sets (OBSSs) and interference management.

There are two independent spatial reuse modes: OBSS PD-based spatial reuse and SRP-based spatial reuse.

1 An HE AP participating in spatial reuse may request an associated non-AP HE STA to gather information
 2 regarding the neighborhood by sending a Beacon request (see 9.4.2.17 (Beacon request)) by following the
 3 procedure described in 11.11 (Radio measurement procedures). An HE AP shall not set a measurement
 4 mode in a Beacon request to an associated STA to a mode for which the STA has not explicitly indicated
 5 support via the RM Enabled Capabilities element (see 9.4.2.45 (RM Enabled Capabilities element)). An HE
 6 AP that sends a Beacon request for this purpose:
 7

- 8 — May request that the non-AP HE STA gather information of BSSs matching a particular BSSID and/
 or SSID
- 9 — May request that the non-AP HE STA generate a report that is only for the channel on which the
 requesting AP is operating or to which the requesting AP is considering switching
- 10 — Shall request that the non-AP HE STA include the HE Operation element of neighboring HE APs in
 order to help determine the BSS color information of the neighboring APs

11 A non-AP HE STA that performs spatial reuse operation shall have dot11RadioMeasurementActivated set
 12 to true and shall respond to a Beacon request from its associated AP with a Beacon report as described in
 13 11.11 (Radio measurement procedures).

14 Class B device as defined in 27.3.14.3 (Pre-correction accuracy requirements) shall not operate with the pro-
 15 cedures defined in this subclause.

26.10.2 OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation

26.10.2.1 General

OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation comprises two types of operation. The first type is defined in
 26.10.2.2 (General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level), and allows a STA, under specific conditions,
 to ignore an inter-BSS PPDU using a non-SRG OBSS PD level. The second type is defined in 26.10.2.3
 (General operation with SRG OBSS PD level) and allows a STA, under specific conditions, to ignore inter-
 BSS PPDUs that are identified as being SRG PPDUs, using an SRG OBSS PD level. In addition to these dif-
 ferences between the two types, Non-SRG OBSS PD Min offset is fixed and defined in the specification
 while the SRG OBSS PD Min offset can be defined by the AP. A STA may operate using one of the two
 types, neither type, or both types simultaneously.

26.10.2.2 General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level

If the PHY of a STA issues a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY) followed by a PHY-RXSTART.indication due
 to a PPDU reception then the STA's MAC sublayer may a) issue a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive
 before the end of the PPDU and not update its basic NAV timer based on the PPDU or may b) not update its
 basic NAV timer based on the PPDU if all the following conditions are met:

- The STA has not set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to the value
 SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED in any HE PPDU it has transmitted in the cur-
 rent beacon period and in the previous beacon period.
- The most recently received Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP had the Non-
 SRG OBSS PD SR Disallowed subfield equal to 0 or the non-AP STA has not received a Spatial
 Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP or the STA is an AP and its most recently trans-
 mitted Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element had the Non-SRG OBSS PD SR Disallowed subfield
 equal to 0 or the STA is an AP and has not transmitted a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element.
- The received PPDU is an inter-BSS PPDU (see 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classifica-
 tion)) and the received PPDU is not a non-HT PPDU carrying a response frame (Ack, BlockAck or
 CTS frame), or the received PPDU contains a CTS and a PHY-CCA.indication transition from
 BUSY to IDLE occurred within the PIFS time immediately preceding the received CTS and that

- transition corresponded to the end of an inter-BSS PPDU that contained an RTS that was ignored following this procedure.
- The STA is operating with an SRG OBSS PD level as described in 26.10.2.3 (General operation with SRG OBSS PD level) and the received PPDU is not an SRG PPDU, or the STA is not operating with an SRG OBSS PD level.
 - The SPATIAL_REUSE subfield in the HE-SIG-A (if present) of the received PPDU is not set to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED.
 - The received signal strength level, which is measured from the L-STF or L-LTF fields of the PPDU and which is used to determine PHY-CCA.indication, is below the non-SRG OBSS PD level. The non-SRG OBSS PD level is defined in 26.10.2.4 (Adjustment of OBSS PD and transmit power). If the STA has dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true, it also follows the rules defined in 26.10.4 (Interaction of OBSS PD and SRP-based spatial reuse) to determine non-SRG OBSS PD level.
 - The PPDU is not one of the following:
 - A non-HE PPDU that carries a frame where the RA field is equal to the STA MAC address
 - A non-HE PPDU that carries a Public Action frame
 - A non-HE PPDU that carries a VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame or Fine Timing Measurement frame
 - A non-HE NDP

NOTE—A STA cannot perform SR over an HE sounding NDP or HE TB feedback NDP (see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE)).

If the inter-BSS frame is carried in an HE ER SU PPDU (where power of the L-STF/L-LTF symbols is boosted 3 dB), the received signal strength, which is measured from the L-STF or L-LTF fields of the PPDU and which is used to determine PHY-CCA.indication, shall be decreased by 3 dB to compensate for the power difference.

NOTE—In the case of a received CF-End frame that satisfies the conditions above, either the issuance of a PHY-CCA-RESET.request or the choice to not update the basic NAV timer both result in the NAV not being canceled as would normally occur following the successful reception of a CF-End frame.

The PHY-CCARESET.request primitive shall be issued at the end of the PPDU if the PPDU is an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU PPDU and the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE indicates SR_DELAYED.

NOTE 1—A STA sets the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_DELAYED in a PPDU if it allows OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation, but only after the end of the PPDU.

NOTE 2—An AP can get protection equivalent to SR_DELAYED by transmitting the Trigger frame in a non-HT PPDU or HT PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter AGGREGATION set to 0 instead of in a VHT PPDU.

If the PHY-CCARESET.request primitive is issued before the end of the received PPDU, and a TXOP is initiated within the duration of the received PPDU, then the TXOP and the duration of the transmitted PPDU within that TXOP shall be limited to the duration of the received PPDU if the received PPDU is an HE MU PPDU and the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE indicates SR_RESTRICTED.

NOTE—A STA sets the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_RESTRICTED in a PPDU if it allows OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation, but only before the end of the PPDU.

A STA that ignores a PPDU following the procedure described in this subclause is deemed to perform non-SRG OBSS PD-based spatial reuse.

26.10.2.3 General operation with SRG OBSS PD level

If the PHY of a STA issues a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY) followed by a PHY-RXSTART.indication due to a PPDU reception then the STA's MAC sublayer may a) issue a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive

1 before the end of the PPDU and not update its basic NAV timer based on the PPDU or may b) not update its
 2 basic NAV timer based on the PPDU if all the following conditions are met:

- 4 — The received PPDU is an SRG PPDU (see 26.2.3 (SRG PPDU identification))
- 5 — The received signal strength level, which is measured from the L-STF or L-LTF fields of the PPDU
 6 and which is used to determine PHY-CCA.indication, is below the SRG OBSS PD level. The SRG
 7 OBSS PD level is defined in 26.10.2.4 (Adjustment of OBSS PD and transmit power). If the STA
 8 has dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true, it also follows the rules defined in 26.10.4 (Interaction
 9 of OBSS PD and SRP-based spatial reuse) to determine SRG OBSS PD level.
- 10 — The PPDU is not one of the following:
 - 11 • A non-HE PPDU that carries a frame where the RA field is equal to the STA MAC address
 - 12 • A non-HE PPDU that carries a Public Action frame
 - 13 • A non-HE PPDU that carries a VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame or Fine Timing Measure-
 14 ment frame
 - 15 • A non-HE NDP

20 NOTE—A STA cannot perform SR over an HE sounding NDP or HE TB feedback NDP (see 26.11.6 (SPA-
 21 TIAL_REUSE)).

24 If the inter-BSS frame is carried in an HE ER SU PPDU (where power of the L-STF/L-LTF symbols is
 25 boosted 3 dB), the received signal strength, which is measured from the L-STF or L-LTF fields of the PPDU
 26 and which is used to determine PHY-CCA.indication, shall be decreased by 3 dB to compensate for the
 27 power difference when compared to the OBSS PD level.

29 NOTE—In the case of a received CF-End frame that satisfies the conditions above, either the issuance of a PHY-CCA-
 30 RESET.request or the choice to not update the basic NAV timer both result in the NAV not being canceled as would normally occur following the successful reception of a CF-End frame.

34 The PHY-CCARESET.request primitive shall be issued at the end of the PPDU if the PPDU is an HE SU
 35 PPDU or an HE ER SU PPDU and the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE indicates SR_DELAYED.

38 NOTE—An AP can get protection equivalent to SR_DELAYED by transmitting the Trigger frame in a non-HT PPDU
 39 or HT PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter AGGREGATION set to 0 instead of in a VHT PPDU.

42 If the PHY-CCARESET.request primitive is issued before the end of the received PPDU, and a TXOP is initiated
 43 within the duration of the received PPDU, then the TXOP and the duration of the transmitted PPDU
 44 within that TXOP shall be limited to the duration of the received PPDU if the received PPDU is an HE MU
 45 PPDU and the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE indicates SR_RESTRICTED.

47 NOTE—The restriction, in addition to the TXOP limit, of the PPDU duration within the TXOP is included in the above
 48 paragraph related to SR_RESTRICTED as there are conditions where the TXOP limit can be exceeded (see 10.23.2.9
 49 (TXOP limits)).

52 An AP that sends a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element with the SRG Information Present subfield in the
 53 SR Control field set to 1 shall set the SRG BSS Color Bitmap and SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap fields as follows:

- 56 — If the transmitting AP is in the same ESS as another AP (i.e., with the same SSID and connected by a
 57 DS), or is controlled by the same external management entity as another AP (irrespective of SSID),
 58 then the transmitting AP may set the SRG BSS Color Bitmap and/or SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap
 59 fields that correspond to that other AP to 1
- 60 — Else, the AP shall set the bits in the SRG BSS Color Bitmap and/or SRG Partial BSSID Bitmap to 0.

63 If an HE AP determines values for dot11SRGAPBSSColorBitmap and dot11SRGAPBSSIDBitmap (i.e., the
 64 SRG for the AP's own transmissions), then the values shall be determined according to the above rules.

26.10.2.4 Adjustment of OBSS PD and transmit power

If using OBSS PD-based spatial reuse, an HE STA shall maintain an OBSS PD level and may adjust this OBSS PD level in conjunction with its transmit power and this adjustment shall be made in accordance with Equation (26-5).

$$\begin{aligned} OBSS_PD_{level} \leq & \max(OBSS_PD_{min}, \\ & \min(OBSS_PD_{max}, OBSS_PD_{min} + (TX_PWR_{ref} - TX_PWR))) \end{aligned} \quad (26-5)$$

The adjustment rule is illustrated in Figure 26-11 (Illustration of the adjustment rules for OBSS PD and TX_PWR).

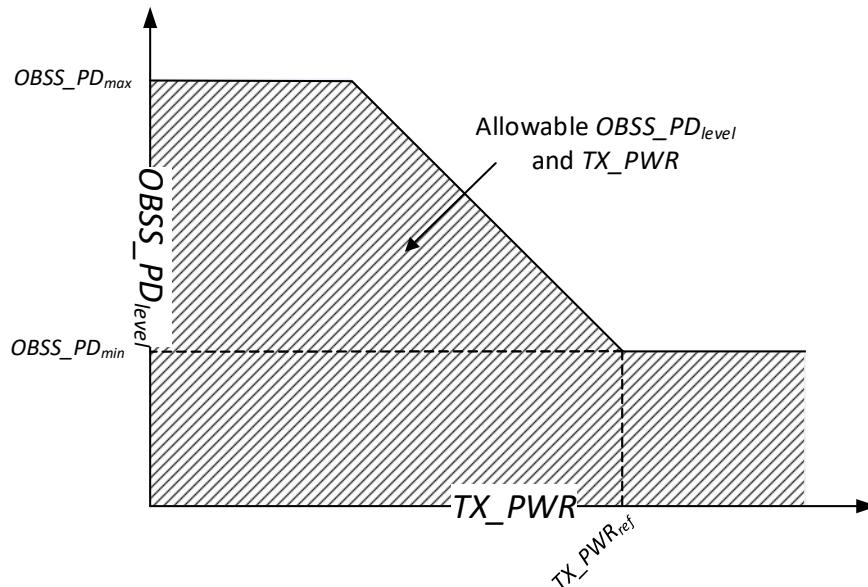


Figure 26-11—Illustration of the adjustment rules for OBSS PD and TX_PWR

The value of the $OBSS_PD_{level}$ is applicable to the start of a 20 MHz PPDU received on the primary 20 MHz channel. If the bandwidth of the received PPDU differs from 20 MHz, then the value of the $OBSS_PD_{level}$ is increased by $10 \log(\text{bandwidth}/20 \text{ MHz})$, using the bandwidth in MHz indicated by the value of RXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH or CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT if present.

$TX_PWR_{ref} = 21 \text{ dBm}$ for non-AP STAs.

$TX_PWR_{ref} = 21 \text{ dBm}$ for an AP with the Max HE-MCS For 3 SS subfield in the Tx HE-MCS Map $\leq 80 \text{ MHz}$ subfield in the Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set field of its HE Capabilities element field set to 3.

$TX_PWR_{ref} = 25 \text{ dBm}$ for an AP with the Max HE-MCS For 3 SS subfield in the Tx HE-MCS Map $\leq 80 \text{ MHz}$ subfield in the Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set field of its HE Capabilities element field set to a value other than 3.

TX_PWR is the STA transmission power in dBm at the output of the antenna connector and is set following the rules in 11.8.6 (Transmit power selection) and, for transmission of HE TB PPDU, also following the rules in 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction).

1 NOTE—The TX_PWR_{ref} is 4 dB higher for APs with more than 2 spatial streams as those APs typically have higher
 2 transmit power than other devices, and as the OBSS PD procedure is based on a relative reduction of power.
 3

4
 5 An AP may define SRG OBSS PD Min Offset and SRG OBSS PD Max Offset values that are used by its
 6 associated STAs to derive an SRG OBSS PD level for determining reception behavior for inter-BSS PPDUs
 7 that are determined to be SRG PPDUs. An AP may define a non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset value that is
 8 used by its associated STAs to derive a non-SRG OBSS PD level for determining reception behavior for
 9 inter-BSS PPDUs that are not determined to be SRG PPDUs. The values of SRG OBSS PD Min Offset,
 10 SRG OBSS PD Max Offset and Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset are transmitted to associated STAs within
 11 the Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element.
 12

13
 14 An AP transmitting a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element shall respect the following constraints:
 15

- 16 — $-82 \leq -82 + \text{SRG OBSS PD Min Offset} \leq -62$
- 17 — $\text{SRG OBSS PD Min Offset} \leq \text{SRG OBSS PD Max Offset}$
- 18 — $-82 + \text{SRG OBSS PD Max Offset} \leq -62$
- 19 — $-82 + \text{Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset} \leq -62$

20
 21 An HE STA shall maintain a non-SRG OBSS PD level, with its value selected by respecting the OBSS PD
 22 level condition in Equation (26-5) but with Non-SRG OBSS PD Min and Non-SRG OBSS PD Max in place
 23 of $OBSS_PD_{min}$ and $OBSS_PD_{max}$, respectively. A non-AP STA shall determine Non-SRG OBSS PD Min
 24 and Non-SRG OBSS PD Max according to Table 26-10 (Non-SRG OBSS PD Min and Non-SRG OBSS PD
 25 Max values for non-AP STAs). An HE AP shall set Non-SRG OBSS PD Min to -82 dBm and Non-SRG
 26 OBSS PD Max to -82 dBm + dot11NonSRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset.

36
 37 **Table 26-10—Non-SRG OBSS PD Min and Non-SRG OBSS PD Max values for non-AP STAs**
 38

39 40 41 42 43 44 45 Non-SRG OBSS PD SR Disallowed field in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	46 47 48 49 Non-SRG Offset Present field in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	50 51 52 53 54 Value of Non-SRG OBSS PD Min (dBm)	55 56 Value of Non-SRG OBSS PD Max (dBm)
57 58 59 Not applicable if the Spatial Reuse Param- eter Set element is not received	60 61 62 63 64 65 Not applicable if the Spatial Reuse Param- eter Set element is not received	66 67 68 69 70 71 -82	72 73 74 75 76 77 -62
78 79 80 81 82 83 0	84 85 86 87 88 89 0	90 91 92 93 94 95 -82	96 97 98 99 100 101 $-82 + \text{Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Offset}$
102 103 104 105 106 107 1	108 109 110 111 112 113 N/A	114 115 116 117 118 119 -82	120 121 122 123 124 125 -82

60
 61 An HE STA shall maintain an SRG OBSS PD level, with its value selected by respecting the OBSS PD level
 62 condition in Equation (26-5) but with SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG OBSS PD Max in place of $OBSS_PD_{min}$
 63 and $OBSS_PD_{max}$, respectively. A non-AP STA shall determine SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG OBSS
 64 PD Max to Table 26-11 (SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG OBSS PD Max values for non-AP STAs). An HE
 65 AP shall set SRG OBSS PD Min to $-82 + \text{dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMinOffset}$ dBm and SRG OBSS PD Max

1 to $-82 + \text{dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset}$ dBm. An HE AP may transmit SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG
 2 OBSS PD Max offset values that are different from the ones that it uses.
 3
 4

5 **Table 26-11—SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG OBSS PD Max values for non-AP STAs**

SRG Information Present field in Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element	Value of SRG OBSS PD Min (dBm)	Value of SRG OBSS PD Max (dBm)
Not applicable if the Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is not received	N/A see NOTE	N/A see NOTE
0	N/A see NOTE	N/A see NOTE
1	$-82 + \text{SRG OBSS PD Min Offset}$	$-82 + \text{SRG OBSS PD Max Offset}$
NOTE—If SRG Information is not present, a STA cannot determine a PPDU to be SRG and so will not use SRG OBSS PD Min or SRG OBSS PD Max values.		

30 The Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is optionally present in Beacon frames, Probe Response frames
 31 and (Re)Association Response frames.
 32
 33

34 **26.10.2.5 OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period**

36 If a STA ignores an inter-BSS PPDU following the procedure in 26.10.2.3 (General operation with SRG
 37 OBSS PD level), using a chosen SRG OBSS PD level, or following the procedure in 26.10.2.2 (General
 38 operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level) using a chosen non-SRG OBSS PD level, then the STA shall start
 39 an OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period. This OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period
 40 shall be terminated at the end of the TXOP that the STA gains once its backoff reaches zero.
 41
 42

43 If a STA starts an OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period with a chosen non-SRG OBSS PD level,
 44 the STA's transmit power as measured at the output of the antenna connector shall be equal or lower than the
 45 $TX_{PWR_{max}}$, calculated with this chosen non-SRG OBSS PD level with Equation (26-6), with the appropriate
 46 non-SRG parameters according to Table 26-10 (Non-SRG OBSS PD Min and Non-SRG OBSS PD Max
 47 values for non-AP STAs), for the transmissions of any PPDU that is not carrying a frame that is allowed to
 48 be sent without regard to the busy/idle state of the medium until the end of the OBSS PD SR transmit power
 49 restriction period.
 50
 51

52 If a STA starts an OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period with a chosen SRG OBSS PD level, the
 53 STA's transmit power as measured at the output of the antenna connector shall be equal or lower than the
 54 $TX_{PWR_{max}}$, calculated with this chosen SRG OBSS PD level with Equation (26-6), with the appropriate
 55 SRG parameters according to Table 26-11 (SRG OBSS PD Min and SRG OBSS PD Max values for non-AP
 56 STAs), for the transmissions of any PPDU that is not carrying a response frame that is allowed to be sent
 57 without regard to the busy/idle state of the medium until the end of the OBSS PD SR transmit power restric-
 58 tion period.
 59
 60

61 NOTE—Examples of frames that are transmitted without regard to the busy/idle state of the medium include but are not
 62 limited to a frame contained in an HE TB PPDU that is a response to a Trigger frame with the CS Required subfield set
 63 to 0 and an Ack or BlockAck frame sent as an immediate response.
 64
 65

1 A STA may have multiple ongoing OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction periods that overlap in time.
 2

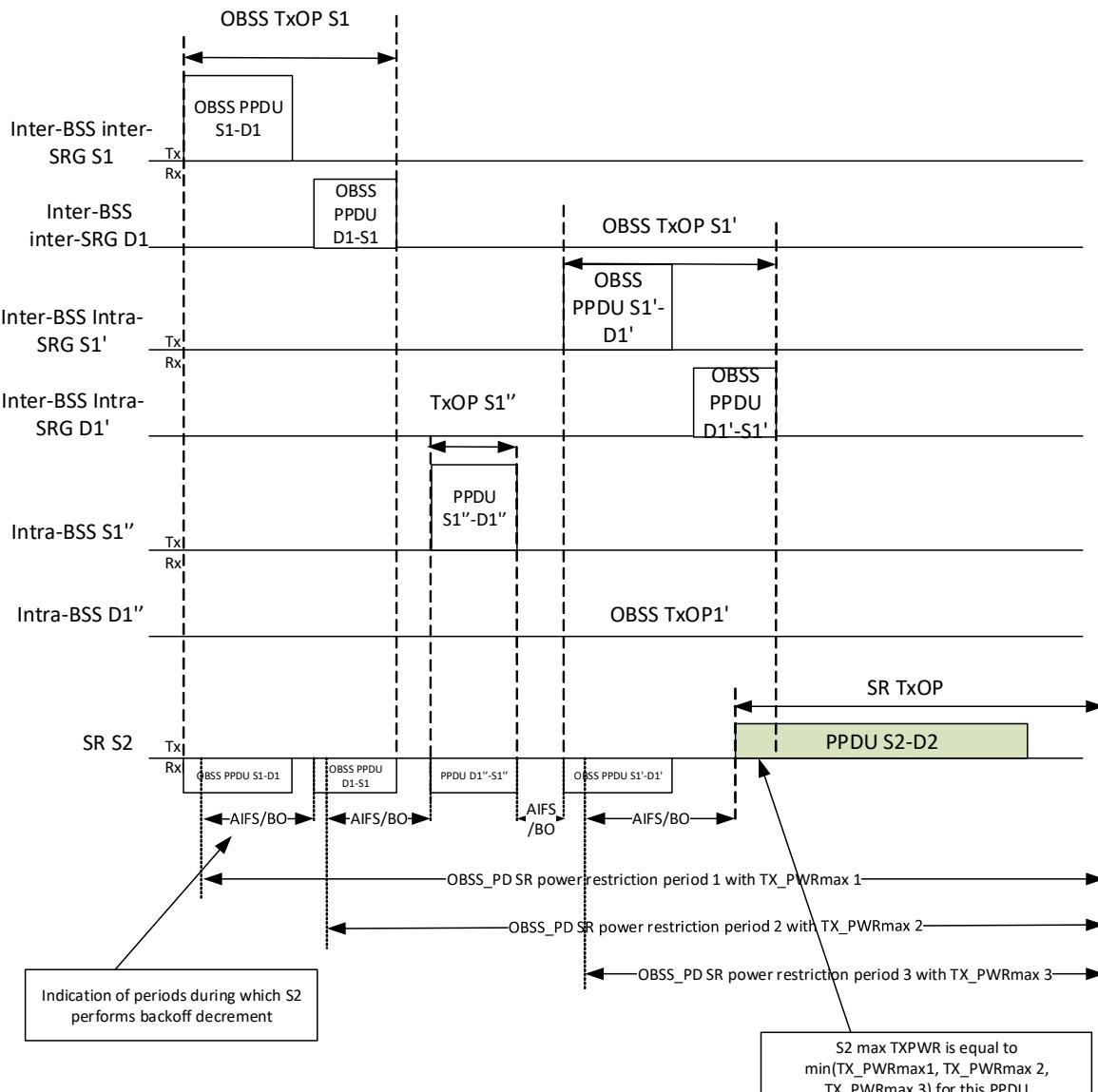
3 NOTE 1—The STA's transmit power is always equal or lower than the minimum TX_PWR_{max} among all TX_PWR_{max}
 4 from ongoing OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction periods.

$$TX_PWR_{max} = \begin{cases} \text{unconstrained, if } OBSS_PD_{level} \leq OBSS_PD_{min} \\ TXPWR_{ref} - (OBSS_PD_{level} - OBSS_PD_{min}), \text{ if } OBSS_PD_{max} \geq OBSS_PD_{level} > OBSS_PD_{min} \end{cases} \quad (26-6)$$

10 NOTE 2—Equation (26-6) is equivalent to the condition defined in Equation (26-5). The STA can derive $OBSS_PD_{level}$
 11 from its transmit power or can derive TX_PWR_{max} from $OBSS_PD_{level}$.

13 NOTE 3—Anytime, even if TX_PWR_{max} is unconstrained, the STA has to respect the transmit power restrictions
 14 defined in 11.8.6 (Transmit power selection).

1 An example of OBSS PD SR operation is shown in Figure 26-12 (Example of OBSS PD SR operation).



50 **Figure 26-12—Example of OBSS PD SR operation**

51 In this example:

- 52 — STA SR S2 receives the PPDU from S1 and, if it classifies it as inter-BSS PPDU, ignores it using
53 OBSS PD-based spatial reuse with non-SRG OBSS PD, starts the OBSS PD SR transmit power
54 restriction period 1 with TX_PWRmax 1 and decrements its backoff counter until the reception of
55 the PPDU from D1.
- 56 — If it classifies the PPDU from D1 as inter-BSS PPDU, it ignores it if it chooses to do so using OBSS
57 PD-based spatial reuse with non-SRG OBSS PD, starts the OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction
58 period 2 with TX_PWRmax 2 and decrements its backoff counter until the reception of the PPDU
59 from S1".

- It defers during the TxOP S1" set by the intra-BSS PPDU from S1" that belongs to its own BSS. At the end of the TxOP S1", it resumes its backoff decrement until the reception of the PPDU from S1'.
- If it classifies the PPDU from S1' as SRG PPDU, it ignores it if it chooses to do so using OBSS PD-based spatial reuse with SRG OBSS PD, starts the OBSS PD SR transmit power restriction period 3 with TX_PWRmax 3 and decrements its backoff counter until it reaches zero, as it does not receive the PPDU from D1'.
- It starts transmitting a PPDU with a TX_PWRmax equal to min(TX_PWRmax 1, TX_PWRmax 2, TX_PWRmax 3) and respect this transmit power restriction until the end of the SR TXOP.

26.10.2.6 OBSS PD-based spatial reuse backoff procedure

If an HE STA ignores an inter-BSS PPDU following the procedure in 26.10.2.2 (General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level), the HE STA may resume EDCAF procedures after the PHY-CCARE-SET.request primitive is sent, provided that the medium condition is not otherwise indicated as BUSY.

26.10.3 SRP-based spatial reuse operation

26.10.3.1 General

An HE STA supporting SRP-based SRPT PPDU transmission indicates this by setting the SRP-based SR Support subfield to 1 in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element (see Table 9-321b (Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field)). An HE-STA supporting SRP-based SRPT PPDU reception indicates this by setting the SRP Responder subfield to 1 in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element (see Table 9-321a (Subfields of the HE MAC Capabilities Information field)).

An HE STA shall set the SRP-based SR Support field to 1 in the HE Capabilities element it transmits if it supports transmitting an SRPT PPDU under the conditions specified in this subclause; otherwise the STA shall set the SRP-based SR Support field to 0.

STAs that receive a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from their associated AP that has a value of 1 in the SRP Disallowed subfield shall not perform SRP-based SR transmissions.

An SRP opportunity is identified from the value of the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of an HE TB PPDU and/or the contents of a Trigger frame. An HE STA may initiate an SR transmission during an SRP opportunity for the duration of an ongoing PPDU when certain conditions, designed to avoid interfering with the reception of the ongoing PPDU at the recipient, are met. If the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of the ongoing PPDU has the value SRP_DISALLOW or SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED, no SRP-based SR transmission is allowed for the duration of that PPDU.

An AP sending a Trigger frame may set the Spatial Reuse *n* field(s) in the UL Spatial Reuse subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame to SRP_DISALLOW or, if permitted by the rules in 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE), to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED to disallow OBSS STAs from performing SRP-based SR transmission during the ensuing uplink PPDU duration. An AP sending a Trigger frame shall not set the SR field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame to SR_DELAYED or SR_RESTRICTED.

An HE STA shall set the SR Responder subfield of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 if dot11SR-ResponderOptionImplemented is true; otherwise the HE STA shall set the SR Responder subfield to 0.

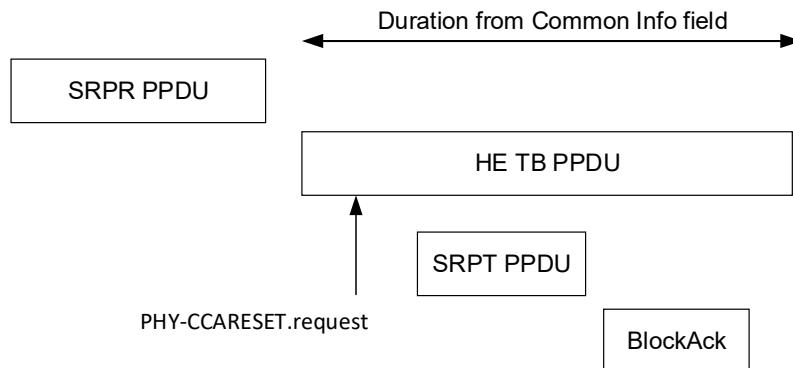
1 **26.10.3.2 SRP-based spatial reuse initiation**

2 An HE STA identifies an SRP opportunity if the following two conditions are met:

- 3 1) The STA receives a PHY-RXSTART.indication corresponding to the reception of a SRPR PPDU
4 that is identified as an inter-BSS PPDU (see 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification))
5
6 2) An SRPT PPDU is queued for transmission and the intended transmit power of the SRPT PPDU,
7 after normalization to 20 MHz bandwidth (i.e., the transmit power in dBm minus the value, in dB of
8 the intended transmit bandwidth divided by 20 MHz), is below the value of SRP minus RPL, where
9 SRP is the value obtained from Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU)
10 based on at least one of:
11 a) The value of the UL Spatial Reuse field in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame of the
12 SRPR PPDU
13 b) The value of the RXVECTOR parameter Spatial Reuse of the HE TB PPDU that follows the
14 SRPR PPDU

15
16
17
18
19
20 The value of RPL is equal to the RSSI at the antenna connector(s), over the SRPR PPDU bandwidth, during
21 the non-HE portion of the HE PPDU preamble of the triggering PPDU, averaged over all antennas used to
22 receive the PPDU.

23
24
25 An HE STA that identifies an SRP opportunity may choose not to perform NAV update operations normally
26 executed based on the receipt of the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION and the Trigger frame
27 Duration field. See Figure 26-13 (SRPR PPDU spatial reuse). A STA that identifies an SRP opportunity
28 may issue a PHY-CCARESET.request to ignore the associated HE TB PPDUs that are triggered by the
29 Trigger frame of the SRPR PPDU and that occurs within aSIFSTime + aRxPHYStartDelay + 2 × aSlotTime
30 of the end of the last symbol on the air of the PPDU that contained the Trigger frame, provided that the value
31 of the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of the HE TB PPDU matches the BSS color of the SRPR
32 PPDU. A STA that identifies an SRP opportunity shall not transmit an SRPT PPDU that terminates beyond
33 the PPDU duration of the HE TB PPDU that is triggered by the Trigger frame of the SRPR PPDU.
34
35



54 **Figure 26-13—SRPR PPDU spatial reuse**

55
56 **26.10.3.3 SRP-based spatial reuse backoff procedure**

57
58
59 If an HE STA identifies an SRP opportunity as allowed in 26.10.3.2 (SRP-based spatial reuse initiation), the
60 HE STA may continue the countdown of an existing backoff procedure provided that the medium condition
61 is not otherwise indicated as BUSY. If the HE STA receives another PPDU during the backoff procedure, it
62 shall suspend its back-off and subsequently, if an SRP opportunity is identified based on the identification of
63 the new PPDU as an SRPR PPDU, then the STA may resume its backoff procedure. The TXOP that the HE
64 STA gains once its backoff reaches zero shall not extend beyond the SRP opportunity endpoint that is the
65

1 earliest ending of all of the durations of all of the SRPR PPDUs that were used to confirm the SRP opportunity
 2 and all of the durations indicated in the Common Info fields of Trigger frames within all SRPR PPDUs
 3 that were used to confirm the SRP opportunity.
 4

5 If the HE STA is employing $OBSS_PD_{level}$ as a threshold for determination of an IDLE medium condition
 6 prior to the reception of an SRPR PPDU per the rules specified in 26.10.2 (OBSS PD-based spatial reuse
 7 operation), the intended transmit power of the next SRPT PPDU in the transmission queue as measured at
 8 the output of the antenna connector shall be equal to or lower than the TX_PWR_{max} , calculated with this spe-
 9 cific $OBSS_PD_{level}$ using Equation (26-6).
 10

11 After a STA has identified the start of an SRP opportunity, and until the SRP opportunity endpoint is
 12 reached, the transmission of any PPDU by the STA shall be limited by the transmit power restrictions iden-
 13 tified in 26.10.3 (SRP-based spatial reuse operation).
 14

15 **26.10.3.4 UL Spatial Reuse subfield of Trigger frame**

16 An AP with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that transmits a Trigger frame may determine the
 17 value of the UL Spatial Reuse subfield of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame in each 20 MHz band-
 18 width for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz PPDU or in each 40 MHz bandwidth for 80+80 or 160 MHz PPDU by
 19 selecting the row in Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU) that has a numerical
 20 value in the column labeled "Meaning" that is the highest value that is equal to or below the value of the
 21 computed MAC parameter SRP_INPUT as follows:
 22

$$23 \quad SRP_INPUT = TX_PWR_{AP} + \text{Acceptable Receiver Interference Level}_{AP} \quad (26-7)$$

24 where
 25

26 TX_PWR_{AP} is the total power at the antenna connector(s), in dBm per 20 MHz bandwidth, over all anten-
 27 nas used to transmit the SRPR PPDU containing the Trigger frame for each 20 MHz transmit
 28 bandwidth for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, and 80 MHz PPDU or in each of the 40 MHz transmit band-
 29 widths for an 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz PPDU.
 30

31 Acceptable Receiver Interference Level_{AP} is a value in dBm normalized to a 20 MHz bandwidth (i.e.,
 32 minus transmit bandwidth divided by 20 MHz bandwidth in dB) for each 20 MHz transmit
 33 bandwidth for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, and 80 MHz PPDU or in each of the 40 MHz transmit band-
 34 widths for an 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz PPDU and should be set to value of the UL target RSSI
 35 indicated in the Trigger frame minus the minimum SNR value that yields $\leq 10\%$ PER for the
 36 highest HE-MCS of the ensuing uplink HE TB PPDU, minus a safety margin value not to
 37 exceed 5 dB as determined by the AP.
 38

39 An AP with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that transmits a Trigger frame may set the value of
 40 the UL Spatial Reuse subfield value of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame in each 20 MHz band-
 41 width for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz PPDU or in each 40 MHz bandwidth for 80+80 or 160 MHz PPDU to
 42 SRP_DISALLOW.
 43

44 An AP with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to false that transmits a Trigger frame shall set the value
 45 of the UL Spatial Reuse subfield value of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame in each 20 MHz band-
 46 width for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz PPDU or in each 40 MHz bandwidth for 80+80 or 160 MHz PPDU to
 47 SRP_DISALLOW.
 48

49 **26.10.3.5 SRPT PPDU transmission requirements**

50 An HE STA that identifies an SRP opportunity shall not transmit a frame during the SRP opportunity that
 51 elicits a response transmission from a STA from which it has not received an HE Capabilities element with
 52 the SRP Responder subfield equal to 1. An HE STA that identifies an SRP opportunity shall not transmit a
 53

1 frame that does not include a CAS Control subfield with the SRPT PPDU subfield set to 1 and that solicits a
 2 response transmission during that SRP opportunity.
 3

4 **26.10.3.6 SRPT PPDU reception and response transmission requirements**
 5

6 An HE STA that receives a PPDU that contains at least one frame with a CAS Control subfield with an
 7 SRPT PPDU subfield equal to 1 shall not transmit a response PPDU elicited by the received PPDU if all out-
 8 standing SRP and OBSS PD transmit power requirements are not met by the response transmission.
 9

10 **26.10.4 Interaction of OBSS PD and SRP-based spatial reuse**
 11

12 An HE STA with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that receives a PPDU that is identified as an
 13 inter-BSS PPDU with a value other than SRP_DISALLOW or SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PRO-
 14 HIBITED for the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE and fails to identify an SRP opportunity based
 15 on the receipt of the PPDU shall disable OBSS PD SR operation on this PPDU.
 16

17 An HE STA with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that receives a PPDU that is identified as an
 18 inter-BSS PPDU with a value other than SRP_DISALLOW, SR_DELAYED or SRP_AND_NON_S-
 19 RG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED for the RXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE and identifies an SRP
 20 opportunity based on the receipt of the PPDU may disable OBSS PD SR operation on this PPDU.
 21

22 An HE STA with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that receives a PPDU that is identified as an
 23 inter-BSS PPDU with a value other than SRP_DISALLOW or SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PRO-
 24 HIBITED in the Common Info Field SPATIAL_REUSE of a Trigger frame and fails to identify an SRP
 25 opportunity based on the receipt of the PPDU shall disable OBSS PD SR operation on the HE TB PPDU that
 26 is elicited by the Trigger frame.
 27

28 An HE STA with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that receives a PPDU that is identified as an
 29 inter-BSS PPDU with a value other than SRP_DISALLOW in the Common Info Field SPATIAL_REUSE
 30 of a Trigger frame and identifies an SRP opportunity based on the receipt of the PPDU may disable OBSS
 31 PD SR operation on the Data field of the HE TB PPDU that is elicited by the Trigger frame.
 32

33 **26.11 Setting TXVECTOR parameters for an HE PPDU**
 34

35 **26.11.1 STA_ID**
 36

37 Each parameter STA_ID in the TXVECTOR identifies the STA or group of STAs that is the recipient of an
 38 RU in the HE MU PPDU transmitted with the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG set to 0. An individ-
 39 ually addressed RU is an RU addressed to either an associated non-AP STA or a TDLS peer STA and the
 40 parameter STA_ID for that RU is set to the 11 LSBs of the AID of the STA receiving the PSDU contained in
 41 that RU. If an RU is intended for one or more unassociated non-AP STAs, then the parameter STA_ID for
 42 that RU is set to 2045. If an RU is intended for no user, then the parameter STA_ID for that RU is set to
 43 2046. If an RU is intended for an AP (i.e., the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG is 1), then the
 44 parameter STA_ID contains only one element that is set to the 11 LSBs of the AID of the non-AP STA
 45 transmitting the PPDU. If an RU is intended for multiple STAs for MU-MIMO then multiple STAs identi-
 46 fied by STA-IDs in the parameter STA_IDS will use the same resource unit (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)).
 47 If an RU is intended for multiple associated STAs and carries a single A-MPDU then the parameter
 48 STA_IDS set as follows:
 49

- 50 — For an AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to false, if the RU is intended for more than
 51 one associated STA in the BSS that is not a recipient of an individually addressed RU, the parameter
 52 STA_IDS set to 0.
 53
- 54 — For an AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true, if the RU is intended for more than one
 55 associated STA in any of its BSSs that is not a recipient of an individually addressed RU, the param-

1 parameter STA_ID is set to 0 for transmitted BSSID or to the value of the BSSID Index field corresponding
 2 to that BSS (see 9.4.2.73 (Multiple BSSID-Index element)) for a nontransmitted BSSID. The
 3 number of such elements shall not exceed the maximum number of BSSs of the multiple BSSID set.

- 4
- 5 — For an AP with dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented equal to true, if the RU is intended for more than one
 6 associated STA on any of its BSSs, the parameter STA_ID is set to 2047.

7

8 The parameter STA_ID values between 2008 and 2044 are reserved.

9

10 A non-AP STA shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU where the TXVECTOR parameter STA_ID includes
 11 more than one entry in the range 1 to 2007.

12

13 **26.11.2 UPLINK_FLAG**

14

15 An HE STA transmitting an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU sets the TXVECTOR
 16 parameter UPLINK_FLAG as follows:

- 17
- 18 — A STA transmitting an HE PPDU containing frames that are addressed to an AP shall set the
 19 TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG to 1 unless the HE PPDU is an HE ER SU PPDU with the
 20 TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION set to UNSPECIFIED and contains an RTS or CTS
 21 frame in which case the STA may set the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG to 0.
 - 22 — Otherwise, the HE STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG to 0.

23

24 **26.11.3 BEAM_CHANGE**

25

26 An HE STA uses the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE to indicate a change in the spatial mapping
 27 of the pre-HE-STF portion of the PPDU and the first symbol of HE-LTF (see Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and
 28 RXVECTOR parameters)).

29

30 An HE STA that transmits an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU PPDU shall set the TXVECTOR parameter
 31 BEAM_CHANGE to 1 if one or more of the following conditions are met:

- 32
- 33 — The number of spatial streams is greater than 2
 - 34 — The PPDU is the first PPDU in a TXOP
 - 35 — The PPDU carries a Trigger frame

36

37 **26.11.4 BSS_COLOR**

38

39 An HE STA that transmits HE Operation element shall select and advertise a BSS color as described in
 40 26.17.3 (BSS color).

41

42 An HE STA that transmitted an HE Operation element shall set the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR
 43 as follows:

- 44
- 45 — For an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or DL HE MU PPDU, the parameter BSS_COLOR is set to
 46 the value indicated in the BSS Color subfield of the HE Operation element if all the recipient STAs
 47 are members of the HE STA's HE BSS or the PPDU carries at least one triggering frame.
 - 48 — For an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or DL HE MU PPDU, the parameter BSS_COLOR is set to
 49 0 if the HE STA expects that at least one intended recipient STA is not a member of the HE STA's
 50 HE BSS and the PPDU does not carry a triggering frame.

51

52 A non-AP HE STA that transmits an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU to a STA that is not a member of
 53 the transmitting STA's HE BSS shall set the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR to 0.

54

55 The active BSS color is one of the following:

- The value of the BSS Color field in the most recently received HE Operation element if an HE STA receives an HE Operation element from a peer HE STA.
- The value of the New BSS Color field in the most recently received BSS Color Change Announcement element if an HE STA receives a BSS Color Change Announcement element from a peer HE STA and the BSS color change TBTT has passed (see 26.17.3.4 (Selecting and advertising a new BSS color)).

An HE STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or UL HE MU PPDU that is addressed to a peer STA to the active BSS color value, if the HE STA has established any of the following:

- An association with the peer STA
- A TDLS link with the peer STA
- An IBSS membership with the peer STA

NOTE 1—A non-AP HE STA sets the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR for an HE TB PPDU to the active color (see 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation)).

NOTE 2—An HE mesh STA sets the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR for an HE PPDU that it transmits to a peer HE mesh STA to the value in the BSS Color subfield of its transmitted HE Operation element.

An HE STA that receives an HE PPDU with RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR with a value between 1 and 63 follows the spatial reuse rule described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

NOTE—An HE STA that received an HE PPDU with the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR equal to 0 does not follow the spatial reuse rule described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

An HE STA that received an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU with the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR equal to 0 shall not discard the HE PPDU.

While the BSS Color Disabled subfield is 1, an HE STA shall continue to advertise a nonzero value (same as before the color was disabled) in the BSS Color subfield of HE Operation element and in the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of an HE PPDU that it transmits.

NOTE—A non-AP HE STA sets the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of an HE PPDU that it transmits to the value advertised by the AP it intends to communicate with even if the AP has temporarily disabled BSS color.

If the value of TXVECTOR parameter PARTIAL_AID [5:8] for VHT PPDUs transmitted by an HE AP with the TXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID equal to 63 is not consistent with the partial BSS color (i.e., *BCB(0:3)* described in 26.17.4 (AID assignment)) announced by the HE AP, then the HE AP shall set the Partial BSS Color field in the HE Operation element to 0. Otherwise, the HE AP may set the Partial BSS Color subfield in the HE Operation element to 1 (see 26.17.4 (AID assignment)).

26.11.5 TXOP_DURATION

The TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION of an HE PPDU indicates duration information for NAV setting and protection of the TXOP except that the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is set to UNSPECIFIED to indicate no duration information.

NOTE—The value of TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is converted to an indication in the TXOP field of HE-SIG-A as described in Table 27-18 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU), Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU), and Table 27-21 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU). The indication in the TXOP field of HE-SIG-A is converted to the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION as described in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).

A STA that is not a TXOP responder and that transmits an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, or HE MU PPDU may set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to UNSPECIFIED.

1 A STA that transmits an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, or HE MU PPDU that carries a PS-Poll frame
 2 shall set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to UNSPECIFIED.
 3

4 A STA that is a TXOP responder that transmits an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, or HE TB PPDU shall
 5 set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to UNSPECIFIED if the RXVECTOR parameter
 6 TXOP_DURATION of the soliciting PPDU is UNSPECIFIED.
 7

8 An HE AP that has set the BSS Color Disabled field in the HE Operation element to 1 shall set the TXVECTOR
 9 parameter TXOP_DURATION to UNSPECIFIED for an HE PPDU that it transmits to non-AP STAs
 10 associated to it.
 11

12 If the BSS Color Disabled field is 1 in the HE Operation element most recently received from an AP by a
 13 non-AP STA, then the non-AP STA should set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to
 14 UNSPECIFIED for an HE PPDU that is not an HE TB PPDU sent to that AP.
 15

16 A STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to
 17 UNSPECIFIED if any one of the following condition is met:
 18

- The RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION of the soliciting PPDU is not UNSPECIFIED
- The soliciting PPDU is not an HE PPDU

19 A STA that transmits a frame with a Duration field in an HE PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION
 20 not set to UNSPECIFIED shall set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to the
 21 duration information indicated by the Duration field if the value of the Duration field is smaller than 8448.
 22 Otherwise, the STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION to 8448.
 23

24 NOTE—For a TXOP responder, the Duration field in a frame carried in a response PPDU is set based on the Duration
 25 field in a frame carried in the soliciting PPDU as described in 9.2.5.7 (Setting for control response frames) or 9.2.5.8
 26 (Setting for other response frames).
 27

28 If a STA transmits either an HE TB feedback NDP or an HE TB PPDU carrying a PS-Poll frame with the
 29 TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION not set to UNSPECIFIED, it shall calculate the duration information
 30 and set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION for the HE TB feedback NDP or HE TB
 31 PPDU to the value of the computed duration information. The TXOP responder shall calculate duration
 32 information equal to the duration information indicated by the Duration field of the frame that solicits the
 33 response minus the time, in microseconds, between the end of the PPDU carrying the frame that soliciting
 34 the HE TB PPDU and the end of the HE TB PPDU. If the calculated duration information includes a
 35 fractional microsecond, the duration information is rounded up to the next higher integer. If the calculated
 36 duration information is smaller than 8448 μ s, the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION shall be set to the
 37 calculated duration information. Otherwise, the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION shall be set to
 38 8448.
 39

40 NOTE—The time is equal to SIFS plus the duration of the HE TB PPDU, where the duration of the HE TB PPDU is
 41 defined in Equation (27-134).
 42

43 In the 6 GHz band, a TXOP holder shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION for a transmitted
 44 HE PPDU to UNSPECIFIED unless at least one of the following conditions is true:
 45

- The BSS Color Disabled field is 1 in the HE Operation element transmitted within the BSS of which
 the TXOP holder is a member
- The HE PPDU carries a PS-Poll frame

60 26.11.6 SPATIAL_REUSE 61

62 The contents of the Spatial Reuse fields are carried in the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE for an
 63 HE PPDU indicating spatial reuse information. The behavior of STAs upon reception of an HE PPDU with
 64 different SPATIAL_REUSE values is described in 26.10.2 (OBSS PD-based spatial reuse operation) and
 65

1 26.10.3 (SRP-based spatial reuse operation). The different values that may be indicated in the SPATIAL_REUSE parameter of the TXVECTOR are listed in Table 27-22 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an
 2 HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU) and Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an
 3 HE TB PPDU). The value SRP_DISALLOW is used to prohibit SRP-based spatial reuse during the trans-
 4 mission of the corresponding PPDU. The value SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED is used
 5 to prohibit both SRP-based spatial reuse and non-SRG OBSS PD-based spatial reuse during the transmission
 6 of the corresponding PPDU. The interpretation of other values are described in this subclause and in 26.10
 7 (Spatial reuse operation). The conditions for a STA to set the SPATIAL_REUSE parameter to its different
 8 values are described in this subclause.
 9
 10

11
 12 For a PPDU with a value of HE_TB for the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT, the SPATIAL_REUSE
 13 parameter contains an array of four values. The first value in the array is the SPATIAL_REUSE parameter
 14 that applies to the lowest frequency 20 MHz subband, the second value in the array applies to the second
 15 lowest frequency 20 MHz subband, the third value in the array applies to the third lowest frequency 20 MHz
 16 subband and the fourth value in the array applies to the highest frequency 20 MHz subband if the
 17 CH_BANDWIDTH parameter has the value of CBW20, CBW40 or CBW80. The first value in the array
 18 applies to the lowest frequency 40 MHz subband, the second value in the array applies to the second lowest
 19 frequency 40 MHz subband, the third value in the array applies to the third lowest frequency 40 MHz sub-
 20 band and the fourth value in the array applies to the highest frequency 40 MHz subband if the CH_BAND-
 21 WIDTH parameter has the value of CBW160 or CBW80+80. If the SPATIAL_REUSE parameter is an
 22 array, each value in the array shall individually conform to the rules in this subclause.
 23
 24

25 An HE STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU sets the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE as defined
 26 in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
 27
 28

29 An AP with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that transmits an HE ER SU PPDU that does not
 30 contain a Trigger frame should set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SRP_DISALLOW.
 31
 32

33 A non-AP STA with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that transmits an HE SU PPDU, HE ER
 34 SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU may set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE, when permitted by
 35 other conditions, to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED if the HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_val-
 36 ue15_allowed subfield of the SR Control field of the most recently received Spatial Reuse Parameter Set
 37 element from its associated AP is equal to 1. Otherwise, the non-AP STA shall set it to SRP_DISALLOW.
 38
 39

40 An HE STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU determines the value of the TXVECTOR parameter SPA-
 41 TIAL_REUSE according to 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
 42
 43

44 An HE AP with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to true that transmits an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU
 45 PPDU, or HE MU PPDU may set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SRP_DISALLOW to
 46 disallow OBSS STAs from performing SRP-based SR transmission during the duration of the correspond-
 47 ing PPDU.
 48
 49

50 An HE STA with dot11HESRPOptionImplemented set to false may set the TXVECTOR parameter SPA-
 51 TIAL_REUSE to SRP_DISALLOW for any PPDU that is not an HE TB PPDU, an HE NDP PPDU, a
 52 PPDU containing an HE NDP Announcement frame, or a PPDU containing a response to an HE NDP
 53 Announcement frame.
 54
 55

56 A STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of an HE PPDU to SRP_DISALLOW or, if
 57 permitted by the other rules in this subclause, to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED, if the
 58 STA is a non-AP HE STA and the SRP Disallowed subfield of the SR Control field of the most recently
 59 received Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP is equal to 1.
 60
 61

62 An HE STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_P-
 63 D_PROHIBITED for an HE NDP PPDU.
 64
 65

1 An HE STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED for a PPDU containing an NDP Announcement frame and in any frame that is transmitted
 2 as a response to an NDP Announcement frame.
 3
 4

5 A non-AP HE STA may set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of an HE PPDU to
 6 SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED if the HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_value15_allowed sub-
 7 field of the SR Control field of the most recently received Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its
 8 associated AP is equal to 1. If the HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_value15_allowed subfield of the SR Control field
 9 of the most recently received Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP is equal to 0, or if
 10 STA has not received a Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element from its associated AP, the STA shall not set
 11 the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of any HE PPDU to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_12
 13 PROHIBITED, unless the HE PPDU contains an NDP, an NDP Announcement frame or is a frame that is
 14 transmitted as a response to an NDP Announcement frame.
 15
 16

17 An AP HE STA may set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of an HE PPDU to
 18 SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED if the HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_value15_allowed sub-
 19 field of the SR Control field of the most recently transmitted Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is equal to
 20 1. If the HESIGA_Spatial_reuse_value15_allowed subfield of the SR Control field of the most recently
 21 transmitted Spatial Reuse Parameter Set element is equal to 0, or if the AP has not transmitted a Spatial
 22 Reuse Parameter Set element, the AP shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE of any
 23 HE PPDU to SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED.
 24
 25

26 An HE AP that transmits an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU PPDU that contains a Trigger frame should set
 27 the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_DELAYED. An HE STA that transmits an HE MU
 28 PPDU shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_DELAYED.
 29
 30

31 An HE STA that transmits an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter
 32 SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_RESTRICTED.
 33
 34

35 An HE AP that transmits an HE MU PPDU that contains a Trigger frame should set the TXVECTOR
 36 parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_RESTRICTED.
 37
 38

39 An HE STA that transmits a PPDU that does not contain a Trigger frame shall not set the TXVECTOR
 40 parameter SPATIAL_REUSE to SR_DELAYED or SR_RESTRICTED.
 41
 42

43 26.11.7 INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS and RU_ALLOCATION

44 The indication of which subchannels are punctured in an HE sounding NDP or in an HE NDP Announcement
 45 frame that is carried in a non-HT Duplicate PPDU is conveyed from the MAC to the PHY through the
 46 TXVECTOR parameters INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS and RU_ALLOCATION. The parameter INACTIVE_
 47 SUBCHANNELS may be present in the TXVECTOR of a non-HT duplicate PPDU that carries an
 48 HE NDP Announcement frame or of an HE sounding PPDU. The parameter INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS
 49 shall not be present otherwise. The setting of the RU_ALLOCATION parameter for other PPDU's is speci-
 50 fied in 26.5.2.3.3 (TXVECTOR parameters for HE TB PPDU response to Trigger frame), 26.5.2.3.4
 51 (TXVECTOR parameters for HE TB PPDU response to TRS Control subfield) and 26.5.7.2 (STA behav-
 52 ior).
 53
 54

55 INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS is an eight-bit bitmap with an encoding that is the same as the encoding for
 56 the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield defined in 9.3.1.19 (VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame for-
 57 mat). A bit in the INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS bitmap is set to 1 to indicate that no energy is transmitted
 58 on the corresponding subchannel for the corresponding PPDU. The RU_ALLOCATION parameter is set to
 59 a value that corresponds to the puncturing signalled by the INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS bitmap.
 60
 61

1 A STA transmitting an HE sounding NDP may set the TXVECTOR parameter INACTIVE_SUBCHAN-
 2 NELS to any value provided that the bit representing the primary 20 MHz channel is set to 0.
 3

4 If an HE AP transmits an HE NDP Announcement frame in a PPDU with punctured channels, then the
 5 TXVECTOR parameters FORMAT, NON_HT_MODULATION, CH_BANDWIDTH and INACTIVE_-
 6 SUBCHANNELS shall be set as follows:
 7

- 8 — The TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT shall be set to NON_HT
- 9 — The TXVECTOR parameter NON_HT_MODULATION shall be set to NON_HT_DUP_OFDM.
- 10 — The INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameter may have any value, except that the bit in the bitmap
 11 representing the primary 20 MHz subchannel shall be set to 0.
- 12 — The CH_BANDWIDTH parameter value shall be set to CBW80 if there are no bits set to 0 in the
 13 INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS bitmap that correspond to any 20 MHz subchannel of the secondary
 14 80 MHz and at least one bit set to 0 that corresponds to any 20 MHz subchannel of the secondary 40
 15 MHz
- 16 — The CH_BANDWIDTH parameter value shall be set to CBW160 if there is at least one bit set to 0 in
 17 the INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS bitmap that corresponds to any 20 MHz subchannel of the sec-
 18 onary 80 MHz
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24

25 Each 8 bits of the RU_ALLOCATION are set to 113 (01110001 in binary representation) for the 242-tone
 26 RU that is most closely aligned in frequency with the 20 MHz subchannel that is indicated as disallowed by
 27 the value 1 in the INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameter. Each 8 bits of the RU_ALLOCATION are set
 28 to 11000000 for the 242-tone RU that is most closely aligned in frequency with the 20 MHz subchannel that
 29 is indicated as not disallowed by the value 0 in the INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameter.
 30

32 **26.11.8 STBC and DCM**

35 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter
 36 STBC set to 1 if any of the following conditions are met:

- 37 — TXVECTOR parameter DCM is set to 1
- 38 — TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS is not equal to 2
- 39 — TXVECTOR parameters HE_LTF_TYPE and GI_TYPE are set to 4x HE-LTF and 0u8s_GI, respec-
 40 tively
- 41
- 42
- 43

45 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE TB PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter STBC set to 1 if any of the
 46 following conditions are met:

- 47 — TXVECTOR parameter DCM is set to 1
- 48 — TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS is not equal to 2
- 49
- 50
- 51

52 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter STBC set to 1 if any of
 53 the following conditions are met:

- 54 — At least one element in the TXVECTOR parameter DCM is set to 1
- 55 — At least one element in the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS is not equal to 2
- 56 — There are two or more STA_ID parameters in the TXVECTOR using the same RU
- 57
- 58
- 59

60 NOTE—Two or more STA_ID parameters in the TXVECTOR using the same RU means that DL MU-MIMO is used.
 61

62 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameters
 63 STBC or DCM set to 1 if the TXVECTOR parameters HE_LTF_TYPE and GI_TYPE are set to 4x HE-LTF
 64 and 0u8s_GI, respectively.
 65

1 **26.12 HE PPDU post-FEC padding and packet extension**

2 An HE STA with dot11PPEThresholdsRequired set to false may set the PPE Thresholds Present subfield in
 3 HE Capabilities elements that it transmits to 0.

4 An HE STA with dot11PPEThresholdsRequired set to true shall set the PPE Thresholds Present subfield in
 5 HE Capabilities elements that it transmits to 1.

6 A STA that sets the PPE Thresholds Present subfield to 0 and the Nominal Packet Padding subfield to 0 in
 7 HE Capabilities elements that it transmits has as a nominal packet padding of 0 μ s for all constellations, NSS
 8 and RU allocations that it supports.

9 A STA that sets the PPE Thresholds Present subfield to 0 and the Nominal Packet Padding subfield to 1 in
 10 the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits has a nominal packet padding of 8 μ s for all constellations,
 11 NSS and RU allocations that it supports.

12 A STA that sets the PPE Thresholds Present subfield to 0 and the Nominal Packet Padding subfield to 2 in
 13 the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits has nominal packet padding of 16 μ s for all constellations,
 14 NSS and RU allocations that it supports.

15 A STA that sets the PPE Thresholds Present subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities elements that it transmits
 16 shall indicate its nominal packet padding per constellation, NSS and RU allocation by setting the subfields
 17 of the PPE Thresholds field according to 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element) and using the corresponding
 18 values from dot11PPEThresholdsMappingTable.

19 After receiving the PPE Thresholds field from a second STA, the first STA uses the combination of the
 20 PPET8 NSTS n RUb subfield and PPET16 NSTS n RUb subfield values to determine the nominal packet
 21 padding for HE PPDUs that are transmitted to the second STA using NSTS = n and an RU allocation corre-
 22 sponding to RU Allocation Index b , for each value of NSTS and RU specified by the field. The nominal
 23 packet padding is used in computing the PE field duration (see 27.3.12 (Packet extension)).

24 NOTE—If the pre-FEC padding factor is 4, then the value of nominal T_{PE} is equal to the nominal packet padding (see
 25 Table 27-46 (Nominal TPE values)).

26 For all values of n and b for which PPET8 and PPET16 are not present, the nominal packet padding is 0 for
 27 HE PPDUs that are transmitted to the STA using NSTS = n and an RU allocation corresponding to RU allo-

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

1 cation index b . The nominal packet padding as a function of the PPE thresholds, the number of spatial
 2 streams and the RU allocation index is described in Table 26-12 (PPE thresholds per PPET8 and PPET16).
 3
 4

5 **Table 26-12—PPE thresholds per PPET8 and PPET16**

6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65	Result of comparison of the constellation index x of an HE PPDU with NSTS value n and RU allocation size that corresponds to the RU Allocation index = $(b + \text{DCM})$ to the value in the PPET8 NSTS n RU ($b+\text{DCM}$) subfield	Result of comparison of the constellation index x of an HE PPDU with NSTS value n and RU allocation size that corresponds to the RU Allocation index = value $(b + \text{DCM})$ to the value in the PPET16 NSTS n RU($b+\text{DCM}$) subfield	Nominal packet padding for an HE PPDU transmitted to this STA using the constellation index = x , NSTS = n and RU allocation size that corresponds to the RU Allocation index = $(b + \text{DCM})$
x greater than or equal to PPET8	x less than PPET16 or PPET16 equal to None	8 μs	
x greater than PPET8 or PPET8 equal to None	x greater than or equal to PPET16	16 μs	
All other combinations not otherwise listed in this table		0	
NOTE—DCM = 1 if the HE PPDU uses DCM; DCM = 0 otherwise.			

In Table 26-12 (PPE thresholds per PPET8 and PPET16), "RU Allocation index = $(b + \text{DCM})$ " means the following. With the exception of a 2×996 -tone RU, if DCM is applied in a given RU, the nominal packet padding value is based on the next larger RU size (RU index + 1). For example, if DCM is applied to a 242-tone RU then the nominal packet padding value for a 484-tone RU is used. If DCM is applied to 106-tone RU then the nominal packet padding value for a 242-tone RU is used. If DCM is applied to a 2×996 -tone RU then the nominal packet padding value for a 2×996 -tone RU is used.

The nominal packet padding value shall be zero for all RU less than 242 unless the RU size is 106 and DCM is enabled.

A STA transmitting an HE PPDU provides the nominal packet padding in the TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING for the minimal PE calculation (see 27.3.12 (Packet extension)).

A STA transmitting an HE PPDU that carries a broadcast frame shall set the value of the TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING to 16 μs . A STA transmitting an HE PPDU that carries a group addressed, but not broadcast, frame shall not set the value of the TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING to a value that is less than that required for any of the recipients in the group.

A STA transmitting an HE PPDU to a receiving STA shall include post-FEC padding determined by the pre-FEC padding factor (see 27.3.11 (Data field)) and after including the post-FEC padding, the transmitting STA shall include a packet extension with a duration indicated by the TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING (see 27.3.12 (Packet extension)).

26.13 Link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield

This subclause applies to frame exchange sequences that include PPDUs containing an HE variant HT Control field.

1 An HE STA shall set the HE Link Adaptation Support subfield in the HE Capabilities Information field in
 2 the HE Capabilities element it transmits to the value of dot11HEMCSFeedbackOptionImplemented.
 3

4 A STA that supports HE link adaptation using the HLA Control subfield shall set the HE Link Adaptation
 5 Support subfield in the HE Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element to 2 or 3, depend-
 6 ing on its own link adaptation feedback capability. A STA shall not send an MRQ to a STA that has not set
 7 the HE Link Adaptation Support subfield to 3 in the HE Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabili-
 8 ties element. A STA shall not send an unsolicited MFB in any frame that contains an HLA Control subfield
 9 to a STA that has not set the HE Link Adaptation Support subfield to either 2 or 3 in the HE Capabilities
 10 Information field of the HE Capabilities element.
 11

12
 13 The MFB requester may set the MRQ subfield to 1 and Unsolicited MFB subfield to 0 in the HLA Control
 14 subfield of a frame to request a STA to provide link adaptation feedback. In each request, the MFB requester
 15 shall set the MSI field to a value ranging from 0 to 6. For the MFB requester, how to choose the MSI value
 16 is implementation dependent.
 17

18
 19 The appearance of more than one instance of an HLA Control subfield with the MRQ field equal to 1 within
 20 a single PPDU shall be interpreted by the receiver as a single request for link adaptation feedback.
 21

22
 23 The MFB requester shall specify the RU index and BW requesting the link adaptation feedback.
 24

25
 26 On receipt of an HLA Control subfield with the MRQ subfield equal to 1, an MFB responder computes the
 27 HE-MCS, NSS, and DCM of the RU and BW specified in the MRQ and these estimates are based on the
 28 same RU of the PPDU carrying the MRQ. The PPDU carrying MRQ shall include the RU requested for
 29 MFB. The MFB responder labels the result of this computation with the MSI value from the HLA Control
 30 subfield in the received frame carrying the MRQ. The MFB responder may include the received MSI value
 31 in the MSI field of the corresponding response frame. In the case of a delayed response, this allows the MFB
 32 requester to associate the MFB with the soliciting MRQ.
 33

34
 35 An MFB responder that sends a solicited MFB shall set the Unsolicited MFB subfield to 0 and MRQ sub-
 36 field to 0 in the HLA Control subfield.
 37

38
 39 The STA receiving MFB may use the received MFB to compute the appropriate HE-MCS, DCM and NSS.
 40

41
 42 The MFB responder may send a solicited response frame with any of the following combinations of HE-
 43 MCS, NSS, and MSI:
 44

- 45 — HE-MCS = 15, NSS = 7, MSI = 0–6: the responder will not provide feedback for the request that had
 46 the MSI value.
- 47 — HE-MCS = valid value, NSS = valid value, MSI = 0–6: the responder is providing feedback for the
 48 request that had the MSI value. The MSI value in the response frame matches the MSI value of the
 49 MRQ request.

50
 51 A STA sending unsolicited MFB using the HLA Control subfield shall set the Unsolicited MFB subfield to
 52 1.
 53

54
 55 Unsolicited HE-MCS, NSS, DCM, BW, and RU estimates reported in an HLA Control subfield sent by a
 56 STA are computed based on the most recent PPDU received by the STA that matches the description indi-
 57 cated by the PPDU format, Tx Beamforming, and Coding Type subfields in the same HLA Control subfield.
 58

59
 60 In an unsolicited MFB response the PPDU Formats, Coding Type, and Tx Beamforming subfields are set
 61 according to the RXVECTOR parameters of the received PPDU from which the HE-MCS, RU, BW, and
 62 NSS are estimated, as follows:
 63

- 64 — The PPDU format subfield is set and encoded as follows:

- 0 if the parameter FORMAT is equal to HE_SU
- 1 if the parameter FORMAT is equal to HE_MU
- 2 if the parameter FORMAT is equal to HE_ER_SU
- 3 if the parameter FORMAT is equal to HE_TB
- The Coding Type subfield is set to 0 if the parameter FEC_CODING is equal to BCC_CODING and set to 1 if equal to LDPC_CODING.
- The Tx Beamforming subfield is set to 1 if the parameter BEAMFORMED is equal to 1 and set to 0 if equal to 0.
- The BW subfield shall indicate a bandwidth less than or equal to the bandwidth indicated by the parameter CH_BANDWIDTH.
- The RU subfield indicates the RU at which the recommended HE-MCS is applied. The recommended RU shall be within an RU or a bandwidth in which the received HE PPDU is located.

For either a solicited or an unsolicited response, the recommended HE-MCS and NSS subfields of HLA Control subfield shall be selected from the HE-MCS and NSS set supported by the recipient STA.

The HE-MCS subfield of HLA Control subfield is the recommended data rate, for given transmission properties carried in the RXVECTOR of the PPDU used for MFB estimation, which results in an estimated frame error rate of 10% or lower for an MPDU length of 3895 octets.

NOTE—Some HE PPDU might not be able to carry 3895 octets due to PPDU duration limitations.

If the MFB requester sets the MRQ subfield to 1 and sets the MSI subfield to a value that matches the MSI subfield value of a previous request for which the responder has not yet provided feedback, the responder shall discard or abandon the computation for the MRQ that corresponds to the previous use of that MSI subfield value and start a new computation based on the new request.

A STA may respond immediately to a current request for MFB with a frame containing an MSI field value and NSS, HE-MCS, and DCM subfields that correspond to a request that precedes the current request.

An HE non-AP STA may set the UL HE TB PPDU MFB to 1 in the HLA Control field it transmits to the AP to indicate that the NSS, HE-MCS, DCM, BW and RU Allocation in the HLA Control field represent the recommended MFB for the HE TB PPDU sent from the HE non-AP STA. The AP should not exceed the recommended RU size indicated in the most recently received RU Allocation field of the HLA Control field when it sends a Trigger frame or a TRS Control field addressed to the STA.

26.14 Power management

26.14.1 Intra-PPDU power save for non-AP HE STAs

Intra-PPDU power save is the power save mechanism for an HE STA to enter the doze state or become unavailable until the end of a received PPDU that is identified as an intra-BSS PPDU by the below conditions listed in this subclause. The STA can enter the doze state if it is in PS mode and can become unavailable if it is in Active mode (see 11.2.3.2 (Non-AP STA power management modes)).

A non-AP HE STA that has dot11IntraPPDUPowerSaveOptionActivated equal to true operates in intra-PPDU power save mode.

A non-AP HE STA that is in intra-PPDU power save mode may enter the doze state or become unavailable until the end of a PPDU currently being received if one of the following conditions is met:

- The PPDU is an HE MU PPDU where the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is the BSS color of the BSS with which the STA is associated, the RXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG is 0 and the RXVECTOR parameters STA_ID do not include the identifier of the STA or the broadcast identi-

1 fier(s) intended for the STA and the BSS Color Disabled subfield is 0 in the most recently received
 2 HE Operation element from the AP to which it is associated.
 3

- 4 — The PPDU is an HE MU PPDU, HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU and one of the following condi-
 5 tions are true:
- 6 • The RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is the BSS color of the BSS with which the STA is
 7 associated, the RXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG is 1 and the BSS Color Disabled sub-
 8 field is 0 in the most recently received HE Operation element from the AP to which it is associ-
 9 ated.
- 10 • The RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is the BSS color of the BSS with which the STA is
 11 associated, the RXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG is 0 and a PHY-RXEND.indica-
 12 tion(UnsupportedRate) primitive was received and the BSS Color Disabled subfield is 0 in the
 13 most recently received HE Operation element from the AP to which it is associated.
- 14 — The PPDU is an HE TB PPDU where the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR is the BSS color of
 15 the BSS with which the STA is associated and the BSS Color Disabled subfield is 0 in the most
 16 recently received HE Operation element from the AP to which it is associated.
- 17 — The PPDU is a VHT PPDU where the RXVECTOR parameter PARTIAL_AID is the BSSID[39:47]
 18 of the BSS with which the STA is associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID
 19 set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs and the RXVECTOR parameter GROUP_ID is
 20 0.
- 21 — The PPDU is a PPDU with:
- 22 • An A-MPDU including TA or RA equal to either the BSSID of the BSS with which the STA is
 23 associated or any of the other BSSs in the same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to
 24 which its BSS belongs and,
- 25 • The RA is not the individual MAC address of the STA or the group address(es) of the STA.
- 26 — The PPDU is either an HE MU PPDU with the RXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG set to 0 or
 27 a VHT MU PPDU containing an A-MPDU with
- 28 • The RA(s) in the A-MPDU is (are) equal to the STA's individual address and,
- 29 • The STA has received in the A-MPDU at least one MPDU delimiter with EOF equal to 1 and
 30 with MPDU length field equal to 0.

31 A non-AP HE STA that is in intra-PPDU power save mode and has entered doze state or has become
 32 unavailable shall continue to operate its NAV timers and consider the medium busy and shall transition to
 33 the awake state at the end of the PPDU.

34 A non-AP HE STA that is in intra-PPDU power save mode may discard a PPDU identified as an inter-BSS
 35 PPDUs defined in 26.2.2 (Intra-BSS and inter-BSS PPDU classification) until the end of the PPDU.

36 NOTE—The STA can contend for access to the medium immediately on the expiry of the NAV timers.

26.14.2 Power save with UORA and TWT

37 This subclause defines the power save mechanisms for a non-AP HE STA that is operating in PS mode and
 38 is UORA and TWT capable.

39 An HE AP may indicate start times for one or more broadcast TWT SPs containing Trigger frames with ran-
 40 dom access allocations in the broadcast TWT element that is included in a Management frame as described

in 26.8.3.2 (Rules for TWT scheduling AP). An example of power save operation is shown in Figure 26-14 (Example of power save operation with UORA and TWT).

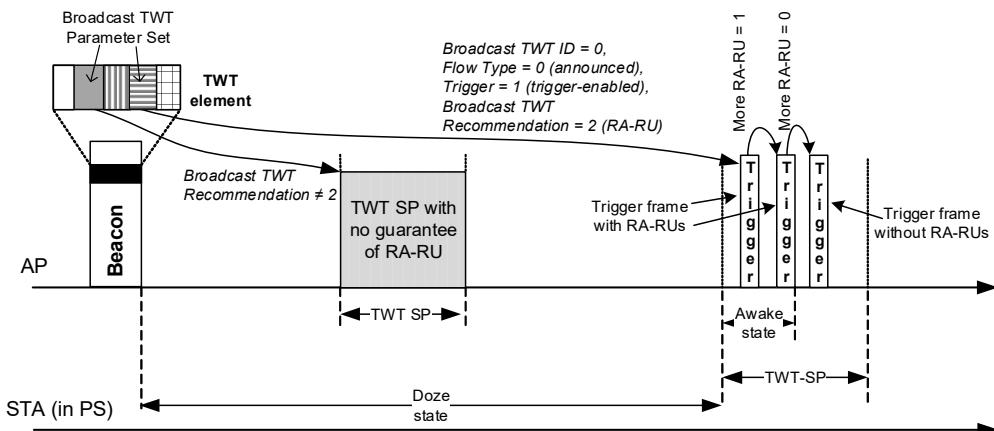


Figure 26-14—Example of power save operation with UORA and TWT

A TWT SP with RA-RU is a TWT SP corresponding to a Broadcast TWT Parameter Set field in a TWT element that has a Broadcast TWT ID subfield equal to 0, Flow Type subfield equal to 0, Trigger subfield equal to 1, and a Broadcast TWT Recommendation subfield equal to 2. An associated HE STA that supports the TWT and UORA procedure when operating in PS mode, upon receiving a Beacon frame from its associated AP carrying a TWT element indicating a schedule for TWT-SP(s) with RA-RU, may enter the doze state if no other condition requires it to be awake. The STA may transition to awake state at the start of a TWT SP with RA-RU and follow the procedure in 26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA))) to send an HE TB PPDU to its associated AP.

An HE STA shall follow the procedure described in 26.8.5 (Power save operation during TWT SPs) to determine if TWT SP termination event has occurred and may enter doze state if no other condition requires the STA to remain awake.

An HE non-AP STA shall decrement its OBO counter by following the procedure in 26.5.4.3 (Transmission procedure for UORA). If the OBO counter decrements to a nonzero value, then the STA may enter the doze state until the end of the current TWT SP if the STA has not declared to the AP that it is in awake state (as described in 26.8.3.3 (Rules for TWT scheduled STA)), no other condition requires it to remain awake and one of the following conditions is met:

- The More TF subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame is equal to 0.
- The More TF subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame is equal to 1 and the More RA-RU subfield in the User Info field is equal to 0 indicating that subsequent Trigger frames in the current broadcast TWT SP will not include RA-RUs matching the value in AID12 subfield (see Table 9-31g (AID12 subfield encoding)).

26.14.3 Opportunistic power save

26.14.3.1 General

An OPS non-AP STA is a non-AP HE STA that sets the OPS Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element to 1.

An OPS AP is an AP HE STA that sets the OPS Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in HE Capabilities element to 1.

1 Opportunistic power save mechanism has the objective to allow OPS non-AP STAs that are in active mode
 2 to be unavailable and to allow OPS non-AP STAs that are in PS mode to be in doze state to save power for a
 3 defined period. The opportunistic power save mechanism has two modes: unscheduled and scheduled.
 4

5 In the unscheduled mode, an OPS AP sends an OPS frame or a FILS discovery frame at any time to provide
 6 the scheduling information for all OPS non-AP STAs for the OPS period that follows the transmission of the
 7 OPS frame or FILS discovery frame. Based on this information, the OPS non-AP STAs that are in active
 8 mode may be unavailable during the OPS period and the OPS non-AP STAs that are in PS mode may be in
 9 doze state during the OPS period.
 10

11 In the scheduled mode, an OPS AP splits a beacon interval into several periodic broadcast TWT SPs and
 12 provides, at the beginning of each SP, the scheduling information for all OPS non-AP STAs. Based on this
 13 information, the OPS non-AP STAs that are in active mode may be unavailable until the next TWT SP and
 14 the OPS non-AP STAs that are in PS mode may be in doze state until the next TWT SP.
 15

16 26.14.3.2 AP operation for opportunistic power save

17 To enable unscheduled opportunistic power save, an OPS AP shall schedule for transmission an OPS frame
 18 or a FILS Discovery frame with the RA field set to the broadcast address that includes a TIM element (see
 19 9.4.2.5 (TIM element)) and an OPS element (see 9.4.2.256 (OPS element)). The AP should transmit a FILS
 20 Discovery frame instead of an OPS frame if the target transmission time closely aligns with the transmission
 21 time of a FILS Discovery frame. The OPS Duration field in the OPS element shall be set to the duration of
 22 the OPS period that immediately follows the transmission of the OPS frame or FILS Discovery frame. The
 23 TIM element is encoded specifically as defined in 9.4.2.5 (TIM element) in order to provide the information
 24 of which STAs are not scheduled during the OPS period. If the OPS AP sets the bit corresponding to an OPS
 25 non-AP STA in the traffic indication virtual bitmap field carried by the Partial Virtual Bitmap of the TIM
 26 element of the OPS frame or FILS Discovery frame to 0, the AP should send neither individually addressed
 27 frames to the STA nor Trigger frames with a User Info field that addresses the STA during the OPS period.
 28

29 To enable scheduled opportunistic power save, an OPS AP shall include a TWT element in beacons to set a
 30 periodic Broadcast TWT SP with the following information:
 31

- 32 — The Broadcast TWT Recommendation field set to 3
- 33 — The Broadcast TWT ID subfield is set to 0

34 At the beginning of these periodic TWT SPs with the Broadcast TWT Recommendation field set to 3, the
 35 AP shall schedule for transmission a TIM frame or a FILS Discovery frame with the RA field set to the
 36 broadcast address that includes a TIM element (see 9.4.2.5 (TIM element)). The FILS Discovery frame may
 37 include an OPS element. The AP should transmit a FILS Discovery frame instead of a TIM frame if the
 38 TWT SP start time closely aligns with the transmission time of a FILS Discovery frame. If the OPS AP also
 39 operates with TIM Broadcast and uses TIM frames for Opportunistic power save mechanism, the OPS AP
 40 should align the transmission time of a TIM frame for TIM Broadcast, with the start time of the broadcast
 41 TWT SP with the Broadcast TWT Recommendation field set to 3. If the OPS AP sets the bit corresponding
 42 to an OPS non-AP STA in the traffic indication virtual bitmap carried in the Partial Virtual Bitmap field of
 43 the TIM element of the TIM frame or FILS Discovery frame to 0, the AP should send neither individually
 44 addressed frames to the STA nor Trigger frames with a User Info field that addresses the STA during the
 45 TWT SP and until the next TWT SP with the Broadcast TWT Recommendation field set to 3.
 46

47 26.14.3.3 STA operation for opportunistic power save

48 With unscheduled opportunistic power save, if an OPS non-AP STA with AID N that is in the awake state
 49 receives a TIM element and an OPS element in an OPS frame or a FILS Discovery frame from the associated
 50 OPS AP, then the STA may be unavailable if the STA is in active mode or may be in doze state if the
 51 STA is in PS mode until the end of the OPS period indicated in the OPS element, if the bit N in the traffic
 52

1 indication virtual bitmap carried in the Partial Virtual Bitmap field of the current TIM element is 0, unless
 2 other conditions not related to operation with the OPS AP require the STA to be in the awake state. At the
 3 end of the OPS period, the STA shall be in the awake state, unless determined otherwise by other power save
 4 protocols.
 5

6 With scheduled opportunistic power save, if an OPS non-AP STA with AID N that is in the awake state
 7 receives from the OPS AP with which it associated a TIM element with bit N of the traffic indication virtual
 8 bitmap field equal to 0 in a TIM frame or FILS Discovery frame within a broadcast TWT SP with the Broad-
 9 cast TWT Recommendation field set to 3, then the STA may be unavailable if the STA is in active mode or
 10 may be in doze state if the STA is in PS mode during the TWT SP and until the next TWT SP with the
 11 Broadcast TWT Recommendation field set to 3, unless other conditions not related to operation with the
 12 OPS AP require the STA to be in the awake state.
 13

14 An OPS non-AP STA shall not operate with TIM broadcast procedure if its associated AP is an OPS AP.
 15

16 **26.14.4 HE dynamic SM power save**

17 A STA that supports HE dynamic SM power save has dot11HEDynamicSMPowerSaveOptionImplemented
 18 set to true and shall set the HE Dynamic SM Power Save subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information
 19 field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band to 1 and sets the SM Power
 20 Save subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element it transmits in the 6 GHz band to 1.
 21

22 In dynamic SM power save mode (see 11.2.6 (SM power save)), a non-AP HE STA that sets the HE
 23 Dynamic SM Power Save subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities ele-
 24 ment it transmits to 1 or that sets the SM Power Save subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element it
 25 transmits to 1 shall follow the dynamic SM power save procedures defined in 11.2.6 (SM power save)
 26 except that the non-AP HE STA may enable its multiple receive chains if it receives a Trigger frame as
 27 described below.
 28

29 The non-AP HE STA enables its multiple receive chains if it receives a Trigger frame that starts a frame
 30 exchange sequence. Such a frame exchange sequence shall satisfy the following conditions:
 31

- 32 — The starting Trigger frame is transmitted with a single-spatial stream.
 33
- 34 — The starting Trigger frame is from the associated AP or from the AP corresponding to the transmitted
 35 BSSID if the non-AP HE STA is associated with a nontransmitted BSSID and has indicated support
 36 for receiving Control frames with TA set to the transmitted BSSID by setting the Rx Control Frame
 37 To MultiBSS subfield to 1 in the HE Capabilities element that the non-AP HE STA transmits.
 38
- 39 — The starting Trigger frame is an MU-RTS Trigger frame, BSRP Trigger frame or BQRP Trigger
 40 frame that includes a User Info field with the AID12 subfield equal to the 12 LSBs of the AID of the
 41 non-AP HE STA (see 26.5.2.2.1 (General)) in dynamic SM power save mode.
 42

43 The non-AP HE STA shall, subject to its spatial stream capabilities (see 9.4.2.55.4 (Supported MCS Set
 44 field), 9.4.2.157.3 (Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set field) and 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)) and
 45 operating mode (see 11.41 (Notification of operating mode changes) and 26.9 (Operating mode indication)),
 46 be capable of receiving a PPDU that is sent using more than one spatial stream a SIFS after the end of its
 47 response frame transmission. The STA switches to the multiple receive chain mode if it receives the Trigger
 48 frame addressed to it as defined above and switches back immediately after the frame exchange sequence
 49 ends.
 50

51 NOTE 1—A Trigger frame always solicits an immediate response.
 52

53 NOTE 2—A non-AP HE STA that is in dynamic SM power save mode and that sets the HE Dynamic SM Power Save
 54 subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 or that sets the
 55 SM Power Save subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element it transmits to 1 cannot distinguish between a Trig-
 56 ger frames that precedes a MIMO transmission and a Trigger frames that does not precede a MIMO transmission and,
 57

1 therefore, always enables its multiple receive chains if it receives an MU-RTS Trigger frame, BSRP Trigger frame, or
 2 BQRP Trigger frame that has a User Info field addressed to it.
 3

4 5 **26.15 PPDU format, BW, MCS, NSS, and DCM selection rules**

6 **26.15.1 General**

7 An HE STA can transmit different PPDUs formats, with different transmit parameters, such as channel
 8 width, MCS, NSS, DCM. This subclause defines the rules followed by an HE STA for selecting these
 9 parameters depending on the capabilities of the intended receiver(s) and other considerations.
 10

11 **26.15.2 PPDU format selection**

12 An HE STA that transmits non-HT, HT, or VHT PPDUs shall follow the rules in 10.6 (Multirate support).
 13 An HE STA may transmit an HE SU PPDU to a peer HE STA subject to the restrictions defined below.
 14

15 An HE AP may transmit an HE MU PPDU as defined in 26.5.1 (HE DL MU operation). A non-AP HE STA
 16 transmits HE TB PPDUs as defined in 26.5.2 (UL MU operation).
 17

18 A STA shall not transmit a 242-tone HE ER SU PPDU to a peer non-AP STA if the most recently received
 19 OM Control field from that peer non-AP STA, if any, has the ER SU Disable subfield equal to 1.
 20

21 A STA shall not transmit a 242-tone HE ER SU PPDU to an AP if the most recently received HE Operation
 22 element from that AP has the ER SU Disable subfield equal to 1.
 23

24 A STA shall not transmit a 106-tone HE ER SU PPDU to a peer STA if the most recently received HE Capa-
 25 bilities element from that peer STA has the Partial Bandwidth Extended Range field equal to 0.
 26

27 A STA shall not transmit a 20 MHz HE MU PPDU with just a 106-tone RU to a peer STA unless it has
 28 received from the peer STA an HE Capabilities element with the Rx Partial BW SU In 20 MHz HE MU
 29 PPDU subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.
 30

31 NOTE—A non-AP STA transmitting an HE MU PPDU sets the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG to 1 if the
 32 PPDU is sent to the AP and to 0 if the PPDU is sent to a TDLS STA (see 26.11.2 (UPLINK_FLAG)). The HE MU
 33 PPDU format enables the non-AP STA to include its AID (i.e., transmitter's AID if the UPLINK_FLAG is 1 and the
 34 receiver's AID if the UPLINK_FLAG is 0) in the PHY header of the PPDU and its use is out of scope of the standard.
 35

36 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU with a single user being allocated an RU occupying the
 37 entire PPDU bandwidth and a compressed HE-SIG-B to a peer STA unless the HE STA has received from
 38 the peer STA an HE Capabilities element with the Rx Full BW SU Using HE MU PPDU With Compressed
 39 HE-SIG-B subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.
 40

41 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU with a single user being allocated an RU occupying the
 42 entire PPDU bandwidth and a noncompressed HE-SIG-B to a peer STA unless the PPDU bandwidth is less
 43 than or equal to 80 MHz and the HE STA has received from the peer STA an HE Capabilities element with
 44 the Rx Full BW SU Using HE MU PPDU With Non-Compressed HE-SIG-B subfield in the HE PHY Capa-
 45 bilities Information field equal to 1.
 46

47 An HE STA shall send Control frames following the rules defined in 10.6.6 (Rate selection for Control
 48 frames) with the following exceptions:
 49

- 50 — A Control frame shall be carried in an HT PPDU, VHT PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE SU PPDU
 when the Control frame is sent using an STBC frame.
 51
- 52 — A Control frame sent by the AP as a response to an HE TB PPDU may be carried in any PPDU for-
 mat that is supported by the intended receivers.
 53

- A Trigger frame that is not an MU-RTS Trigger frame may be carried in any PPDU format that is supported by the intended receivers.
- A Control frame is carried in an HE TB PPDU if it is sent as a response to a PPDU that contains a Trigger frame that is not an MU-RTS Trigger frame or if it is sent as a response to a PPDU that contains a frame containing a TRS Control subfield (see 26.5.2 (UL MU operation)).
- A Control frame sent by an HE STA as a response to an HE ER SU PPDU that does not contain a Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control field should be carried in an HE ER SU PPDU unless the most recently received PPDU sent by a recipient of the HE ER SU PPDU to the HE STA after association was not an HE ER SU PPDU in which case the Control frame should be carried in non-HT PPDU.
- A Control frame sent by an HE STA as a response to an HE SU PPDU or a non-HT PPDU that does not contain a Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control field should be carried in a non-HT PPDU unless the most recent received PPDU sent by a recipient of the HE SU PPDU to the HE STA after association was an HE ER SU PPDU in which case the Control frame should be carried in an HE ER SU PPDU.
- A Control frame shall not be sent in an HE ER SU PPDU if the channel bandwidth of the soliciting PPDU is greater than 20 MHz.
- A Control frame that is not solicited by another frame and is not a Trigger frame may be carried in an HE ER SU PPDU.
- A Control frame sent in the 6 GHz band as a response to an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, and that is not carried in HE TB PPDU, may be carried in an HE SU PPDU if the transmit time of HE SU PPDU is less than or equal to the PPDU duration of a non-HT PPDU containing the Control frame sent at the primary rate (see 10.6.6.5.2 (Selection of a rate or MCS)).

NOTE 1—A change in the format of the PPDU containing the control response frame (between non-HT and HE ER SU PPDU) occurs in subsequent TXOPs. A STA that solicits a control response frame from a responding STA accounts for the PPDU format of the control response frame to calculate the expected duration of the TXOP. The responding STA determines that the most recent PPDU sent to the soliciting STA is received if it receives an immediate acknowledgment by the soliciting STA in response to the PPDU.

NOTE 2—A STA does not transmit a Control frame in an HE ER SU PPDU to a receiving STA unless the receiving STA indicates that HE ER SU PPDU reception is enabled.

An HE STA should send an Ack frame in the same PPDU format as the soliciting PPDU if the soliciting PPDU is a VHT PPDU or HT PPDU containing an Fine Timing Measurement frame.

26.15.3 MCS, NSS, BW and DCM selection

An HE STA shall follow the rules defined in 10.7 (Multirate support) and 26.15.4 (Rate selection constraints for HE STAs) for selecting the rate, MCS, NSS, and the rules defined in 10.3.2.6 (VHT RTS procedure), 10.3.2.7 (CTS and DMG CTS procedure), 10.7.6.6 (Channel Width selection for Control frames) and 10.7.11 (Channel Width in non-HT and non-HT duplicate PPDUs) for selecting the channel width (BW) of transmitted PPDUs with the following exceptions:

- HE-MCS, NSS, and BW selection for an HE TB PPDU are defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
- Rate and BW selection for a CTS sent in response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame are defined in 26.2.6 (MU-RTS Trigger/CTS frame exchange procedure).
- A STA that transmits a Control frame carried in a non-HT PPDU that is a response to a frame received in an HE ER SU PPDU shall set the rate of the non-HT PPDU to 6 Mb/s.
- A STA that transmits a Control frame that is an S-MPDU carried in an HE ER SU PPDU and that is a response to a frame received in an HE ER SU PPDU shall use the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple <HE-MCS 0, 1>.

- 1 — NSS and BW selection is further constrained as defined in 26.9 (Operating mode indication), 11.42
 2 (Notification of operating mode changes), 26.15.2 (PPDU format selection), 26.17 (HE BSS opera-
 3 tion) and in the remaining subclauses of 26.15 (PPDU format, BW, MCS, NSS, and DCM selection
 4 rules).

5
 6
 7 An HE STA that transmits an HE PPDU to a receiving STA shall use an <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple that is sup-
 8 ported by the receiving STA as indicated by the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field in the HE Capabili-
 9 ties element that the receiving STA transmits. If the Supported HE-MCS and NSS set of the receiving STA
 10 or STAs is not known, the transmitting STA shall transmit using a <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple in the basic HE-
 11 MCS and NSS set if the basic HE-MCS and NSS set is not empty, otherwise the transmitting STA shall
 12 transmit using a <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple in the mandatory HE-MCS and NSS Set. An HE STA is subject to
 13 all of the rules for HT STAs and VHT STAs that apply to its operating band (see 10.27 (Protection mechani-
 14 isms)).

15
 16
 17 An HE STA may transmit an HE PPDU with 1024-QAM on a 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU to a recipient STA
 18 if it has received from the recipient STA an HE Capabilities element with the Rx 1024-QAM < 242-tone RU
 19 Support subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1; otherwise the HE STA shall not
 20 transmit an HE PPDU with 1024-QAM on a 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU.

21
 22
 23 An HE AP shall not set the UL HE-MCS subfield of a User Info field in a Trigger frame to 10 or 11 for a 26-
 24 , 52-, or 106-tone RU allocation unless the User Info field is addressed to a non-AP HE STA from which the
 25 HE AP has received an HE Capabilities element with the Tx 1024-QAM < 242-tone RU Support subfield in
 26 the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

27
 28
 29 An HE STA that sends a Control frame in response to a frame carried in an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU
 30 PPDU or an HE MU PPDU that carries a frame with the Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack policy shall set
 31 the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH to indicate a channel width that is the same as the channel
 32 width indicated by the RXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH of the frame eliciting the response. If
 33 the most recently received PPDU sent by the responding STA to the soliciting STA after association was an
 34 HE ER SU PPDU, the soliciting STA shall set the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH to CBW20
 35 for an HE SU PPDU and to ER-RU-242 or ER-RU-H-106 for an HE ER SU PPDU.

36
 37
 38 NOTE—A preamble punctured HE MU PPDU cannot carry a frame with Normal Ack or Implicit BAR ack policy if the
 39 solicited PPDU containing a control response occupies one or more punctured 20 MHz channels of the preamble punc-
 40 tured HE MU PPDU (see 26.4.4.3 (Responding to an HE MU PPDU with an SU PPDU)).

41
 42
 43 If a control response frame is to be transmitted within an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, the channel width
 44 (CH_BANDWIDTH parameter of the TXVECTOR) shall be selected first according to 10.6.6.6 (Channel
 45 Width selection for Control frames), and then the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple shall be selected from a set of
 46 <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples called the *CandidateMCSSet*. The *CandidateMCSSet* is defined in 10.6.6.5.3 (Con-
 47 trol response frame MCS computation) except that the set additionally contains the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples
 48 for an HE STA.

49
 50
 51 An HE STA may transmit an HE PPDU with DCM to a recipient STA if it has received from the recipient
 52 STA an HE Capabilities element with the DCM Max Constellation Rx subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities
 53 Information field greater than 0; otherwise the HE STA shall not transmit an HE PPDU with DCM to the
 54 recipient STA.

55
 56
 57 An HE STA transmits an HE TB PPDU with DCM as defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL
 58 MU operation). An HE AP shall not set the DCM subfield of a User Info field in a Trigger frame to 1 if it has
 59 not received from the recipient STA an HE Capabilities element with the DCM Max Constellation Tx sub-
 60 field in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field greater than 0.

1 An HE STA that transmits an HE PPDU with DCM to a recipient STA shall use an RU size that is less than
 2 or equal to the maximum RU size indicated in the DCM Max RU subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Infor-
 3 mation field in the HE Capabilities element received from the recipient STA.
 4

5 An HE AP that transmits a Trigger frame addressed to a recipient STA that solicits an HE TB PPDU with
 6 DCM shall set the RU Allocation subfield in the Trigger frame to indicate an RU size that is less than or
 7 equal to the maximum RU size indicated in the DCM Max RU subfield in HE PHY Capabilities Information
 8 field in the HE Capabilities element received from the recipient STA.
 9

10 An HE STA that transmits an HE PPDU with DCM to a recipient STA shall use an NSS that is less than or
 11 equal to the value indicated in the DCM Max NSS Rx subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field
 12 in the HE Capabilities element received from the recipient STA.
 13

14 An HE AP that transmits a Trigger frame with a User Info field addressed to a recipient STA and with the
 15 UL DCM subfield in the User Info field set to 1 shall set the Number Of Spatial Streams subfield in the SS
 16 Allocation subfield in the User Info field to less than or equal to the DCM Max NSS Tx subfield in HE PHY
 17 Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element received from the recipient STA.
 18

19 An HE AP shall not transmit a Trigger frame with the UL STBC subfield set to 1 and the UL BW subfield
 20 set to indicate a bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz if at least one User Info field is addressed to a non-
 21 AP HE STA from which the HE AP has received an HE Capabilities element with the STBC Tx \leq 80 MHz
 22 subfield in HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 0.
 23

24 An HE AP shall not transmit a Trigger frame with the UL STBC subfield set to 1 and the UL BW subfield
 25 set to indicate 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz if at least one User Info field is addressed to a non-AP HE STA from
 26 which the HE AP has received an HE Capabilities element with the STBC Tx > 80 MHz subfield in HE
 27 PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 0.
 28

29 An HE STA that sends a Control frame in an HE ER SU PPDU format should use:
 30

- 31 — DCM encoding if the most recently received PPDU sent by the HE STA, after association, to the
 32 STA soliciting the Control frame used DCM; otherwise the STA should not use DCM for the Control
 33 frame.
- 34 — 106-tone HE ER SU PPDU if the most recently received PPDU sent by the HE STA, after associa-
 35 tion, to the STA soliciting the Control frame was a 106-tone HE ER SU PPDU; otherwise the STA
 36 should not use a 106-tone HE ER SU PPDU for the Control frame.

37 NOTE—Transmit parameter switching occurs in subsequent TXOPs. A STA that solicits a Control frame from a peer
 38 STA accounts for the transmit parameter of the Control frame to calculate the expected duration of the TXOP. The
 39 responding STA determines that the most recent PPDU sent to the soliciting STA is received if it receives an immediate
 40 acknowledgment by the soliciting STA in response to the PPDU.
 41

42 **26.15.4 Rate selection constraints for HE STAs**

43 **26.15.4.1 Receive HE-MCS and NSS Set**

44 The receive HE-MCS and NSS set is the set of <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples for PPDU bandwidths less than or
 45 equal to 80 MHz, 160 MHz PPDUs or 80+80 MHz PPDUs that a STA is capable of receiving. The receive
 46 HE-MCS and NSS set for a first STA is determined by a second HE STA for each <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple
 47 NSS = 1, ..., 8 and PPDU bandwidth (less than or equal to 80 MHz, and 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz) from the
 48 Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Capabilities element received from the first STA as fol-
 49 lows:
 50

- 51 — If support for the HE-MCS for NSS spatial streams at that PPDU bandwidth is mandatory (see 27.1.1
 52 (Introduction to the HE PHY)), then the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple at that bandwidth is supported by
 53 the first STA on receive.

- Otherwise, if the Max HE-MCS For n SS subfield ($n = \text{NSS}$) in each Rx HE-MCS Map b subfield for $b \in \{\leq 80 \text{ MHz}, 160 \text{ MHz}, 80+80 \text{ MHz}\}$ indicates support and neither the Operating Mode field nor the OM Control subfield is received from the first HE STA, then the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at PPDU bandwidth b for a given operating channel width is supported by the first STA on receive as defined in 9.4.2.247.4 (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field).
- Otherwise,
 - If the Operating Mode field is received from the first HE STA, the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at that PPDU bandwidth for a given operating channel width is supported by the first STA on receive as defined in 9.4.2.247.4 (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field) and by Equation (9-2a).
 - If the OM Control subfield is received from the first HE STA, the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at that PPDU bandwidth for a given operating channel width is supported by the first STA on receive as defined in 9.4.2.247.4 (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field) and by Equation (26-4).
- Otherwise, the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at that PPDU bandwidth is not supported by the first STA on receive.

The $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuples excluded by 26.15.4.3 (Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPDUs) can also be eliminated from the receive HE-MCS and NSS set.

An HE STA shall not, unless explicitly stated otherwise, transmit an HE PPDU unless the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple and bandwidth used are in the receive HE-MCS and NSS set of the receiving STA(s).

26.15.4.2 Transmit HE-MCS and NSS Set

The transmit HE-MCS and NSS set is the set of $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuples for PPDU bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz, 106 MHz PPDUs or 80+80 MHz PPDUs that a STA is capable of transmitting. The transmit HE-MCS and NSS set of a first STA is determined by a second STA for each $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple $\text{NSS} = 1, \dots, 8$ and PPDU bandwidth (less than or equal to 80 MHz, and 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz) from the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field received from the first STA as follows:

- If support for the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at that bandwidth is mandatory (see 27.1.1 (Introduction to the HE PHY)), then the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at that PPDU bandwidth is supported by the first STA on transmit.
- Otherwise, if the Max HE-MCS For n SS subfield ($n = \text{NSS}$) in each Tx HE-MCS Map b subfield for $b \in \{\leq 80 \text{ MHz}, 160 \text{ MHz}, 80+80 \text{ MHz}\}$ indicates support, then the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at PPDU bandwidth b for a given operating channel width is supported by the first STA on transmit as defined in 9.4.2.247.4 (Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field).
- Otherwise, the $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple at that PPDU bandwidth is not supported by the first STA on transmit.

A non-AP STA may exclude certain numbers of space-time streams, N_{STS} , as defined in 26.9.3 (Transmit operating mode (TOM) indication) from its transmit HE-MCS and NSS set.

26.15.4.3 Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPDUs

A STA shall not transmit a 20 MHz or 40 MHz HE PPDU with an $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple that has HE-MCS 0, 1, 2 or 3 and NSS less than or equal to 4 to a receiver STA that has marked as unsupported the HT-MCS with value $\text{HE-MCS} + 8 \times (\text{NSS} - 1)$ in the Rx MCS Bitmask subfield in the Supported MCS Set field in the HT Capabilities element it transmits. The transmission of a 20 MHz or 40 MHz HE PPDU with HE-MCS greater than 3 is not subject to this constraint.

A STA shall not transmit an 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE PPDU with an $\langle\text{HE-MCS, NSS}\rangle$ tuple that has HE-MCS 0 or 1 and NSS less than or equal to 4 to a receiver STA that has marked as unsupported the HT-MCS values of both $2 \times \text{HE-MCS} + 8 \times (\text{NSS} - 1)$ and $2 \times \text{HE-MCS} + 1 + 8 \times (\text{NSS} - 1)$ in the Rx

1 MCS Bitmask subfield in the Supported MCS Set field in the HT Capabilities element it transmits. The
 2 transmission of an 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE PPDU with HE-MCS greater than 1 is not subject
 3 to this constraint.
 4

5 An example tabulation of this behavior is given in Table 26-13 (Example of rate selection for HE PPDUs).
 6
 7
 8

9 **Table 26-13—Example of rate selection for HE PPDUs**

HT-MCSs that are marked as unsupported	<HE-MCS, NSS> tuples that are not used for CBW20 and CBW40	<HE-MCS, NSS> tuples that are not used for CBW80, CBW160, and CBW80+80
0, 8, 16	<0, 1>, <0, 2>, <0, 3>	-
1, 9	<1, 1>, <1, 2>	-
10	<2, 2>	-
3	<3, 1>	-
0, 1	<0, 1>, <1, 1>	<0, 1>
2, 3	<2, 1>, <3, 1>	<1, 1>
0, 1, 8, 9	<0, 1>, <1, 1>, <0, 2>, <1, 2>	<0, 1>, <0, 2>

34 **26.15.4.4 Rx Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set**

35 For each <VHT-MCS, NSS> tuple, NSS = 1, ..., 8, and bandwidth (20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, and 160
 36 MHz or 80+80 MHz) from the Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set field received from a first STA, a second
 37 HE STA shall follow the rules in subclause 10.7.12.1 (Rx Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set) to determine
 38 the Rx Supported VHT-MCS and NSS Set of the first HE STA with the following exception:
 39

- 40 — If the second HE STA receives OM Control subfield from the first HE STA, the receive HE-MCS
 41 and NSS Set of a first HE STA is determined by a second HE STA according to 9.4.2.158.3 (Sup-
 42 ported VHT-MCS and NSS Set field) and Table 26-9 (Setting of the VHT Channel Width and VHT
 43 NSS at an HE STA transmitting the OM Control subfield).

44 NOTE—If the second STA receives both an Operating Mode field and an OM Control subfield from the first STA, the
 45 rules in 26.9.1 (General) apply.

46 **26.15.5 Additional rules for ER beacons and group addressed frames**

47 An AP that transmits a Beacon frame or group addressed frames in an HE ER SU PPDU shall transmit the
 48 HE ER SU PPDU with an <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple where the HE-MCS is a mandatory HE-MCS and
 49 NSS = 1.
 50

51 A Beacon frame or a group addressed frame transmitted in an HE ER SU PPDU shall be sent as an S-MPDU
 52 (see Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the S-MPDU context)), except for group addressed Data frames,
 53 which may also be sent as an A-MPDU subject to the rules in 10.12.4 (A-MPDU aggregation of group
 54 addressed Data frames).
 55

56 The HE AP transmitting the HE ER SU PPDU shall set the TXVECTOR parameters as follows:
 57
 58

- CH_BANDWIDTH to ER-RU-242
- HE_LTF_TYPE to 2xHE-LTF and GI_TYPE to 0u8s_GI or 1u6s_GI, or HE_LTF_TYPE to 4xHE-LTF and GI_TYPE to 3u2s_GI
- FEC_CODING to BCC_CODING
- STBC to 0
- DCM to 0
- DOPPLER to 0
- BEAMFORMED to 0
- NUM_STS to 1
- NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING to 16 μ s
- NO_SIG_EXTN to false in the 2.4 GHz band and true otherwise
- BEAM_CHANGE as defined in 26.11.3 (BEAM_CHANGE)

26.15.6 Additional rules for HE SU beacons and group addressed frames

An AP that transmits a Beacon frame or group addressed frames in an HE SU PPDU shall transmit the HE SU PPDU with an <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple where the HE-MCS is a mandatory HE-MCS and NSS = 1.

NOTE—An AP might send a Beacon frame in an HE SU PPDU only when operating in the 6 GHz band (see 26.17.2.2 (Beacons in the 6 GHz band)).

A Beacon frame or a group addressed frame transmitted in an HE SU PPDU shall be sent as an S-MPDU (see Table 9-532 (A-MPDU contents in the S-MPDU context)), except for group addressed Data frames, which may also be sent as an A-MPDU subject to the rules in 10.12.4 (A-MPDU aggregation of group addressed Data frames).

If the HE SU PPDU contains a group addressed frame intended for at least one STA that is not associated to the AP, then the HE AP shall set the TXVECTOR parameters for the HE PPDU as follows:

- CH_BANDWIDTH to CBW20
- HE_LTF_TYPE to 2xHE-LTF and GI_TYPE to 0u8s_GI or 1u6s_GI, or HE_LTF_TYPE to 4xHE-LTF and GI_TYPE to 3u2s_GI
- FEC_CODING to BCC_CODING
- STBC to 0
- DCM to 0
- DOPPLER to 0
- BEAMFORMED to 0
- NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING to 16 μ s
- NO_SIG_EXTN to false in the 2.4 GHz band and true otherwise
- BEAM_CHANGE as defined in 26.11.3 (BEAM_CHANGE)

Otherwise, if the HE SU PPDU contains group addressed frames intended only for associated STAs then the AP shall set the TXVECTOR parameters listed above to values that are indicated as supported by all the intended STAs, except that the CH_BANDWIDTH shall be set to CBW20 if at least one of the intended STAs is currently not in the awake state.

26.15.7 Additional rules for group addressed frames in an HE MU PPDU

An HE AP may include group addressed frames in an HE MU PPDU subject to the rules defined in this sub-clause.

1 An HE AP shall not include a Beacon frame in an HE MU PPDU.
 2
 3

4 An HE AP that includes a group addressed frame in an HE MU PPDU shall ensure that the frame is included
 5 in a broadcast RU in the HE MU PPDU. The HE AP shall additionally ensure that the following conditions
 6 are satisfied for the broadcast RU:

- 7 — The RU allocation complies with the rules in 26.5.1.3 (RU allocation in an HE MU PPDU) and
 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation)
- 8 — The <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple shall have a mandatory HE-MCS and NSS = 1
- 9 — The broadcast RU shall be located within:
 - 10 • The primary 20 MHz channel if the group addressed frame is a FILS Discovery or a broadcast
 Probe Response frame, except when the primary 20 MHz channel does not coincide with a PSC
 and the AP is a 6 GHz-only AP, in which case the broadcast RU may be in a PSC that is within
 the BSS operating channel width (see 26.17.2.3 (Scanning in the 6 GHz band)). The broadcast
 RU size shall not exceed 106 subcarriers if the MU PPDU has a bandwidth that is greater than 20
 MHz.
 - 11 • The primary 20 MHz channel if the group addressed frame is addressed to at least one associated
 non-AP STA that has not declared to be in the awake state. The broadcast RU size shall not
 exceed 106 subcarriers if the MU PPDU has a bandwidth that is greater than 20 MHz.
 - 12 • A bandwidth that is indicated as supported in reception by one or more associated non-AP STAs,
 if the group addressed frame is addressed only to those non-AP STAs and the STAs have
 declared to be in the awake state. The broadcast RU size shall not exceed the minimum common
 bandwidth that is supported in reception by all STAs in the HE Capabilities element they trans-
 mit or in the most recently sent OM Control or OMN frames.
 - 13 • The SST subchannel if the group addressed frame is addressed to one or more SST STAs, the pri-
 mary 20 MHz channel does not coincide with the subchannel assigned to the SST STAs and the
 frame is not addressed to any STAs other than the SST STAs in that subchannel (see 26.8.7.2
 (SST operation)). The broadcast RU size shall not exceed 106 subcarriers if the SST subchannel
 is 20 MHz.
- 14 — The TXVECTOR parameters listed below shall be set as follows:
 - 15 • HE_LTF_TYPE to 2xHE-LTF and GI_TYPE to 0u8s_GI or 1u6s_GI, or HE_LTF_TYPE to
 4xHE-LTF and GI_TYPE to 3u2s_GI
 - 16 • FEC_CODING to BCC_CODING
 - 17 • STBC to 0
 - 18 • DCM to 0
 - 19 • DOPPLER to 0
 - 20 • BEAMFORMED to 0
 - 21 • NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING to 16 μs
 - 22 • NO_SIG_EXTN to false in the 2.4 GHz band and true otherwise
 - 23 • BEAM_CHANGE as defined in 26.11.3 (BEAM_CHANGE)
 - 24 • STA_ID as defined in 26.11.1 (STA_ID)

53 Group addressed frames transmitted in an HE MU PPDU shall be sent as an S-MPDU (see Table 9-532 (A-
 54 MPDU contents in the S-MPDU context)) except for group addressed Data frames, which may also be sent
 55 within an A-MPDU subject to the rules in 10.13.4 (A-MPDU aggregation of group addressed Data frames).
 56

57 26.15.8 Additional rules for PPDUs sent in the 6 GHz band

61 An HE STA that transmits a PPDU that is not sent in response to a Trigger frame in the 6 GHz band and that
 62 contains a frame that is not a control response frame with the Address 1 field set to the MAC address of an
 63 HE AP with which it is not associated and from which it has received a FILS Discovery frame or an HE
 64 Operation element shall ensure that the PPDU meets the following conditions:
 65

- The bandwidth of the PPDU is less than or equal to the operating bandwidth of the HE BSS as indicated in the BSS Operating Channel Width subfield of the FILS Discovery frame or in the Channel Width subfield of the HE Operation element sent by the AP
- The PPDU is transmitted with a number of spatial streams that is less than or equal to the maximum number of spatial streams of the HE BSS as indicated in the Maximum Number of Spatial Stream subfield of the FILS Discovery frame or in the Basic HE-MCS and NSS Set field of the HE Operation element sent by the AP
- If the PPDU is an HE PPDU, then the PPDU is transmitted with an <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple providing a data rate that is greater than or equal to the minimum rate indicated in the FILS Minimum Rate field (if present) of the FILS Discovery frame or in the Minimum Rate field of the HE Operation element sent by the AP.
- If the PPDU is a non-HT PPDU then the PPDU is transmitted with a data rate that is greater than or equal to the minimum of <R, 54 Mb/s>, where R is the minimum rate indicated in the FILS Minimum Rate field (if present) of the FILS Discovery frame or in the Minimum Rate field of the HE Operation element sent by the AP

An HE STA that transmits a PPDU that is not sent in response to a Trigger frame in the 6 GHz band and that contains a frame that is not a control response frame with Address 1 field set to the MAC address of the AP to which it is associated shall ensure that the PPDU meets the following conditions:

- If the PPDU is a non-HT (duplicate) PPDU then the PPDU is transmitted with a data rate that is greater than or equal to the minimum of <R, 54 Mb/s>, where R is the minimum rate indicated in the Minimum Rate field of the HE Operation element sent by the AP.
- If the PPDU is an HE PPDU then the PPDU is transmitted with an <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple providing a data rate that is not less than the data rate indicated in the Minimum Rate field of the HE Operation element sent by the AP.

An HE STA that transmits a PPDU that is not an HE TB PPDU in the 6 GHz band and that contains a frame that is not a control response frame with Address 1 field set to the MAC address of an AP with which it is not associated shall determine a local maximum transmit power for that transmission following the rules in 11.7.5 (Specification of regulatory and local maximum transmit power levels), if the local maximum transmit power is received in Transmit Power Envelope elements and combinations of Country elements and Power Constraint elements in the most recent Beacon or Probe Response frame, on the channel from that AP.

26.16 Midamble parameter setting rules

A STA shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter DOPPLER to 1 for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU unless the STA has received from each of the intended recipient STAs an HE Capabilities element with the Doppler Rx subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

A STA shall not send a Trigger frame with the Doppler subfield in the Common Info field set to 1 unless the STA has received from each of the intended recipient STAs of the Trigger frame an HE Capabilities element with the Doppler Tx subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field equal to 1.

A STA shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter HE_LTF_TYPE to 1xHE-LTF and the parameter DOPPER to 1 for an HE SU PPDU unless the STA has received an HE Capabilities element from each of the intended recipient STAs where the HE PHY Capabilities Information field meets the following conditions:

- The Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF subfield is 1
- The HE SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1

1 A STA shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter HE_LTF_TYPE to 1xHE-LTF and the parameter DOP-
 2 PLER to 1 for an HE ER SU PPDU unless the HE STA has received from each of the intended recipient
 3 STAs an HE Capabilities element in which the HE PHY Capabilities Information field meets the following
 4 conditions:
 5 — The Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF subfield is 1
 6 — The HE ER SU PPDU With 1x HE-LTF And 0.8 μ s GI subfield is 1
 7

8
 9 A STA shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter HE_LTF_TYPE to 2xHE-LTF and the parameter DOP-
 10 PLER to 1 for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU unless the HE STA has received an HE
 11 Capabilities element with the Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities
 12 Information field equal to 1.
 13

14 A non-AP STA shall not transmit an HE Capabilities element with the Doppler Tx subfield in the HE PHY
 15 Capabilities Information field set to 1 unless the non-AP STA meets all of the following conditions:
 16 — The non-AP STA is capable of transmitting an HE TB PPDU with midambles and a 4x HE-LTF
 17 — If non-AP STA has set the Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF subfield in the HE PHY Capabili-
 18 ties Information field to 1, the non-AP STA is capable of transmitting an HE TB PPDU with midam-
 19 bles and a 2x HE-LTF
 20 — If the non-AP STA has set both the Midamble Tx/Rx 2x And 1x HE-LTF and the Full Bandwidth UL
 21 MU-MIMO subfields in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field to 1, the non-AP STA is capable
 22 of transmitting an HE TB PPDU with midambles, using full bandwidth UL MU-MIMO, and a 1x
 23 HE-LTF
 24

25 A STA that transmits an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter DOPPLER set
 26 to 1 shall not set the TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS to indicated a number of space-time streams that is
 27 greater than indicated in the Midamble Tx/Rx Max NSTS subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information
 28 subfield of the HE Capabilities element received from any of the intended recipient STAs.
 29

30 A STA transmitting an HE MU PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter DOPPLER set to 1 shall not set the
 31 TXVECTOR parameter NUM_STS[u] to indicate a number of space-time streams that is greater than indi-
 32 cated in the Midamble Tx/Rx Max NSTS subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information subfield of the
 33 HE Capabilities element received from the intended recipient STA u .
 34

35 An AP transmitting a Trigger frame with the Doppler subfield in the Common Info field set to 1 shall not set
 36 the Number Of Spatial Streams subfield in a User Info field in the Trigger frame to indicate a number of
 37 space-time streams that is greater than indicated in the Midamble Tx/Rx Max NSTS subfield in the HE PHY
 38 Capabilities Information subfield of the HE Capabilities element received from the STA addressed by the
 39 User Info field.
 40

50 26.17 HE BSS operation

52 26.17.1 Basic HE BSS operation

55 The Beacon frames generated within an HE BSS contain an HE Operation element.
 56

57 An HE STA has dot11HEOptionImplemented equal to true.
 58

60 A STA that is operating in an HE BSS shall be able to receive and transmit at each of the <HE-MCS, NSS>
 61 tuple values indicated by the Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Operation parameter of the
 62 MLME-START.request primitive and shall be able to receive at each of the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuple values
 63 indicated by the Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set field of the HE Capabilities parameter of the MLME-
 64 START.request primitive.
 65

1 The basic HE-MCS and NSS set is the set of <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples that are supported by all HE STAs
 2 that are members of an HE BSS. It is established by the STA that starts the HE BSS, indicated by the Basic
 3 HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Operation parameter in the MLME-START.request primitive. Other
 4 HE STAs determine the basic HE-MCS and NSS set from the Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field of the HE
 5 Operation element in the BSSIDescription derived through the scan mechanism (see 11.1.4.1 (General)).
 6

7
 8 An HE STA shall not attempt to join (MLME-JOIN.request primitive) a BSS unless it supports (i.e., is able
 9 to both transmit and receive using) all of the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples in the basic HE-MCS and NSS set.
 10

11 NOTE—An HE STA does not attempt to (re)associate with an HE AP unless the STA supports (i.e., is able to both
 12 transmit and receive using) all of the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples in the Basic HE-MCS And NSS Set field in the HE Operation
 13 element transmitted by the AP because the MLME-JOIN.request primitive is a necessary precursor to (re)association.
 14

15
 16 A STA operating in the 2.4 GHz band that sets dot11HEOptionImplemented to true shall set
 17 dot11HighThroughputOptionImplemented to true. A STA operating in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz band that sets
 18 dot11HEOptionImplemented to true shall set both dot11VHTOptionImplemented and dot11HighThrough-
 19 putOptionImplemented to true. A non-AP STA that sets dot11HEOptionImplemented to true shall set dot11-
 20 MultiBSSIDImplemented to true.
 21

22
 23 An HE STA operating in the 6 GHz band shall inherit the functionalities of a VHT STA except that it is
 24 exempt from following VHT and HT functionalities and/or requirements that are unavailable or superseded
 25 by equivalent HE functionalities and/or requirements (see Clauses 26 (High Efficiency (HE) MAC specifi-
 26 cation) and 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification)), and that it shall use the HE format instead of the
 27 VHT, HT_GF, or HT_MF format for PPDUs transmitted in the 6 GHz band. Additional HE functionalities
 28 and/or requirements for the 6 GHz band are defined in 26.17.2 (HE BSS operation in the 6 GHz band).
 29

30
 31 A STA that is an HE AP or an HE mesh STA declares the channel widths at which it is capable of operating
 32 in the PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element that it transmits (see Table 9-321b
 33 (Subfields of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field)).
 34

35
 36 An HE AP operating in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz bands shall set B1 in the Supported Channel Width Set field in
 37 the PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element to indicate support for 40 MHz and
 38 80 MHz channel width and may set B2 and B3 in the Supported Channel Width Set field to indicate support
 39 for either 160 MHz channel width or 160/80+80 MHz channel width or both.
 40

41
 42 A STA transmitting an HT Capabilities element and HE Capabilities element shall set the Supported Chan-
 43 nel Width Set subfield of the HT Capabilities element to 1 if either B0 or B1 of the Supported Channel
 44 Width Set subfield of the HE Capabilities element is 1 unless the STA is a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA,
 45 in which case the Supported Channel Width Set subfield of the HT Capabilities element is set to 0.
 46

47
 48 A STA transmitting a VHT Capabilities element and HE Capabilities element shall set the Supported Chan-
 49 nel Width Set subfield of the VHT Capabilities element to indicate the same channel width as indicated in
 50 the HE Capabilities element unless the STA is a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA, in which case the Sup-
 51 ported Channel Width Set subfield of the VHT Capabilities element is reserved.
 52

53
 54 At a minimum, an HE STA sets the Rx MCS Bitmask subfield of the Supported MCS Set field of its HT
 55 Capabilities element according to the setting of each Rx HE-MCS Map b subfield, $b \in \{\leq 80 \text{ MHz}, 160$
 56 $\text{MHz}, 80+80 \text{ MHz}\}$, of the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field of its HE Capabilities element as fol-
 57 lows: for each Max HE-MCS For n SS subfield, $1 \leq n \leq 4$, of each Rx HE-MCS Map b subfield, $b \in \{\leq 80$
 58 $\text{MHz}, 160 \text{ MHz}, 80+80 \text{ MHz}\}$, with a value other than 3 (no support for that number of spatial streams), the
 59 STA shall indicate support for HT MCSs $8 \times (n - 1)$ to $8 \times (n - 1) + 7$ in the Rx MCS Bitmask subfield,
 60 where n is the number of spatial streams, except for those HT-MCSs marked as unsupported as described in
 61 26.15.4.3 (Additional rate selection constraints for HE PPDUs).
 62

1 An HE AP or an HE mesh STA shall set the VHT Operation Information Present field in the HE Operation
 2 element to 0 if a VHT Operation element is present in the frame that carries the HE Operation element or if
 3 the frame that carries the HE Operation element is sent in the 2.4 GHz band. An HE AP or HE mesh STA
 4 shall set the VHT Operation Information Present field in the HE Operation element to 1 if a VHT Operation
 5 element is not present in the frame that carries the HE Operation element and the frame is sent in the 5 GHz
 6 band.
 7

8
 9 An HE AP or an HE mesh STA that transmits an HE Operation element that has the VHT Operation Infor-
 10 mation Present field set to 1 shall do one of the following to set the BSS operating channel:
 11

- 12 — Set the STA Channel Width subfield and Channel Center Frequency Segment 2 subfield in the HT
 13 Operation Information field in the HT Operation element, the Channel Width subfield in the VHT
 14 Operation Information field in the HE Operation element, the Channel Center Frequency Segment 0
 15 and Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 subfields in the VHT Operation Information field in the
 16 HE Operation element to indicate the BSS bandwidth as defined in Table 11-24 (VHT BSS band-
 17 width) and Table 11-26 (Extended NSS channel width) respectively based on the Extended NSS BW
 18 Support and Supported Channel Width Set fields.
 19
- 20 — Set the STA Channel Width subfield and Channel Center Frequency Segment 2 subfield in the HT
 21 Operation Information field in the HT Operation element, the Channel Width subfield in the VHT
 22 Operation Information field in the HE Operation element, the Channel Center Frequency Segment 0
 23 and Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 subfields in the VHT Operation Information field in the
 24 HE Operation element to indicate the BSS bandwidth as defined in Table 11-24 (VHT BSS band-
 25 width) and Table 11-26 (Extended NSS channel width) respectively based on the Rx HE-MCS Map
 26 ≤ 80 MHz, Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz, and Rx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz fields.
 27

28 NOTE 1—The Channel Center Frequency Segment 2 is 0 if Table 11-24 (VHT BSS bandwidth) is applied.
 29

30 NOTE 2—These two methods give the same result.
 31

32 The setting of the Channel Center Frequency Segment 0, Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 and Channel
 33 Center Frequency Segment 2 subfields is defined in Table 11-25 (Setting of Channel Center Frequency Seg-
 34 ment 0, Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 and Channel Center Frequency Segment 2 subfields), except
 35 that the Max NSS support is provided by the HE STA in frames that contain an HE Capabilities element (see
 36 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)) and an Operating Mode field (see 9.2.4.6.4.3 (Operating Mode) and
 37 9.4.1.53 (Operating Mode field)), where in the table the maximum NSS support refers to the HE maximum
 38 NSS support instead of the VHT maximum NSS support for an HE STA.
 39

40 An HE STA shall determine the channelization using the information in the Primary Channel field of the HT
 41 Operation element when operating in 2.4 GHz and the combination of the information in the Primary Chan-
 42 nel field in the HT Operation element and the Channel Center Frequency Segment 0 and Channel Center
 43 Frequency Segment 1 subfields in the VHT Operation Information field in the VHT Operation element if
 44 operating in the 5 GHz band (see 21.3.14 (Channelization)). An HE STA determines the channelization as
 45 defined in 26.17.2 (HE BSS operation in the 6 GHz band) if operating in the 6 GHz band.
 46

47 An HE AP or an HE mesh STA shall set the Secondary Channel Offset subfield in the HT Operation Infor-
 48 mation field in the HT Operation element to indicate the secondary 20 MHz channel as defined in Table 9-
 49 168 (HT Operation element fields and subfields), if the BSS bandwidth is more than 20 MHz.
 50

51 An HE STA that is a member of an HE BSS shall follow the rules in 11.40.1 (Basic VHT BSS functionality)
 52 when transmitting a 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE PPDUs with the following
 53 exceptions:
 54

- 55 — An HE TB PPDU sent in response to a triggering frame follows the rules defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-
 56 AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
 57
- 58 — An 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz DL HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing may be trans-
 59 mitted if the primary 20 MHz or the primary 40 MHz are occupied by the transmission and certain 20
 60

1 MHz subchannels of the secondary channel are idle (see Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU
 2 PPDU) and 10.22.2.5 (EDCA channel access in VHT, HE, or TVHT BSS)).
 3

4 An HE STA shall not transmit to a recipient HE STA using a channel width that is not indicated as supported
 5 in the Supported Channel Width Set subfield in the HE Capabilities element received from that HE STA.
 6

7 An HE STA shall not transmit to a recipient HE STA using a channel width that exceeds the BSS channel
 8 width in the Channel Width field that is contained in:
 9

- 10 — The HE Operation element most recently exchanged with the recipient STA, if any, and if the Chan-
 nel Width field is present
- 11 — Otherwise, the VHT Operation element most recently exchanged with the recipient STA, if any
- 12 — Otherwise, the HT Operation element most recently exchanged with the recipient STA, if any.

13 A STA shall not transmit an HE PPDU to a recipient STA that carries a frame that is not an HE Compressed
 14 Beamforming/CQI frame (see 26.7.3 (Rules for HE sounding protocol sequences)) and that exceeds the
 15 maximum MPDU length capability indicated in the VHT Capabilities element last received from the recipi-
 16 ent STA in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band or, if a VHT Capabilities element has not been received from the
 17 recipient STA, that exceeds the maximum A-MSDU length indicated in the HT Capabilities element last
 18 received from the recipient STA in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band.
 19

20 A STA shall not transmit an HE PPDU to a recipient STA that carries a frame that is not an HE Compressed
 21 Beamforming/CQI frame (see 26.7.3 (Rules for HE sounding protocol sequences)) and that exceeds the
 22 maximum MPDU length capability indicated in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element last received from
 23 the recipient STA in the 6 GHz band.
 24

25 An HE AP shall set the RIFS Mode field in the HT Operation element to 0.
 26

27 An HE STA follows the rules in 11.40 (VHT BSS operation) for channel selection, determining scanning
 28 requirements, channel switching, NAV assertion and antenna indication when operating in the 5 GHz or 6
 29 GHz band unless explicitly stated otherwise in Clause 26. An HE STA shall additionally follow the rules in
 30 26.17.2 (HE BSS operation in the 6 GHz band) for scanning and operation in the 6 GHz band.
 31

32 An HE STA shall follow the rules in 11.16 (20/40 MHz BSS operation) for channel selection, determining
 33 scanning requirements, channel switching, NAV assertion when operating in 2.4 GHz unless explicitly
 34 stated otherwise in Clause 26.
 35

36 The AP of an ER BSS shall not respond with a Probe Response or (Re)Association Response frame to a
 37 Probe Request or (Re)Association Request frames, respectively, sent from a non-HT STA, or an HE STA
 38 that does not support Partial Band Extended Range capability if the HE AP transmits ER beacon in an HE
 39 ER SU PPDU with a 106-tone RU. An HE AP that is not operating an ER BSS may set the ER SU Disable
 40 subfield in the HE Operation element it transmits to 1.
 41

42 A STA shall have the same value of maximum VHT NSS defined by its Rx HE-MCS Map \leq 80 MHz sub-
 43 field in the HE Capabilities element as the maximum NSS value indicated by its Rx VHT-MCS Map field in
 44 the VHT Capabilities element. If a STA supports 160 MHz, the Maximum NSS defined by its Rx VHT-
 45 MCS Map field and Extended NSS BW Support field in the VHT Capabilities element at 160 MHz shall not
 46 be more than the maximum NSS defined by its Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz subfield in the HE Capabilities
 47 element at 160 MHz. If a STA supports 80+80 MHz, the maximum NSS defined by its Rx VHT-MCS Map
 48 field and Extended NSS BW Support field in the VHT Capabilities element at 80+80 MHz shall not be more
 49 than the maximum NSS defined by its Rx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz subfield in the HE Capabilities ele-
 50 ment at 80+80 MHz. For every NSS in VHT Capabilities elements and HE Capabilities elements transmitted
 51

1 by a STA, if the maximum HE-MCS is 9 or more, the maximal VHT-MCS shall be 9. Otherwise the maxi-
 2 mal VHT-MCS shall be the same as the HE-MCS. An HE STA shall not transmit a VHT Capabilities ele-
 3 ment with the Supported Channel Width Set field equal to 1 and the Extended NSS BW Support field equal
 4 to 3 or with the Supported Channel Width Set field equal to 2 and the Extended NSS BW Support field equal
 5 to 3.
 6

7
 8 If an HE STA supports 160 MHz, the maximum NSS defined by its Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz subfield for
 9 an HE-MCS in the HE Capabilities element at 160 MHz shall not be more than the maximum NSS defined
 10 by its Rx HE-MCS Map \leq 80 MHz subfield for the HE-MCS in the HE Capabilities element at 80 MHz.
 11

12
 13 If an HE STA supports 80+80 MHz, the maximum NSS defined by its Rx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz sub-
 14 field for an HE-MCS in the HE Capabilities element at 80+80 MHz shall not be more than the maximum
 15 NSS defined by its Rx HE-MCS Map \leq 80 MHz subfield for the HE-MCS in the HE Capabilities element at
 16 80 MHz.
 17

18
 19 **26.17.2 HE BSS operation in the 6 GHz band**

20
 21 **26.17.2.1 General**

22
 23 An HE STA that supports operation in the 6 GHz band sets dot11HE6GOptionImplemented to true.
 24

25
 26 An HE STA with dot11HE6GOptionImplemented equal to true and operating in the 6 GHz band is a 6 GHz
 27 HE STA.
 28

29
 30 A STA with dot11HE6GOptionImplemented equal to true shall have dot11ExtendedChannelSwitchActi-
 31 vated, dot11MultiDomainCapabilityActivated and dot11OperatingClassesRequired equal to true and shall
 32 set to 1 the value of the Extended Channel Switching field in the Extended Capabilities elements it trans-
 33 mits.
 34

35
 36 A 6 GHz HE STA shall meet the Class A requirements in 27.3.14 (Transmit requirements for PPDU sent in
 37 response to a triggering frame).
 38

39
 40 An HE AP operating in the 6 GHz band shall indicate support for at least 80 MHz channel width.
 41

42 An HE AP operating in the 6 GHz band shall set the Co-Hosted BSS subfield in HE Operation element to 0.
 43

44
 45 A 6 GHz HE STA shall not transmit an HT Capabilities element, VHT Capabilities element, HT Operation
 46 element, VHT Operation element or an HE Operation element that contains a VHT Operation Information
 47 field.
 48

49
 50 A 6 GHz HE STA shall not transmit in an HE PPDU a frame other than an HE Compressed Beamforming/
 51 CQI frame (see 26.7.3 (Rules for HE sounding protocol sequences)) that exceeds the maximum MPDU
 52 length capability indicated in the Extended HE Capabilities element received from the recipient HE STA
 53 6G.
 54

55 An AP or mesh STA operating in the 6 GHz band shall include the 6 GHz Operation Information field in the
 56 HE Operation elements it transmits. The AP or mesh STA shall set the Channel Width subfield, the Channel
 57 Center Frequency Segment 0, and the Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 subfields of the 6 GHz Opera-
 58 tion Information field as defined in Table 26-14 (6 GHz BSS channel width), based on the Rx HE-MCS Map
 59 \leq 80 MHz, Rx HE-MCS Map 160 MHz, and Rx HE-MCS Map 80+80 MHz subfields of the Supported HE
 60 MCS And NSS Set field of the HE Capabilities element transmitted by the AP.
 61

62
 63 A 6 GHz HE STA shall determine the BSS channelization using the Primary Channel, Channel Center Fre-
 64 quency Segment 0 and Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 subfields in the 6 GHz Operation Information
 65

Table 26-14—6 GHz BSS channel width

Channel Width field	Center Frequency Segment 1 field	BSS channel width
0	0	20 MHz
1	0	40 MHz
2	0	80 MHz
3	CCFS1 > 0 and CCFS1 – CCFS0 = 8	160 MHz
3	CCFS1 > 0 and CCFS1 – CCFS0 > 16	80+80 MHz
NOTE 1—CCFS0 represents the value of the Channel Center Frequency Segment 0 field and CCFS1 represents the value of the Channel Center Frequency Segment 1 field.		

field in the HE Operation element when operating in 6 GHz band (see 21.3.14 (Channelization) for the channelization and 27.3.22.2 (Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band) for the equation defining the channel center frequencies in the 6 GHz band).

A STA shall not transmit an HT PPDU in the 6 GHz band. A STA shall not transmit a VHT PPDU in the 6 GHz band. A STA shall not transmit a DSSS, HR/DSSS, or ERP-OFDM PPDU in the 6 GHz band.

A 6 GHz HE STA shall set dot11SpectrumManagementRequired to true and operate as defined in 11.7 (TPC procedures).

A 6 GHz AP shall set dot11FILSOmitReplicateProbeResponses to true.

A 6 GHz HE AP may respond with a (Re)Association Response frame with the Status Code field indicating DENIED_Poor_CHANNEL_CONDITIONS if it receives a (Re)Association Request frame from a non-AP STA below a minimum RSSI threshold value. A 6 GHz HE AP may send a Disassociation frame with the Reason Code field indicating POOR_RSSI_CONDITIONS to an associated non-AP STA if it receives frames from the STA below a minimum RSSI threshold value for a sufficiently long period of time. How an AP selects a minimum RSSI threshold value or sufficient interval of time is out of scope of this specification.

A 6 GHz non-AP HE STA that receives a (Re)Association Response frame with the Status Code field indicating DENIED_Poor_CHANNEL_CONDITIONS or a Disassociation frame with the Reason Code field indicating POOR_RSSI_CONDITIONS from a 6 GHz HE AP should not transmit a (Re)Association Request frame or a Probe Request frame to the AP until one of the following condition is met:

- Sufficient time has passed since it received the (Re)Association Response frame or Disassociation frame from the AP
- The STA has determined that a (Re)Association Request frame or Probe Request frame that it transmits will be received by the AP at a sufficiently high RSSI level than its previous transmission to the AP.

How a non-AP STA determines sufficient time has passed or a suitable RSSI threshold is out of scope of the standard.

1 **26.17.2.2 Beacons in the 6 GHz band**

2
3 An HE AP 6G transmits Beacon frames as defined in 11.1 (Synchronization), which may be contained in a
4 non-HT PPDU, non-HT duplicate PPDU, or HE SU PPDU.

5
6 An HE AP 6G that transmits a Beacon frame in a non-HT PPDU follows the rules in 10.6.5.1 (Rate selection
7 for non-STBC Beacon and non-STBC PSMP frames).

8
9 An HE AP 6G that transmits a Beacon frame in a non-HT duplicate PPDU shall follow the rules in 10.6.5.1
10 (Rate selection for non-STBC beacon and non-STBC PSMP frames) and shall set the TXVECTOR parameter
11 CH_BANDWIDTH of the PPDU to a value that is up to the operating channel width of the BSS.

12
13 If an HE AP 6G schedules a Beacon frame for transmission in a non-HT duplicate PPDU then it shall set the
14 Duplicate Beacon subfield to 1 in the 6 GHz Operation Information field of the HE Operation element it
15 transmits; otherwise the AP shall set the Duplicate Beacon subfield to 0.

16
17 An HE AP 6G that transmits a Beacon frame in an HE SU PPDU shall follow the rules defined in 26.15.6
18 (Additional rules for HE SU beacons and group addressed frames).

19
20 An AP shall not transmit a Beacon frame in an HE SU PPDU or non-HT duplicate PPDU in the 2.4 GHz or
21 5 GHz bands.

22 **26.17.2.3 Scanning in the 6 GHz band**

23 **26.17.2.3.1 General**

24
25 A 6 GHz AP may set dot11ColocatedRNRImplemented to true and shall set dot11ShortSSIDListImple-
26 mented to true. An AP that is in the same co-located AP set as a 6 GHz AP shall set dot11ColocatedRNRIm-
27 plemented to true and dot11ShortSSIDListImplemented to true.

28
29 In the 6 GHz band, a STA shall not transmit a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address that
30 includes a Short SSID List element with more than Short SSID field.

31
32 NOTE—In bands other than the 6 GHz band, there might be more than one Short SSID field in a Short SSID List ele-
33 ment in a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address. A Probe Request frame does not contain more than
34 one Short SSID List element (see Table 9-40 (Probe Request frame body)).

35 **26.17.2.3.2 AP behavior for fast passive scanning**

36
37 A 6 GHz AP that does not share the same co-located AP set as an AP operating in the 2.4 GHz band or
38 5 GHz band is referred to as a 6 GHz-only AP.

39
40 A 6 GHz-only AP shall schedule for transmission FILS Discovery frames as described in 11.46.2.1 (FILS
41 Discovery frame transmission), except that the following apply:

- 42 — If the FILS Discovery frame is contained in a DL HE MU PPDU then it shall be included in the
43 broadcast RU of the DL HE MU PPDU as defined in 26.15.7 (Additional rules for group addressed
44 frames in an HE MU PPDU).
- 45 — The transmission of FILS Discovery frames may be omitted if a broadcast Probe Response frame or
46 a Beacon frame is scheduled for transmission at that target transmit time instead of the FILS Discov-
47 ery frame, or if the AP does not intend to be discovered by STAs.
- 48 — The AP shall set dot11FILSFDFrameBeaconMaximumInterval to a nonzero value that is less than or
49 equal to 20 TUs, and shall follow the rules in 11.1.3.8 (Multiple BSSID procedure) if dot11Mul-
50 tiBSSIDImplemented is true.

1 An AP operating in the 6 GHz band that is co-located with an AP that transmits a Reduced Neighbor Report
 2 and/or a Neighbor Report element reporting that 6 GHz AP may schedule for transmission a FILS Discovery
 3 frame every dot11FILSFDFrameBeaconMaximumInterval.

5
 6 An AP operating in the 6 GHz band that is co-located with an AP that transmits a Reduced Neighbor Report
 7 and/or a Neighbor Report element with the 20 TU Probe Responses Active subfield reporting that 6 GHz AP
 8 shall schedule for transmission an unsolicited broadcast Probe Response frame every dot11FILSFDFrame-
 9 BeaconMaximumInterval.
 10

11
 12 An AP operating in the 6 GHz band may send an unsolicited broadcast Probe Response frame, and shall fol-
 13 low the rules in 11.1.3.8 (Multiple BSSID procedure) if dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is true. The Probe
 14 Response frame may be included in the broadcast RU of a DL HE MU PPDU as defined in 26.15.7 (Addi-
 15 tional rules for group addressed frames in an HE MU PPDU). The Probe Response may be carried in a non-
 16 HT duplicate PPDU in which case the PPDU shall have the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH set
 17 to a value that is up to the operating channel width of the BSS.
 18

19
 20 An HE AP operating in the 6 GHz band that transmits a FILS Discovery frame carrying an FD Capability
 21 field shall set the PHY Index subfield to 4.
 22

23
 24 An AP that corresponds to a nontransmitted BSSID shall not schedule for transmission FILS Discovery
 25 frames (see 11.46.2.1 (FILS Discovery frame transmission)) or unsolicited broadcast Probe Response
 26 frames (see 11.1.4.3.4 (Criteria for sending a response)).
 27

28
 29 If a 6 GHz-only EMA AP transmits a FILS Discovery frame, it shall include a Reduced Neighbor Report
 30 element in the FILS Discovery frame carrying information of all nontransmitted BSSIDs in the multiple
 31 BSSID set that are discoverable.
 32

33
 34 NOTE—A FILS Discovery frame transmitted by a 6 GHz AP with the Multiple BSSIDs Presence Indicator subfield set
 35 to 1 and not carrying a Reduced Neighbor Report element indicates the presence of a Multiple BSSID element carrying
 36 a complete list of nontransmitted BSSID profiles in the Beacon frame at the advertised TBTT.
 37

38
 39 If a 6 GHz-only EMA AP transmits a Beacon or broadcast Probe Response frame, it shall include a Reduced
 40 Neighbor Report element in that frame carrying information of all nontransmitted BSSIDs in the multiple
 41 BSSID set that are discoverable and not carried in the Nontransmitted BSSID Profile subelement(s) of the
 42 Multiple BSSID element carried in that frame.
 43

44
 45 A 6 GHz-only AP should set up the BSS with a primary 20 MHz channel that coincides with a preferred
 46 scanning channel (PSC) (see 26.17.2.3.3 (Non-AP STA scanning behavior)).
 47

48
 49 NOTE—An AP might initiate a BSS with a primary channel that coincides with a PSC in order to assist STAs that are
 50 scanning the 6 GHz band to discover the BSS. The AP might subsequently switch its operating channel to a non-PSC
 51 (e.g., using a CSA mechanism) if it does not expect additional (not yet associated) STAs will need to discover the BSS.
 52

53
 54 A 6 GHz AP shall not respond to a Probe Request frame if the frame carries a FILS Request Parameters ele-
 55 ment and the AP is unable to satisfy the response time constraint specified in the Max Channel Time field in
 56 the element (see 11.1.4.3.4 (Criteria for sending a response)). A 6 GHz AP shall respond with the next Bea-
 57 con frame if the conditions specified in 11.1.4.3.4 (Criteria for sending a response) are satisfied. A 6 GHz
 58 AP that receives a Probe Request frame with the Address 1 field equal to the broadcast address, shall
 59 respond with a Probe Response frame with the Address 1 field set to the broadcast address.
 60

61 **26.17.2.3.3 Non-AP STA scanning behavior**

62
 63 The set of 20 MHz channels in the 6 GHz band, with channel center frequency, ch_a = Channel starting fre-
 64 quency – 55 + 80 × n (MHz) are referred to as preferred scanning channels (PSCs). Channel starting fre-
 65 quency is defined in 27.3.22.2 (Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band), and n = 1,..., 15.
 66

1 NOTE—PSCs might not all be available in a specific location due to regulatory restrictions. A STA scanning the 6 GHz
 2 band knows where these PSCs are located since their position is fixed.
 3

4 A non-AP STA that is actively scanning a channel in the 6 GHz band shall operate as defined in 11.1.4.3.2
 5 (Active scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA), unless a given rule is superseded by the rules defined in
 6 26.17.2.3 (Scanning in the 6 GHz band).
 7

8
 9 The non-AP STA shall not transmit a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address with the Address
 10 3 field set to the wildcard BSSID, and the SSID set to the wildcard SSID.
 11

12
 13 The non-AP STA shall not send a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address with the Address
 14 3 field (BSSID) set to the BSSID of an AP from which it has already received a Probe Response or a Beacon
 15 frame since the start of its scanning on that channel.
 16

17
 18 The non-AP STA shall not send a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address with the Address
 19 3 field (BSSID) set to the BSSID of a nontransmitted BSSID if it has already received the nontransmitted
 20 BSSID profile for that BSSID via a Beacon frame or Probe Response frame sent by the transmitted BSSID
 21 since the start of its scanning on that channel.
 22

23
 24 The non-AP STA shall not send a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address with the SSID
 25 field and/or the Address 3 field set to the SSID and/or BSSID, respectively, of an AP for which it has
 26 received a Reduced Neighbor Report or Neighbor Report element with the 20 TU Probe Responses Active
 27 subfield corresponding to that AP set to 1 and that indicates that the AP is operating in that channel until the
 28 FILS Probe Timer reaches dot11FILSProbeDelay.
 29

30
 31 The non-AP STA shall not transmit more than one Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address
 32 with the Address 3 field set to the wildcard BSSID and the SSID field not set to the wildcard SSID during
 33 each 20 TU period scanning the channel. The non-AP STA shall not transmit more than three Probe Request
 34 frames to the broadcast destination address with Address 3 field set to a non-wildcard BSSID during each 20
 35 TU period scanning the channel.
 36

37
 38 The non-AP STA shall set dot11FILSProbeDelay to a value equal to or greater than 20 TU.
 39

40
 41 NOTE—A non-AP STA waits for at least 20 TU so that it maximizes the probability of receiving FILS Discovery or
 42 broadcast Probe Response frames, if any, sent by an AP in that channel (see 26.17.2.3.2 (AP behavior for fast passive
 43 scanning)).
 44

45
 46 If the non-AP STA is scanning a channel, then the following apply:
 47

- 48 — If the STA has received a FILS Discovery frame indicating that an AP is operating in that channel, or
 49 if the STA has received a Reduced Neighbor Report or Neighbor Report element indicating that an
 50 AP is operating in that channel then the STA may, subject to the other rules in this clause, send a
 51 Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address in that channel, with the SSID field set to
 52 the SSID that corresponds to that AP or with the Short SSID field of the Short SSID List element set
 53 to the short SSID that corresponds to that AP and/or with the Address 3 field set to the BSSID of that
 54 AP, starting from step c) of 11.1.4.3.2 (Active scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA)
- 55 — Otherwise, if the channel is a PSC and the STA has determined the medium to be idle for a continu-
 56 ous period of at least dot11MinPSCPProbeDelay from the start of the scan on the channel then the
 57 STA may, subject to other rules in this subclause, send a Probe Request frame to the broadcast desti-
 58 nation address in that channel, with the SSID field set to the SSID that corresponds to an AP or with
 59 the Short SSID field of the Short SSID List element set to the short SSID that corresponds to an AP,
 60 and/or with the Address 3 field set to the BSSID of an AP, after invoking the backoff procedure,
 61 described in 10.23.2.2 (EDCA backoff procedure) and starting from step c) of 11.1.4.3.2 (Active
 62 scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA)
 63
- 64
- 65

- Otherwise, if the STA has discovered the presence of an AP in that channel through means that are out of scope of the standard and the AP might be detected by the STA, then the STA may send a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address in that channel, with the Address 3 field set to the BSSID of that AP starting from step c) of 11.1.4.3.2 (Active scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA)
- Otherwise, if the FILS-Probe-Timer reaches dot11FILSProbeDelay and the channel is a PSC, then the STA may, subject to the other rules in this subclause, send a Probe Request to the broadcast destination address in that channel, starting from step c) of 11.1.4.3.2 (Active scanning procedure for a non-DMG STA),
- Otherwise, the STA shall not send a Probe Request frame to the broadcast destination address in that channel.

NOTE 1—The STA might send an individually addressed Probe Request frame to an AP for reasons other than active scan (e.g. to obtain an updated EDCA parameter set) even if it has already received a FILS Discovery, Probe Response or Beacon frame from that AP.

NOTE 2—An AP might be detected by a STA if the STA and the AP are on the same channel and in range.

If a non-AP STA sends a Probe Request frame in the 6 GHz band that includes a FILS Request Parameters element, then the non-AP STA shall set the value of PHY Support Criteria subfield in the element to either 0 or 3.

26.17.2.4 Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS

An AP that operates in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band and that is in the same co-located AP set as one or more 6 GHz APs shall include in Beacon and Probe Response frames that it transmits a Reduced Neighbor Report element with the Co-Located AP subfield in the BSS Parameters subfield in the TBTT Information field set to 1 to provide at least the operating channels and operating classes of those 6 GHz APs.

NOTE—The Reduced Neighbor Report element might contain information on 6 GHz APs that are not in the same co-located AP set as the transmitting AP. In this case the Co-Located AP subfield is set to 0.

An AP responds to a probe request by following the rules defined in 11.1.4.3.4 (Criteria for sending a response).

If neither of the following conditions is met:

- the AP transmits an individually addressed Probe Response frame to a STA that has signaled that it does not support operating in the 6 GHz band (see 9.4.2.53 (Supported Operating Classes element))
- the AP operating in the 6 GHz band does not intend to be discovered by STAs

then the following applies:

- If an AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band is in the same co-located AP set as one or more 6 GHz APs and has the same SSID as those 6 GHz APs, then the Beacon and Probe Response frames transmitted by the AP or by the transmitted BSSID of the same Multiple BSSID set as the AP shall include, for each of these 6 GHz APs, a TBTT Information field in a Reduced Neighbor Report element with the BSSID field set to the BSSID of the 6 GHz AP, and with either the Short SSID field set to the short SSID of the 6 GHz AP or the Same SSID subfield in the BSS Parameters subfield set to 1
- If an AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band is in the same co-located AP set as a 6 GHz AP and has a different SSID, and no other AP in the same co-located AP set and operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band is indicating the 6 GHz AP in a Reduced Neighbor Report element of the Beacon and Probe Response frames they transmit, then Beacon and Probe Response frames transmitted by the AP (or by the transmitted BSSID of the same Multiple BSSID set as the AP) shall include a TBTT Information field in a Reduced Neighbor Report element with the BSSID field and the Short SSID field set to the BSSID and short SSID of the 6 GHz AP, respectively.

If the AP reported in the TBTT Information field in the Reduced Neighbor Report element is a 6 GHz AP, the reporting AP shall include the BSS Parameters subfield in the TBTT Information field and shall follow the rules in 11.50 (Reduced neighbor report) to set the Multiple BSSID subfield, the Transmitted BSSID subfield, the Co-Located AP subfield and the OCT Recommended subfield.

A STA receiving a frame containing a Reduced Neighbor Report element describing a reported AP operating at 6 GHz with the OCT Recommended subfield set to 1 in the BSS Parameters subfield shall follow the rules in 11.50 (Reduced neighbor report) to perform active scanning, authentication and/or association with the reported AP.

An AP that operates in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band and that is in the same co-located AP set as one or more 6 GHz APs shall include the Advertisement Protocol element in Beacon and Probe Response frames that it transmits and shall support responding with a Neighbor Report ANQP element (9.4.5.19 Neighbor Report ANQP element) carrying one or more Neighbor Report elements (see 9.4.2.36 (Neighbor Report element)) that include at least the SSID information of all the 6 GHz APs in the same co-located AP set, except the 6 GHz APs that don't intend to be discovered.

NOTE 1—The Neighbor Report ANQP-element can also carry Neighbor Report elements containing information on 6 GHz APs that are not in the same co-located AP set.

NOTE 2—It is recommended that the AP responds with a GAS comeback delay of zero.

NOTE 3—if the Same SSID subfield is set to 0 in the BSS Parameters of a reported 6 GHz AP, a non-AP STA might:

- Use the OCT procedure described in 11.32.5 (On-channel Tunneling (OCT) operation) to send a Probe Request frame to the reported AP through over-the-air transmissions with the reporting AP, if the OCT Recommended subfield is 1 in the Neighbor AP Information field describing the reported AP.
- Use the ANQP procedure described in 11.23.3.3 (ANQP Procedure) to send an ANQP request with a Query ID corresponding to Neighbor Report to the reporting AP to retrieve the SSID of the 6 GHz APs, including the reported AP.
- Send a Probe Request frame to the reported AP including the BSSID of the reported AP.
- Send a Probe Request frame to the reported AP including the short SSID of the reported AP.
- Perform passive scanning in the operating channel of the reported AP.

An AP may set the 20 TU Probe Response Active subfield to 1 in a Reduced Neighbor Report element or Neighbor Report element it transmits if all 6 GHz APs of the same ESS that operate in the corresponding channel and that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame have dot1120TUProbeResponseOptionImplemented equal to true and so are transmitting unsolicited Probe Response frames every 20 TUs (see 26.17.2.3.2 (AP behavior for fast passive scanning)).

NOTE—An AP might be detected by a STA if the STA and the AP are on the same channel and in range.

An AP may set the Member Of ESS With 2.4/5 GHz Co-Located AP subfield to 1 in a Reduced Neighbor Report element, if the reported AP operates in the 6 GHz band and is part of an ESS where each AP in the ESS that is operating in the same band as the reported AP and that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame (irrespective of the operating channel), has dot11MemberOfColocated6GHzESSOptionImplemented equal to true and also has a corresponding AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band that is in the same co-located AP set as that AP.

NOTE—This subfield indicates that the reported AP is part of an ESS that has no 6 GHz-only APs that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame. This means that all APs operating in the 6 GHz band that are part of that ESS that might be detected by a STA receiving this frame can be discovered in the 2.4 GHz and/or 5 GHz bands.

1 **26.17.2.5 HE STA antenna indication**

2

3

4 A 6 GHz HE STA that does not change its receive antenna pattern after association shall set the Rx Antenna
 5 Pattern Consistency subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element to 1; otherwise, the STA shall set
 6 the Rx Antenna Pattern Consistency subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element to 0.

7

8

9 A 6 GHz HE STA that does not change its transmit antenna pattern after association shall set the Tx Antenna
 10 Pattern Consistency subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element to 1; otherwise, the STA shall set
 11 the Tx Antenna Pattern Consistency subfield in the HE 6 GHz Band Capabilities element to 0.

12

13

14 **26.17.3 BSS color**

15

16

17 **26.17.3.1 General**

18

19

20 BSS color identifies a BSS and assists a STA receiving a PPDU that carries BSS color in identifying the
 21 BSS from which the PPDU originates so that the STA can use the channel access rules in 26.10 (Spatial
 22 reuse operation), reduce power consumption as described in 26.14.1 (Intra-PPDU power save for non-AP
 23 HE STAs) or update its NAV as described in 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs).

24

25

26 All APs that are members of a multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set shall use the same BSS color.

27

28

29 A non-AP HE STA associated with an HE AP that is transmitting an HE PPDU in a direct path to a TDLS
 30 peer STA shall set the BSS Color subfield of the HE Operation element it transmits to the peer STA to the
 31 value indicated in the BSS Color subfield of the HE Operation element received from the HE AP. An HE
 32 STA associated with a non-HE AP that is the initiating STA of the TDLS link shall use the same active BSS
 33 color for all its TDLS links by setting the BSS Color subfield of the HE Operation element it transmits to the
 34 TDLS peer HE STA to the value of BSSID[39:44] of the non-HE AP or the transmitted BSSID[39:44] of the
 35 non-HE AP if the AP indicates the support of multiple BSSID in its Extended Capabilities element.

36

37

38 An HE STA that transmits an HE Operation element shall select an initial BSS color by following the proce-
 39 dure in 26.17.3.2 (Initial BSS color).

40

41

42 An HE STA that transmits an HE Operation element may disable BSS color by follow the procedure in
 43 26.17.3.3 (Disabling BSS color).

44

45

46 An HE STA that transmits an HE Operation element may determine that a BSS color collision has occurred
 47 by following the procedure in 26.17.3.5 (Detecting and reporting BSS color collision).

48

49

50 An HE AP may follow the procedure in 26.17.3.4 (Selecting and advertising a new BSS color) to select and
 51 advertise a new BSS color.

52

53

54 A non-AP HE STA may following the procedure in 26.17.3.5 (Detecting and reporting BSS color collision)
 55 to determine and report a BSS color collision to the AP with which is associated.

56

57

58 **26.17.3.2 Initial BSS color**

59

60

61 An HE STA shall set the BSS Color subfield of the first HE Operation element it transmits to a value in the
 62 range 1 to 63 and shall maintain that value in subsequent HE Operation elements it transmits for the lifetime
 63 of the BSS or until the BSS color is changed as described in 26.17.3.4 (Selecting and advertising a new BSS
 64 color).

65

1 **26.17.3.3 Disabling BSS color**

2

3 An HE STA that transmits an HE Operation element and that decides to temporarily disable the use of BSS
 4 color in the BSS to which it belongs, for example, after detecting a BSS color collision with an OBSS (see
 5 26.17.3.5 (Detecting and reporting BSS color collision)), shall set the value of BSS Color Disabled subfield
 6 in the HE Operation element to 1 to inform its associated peer HE STAs that the BSS color is disabled; oth-
 7 erwise the HE STA shall set the BSS Color Disabled subfield to 0.
 8

9

10 If the most recently received HE Operation element from the AP to which it is associated contained a value
 11 of 1 in the BSS Color Disabled subfield then:

- 13 — A non-AP HE STA should use the Address 1, Address 2 and Duration/ID fields of the frames con-
 14 tained in the received HE PPDUs instead of the RXVECTOR parameters BSS_COLOR and TXO-
 15 P_DURATION to determine whether the STA should update the intra-BSS NAV.
- 17 — A non-AP HE STA should use the Address 1, Address 2 fields of the frames contained in the
 18 received HE PPDUs instead of the RXVECTOR parameters BSS_COLOR and STA_ID to deter-
 19 mine whether the STA may go to doze state for the duration of that PPDU (see 26.14.1 (Intra-PPDU
 20 power save for non-AP HE STAs)).
 21

22

23 A non-AP HE STA may use the RXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of an HE PPDU to determine
 24 whether it should update the intra-BSS NAV (see 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)) and/or the STA may go to
 25 doze state for the duration of the PPDU (see 26.14.1 (Intra-PPDU power save for non-AP HE STAs)) if the
 26 most recently received HE Operation element from the AP to which it is associated contained a value of 0 in
 27 the BSS Color Disabled subfield.
 28

29 **26.17.3.4 Selecting and advertising a new BSS color**

30

31 An HE STA that transmits an HE Operation element shall select a BSS color as defined in 26.17.3.2 (Initial
 32 BSS color) for its BSS. An HE AP may change the BSS color under certain conditions, for example if it
 33 detects that an OBSS is using the same color. When selecting or changing the BSS color, the HE AP may
 34 consider the BSS colors of OBSSs that the HE AP has identified by itself or via the autonomous collision
 35 reports received from associated non-AP HE STAs (see 26.17.3.5 (Detecting and reporting BSS color colli-
 36 sion)).
 37

38 An HE AP shall announce an upcoming BSS color change using the BSS Color Change Announcement ele-
 39 ment. The BSS Color Change Announcement element may be carried in the Beacon, Probe Response,
 40 (Re)Association Response, and HE BSS Color Change Announcement frames transmitted by the AP. An
 41 HE AP should announce an upcoming BSS color change for a period of time that is sufficiently long for all
 42 STAs in the BSS, including STAs in PS mode, to have an opportunity to receive at least one frame carrying
 43 a BSS Color Change Announcement element before the BSS color change.
 44

45 If the Color Switch Countdown field in BSS Color Change Announcement element has a value greater than
 46 0, then at the next TBTT the AP shall decrement the Color Switch Countdown field value by 1 until it
 47 reaches 0. BSS color change TBTT is the one at which the Color Switch Countdown field value has de-
 48 cremented to 0. An HE AP shall not alter the BSS color change TBTT after it has announced a pending BSS
 49 color change. An AP belonging to a co-hosted BSSID set (see 26.17.7 (Co-hosted BSSID set)) should select
 50 the value of Color Switch Countdown field such that the BSS color change TBTT interval between the BSSs
 51 in the set shall not be greater than one beacon interval of the BSS with largest beacon interval in the set.
 52

53 During the time leading up to the BSS color change TBTT:

- 54 — An HE AP shall set the BSS Color Disabled subfield to 1 and shall continue to advertise the existing
 55 BSS color via the BSS Color subfield in the HE Operation element.
- 56 — An HE AP shall not change the value it advertises in the New BSS Color subfield of the BSS Color
 57 Change Announcement element.
 58

- 1 — An HE AP shall set the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR of an HE PPDU to the existing BSS
 2 color.
 3

4 At the BSS color change TBTT, an HE AP shall:

- 5 — Set the BSS Color Disabled subfield in the HE Operation element that it transmits to 0 unless the HE
 6 AP belongs to a co-hosted BSSID set, in which case it shall continue to set the BSS Color Disabled
 7 subfield to 1 until all the BSSs in the co-hosted BSSID set have passed their respective BSS color
 8 change TBTT
 9
 10 — Start advertising the new BSS color in the BSS Color subfield in the HE Operation element
 11
 12 — Start using the new BSS color for all frames that it transmits after the TBTT

13
 14 A co-hosted AP should not transmit an HE PPDU during the transition period until all the BSSs in the co-
 15 hosted set have completed their switch to the new color.

16
 17 A non-AP HE STA that receives a BSS Color Change Announcement element from an AP shall use the
 18 value specified in the New BSS Color field of the element as the BSS color when communicating with that
 19 AP following the BSS Color change TBTT.

20
 21 A non-AP HE STA in an infrastructure BSS shall not transmit the BSS Color Change Announcement ele-
 22 ment. An HE STA belonging to an IBSS or a mesh BSS shall not transmit a BSS Color Change Announce-
 23 ment element. An HE STA participating in an IBSS or a mesh BSS may temporarily disable the use of BSS
 24 color if the HE STA determines that a BSS color collision has occurred (see 26.17.3.3 (Disabling BSS
 25 color)).

26
 27 NOTE—The color change mechanism described in this subclause does not apply to an IBSS or a mesh BSS since these
 28 BSSs do not have a single coordinator.

35 **26.17.3.5 Detecting and reporting BSS color collision**

36 **26.17.3.5.1 General**

37
 38 An HE AP may determine that a BSS color collision has occurred if it receives frames on its primary chan-
 39 nel from an OBSS STA containing the same BSS color as the one it has selected for its BSS or if it receives
 40 autonomous BSS color collision event reports from its associated STAs. The HE AP shall set the BSS Color
 41 Disabled subfield to 1 in the HE Operation element that it transmits if the BSS color collision persists for a
 42 duration of at least dot11BSSColorCollisionAPPPeriod.

43 **26.17.3.5.2 Autonomous reporting of BSS color collision**

44
 45 A STA that supports autonomous reporting of BSS color collision shall set dot11AutonomousBSSColorCol-
 46 lisionReportingImplemented to true.

47
 48 A non-AP HE STA that supports autonomous reporting of BSS color collision may send a color collision
 49 report to its associated AP when it detects that color collision has occurred. The STA shall declare that a
 50 color collision has occurred if it receives, on its associated AP's primary channel, a frame with at least three
 51 Address fields in the MAC header and with the same color as its associated BSS in which none of the
 52 Address fields match the BSSID of the BSS that the STA is associated with, or any of the other BSSs in the
 53 same multiple BSSID set or co-hosted BSSID set to which its BSS belongs.

54
 55 The HE STA's autonomous report shall include BSS color information of all OBSSs that the STA is able to
 56 detect frames from in order to help its associated AP select a new nonoverlapping BSS color when the AP
 57 decides to switch to a different BSS color.

1 A non-AP HE STA that is autonomously reporting a BSS color collision shall transmit an Event Report
 2 frame (see 9.6.14.3 (Event Report frame format)) containing a single Event Report element (see 9.4.2.68
 3 (Event Report element)). The Event Report element shall carry Event Token field value set to 0 (autono-
 4 mous report) and Event Type field value set to 4 (BSS Color Collision). The Event Report Status field shall
 5 be set to 0 (Successful) and the Event Report field shall carry information about the BSS color used by
 6 OBSSs that the reporting STA is able to detect.
 7

8
 9 A non-AP HE STA that intends to autonomously report a BSS color collision to its associated HE AP shall
 10 do so by scheduling for transmission a BSS color collision Event Report frame every dot11BSSColorColli-
 11 sionSTAPeriod unless the BSS color collision no longer exists or if the associated HE AP has set the BSS
 12 Color Disabled bit to 1 in HE Operation element that it transmits or if the non-AP STA has transmitted sev-
 13 eral such reports to its associated HE AP.
 14

15 NOTE—The maximum number of BSS color collision event reports a non-AP STA transmits is out of scope of this stan-
 16 dard.
 17

18 26.17.4 AID assignment

19 An HE AP that transmits an HE Operation element with the Partial BSS Color subfield in the BSS Color
 20 Information field set to 1 shall allocate AIDs that meet the constraint in Equation (26-8).
 21

22
$$\text{AID}(5:8) = \text{bin}[(BCB(0:3) - (BSSID[44:47] \oplus BSSID[40:43])) \bmod 2^4, 4] \quad (26-8)$$

23 where $BCB(0:3)$ represents bits 0 to 3 inclusive of the BSS color in the transmitted HE Operation element
 24 with bit 0 being the first transmitted and $\text{AID}(5:8)$ represents bits 5 to 8 inclusive of the allocated AID with
 25 bit 5 being the first transmitted.
 26

27 26.17.5 Quiet HE STAs in an HE BSS

28 26.17.5.1 General

29 Quiet Time Period (QTP) is an optional feature that defines a period of time (QTP period) that is intended to
 30 be used primarily for the exchange of specific frames between a STA requesting a QTP and its peers using
 31 peer-to-peer links. The particular frames to be exchanged using peer-to-peer links during the QTP period are
 32 identified by a service specific identifier. The determination of which frames are associated with the service
 33 specific identifier is beyond the scope of the standard. The method for selection of the service specific iden-
 34 tifier by the peer-to-peer operation is beyond the scope of the standard.
 35

36 An AP that supports QTP is a QTP AP and shall set the QTP Support field to 1 in HE Capabilities elements
 37 that it transmits and shall set the QTP Support field to 0 otherwise. A non-AP HE STA that supports QTP is
 38 a QTP non-AP STA and shall set the QTP Support field to 1 in HE Capabilities ele-ments that it transmits
 39 and shall set the QTP Support field to 0 otherwise.
 40

41 A QTP non-AP STA may request its QTP AP to set up a QTP and if successful, the QTP AP informs other
 42 associated QTP non-AP STAs of the QTP and of the service specific identifier associated with that QTP.
 43

44 The QTP mechanism informs other HE STAs of the period and the intended peer-to-peer operation, and
 45 requests that during the QTP, the QTP non-AP STAs should not exchange frames that are not associated
 46 with the service specific identifier.
 47

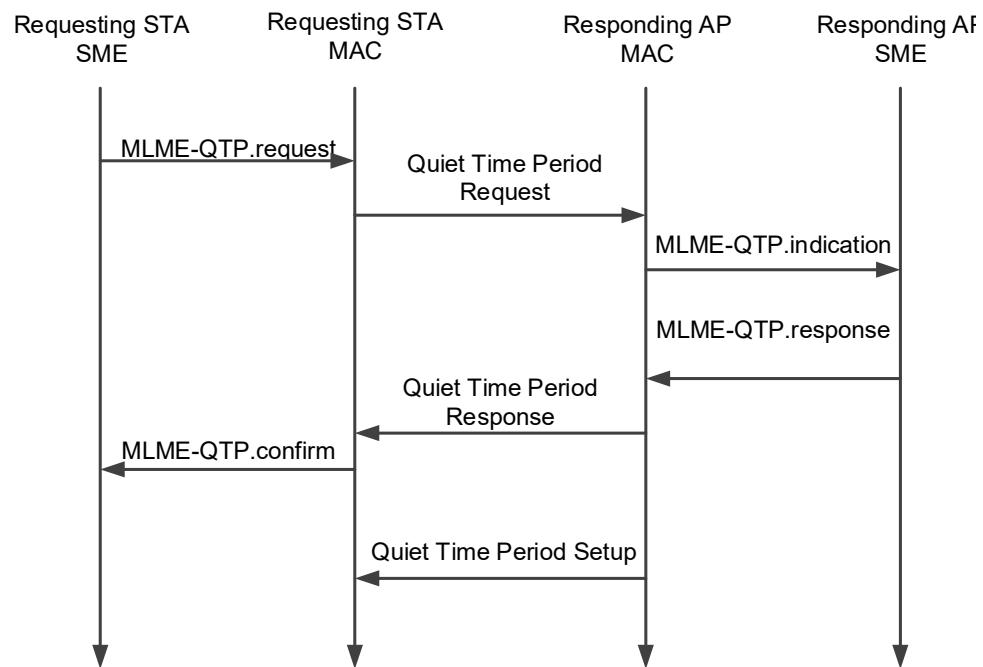
48 A QTP non-AP STA may ignore the QTP. A QTP non-AP STA that decides to stay quiet during a QTP
 49 period suspends the decrementing of its backoff counters at the start time of the QTP period and resumes
 50 them when the QTP period ends.
 51

1
2
3 NOTE—Otherwise, a STA that does not stay quiet does not suspend the decrementing of its backoff counters.
4
5

6 26.17.5.2 QTP Requesting STA procedure 7

8 A QTP requesting STA is a QTP non-AP STA that requests a QTP.
9

10 Upon the reception of an MLME-QTP.request primitive, a QTP requesting STA shall perform the following
11 procedure (Figure 26-15 (Quiet time period operation)):
12
13
14
15



42 **Figure 26-15—Quiet time period operation**
43

- 44 a) If a QTP requesting STA is associated with a QTP AP, the QTP requesting STA sends a QTP
45 Request frame which is a Quiet Time Period Action frame (9.6.31.3 (Quiet Time Period Action
46 frame details)) with the Control field of the Quiet Time Period element indicating the Quiet Time
47 Period Request subtype. The QTP Request frame indicates the duration, interval, and type of opera-
48 tion (indicated by Service Specific Identifier). The QTP requesting STA may include multiple Quiet
49 Time Period elements with Request subtype in one QTP Request frame for multiple types of frames
50 associated with different service specific identifiers.
- 51 b) A QTP Response frame is a Quiet Time Period Action frame (9.6.31.3 (Quiet Time Period Action
52 frame details)) with the Control field of the Quiet Time Period element indicating Quiet Time Period
53 Response subtype. If a QTP Response frame is received with the dialog token matching the request
54 token with a status code set to a value of SUCCESS, the QTP AP has confirmed the reception of the
55 QTP Request frame, and the MLME shall issue an MLME-QTP.confirm primitive indicating the
56 success of the procedure. A QTP Setup frame is a Quiet Time Period Action frame (9.6.31.3 (Quiet
57 Time Period Action frame details)) with the Control field of the Quiet Time Period element indicat-
58 ing Quiet Time Period Setup subtype. If a QTP Setup frame is received, at the start time for a QTP
59 period, the QTP requesting STA may schedule frames for transmission that are associated with the
60 service specific identifier indicated in the QTP Setup frame and should not transmit frames that are
61 not associated with the service specific identifier.
- 62
- 63
- 64
- 65

26.17.5.3 Responding AP procedure

Upon receipt of a QTP request, a QTP AP shall operate as follows (Figure 26-15 (Quiet time period operation)):

- a) The MLME of the AP shall issue an MLME-QTP.indication primitive.
- b) Upon receipt of the MLME-QTP.response primitive, the AP may respond by sending a broadcast QTP Response frame.
 - 1) If the status code in the broadcast QTP Response frame is SUCCESS, the AP accepts the request. The AP shall schedule the quiet period(s) according to the accepted request. Contained in the transmitted QTP Response frame is a copy of the dialog token from the QTP requesting STA. The QTP procedure shall be terminated if the number of quiet periods exceeds the value of the Repetition Count field specified.
 - 2) If the status code in the broadcast QTP Response frame is REJECTED, the AP indicates that the request cannot be fulfilled.
 - 3) If the status code in the broadcast QTP Response frame is COUNTERED, the AP counters the request with recommended values and the current request is rejected. Upon receiving the counter-proposal, a QTP STA can send a QTP Request frame to set up another QTP period.
- c) When the scheduled quiet time periods arrive, the AP may transmit a Quiet Time Period Action frame including a Quiet Time Period Setup element. The AP shall set the Quiet Period Duration field of the Quiet Time Period Setup frame to a value no larger than indicated in the Quiet Period Duration field of the Quiet Time Period Request element sent by the requesting STA.
- d) At the start time for a quiet time period, the AP may schedule for transmission a QTP Setup frame. The AP shall set the Quiet Period Duration field of the QTP Setup frame to a value no larger than indicated in the Quiet Period Duration field of the QTP Request frame sent by the QTP requesting STA.

NOTE—The AP is not required to transmit a QTP Setup frame when a scheduled QTP period arrives. The interference mitigation protocol is to provide an AP a tool to manage and avoid interference. How or whether the AP will transmit QTP Setup frame when a scheduled QTP periods arrives is not in the scope of this specification.

26.17.6 ER beacon generation in an ER BSS

An ER beacon is a Beacon frame carried in an HE ER SU PPDU using a 242-tone RU and transmitted in the primary 20 MHz channel. An ER beacon provides additional link budget for downlink transmissions to compensate for the link budget imbalance between downlink and uplink due to introduction of UL OFDMA transmission. An HE AP shall operate an ER BSS in addition to a non-ER BSS operated by another AP that is in the same co-located AP set. An ER BSS, if present, shall operate independently of the collocated non-ER BSS that is in the same co-located AP set and the AP operating the ER BSS shall have a BSSID different from the AP operating the non-ER BSS.

NOTE—An AP that uses ER Beacon frames can balance the link budget by allocating narrow RUs to STAs. An ER BSS is expected to have a larger coverage area than a non-ER BSS.

The HE AP of an ER BSS shall not set the ER SU Disable subfield to 1 in HE Operation elements it transmits.

The HE AP of an ER BSS shall transmit Beacon frames and group addressed frames in HE ER SU PPDUs following the rules in 26.15.5 (Additional rules for ER beacons and group addressed frames).

26.17.7 Co-hosted BSSID set

HE BSSs that are not part of a multiple BSSID set (i.e., dot11MultiBSSIDImplemented is false) but share the same operating class, channel and antenna connectors belong to a co-hosted BSSID set.

1 A STA that supports co-hosted BSSID capability shall have dot11CoHostedBSSIDImplemented equal to
2 true.
3

4 An AP that belongs to a co-hosted BSSID set shall perform the following operations:
5 — Set the Co-Hosted BSS subfield in the HE Operation element that it transmits to 1.
6 — Set the Max Co-Hosted BSSID Indicator field in the HE Operation element that it transmits to a non-
7 zero value n , where $1 \leq n \leq 8$, such that 2^n indicates the maximum number of BSSIDs in the co-
8 hosted set.
9

10 Members of the co-hosted BSSID set have the same $48 - n$ bits (BSSID[0:(47 - n)] in their BSSIDs.
11

12 If its associated AP has set the Co-Hosted BSS subfield in the HE Operation Parameters field to 1, a non-AP
13 STA shall identify a BSS as a co-hosted BSS, if the $48 - n$ bits (BSSID[0:(47 - n)] of the BSSID of the BSS
14 are the same as the $48 - n$ bits (BSSID[0:(47 - n)] of the BSSID of its associated AP, where n is the value
15 carried in the Max Co-Hosted BSSID Indicator field of the HE Operation element transmitted by the associ-
16 ated AP.
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 27. High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification 3 4 5

6 27.1 Introduction 7 8

9 27.1.1 Introduction to the HE PHY 10

11 Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) specifies the PHY entity for a high efficiency (HE)
 12 orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) system. In addition to the requirements in Clause 27
 13 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification), an HE STA shall be capable of transmitting and receiving
 14 PPUDUs that are compliant with the mandatory requirements of the following PHY specifications:

- 15 — Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) and Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT)
 16 PHY specification) if the HE STA supports an operating channel width greater than or equal to
 17 80 MHz and is operating in the 5 GHz band.
- 19 — Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) and Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT)
 20 PHY specification) transmission and reception on 20 MHz channel width (see 26.17.1 (Basic HE
 21 BSS operation)) if the HE STA is a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA and is operating in the 5 GHz
 22 band.
- 24 — Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) if the HE STA is operating in the 2.4 GHz
 25 band.
- 27 — Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) if the HE STA
 28 is operating in the 6 GHz band.
 29

31 For 2.4 GHz band operation, the HE PHY is based on HT PHY defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT)
 32 PHY specification), which in turn is based on the OFDM PHY defined in Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency
 33 division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification).

36 For 5 GHz band operation, the HE PHY is based on the VHT PHY defined in Clause 21 (Very High
 37 Throughput (VHT) PHY specification), which in turn is based on the HT PHY defined in Clause 19 (High
 38 Throughput (HT) PHY specification), which in turn is further based on the OFDM PHY defined in Clause
 39 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification).

42 For 6 GHz band operation, the HE PHY is based on the OFDM PHY defined in Clause 17 (Orthogonal fre-
 43 quency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification).

46 The HE PHY extends the maximum number of users supported for DL MU-MIMO transmissions to 8 users
 47 per resource unit (RU) and provides support for DL and UL orthogonal frequency division multiple access
 48 (OFDMA) as well as for UL MU-MIMO. Both DL and UL MU-MIMO transmissions are supported on por-
 49 tions of the PPDU bandwidth (on resource units greater than or equal to 106 tones). In an MU-MIMO
 50 resource unit, there is support for up to 8 users with up to 4 space-time streams per user with the total across
 51 all users not exceeding 8 space-time streams.

55 The HE PHY provides support for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz and 160 MHz contiguous channel widths and
 56 support for 80+80 MHz noncontiguous channel width, depending on the frequency band and capability. For
 57 PPDU bandwidths greater than or equal to 80 MHz, the HE PHY supports preamble punctured HE MU
 58 PPDU transmissions where pre-HE modulated fields (see Figure 27-23 (Timing boundaries for HE PPDU
 59 fields if midamble is not present)) are not transmitted in one or more of the nonprimary 20 MHz channels,
 60 and RUs associated with those punctured 20 MHz channels as defined in 27.3.10.8.3 (Common field) are not
 61 allocated.

64 The HE PHY provides support for 0.8 μ s, 1.6 μ s and 3.2 μ s guard interval durations.

The HE PHY provides support for 3.2 μ s (1x), 6.4 μ s (2x), and 12.8 μ s (4x) HE-LTF symbol durations, excluding the GI duration. The HE PHY supports a DFT period of 3.2 μ s and 12.8 μ s for the pre-HE modulated fields and the HE modulated fields in an HE PPDU, respectively. The HE PHY data subcarrier frequency spacing is a quarter of VHT PHY and HT PHY subcarrier frequency spacing defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) and Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification), respectively.

The HE PHY data subcarriers are modulated using BPSK, BPSK DCM, QPSK, QPSK DCM, 16-QAM, 16-QAM DCM, 64-QAM, 256-QAM and 1024-QAM. Forward error correction (FEC) coding (convolutional or LDPC coding) is used with coding rates of 1/2, 2/3, 3/4 and 5/6.

The HE PHY provides support for midambles. Midambles facilitate updating of the channel estimate during HE PPDU reception and might be of use in high mobility scenarios that often result in significant variations of the wireless channel over the duration of a PPDU.

An HE STA shall support the following features:

- Transmission and reception of an HE SU PPDU that consists of a single RU spanning the entire PPDU bandwidth.
- Transmission and reception of an HE ER SU PPDU that consists of a 242-tone RU spanning the entire primary 20 MHz PPDU bandwidth.
- BCC coding (transmit and receive). BCC coding is not used in the following cases:
 - An HE SU PPDU with a bandwidth greater than 20 MHz
 - An RU of size greater than 242 subcarriers in an HE MU PPDU or an HE TB PPDU
 - An HE SU PPDU with number of spatial streams greater than 4
 - An RU allocated to a single user in an HE MU PPDU or for an HE TB PPDU with a number of spatial streams greater than 4
 - An HE SU PPDU using HE-MCSs 10 or 11
 - An RU in an HE MU PPDU or an HE TB PPDU using HE-MCSs 10 or 11
- LDPC coding (transmit and receive) in all supported HE PPDU types, RU sizes, and number of spatial streams if the STA supports transmitting and receiving in channel bandwidths greater than 20 MHz.
- LDPC coding (transmit and receive) in all supported HE PPDU types, RU sizes, and number of spatial streams if the STA declares support for transmitting or receiving more than 4 spatial streams.
- LDPC coding (transmit and receive) in all supported HE PPDU types, RU sizes, and number of spatial streams if the STA declares support for HE-MCSs 10 and 11 (transmit and receive).
- Single spatial stream HE-MCSs 0 to 7 (transmit and receive) in all supported channel widths for HE SU PPDU.
- 2x HE-LTF with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols for HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU (transmit and receive)
- 2x HE-LTF with 1.6 μ s GI duration on both HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols for HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU (transmit and receive)
- 4x HE-LTF with 3.2 μ s GI duration on both HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU (transmit and receive).
- 1x HE-LTF with 1.6 μ s GI duration on both HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols for full bandwidth UL MU-MIMO if the HE STA supports UL MU-MIMO.
- HE SU PPDU with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols when the HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF if the STA supports HE ER SU PPDU with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols when the HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF (transmit and receive).
- Single spatial stream HE-MCSs 0 to 2 in primary 20 MHz channel for HE ER SU PPDU.
- HE ER SU PPDU is not used in the following cases:

- 1 • Number of spatial streams greater than 1
- 2 • HE-MCS greater than 2 when 242 subcarriers are used in the Data field OFDM symbols
- 3 • HE-MCS greater than 0 when 106 subcarriers are used in the Data field OFDM symbols
- 4 • Bandwidth greater than 20 MHz
- 5 — 20 MHz channel width and all RU sizes and locations applicable to the 20 MHz channel width in
6 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands (transmit and receive).
- 7
- 8
- 9

10 An HE STA may support the following features:

- 11 — HE-MCSs 8 to 11 (transmit and receive).
- 12 — Two or more spatial streams (transmit and receive).
- 13 — DCM (transmit and receive).
- 14 — HE SU PPDUs and HE ER SU PPDUs with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field
15 OFDM symbols if the HE-LTF is a 1x HE-LTF (transmit and receive).
- 16 — HE SU PPDUs with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols if the
17 HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF if the STA does not support HE ER SU PPDUs with 0.8 μ s GI duration on
18 both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols if the HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF (transmit and receive).
- 19 — HE ER SU PPDUs with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols if the
20 HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF (transmit and receive).
- 21 — LDPC coding (transmit and receive) if the maximum number of spatial streams the STA is capable
22 of transmitting or receiving in an HE SU PPDUs is less than or equal to 4.
- 23 — Single spatial stream HE-MCS 0 in the higher frequency 106-tone RU of the primary 20 MHz chan-
24 nel for an HE ER SU PPDUs.
- 25 — STBC (transmit and receive).
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- 30
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34

35 An HE AP shall support the following features:

- 36 — Transmission of an HE MU PPDU where none of the RUs utilize MU-MIMO (DL OFDMA).
- 37 — Reception of an HE TB PPDU where none of the RUs utilize MU-MIMO (UL OFDMA).
- 38 — Transmission of an HE MU PPDU consisting of a single RU spanning the entire PPDUs bandwidth
39 and utilizing MU-MIMO (DL MU-MIMO), provided the AP is capable of transmitting 4 or more
40 spatial streams.
- 41 — Transmission of the HE-SIG-B field in an HE MU PPDU at HE-MCSs 0 to 5.
- 42 — Single spatial stream HE-MCSs 0 to 7 in all supported channel widths and RU sizes for HE MU
43 PPDUs (transmit) or HE TB PPDUs (receive).
- 44 — 40 MHz and 80 MHz channel widths and all RU sizes and locations applicable to the 40 MHz and 80
45 MHz channel width in 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands (transmit and receive).
- 46 — 0.8 μ s and 1.6 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols of an HE MU PPDU if
47 a 2x HE-LTF is used (transmit).
- 48 — Reception of an HE TB PPDU with a 2x HE-LTF and with 1.6 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and
49 Data field OFDM symbols.
- 50 — Reception of an HE TB PPDU with a 4x HE-LTF and with 3.2 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and
51 Data field OFDM symbols.
- 52 — Transmission of an HE MU PPDU with a 4x HE-LTF and with 3.2 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF
53 and Data field OFDM symbols.
- 54 — Transmission of an HE MU PPDU with a 4x HE-LTF and with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-
55 LTF and the Data field OFDM symbols if the HE AP supports HE ER SU PPDUs with the same LTF
56 and GI combination.
- 57
- 58
- 59
- 60
- 61
- 62
- 63
- 64
- 65

1 An HE AP may support the following features:

- 2 — MU-MIMO transmission on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where the RU does not span the entire
- 3 PPDU bandwidth (DL MU-MIMO within OFDMA).
- 4 — MU-MIMO reception on an RU in an HE TB PPDU where the RU spans the entire PPDU bandwidth
- 5 (UL MU-MIMO).
- 6 — MU-MIMO reception on an RU in an HE TB PPDU where the RU does not span the entire PPDU
- 7 bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO within OFDMA).
- 8 — Reception of the payload on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where RU spans the entire PPDU bandwidth
- 9 or a 106-tone RU within 20 MHz PPDU bandwidth.
- 10 — 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz band (transmit and receive). If it is supported then all RU sizes
- 11 and locations applicable to 40 MHz channel width are supported in 2.4 GHz band (transmit and
- 12 receive).
- 13 — 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz channel widths and 2×996-tone RU size applicable to the 160/80+80
- 14 MHz channel width in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands (transmit and receive).
- 15 — Transmission of an HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing.
- 16 — HE MU PPDUs with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols when
- 17 the 4x HE-LTF is used if the STA does not support HE ER SU PPDUs with 0.8 μ s GI duration on
- 18 both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols if the HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF (transmit).
- 19 — Punctured sounding operation

20 A non-AP HE STA shall support the following features:

- 21 — Reception of an HE MU PPDU where the RU allocated to the non-AP STA is not utilizing MU-
- 22 MIMO (DL OFDMA).
- 23 — Transmission of an HE TB PPDU where the RU allocated to the non-AP STA is not utilizing MU-
- 24 MIMO (UL OFDMA).
- 25 — Reception of an HE MU PPDU consisting of a single RU spanning the entire PPDU bandwidth and
- 26 utilizing MU-MIMO (DL MU-MIMO). The maximum number of spatial streams per user the non-
- 27 AP STA can receive in the DL MU-MIMO transmission shall be equal to the minimum of 4 and the
- 28 maximum number of spatial streams supported for reception of HE SU PPDUs. The non-AP STA
- 29 shall be able to receive its intended spatial streams in a DL MU-MIMO transmission with a total
- 30 number of spatial streams across all users of at least 4.
- 31 — Responding with the requested beamforming feedback in an HE sounding procedure with the maxi-
- 32 mum number of space-time streams in the HE sounding NDP that the non-AP STA can respond to
- 33 being at least 4.
- 34 — Reception of the HE-SIG-B field in an HE MU PPDU at HE-MCSs 0 to 5.
- 35 — Single spatial stream HE-MCSs 0 to 7 in all supported channel widths and RU sizes for HE MU
- 36 PPDUs (receive) or HE TB PPDUs (transmit).
- 37 — 40 MHz and 80 MHz channel widths and all RU sizes and locations applicable to the 40 MHz and 80
- 38 MHz channel widths in the 5 GHz band (transmit and receive) except for a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE
- 39 STA in which case the 40 MHz and 80 MHz channel widths, 996-tone RU, and 484-tone RU sizes in
- 40 the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands are not applicable.
- 41 — Reception of an HE MU PPDU with a 2x HE-LTF and with 0.8 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and
- 42 Data field OFDM symbols.
- 43 — Reception of an HE MU PPDU with a 2x HE-LTF and with 1.6 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and
- 44 Data field OFDM symbols.
- 45 — Transmission of an HE TB PPDU with a 2x HE-LTF and with 1.6 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and
- 46 Data field OFDM symbols.
- 47 — Reception of an HE MU PPDU with a 4x HE-LTF and with 3.2 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and
- 48 Data field OFDM symbols.

- Transmission of an HE TB PPDU with a 4x HE-LTF and with 3.2 μ s GI duration on the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols.
- Reception of an HE MU PPDU with 4x HE-LTF and with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and the Data field OFDM symbols if the non-AP HE STA supports HE ER SU PPDU for the same LTF and GI combinations.

A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA shall support 26-, 52-, and 106-tone RU sizes on locations allowed in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) in the primary 20 MHz channel within 40 MHz and the primary 20 MHz channel within 80 MHz channel widths in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands (transmit and receive).

A non-AP HE STA may support the following:

- Transmission of an HE MU PPDU with a single RU spanning the entire PPDU bandwidth or a 20 MHz HE MU PPDU with a single 106-tone RU in the primary 20 MHz channel.
- 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz band (transmit and receive). If 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz band is supported then all RU sizes and locations applicable to 40 MHz channel width are supported except for a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA in which case the 40 MHz channel width and all RU sizes and locations of 40 MHz channel width in 2.4 GHz band are not applicable.
- 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz channel width and 2 \times 996-tone RU size applicable to the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz channel width in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands (transmit and receive) except for a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA in which case the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz channel width and 2 \times 996-tone RU size in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands are not applicable.
- MU-MIMO reception on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth (DL MU-MIMO within OFDMA). The maximum number of spatial streams per user in the DL MU-MIMO within OFDMA transmission that the non-AP STA can receive shall be a minimum of 4 and the maximum number of spatial streams supported for reception of HE SU PPDU. The total number of spatial streams (across all users) in the DL MU-MIMO within OFDMA transmission that the non-AP STA can receive shall be at least 4.
- MU-MIMO transmission on an RU in an HE TB PPDU where the RU spans the entire PPDU bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO). If supported, then the non-AP HE STA shall support transmitting UL MU-MIMO where the total space-time streams summed across all users is less than or equal to 8.
- MU-MIMO transmission on an RU in an HE TB PPDU where the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth (UL MU-MIMO within OFDMA). If supported, then the non-AP HE STA shall support transmitting UL MU-MIMO where the total space-time streams summed across all users is less than or equal to 8.
- The reception of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU, or the transmission of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE TB PPDU where the assigned RU is in the primary 80 MHz channel if the non-AP HE STA is capable of up to 80 MHz channel width and operating with 80 MHz channel width.
- HE MU PPDU with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols when the 4x HE-LTF is used if the non-AP HE STA does not support HE ER SU PPDU with 0.8 μ s GI duration on both the HE-LTF and Data field OFDM symbols if the HE-LTF is a 4x HE-LTF (receive).
- Punctured sounding operation

A 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA may support the following:

- 26-, 52-, 106-, and 242-tone RU sizes on locations allowed in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) in the primary 20 MHz channel within 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz band if the 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA does not support the HE subchannel selective transmission operation described in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission).
- 26-, 52-, 106-, and 242-tone RU sizes on locations allowed in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) in any 20 MHz channel within 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz band if the 20 MHz-

1 only non-AP HE STA supports the HE subchannel selective transmission operation as described in
 2 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission).
 3

- 4 — 26-, 52-, 106-, and 242-tone RU sizes on locations allowed in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz
 5 operation) in any 20 MHz channel within 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, and 80+80 MHz channel
 6 widths in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands if the 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA supports the HE sub-
 7 channel selective transmission operation as described in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmis-
 8 sion).
 9

10 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA may support 26-, 52-, 106-, and 242-tone RU sizes on locations
 11 allowed in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation) in the primary 20 MHz channel within 160 MHz
 12 and 80+80 MHz channel widths in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands.
 13

14 **27.1.2 Scope**

15 The services provided to the MAC by the HE PHY consist of the following protocol functions:
 16

- 17 a) A function that maps the PSDU received from the MAC into a PPDU for transmission to one or
 18 more receiving STAs.
 19
 20 b) A function that defines the characteristics and method of transmitting and receiving data through a
 21 wireless medium between two or more STAs. Depending on the PPDU format, these STAs support
 22 a mixture of HE, Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification), Clause 19 (High
 23 Throughput (HT) PHY specification), Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification),
 24 Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), Clause 16
 25 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), and Clause 15 (DSSS
 26 PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications) PHYs. A 20 MHz-only
 27 non-AP HE STA supports a mixture of HE, Clause 19 and Clause 17 PHYs, and also supports trans-
 28 mission and reception of VHT PPDU of 20 MHz PPDU bandwidth.
 29

30 **27.1.3 HE PHY functions**

31 **27.1.3.1 General**

32 The HE PHY contains two functional entities: the PHY function, and the physical layer management func-
 33 tion (i.e., the PLME). These functions are described in detail in 27.3 (HE PHY) and 27.4 (HE PLME). The
 34 HE PHY service is provided to the MAC through the PHY service primitives defined in Clause 8 (PHY ser-
 35 vice specification). The HE PHY service interface is described in 27.2 (HE PHY service interface).
 36

37 **27.1.3.2 PHY management entity (PLME)**

38 The PLME performs management of the local PHY functions in conjunction with the MLME.
 39

40 **27.1.3.3 Service specification method**

41 The models represented by figures and state diagrams are intended to be illustrations of the functions pro-
 42 vided. It is important to distinguish between a model and a real implementation. The models are optimized
 43 for simplicity and clarity of presentation.
 44

45 The service of a layer is the set of capabilities that it offers to a user in the next higher layer. Abstract ser-
 46 vices are specified here by describing the service primitives and parameters that characterize each service.
 47 This definition is independent of any particular implementation.
 48

1 **27.1.4 PPDU formats**

2

3 The structure of the PPDU transmitted by an HE STA is determined by the TXVECTOR parameters as
 4 defined in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).

5

6 The FORMAT parameter determines the overall structure of the PPDU and can take on one of the following
 7 values:

8

- 9 — Non-HT format (NON_HT), based on Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing
 10 (OFDM) PHY specification) or Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification), and including
 11 non-HT duplicate format.
 - 12 — HT-mixed format (HT_MF) as specified in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification).
 - 13 — HT-greenfield format (HT_GF) as specified in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specifica-
 14 tion).
 - 15 — VHT format (VHT) as defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification).
 - 16 — HE SU PPDU format (HE_SU) carries a single PSDU. With this format the HE-SIG-A field is not
 17 repeated.
 - 18 — HE ER SU PPDU format (HE_ER_SU) carries a single PSDU. It is similar to the HE SU PPDU for-
 19 mat, except that the HE-SIG-A field is repeated.
 - 20 — HE MU PPDU format (HE_MU) carries one or more PSDUs to one or more users.
 - 21 — HE TB PPDU format (HE_TB) carries a single PSDU and is sent in response to a PPDU that carries
 22 a triggering frame. The preamble format prior to the HE-STF field is identical to the HE SU PPDU.
- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29

30 **27.2 HE PHY service interface**

31

32 **27.2.1 Introduction**

33

34

35 The PHY provides an interface to the MAC through an extension of the generic PHY service interface
 36 defined in 8.3.4 (Basic service and options). The interface includes TXVECTOR, RXVECTOR, PHYCON-
 37 FIG_VECTOR and TRIG_VECTOR.

38

39

40 The MAC uses the TXVECTOR to supply the PHY with per-PPDU transmit parameters. The PHY uses the
 41 RXVECTOR to inform the MAC of the received PPDU parameters. The MAC uses the PHYCON-
 42 FIG_VECTOR to configure the PHY for operation that is independent of frame transmission or reception.
 43 The MAC uses the TRIG_VECTOR to configure the PHY to receive HE TB PPDUs over each assigned RU.

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

1 27.2.2 TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters

3 The parameters in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) are defined as part of the
 4 TXVECTOR parameter list in the PHY-TXSTART.request primitive and/or as part of the RXVECTOR
 5 parameter list in the PHY-RXSTART.indication and PHY-RXEND.indication primitives.

6

7

8 **Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters**

9

10

11 Parameter	12 Condition	13 Value	14 TXVECTOR	15 RXVECTOR		
16	17	18 FORMAT	19 Determines the format of the PPDU. 20 Enumerated type: 21 NON_HT indicates Clause 15, Clause 16, Clause 17, 22 Clause 18 or non-HT duplicate PPDU format. In this case, 23 the modulation is determined by the NON_HT_MODULA- 24 TION parameter. 25 HT_MF indicates HT-mixed format. 26 HT_GF indicates HT-greenfield format. 27 VHT indicates VHT format. 28 HE_SU indicates HE SU PPDU format. 29 HE_MU indicates HE MU PPDU format. 30 HE_ER_SU indicates HE ER SU PPDU format. 31 HE_TB indicates HE TB PPDU format.	Y	Y	
32	33	34 NON_HT_MODULATION	35 See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).	36	37	
38	39	40 L_LENGTH	41 FORMAT is HE_SU, 42 HE_MU or HE_ER_SU	43 Not present. 44 NOTE—The LENGTH field of the L-SIG field for HE PPDU 45 is defined in Equation (27-11) using the TXTIME value 46 defined in 27.4.3 (TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calcula- 47 tion), which in turn depend on other parameters including the 48 TXVECTOR parameter APEP_LENGTH.	49 N	50 N
51	52	53	54 FORMAT is HE_TB	55 Indicates the value in the LENGTH field of the L-SIG field in 56 the range of 1 to 4095. The value is obtained from the Trigger 57 frame or the TRS Control subfield in the frame to which the 58 HE TB PPDU is a response.	59 Y	60 N
61	62	63	64 Otherwise	65 See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
N_TX	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Indicates the number of transmit chains.	Y	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
EXPANSION_MAT	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Contains a vector in the number of selected subcarriers containing feedback matrices as defined in 27.3.15.2 (Beamforming feedback matrix V) based on the channel measured during the training symbols of previous HE sounding NDPs or VHT NDPs.	Y	N
	FORMAT is HE_MU	For each user, contains a vector in the number of all the subcarriers in the RU that is assigned to this user. The vector for each subcarrier contains feedback matrices as defined in 27.3.15.2 (Beamforming feedback matrix V) based on the channel measured during the training symbols of previous HE sounding NDPs or VHT NDPs.	M U	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
CHAN_MAT	FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is 0	Contains a vector in the number of selected subcarriers containing feedback matrices as defined in 27.3.15.2 (Beamforming feedback matrix V) based on the channel measured during the training symbols of previous HE sounding NDP.	N	Y
	FORMAT is HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB. FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is greater than 0.	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
DELTA_SNR	FORMAT is HE_MU	Contains an array of delta SNR values as defined in 9.4.1.66 (HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field) based on the channel measured during the training symbols of the received HE sounding NDP.	M U	N
	FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH greater than 0, or FORMAT is HE_ER_SU or HE_TB		O	N
	FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is 0		N	Y
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
RCPI	See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).			
SNR	FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is 0	Contains an array of average values of received SNR measurements for each spatial stream. SNR indications of 8 bits are supported. Average value of SNR shall be the sum of the decibel values of SNR per subcarrier divided by the number of subcarriers represented in each stream as described in 9.4.1.65 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report field).	N	Y
	FORMAT is HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB, or FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is greater than 0	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
CQI	FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is 0	Contains an array of received per-RU average SNRs for each space-time stream, where each per-RU average SNR is the arithmetic mean of the SNR in decibels over a 26-tone RU as described in 9.4.1.67 (HE CQI Report field).	N	Y
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
NO_SIG_EXTN	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Indicates whether signal extension needs to be applied at the end of transmission. Boolean: true indicates that no signal extension is present. false indicates that a signal extension is present.	Y	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
FEC_CODING	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Indicates the FEC encoding used. Enumerated type: BCC_CODING indicates BCC coding. LDPC_CODING indicates LDPC coding.	M U	M U
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
LDPC_EXTRA_SYMBOL	FORMAT is HE_TB	<p>Indicates the presence of the extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC in an HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>Integer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 indicates that an extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC is present. 0 indicates that an extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC is not present. 	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.		
STBC	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	<p>Indicates if STBC is used.</p> <p>For an HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU where each RU includes no more than 1 user:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 1 to indicate that for all RUs the Data field is STBC encoded Set to 0 to indicate that in no RU is the Data field STBC encoded <p>For an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 1 to indicate that the Data field is STBC encoded Set to 0 to indicate that the Data field is not STBC encoded 	Y	Y
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
GI_TYPE	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	<p>Indicates the length of the GI for the HE-LTF and Data fields.</p> <p>Enumerated type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0u8s_GI indicates 0.8 μs 1u6s_GI indicates 1.6 μs 3u2s_GI indicates 3.2 μs <p>NOTE—the length of GI for pre-HE modulated fields is 0.8 μs.</p>	Y	Y
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	The allowed values for the TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX parameter are in the range from 1 to numberOfOctets (dot11TxPowerLevelExtended)/2. This parameter is used to indicate which of the available transmit output power levels defined in dot11TxPowerLevelExtended shall be used for the current transmission.	Y	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
RSSI	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_ER_SU, HE_MU or HE_TB	The allowed values for the RSSI parameter are in the range 0 to 255 inclusive. This parameter is a measure by the PHY of the power observed at the antennas used to receive the current PPDU measured during the reception of the HE-LTF field. RSSI is intended to be used in a relative manner, and it is a monotonically increasing function of the received power.	N	Y
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
RSSI_LEGACY	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	The allowed values for the RSSI_LEGACY parameter are in the range 0 to 255 inclusive. This parameter is a measure by the PHY of the power observed at the antennas used to receive the current PPDU measured during the reception of non-HE portion of the HE PPDU preamble. RSSI_LEGACY is intended to be used in a relative manner, and it is a monotonically increasing function of the received power.	N	Y
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N
MCS	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Indicates the modulation and coding schemes used in the transmission of the PPDU. Integer: range 0 to 11	M U	M U
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
DCM	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Set to 1 to indicate that DCM is used for the Data field. Set to 0 to indicate that DCM is not used for the Data field. NOTE—DCM is applicable to only HE-MCSs 0, 1, 3 and 4. DCM is applicable to only 1 and 2 spatial streams.	M U	M U
	Otherwise	Not present.		
MCS_SIG_B	FORMAT is HE_MU	Indicates the modulation and coding scheme used for HE-SIG-B field. Integer: 0 indicates HE-MCS 0 1 indicates HE-MCS 1 2 indicates HE-MCS 2 3 indicates HE-MCS 3 4 indicates HE-MCS 4 5 indicates HE-MCS 5	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
DCM_SIG_B	FORMAT is HE_MU	Set to 1 to indicate that DCM is used for the HE-SIG-B field. Set to 0 to indicate that DCM is not used for the HE-SIG-B field.	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
SIG_B_COMPRESSION_MODE	FORMAT is HE_MU	Indicates whether or not the Common field is present in the HE-SIG-B field. Integer: 0 indicates that the Common field is present 1 indicates that the Common field is not present	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
REC_MCS	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU or HE_ER_SU	Indicates the HE-MCS that the receiver recommends	N	O
	FORMAT is HE_TB	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
CH_BANDWIDTH	FORMAT is HE_SU	Indicates the channel width of the PPDU. Enumerated type: CBW20 for 20 MHz CBW40 for 40 MHz CBW80 for 80 MHz CBW160 for 160 MHz CBW80+80 for 80+80 MHz	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_ER_SU	Indicates the channel width of the PPDU. Enumerated type: ER-RU-242 for a 242-tone RU in the primary 20 MHz channel ER-RU-H-106 for a higher frequency 106-tone RU in the primary 20 MHz channel	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_MU	Indicates the channel width of the PPDU. Enumerated type: CBW20 for full 20 MHz CBW40 for full 40 MHz CBW80 for full 80 MHz CBW160 for full 160 MHz CBW80+80 for 80+80 MHz HE-CBW-PUNC80-PRI for preamble puncturing in 80 MHz, where in the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz is punctured. HE-CBW-PUNC80-SEC for preamble puncturing in 80 MHz, where in the preamble only one of the two 20 MHz subchannels in secondary 40 MHz is punctured. HE-CBW-PUNC160-PRI20 for preamble puncturing in 160 MHz, where in the primary 80 MHz of the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz channel is punctured. HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-PRI20 for preamble puncturing in 80+80 MHz, where in the primary 80 MHz of the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz channel is punctured. HE-CBW-PUNC160-SEC40 for preamble puncturing in 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz, where in the primary 80 MHz of the preamble the primary 40 MHz is present, and at least one 20 MHz subchannel that is not in the primary 40 MHz is punctured. HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-SEC40 for preamble puncturing in 80+80 MHz, where in the primary 80 MHz of the preamble the primary 40 MHz is present, and at least one 20 MHz subchannel that is not in the primary 40 MHz is punctured.	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_TB	Indicates the Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A in the transmitted or received PPDU. Enumerated type: CBW20 for 20 MHz CBW40 for 40 MHz CBW80 for 80 MHz CBW160 for 160 MHz CBW80+80 for 80+80 MHz	Y	Y
		NOTE—The TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH does not represent the channel width of the transmitted PPDU.		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS	FORMAT is HE_MU and CH_BANDWIDTH is any value for preamble puncturing	Indicates the 20 MHz subchannels that are punctured. A bitmap array indexed by the 20 MHz subchannels in ascending order with the LSB indicating the lowest frequency 20 MHz subchannel. A bit is to 1 to indicate that the corresponding 20 MHz subchannel is punctured and set to 0 to indicate the corresponding 20 MHz subchannel is not punctured.	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.		
DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
LENGTH	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
APEP_LENGTH	FORMAT is HE_SU or HE_ER_SU	Integer. If 0 and FORMAT is HE_SU, indicates an HE sounding NDP.	Y	O
	FORMAT is HE_MU or HE_TB	Otherwise, indicates the number of octets in the range 1 to <i>apsduMaxLength</i> in the A-MPDU pre-EOF padding (see Table 27-55 (HE PHY characteristics)) that is carried in the PSDU.	M U	O
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) or Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
PSDU_LENGTH	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Indicates the number of octets in the PSDU in the range of 0 to <i>apsduMaxLength</i> octets (see Table 27-55 (HE PHY characteristics)). A value of 0 indicates an HE sounding NDP.	N	Y
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
USER_POSITION	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
NUM_STS	FORMAT is HE_SU	Indicates the number of space-time streams. Integer in the range 1-8.	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_ER_SU	Indicates the number of space-time streams. Integer in the range 1-2.	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_MU	Indicates the number of space-time streams. Integer in the range: 1-4 per user per MU-MIMO RU in the TXVECTOR 1-4 per MU-MIMO RU in the RXVECTOR 1-8 per RU assigned to no more than 1 user in the TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR NUM_STS summed over all users per RU is not greater than 8.	M U	Y
	FORMAT is HE_TB	Indicates the number of space-time streams. Integer in the range: 1-4 for a MU-MIMO RU in the TXVECTOR 1-4 per user per MU-MIMO RU in the RXVECTOR 1-8 for an RU assigned to no more than 1 user in the TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR NUM_STS summed over all users per RU is not greater than 8.	Y	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
GROUP_ID	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
PARTIAL_AID	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
TXOP_DURATION	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	<p>Provide the duration of TXOP.</p> <p>Enumerated type or integer: UNSPECIFIED indicates no NAV duration information (see 26.11.5 (TXOP_DURATION)).</p> <p>0 – 8448 indicates a duration in units of 1 μs that is used to update the NAV for this TXOP (see 26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)).</p> <p>When the value of the TXOP field in the HE-SIG-A of a received HE PPDU is less than 127, if B0 of the TXOP field is 0, the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is set to (8 \times value of B1 to B6 of the TXOP field). Otherwise, the RXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is set to (512 + 128 \times value of B1 to B6 of the TXOP field).</p> <p>See 26.11.5 (TXOP_DURATION) for more details.</p>	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
SPATIAL_REUSE	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	<p>Indicates the spatial reuse parameter value. There is one value of the parameter for each of an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU. There are one to four values of the parameter present for an HE TB PPDU, with the number of values present dependent on the bandwidth of the PPDU. See the Spatial Reuse field definition in 27.3.10.7.2 (Content).</p> <p>See 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) and 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE).</p>	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
DOPPLER	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Set to 1 to indicate that either the midamble is present for the PPDU or that the channel is with high Doppler. Set to 0 otherwise.	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N
NUM_USERS	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present. NOTE—The number of users for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE TB PPDU is always 1. The number of users in an RU in an HE MU PPDU is determined by RU_ALLOCATION and STA_ID parameters for that RU.	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		
RU_ALLOCATION	FORMAT is HE_MU and SIG_B_COMPRESSION_MODE is 0	For the TXVECTOR, indicates the RU Allocation subfield of Common field in the HE-SIG-B of the transmitted PPDU. 8 bits for a 20 MHz PPDU; 16 bits for a 40 MHz PPDU; 32 bits for an 80 MHz PPDU 64 bits for a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz PPDU. See 27.3.10.8.3 (Common field) for details. For the RXVECTOR, 8 bits are used to indicate the RU allocated in the whole bandwidth. See 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format) for details.	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_TB	8 bits are used to indicate the RU allocated in the whole bandwidth per user. See 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format) for details.	Y	N
	FORMAT is HE_SU, APEP_LENGTH is 0, and CH_BANDWIDTH is not CBW20 or CBW40	For the TXVECTOR, indicates the active RUs. 32 bits for 80 MHz PPDU 64 bits for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz PPDU	Y	N
	FORMAT is NON_HT, NON_HT_MODULATION is NON_HT_DUP_OFDM, and CH_BANDWIDTH is not CBW20 or CBW40	For each 8 bits, only the following values are allowed: 113 (01110001 in binary representation) 192 (11000000 in binary representation) See 27.3.10.8.3 (Common field) for details.		
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value		TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR		
BEAMFORMED	FORMAT is HE_SU or HE_ER_SU	Set to 1 if a beamforming steering matrix is applied to the waveform in an SU transmission. Set to 0 otherwise.		Y	Y		
	FORMAT is HE_MU or HE_TB	For an RU assigned to no more than 1 user, set to 1 if a beam-forming steering matrix is applied and set to 0 otherwise. For each user in an RU assigned to more than 1 user, always set to 0.		M U	O		
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).					
CENTER_26_TONE_RU	FORMAT is HE_MU and CH_BANDWIDTH is CBW80, CBW160, CBW80+80, HE-CBW-PUNC80-PRI, HE-CBW-PUNC80-SEC, HE-CBW-PUNC160-PRI20, HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-PRI20, HE-CBW-PUNC160-SEC40, or HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-SEC40.	Indicate the presence of the center 26-tone RU with regard to bandwidth. If the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter is CBW80, HE-CBW-PUNC80-PRI or HE-CBW-PUNC80-SEC: Set to 1 to indicate that a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU (see Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU)) Set to 0 to indicate that no user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU		Y	N		
		If the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter is CBW160, CBW80+80, HE-CBW-PUNC160-PRI20, HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-PRI20, HE-CBW-PUNC160-SEC40, or HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-SEC40: Set to 0 to indicate that no user is allocated to either the center 26-tone RU of the lower frequency 80 MHz or that of the higher frequency 80 MHz Set to 1 to indicate that a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU of the lower frequency 80 MHz Set to 2 to indicate that a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU of the higher frequency 80 MHz Set to 3 to indicate that a user is allocated to each of the center 26-tone RU of the lower frequency 80 MHz and that of the higher frequency 80 MHz individually					
		See 27.3.10.8.3 (Common field).					
HE_LTF_TYPE	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present		N	N		
		Indicates the type of HE-LTF. Enumerated type: 1xHE-LTF indicates a 1x HE-LTF 2xHE-LTF indicates a 2x HE-LTF 4xHE-LTF indicates a 4x HE-LTF See 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF).		Y	Y		
	Otherwise	Not present.		N	N		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
HE_LTF_MODE	FORMAT is HE_TB	<p>Integer:</p> <p>Set to 0 to indicate that the transmitted PPDU uses HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode.</p> <p>Set to 1 to indicate the transmitted PPDU uses HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode.</p> <p>Present for full bandwidth MU-MIMO not using 1x HE-LTF and not present otherwise.</p> <p>See 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF).</p>	O	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
NUM_HE_LTF	FORMAT is HE_MU or HE_TB	<p>Indicates the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-LTF field.</p> <p>See 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) and 27.3.10.7.2 (Content).</p>	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
HE_SIG_A2_RESERVED	FORMAT is HE_TB	<p>Indicates the Reserved field setting for HE-SIG-A2 of HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>See 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation) and Table 27-21 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU) for details.</p>	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
STARTING_STS_NUM	FORMAT is HE_TB	Set to the starting spatial stream number minus 1 (spatial streams are globally numbered starting from 1)	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
TXOP_PS_NOT_ALLOWED	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Not present	N	N
	Otherwise	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
RX_START_OF_FRAME_OFFSET	See corresponding entry in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters).			
PREAMBLE_TYPE	FORMAT is NON_HT and NON_HT_MODULATION is one of ERP-DSSS ERP-CCK	Enumerated type: SHORTPREAMBLE LONGPREAMBLE	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N
NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU or HE_ER_SU	The nominal packet padding as defined in 9.4.2.247.5 (PPE Thresholds field). Possible values are 0 µs, 8 µs and 16 µs.	M U	N
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N
TRIGGER_METHOD	FORMAT is HE_TB	Indicates the method used to trigger this HE TB PPDU transmission. Enumerated type: TRIGGER_FRAME for Trigger frame TRS for TRS Control subfield	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N
DEFAULT_PE_DURATION	FORMAT is HE_TB and TRIGGER_METHOD is TRS	Duration of the PE field to be transmitted (see 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation)). A value 0, 4, 8, 12 or 16 indicating the PE field duration in µs.	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present	N	N

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
BEAM_CHANGE	FORMAT is HE_SU or HE_ER_SU	<p>Integer:</p> <p>Set to 0 to indicate that the spatial mapping of the pre-HE modulated fields are the same as the first symbol of HE-LTF field.</p> <p>Set to 1 to indicate that the spatial mapping of the pre-HE modulated fields are different from the first symbol of HE-LTF field.</p> <p>NOTE—If BEAM_CHANGE is 0 and BEAMFORMED is 1, then the pre-HE modulated fields might be beamformed.</p>	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present		
BSS_COLOR	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB	Set to a value in the range 0 to 63 (see 26.11 (Setting TXVECTOR parameters for an HE PPDU)).	Y	Y
	Otherwise	Not present		
UPLINK_FLAG	FORMAT is HE_SU or HE_MU	Set to 1 if the PPDU is addressed to an AP Set to 0 otherwise.	Y	Y
	FORMAT is HE_ER_SU	Set to 0 if the PPDU is not addressed to an AP, or if the PPDU is addressed to an AP and meets the exception in 26.11.2 (UPLINK_FLAG). Set to 1 otherwise.		
	Otherwise	Not present		
STA_ID	FORMAT is HE_MU	Indicates the list of STA-IDs for an HE MU PPDU (see 26.11 (Setting TXVECTOR parameters for an HE PPDU)).	M U	M U
	Otherwise	Not present		
SCRAMBLER_INITIAL_VALUE	FORMAT is NON_HT	<p>In TXVECTOR, if present, indicates the value of the Scrambler Initialization field in the SERVICE field, after scrambling.</p> <p>In RXVECTOR, indicates the value of the Scrambler Initialization field in the SERVICE field, prior to descrambling.</p>	O	Y
	FORMAT is HE_MU or HE_TB	Not present.		
	FORMAT is VHT and GROUP_ID is neither 0 nor 63	Not present.	N	N
	Otherwise	Indicates the value in the Scrambler Initialization field in the SERVICE field prior to descrambling.		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
TRIGGER_RESPONDING	FORMAT is NON_HT	<p>Boolean value: true indicates that the MAC entity requests that the PHY entity do synchronization as defined in 27.3.14.3 (Pre-correction accuracy requirements). false indicates that the MAC entity does not request that the PHY entity do synchronization as defined in 27.3.14.3 (Pre-correction accuracy requirements).</p> <p>Set to true if the non-HT or non-HT duplicate PPDU is sent in response to an MU-RTS Trigger frame. Set to false otherwise.</p>	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present		
NDP_REPORT	FORMAT is HE_TB and PSDU_LENGTH = 0	<p>Provides the detected status array on the resources assigned by the Trigger frame. The array has N_{STA} entries (N_{STA} is defined in 26.5.7.2 (STA behavior)) where each entry takes on the value:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 if transmission is detected on the first group of the tone set 0 if transmission is detected on the second group of the tone set NONE if transmission is not detected on either group of the tone set. 	N	Y
	Otherwise	Not present		
FEEDBACK_STATUS	FORMAT is HE_TB and APEP_LENGTH = 0	Indicates the value of the one bit used to modulate the tones in each tone set. See 27.3.4 (HE PPDU formats) and 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure).	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present		
RU_TONE_SET_INDEX	FORMAT is HE_TB and APEP_LENGTH = 0	Indicates the RU tone set used for an HE TB feedback NDP. See 27.3.17 (HE TB feedback NDP).	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present		

Table 27-1—TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Condition	Value	TXVECTOR	RXVECTOR
MIDAMBLE_PERIODICITY	FORMAT is HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB, and DOPPLER is 1	Indicates the midamble periodicity in number of OFDM symbols in the Data field. Set to 10 or 20.	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
HE_TB_PE_DISAMBIGUITY	FORMAT is HE_TB and TRIGGER_METHOD is TRIGGER_FRAME	Indicates PE disambiguity for the HE TB PPDU transmission. Set to 0 to indicate no PE disambiguity Set to 1 to indicate PE disambiguity	Y	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS	FORMAT is NON_HT and NON_HT_MODULATION is NON_HT_DUP_OFDM, or FORMAT is HE_SU and PSDU_LENGTH is 0	Indicates whether or not a 20 MHz subchannel is punctured. INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS is an 8-bit bitmap with an encoding that is the same as that for the Disallowed Subchannel Bitmap subfield (see 9.3.1.19 (VHT/HE NDP Announcement frame format)).	O	N
	Otherwise	Not present.	N	N
<p>NOTE 1—In the “TXVECTOR” and “RXVECTOR” columns, the following apply:</p> <p>Y = Present; N = Not present; O = Optional;</p> <p>MU indicates that the parameter is present once for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU and present per user for an HE MU PPDU. For an HE TB PPDU, MU in the TXVECTOR column indicates that the parameter is present once and MU in the RXVECTOR column indicates the parameter is not present. Parameters specified to be present per user are conceptually supplied as an array of values indexed by u, where u takes values 0 to NUM_USERS – 1.</p> <p>NOTE 2—Refer to Clause 15, 16, 17, 18, 19 and 21 for the TXVECTOR/RXVECTOR parameters that are not present in this table when FORMAT is not HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU or HE_TB.</p>				

1 **27.2.3 TRIGVECTOR parameters**

2

3

4 The TRIGVECTOR is carried in a PHY-TRIGGER.request primitive and provides the PHY of the AP with
 5 the parameters needed to receive an HE TB PPDU over each assigned RU. The parameters in Table 27-2
 6 (TRIGVECTOR parameters) are defined as part of the TRIGVECTOR parameter list in the PHY-TRIG-
 7 GER.request primitive.

8

9

10

11 **Table 27-2—TRIGVECTOR parameters**

12

Parameter	Value
CH_BANDWIDTH	<p>Indicates the bandwidth in the HE-SIG-A of the expected HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>Enumerated type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CBW20 for 20 MHz CBW40 for 40 MHz CBW80 for 80 MHz CBW160 for 160 MHz CBW80+80 for 80+80 MHz
UL_LENGTH	Indicates the value of the L-SIG LENGTH field of the expected HE TB PPDU.
GI_HELT TYPE	<p>Indicates the GI and HE-LTF type of the expected HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>Enumerated type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1x HE-LTF + 1.6 µs GI 2x HE-LTF + 1.6 µs GI 4x HE-LTF + 3.2 µs GI
MU-MIMO LTF MODE	<p>Indicates the LTF mode of the expected UL MU-MIMO HE TB PPDU, if it uses full bandwidth MU-MIMO and does not use 1x HE-LTF.</p> <p>Set to 0 to indicate that HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode is used.</p> <p>Set to 1 to indicate that HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode is used.</p>
NUMBER_OF_HELT	<p>Indicates the number of HE-LTF symbols present in the expected HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>If the parameter DOPPLER is 0:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 1 HE-LTF symbol Set to 1 for 2 HE-LTF symbols Set to 2 for 4 HE-LTF symbols Set to 3 for 6 HE-LTF symbols Set to 4 for 8 HE-LTF symbols <p>If the parameter DOPPLER is 1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 1 HE-LTF symbol Set to 1 for 2 HE-LTF symbols Set to 2 for 4 HE-LTF symbols
MIDAMBLE_PREIODICITY	<p>Indicates the midamble periodicity. Present only if the parameter DOPPLER is 1.</p> <p>Integer value:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 10 to indicate a 10 symbol midamble periodicity Set to 20 to indicate a 20 symbol midamble preiodicity
STBC	<p>Indicates the status of STBC encoding in the expected HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>Set to 1 if STBC encoding is used.</p> <p>Set to 0 otherwise.</p>
LDPC_EXTRA_SYMBOL	<p>Indicates the status of the LDPC extra symbol segment in the expected HE TB PPDU.</p> <p>Set to 1 if LDPC extra symbol segment is present.</p> <p>Set to 0 otherwise.</p>

Table 27-2—TRIGVECTOR parameters (continued)

Parameter	Value
PRE-FEC FACTOR	Indicates the pre-FEC padding factor for the expected HE TB PPDU. Set to 0 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 4. Set to 1 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 1. Set to 2 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 2. Set to 3 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 3.
PE DISAMBIGUITY	Indicates the PE disambiguity for the expected HE TB PPDU. Set to 0 to indicate no PE disambiguity. Set to 1 to indicate PE disambiguity.
DOPPLER	Indicates a high Doppler mode for the expected HE TB PPDU. Set to 1 to indicate that midambles are present. Set to 0 otherwise.
AID12_LIST	Carries the 12 LSBs of the AID of each triggered STA. NOTE—Each element of AID12_LIST is (12-bit) AID of the corresponding HE TB PPDU. See the AID12 subfield in 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format) for more information of each element.
RU_ALLOCATION_LIST	8 bits are used per STA to indicate the RU allocated in the whole bandwidth. See 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format).
CODINGTYPE_LIST	Indicates the coding type for each expected HE TB PPDU. NOTE—Each element indicates the coding type of the corresponding HE TB PPDU. See the UL FEC Coding Type subfield description in 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format).
HE_MCS_LIST	Indicates the HE-MCS for each expected HE TB PPDU. NOTE—Each element of HE_MCS_LIST indicates HE-MCS of the corresponding HE TB PPDU. See the UL HE-MCS subfield in 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format) for more information of each element.
UL_DCM_LIST	Indicates whether or not DCM is applied for each expected HE TB PPDU. NOTE—Each element indicates 1-bit UL DCM of the corresponding HE TB PPDU. See the UL DCM subfield description in 9.3.1.23 (Trigger frame format) for details.
SS_ALLOCATION_LIST	Indicates the spatial streams of each expected HE TB PPDU. NOTE—Each element indicates the spatial streams of the corresponding HE TB PPDU. See the SS Allocation subfield description in 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format).

27.2.4 PHYCONFIG_VECTOR parameters

The PHYCONFIG_VECTOR carried in a PHY-CONFIG.request primitive for an HE PHY contains an OPERATING_CHANNEL parameter, which identifies the operating or primary channel. The PHY shall set dot11CurrentPrimaryChannel to the value of this parameter.

The PHYCONFIG_VECTOR carried in a PHY-CONFIG.request primitive for an HE PHY contains a CHANNEL_WIDTH parameter, which identifies the operating channel width and takes one of the values 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, and 80+80 MHz. The PHY shall set dot11CurrentChannelWidth to the value of this parameter.

The PHYCONFIG_VECTOR carried in a PHY-CONFIG.request primitive for an HE PHY contains a CENTER_FREQUENCY_SEGMENT_0 parameter, which identifies the center frequency of the channel (or of segment 0 if the CHANNEL_WIDTH parameter indicates 80+80 MHz) and takes a value between 1 and 255. The PHY shall set dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex0 to the value of this parameter. The PHYCONFIG_VECTOR carried in a PHY-CONFIG.request primitive for an HE PHY contains a CENTER_FREQUENCY_SEGMENT_1 parameter, which takes the value 0 if the CHANNEL_WIDTH parameter does not indicate 80+80 MHz, and otherwise identifies the center frequency of segment 1 and takes a value between 1 and 200. The PHY shall set dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex1 to the value of this parameter.

27.2.5 Effects of CH_BANDWIDTH parameter on PPDU format

Table 27-3 (Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT Modulation and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters) shows the valid combinations of the FORMAT, NON_HT MODULATION and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters and the corresponding PPDU format and value of CH_OFFSET (if applicable). Other combinations are reserved.

Table 27-3— Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT Modulation and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters

FORMAT	NON_HT_MODULATION	CH_BANDWIDTH	CH_OFFSET	PPDU format
HE	N/A	CBW20	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU of 20 MHz bandwidth. If the BSS bandwidth is wider than 20 MHz, then the transmission shall use the primary 20 MHz channel.
HE	N/A	CBW40	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU of 40 MHz bandwidth. If the BSS bandwidth is wider than 40 MHz, then the transmission shall use the primary 40 MHz channel.
HE	N/A	CBW80	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU of 80 MHz bandwidth. If the BSS bandwidth is wider than 80 MHz, then the transmission shall use the primary 80 MHz channel.
HE	N/A	CBW160	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU of 160 MHz bandwidth.
HE	N/A	CBW80+80	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU of 80+80 MHz bandwidth.
HE	N/A	HE-CBW-PUNC80-PRI	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU on the punctured 80 MHz bandwidth where only the secondary 20 MHz is punctured.
HE	N/A	HE-CBW-PUNC80-SEC	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU on the punctured 80 MHz bandwidth where only one of the two 20 MHz subchannels in secondary 40 MHz is punctured.

1 **Table 27-3—Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT Modulation and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters (continued)**

FORMAT	NON_HT_MODULATION	CH_BANDWIDTH	CH_OFFSET	PPDU format
HE	N/A	HE-CBW-PUNC160-PRI20	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU on the punctured 160 MHz bandwidth where only the secondary 20 MHz in the primary 80 MHz is punctured.
HE	N/A	HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-PRI20	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU on the punctured 80+80 MHz bandwidth where only the secondary 20 MHz in the primary 80 MHz is punctured.
HE	N/A	HE-CBW-PUNC160-SEC40	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU on the punctured 160 MHz bandwidth where the primary 40 MHz in the primary 80 MHz is present, and at least one 20 MHz subchannel that is not in the primary 40 MHz is punctured.
HE	N/A	HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-SEC40	N/A	The STA transmits an HE PPDU on the punctured 80+80 MHz bandwidth where the primary 40 MHz in the primary 80 MHz is present, and at least one 20 MHz subchannel that is not in the primary 40 MHz is punctured.
HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT	See Table 21-2 (Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT_MODULATION, CH_BANDWIDTH, and CH_OFFSET parameters) and Table 19-2 (Interpretation of FORMAT, CH_BANDWIDTH and CH_OFFSET parameters)			
NON_HT	If INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS is not present, see Table 21-2 (Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT_MODULATION, CH_BANDWIDTH, and CH_OFFSET parameters) and Table 19-2 (Interpretation of FORMAT, CH_BANDWIDTH and CH_OFFSET parameters)			
NON_HT	If INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS is present, see Table 27-4 (Interpretation of CH_BANDWIDTH and INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameters when FORMAT is equal to NON_HT and NON_HT_MODULATION is equal to NON_HT_DUP_OFDM)			

47
48 Valid combinations of the CH_BANDWIDTH and INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameters when FOR-
49 MAT is NON_HT and the corresponding PPDU and CH_OFFSET (if applicable) are shown in Table 27-4
50 (Interpretation of CH_BANDWIDTH and INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameters when FORMAT is
51 equal to NON_HT and NON_HT_MODULATION is equal to NON_HT_DUP_OFDM). Other combina-
52 tions are reserved.
53

54 55 **27.2.6 Support for non-HT, HT and VHT formats**

56 **27.2.6.1 General**

61 An HE STA logically contains Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for
62 ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification),
63 Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), Clause 18 (Extended
64 Rate PHY (ERP) specification), Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification), Clause 21 (Very
65

1
2 **Table 27-4—Interpretation of CH_BANDWIDTH and INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS parameters**
3 **when FORMAT is equal to NON_HT and NON_HT_MODULATION is equal to**
4 **NON_HT_DUP_OFDM**

CH_BANDWIDTH	INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS	CH_OFFSET	PPDU format
CBW80	All bits set to 1 except for the four bits corresponding to the primary 80 MHz channel, which are set to 0	N/A	The STA transmits a NON_HT PPDU of 80 MHz bandwidth. If the BSS bandwidth is wider than 80 MHz, then the transmission shall use the primary 80 MHz channel.
CBW80	The bit corresponding to the primary 20 MHz channel set to 0 and one or two other bits set to 0 that correspond to any other subchannels in the primary 80 MHz, all other bits set to 1	N/A	The STA transmits a punctured NON_HT PPDU of 80 MHz bandwidth. If the BSS bandwidth is wider than 80 MHz, then the transmission shall use the primary 80 MHz channel.
CBW160	All eight bits set to 0	N/A	The STA transmits a NON_HT PPDU of 160 MHz bandwidth.
CBW160	The bit corresponding to the primary 20 MHz channel set to 0 and one to six other bits set to 0 that correspond to any other subchannels in the 160 MHz, all other bits set to 1	N/A	The STA transmits a punctured NON_HT PPDU of 160 MHz bandwidth.
CBW80+80	All eight bits set to 0	N/A	The STA transmits a NON_HT PPDU of 80+80 MHz bandwidth.
CBW80+80	The bit corresponding to the primary 20 MHz channel set to 0 and one to six other bits set to 0 that correspond to any other subchannels in the 80+80 MHz, all other bits set to 1	N/A	The STA transmits a punctured NON_HT PPDU of 80+80 MHz bandwidth.

42 High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) and Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification)
43 PHYs. The MAC interacts with the PHYs via the Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) PHY
44 service interface, which in turn interacts with the Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band
45 designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY
46 specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), Clause
47 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification), Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) PHY
48 service interfaces and Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) as shown in Figure 27-
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 (PHY interaction on transmit for various PPDU formats), Figure 27-2 (PHY interaction on receive for various PPDU formats), and Figure 27-3 (PHY-CONFIG and CCA interaction with various PPDU formats).

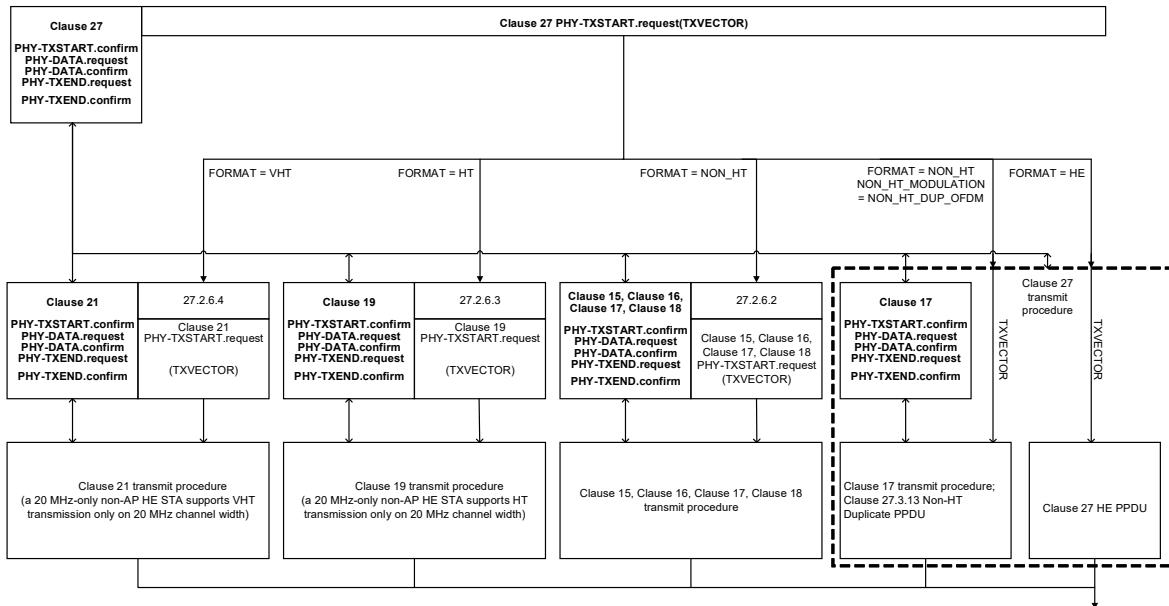


Figure 27-1—PHY interaction on transmit for various PPDU formats

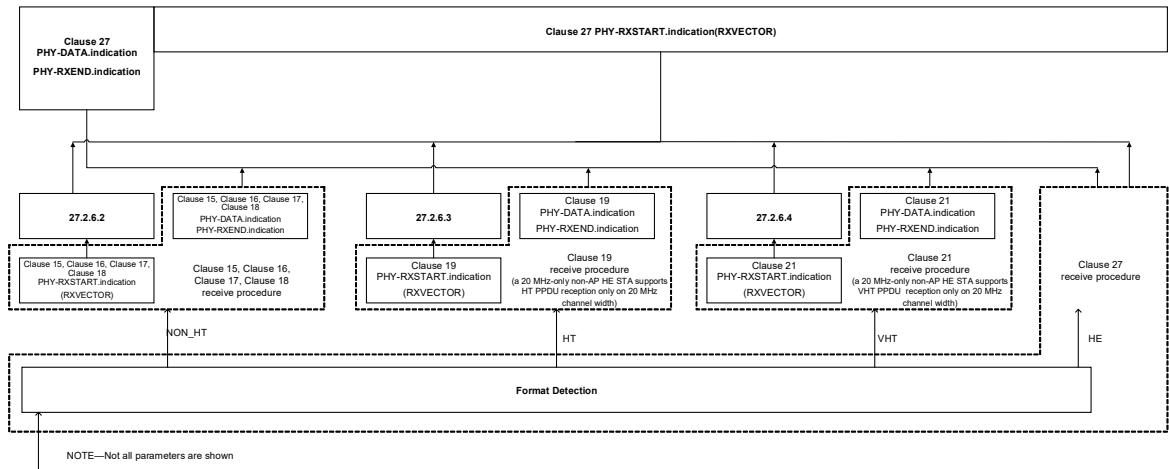


Figure 27-2—PHY interaction on receive for various PPDU formats

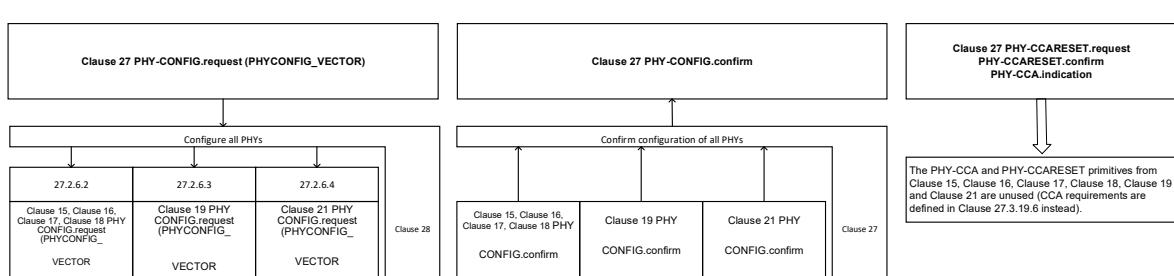


Figure 27-3—PHY-CONFIG and CCA interaction with various PPDU formats

27.2.6.2 Support for non-HT format

The behavior of the HE PHY on receipt of a PHY-TXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive with the FORMAT parameter equal to NON_HT and the NON_HT_MODULATION parameter not equal to NON_HT_DUP_OFDM is defined in Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), and Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) and depends on the parameter NON_HT_MODULATION. If the parameter NON_HT_MODULATION is OFDM or NON_HT_DUP_OFDM, then the following additional requirements apply:

- The requirements in 21.3.9.1 (Transmission of 20 MHz NON_HT PPDUs with more than one transmit chain)
- The requirements in 21.3.17.1 (Transmit spectrum mask) instead of the requirements in 17.3.9.3 (Transmit spectrum mask)
- The requirements in 27.3.18.3 (Transmit center frequency and symbol clock frequency tolerance)) instead of the requirements in 17.3.9.7.2 (Transmitter center frequency leakage)

The modulation equation for non-HT duplicate transmission is defined in 27.3.13 (Non-HT duplicate transmission).

The HE PHY TXVECTOR parameters in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) are mapped to Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), and Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY

(ERP) specification) TXVECTOR parameters according to Table 27-5 (Mapping of the HE PHY parameters for non-HT operation). The HE PHY parameters not listed in the table are not present.

Table 27-5—Mapping of the HE PHY parameters for non-HT operation

HE PHY Parameter	2.4 GHz operation defined by Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications)	2.4 GHz operation defined by Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification)	2.4 GHz operation defined by Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification)	5 GHz and 6 GHz operation defined by Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification)	Parameter List
L_LENGTH	LENGTH	LENGTH	LENGTH	LENGTH	TXVECTOR/RXVECTOR
L_DATARATE	DATARATE	DATARATE	DATARATE	DATARATE	TXVECTOR/RXVECTOR
TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX	TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX	TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX	TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX	TXPWR_LEVEL_INDEX	TXVECTOR
RSSI	RSSI	RSSI	RSSI	RSSI	RXVECTOR
SERVICE	SERVICE	SERVICE	SERVICE	SERVICE	TXVECTOR/RXVECTOR
RCPI	RCPI	RCPI	RCPI	RCPI	RXVECTOR
CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	discarded	discarded	CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	TXVECTOR/RXVECTOR
DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NO_NHT	discarded	discarded	DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT	TXVECTOR/RXVECTOR
OPERATING_CHANNEL	discarded	discarded	discarded	OPERATING_CHANNEL	PHYCONFIG_VECTOR

The behavior of the HE PHY on receipt of a PHY-TXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive with the FORMAT parameter equal to NON-HT and the NON_HT_MODULATION parameter equal to NON_HT_DUP_OFDM is defined in 27.3.13 (Non-HT duplicate transmission).

To support the non-HT format, the HE PHY, on receipt of a PHY-CONFIG.request(PHYCONFIG_VECTOR) primitive, behaves as if it were a Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) or Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) PHY that had received a PHY-CONFIG.request(PHYCONFIG_VECTOR) primitive but without the PHYCONFIG_VECTOR parameters CHANNEL_WIDTH, CENTER_FREQUENCY_SEGMENT_0, and CENTER_FREQUENCY_SEGMENT_1.

As defined in 27.3.21 (HE receive procedure), once a PPDU is received and detected as a non-HT PPDU, the behavior of the HE PHY is defined in Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), or Clause 18

(Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) depending on the PPDU format. The RXVECTOR parameters from the Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) are mapped to the HE PHY RXVECTOR parameters as defined in Table 27-5 (Mapping of the HE PHY parameters for non-HT operation). The HE PHY parameters not listed in the table are not present.

27.2.6.3 Support for HT format

The behavior of an HE PHY on receipt of a PHY-TXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive with the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT equal to HT_MF or HT_GF is defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) with the following additional requirements:

- The requirements in 21.3.9.2 (Transmission of HT PPDUs with more than four transmit chains)
- The requirements in 27.3.18.3 (Transmit center frequency and symbol clock frequency tolerance) instead of the requirements in 19.3.18.4 (Transmit center frequency tolerance)

The HE PHY TXVECTOR parameters in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) are mapped directly to Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) TXVECTOR parameters in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters). The HE PHY parameters not listed in Table 19-1 are not present. The PHY shall use a value of CH_OFFSET in the Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) TXVECTOR that is consistent with Table 27-3 (Interpretation of FORMAT, NON_HT Modulation and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters). A 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA supports HT transmission only on 20 MHz channel width.

On receipt of a PHY-CONFIG.request(PHYCONFIG_VECTOR) primitive, the HE PHY behaves, for the purposes of HT PPDU transmission and reception, as if it were a Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) PHY that had received PHY-CONFIG.request(PHYCONFIG_VECTOR) primitive but without the PHYCONFIG_VECTOR parameters CHANNEL_WIDTH, CENTER_FREQUENCY_SEGMENT_0, and CENTER_FREQUENCY_SEGMENT_1 and with the PHYCONFIG_VECTOR parameter SECONDARY_CHANNEL_OFFSET set to SECONDARY_CHANNEL_NONE if dot11CurrentChannelWidth indicates 20 MHz, to SECONDARY_CHANNEL_ABOVE if $f_{P20,idx} < f_{S20,idx}$, or to SECONDARY_CHANNEL_BELOW otherwise.

As defined in 27.3.21 (HE receive procedure), once a PPDU is received and detected as an HT PPDU, the behavior of the HE PHY is defined in Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification). The RXVECTOR parameters in Table 19-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) are mapped directly to the RXVECTOR parameters in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters). The HE PHY parameters not listed in Table 19-1 are not present. A 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA supports HT reception only on 20 MHz channel width.

27.2.6.4 Support for VHT format

The behavior of an HE PHY on receipt of a PHY-TXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive with the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT equal to VHT is defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) except that the requirements in 27.3.18.3 (Transmit center frequency and symbol clock frequency tolerance) apply instead of the requirements in 21.3.17.4.2 (Transmit center frequency tolerance).

The HE PHY TXVECTOR parameters in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) are mapped directly to the Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification) TXVECTOR parameters in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters). The HE PHY parameters not listed in Table 21-1 are not present. The 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA supports VHT transmission only on 20 MHz channel width.

1 On receipt of a PHY-CONFIG.request(PHYCONFIG_VECTOR) primitive, the HE PHY behaves, for the
 2 purposes of VHT PPDU transmission and reception, as if it were a Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT)
 3 PHY specification) PHY that received the PHY-CONFIG.request(PHYCONFIG_VECTOR) primitive.
 4

5
 6 As defined in 27.3.21 (HE receive procedure), once a PPDU is received and detected as an VHT PPDU, the
 7 behavior of the HE PHY is defined in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification). The
 8 RXVECTOR parameters in Table 21-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters) are mapped directly to
 9 the RXVECTOR parameters in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters). The HE PHY
 10 parameters not listed in Table 21-1 are not present. A 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA supports VHT recep-
 11 tion only on 20 MHz channel width.
 12

14 **27.3 HE PHY**

15 **27.3.1 Introduction**

16 This subclause provides the procedure by which PSDUs are converted to and from transmissions on the
 17 wireless medium.

18 During transmission, a PSDU (in the SU case) or one or more PSDUs (in the MU case) are processed (i.e.,
 19 scrambled and coded) and appended to the PHY preamble to create the PPDU. At the receiver, the PHY pre-
 20 ample is processed to aid in the detection, demodulation, and delivery of the PSDU.

21 **27.3.1.1 MU transmission**

22 The MU transmissions include DL MU transmissions and UL MU transmissions.

23 DL MU transmission allows an AP to simultaneously transmit information to more than one non-AP STA.
 24 For a DL MU transmission, the AP uses the HE MU PPDU format and employs either DL OFDMA, DL
 25 MU-MIMO, or a mixture of both. UL MU transmission allows an AP to simultaneously receive information
 26 from more than one non-AP STA. UL MU transmissions are preceded by a triggering frame from the AP.
 27 The non-AP STAs transmit using the HE TB PPDU format and employ either UL OFDMA, UL MU-
 28 MIMO, or a mixture of both.

29 The HE PHY supports OFDMA transmissions, both in the DL and the UL where different users can occupy
 30 different RUs in a PPDU (see 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)). The transmission within an RU
 31 in a PPDU may be a single stream to one user, spatially multiplexed to one user (SU-MIMO), or spatially
 32 multiplexed to multiple users (MU-MIMO).

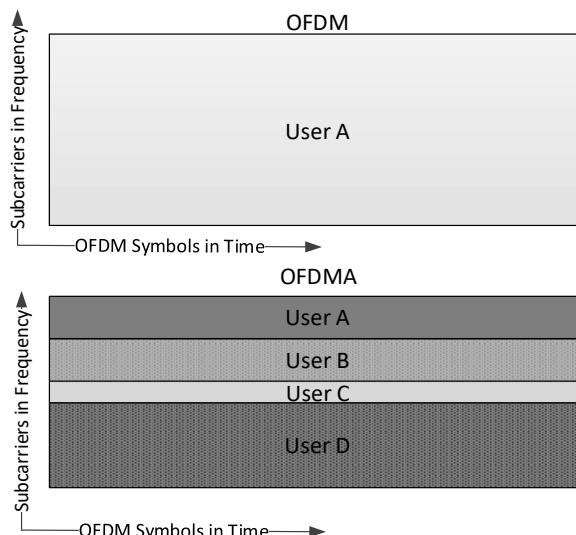
33 NOTE—The VHT PHY supports only full bandwidth DL MU-MIMO as described in 21.3.11 (SU-MIMO and DL-MU-
 34 MIMO Beamforming).

35 The HE PHY supports DL MU-MIMO and UL MU-MIMO, for both the full bandwidth case as well as for
 36 the partial bandwidth case where MU-MIMO is used only on certain RUs in the PPDU. The combination of
 37 SU transmissions and MU-MIMO transmissions on different RUs in one PPDU is also supported.

38 **27.3.1.2 OFDMA**

39 OFDMA is an OFDM-based multiple access scheme where different subsets of subcarriers are allocated to
 40 different users, allowing simultaneous data transmission to or from one or more users. In OFDMA, users are
 41 allocated different subsets of subcarriers that can change from one PPDU to the next. The difference
 42 between OFDM and OFDMA is illustrated in Figure 27-4 (Illustration of OFDM and OFDMA concepts).
 43 Similar to OFDM, OFDMA employs multiple subcarriers, but the subcarriers are divided into several groups

1 where each group is referred to as an RU. With OFDMA, different transmit powers may be applied to different RUs.
 2
 3
 4
 5



28 **Figure 27-4—Illustration of OFDM and OFDMA concepts**
 29

30 **27.3.2 Subcarrier and resource allocation**

32 **27.3.2.1 General**

35 An OFDM symbol is constructed of subcarriers, the number of which is a function of the PPDU bandwidth.
 36 There are several subcarrier types:

- 38 1) Data subcarriers, which are used for data transmission (see 27.3.2.2 (Resource unit, guard and
 39 DC subcarriers))
- 41 2) Pilot subcarriers, which are used for phase information and parameter tracking (see 27.3.2.4
 42 (Pilot subcarriers))
- 43 3) Unused subcarriers, which are not used for either data or pilot transmission. The unused sub-
 44 carriers are the DC subcarrier (see 27.3.2.2 (Resource unit, guard and DC subcarriers)), the
 45 Guard band subcarriers at the band edges (see 27.3.2.2 (Resource unit, guard and DC subcarri-
 46 ers)), and the Null subcarriers (see 27.3.2.3 (Null subcarriers)).

49 The following notation is used to describe the indices for a set of subcarriers:
 50

- 51 — $[x1:y1]$ represents the set of subcarriers with index k that satisfies $x1 \leq k \leq y1$
- 52 — $[x1:y1, x2:y2]$ represents the set of subcarriers with index k that satisfies either $x1 \leq k \leq y1$ or $x2 \leq k \leq$
 53 $y2$

56 **27.3.2.2 Resource unit, guard and DC subcarriers**

58 The RUs defined for DL and UL transmission are as follows: 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, 106-tone RU, 242-
 59 tone RU, 484-tone RU, 996-tone RU and 2×996 -tone RU.
 60

62 The 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, 106-tone RU and 242-tone RU are used in the 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz,
 63 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU format. The 52-tone RU, 106-tone RU and 242-tone RU are used
 64 in the 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE TB PPDU format. The 26-tone RU is used
 65

1 in the 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE TB PPDU format unless a STA is operating
 2 in an operating class for which the behavior limits set listed in Annex E includes the DFS_50_100_Be-
 3 havior (see 26.5.2.2.1 (General) and 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation)). The 106-tone
 4 RU is used in the HE ER SU PPDU format.
 5

6 The 484-tone RU is used in the 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB
 7 PPDU formats. The 996-tone RU is used in the 80 MHz, 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE
 8 TB PPDU formats. The 2×996-tone RU is used in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU format and
 9 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE TB PPDU format.
 10

11 The 242-tone and larger RUs are used in the HE SU PPDU format. The 242-tone RU is used in the 20 MHz
 12 HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU formats. The 484-tone RU is used in the 40 MHz HE SU PPDU for-
 13 mat. The 996-tone RU is used in the 80 MHz HE SU PPDU format. The 2×996-tone RU is used in the 160
 14 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE SU PPDU formats.
 15

16 The maximum number of RUs in the 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE PPDU for-
 17 ments are defined in Table 27-6 (Maximum number of RUs for each channel width).
 18

23 **Table 27-6—Maximum number of RUs for each channel width**

RU type	CBW20	CBW40	CBW80	CBW80+80 and CBW160
26-tone RU	9	18	37	74
52-tone RU	4	8	16	32
106-tone RU	2	4	8	16
242-tone RU	1	2	4	8
484-tone RU	N/A	1	2	4
996-tone RU	N/A	N/A	1	2
2×996 tone RU	N/A	N/A	N/A	1

44 An HE MU PPDU using OFDMA transmission can carry a mixture of 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484-, and 996-
 45 tone RUs.
 46

47 A 26-tone RU consists of 24 data subcarriers and 2 pilot subcarriers. The positions of the pilots for the 26-
 48 tone RU are defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers). The location of the 26-tone RUs are fixed as defined in
 49 Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20
 50 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a
 51

1 non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz
 2 HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU).

5 **Table 27-7—Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA
 6 20 MHz HE PPDU**

RU type	RU index and subcarrier range				
26-tone RU	RU 1 [-121: -96]	RU 2 [-95: -70]	RU 3 [-68: -43]	RU 4 [-42: -17]	RU 5 [-16: -4, 4: 16]
	RU 6 [17: 42]	RU 7 [43: 68]	RU 8 [70: 95]	RU 9 [96: 121]	
52-tone RU	RU 1 [-121: -70]	RU 2 [-68: -17]	RU 3 [17: 68]	RU 4 [70: 121]	
106-tone RU	RU 1 [-122: -17]		RU 2 [17: 122]		
242-tone RU	RU 1 [-122: -2, 2:122]				

26 The subcarrier index of 0 corresponds to the DC tone. Negative subcarrier indices correspond to subcarries with frequency
 27 lower than the DC tone, and positive subcarrier indices correspond to subcarriers with frequency higher than the DC tone.

30 **Table 27-8—Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-
 31 OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU**

RU type	RU index and subcarrier range				
26-tone RU	RU 1 [-243: -218]	RU 2 [-217: -192]	RU 3 [-189: -164]	RU 4 [-163: -138]	RU 5 [-136: -111]
	RU 6 [-109: -84]	RU 7 [-83: -58]	RU 8 [-55: -30]	RU 9 [-29: -4]	
	RU 10 [4: 29]	RU 11 [30: 55]	RU 12 [58: 83]	RU 13 [84: 109]	RU 14 [111: 136]
	RU 15 [138: 163]	RU 16 [164: 189]	RU 17 [192: 217]	RU 18 [218: 243]	
52-tone RU	RU 1 [-243: -192]	RU 2 [-189: -138]	RU 3 [-109: -58]	RU 4 [-55: -4]	
	RU 5 [4: 55]	RU 6 [58: 109]	RU 7 [138: 189]	RU 8 [192: 243]	
106-tone RU	RU 1 [-243: -138]	RU 2 [-109: -4]	RU 3 [4: 109]	RU 4 [138: 243]	
242-tone RU	RU 1 [-244: -3]		RU 2 [3: 244]		
484-tone RU	RU 1 [-244: -3, 3: 244]				

62 The subcarrier index of 0 corresponds to the DC tone. Negative subcarrier indices correspond to subcarries with frequency
 63 lower than the DC tone, and positive subcarrier indices correspond to subcarriers with frequency higher than the DC tone.

1 **Table 27-9—Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-**
 2 **OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU**

RU type	RU index and subcarrier range				
26-tone RU	RU 1 [-499: -474]	RU 2 [-473: -448]	RU 3 [-445: -420]	RU 4 [-419: -394]	RU 5 [-392: -367]
	RU 6 [-365: -340]	RU 7 [-339: -314]	RU 8 [-311: -286]	RU 9 [-285: -260]	
	RU 10 [-257: -232]	RU 11 [-231: -206]	RU 12 [-203: -178]	RU 13 [-177: -152]	RU 14 [-150: -125]
	RU 15 [-123: -98]	RU 16 [-97: -72]	RU 17 [-69: -44]	RU 18 [-43: -18]	RU 19 [-16: -4, 4: 16]
	RU 20 [18: 43]	RU 21 [44: 69]	RU 22 [72: 97]	RU 23 [98: 123]	RU 24 [125: 150]
	RU 25 [152: 177]	RU 26 [178: 203]	RU 27 [206: 231]	RU 28 [232: 257]	
	RU 29 [260: 285]	RU 30 [286: 311]	RU 31 [314: 339]	RU 32 [340: 365]	RU 33 [367: 392]
	RU 34 [394: 419]	RU 35 [420: 445]	RU 36 [448: 473]	RU 37 [474: 499]	
52-tone RU	RU 1 [-499: -448]	RU 2 [-445: -394]	RU 3 [-365: -314]	RU 4 [-311: -260]	
	RU 5 [-257: -206]	RU 6 [-203: -152]	RU 7 [-123: -72]	RU 8 [-69: -18]	
	RU 9 [18: 69]	RU 10 [72: 123]	RU 11 [152: 203]	RU 12 [206: 257]	
	RU 13 [260: 311]	RU 14 [314: 365]	RU 15 [394: 445]	RU 16 [448: 499]	
106-tone RU	RU 1 [-499: -394]	RU 2 [-365: -260]	RU 3 [-257: -152]	RU 4 [-123: -18]	
	RU 5 [18: 123]	RU 6 [152: 257]	RU 7 [260: 365]	RU 8 [394: 499]	
242-tone RU	RU 1 [-500: -259]	RU 2 [-258: -17]	RU 3 [17: 258]	RU 4 [259: 500]	
484-tone RU	RU 1 [-500: -17]		RU 2 [17: 500]		
996-tone RU	RU 1 [-500: -3, 3: 500]				

55 The subcarrier index of 0 corresponds to the DC tone. Negative subcarrier indices correspond to subcarries with frequency
 56 lower than the DC tone, and positive subcarrier indices correspond to subcarriers with frequency higher than the DC tone.

59 The data and pilot subcarrier indices for a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU are the same as those for a 996-
 60 tone RU.

63 The location of the 26-tone RUs are shown in Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU),
 64 Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU)

for the 20 MHz, 40 MHz and 80 MHz HE MU PPDU formats or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission, respectively. The same structure as used for the 80 MHz HE MU PPDU formats or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission is used for both the Primary 80 MHz and Secondary 80 MHz channels in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission. The middle 26-tone RU in the 20 MHz HE MU PPDU or HE TB PPDU and the center 26-tone RU in the 80 MHz HE MU PPDU or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission (Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU)) is located on subcarriers [-16: -4, 4: 16].

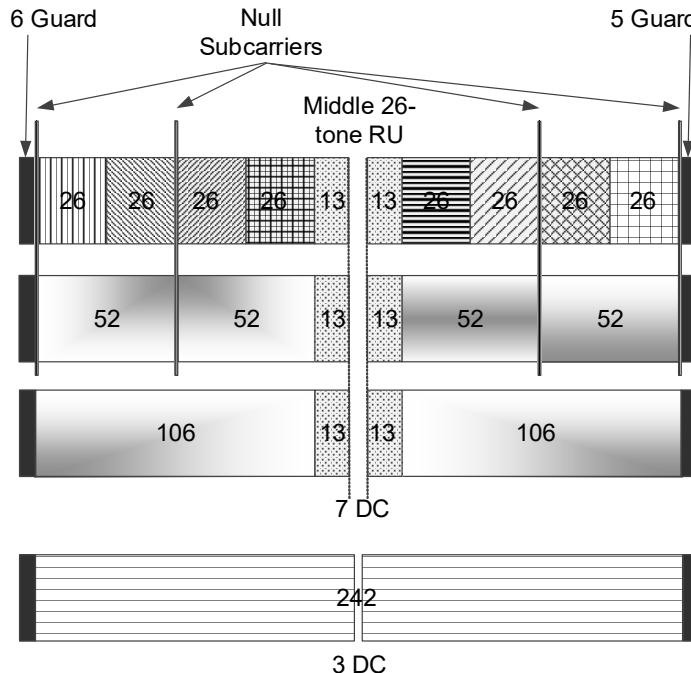


Figure 27-5—RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU

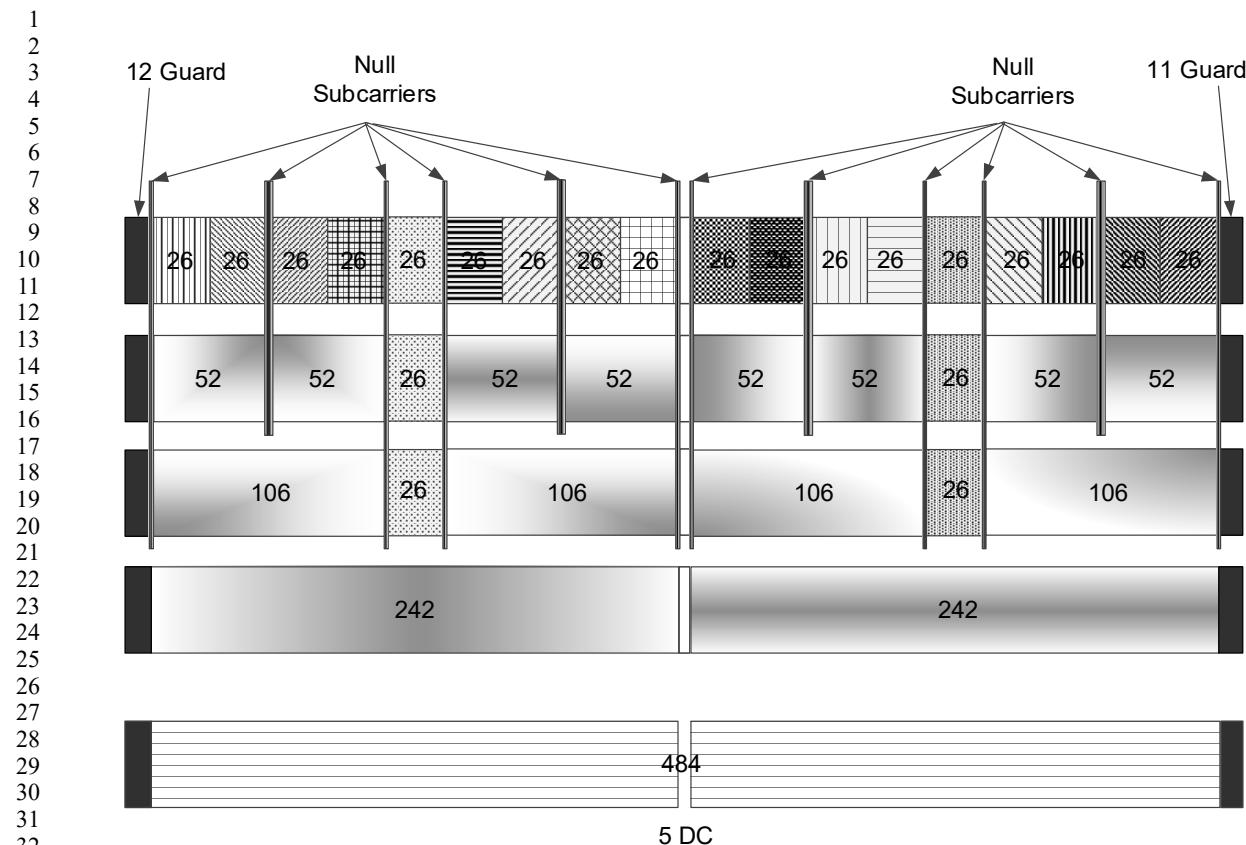


Figure 27-6—RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU

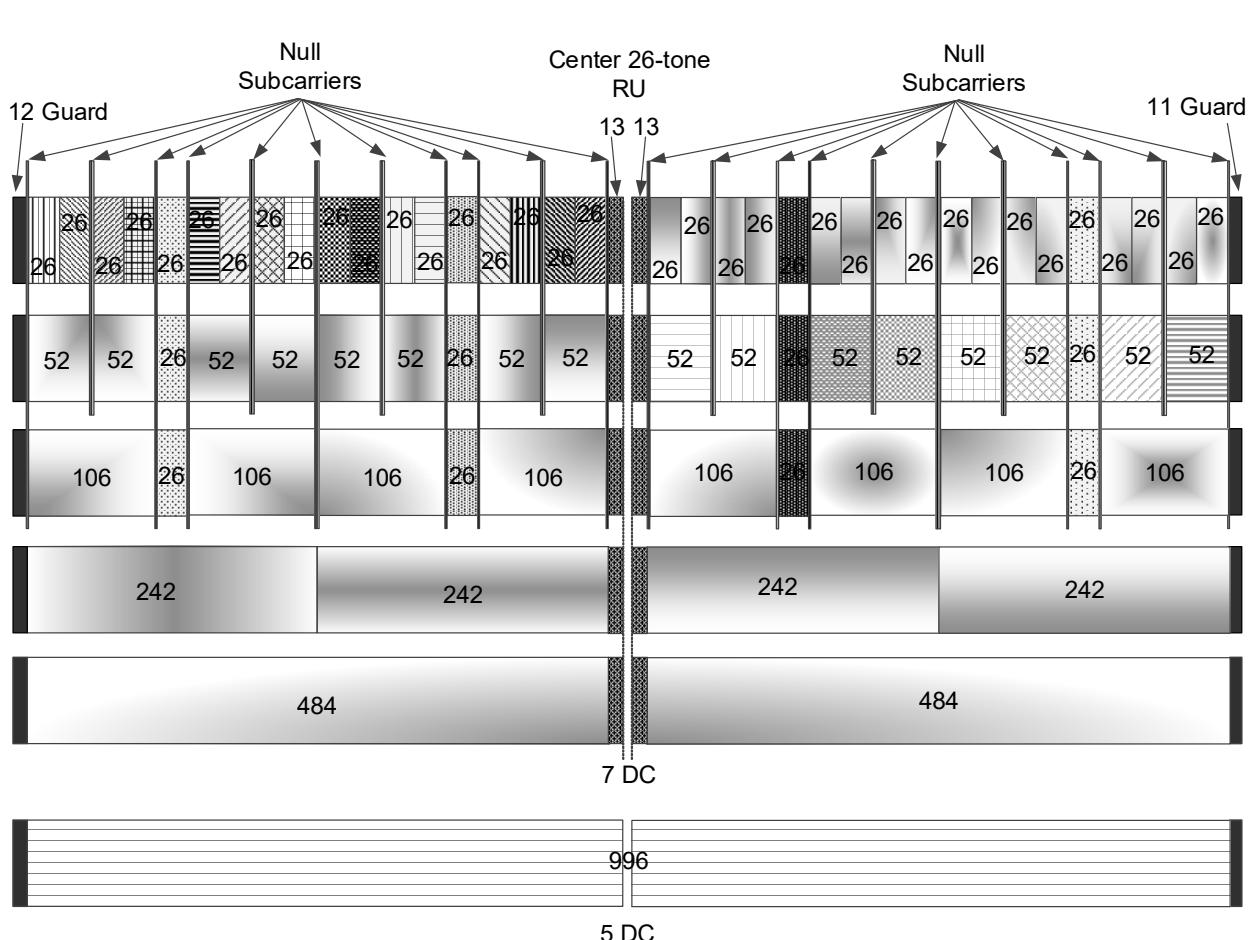


Figure 27-7—RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU

A 52-tone RU consists of 48 data subcarriers and 4 pilot subcarriers. The positions of the pilots for the 52-tone RU are defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers). The locations of the 52-tone RUs are fixed as defined in Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU) and illustrated in Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU), Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU) for the 20 MHz, 40 MHz and 80 MHz HE MU PPDU formats or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission, respectively. The same structure as used in the 80 MHz HE MU PPDU format or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission is used for both the Primary 80 MHz and Secondary 80 MHz channels in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU formats or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission.

A 106-tone RU consists of 102 data subcarriers and 4 pilot subcarriers. The positions of the pilots for the 106-tone RU are defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers). The locations of the 106-tone RUs are fixed as defined in Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU) and illustrated in Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU), Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU) for the 20 MHz, 40 MHz and 80 MHz HE MU PPDU formats or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission.

1 formats using OFDMA transmission, respectively. The same structure as used in the 80 MHz HE MU PPDU
 2 formats or HE TB PPDU formats using OFDMA transmission is used for both the Primary 80 MHz and Sec-
 3 ondary 80 MHz channels in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU formats or HE TB PPDU formats
 4 using OFDMA transmission.
 5

6
 7 A 242-tone RU consists of 234 data subcarriers and 8 pilot subcarriers. The positions of pilots for the 242-
 8 tone RU are defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers). The locations of the 242-tone RUs are fixed as defined in
 9 Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20
 10 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a
 11 non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz
 12 HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU) and illustrated in Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20
 13 MHz HE PPDU), Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an
 14 80 MHz HE PPDU) for the 20 MHz, 40 MHz and 80 MHz HE PPDU formats, respectively. The same struc-
 15 ture as used in the 80 MHz HE PPDU formats is used for both the Primary 80 MHz and Secondary 80 MHz
 16 channels in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE PPDU formats.
 17

18
 19 A 484-tone RU consists of 468 data subcarriers and 16 pilot subcarriers. The position of the pilots for the
 20 484-tone RU is defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers). The locations of the 484-tone RUs are fixed as
 21 defined in Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-
 22 OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE
 23 PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU) and illustrated in Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz
 24 HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU) for the 40 MHz and 80 MHz HE PPDU
 25 formats. The same structure as used for the 80 MHz HE PPDU formats is used for both the Primary 80 MHz
 26 and Secondary 80 MHz channels in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE PPDU formats.
 27

28
 29 A 996-tone RU consists of 980 data subcarriers and 16 pilot subcarriers. The position of the pilots for the
 30 996-tone RU is defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers). The locations of the 996-tone RUs are fixed and
 31 located on subcarrier [-1012: -515, -509: -12] and [12: 509, 515: 1012] for each half of the BW, respec-
 32 tively, for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE PPDU formats.
 33

34 A 2×996 -tone RU consists of two 996-tone RUs, one RU in each of the 80 MHz channels for 160 MHz and
 35 80+80 MHz HE PPDU formats.
 36

37 The 20 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU with one or more RUs smaller than 242 tones have 7 DC
 38 subcarriers located at [-3: 3]. The 20 MHz HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU with a 242-tone
 39 RU have 3 DC subcarriers located at [-1: 1]. The 40 MHz HE PPDU has 5 DC subcarriers located at [-2: 2].
 40 The 80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU with one or more RUs smaller than 996 tones have 7 DC
 41 subcarriers located at [-3: 3]. The 80 MHz HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU with a 996-tone
 42 RU have 5 DC subcarriers located at [-2: 2]. The structure used in the 80 MHz HE PPDU is used for both
 43 the Primary 80 MHz and Secondary 80 MHz channels in the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE PPDU. The DC
 44 subcarriers are located on subcarriers [-11: 11].
 45

46 The 20 MHz HE PPDU has 11 guard subcarriers: the 6 lowest frequency subcarriers [-128: -123] and 5
 47 highest frequency subcarriers [123: 127] as shown in Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU).
 48 The 40 MHz HE PPDU has 23 guard subcarriers: the 12 lowest frequency subcarriers [-256: -245] and the
 49 11 highest frequency subcarriers [245: 255] as shown in Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU).
 50 The 80 MHz HE PPDU has 23 guard subcarriers: the 12 lowest frequency subcarriers [-512: -501] and the
 51 11 highest frequency subcarriers [501: 511] as shown in Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE
 52 PPDU). For the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz HE PPDU, the same number of lowest frequency and highest fre-
 53 quency guard subcarriers as 80 MHz are defined at each edge of the 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz.
 54

27.3.2.3 Null subcarriers

There are null subcarriers between the 26-, 52- and 106-tone RU locations as illustrated in Figure 27-5 (RU locations in a 20 MHz HE PPDU), Figure 27-6 (RU locations in a 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU). The null subcarriers are located near the DC or edge tones to provide protection from transmit center frequency leakage, receiver DC offset, and interference from neighboring RUs. The null subcarriers have zero energy. The indices of the null subcarrier are enumerated in Table 27-10 (Null subcarrier indices).

Table 27-10— Null subcarrier indices

Channel Width	RU Size	Null Subcarrier Indices
20 MHz	26, 52	$\pm 69, \pm 122$
	106	none
	242	none
40 MHz	26, 52	$\pm 3, \pm 56, \pm 57, \pm 110, \pm 137, \pm 190, \pm 191, \pm 244$
	106	$\pm 3, \pm 110, \pm 137, \pm 244$
	242, 484	none
80 MHz	26, 52	$\pm 17, \pm 70, \pm 71, \pm 124, \pm 151, \pm 204, \pm 205, \pm 258, \pm 259, \pm 312, \pm 313, \pm 366, \pm 393, \pm 446, \pm 447, \pm 500$
	106	$\pm 17, \pm 124, \pm 151, \pm 258, \pm 259, \pm 366, \pm 393, \pm 500$
	242, 484	none
	996	none
160 MHz	26, 52, 106	{null subcarrier indices in 80 MHz – 512, null subcarrier indices in 80 MHz + 512}
	242, 484, 996, 2×996	none

The null subcarriers locations for each 80 MHz frequency segment of an 80+80 MHz HE PPDU shall follow the locations of an 80 MHz HE PPDU.

27.3.2.4 Pilot subcarriers

Within the HE modulated fields (see 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)) of an HE PPDU, pilot subcarriers are present in the Data field, and may be present in the HE-LTF field (see 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF)). The pilot subcarrier indices for the Data field OFDM symbols are defined in 27.3.11.13 (Pilot subcarriers).

One of three HE-LTF types is used in the HE-LTF field of an HE PPDU: 1x HE-LTF, 2x HE-LTF and 4x HE-LTF (see 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF)). If pilot subcarriers are present in the HE-LTF field of an HE PPDU, then, for a 4x HE-LTF and 2x HE-LTF, the pilot subcarrier locations in the HE-LTF field are the same as the pilot subcarrier locations in the Data field. For a 1x HE-LTF, the pilot subcarrier locations in the HE-LTF field are the pilot subcarriers locations in the Data field that are multiples of 4.

27.3.2.5 Resource indication and User identification in an HE MU PPDU

An AP that transmits an HE MU PPDU shall set the UL/DL field in the HE-SIG-A field to 0.

1 A full bandwidth MU-MIMO transmission using the HE MU PPDU format shall have a value of 1 for the
 2 HE-SIG-B Compression field in HE-SIG-A, where the Common field in HE-SIG-B is not present, the HE
 3 modulated fields of the PPDU consists of one RU that spans the entire PPDU bandwidth and the preamble is
 4 not punctured. The number of users in the MU-MIMO group is indicated in the Number Of HE-SIG-B Sym-
 5 bols Or MU-MIMO Users field in HE-SIG-A. The allocated spatial streams for each user and the total num-
 6 ber of spatial streams are indicated in the Spatial Configuration field of User field in HE-SIG-B containing
 7 the STA-ID of the designated MU-MIMO STA as defined in Table 27-30 (Spatial Configuration subfield
 8 encoding).

11
 12 The HE-SIG-B field consists of one or two HE-SIG-B content channels, with each HE-SIG-B content chan-
 13 nel conveying user allocation for one or more 20 MHz subchannels. A 20 MHz HE MU PPDU has one HE-
 14 SIG-B content channel, while an HE MU PPDU with greater than 20 MHz PPDU bandwidth has two HE-
 15 SIG-B content channels.

18
 19 If the value of HE-SIG-B Compression field in HE-SIG-A is 0, then the RU Allocation subfield in the Com-
 20 mon field in each HE-SIG-B content channel indicates the combination of RUs in the current PPDU and the
 21 number of User fields included in the corresponding HE-SIG-B content channel for each RU. See
 22 27.3.10.8.2 (HE-SIG-B content channels) for a description of the HE-SIG-B content channel.

24
 25 If there is only one User field (see Table 27-28 (User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation)) for an
 26 RU in the HE-SIG-B content channel, then the number of spatial streams for the user in the RU is indicated
 27 by the NSTS field in the User field.

30
 31 If there is more than one User field (see Table 27-29 (User field format for a MU-MIMO allocation)) for an
 32 RU in the HE-SIG-B content channel, then the number of allocated spatial streams for each user in the RU is
 33 indicated by the Spatial Configuration field of the User field in HE-SIG-B. Note that for an RU with 484 or
 34 more subcarriers and having two or more intended users, the User fields corresponding to the RU may be
 35 split between two HE-SIG-B content channels. In this case, the total number of users and the total number of
 36 spatial streams in the RU are the sum of the number of users and number of spatial streams per user, respec-
 37 tively, indicated in both HE-SIG-B content channels. In case of full bandwidth DL MU-MIMO with PPDU
 39 bandwidth greater than 20 MHz, see 27.3.10.8.4 (User Specific field) on further details on how the User
 40 fields are split between the two HE-SIG-B content channels.

42
 43 In each HE-SIG-B content channel, the User fields are first ordered in the order of RUs (from lower fre-
 44 quency to higher frequency) as described by the RU Allocation field if the HE-SIG-B contains the Common
 45 field. If an RU has multiple User fields in an HE-SIG-B content channel, the User fields of the RU are
 46 ordered in the order of spatial stream index, from lower to higher spatial stream, as indicated in the Spatial
 47 Configuration field. If the UL/DL field in the HE-SIG-A field is set to 0, the STA-ID field in each User field
 48 indicates the intended recipient user of the corresponding spatial streams and the RU. Otherwise, it indicates
 49 the STA that transmits the PPDU in the corresponding spatial streams and the RU.

52
 53 HE-LTF symbols in the DL HE MU PPDU are used to measure the channel for the space-time streams
 54 intended for the STA and can also be used to measure the channel for the interfering space-time streams. To
 55 successfully demodulate the space-time streams intended for the STA, it is recommended that the STA uses
 56 the channel knowledge for all space-time streams to reduce the effect of space-time streams allocated to
 57 other users.

60
 61
 62 If a STA is included as a member of the MU-MIMO group in RU r , its corresponding $N_{STS,r,u}$ contained in
 63 the User field in HE-SIG-B for user u shall not be zero. If a STA determines that it is not a member of the
 64 MU-MIMO group in RU r , then the STA may elect not to process RU r in the remainder of the PPDU.

1 **27.3.2.6 Resource allocation for an HE TB PPDU**

2

3

4 UL MU transmissions are preceded by a Trigger frame or frame carrying a TRS Control subfield from the
 5 AP. The Trigger frame or frame carrying the TRS Control subfield indicates the parameters, such as the
 6 duration of the HE TB PPDU, RU allocation, target RSSI and HE-MCS (see 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame for-
 7 mat), 9.2.4.6a.1 (TRS Control) and 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation)), required to
 8 transmit an HE TB PPDU.

9

10 The Trigger frame indicates whether the UL MU transmission following it uses HE single stream pilot HE-
 11 LTF mode or HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode if the HE-LTF type of the HE TB PPDU is 2x HE-LTF or
 12 4x HE-LTF. HE no pilot HE-LTF mode is used if the HE-LTF type of the HE TB PPDU is 1x HE-LTF. If
 13 HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode is used, no masking is applied to the HE-LTF. HE single stream pilot
 14 HE-LTF mode is used for any UL OFDMA transmission, including UL OFDMA with MU-MIMO transmis-
 15 sions.

16

17

18 **27.3.2.7 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs**

19

20

21

22 A 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA is a non-AP HE STA that indicates in the Supported Channel Width Set
 23 subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE Capabilities element that it transmits (see
 24 9.4.2.247.3 (HE PHY Capabilities Information field)) support for only 20 MHz channel width for the fre-
 25 quency band in which it is operating. A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA is a non-AP HE STA that is
 26 operating in 20 MHz channel width mode, such as a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA or an HE STA that
 27 reduced its operating channel width to 20 MHz using operating mode indication (OMI).

28

29

30

31 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA shall operate in the primary 20 MHz channel except when the 20
 32 MHz operating non-AP HE STA sets dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented equal to true.
 33 In this case, the 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA may operate in any 20 MHz channel within the BSS
 34 bandwidth by following the procedure in 26.8.7 (HE subchannel selective transmission).

35

36

37 An HE AP operating in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz band shall be able to interoperate with non-AP HE STAs,
 38 regardless of the indicated value of B1 in the Supported Channel Width Set subfield in the HE PHY Capabili-
 39 ties Information field in the HE Capabilities element (see 9.4.2.247.3 (HE PHY Capabilities Information
 40 field)).

41

42

43 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA shall support tone mapping of 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, 106-tone RU
 44 and 242-tone RU for a 20 MHz HE PPDU (see Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20
 45 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU)) in the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz and 6 GHz frequency
 46 bands.

47

48

49 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA indicates support of tone mapping of 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, and
 50 106-tone RU for a 40 MHz HE PPDU (see Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40
 51 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU)) in the 2.4 GHz band using the 20 MHz In 40
 52 MHz HE PPDU In 2.4 GHz Band subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabil-
 53 ties element (see 9.4.2.247.3 (HE PHY Capabilities Information field)) with the exception of RUs that are
 54 restricted from operation as specified in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation).

55

56

57

58 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA shall support tone mapping of 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, and 106-tone
 59 RU for 40 MHz HE PPDU (see Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE
 60 PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU)) in the 5 GHz frequency band, and for 80 MHz HE PPDU
 61 (see Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA
 62 80 MHz HE PPDU)) in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands with the exception of RUs that are restricted from oper-
 63 ation as specified in 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation).

64

65

1 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA indicates support of tone mapping of 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, and
 2 106-tone RU for 80+80 MHz and 160 MHz HE PPDU using the 20 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU sub-
 3 field in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element (see 9.4.2.247.3 (HE PHY
 4 Capabilities Information field)) with the exception of RUs that are restricted from operation as specified in
 5 27.3.2.8 (RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation).
 6

8 A 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA may support tone mapping of 242-tone RU for the reception of 40
 9 MHz HE MU PPDU (see Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and
 10 in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU)) in the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands, and 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz
 11 and 160 MHz HE MU PPDU (see Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE
 12 PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU)) in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands. This support is indicated
 13 in the Supported Channel Width Set subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field of the HE Capa-
 14 bilities element (see 9.4.2.247.3 (HE PHY Capabilities Information field)).
 15

17 **27.3.2.8 RU restrictions for 20 MHz operation**

20 If a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA is the receiver of a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz HE
 21 MU PPDU, or the transmitter of a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz HE TB PPDU, then the RU
 22 tone mapping in 20 MHz is not aligned with the 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 80+80 MHz or 160 MHz RU tone map-
 23 ping (see 27.3.2.2 (Resource unit, guard and DC subcarriers)).
 24

26 An AP shall not assign the following RUs to a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA where the RU index is
 27 defined in Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-
 28 OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU):
 29

- 30 — 26-tone RU 5 and 14 of a 40 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU

32 An AP shall not assign the following RUs to a 20 MHz operating non-AP HE STA where the RU index is
 33 defined in Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-
 35 OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU):
 36

- 37 — 26-tone RU 5, 10, 14, 19, 24, 28 and 33 of an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU
- 38 — 26-tone RU 5, 10, 14, 19, 24, 28 and 33 of the lower 80 MHz of an 80+80 MHz and 160 MHz HE
 39 MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU
- 40 — 26-tone RU 5, 10, 14, 19, 24, 28 and 33 of the upper 80 MHz of an 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU and
 42 HE TB PPDU
- 43 — 52-tone RU 5 and 12 of an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU
- 44 — 52-tone RU 5 and 12 of the lower 80 MHz of an 80+80 MHz and 160 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE
 46 TB PPDU
- 47 — 52-tone RU 5 and 12 of the upper 80 MHz of an 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU
- 49 — 106-tone RU 3 and 6 of an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU
- 51 — 106-tone RU 3 and 6 of the lower 80 MHz of an 80+80 MHz and 160 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE
 53 TB PPDU
- 54 — 106-tone RU 3 and 6 of the upper 80 MHz of an 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU

56 **27.3.2.9 80 MHz operating non-AP HE STAs**

58 An HE AP shall not allocate an RU in a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU or HE TB PPDU to an 80 MHz
 59 operating non-AP HE STA if the non-AP STA has set the 80 MHz In 160/80+80 MHz HE PPDU subfield in
 60 the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element to 0.
 61

63 An HE AP shall not allocate an RU outside of the primary 80 MHz in a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU or
 64 HE TB PPDU to an 80 MHz operating non-AP HE STA if the non-AP STA has set the HE Subchannel
 65

1 Selective Transmission Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element to 0.

2
3
4 An HE AP shall not allocate an RU outside of the primary 80 MHz in a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU or
5 HE TB PPDU to an 80 MHz operating non-AP HE STA if the non-AP STA has set the HE Subchannel
6 Selective Transmission Support subfield in the HE MAC Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities
7 element to 1 but has not set up SST operation on the secondary 80 MHz channel with the HE AP.
8
9

10 **27.3.3 MU-MIMO**

11 **27.3.3.1 DL MU-MIMO**

12 **27.3.3.1.1 Supported RU sizes in DL MU-MIMO**

13
14 A STA that sets the Partial Bandwidth DL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information
15 field in the HE Capabilities element that it transmits to 1 shall support receiving an RU in an HE MU PPDU
16 where MU-MIMO is employed in the RU, the RU size is greater than or equal to 106-tones, and the RU does
17 not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.
18
19

20 **27.3.3.1.2 Maximum number of spatial streams in an HE MU PPDU**

21
22 An HE STA shall support the reception of DL MU-MIMO transmissions on full bandwidth with a maximum
23 number of space-time streams (per user) that is the minimum of 4 and the maximum number of space-time
24 streams supported for reception of HE SU PPDUs. The maximum number of space-time streams supported
25 for reception of HE SU PPDUs is indicated for various bandwidths in the Supported HE-MCS and NSS Set
26 field in the HE Capabilities element.
27
28

29 For transmissions using bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz, an HE STA shall support reception of DL
30 MU-MIMO transmissions on full bandwidth with the total number of space-time streams (across all users)
31 up to the value indicated by the Beamformee STS \leq 80 MHz subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information
32 field in the HE Capabilities element. For transmissions using bandwidth greater than 80 MHz, an HE
33 STA shall support reception of DL MU-MIMO transmissions on full bandwidth with the total number of
34 space-time streams (across all users) up to the value indicated by the Beamformee STS $>$ 80 MHz subfield in
35 the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element.
36
37

38 An HE AP that is capable of transmitting 4 or more space-time streams shall support DL MU-MIMO trans-
39 missions on full bandwidth.
40
41

42 All of the aforementioned requirements in this subclause on the per user and total number of space-time-
43 streams are also applicable to an MU-MIMO transmission on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where the RU
44 does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.
45
46

47 **27.3.3.2 UL MU-MIMO**

48 **27.3.3.2.1 Introduction**

49
50 UL MU-MIMO is a technique to allow multiple STAs to transmit simultaneously over the same frequency
51 resource to the receiver. The concept is very similar to SU-MIMO where multiple space-time streams are
52 transmitted simultaneously over the same frequency resource utilizing spatial multiplexing through multiple
53 antennas at the transmitter and receiver. The key difference from SU-MIMO is that in UL MU-MIMO, the
54 transmitted streams originate from multiple STAs.
55
56

1 **27.3.3.2.2 Supported RU sizes in UL MU-MIMO**

2

3 An AP that sets the Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information
 4 field in the HE Capabilities element that it transmits to 1 shall support receiving an RU in an HE TB PPDU
 5 where MU-MIMO is employed in the RU, the RU size is greater than or equal to 106-tones, and the RU does
 6 not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.

7

8 A non-AP STA that sets the Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element that it transmits to 1 shall support transmitting an RU in an HE TB PPDU where UL MU-MIMO is employed in the RU, the RU size is greater than or equal to 106-tones, and the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.

9

10 A STA that sets the Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield to 1 shall set the Full Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field to 1.

11

12 **27.3.3.2.3 MU-MIMO LTF Mode**

13

14 A non-AP STA that sets the Full Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 shall support both the HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode and the HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode as defined in Equation (27-59) for the transmission of an HE TB PPDU with one RU spanning the entire PPDU bandwidth, and the RU using MU-MIMO.

15

16 An AP that sets the Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 shall support receiving HE TB PPDUs using the HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode if the HE TB PPDUs use MU-MIMO in an RU that does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.

17

18 A non-AP STA that sets the Partial Bandwidth UL MU-MIMO subfield of the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element it transmits to 1 shall support transmitting an HE TB PPDU using the HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode if the HE TB PPDU uses MU-MIMO in an RU that does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.

19

20 **27.3.3.2.4 Maximum number of spatial streams in UL MU-MIMO**

21

22 A non-AP STA that supports UL MU-MIMO shall support transmitting an HE TB PPDU using MU-MIMO where:

23

- 24 — The number of spatial streams allocated to the non-AP STA ranges from 1 to N , where N is the smaller of 4 and the maximum number of spatial streams supported by the non-AP STA for transmitting HE SU PPDUs.
 - 25 — The number of total spatial streams (summed over all users) is less than or equal to 8.
- 26

27 The maximum number of spatial streams supported by a STA for the transmission of an HE SU PPDU is indicated in the Supported HE-MCS And NSS Set field in the HE Capabilities element.

28

29 All the requirements in this subclause on the per user and total number of spatial streams are applicable to both full bandwidth and partial bandwidth MU-MIMO.

30

31 **27.3.4 HE PPDU formats**

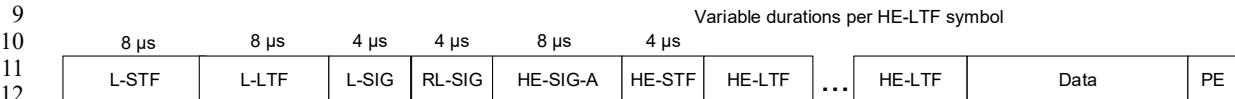
32

33 Four HE PPDU formats are defined: HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE TB PPDU. The HE sounding NDP is a variant of the HE SU PPDU and defined in 27.3.16 (HE sounding NDP). The HE TB feedback NDP is a variant of the HE TB PPDU and defined in 27.3.17 (HE TB feedback NDP).

34

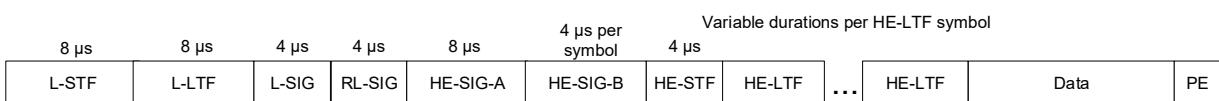
1 NOTE—The HE ER SU PPDU is not a variant of the HE SU PPDU. Requirements related to HE SU PPDUs and HE ER
 2 SU PPDUs are specified separately.
 3

4 The format of the HE SU PPDU is defined as in Figure 27-8 (HE SU PPDU format). This PPDU format is
 5 used for SU transmission and, in this format, the HE-SIG-A field is not repeated.
 6



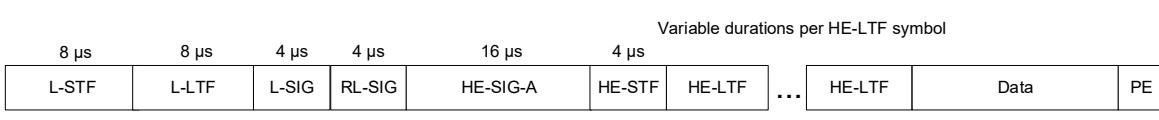
14 **Figure 27-8—HE SU PPDU format**
 15

17 The format of the HE MU PPDU is defined as in Figure 27-9 (HE MU PPDU format). This format is used
 18 for transmission to one or more users if the PPDU is not a response of a Trigger frame. In the HE MU
 19 PPDU, the HE-SIG-A field is not repeated. The HE-SIG-B field is present in this format.
 20



28 **Figure 27-9—HE MU PPDU format**
 29

30 The format of the HE ER SU PPDU is defined as in Figure 27-10 (HE ER SU PPDU format). This format is
 31 used for SU transmission and, in this format, the HE-SIG-A field is twice as long as the HE-SIG-A field in
 32 other HE PPDU formats.
 33



41 **Figure 27-10—HE ER SU PPDU format**
 42

44 The format of the HE TB PPDU is defined as in Figure 27-11 (HE TB PPDU format). This format is used
 45 for a transmission that is a response to a triggering frame from an AP.
 46

47 The format of the HE TB PPDU is the same as the HE SU PPDU except that the duration of the HE-STF
 48 field in the HE TB PPDU is twice the duration of the HE-STF field in the HE SU PPDU.
 49



57 **Figure 27-11—HE TB PPDU format**
 58

1 The fields of the HE PPDU formats are summarized in Table 27-11 (HE PPDU fields).
 2
 3
 4
 5

Table 27-11—HE PPDU fields

Field	Description
L-STF	Non-HT Short Training field
L-LTF	Non-HT Long Training field
L-SIG	Non-HT SIGNAL field
RL-SIG	Repeated Non-HT SIGNAL field
HE-SIG-A	HE SIGNAL A field
HE-SIG-B	HE SIGNAL B field
HE-STF	HE Short Training field
HE-LTF	HE Long Training field
Data	The Data field carrying the PSDU(s)
PE	Packet extension field

32 The RL-SIG, HE-SIG-A, HE-STF, HE-LTF, and PE fields are present in all HE PPDU formats. The HE-
 33 SIG-B field is present only in the HE MU PPDU. The PE field is defined in 27.3.12 (Packet extension).
 34

35 The L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG, HE-SIG-A, and HE-SIG-B fields are referred to as pre-HE modulated
 36 fields, while the HE-STF, HE-LTF and Data fields are referred to as the HE modulated fields.
 37

38 In the HE TB PPDU, the pre-HE modulated fields, which include L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-
 39 SIG-A fields, are sent only on the 20 MHz channels where the STA's HE modulated fields are located. If the
 40 HE modulated fields are located in more than one 20 MHz channel, the pre-HE modulated fields are dupli-
 41 cated.
 42

cated over the multiple 20 MHz channels, as shown in Figure 27-12 (Number of 20 MHz channels occupied by the pre-HE modulated fields in an HE TB PPDU).

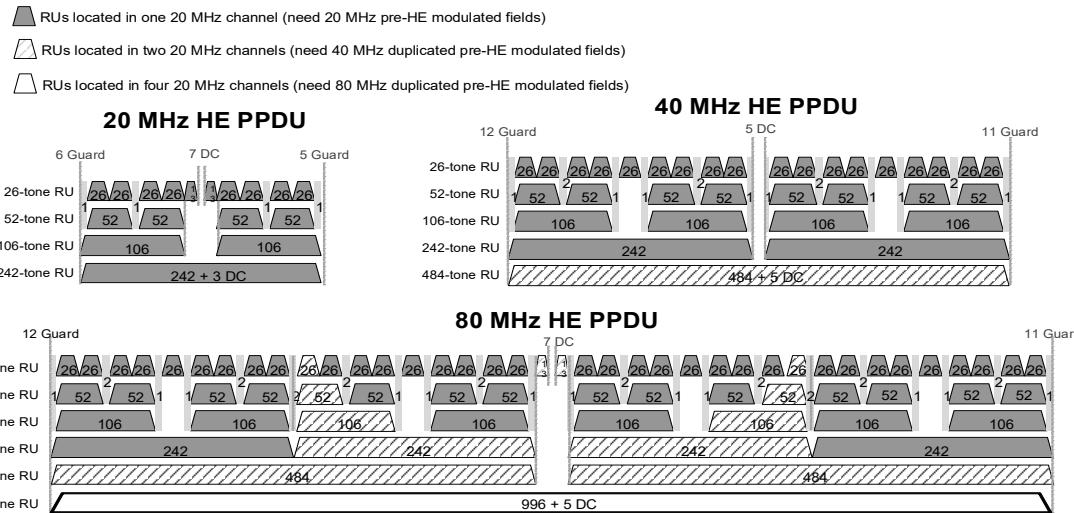


Figure 27-12—Number of 20 MHz channels occupied by the pre-HE modulated fields in an HE TB PPDU

A PPDU transmitted with the TXVECTOR parameter NO_SIG_EXTN set to false is followed by a period of duration aSignalExtension without transmission. See 10.3.8 (Signal extension).

A signal extension shall be present in a transmitted PPDU if the TXVECTOR parameter NO_SIG_EXTN is false and one of the following conditions apply:

- The TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT is HE, HT_MF or HT_GF
- The TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT is NON_HT and the TXVECTOR parameter NON_HT_MODULATION is ERP-OFDM or NON_HT_DUP_OFDM

A signal extension shall be assumed to be present (for the purpose of timing of PHY-RXEND.indication and PHY-CCA.indication primitives, as described below and in 27.3.21 (HE receive procedure)) in a received PPDU if one of the following conditions apply:

- The RXVECTOR parameter FORMAT is HE, HT_MF or HT_GF
- The RXVECTOR parameter FORMAT is NON_HT and the RXVECTOR parameter NON_HT_MODULATION is ERP-OFDM or NON_HT_DUP_OFDM

A PPDU containing a signal extension is called a signal extended PPDU. When transmitting a signal extended PPDU, the PHY-TXEND.indication primitive shall be emitted a period of aSignalExtension after the end of the actual ending time of the PPDU. When receiving a signal extended PPDU, the PHY-RXEND.indication primitive shall be emitted a period of aSignalExtension after the end of the actual ending time of the PPDU.

27.3.5 Transmitter block diagram

The generation of each field in an HE PPDU uses many of the following blocks:

- a) pre-FEC PHY padding
- b) Scrambler

- 1 c) FEC (BCC or LDPC) encoders
- 2 d) post-FEC PHY padding
- 3 e) Stream parser
- 4 f) Segment parser (for contiguous 160 MHz and noncontiguous 80+80 MHz transmissions)
- 5 g) BCC interleaver
- 6 h) Constellation mapper
- 7 i) DCM tone mapper
- 8 j) Pilot insertion
- 9 k) Replication over multiple 20 MHz (for BW > 20 MHz)
- 10 l) Multiplication by 1st column of P_{HE-LTF}
- 11 m) LDPC tone mapper
- 12 n) Segment deparser
- 13 o) Space time block code (STBC) encoder for one spatial stream
- 14 p) Cyclic shift diversity (CSD) per STS insertion
- 15 q) Spatial mapper
- 16 r) Frequency mapping
- 17 s) Inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT)
- 18 t) Cyclic shift diversity (CSD) per chain insertion
- 19 u) Guard interval (GI) insertion
- 20 v) Windowing

Figure 27-13 (Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 1) to Figure 27-22 (Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 80+80 MHz with LDPC encoding) show example transmitter block diagrams. The actual structure of the transmitter is implementation dependent.

In particular, Figure 27-13 (Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 1) shows the transmit process for the L-SIG, RL-SIG, and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE PPDU using one frequency segment, when the Beam Change subfield in HE-SIG-A field is 1. These transmit blocks are also used to generate the L-STF and L-LTF fields of the HE PPDU when the Beam Change subfield in HE-SIG-A field is 1, with the following exceptions:

- The BCC encoder and interleaver as well as constellation mapper are not used when generating the L-STF and L-LTF fields.

- The BCC interleaver is not applied in the 2nd and the 4th OFDM symbols of HE-SIG-A field in the HE ER SU PPDU.

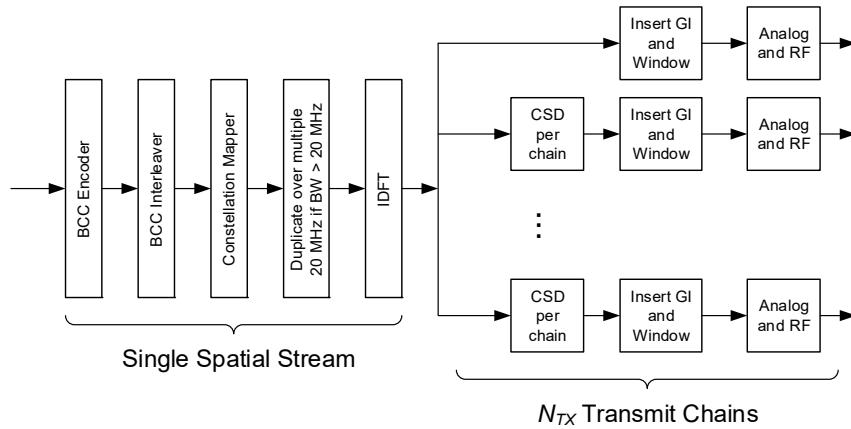


Figure 27-13—Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 1

Figure 27-14 (Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 0) shows the transmit process for the L-SIG, RL-SIG, and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE PPDU using one frequency segment, when the Beam Change subfield in HE-SIG-A field is 0. These transmit blocks are also used to generate the L-STF and L-LTF fields of the HE PPDU if the Beam Change subfield in HE-SIG-A field is 0, with the following exceptions:

- The BCC encoder and interleaver as well as constellation mapper are not used when generating the L-STF and L-LTF fields.
- The BCC interleaver is not applied in the 2nd and the 4th OFDM symbols of HE-SIG-A field in the HE ER SU PPDU.

NOTE—For an HE MU PPDU, the duplication on 20 MHz channels is subject to the availability of 20 MHz channels in case of preamble puncturing.

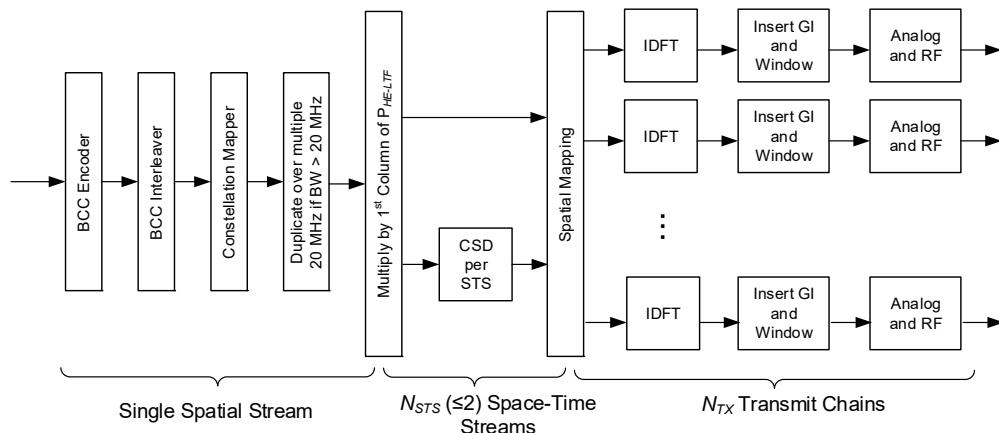


Figure 27-14—Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU if the Beam Change subfield is 0

Figure 27-15 (Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE TB PPDU) shows the transmit process for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE TB PPDU using one frequency segment. In the HE TB PPDU, the transmission of the pre-HE modulated fields refer to the description in 27.3.4 (HE PPDU formats) and also shown in Figure 27-15 (Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE TB PPDU). The BCC encoder and interleaver are not used when generating the L-STF and L-LTF fields.

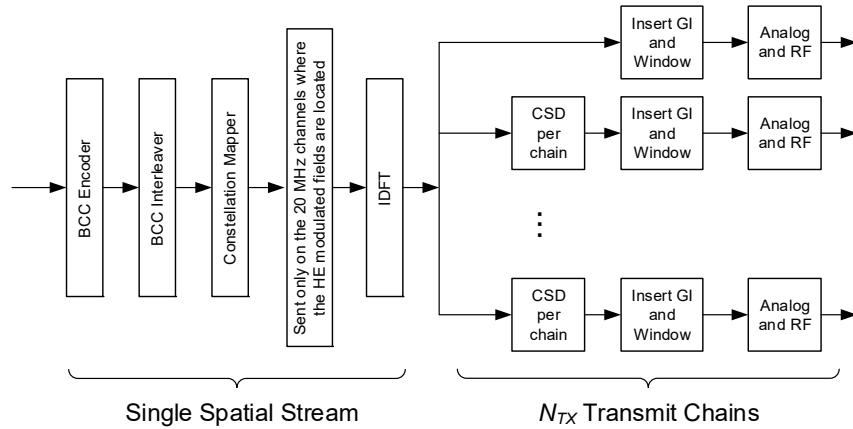


Figure 27-15—Transmitter block diagram for the L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE TB PPDU

Figure 27-16 (Transmitter block diagram for the HE-SIG-B field) shows the transmit process for the HE-SIG-B field of an HE MU PPDU using one frequency segment. This block diagram is for transmitting HE-SIG-B in one 20 MHz subchannel. Refer to 27.3.10.8.2 (HE-SIG-B content channels) for the methods of transmitting HE-SIG-B in 40 MHz, 80 MHz and 160 MHz. The DCM tone mapper, which is defined in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping), is applied only if the HE-SIG-B DCM field in the HE-SIG-A field is 1.

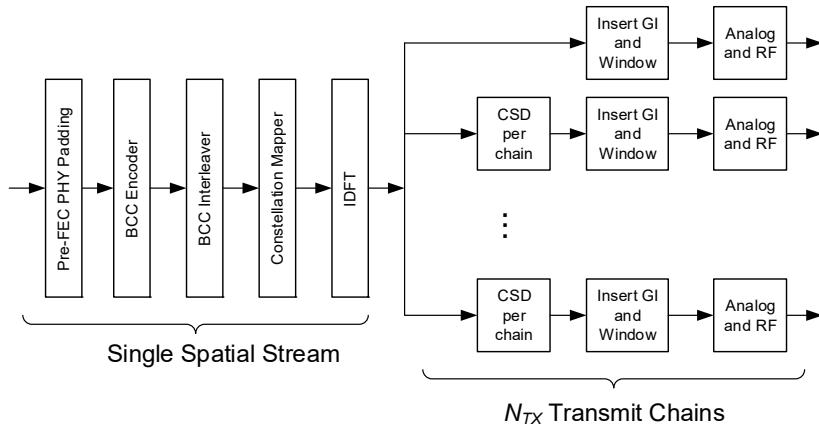


Figure 27-16—Transmitter block diagram for the HE-SIG-B field

Figure 27-17 (Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106- or 242-tone RU) shows the transmitter blocks for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106-, or 242-tone RU for a single frequency segment if the number of spatial streams is less than or equal to 4. Figure

27-17 applies to the Data field of an HE MU PPDU that is transmitted on an RU allocated to a single user, the Data field of an HE SU PPDU, and the Data field of an HE TB PPDU (whether or not it is spatially multiplexed with other users).

The DCM tone mapper, which is part of the constellation mapper, is applied only if DCM is indicated for the RU. A subset of these transmitter blocks consisting of the constellation mapper and CSD blocks, as well as the blocks to the right of, and including, the spatial mapping block, are also used to generate the HE-LTF fields. This is illustrated in Figure 27-32 (Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, and HE ER SU PPDU). A subset of these transmitter blocks consisting of the constellation mapper and CSD blocks, as well as the blocks to the right of, and including, the spatial and frequency mapping block of Figure 27-17 (Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106- or 242-tone RU), are also used to generate the HE-STF field. This figure also applies to the Data field with BCC encoding in an HE TB PPDU.

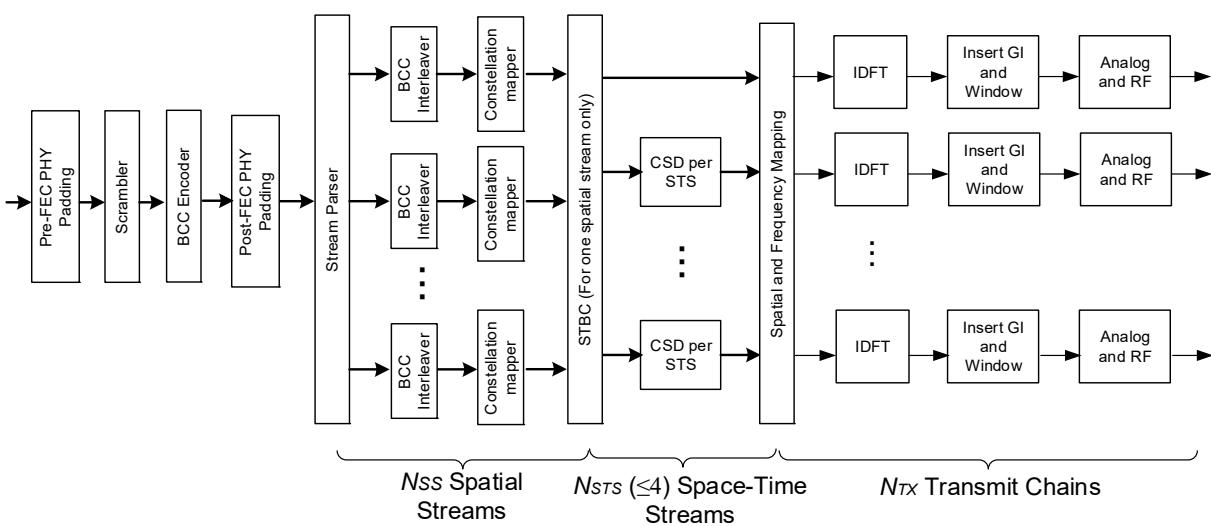


Figure 27-17—Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106- or 242-tone RU

Figure 27-18 (Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with LDPC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- or 996-tone RU) shows the transmitter blocks for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with LDPC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484-, or 996-tone RU for a single frequency segment. Figure 27-18 applies to the Data field of an HE MU PPDU that is transmitted on an RU allocated to a single user, the Data field of an HE SU PPDU, and the Data field of an HE TB PPDU (whether or not it is spatially multiplexed with other users)." Delete the sentence "This figure also applies to the data field with LDPC encoding in an HE TB PPDU.

The DCM tone mapper, which is part of the constellation mapper, is applied only if DCM is indicated for the RU. This figure also applies to the data field with LDPC encoding in an HE TB PPDU.

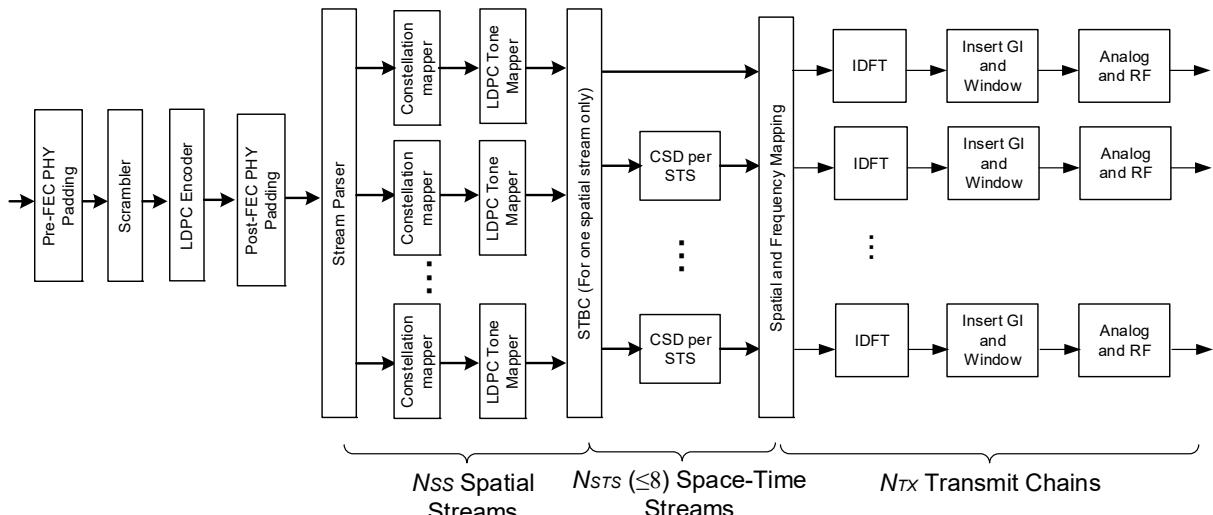


Figure 27-18—Transmitter block diagram for the UL transmission or DL non-MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with LDPC encoding on a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- or 996-tone RU

Figure 27-19 (Transmitter block diagram for the DL MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC encoding on a 106- or 242-tone RU) shows the transmitter blocks for the transmission, in an HE MU PPDU, of the Data field with BCC encoding on a 106- or 242-tone RU allocated to more than one user.

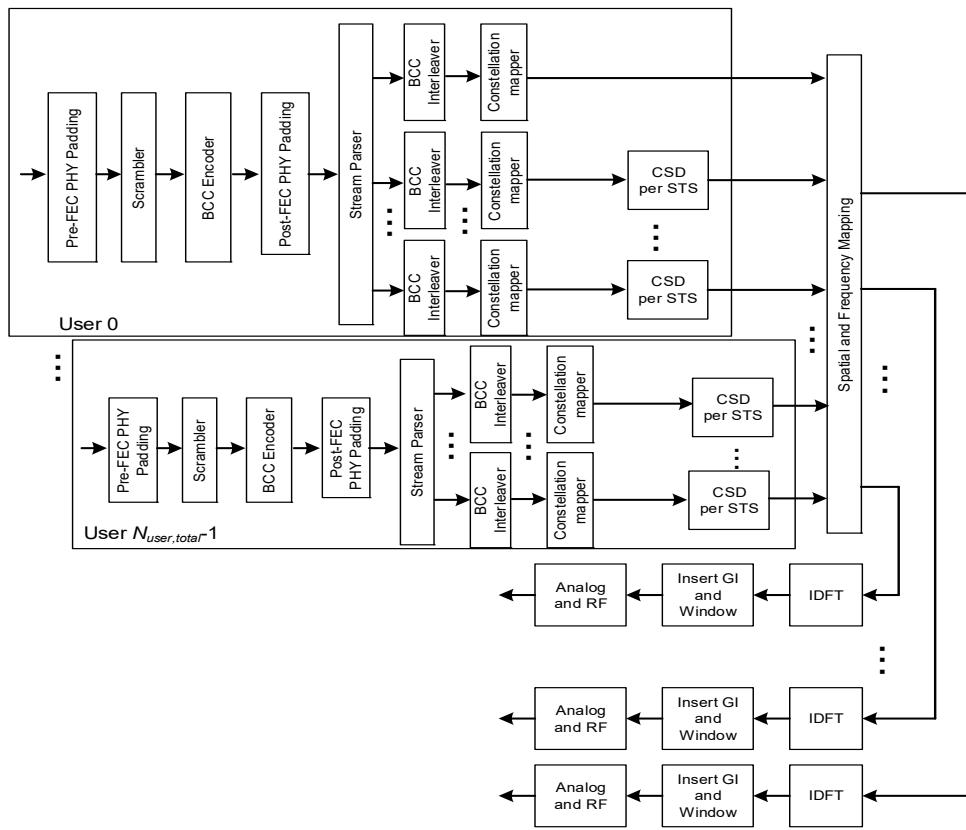
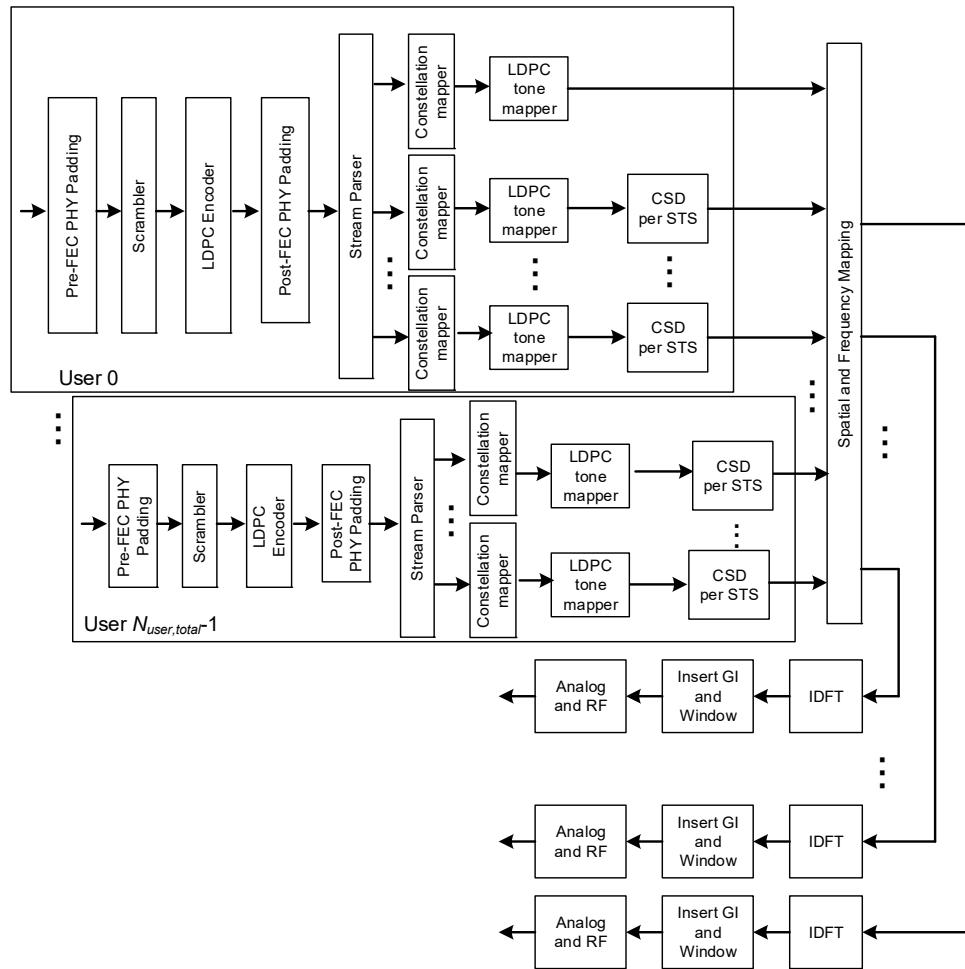


Figure 27-19—Transmitter block diagram for the DL MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with BCC encoding on a 106- or 242-tone RU

Figure 27-20 (Transmitter block diagram for the DL MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field with LDPC encoding on a 106-, 242-, 484- or 996-tone RU) shows the transmitter blocks for the transmission, in an HE

1 MU PPDU, of the Data field with LDPC encoding on a 106-, 242-, 484-, or 996-tone RU allocated to more
 2 than one user.



43 **Figure 27-20—Transmitter block diagram for the DL MU-MIMO transmission of a Data field
 44 with LDPC encoding on a 106-, 242-, 484- or 996-tone RU**

Figure 27-21 (Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 160 MHz with LDPC encoding) shows the transmitter blocks used to generate the Data field of a single-user HE transmission in 160 MHz with LDPC encoding.

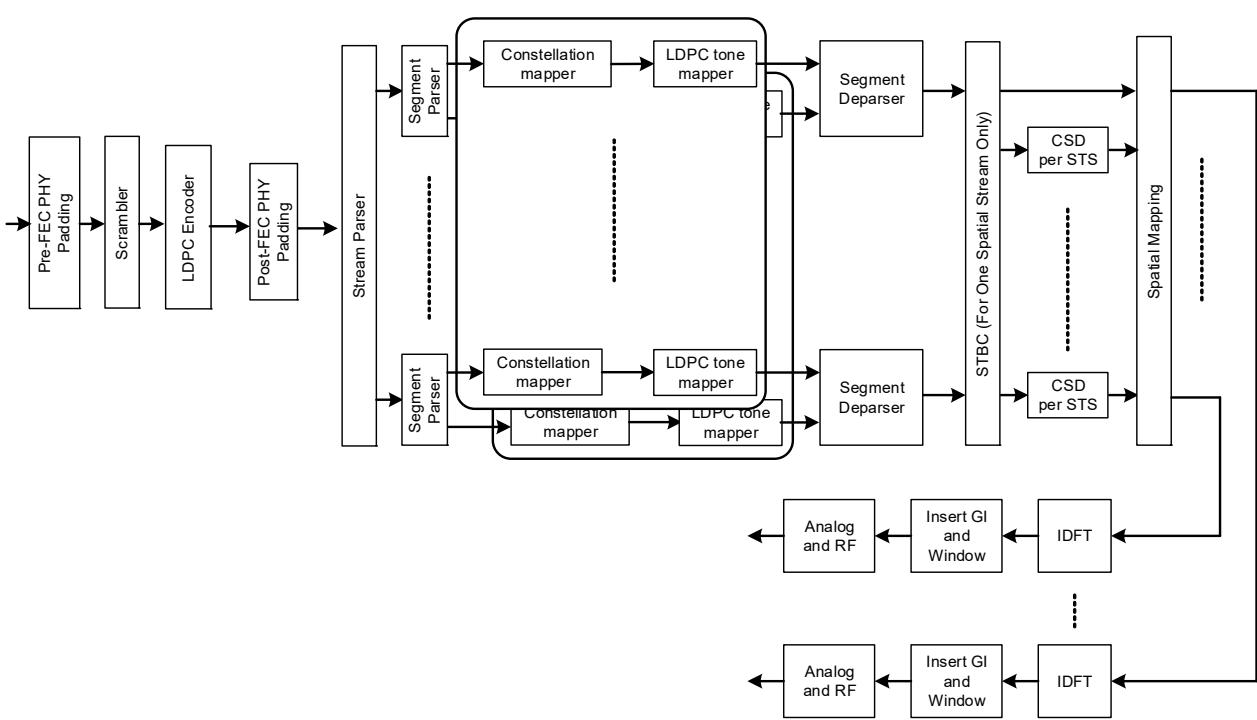


Figure 27-21—Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 160 MHz with LDPC encoding

Figure 27-22 (Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 80+80 MHz with LDPC encoding) shows the transmitter blocks used to generate the Data field of a single-user HE transmission in 80+80 MHz with LDPC encoding.

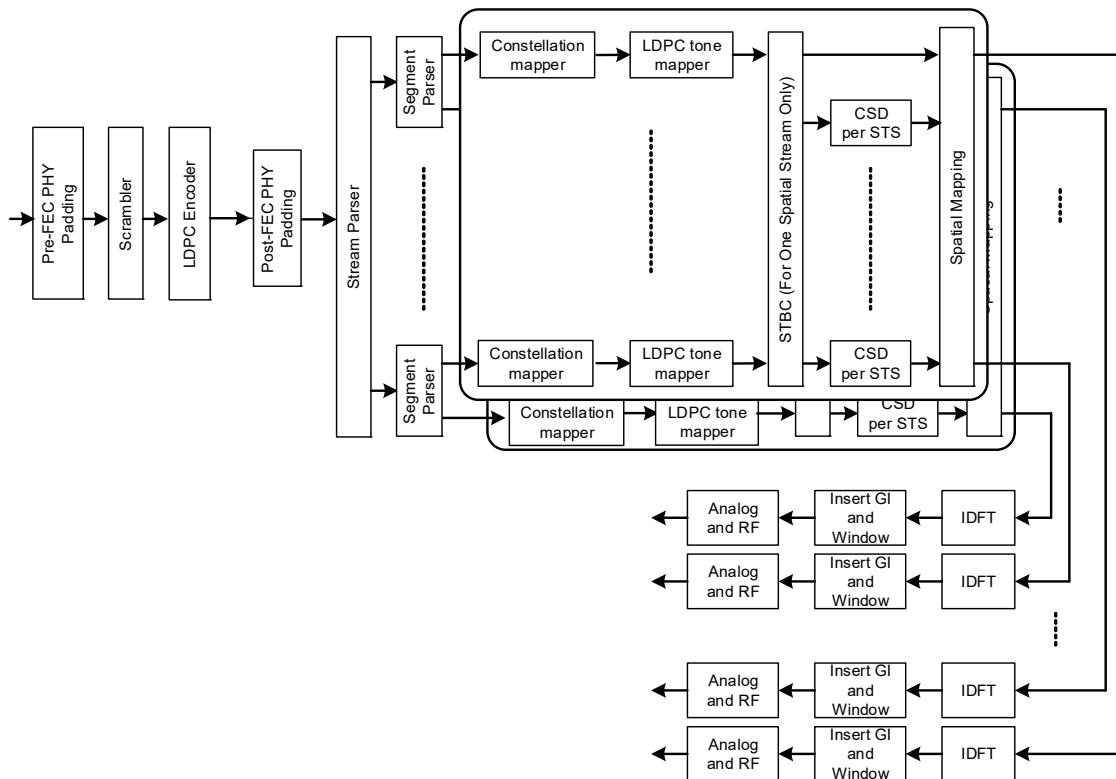


Figure 27-22—Transmitter block diagram for the Data field of an HE SU PPDU in 80+80 MHz with LDPC encoding

27.3.6 Overview of the PPDU encoding process

27.3.6.1 General

This subclause provides an overview of the HE PPDU encoding process.

27.3.6.2 Construction of L-STF

Construct the L-STF field as defined in 27.3.10.3 (L-STF) with the following highlights:

- Determine the channel bandwidth from the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH.
- Sequence generation: Generate the L-STF sequence over the channel bandwidth as described in 27.3.10.3 (L-STF). Apply a 3 dB power boost if transmitting an HE ER SU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.3 (L-STF).
- Phase rotation: Apply appropriate phase rotation for each 20 MHz subchannel as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone rotation).
- CSD per STS: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply CSD per STS for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).

- 1 e) Spatial mapping: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply the A matrix and the
2 Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.3 (L-STF).
- 3 f) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 4 g) CSD per chain: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, apply CSD per
5 chain for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for
6 pre-HE modulated fields).
- 7 h) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}}$) and apply windowing as described in
8 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 9 i) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
10 chain to an RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to
11 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

27.3.6.3 Construction of L-LTF

Construct the L-LTF field as defined in 27.3.10.4 (L-LTF) with the following highlights:

- a) Determine the channel bandwidth from the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH.
- b) Sequence generation: Generate the L-LTF sequence over the channel bandwidth as described in 27.3.10.4 (L-LTF). Apply a 3 dB power boost if transmitting an HE ER SU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.4 (L-LTF).
- c) Phase rotation: Apply appropriate phase rotation for each 20 MHz subchannel as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone rotation).
- d) CSD per STS: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply CSD per STS for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields) before spatial mapping.
- e) Spatial mapping: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply the A matrix and the Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.4 (L-LTF).
- f) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- g) CSD per chain: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, apply CSD per chain for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).
- h) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI, \text{L-LTF}}$) and apply windowing as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- i) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit chain to an RF signal according to the carrier frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

27.3.6.4 Construction of L-SIG

Construct the L-SIG field as the SIGNAL field defined in 27.3.10.5 (L-SIG) with the following highlights:

- a) Set the RATE subfield in the SIGNAL field to 6 Mb/s. Set the LENGTH, Parity, and Tail fields in the SIGNAL field as described in 27.3.10.5 (L-SIG).
- b) BCC encoder: Encode the SIGNAL field by a convolutional encoder at the rate of $R = 1/2$ as described in 27.3.11.5.1 (BCC coding and puncturing).
- c) BCC interleaver: Interleave as described in 17.3.5.7 (BCC interleavers).
- d) Constellation Mapper: BPSK modulate as described in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping).
- e) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots as described in 27.3.10.5 (L-SIG).
- f) Extra subcarrier insertion: Four extra subcarriers are inserted at $k \in \{-28, -27, 27, 28\}$ for channel estimation purpose and the values on these four extra subcarriers are $\{-1, -1, -1, 1\}$, respectively.

- 1 Apply a 3 dB power boost to the four extra subcarriers if transmitting an HE ER SU PPDU as
 2 described in 27.3.10.5 (L-SIG).
- 3 g) Duplication and phase rotation: Duplicate the L-SIG field over each occupied 20 MHz subchannel
 4 of the channel bandwidth. Apply appropriate phase rotation for each occupied 20 MHz subchannel
 5 as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone rota-
 6 tion).
- 7 h) CSD per STS: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply CSD per STS for each
 8 space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modu-
 9 lated fields) before spatial mapping.
- 10 i) Spatial mapping: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply the A matrix and Q
 11 matrix as described in 27.3.10.5 (L-SIG).
- 12 j) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 13 k) CSD per chain: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, apply CSD per
 14 chain for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for
 15 pre-HE modulated fields).
- 16 l) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI,Pre-HE}$) and apply windowing as described in
 17 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 18 m) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
 19 chain. Refer to 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

27.3.6.5 Construction of RL-SIG

Construct the RL-SIG field as the repeat SIGNAL field defined in 27.3.10.6 (RL-SIG) with the following highlights:

- a) Set the RATE subfield in the repeat SIGNAL field to 6 Mb/s. Set the LENGTH Parity, and Tail fields in the repeat SIGNAL field as described in 27.3.10.6 (RL-SIG).
- b) BCC encoder: Encode the repeat SIGNAL field by a convolutional encoder at the rate of $R = 1/2$ as described in 27.3.11.5.1 (BCC coding and puncturing).
- c) BCC interleaver: Interleave as described in 17.3.5.7 (BCC interleavers).
- d) Constellation Mapper: BPSK modulate as described in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping).
- e) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots as described in 27.3.10.6 (RL-SIG).
- f) Extra subcarrier insertion: Four extra subcarriers are inserted at $k \in \{-28, -27, 27, 28\}$ for channel estimation purpose and the values on these four extra subcarriers are $\{-1, -1, -1, 1\}$, respectively. Apply a 3 dB power boost to the four extra subcarriers if transmitting an HE ER SU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.6 (RL-SIG).
- g) Duplication and phase rotation: Duplicate the RL-SIG field over each occupied 20 MHz subchannel of the channel bandwidth. Apply appropriate phase rotation for each occupied 20 MHz subchannel as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone rotation).
- h) CSD per STS: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply CSD per STS for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields) before spatial mapping.
- i) Spatial mapping: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply the A matrix and the Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.6 (RL-SIG).
- j) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- k) CSD per chain: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, apply CSD per chain for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).

- 1 l) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI,Pre-HE}$) and apply windowing as described in
 2 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
 3
 4 m) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
 5 chain. Refer to 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.
 6

7 **27.3.6.6 Construction of HE-SIG-A**
 8
 9

10 For an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, and HE TB PPDU, the HE-SIG-A field consists of two parts, HE-
 11 SIG-A1 and HE-SIG-A2 as defined in 27.3.10.7 (HE-SIG-A) and is constructed as follows:
 12

- 13 a) Obtain the HE-SIG-A field values from the TXVECTOR. Add the reserved bits, append the calcu-
 14 lated CRC, and then append the N_{tail} tail bits as shown in 27.3.10.7 (HE-SIG-A). This results in 52
 15 uncoded bits.
 16
 17 b) BCC encoder: Encode the data by a convolutional encoder at the rate of $R = 1/2$ as described in
 18 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder).
 19
 20 c) BCC interleaver: Interleave as described in 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers).
 21
 22 d) Constellation mapper: BPSK modulate the first 52 interleaved bits as described in 17.3.5.8 (Subcar-
 23 rier modulation mapping) to form the first OFDM symbol of HE-SIG-A. BPSK modulate the second
 24 52 interleaved bits to form the second OFDM symbol of HE-SIG-A.
 25
 26 e) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots as described in 17.3.5.9 (Pilot subcarriers).
 27
 28 f) Duplicate and phase rotation: Duplicate the HE-SIG-A OFDM symbols over each occupied 20 MHz
 29 subchannel of the channel width. Apply the appropriate phase rotation for each occupied 20 MHz
 30 subchannel as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of
 31 tone rotation).
 32
 33 g) CSD per STS: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply CSD per STS for each
 34 space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modu-
 35 lated fields) before spatial mapping.
 36
 37 h) Spatial mapping: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply the A matrix and the
 38 Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.7.4 (Encoding and modulation).
 39
 40 i) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
 41
 42 j) CSD per chain: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, apply CSD per
 43 chain for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for
 44 pre-HE modulated fields).
 45
 46 k) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI,Pre-HE}$) and apply windowing as described in
 47 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
 48
 49 l) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
 50 chain to an RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to
 51 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.
 52

53 For an HE ER SU PPDU, the HE-SIG-A field consists of four parts, HE-SIG-A1, HE-SIG-A2, HE-SIG-A3,
 54 and HE-SIG-A4. HE-SIG-A1 and HE-SIG-A2 have the same data bits while HE-SIG-A3 and HE-SIG-A4
 55 have the same data bits as defined in 27.3.10.7 (HE-SIG-A). The HE-SIG-A field is constructed as follows:
 56

- 57 a) Obtain the HE-SIG-A fields from the TXVECTOR. Add the reserved bits, append the calculated
 58 CRC, and then append the N_{tail} tail bits as shown in 27.3.10.7 (HE-SIG-A). This results in 52
 59 uncoded bits.
 60
 61 b) BCC encoder: Encode the data by a convolutional encoder at the rate of $R = 1/2$ as described in
 62 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder).
 63
 64 c) BCC interleaver: Interleave the data bits of HE-SIG-A1 and HE-SIG-A3 as described in 27.3.11.8
 65 (BCC interleavers). The data bits of HE-SIG-A2 and HE-SIG-A4 are not interleaved.

- 1 d) Constellation mapper: BPSK modulate the HE-SIG-A1, HE-SIG-A3, and HE-SIG-A4 data bits as
2 described in 17.3.5.8 (Subcarrier modulation mapping) to form the first, third, and fourth OFDM
3 symbol of HE-SIG-A, respectively. QPSK modulate the HE-SIG-A2 encoded data bits to form the
4 second OFDM symbol of HE-SIG-A.
- 5 e) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots as described in 17.3.5.9 (Pilot subcarriers).
- 6 f) Duplication and phase rotation: Duplicate the HE-SIG-A field over each occupied 20 MHz subchan-
7 nel of the channel bandwidth. Apply appropriate phase rotation for each occupied 20 MHz subchan-
8 nel as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone
9 rotation).
- 10 g) CSD per STS: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply CSD per STS for each
11 space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modu-
12 lated fields) before spatial mapping.
- 13 h) Spatial mapping: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, apply the A matrix and the
14 Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.7.4 (Encoding and modulation).
- 15 i) IDFT: Compute the inverse Fourier transform.
- 16 j) CSD per chain: If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, apply CSD per
17 chain for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for
18 pre-HE modulated fields).
- 19 k) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI,Pre-HE}$) and apply windowing as described in
20 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 21 l) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
22 chain to an RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to
23 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

27.3.6.7 Construction of HE-SIG-B

For an HE MU PPDU, the HE-SIG-B field consists of a Common field followed by a User Specific field as defined in 27.3.10.8 (HE-SIG-B) and is constructed as follows:

- 35 a) Obtain the HE-SIG-B field values from the TXVECTOR. Add the reserved bits, append the calcu-
36 lated CRC, and then append the N_{tail} tail bits as shown in 27.3.10.8 (HE-SIG-B).
- 37 b) BCC encoder: Encode the Common field data and each User Block field data individually by a con-
38 volutional encoder as described in 27.3.11.5.1 (BCC coding and puncturing).
- 39 c) BCC interleaver: Interleave as described in 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers).
- 40 d) Constellation mapper: Obtain MCS_SIG_B from the TXVECTOR and use it to modulate the inter-
41 leaved bits as described in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping) to form the HE-SIG-B OFDM sym-
42 bols .
- 43 e) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots as described in 17.3.5.9 (Pilot subcarriers).
- 44 f) Duplicate and phase rotation: Duplicate HE-SIG-B OFDM symbols as described in 27.3.10.8.5
45 (Encoding and modulation). Apply the appropriate phase rotation for each 20 MHz subchannel as
46 described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone rotation).
- 47 g) CSD: Apply CSD for each transmit chain and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic
48 shift for pre-HE modulated fields).
- 49 h) IDFT: Compute the inverse Fourier transform.
- 50 i) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI ($T_{GI,Pre-HE}$) and apply windowing as described in
51 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 52 j) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
53 chain to an RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to
54 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

1 **27.3.6.8 Construction of HE-STF**

2 The HE-STF field is defined in 27.3.10.9 (HE-STF) and is constructed as follows:

- 3 a) Sequence generation: Generate the HE-STF in the frequency domain over the bandwidth indicated
4 by the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH as described in 27.3.10.9 (HE-STF). Apply a 3
5 dB power boost if transmitting an HE ER SU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.9 (HE-STF).
- 6 b) CSD: Apply CSD for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2
7 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).
- 8 c) Spatial mapping: Apply the Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.9 (HE-STF).
- 9 d) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 10 e) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI; 0.8 μ s GI for HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and
11 HE MU PPDU and 1.6 μ s GI for an HE TB PPDU. Apply windowing as described in 27.3.9 (Math-
12 ematical description of signals).
- 13 f) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
14 chain to an RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to
15 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

16 **27.3.6.9 Construction of HE-LTF**

17 The HE-LTF field is defined in 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF) and is constructed as follows:

- 18 a) Sequence generation: Generate the HE-LTF sequence in frequency domain over the bandwidth indicated
19 by CH_BANDWIDTH as described in 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF). Apply a 3 dB power boost if
20 transmitting an HE ER SU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF).
- 21 b) $A_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ matrix mapping: Apply the $P_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ matrix to the data tones of the HE-LTF sequence and
22 apply the $R_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ matrix to pilot subcarriers of the HE-LTF sequence except the UL MU-MIMO
23 transmission not using HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode as described in 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF).
24 There is no pilot mapping for an HE TB feedback NDP.
- 25 c) CSD: Apply CSD for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2
26 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).
- 27 d) Spatial mapping: Apply the Q matrix as described in 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF).
- 28 e) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 29 f) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI indicated by the TXVECTOR parameter GI_TYPE
30 and apply windowing as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 31 g) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform associated with each transmit
32 chain to an RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to
33 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

34 **27.3.6.10 Construction of the Data field in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE TB
35 PPDU**

36 **27.3.6.10.1 Using BCC**

37 The construction of the Data field in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE TB PPDU with BCC
38 encoding proceeds as follows:

- 39 a) Construct the SERVICE field as described in 27.3.11.3 (SERVICE field) and append the PSDU to
40 the SERVICE field.
- 41 b) Pre-FEC padding: Append the pre-FEC pad bits and tail bits as described in 27.3.11 (Data field).
- 42 c) Scrambler: Scramble the pre-FEC padded data.
- 43 d) BCC encoder: BCC encode as described in 27.3.11.5.1 (BCC coding and puncturing).

- 1 e) Post-FEC padding: Append the post-FEC pad bits and PE field as described in 27.3.11 (Data field).
- 2 f) Stream parser: Rearrange the output of BCC encoder into blocks as described in 27.3.11.6 (Stream
- 3 parser).
- 4 g) BCC interleaver: Interleave as described in 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers).
- 5 h) Constellation mapper: Map to BPSK, BPSK DCM, QPSK, QPSK DCM, 16-QAM, 16-QAM DCM,
- 6 64-QAM, or 256-QAM constellation points as described in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping).
- 7 i) STBC: Apply STBC as described in 27.3.11.11 (Space-time block coding).
- 8 j) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots following the steps described in 27.3.11.13 (Pilot subcarriers).
- 9 k) CSD: Apply CSD for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2
- 10 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).
- 11 l) Spatial mapping: Apply the Q matrix as described in 27.3.11.14 (OFDM modulation).
- 12 m) IDFT: In an 80+80 MHz transmission, map each frequency subblock to a separate IDFT. Compute
- 13 the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 14 n) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI determined by the TXVECTOR parameter GI_TYPE
- 15 and apply windowing as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 16 o) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform with each transmit chain to an
- 17 RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to 27.3.9
- 18 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

27.3.6.10.2 Using LDPC

The construction of the Data field in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE TB PPDU with LDPC encoding proceeds as follows:

- 1 a) Construct the SERVICE field as described in 27.3.11.3 (SERVICE field) and append the PSDU to
- 2 the SERVICE field.
- 3 b) Pre-FEC padding: Append the pre-FEC padding bits as described in 27.3.11 (Data field). There are
- 4 no tail bits.
- 5 c) Scrambler: Scramble the pre-FEC padded data.
- 6 d) LDPC encoder: LDPC encode as described in 27.3.11.5.2 (LDPC coding).
- 7 e) Post-FEC padding: Append the post-FEC pad bits and PE field as described in 27.3.11 (Data field).
- 8 f) Stream parser: Rearrange the output of LDPC encoder into blocks as described in 27.3.11.6 (Stream
- 9 parser).
- 10 g) Segment parser (if needed): In a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz transmission with a 2×996 -tone RU,
- 11 divide the output of each stream parser into two frequency subblocks as described in 27.3.11.6
- 12 (Stream parser). This block is bypassed for 20 MHz, 40 MHz, and 80 MHz transmissions.
- 13 h) Constellation mapper: Map to BPSK, BPSK DCM, QPSK, QPSK DCM, 16-QAM, 16-QAM DCM,
- 14 64-QAM, 256-QAM, or 1024-QAM constellation points as described in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation
- 15 mapping).
- 16 i) LDPC tone mapper: the LDPC tone mapping shall be performed on all LDPC encoded streams as
- 17 described in 27.3.11.10 (LDPC tone mapper).
- 18 j) Segment deparser (if needed): In 160 MHz transmission, merge the two frequency subblocks into
- 19 one frequency segment as described in 27.3.11.12 (Segment deparser). This block is bypassed for
- 20 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, and 80+80 MHz transmissions.
- 21 k) STBC: Apply STBC as described in 27.3.11.11 (Space-time block coding).
- 22 l) Pilot insertion: Insert pilots following the steps described in 27.3.11.13 (Pilot subcarriers).
- 23 m) CSD: Apply CSD for each space-time stream and frequency segment as described in 27.3.10.2.2
- 24 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).
- 25 n) Spatial mapping: Apply the Q matrix as described in 27.3.11.14 (OFDM modulation).

- 1 o) IDFT: In an 80+80 MHz transmission, map each frequency subblock to a separate IDFT. Compute
2 the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 3 p) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI determined by the TXVECTOR parameter GI_TYPE
4 and apply windowing as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 5 q) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform with each transmit chain to an
6 RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to 27.3.9
7 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

11 **27.3.6.11 Construction of the Data field in an HE MU PPDU**

13 **27.3.6.11.1 General**

16 In an HE MU transmission, the PPDU encoding process is performed independently in an RU on a per user
17 basis up to the input of the spatial mapping block, except that CSD is performed with knowledge of the
18 space-time streams starting index for that user. All user data in an RU is combined and mapped to the trans-
19 mit chains in the spatial mapping block.

22 **27.3.6.11.2 Using BCC**

25 A Data field with BCC encoding is constructed using steps (a) to (l) in 27.3.6.10.1 (Using BCC), then applying
26 CSD for an HE MU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).

28 **27.3.6.11.3 Using LDPC**

31 A Data field with LDPC encoding is constructed using steps (a) to (l) in 27.3.6.10.2 (Using LDPC), then
32 applying CSD for an HE MU PPDU as described in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).

34 **27.3.6.11.4 Combining to form an HE MU PPDU**

36 The per user data is combined as follows:

- 38 a) Spatial mapping: The Q matrix is applied as described in 27.3.11.14 (OFDM modulation). The com-
39 bining of all user data of an RU is done in this block.
- 41 b) IDFT: Compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform.
- 43 c) Insert GI and apply windowing: Prepend a GI determined by the TXVECTOR parameter GI_TYPE
44 and apply windowing as described in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
- 46 d) Analog and RF: Upconvert the resulting complex baseband waveform with each transmit chain to an
47 RF signal according to the center frequency of the desired channel and transmit. Refer to 27.3.9
48 (Mathematical description of signals) and 27.3.10 (HE preamble) for details.

50 **27.3.7 HE modulation and coding schemes (HE-MCSs)**

53 The HE-MCS is a compact representation of the modulation and coding used in the HE-SIG-B and Data
54 fields of the PPDU. For an HE SU PPDU and an HE ER SU PPDU it is carried in the HE-SIG-A field. For
55 an HE MU PPDU it is carried per user in the User Specific field of the HE-SIG-B field. For an HE TB
56 PPDU, it is carried in the User Info field of the Trigger frame soliciting the HE TB PPDU.

58 The modulation and coding used in the HE-SIG-B field of an HE MU PPDU is carried in the HE-SIG-B
59 MCS subfield of the HE-SIG-A field, and indicates an HE-MCS in the range 0 to 5.

62 Rate dependent parameters for the full set of HE-MCSs are shown in Table 27-56 (HE-MCSs for 26-tone
63 RU, NSS = 1) to Table 27-111 (HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 8) (in 27.5
64 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)). These tables give rate-dependent parameters for HE-MCSs with indices 0 to

1 11, with number of spatial streams from 1 to 8, RU options of 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, 106-tone RU, 242-tone RU, 484-tone RU and 996-tone RU, and bandwidth options of 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, and either
 2 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz.
 3
 4
 5

6 The HE ER SU PPDU supports only a single 242-tone or 106-tone RU. An HE ER SU PPDU with a 242-tone RU shall only be transmitted with the <HE-MCS, NSS> tuples <HE-MCS 0, 1>, <HE-MCS 1, 1> and
 7 <HE-MCS 2, 1>. An HE ER SU PPDU with a 106-tone RU shall only be transmitted with the <HE-MCS,
 8 NSS> tuple <HE-MCS 0, 1>. The 106-tone RU location within the 20 MHz tone plan is fixed as the one that
 9 is higher in frequency.
 10
 11

12 DCM is an optional modulation scheme used for the HE-SIG-B field and the Data field in an HE PPDU. The
 13 use of DCM for the HE-SIG-B field in an HE MU PPDU is indicated in the HE-SIG-A field. The use of
 14 DCM on the Data field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU is indicated in the HE-SIG-A field. The
 15 use of DCM in the Data field of an HE MU PPDU is indicated in the HE-SIG-B field. DCM is applicable to
 16 only the HE-MCSs 0, 1, 3 and 4.
 17
 18

19 The pre-HE modulated fields (see Figure 27-23 (Timing boundaries for HE PPDU fields if midamble is not
 20 present)) are not transmitted in 20 MHz subchannels in which the preamble is punctured as described in
 21 27.3.10.3 (L-STF).
 22
 23

27.3.8 Timing-related parameters

24 Refer to Table 19-6 (Timing-related constants) and Table 21-5 (Timing-related constants) for timing-related
 25 parameters for non-HE PPDU formats.
 26
 27

28 Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants) defines the timing-related parameters for HE PPDU formats.
 29
 30

31 **Table 27-12—Timing-related constants**

32 Parameter	33 Values	34 Description
35 Δ_f , Pre-HE	312.5 kHz	36 Subcarrier frequency spacing for the pre-HE 37 modulated fields
38 Δ_f , HE	78.125 kHz	39 Subcarrier frequency spacing for the HE 40 modulated fields
41 $T_{DFT,Pre-HE}$	3.2 μ s	42 IDFT/DFT period for the pre-HE modulated 43 fields
44 $T_{DFT,HE}$	12.8 μ s	45 IDFT/DFT period for the Data field.
46 $T_{GI,Pre-HE}$	0.8 μ s	47 Guard interval duration for the pre-HE modulated 48 fields
49 $T_{GI,L-LTF}$	1.6 μ s	50 Guard interval duration for the L-LTF field.
51 $T_{GI,Data}$	0.8 μ s	52 Base guard interval duration for the Data field
53 $T_{GI2,Data}$	1.6 μ s	54 Double guard interval duration for the Data 55 field
56 $T_{GI4,Data}$	3.2 μ s	57 Quadruple guard interval duration for the 58 Data field.
59 $T_{GI,HE-LTF}$	$T_{GI,Data}$, $T_{GI2,Data}$ or $T_{GI4,Data}$ depending on the 60 GI used for data	61 Guard interval duration for the HE-LTF field, 62 same as $T_{GI,Data}$

Table 27-12—Timing-related constants (continued)

Parameter	Values	Description
$T_{GI,Data}$	$T_{GII,Data}$, $T_{GI2,Data}$ or $T_{GI4,Data}$ depending on the GI used for data	Guard interval duration for the Data field.
T_{SYM1}	$13.6 \mu s = T_{DFT,HE} + T_{GII,Data} = 1.0625 \times T_{DFT,HE}$	OFDM symbol duration with base GI
T_{SYM2}	$14.4 \mu s = T_{DFT,HE} + T_{GI2,Data} = 1.125 \times T_{DFT,HE}$	OFDM symbol duration with double GI
T_{SYM4}	$16 \mu s = T_{DFT,HE} + T_{GI4,Data} = 1.25 \times T_{DFT,HE}$	OFDM symbol duration with quadruple GI
T_{SYM}	T_{SYM1} , T_{SYM2} , or T_{SYM4} depending on the GI used for data	OFDM symbol interval for HE PPDU fields. See Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields).
T_{L-STF}	$8 \mu s = 10 \times T_{DFT,Pre-HE} / 4$	Non-HT Short Training field duration
T_{L-LTF}	$8 \mu s = 2 \times T_{DFT,Pre-HE} + T_{GI,L-LTF}$	Non-HT Long Training field duration
T_{L-SIG}	$4 \mu s$	Non-HT SIGNAL field duration
T_{RL-SIG}	$4 \mu s$	Repeated non-HT SIGNAL field duration
$T_{HE-SIG-A}$	$8 \mu s = 2 \times 4 \mu s$	HE-SIG-A field duration in an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU
$T_{HE-SIG-A-R}$	$16 \mu s = 4 \times 4 \mu s$	HE-SIG-A field duration in an HE ER SU PPDU
$T_{HE-SIG-B}$	$4 \mu s = T_{DFT,Pre-HE} + T_{GI,Pre-HE}$	Duration of each OFDM symbol in the HE-SIG-B field
$T_{HE-STF-T}$	$8 \mu s = 5 \times 1.6 \mu s$	HE-STF field duration for an HE TB PPDU
$T_{HE-STF-NT}$	$4 \mu s = 5 \times 0.8 \mu s$	HE-STF field duration for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU
$T_{HE-LTF-1X}$	$3.2 \mu s$	Duration of each 1x HE-LTF OFDM symbol without GI
$T_{HE-LTF-2X}$	$6.4 \mu s$	Duration of each 2x HE-LTF OFDM symbol without GI
$T_{HE-LTF-4X}$	$12.8 \mu s$	Duration of each 4x HE-LTF OFDM symbol without GI
T_{HE-LTF}	$T_{HE-LTF-1X}$, $T_{HE-LTF-2X}$ or $T_{HE-LTF-4X}$ depending upon the LTF duration used	Duration of each OFDM symbol without GI in the HE-LTF field
$T_{HE-LTF-SYM}$	$T_{HE-LTF} + T_{GI,HE-LTF}$	Duration of each OFDM symbol including GI in the HE-LTF field
$N_{service}$	16	Number of bits in the SERVICE field
$N_{tail}, N_{tail,u}$	6 for BCC encoder, 0 for LDPC encoder	Number of tail bits per encoder (for user u)
T_{SYML}	$4 \mu s$	OFDM symbol duration including GI prior to the HE-STF field
T_{PE}	0, 4 μs , 8 μs , 12 μs or 16 μs depending on the actual extension duration used	Duration of the PE field

1 Table 27-13 (Subcarrier allocation related constants for the HE-modulated fields in a non-OFDMA HE
 2 PPDU) defines tone allocation related parameters for a non-OFDMA HE PPDU.

5 **Table 27-13—Subcarrier allocation related constants for the HE-modulated fields in a non-**
 6 **OFDMA HE PPDU**

Parameter	CBW20	CBW40	CBW80	CBW80+80	CBW160	Description
N_{SD}	234	468	980	980	1960	Number of data subcarriers per frequency segment
N_{SP}	8	16	16	16	32	Number of pilot subcarriers per frequency segment
N_{ST}	242	484	996	996	1992	Total number of subcarriers per frequency segment
N_{SR}	122	244	500	500	1012	Highest data subcarrier index per frequency segment
N_{Seg}	1	1	1	2	1	Number of frequency segments
N_{DC}	3	5	5	5	23	Number of null subcarriers at DC per segment
$N_{Guard,Left}$	6	12	12	12	12	Number of low frequency guard subcarriers
$N_{Guard,Right}$	5	11	11	11	11	Number of high frequency guard subcarriers
NOTE: $N_{ST} = N_{SD} + N_{SP}$						

Table 27-14 (Subcarrier allocation related constants for RUs in an OFDMA HE PPDU) defines tone allocation related parameters for an OFDMA HE PPDU.

Table 27-14—Subcarrier allocation related constants for RUs in an OFDMA HE PPDU

Parameter	RU Size (subcarriers)							Description
	26	52	106	242	484	996	2×996	
N_{SD}	24	48	102	234	468	980	1960	Number of data subcarriers per RU
N_{SP}	2	4	4	8	16	16	32	Number of pilot subcarriers per RU
N_{ST}	26	52	106	242	484	996	1992	Total number of subcarriers per RU

NOTE: $N_{ST} = N_{SD} + N_{SP}$

Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters) defines parameters used frequently in Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification).

Table 27-15—Frequently used parameters

Symbol	Explanation
N_{RU}	For pre-HE modulated fields, $N_{RU} = 1$. For HE modulated fields, N_{RU} represents the number of occupied RUs in the transmission.
$N_{user,r}$	For pre-HE modulated fields, $N_{user,r} = 1$. For HE modulated fields, $N_{user,r}$ represents the total number of users in the r -th occupied RU of the transmission.
$N_{user,total}$	Total number of users in all occupied RUs of an HE transmission, i.e., $N_{user,total} = \sum_{r=0}^{N_{RU}-1} N_{user,r}$
$N_{CBPS}, N_{CBPS,u}$	Number of coded bits per OFDM symbol for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,total} - 1$ For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, $N_{CBPS} = N_{CBPS,0}$ For an HE MU PPDU, N_{CBPS} is undefined
$N_{CBPSS}, N_{CBPSS,u}$	Number of coded bits per OFDM symbol per spatial stream for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,total} - 1$. For the Data field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, $N_{CBPSS} = N_{CBPSS,0}$ For the Data field of an HE MU PPDU, N_{CBPSS} is undefined
$N_{DBPS}, N_{DBPS,u}$	Number of data bits per OFDM symbol for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,total} - 1$. For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, $N_{DBPS} = N_{DBPS,0}$ For an HE MU PPDU, N_{DBPS} is undefined

Table 27-15—Frequently used parameters (continued)

Symbol	Explanation
$N_{BPSCS}, N_{BPSCS,u}$	Number of coded bits per subcarrier per spatial stream for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,total} - 1$. For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, $N_{BPSCS} = N_{BPSCS,0}$ For an HE MU PPDU, N_{BPSCS} is undefined
N_{RX}	Number of receive chains
$N_{STS}, N_{STS,r,u}$	For HE modulated fields, $N_{STS,r,u}$ represents the number of space-time streams in the r -th occupied RU for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,r} - 1$. For STBC, $N_{STS,r,u} = 2$. For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, $N_{STS} = N_{STS,0,0}$
$N_{STS,r,total}$	For HE modulated fields, $N_{STS,r,total}$ is the total number of space-time streams over all the users in the r -th occupied RU. $N_{STS,r,total} = \sum_{u=0}^{N_{user,r}-1} N_{STS,r,u}$ For pre-HE modulated fields, $N_{STS,r,total}$ is undefined if the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, and $N_{STS,r,total} = N_{STS}$ if BEAM_CHANGE is 0. NOTE— $N_{STS,r,total} = N_{STS}$ for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU.
$N_{SS}, N_{SS,r,u}, N_{SS,u}$	Number of spatial streams. For the Data field, $N_{SS,r,u}$ is the number of spatial streams at r -th RU for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,r} - 1$ and $N_{SS,u}$ is the number of spatial streams for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,total} - 1$. For the Data field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, $N_{SS} = N_{SS,0,0}$ For the Data field of an HE MU PPDU, $N_{SS} = \max_{r=0}^{N_{RU}-1} N_{SS,r,total}$
$N_{SS,r,total}$	For HE modulated fields, $N_{SS,r,total}$ is the total number of spatial streams at r -th RU in a PPDU. $N_{SS,r,total} = \sum_{u=0}^{N_{user,r}-1} N_{SS,r,u}$ For pre-HE modulated fields, $N_{SS,r,total}$ is undefined. NOTE— $N_{SS,r,total} = N_{SS}$ for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU.
N_{TX}	Number of transmit chains
N_{HE-LTF}	The number of OFDM symbols in the HE-LTF field (see 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF))
$N_{HE-SIG-B}$	The number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field (see 27.3.10.8 (HE-SIG-B))
K_r	Set of used subcarrier indices in the r -th occupied RU
R, R_u	R_u is the coding rate for user u , $u = 0, \dots, N_{user,total} - 1$. For an HE SU PPDU, $R = R_0$ For an HE MU PPDU, R is undefined

1
2 **Table 27-15—Frequently used parameters (continued)**
3
4
5

Symbol	Explanation
$M_{r,u}$	The sum of the number of space-time streams of users prior to user u in RU r . For pre-HE modulated fields, $M_{r,u} = 0$. For HE modulated fields, $M_{r,0} = 0$ for $u = 0$ and $M_{r,u} = \sum_{u'=0}^{u-1} N_{STS,r,u'} \text{ for } u = 1, \dots, N_{user,r} - 1.$

11
12 **27.3.9 Mathematical description of signals**
13
1415
16 For a description of the conventions used for the mathematical description of the signals, see 17.3.2.5 (Mathematical conventions in the signal descriptions). In addition, the following notational conventions are used
17 in Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification):
1819 $[Q]_{m,n}$ indicates the element in row m and column n of matrix, where $1 \leq m \leq N_{row}$ and $1 \leq n \leq N_{col}$ 20 N_{row} and N_{col} are the number of rows and columns, respectively, of the matrix Q .21 $[Q]_{m:n}$ indicates a matrix consisting of columns m to n of matrix Q .22
23 For a description on subcarrier indices over which the signal is transmitted for non-HT, HT and VHT
24 PPDUs, see 21.3.7 (Mathematical description of signals).25
26 For a 20 MHz non-OFDMA HE PPDU transmission, the 20 MHz is divided into 256 subcarriers. The signal
27 is transmitted on all or a subset of subcarriers –122 to –2 and 2 to 122, with 0 being the center (DC) subcar-
28 rier.29
30 For a 20 MHz OFDMA HE PPDU transmission, the 20 MHz is divided into 256 subcarriers. The signal is
31 transmitted on all or a subset of the subcarriers –122 to –4 and 4 to 122, with 0 being the center (DC) subcar-
32 rier.33
34 For a 40 MHz non-OFDMA HE PPDU transmission, the 40 MHz is divided into 512 subcarriers. The signal
35 is transmitted on subcarriers –244 to –3 and 3 to 244, with 0 being the center (DC) subcarrier.36
37 For a 40 MHz OFDMA HE PPDU transmission, the 40 MHz is divided into 512 subcarriers. The signal is
38 transmitted on all or a subset of subcarriers –244 to –3 and 3 to 244, with 0 being the center (DC) subcarrier.39
40 For an 80 MHz non-OFDMA HE PPDU transmission, the 80 MHz is divided into 1024 subcarriers. The sig-
41 nal is transmitted on subcarriers –500 to –3 and 3 to 500, with 0 being the center (DC) subcarrier.42
43 For an 80 MHz OFDMA HE PPDU transmission, the 80 MHz is divided into 1024 subcarriers. The signal is
44 transmitted on all or a subset of the subcarriers –500 to –4 and 4 to 500, with 0 being the center (DC) subcar-
45 rier.46
47 For a 160 MHz HE PPDU transmission or a noncontiguous 80+80 MHz transmission, each half 80 MHz
48 bandwidth is divided into 1024 subcarriers, and the subcarriers on which the signal is transmitted in each
49 80 MHz bandwidth is identical to an 80 MHz HE PPDU transmission, depending on non-OFDMA or
50 OFDMA transmission within the corresponding 80 MHz.51
52 The transmitted signal is described in complex baseband signal notation. The actual transmitted signal on
53 transmit chain i_{TX} and frequency segment i_{Seg} is related to the complex baseband signal by the relation
54 shown in Equation (27-1).

$$r_{RF}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \operatorname{Re} \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{Seg}}} r_{PPDU}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) \exp(j2\pi f_c^{(i_{Seg})} t) \right\}, \quad i_{Seg} = 0, \dots, N_{Seg}-1; \quad i_{TX} = 1, \dots, N_{TX} \quad (27-1)$$

where

N_{Seg} represents the number of frequency segments in the transmit signal as defined in Table 27-13 (Sub-carrier allocation related constants for the HE-modulated fields in a non-OFDMA HE PPDU)

$r_{PPDU}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}$ represents the complex baseband signal of frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX}

$f_c^{(i_{Seg})}$ represents the center frequency of the portion of the PPDU transmitted in frequency segment i_{Seg} .

Table 21-7 (Center frequency of the portion of the PPDU transmitted in frequency segment i_{Seg}) shows $f_c^{(i_{Seg})}$ as a function of the channel starting frequency, `dot11CurrentChannelWidth` (see Table 21-22 (Fields to specify VHT channels)) and `CH_BANDWIDTH` where $f_{CH,start}$, $f_{P20, idx}$, $f_{P40, idx}$, and $f_{P80, idx}$ are given in Equation (21-4), Equation (21-5), Equation (21-7), and Equation (21-9), respectively. For an HE STA operating in the 6 GHz band, see 27.3.22.2 (Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band) for the value of channel starting frequency and the valid range of `dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex0` and `dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex1`.

The transmitted RF signal is derived by up-converting the complex baseband signal, which consists of several fields. The timing boundaries for the various fields when the midamble is not present are shown in Figure 27-23 (Timing boundaries for HE PPDU fields if midamble is not present), where N_{HE-LTF} is the number of HE-LTF symbols and is defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters), $N_{HE-SIG-B}$ is the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field present in an HE MU PPDU, and N_{SYM} is the number of data OFDM symbols.

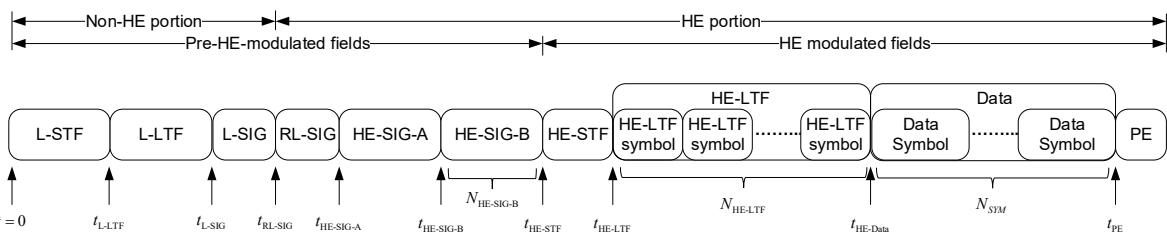


Figure 27-23—Timing boundaries for HE PPDU fields if midamble is not present

NOTE—Data OFDM symbols are OFDM symbols in the Data field of an HE PPDU that are not midamble symbols.

The time offset, t_{Field} , determines the starting time of the corresponding field relative to the start of L-STF ($t = 0$).

The signal transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} shall be as shown in Equation (27-2) if midamble is not present.

$$\begin{aligned} r_{PPDU}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) &= r_{L-STF}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) + r_{L-LTF}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{L-LTF}) \\ &\quad + r_{L-SIG}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{L-SIG}) + r_{RL-SIG}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{RL-SIG}) + r_{HE-SIG-A}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{HE-SIG-A}) + r_{HE-SIG-B}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{HE-SIG-B}) \\ &\quad + r_{HE-STF}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{HE-STF}) + r_{HE-LTF}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{HE-LTF}) + r_{HE-Data}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{HE-Data}) + r_{HE-PE}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t - t_{HE-PE}) \end{aligned} \quad (27-2)$$

where

1 $r_{\text{HE-SIG-B}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t - t_{\text{HE-SIG-B}})$ is only applicable to an HE MU PPDU
 2
 3 $0 \leq i_{\text{Seg}} \leq N_{\text{Seg}} - 1$
 4
 5 $1 \leq i_{\text{TX}} \leq N_{\text{TX}}$
 6
 7 $t_{\text{L-LTF}} = T_{\text{L-STF}}$
 8
 9 $t_{\text{L-SIG}} = t_{\text{L-LTF}} + T_{\text{L-LTF}}$
 10 $t_{\text{RL-SIG}} = t_{\text{L-SIG}} + T_{\text{L-SIG}}$
 11 $t_{\text{HE-SIG-A}} = t_{\text{RL-SIG}} + T_{\text{RL-SIG}}$
 12
 13 $t_{\text{HE-SIG-B}} = \begin{cases} t_{\text{HE-SIG-A}} + T_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}, & \text{for an HE MU PPDU} \\ \text{undefined}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
 14
 15
 16
 17
 18 $t_{\text{HE-STF}} = \begin{cases} t_{\text{HE-SIG-A}} + T_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}, & \text{for an HE SU PPDU and HE TB PPDU} \\ t_{\text{HE-SIG-A}} + T_{\text{HE-SIG-A-R}}, & \text{for an HE ER SU PPDU} \\ t_{\text{HE-SIG-B}} + N_{\text{HE-SIG-B}} T_{\text{HE-SIG-B}}, & \text{for an HE MU PPDU} \end{cases}$
 19
 20
 21
 22
 23
 24 $t_{\text{HE-LTF}} = \begin{cases} t_{\text{HE-STF}} + T_{\text{HE-STF-T}}, & \text{for an HE TB PPDU} \\ t_{\text{HE-STF}} + T_{\text{HE-STF-NT}}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
 25
 26
 27
 28 $t_{\text{HE-Data}} = t_{\text{HE-LTF}} + N_{\text{HE-LTF}} T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}}$
 29 $t_{\text{HE-PE}} = t_{\text{HE-Data}} + N_{\text{SYM}} T_{\text{SYM}}$
 30
 31

32 In an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, for each field excluding the PE field,
 33 $r_{\text{Field}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t)$ is defined as the summation of one or more subfields. Each subfield, $r_{\text{Subfield}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t)$, is defined to
 34 be an inverse discrete Fourier transform in Equation (27-3).
 35
 36

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_{\text{Subfield}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) &= w_{T_{\text{Subfield}}}(t) \sum_{r=0}^{N_{\text{RU}}-1} \frac{\alpha_r \beta_r^{\text{Field}}}{\sqrt{N_{\text{Norm}, r}}} \sum_{k \in K_r} \eta_{\text{Field}, k} \sum_{u=0}^{N_{\text{user}, r}-1} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\text{STS}, r, u}} \left[Q_k^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{\text{TX}}, (M_{r, u} + m)} \Upsilon_{k, \text{BW}} \\
 &\quad X_{k, r, u}^{j_{\text{Seg}}, m} \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F, \text{Field}}(t - T_{GI, \text{Field}} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r, u} + m)))
 \end{aligned} \tag{27-3}$$

46 In an HE TB PPDU, transmitted by user u in the r -th occupied RU, each subfield, $r_{\text{Subfield}, r, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t)$, is defined
 47 in Equation (27-4).
 48
 49

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_{\text{Subfield}, r, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) &= \frac{\beta_r^{\text{Field}}}{\sqrt{N_{\text{Norm}, r}}} w_{T_{\text{Subfield}}}(t) \sum_{k \in K_r} \eta_{\text{Field}, k} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\text{STS}, r, u}} \left[Q_{k, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{\text{TX}}, m} \Upsilon_{k, \text{BW}} \\
 &\quad X_{k, r, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, m)} \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F, \text{Field}}(t - T_{GI, \text{Field}} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r, u} + m)))
 \end{aligned} \tag{27-4}$$

58 In the remainder of this subclause, pre-HE modulated fields refer to the L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG,
 59 HE-SIG-A and HE-SIG-B fields, while HE modulated fields refer to the HE-STF, HE-LTF and Data fields,
 60 as shown in Figure 27-23 (Timing boundaries for HE PPDU fields if midamble is not present).
 61
 62

63 For an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, the total power of the time domain HE modu-
 64 lated field signals summed over all transmit chains should not exceed the total power of the time domain
 65

1 pre-HE modulated field signals summed over all transmit chains if the TXVECTOR parameter
 2 BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present and power boost in HE modulated fields is not present.
 3

4
 5 For an HE TB PPDU, the total power of the time domain HE modulated field signals summed over all trans-
 6 mit chains may exceed the total power of the time domain pre-HE modulated field signals summed over all
 7 transmit chains by up to 3 dB.
 8

9
 10 For notational simplicity, the parameter BW is omitted from some bandwidth dependent terms.
 11

12
 13 In Equation (27-3) and Equation (27-4) the following notations are used:
 14

15 $N_{Norm,r}$ If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, then for pre-HE modulated
 16 fields, $N_{Norm,r} = N_{TX}$. If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, then for pre-HE
 17 modulated fields $N_{Norm,r} = N_{STS,r,total}$, where $N_{STS,r,total}$ is given in Table 27-15 (Frequently
 18 used parameters). For HE modulated fields $N_{Norm,r} = N_{STS,r,total}$.
 19

20
 21 $w_{Subfield}(t)$ is a windowing function. An example function, $w_{Subfield}(t)$, is given in 17.3.2.5 (Mathemati-
 22 cal conventions in the signal descriptions).
 23

24
 25 K_r For pre-HE modulated fields, K_r is the set of subcarriers indices in the allocated 20 MHz channels.
 26

27 For HE modulated fields in a non-OFDMA HE PPDU, K_r is the set of subcarriers indices from
 28 $-N_{SR}$ to N_{SR} as defined in Table 27-13 (Subcarrier allocation related constants for the HE-
 29 modulated fields in a non-OFDMA HE PPDU) excluding DC subcarriers. For HE modulated
 30 fields in an OFDMA HE PPDU, K_r is the set of subcarrier indices for the tones in the r -th RU
 31 as defined in Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and
 32 in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs
 33 in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and
 34 pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE
 35 PPDU).
 36

37
 38 $\eta_{Field,k}$ is the power scale factor of the k -th subcarrier of a given field within an OFDM symbol, which is
 39 $\sqrt{2}$ for all the subcarriers of the L-STF, L-LTF, HE-STF and HE-LTF fields in the HE ER SU
 40 PPDU. For the L-SIG and RL-SIG fields of an HE ER SU PPDU,
 41

$$\eta_{Field,k} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}, k = -28, -27, 27, 28 \\ 1, \text{ otherwise} \end{cases}$$

42 For the HE-SIG-A and Data fields in an HE ER SU PPDU, $\eta_{Field,k} = 1$. For the pre-HE por-
 43 tion of the HE TB PPDU, $\eta_{Field,k} = \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1 \right]$, meaning in the range $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ to 1. For all other
 44 fields in other HE PPDUs $\eta_{Field,k} = 1$.
 45

46
 47 α_r is the power boost factor in the range [0.5, 2] of the r -th occupied RU in an HE PPDU. For a DL
 48 HE MU PPDU, an AP shall limit the ratio between the maximum value of α_r and the mini-
 49 mum value of α_r to 2 unless the Power Boost Factor Support subfield of the HE PHY Capabil-
 50 ities Information field in the HE Capabilities element from all recipient STAs is 1, in which
 51 case the AP can use a ratio of up to 4. For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, α_r is
 52 always set to 1.
 53

54
 55 β_r^{Field} is the power normalization factor and is defined in Equation (27-5)
 56

$$\beta_r^{Field} = \begin{cases} \frac{\epsilon_{Field}}{\sqrt{N_{Field}^{Tone}}}, & \text{for pre-HE modulated fields} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{|K_r^{Field}|}}, & \text{for HE modulated fields in an HE TB PPDU} \\ \sqrt{\frac{|K_r|}{|K_r^{Field}|}} / \sqrt{\sum_{r=0}^{N_{RU}-1} \alpha_r^2 |K_r|}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-5)$$

$|K_r|$ is the cardinality of the set of subcarriers K_r

$|K_r^{Field}|$ is the cardinality of the set of modulated subcarriers within K_r for the HE-STF and Data fields. For the HE-LTF field,

$$|K_r^{\text{HE-LTF}}| = \begin{cases} |K_r|, & \text{for a 4x HE-LTF} \\ |K_r|/2, & \text{for a 2x HE-LTF} \\ |K_r|/4, & \text{for a 1x HE-LTF} \end{cases}$$

N_{Field}^{Tone} Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields) summarizes the various values of N_{Field}^{Tone} as a function of bandwidth per frequency segment.

Table 27-16—Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields

Field	N_{Field}^{Tone} as a function of bandwidth, and RU size per frequency segment				Guard interval duration
	20 MHz	40 MHz	80 MHz	160 MHz	
L-STF	12	24	48	96	-
L-LTF	52	104	208	416	$T_{GI,L-LTF}$
L-SIG in an HE PPDU	56	112	224	448	$T_{GI,Pre-HE}$
L-SIG in a non-HT duplicate PPDU	-	104	208	416	
RL-SIG	56	112	224	448	$T_{GI,Pre-HE}$
HE-SIG-A	56	112	224	448	$T_{GI,Pre-HE}$
HE-SIG-B	56	112	224	448	$T_{GI,Pre-HE}$

N_{RU} is defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

$$\varepsilon_{Field} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{N_{L-LTF}^{\text{Tone}}}{N_{L-SIG}^{\text{Tone}}}}, & \text{for the L-STF and L-LTF fields} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$Q_k^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is the spatial mapping matrix for the subcarrier k in frequency segment i_{Seg} . For HE modulated fields, $Q_k^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is a matrix with N_{TX} rows and $N_{STS,r,total}$ columns. If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, then for pre-HE modulated fields $Q_k^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is a column vector with N_{TX} elements with element i_{TX} being $\exp(-j2\pi k\Delta_{F,\text{Pre-HE}} T_{CS}^{i_{TX}})$, where $T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for the transmitter chain whose values are defined in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields); otherwise it is identical to the spatial mapping $Q_k^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ for HE modulated fields.

$Q_{k,u}^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is the spatial mapping matrix for user u on subcarrier k in frequency segment i_{Seg} . For HE modulated fields, $Q_{k,u}^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is a matrix with N_{TX} rows and $N_{STS,r,u}$ columns. For pre-HE modulated fields, $Q_{k,u}^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is a column vector with N_{TX} elements with element i_{TX} being $\exp(-j2\pi k\Delta_{F,\text{Pre-HE}} T_{CS}^{i_{TX}})$, where $T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for the transmitter chain whose values are defined in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).

$\Delta_{F,Field}$ is the subcarrier frequency spacing. For pre-HE modulated fields, $\Delta_{F,Field} = \Delta_{F,\text{Pre-HE}}$ given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants). For HE modulated fields, $\Delta_{F,Field} = \Delta_{F,\text{HE}}$ given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants).

$M_{r,u}$ is given in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters).

$X_{k,r,u}^{(i_{\text{seg}},m)}$ is the frequency-domain symbol in subcarrier k of user u in the r -th RU for frequency segment i_{Seg} of space-time stream m . Some of the $X_{k,r,u}^{(i_{\text{seg}},m)}$ within $-N_{SR} \leq k \leq N_{SR}$ have a value of zero. Examples of such cases include the DC tones, guard tones on each side of the transmit spectrum, the null subcarriers in an HE OFDMA PPDU, as well as the unmodulated tones of L-STF, HE-STF, and HE-LTF fields.

$T_{GI,Field}$ is the guard interval duration used for each OFDM symbol in the field. The value for each field is defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants).

$T_{CS,HE}(l)$ For pre-HE modulated fields, if the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, $T_{CS,HE}(l) = 0$. For HE modulated fields and pre-HE modulated fields if the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, $T_{CS,HE}(l)$ represents the cyclic shift per space-time stream, whose value is defined in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields).

$\Upsilon_{k,BW}$ is used to represent tone rotation. BW in $\Upsilon_{k,BW}$ is determined by the TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH as defined in Table 27-17 (CH_BANDWIDTH and for pre-HE modulated fields). In HE modulated fields, $\Upsilon_{k,BW} = 1$ for all the subcarriers. In pre-HE modulated fields, $\Upsilon_{k,BW}$ is defined as in 21.3.7.5 (Definition of tone rotation) if TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 and $\Upsilon_{k,BW} = 1$ for all the subcarriers if TXVECTOR parameter

1 BEAM_CHANGE is 0. If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is not present (such
 2 as in an HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU), BEAM_CHANGE is assumed to be 1.
 3
 4
 5

6 **Table 27-17—CH_BANDWIDTH and $\Upsilon_{k,BW}$ for pre-HE modulated fields**

CH_BANDWIDTH	$\Upsilon_{k,BW}$
CBW20	$\Upsilon_{k, 20}$
CBW40	$\Upsilon_{k, 40}$
CBW80	$\Upsilon_{k, 80}$
CBW160	$\Upsilon_{k, 160}$
CBW80+80	$\Upsilon_{k, 80}$ per frequency segment
HE-CBW-PUNC80-PRI	$\Upsilon_{k, 80}$
HE-CBW-PUNC80-SEC	$\Upsilon_{k, 80}$
HE-CBW-PUNC160-PRI20	$\Upsilon_{k, 160}$
HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-PRI20	$\Upsilon_{k, 80}$ per frequency segment
HE-CBW-PUNC160-SEC40	$\Upsilon_{k, 160}$
HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-SEC40	$\Upsilon_{k, 80}$ per frequency segment

34 27.3.10 HE preamble

35 27.3.10.1 Introduction

39 The HE preamble consists of pre-HE modulated fields and HE modulated fields. The pre-HE modulated
 40 fields for the various HE PPDU formats are the following:
 41

- 42 — L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG and HE-SIG-A fields of an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE
 43 TB PPDU
- 44 — L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG, HE-SIG-A and HE-SIG-B fields of an HE MU PPDU

47 The HE modulated fields in the preamble for all HE PPDU formats are the HE-STF and HE-LTF fields.

49 27.3.10.2 Cyclic shift

52 27.3.10.2.1 Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields

55 If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, then the cyclic shift value $T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ for the
 56 L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG, HE-SIG-A and HE-SIG-B fields of the PPDU for transmit chain i_{TX} out of
 57 a total of N_{TX} are defined in Table 21-10 (Cyclic shift values for L-STF, L-LTF, L-SIG, and VHT-SIG-A
 58 fields of the PPDU). In UL MU transmission the cyclic shift value $T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ is based on the local transmit chain
 59 indices at each STA.

61
 62 If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, then the cyclic shift value $T_{CS,HE}(n)$ for the L-STF,
 63 L-LTF, L-SIG, RL-SIG, and HE-SIG-A fields is specified in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated
 64 fields).

27.3.10.2.2 Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields

The cyclic shift values defined in this subclause apply to the HE-STF, HE-LTF and Data fields of the HE PPDU if the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, and apply to the entire PPDU if the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0.

Throughout the HE modulated fields of the preamble, cyclic shifts are applied to prevent unintended beam-forming when correlated signals are transmitted in multiple space-time streams. The same cyclic shifts are also applied to these streams during the transmission of the Data field of the HE PPDU. For the r -th RU, the cyclic shift value $T_{CS,HE}(n)$ for the HE modulated fields for space-time stream n out of $N_{STS,r,total}$ total space-time streams is shown in Table 21-11 (Cyclic shift values for the VHT modulated fields of a PPDU).

27.3.10.3 L-STF

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, the time domain representation of the L-STF field, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as specified in Equation (27-6). The equation applies to all contiguous signals up to 160 MHz and non contiguous 80+80 MHz.

$$r_{L-STF}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{\varepsilon}{\sqrt{N_{TX} \cdot N_{L-STF}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{L-STF}}(t) \sum_{i_{BW} \in \Omega_{20\text{MHz}}} \sum_{k=-26}^{26} \eta_{L-STF, k} \left(\begin{array}{l} \Upsilon_{(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW})), \text{BW}} S_{k, 20} \\ \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - T_{CS}^{i_{TX}})) \end{array} \right) \quad (27-6)$$

where

$$\varepsilon \quad \text{is a power scaling factor with the value } \varepsilon = \sqrt{\frac{N_{L-LTF}^{\text{Tone}}}{N_{L-SIG}^{\text{Tone}}}}$$

$\eta_{L-STF, k}$ is a PPDU format dependent scaling factor for the L-STF field on subcarrier index k with the following value

$$\eta_{L-STF, k} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}, & \text{for an HE ER SU PPDU} \\ \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1 \right], & \text{for an HE TB PPDU} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-7)$$

$$K_{\text{Shift}}(i) = (N_{20\text{MHz}} - 1 - 2i) \cdot 32$$

$T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for transmit chain i_{TX} with a value given in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).

N_{L-STF}^{Tone} has the value given in Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields).

$\Omega_{20\text{MHz}}$ is a set of 20 MHz channels where pre-HE modulated fields are located. The set of 20 MHz channels contains one or more values in the range 0 to $N_{20\text{MHz}} - 1$ for an HE TB PPDU, HE sounding NDP or HE MU PPDU with preamble puncturing, and it contains all values in the range 0 to $N_{20\text{MHz}} - 1$ for other HE PPDU formats.

$$N_{20\text{MHz}} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if CH_BANDWIDTH is CBW20} \\ 2, & \text{if CH_BANDWIDTH is CBW40} \\ 4, & \text{if CH_BANDWIDTH is CBW80, HE-CBW-PUNC80-PRI,} \\ & \quad \text{HE-CBW-PUNC80-SEC, CBW80+80, HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-PRI20,} \\ & \quad \text{or HE-CBW-PUNC80+80-SEC40} \\ 8, & \text{if CH_BANDWIDTH is CBW160, HE-CBW-PUNC160-PRI20,} \\ & \quad \text{or HE-CBW-PUNC160-SEC40} \end{cases}$$

$S_{k,20}$ is defined as $S_{-26,26}$ in Equation (19-8).

i_{BW} is the index of 20 MHz channels, $0 \leq i_{BW} \leq N_{20\text{MHz}} - 1$.

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, the time domain representation of the L-STF field shall be as specified in Equation (27-8). The equation applies to all contiguous signals up to 160 MHz and non contiguous 80+80 MHz.

$$r_{\text{L-STF}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{\varepsilon}{\sqrt{N_{STS} \cdot N_{\text{L-STF}}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{\text{L-STF}}}(t) \quad (27-8)$$

$$\sum_{i_{BW}=0}^{N_{20\text{MHz}}-1} \sum_{k=-26}^{26} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS}} \eta_{\text{L-STF}, k} \left(\left[Q_{4(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^{4(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))} \right]_{m, 1} S_{k, 20} \right) \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t-T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m)))$$

where

$T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream m as defined in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields)

$Q_k^{(i_{\text{Seg}})}$ is the spatial mapping/steering matrix for subcarrier k , in frequency segment i_{Seg} on the data OFDM symbols over subcarrier spacing $\Delta_{F, \text{HE}}$ as defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants). Refer to the descriptions in 21.3.10.11.1 (Transmission in VHT format) for examples of $Q_k^{(i_{\text{Seg}})}$.

$A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k$ is defined in Equation (27-55)

N_{STS} is the number of space-time streams of the HE-modulated fields in an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU as defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

27.3.10.4 L-LTF

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, the time domain representation of the L-LTF field, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as specified in Equation (27-9). The equation applies to all contiguous signals up to 160 MHz and non contiguous 80+80 MHz.

$$r_{\text{L-LTF}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{\varepsilon}{\sqrt{N_{TX} \cdot N_{\text{L-LTF}}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{\text{L-LTF}}}(t) \quad (27-9)$$

$$\sum_{i_{BW} \in \Omega_{20\text{MHz}}} \sum_{k=-26}^{26} \eta_{\text{L-LTF}, k} \left(\left[Y_{(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW})), \text{BW}} L_{k, 20} \right] \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t-T_{GI, \text{L-LTF}} - T_{CS}^{i_{TX}})) \right)$$

$\eta_{L-LTF,k}$ is a PPDU format dependent scaling factor for the L-LTF field on subcarrier index k with the same value as $\eta_{L-STF,k}$.

ε is a power scaling factor with the value $\varepsilon = \sqrt{\frac{N_{L-LTF}^{\text{Tone}}}{N_{L-SIG}^{\text{Tone}}}}$

$T_{GI,L-LTF}$ is given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

$$K_{Shift}(i) = (N_{20\text{MHz}} - 1 - 2i) \cdot 32$$

$T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for transmit chain i_{TX} with a value given in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).

N_{L-LTF}^{Tone} has the value given in Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields).

$L_{k,20}$ is defined as $L_{-26,26}$ in Equation (17-8).

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, the time domain representation of the L-LTF field shall be as specified in Equation (27-10). The equation applies to all contiguous signals up to 160 MHz and non contiguous 80+80 MHz.

$$r_{L-LTF}^{(i_{seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{\varepsilon}{\sqrt{N_{STS} \cdot N_{L-LTF}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{L-LTF}}(t) \quad (27-10)$$

$$\sum_{i_{BW}=0}^{N_{20\text{MHz}}-1} \sum_{k=-26}^{26} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS}} \eta_{L-LTF,k} \left(\left[Q_k^{(i_{seg})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^{4(k-K_{Shift}(i_{BW}))} \right]_{m, 1} L_{k, 20} \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k-K_{Shift}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - T_{GI, L-LTF} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m))) \right)$$

where

$T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream m as defined in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields)

$Q_k^{(i_{seg})}$ is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

$A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k$ is defined in Equation (27-55)

27.3.10.5 L-SIG

The L-SIG field is used to communicate rate and length information. The structure of the L-SIG field is defined in Figure 17-5 (SIGNAL field bit assignment).

In an HE PPDU, the RATE field shall be set to the value representing 6 Mb/s in the 20 MHz channel spacing column of Table 17-6 (Contents of the SIGNAL field). In a non-HT duplicate PPDU, the RATE field is defined in 17.3.4.2 (RATE field) using the L_DATARATE parameter in the TXVECTOR.

For an HE TB PPDU, the LENGTH field is set to the TXVECTOR parameter L_LENGTH. For an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU, the LENGTH field is set to the value given by the Equation (27-11).

$$\text{Length} = \left\lceil \frac{\text{TXTIME-SignalExtension}-20}{4} \right\rceil \times 3 - 3 - m \quad (27-11)$$

where

1 TXTIME (in μs) is defined in 27.4.3 (TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation).
 2 m is 1 for an HE MU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, and 2 otherwise
 3
 4 *SignalExtension* is 0 μs if the TXVECTOR parameter NO_SIG_EXTN is true and is aSignalExtension as
 5 defined in Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics) if the TXVECTOR parameter
 6 NO_SIG_EXTN is false
 7

8
 9 In a non-HT duplicate PPDU, the LENGTH field is defined in 17.3.4.3 (LENGTH field) using the
 10 L_LENGTH parameter in the TXVECTOR.
 11

12 The Reserved (R) field shall be set to 0.
 13

14
 15 The Parity (P) field has the even parity of bits 0-16.
 16

17
 18 The SIGNAL TAIL field shall be set to 0.
 19

20
 21 The L-SIG field shall be encoded, interleaved, and mapped following the steps described in 17.3.5.6 (Con-
 22 volutional encoder), 17.3.5.7 (Data interleaving), and 17.3.5.8 (Subcarrier modulation mapping). The stream
 23 of 48 complex numbers generated by these steps is denoted by $d_k, k = 0, \dots, 47$ and are mapped to subcar-
 24 riers [-26, 26]. In addition, values [-1, -1, -1, 1] are mapped to the extra subcarriers [-28, -27, 27, 28] of
 25 the L-SIG field of a 20 MHz HE PPDU. Subcarriers [-28, -27, 27, 28] are also BPSK modulated. Pilots
 26 shall be inserted as described in 17.3.5.9 (Pilot subcarriers).
 27

28
 29 If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, the time domain waveform of the L-
 30 SIG field, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as given by Equation (27-
 31 12).
 32

$$r_{\text{L-SIG}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{\text{TX}} \cdot N_{\text{L-SIG}}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{\text{L-SIG}}}(t) \quad (27-12)$$

$$\sum_{i_{\text{BW}} \in \Omega_{\text{20MHz}}} \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \left(\gamma_{(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}})), \text{BW}} \eta_{\text{L-SIG}, k} (D_{k, 20} + p_0 P_k) \right. \\ \left. \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}})) \Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}} - T_{CS}^{i_{\text{TX}}})) \right)$$

33
 34 where
 35

36 $\eta_{\text{L-SIG}, k}$ is a PPDU dependent scaling factor for the L-SIG field on the subcarrier k defined as follows:
 37

$$\eta_{\text{L-SIG}, k} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}, & k = \pm 28, \pm 27 \text{ for an HE ER SU PPDU} \\ \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1 \right], & \text{for an HE TB PPDU} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

38
 39 $T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}}$ is given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)
 40

$$K_{\text{Shift}}(i) = (N_{\text{20MHz}} - 1 - 2i) \cdot 32$$

$$D_{k, 20} = \begin{cases} 0, & k = 0, \pm 7, \pm 21 \\ -1, & k = -28, -27, 27 \\ 1, & k = 28 \\ d_{M_{20}(k)}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$M_{20}^r(k) = \begin{cases} k + 26, & -26 \leq k \leq -22 \\ k + 25, & -20 \leq k \leq -8 \\ k + 24, & -6 \leq k \leq -1 \\ k + 23, & 1 \leq k \leq 6 \\ k + 22, & 8 \leq k \leq 20 \\ k + 21, & 22 \leq k \leq 26 \end{cases}$$

P_k is defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation)

p_0 is the first pilot value in the sequence defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation)

$N_{\text{L-SIG}}^{\text{Tone}}$ is defined in Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields)

$T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for transmit chain i_{TX} with a value given in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).

NOTE— $M_{20}^r(k)$ is a “reverse” function of the function $M(k)$ defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation).

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, the time domain waveform of the L-SIG field, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as given by Equation (27-13).

$$r_{\text{L-SIG}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{\text{STS}} \cdot N_{\text{L-SIG}}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{\text{L-SIG}}}(t) \quad (27-13)$$

$$\sum_{i_{BW}=0}^{N_{20\text{MHz}}-1} \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\text{STS}}} \left[Q_{4(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^{4(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))} \right]_{m, 1} \eta_{\text{L-SIG}, k}(D_{k, 20} + p_0 P_k) \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k-K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m)))$$

where

$T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream m as defined in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields)

$Q_k^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

$A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k$ is defined in Equation (27-55)

27.3.10.6 RL-SIG

The RL-SIG field is a repeat of the L-SIG field and is used to differentiate an HE PPDU from a non-HT PPDU, HT PPDU, and VHT PPDU.

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, the time domain waveform of the RL-SIG field, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as given by Equation (27-14).

$$r_{\text{RL-SIG}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{\text{TX}} \cdot N_{\text{RL-SIG}}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{\text{RL-SIG}}}(t) \sum_{i_{\text{BW}} \in \Omega_{20\text{MHz}}} \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \left(\begin{array}{l} \Upsilon_{(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}})), \text{BW}} \eta_{\text{L-SIG}, k}(D_{k, 20} + p_1 P_k) \\ \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}} - T_{CS}^{i_{\text{TX}}})) \end{array} \right) \quad (27-14)$$

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, the time domain waveform of the RL-SIG field, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as given by Equation (27-15).

$$r_{\text{RL-SIG}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{\text{STS}} \cdot N_{\text{RL-SIG}}^{\text{Tone}}}} w_{T_{\text{RL-SIG}}}(t) \sum_{i_{\text{BW}}=0}^{N_{\text{20MHz}}-1} \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\text{STS}}} \left(\begin{array}{l} \left[Q_{4(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}}))} \right]_{i_{\text{TX}}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^{4(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}}))} \right]_{m, 1} \eta_{\text{L-SIG}, k}(D_{k, 20} + p_1 P_k) \\ \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{\text{BW}}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m))) \end{array} \right) \quad (27-15)$$

where

p_1 is the second pilot value in the sequence defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation)

Other variables are defined below Equation (27-1), Equation (27-3), Equation (27-4), Equation (27-6), Equation (27-8) and Equation (27-12)

27.3.10.7 HE-SIG-A

27.3.10.7.1 General

The HE-SIG-A field carries information necessary to interpret HE PPDUs. The integer fields of the HE-SIG-A field are transmitted in unsigned binary format, LSB first, where the LSB is in the lowest numbered bit position.

27.3.10.7.2 Content

The HE-SIG-A field for an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU PPDU contains the fields listed in Table 27-18 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU).

Table 27-18—HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
HE-SIG-A1	B0	Format	1	Differentiate an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU from an HE TB PPDU: Set to 1 for an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU

Table 27-18—HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B1	Beam Change	1	<p>Set to 1 to indicate that the pre-HE modulated fields of the PPDU may be spatially mapped differently from the first symbol of the HE-LTF. Equation (27-6), Equation (27-9), Equation (27-12), Equation (27-14), Equation (27-16) and Equation (27-18) apply if the Beam Change field is 1.</p> <p>Set to 0 to indicate that the pre-HE modulated fields of the PPDU are spatially mapped the same way as the first symbol of the HE-LTF on each subcarrier. Equation (27-8), Equation (27-10), Equation (27-13), Equation (27-15), Equation (27-17) and Equation (27-19) apply if the Beam Change field is 0.</p>
	B2	UL/DL	1	Indicates whether the PPDU is sent UL or DL. Set to the value indicated by the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG.
	B3-B6	HE-MCS	4	<p>For an HE SU PPDU: Set to n for HE-MCS n, where $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 11$ Values 12-15 are reserved</p> <p>For an HE ER SU PPDU with Bandwidth field set to 0 (242-tone RU): Set to n for HE-MCS n, where $n = 0, 1, 2$ Values 3-15 are reserved</p> <p>For an HE ER SU PPDU with Bandwidth field set to 1 (upper frequency 106-tone RU): Set to 0 for HE-MCS 0 Values 1-15 are reserved</p>
	B7	DCM	1	<p>Indicates whether or not DCM is applied to the Data field for the HE-MCS indicated. See Table 27-19 (Interpretation of DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size sub-fields) for the interpretation of this field.</p> <p>NOTE—DCM is applicable to only HE-MCSs 0, 1, 3 and 4. DCM is applicable to only 1 and 2 spatial streams.</p>
	B8-B13	BSS Color	6	<p>The BSS Color field is an identifier of the BSS.</p> <p>Set to the value of the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR.</p>
	B14	Reserved	1	Reserved and set to 1
	B15-B18	Spatial Reuse	4	<p>Indicates whether or not spatial reuse modes are allowed during the transmission of this PPDU and if SRP spatial reuse is allowed, indicates a value that is used to determine a limit on the transmit power of the SRPT PPDU.</p> <p>Set to a value from Table 27-22 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU), see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE) and 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).</p>

Table 27-18—HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B19-B20	Bandwidth	2	<p>For an HE SU PPDU:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 20 MHz Set to 1 for 40 MHz Set to 2 for 80 MHz Set to 3 for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz <p>For an HE ER SU PPDU:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for 242-tone RU Set to 1 for upper frequency 106-tone RU within the primary 20 MHz Values 2 and 3 are reserved
	B21-B22	GI+LTF Size	2	Indicates the GI duration and HE-LTF size. See Table 27-19 (Interpretation of DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size subfields) for the interpretation of this field.
	B23-B25	NSTS And Midamble Periodicity	3	<p>If the Doppler field is 0, indicates the number of space-time streams.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to the number of space-time streams minus 1 <p>For an HE ER SU PPDU, values 2 to 7 are reserved</p> <p>If the Doppler field is 1, then B23-B24 indicates the number of space time streams, up to 4, and B25 indicates the midamble periodicity.</p> <p>B23-B24 is set to the number of space time streams minus 1.</p> <p>For an HE ER SU PPDU, values 2 and 3 are reserved</p> <p>B25 is set to 0 if TXVECTOR parameter MIDAMBLE_PERIODICITY is 10 and set to 1 if TXVECTOR parameter MIDAMBLE_PERIODICITY is 20.</p>
HE-SIG-A2 (HE SU PPDU) or HE-SIG-A3 (HE ER SU PPDU)	B0-B6	TXOP	7	<p>Set to 127 to indicate no duration information if TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is set to UNSPECIFIED.</p> <p>Set to a value less than 127 to indicate duration information for NAV setting and protection of the TXOP as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is less than 512, then B0 is set to 0 and B1-B6 is set to $\text{floor}(\text{TXOP_DURATION}/8)$. Otherwise, B0 is set to 1 and B1-B6 is set to $\text{floor}((\text{TXOP_DURATION} - 512) / 128)$. <p>where</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> B0 indicates the TXOP length granularity. Set to 0 for 8 μs; otherwise set to 1 for 128 μs. B1-B6 indicates the scaled value of the TXOP_DURATION
	B7	Coding	1	Indicates whether BCC or LDPC is used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 to indicate BCC Set to 1 to indicate LDPC

Table 27-18—HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B8	LDPC Extra Symbol Segment	1	<p>Indicates the presence of the extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 1 if an extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC is present Set to 0 if an extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC is not present <p>Reserved and set to 1 if the Coding field is 0.</p>
	B9	STBC	1	Indicates whether or not STBC is applied to the Data field. See Table 27-19 (Interpretation of DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size subfields) for the interpretation of this field.
	B10	Beamformed	1	<p>Set to 1 if a beamforming steering matrix is applied to the waveform in an SU transmission.</p> <p>Set to 0 otherwise.</p>
	B11-B12	Pre-FEC Padding Factor	2	<p>Indicates the pre-FEC padding factor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 4 Set to 1 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 1 Set to 2 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 2 Set to 3 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 3
	B13	PE Disambiguity	1	Indicates PE disambiguity as defined in 27.3.12 (Packet extension).
	B14	Reserved	1	Reserved and set to 1
	B15	Doppler	1	<p>Set to 1 if one of the following applies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — The number of OFDM symbols in the Data field is larger than the signaled midamble periodicity plus 1 and the midamble is present — The number of OFDM symbols in the Data field is less than or equal to the signaled midamble periodicity plus 1 (see 27.3.11.16 (Midambles)), the midamble is not present, but the channel is fast varying. It recommends that midamble may be used for the PPDUs of the reverse link. <p>Set to 0 otherwise.</p>
	B16-B19	CRC	4	CRC for bits 0–41 of the HE-SIG-A field (see 27.3.10.7.3 (CRC computation)). Bits 0–41 of the HE-SIG-A field correspond to bits 0–25 of HE-SIG-A1 followed by bits 0–15 of HE-SIG-A2).
	B20-B25	Tail	6	Used to terminate the trellis of the convolutional decoder. Set to 0.

1 For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, the DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size subfields in the HE-SIG-A
 2 field are interpreted as defined in Table 27-19 (Interpretation of DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size subfields).
 3
 4

5 **Table 27-19—Interpretation of DCM, STBC and GI+LTF Size subfields**

Subfields in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU (see Table 27-18 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU))			Interpretation		
DCM	STBC	GI+LTF Size	DCM Applied	STBC Applied	GI+LTF size
0	0	0	No	No	1x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI
		1			2x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI
		2			2x HE-LTF and 1.6 µs GI
		3			4x HE-LTF and 3.2 µs GI
1	0	0	Yes	No	1x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI
		1			2x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI
		2			2x HE-LTF and 1.6 µs GI
		3			4x HE-LTF and 3.2 µs GI
0	1	0	No	Yes	1x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI
		1			2x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI
		2			2x HE-LTF and 1.6 µs GI
		3			4x HE-LTF and 3.2 µs GI
1	1	0–2	Reserved		
		3	No	No	4x HE-LTF and 0.8 µs GI

The HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU contains the fields listed in Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU).

Table 27-20—HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
HE-SIG-A1	B0	UL/DL	1	<p>Indicates whether the PPDU is sent UL or DL. Set to the value indicated by the TXVECTOR parameter UPLINK_FLAG.</p> <p>NOTE—The TDLS peer can identify the TDLS frame by To DS and From DS fields in the MAC header of the frame.</p>
	B1-B3	HE-SIG-B HE-MCS	3	<p>Indicates the HE-MCS of the HE-SIG-B field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0 for HE-MCS 0 Set to 1 for HE-MCS 1 Set to 2 for HE-MCS 2 Set to 3 for HE-MCS 3 Set to 4 for HE-MCS 4 Set to 5 for HE-MCS 5 The values 6 and 7 are reserved
	B4	HE-SIG-B DCM	1	<p>Set to 1 indicates that the HE-SIG-B is modulated with DCM for the HE-MCS.</p> <p>Set to 0 indicates that the HE-SIG-B is not modulated with DCM for the HE-MCS.</p> <p>NOTE—DCM is only applicable to HE-MCS 0, 1, 3, and 4.</p>
	B5-B10	BSS Color	6	<p>The BSS Color field is an identifier of the BSS.</p> <p>Set to the value of the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR.</p>
	B11-B14	Spatial Reuse	4	<p>Indicates whether or not spatial reuse modes are allowed during the transmission of this PPDU and if SRP spatial reuse is allowed, indicates a value that is used to determine a limit on the transmit power of the SRPT PPDU.</p> <p>Set to the value of the SPATIAL_REUSE parameter of the TXVECTOR, which contains a value from Table 27-22 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU) (see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE)) and 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).</p>

Table 27-20—HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B15-B17	Bandwidth	3	<p>Set to 0 for 20 MHz. Set to 1 for 40 MHz. Set to 2 for 80 MHz non-preamble puncturing mode. Set to 3 for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz non-preamble puncturing mode.</p> <p>If the HE-SIG-B Compression field is 0: Set to 4 for preamble puncturing in 80 MHz, where in the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz is punctured. Set to 5 for preamble puncturing in 80 MHz, where in the preamble only one of the two 20 MHz sub-channels in secondary 40 MHz is punctured. Set to 6 for preamble puncturing in 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz, where in the primary 80 MHz of the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz is punctured. Set to 7 for preamble puncturing in 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz, where in the primary 80 MHz of the preamble the primary 40 MHz is present, and at least one 20 MHz subchannel that is not in the primary 40 MHz is punctured.</p> <p>If the HE-SIG-B Compression field is 1 then values 4–7 are reserved.</p>
	B18-B21	Number Of HE-SIG-B Symbols Or MU-MIMO Users	4	<p>If the HE-SIG-B Compression field is 0, indicates the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field: Set to the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field minus 1 if the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field is less than 16; Set to 15 to indicate that the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field is equal to 16 if Longer Than 16 HE-SIG-B OFDM Symbols Support subfield of the HE Capabilities element transmitted by at least one recipient STA is 0; Set to 15 to indicate that the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field is greater than or equal to 16 if the Longer Than 16 HE-SIG-B OFDM Symbols Support subfield of the HE Capabilities element transmitted by all the recipient STAs are 1 and if the HE-SIG-B HE-MCS field is set to 0, 1, 2, or 3 regardless of the value of the HE-SIG-B DCM field, or the HE-SIG-B HE-MCS field is set to 4 and the HE-SIG-B DCM field is set to 1. The exact number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field is calculated based on the number of User fields in the HE-SIG-B content channel, which is indicated by HE-SIG-B Common field in this case.</p> <p>If the HE-SIG-B Compression field is 1, indicates the number of MU-MIMO users and is set to the number of MU-MIMO users minus 1.</p>
	B22	HE-SIG-B Compression	1	Set to 0 if the Common field in HE-SIG-B is present. Set to 1 if the Common field in HE-SIG-B is not present.

Table 27-20—HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B23-B24	GI+LTF Size	2	Indicates the GI duration and HE-LTF size: Set to 0 to indicate a 4x HE-LTF and 0.8 μ s GI Set to 1 to indicate a 2x HE-LTF and 0.8 μ s GI Set to 2 to indicate a 2x HE-LTF and 1.6 μ s GI Set to 3 to indicate a 4x HE-LTF and 3.2 μ s GI
	B25	Doppler	1	Set to 1 if one of the following applies: — The number of OFDM symbols in the Data field is larger than the signaled midamble periodicity plus 1 and the midamble is present — The number of OFDM symbols in the Data field is less than or equal to the signaled midamble periodicity plus 1 (see 27.3.11.16 (Midambles)), the midamble is not present, but the channel is fast varying. It recommends that midamble may be used for the PPDUs of the reverse link. Set to 0 otherwise.
HE-SIG-A2	B0-B6	TXOP	7	Set to 127 to indicate no duration information if TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is UNSPECIFIED. Set to a value less than 127 to indicate duration information for NAV setting and protection of the TXOP as follows: If TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is less than 512, then B0 is set to 0 and B1-B6 is set to floor(TXOP_DURATION/8). Otherwise, B0 is set to 1 and B1-B6 is set to floor ((TXOP_DURATION – 512) / 128). where B0 indicates the TXOP length granularity. Set to 0 for 8 μ s; otherwise set to 1 for 128 μ s. B1-B6 indicates the scaled value of the TXOP_DURATION
	B7	Reserved	1	Reserved and set to 1

Table 27-20—HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B8-B10	Number of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Periodicity	3	If the Doppler field is 0, indicates the number of HE-LTF symbols: Set to 0 for 1 HE-LTF symbol Set to 1 for 2 HE-LTF symbols Set to 2 for 4 HE-LTF symbols Set to 3 for 6 HE-LTF symbols Set to 4 for 8 HE-LTF symbols Other values are reserved. If the Doppler field is 1, B8–B9 indicates the number of HE-LTF symbols and B10 indicates midamble periodicity: B8-B9 is encoded as follows: 0 indicates 1 HE-LTF symbol 1 indicates 2 HE-LTF symbols 2 indicates 4 HE-LTF symbols 3 is reserved B10 is set to 0 to indicate 10 symbols midamble periodicity and set to 1 to indicate 20 symbols midamble periodicity.
	B11	LDPC Extra Symbol Segment	1	Indication of the presence of the extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC. Set to 1 if an extra OFDM symbol segment for LDPC is present. Set to 0 otherwise.
	B12	STBC	1	In an HE MU PPDU where each RU includes no more than 1 user, set to 1 to indicate all RUs are STBC encoded in the payload, set to 0 to indicate all RUs are not STBC encoded in the payload. STBC does not apply to HE-SIG-B.
	B13-B14	Pre-FEC Padding Factor	2	Indicates the pre-FEC padding factor. Set to 0 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 4 Set to 1 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 1 Set to 2 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 2 Set to 3 to indicate a pre-FEC padding factor of 3
	B15	PE Disambiguity	1	Indicates PE disambiguity as defined in 27.3.12 (Packet extension).
	B16-B19	CRC	4	CRC for bits 0-41 of the HE-SIG-A field (see 27.3.10.7.3 (CRC computation)). Bits 0-41 of the HE-SIG-A field correspond to bits 0-25 of HE-SIG-A1 followed by bits 0-15 of HE-SIG-A2).
	B20-B25	Tail	6	Used to terminate the trellis of the convolutional decoder. Set to 0.

It is optional for an HE STA to receive a preamble punctured HE MU PPDU with the Bandwidth field in HE-SIG-A in the range of 4 to 7. An HE STA indicates that it is capable of receiving a preamble punctured HE MU PPDU with the Bandwidth field of HE-SIG-A field in the range of 4 to 7 using the Punctured Pre-

amble Rx subfield in the HE PHY Capabilities Information field in the HE Capabilities element (see 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)).

The HE-SIG-A field for an HE TB PPDU contains the fields listed in Table 27-21 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU).

Table 27-21—HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
HE-SIG-A1	B0	Format	1	Differentiate an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU from an HE TB PPDU: Set to 0 for an HE TB PPDU
	B1-B6	BSS Color	6	The BSS Color field is an identifier of the BSS. Set to the value of the TXVECTOR parameter BSS_COLOR.
	B7-B10	Spatial Reuse 1	4	Indicates whether or not specific spatial reuse modes are allowed in a subband of the PPDU during the transmission of this PPDU, and if SRP spatial reuse is allowed, indicates a value that is used to determine a limit on the transmit power of the SRPT PPDU. If the Bandwidth field indicates 20 MHz, 40 MHz, or 80 MHz then this Spatial Reuse field applies to the first 20 MHz subband. If the Bandwidth field indicates 160/80+80 MHz then this Spatial Reuse field applies to the first 40 MHz subband of the 160 MHz operating band. Set to the value of the SPATIAL_REUSE(1) parameter of the TXVECTOR, which contains a value from Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU) for an HE TB PPDU (see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE) and 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation)).

Table 27-21—HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B11-B14	Spatial Reuse 2	4	<p>Indicates whether or not specific spatial reuse modes are allowed in a subband of the PPDU during the transmission of this PPDU, and if SRP spatial reuse is allowed, indicates a value that is used to determine a limit on the transmit power of the SRPT PPDU.</p> <p>If the Bandwidth field indicates 40 MHz or 80 MHz: This Spatial Reuse field applies to the second 20 MHz subband. If the STA operating channel width is 20 MHz, then this field is set to the same value as the Spatial Reuse 1 field. If the STA operating channel width is 40 MHz in the 2.4 GHz band, this field is set to the same value as the Spatial Reuse 1 field.</p> <p>If the Bandwidth field indicates 160/80+80 MHz the this Spatial Reuse field applies to the second 40 MHz subband of the 160 MHz operating band.</p> <p>Set to the value of the SPATIAL_REUSE(2) parameter of the TXVECTOR, which contains a value from Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU) for an HE TB PPDU (see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE) and 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation)).</p>
	B15-B18	Spatial Reuse 3	4	<p>Indicates whether or not specific spatial reuse modes are allowed in a subband of the PPDU during the transmission of this PPDU, and if SRP spatial reuse is allowed, indicates a value that is used to determine a limit on the transmit power of the SRPT PPDU.</p> <p>If the Bandwidth field indicates 80 MHz: This Spatial Reuse field applies to the third 20 MHz subband. If the STA operating channel width is 20 MHz or 40 MHz, this field is set to the same value as the Spatial Reuse 1 field.</p> <p>If the Bandwidth field indicates 160/80+80 MHz: This Spatial Reuse field applies to the third 40 MHz subband of the 160 MHz operating band. If the STA operating channel width is 80+80 MHz, this field is set to the same value as the Spatial Reuse 1 field.</p> <p>Set to the value of the SPATIAL_REUSE(3) parameter of the TXVECTOR, which contains a value from Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU) for an HE TB PPDU (see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE) and 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation)).</p>

Table 27-21—HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B19-B22	Spatial Reuse 4	4	<p>Indicates whether or not specific spatial reuse modes are allowed in a subband of the PPDU during the transmission of this PPDU, and if SRP spatial reuse is allowed, indicates a value that is used to determine a limit on the transmit power of the SRPT PPDU.</p> <p>If the Bandwidth field indicates 80 MHz: This Spatial Reuse field applies to the fourth 20 MHz subband. If the STA operating channel width is 20 MHz, then this field is set to the same value as the Spatial Reuse 1 field. If the STA operating channel width is 40 MHz, then this field is set to the same value as the Spatial Reuse 2 field.</p> <p>If the Bandwidth field indicates 160/80+80 MHz: This Spatial Reuse field applies to the fourth 40 MHz subband of the 160 MHz operating band. If the STA operating channel width is 80+80 MHz, then this field is set to same value as the Spatial Reuse 2 field.</p> <p>Set to the value of the SPATIAL_REUSE(4) parameter of the TXVECTOR, which contains a value from Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU) for an HE TB PPDU (see 26.11.6 (SPATIAL_REUSE) and 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation)).</p>
	B23	Reserved	1	<p>Reserved and set to 1.</p> <p>NOTE—Unlike other Reserved fields in HE-SIG-A of the HE TB PPDU, B23 does not have a corresponding bit in the Trigger frame.</p>
	B24-B25	Bandwidth	2	<p>Set to 0 for 20 MHz Set to 1 for 40 MHz Set to 2 for 80 MHz Set to 3 for 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz</p>
HE-SIG-A2	B0-B6	TXOP	7	<p>Set to 127 to indicate no duration information if TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is UNSPECIFIED.</p> <p>Set to a value less than 127 to indicate duration information for NAV setting and protection of the TXOP as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If TXVECTOR parameter TXOP_DURATION is less than 512, then B0 is set to 0 and B1-B6 is set to floor(TXOP_DURATION/8). Otherwise, B0 is set to 1 and B1-B6 is set to floor ((TXOP_DURATION – 512) / 128). <p>where</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> B0 indicates the TXOP length granularity. Set to 0 for 8 μs; otherwise set to 1 for 128 μs. B1-B6 indicates the scaled value of the TXOP_DURATION

Table 27-21—HE-SIG-A field of an HE TB PPDU (continued)

Two Parts of HE-SIG-A	Bit	Field	Number of bits	Description
	B7-B15	Reserved	9	Reserved and set to value indicated in the UL HE-SIG-A2 Reserved subfield in the Trigger frame.
	B16-B19	CRC	4	CRC of bits 0–41 of the HE-SIG-A field. See 27.3.10.7.3 (CRC computation). Bits 0–41 of the HE-SIG-A field correspond to bits 0–25 of HE-SIG-A1 followed by bits 0–15 of HE-SIG-A2).
	B20-B25	Tail	6	Used to terminate the trellis of the convolutional decoder. Set to 0.

The four Spatial Reuse fields, 1, 2, 3, and 4, are arranged in increasing order of frequency and correspond to:

- For 20 MHz one Spatial Reuse field corresponding to the entire 20 MHz (other 3 fields indicate identical values). The Spatial Reuse fields only apply to the 20 MHz used for the transmission.
- For 40 MHz two Spatial Reuse fields with Spatial Reuse 3 field identical in value to the Spatial Reuse 1 field and Spatial Reuse 4 field identical in value to Spatial Reuse 2 field. The Spatial Reuse fields only apply to the 20 MHz used for the transmission.
- For 80 MHz four Spatial Reuse fields, one for each 20 MHz subchannel
 - For an OFDMA transmission of a given BW, each of the Spatial Reuse fields that corresponds to a 20 MHz sub-band is also applicable to the 242-tone RU that is most closely aligned in frequency (in the tone plan for that BW) with the aforementioned 20 MHz sub-band. The correspondence from an Spatial Reuse field to a 242-tone RU also holds for any RU within the 242-tone RU. The above also implies that a 20 MHz OBSS STA uses the Spatial Reuse field corresponding to its 20 MHz channel, a 40 MHz OBSS STA located on the lower frequency half of the 80 MHz BSS uses Spatial Reuse 1 field, Spatial Reuse 2 field values and a 40 MHz OBSS STA located on the upper frequency half of the 80 MHz BSS uses Spatial Reuse 3 field, Spatial Reuse 4 field values
- For 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz four Spatial Reuse fields, one for each 40 MHz subchannel
 - For an OFDMA transmission of a given BW, each of the Spatial Reuse fields that corresponds to a 40 MHz sub-band is also applicable to the 484-tone RU that is most closely aligned in frequency (in the tone-plan of that BW) with the aforementioned 40 MHz sub-band. The correspondence from an Spatial Reuse field to a 484-tone RU also holds for any RU within the 484-tone RU.

Table 27-22 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU) defines the encoding for the Spatial Reuse field for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU.

Table 27-22—Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE MU PPDU

Value	Meaning
0	SRP_DISALLOW
1-12	Reserved

1 **Table 27-22—Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, and HE
2 MU PPDU (continued)**

Value	Meaning
13	SR_RESTRICTED
14	SR_DELAYED
15	SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED

14 Table 27-23 (Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU) defines the encoding for the Spatial Reuse
15 1, Spatial Reuse 2, Spatial Reuse 3 and Spatial Reuse 4 fields for an HE TB PPDU

19 **Table 27-23—Spatial Reuse field encoding for an HE TB PPDU**

Value	Meaning
0	SRP_DISALLOW
1	SRP = -80 dBm
2	SRP = -74 dBm
3	SRP = -68 dBm
4	SRP = -62 dBm
5	SRP = -56 dBm
6	SRP = -50 dBm
7	SRP = -47 dBm
8	SRP = -44 dBm
9	SRP = -41 dBm
10	SRP = -38 dBm
11	SRP = -35 dBm
12	SRP = -32 dBm
13	SRP = -29 dBm
14	SRP ≥ -26 dBm
15	SRP_AND_NON_SRG_OBSS_PD_PROHIBITED

55 27.3.10.7.3 CRC computation

57 The CRC computation defined in this subclause applies to HE-SIG-A, the Common field of HE-SIG-B, and
58 the User Block field of HE-SIG-B.

61 The CRC is calculated over bits 0 to 41 of the HE-SIG-A field and over bits 0 to L of the HE-SIG-B field
62 ($L = x$ for each Common field where $x = N \times 8$ if the Center 26-tone RU field is present, and $x = N \times 8 - 1$
63 otherwise, and $L = 20$ for an User Block field that contains one User field and $L = 41$ for an User Block field
64 that contains two User fields). Bits 0 to 41 of the HE-SIG-A field correspond to bits 0–25 of HE-SIG-A1 fol-

lowed by bits 0-15 of HE-SIG-A2). Refer to Table 27-24 (Common field) for N and the conditions under which the Center 26-tone RU field is present.

The value of the CRC field shall be the 1s complement of

$$crc(D) = (M(D) + I(D))D^8 \bmod G(D)$$

where

$$M(D) = \sum_{i=0}^L m_{L-i} D^i$$

$$I(D) = \sum_{i=1}^L D^i$$

$G(D)$ is defined in 19.3.9.4.4 (CRC calculation for HT-SIG)

$$crc(D) = c_0D^7 + c_1D^6 + \dots + c_6D + c_7$$

m_I is the serial input shown in Figure 27-24 (CRC calculation)

The CRC field is transmitted from $c4$ to $c7$ with $c7$ first.

Figure 27-24 (CRC calculation) shows the operation of the CRC. First, the shift register is reset to all 1s. The bits are then passed through the XOR operation at the input. When the last bit has entered, the output is generated by shifting the bits out of the shift register, c_7 first, through an inverter.

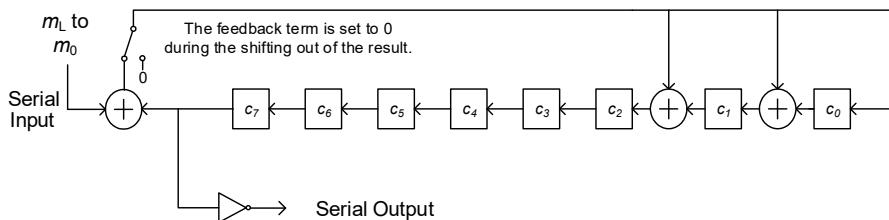


Figure 27-24—CRC calculation

27.3.10.7.4 Encoding and modulation

For an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU, the HE-SIG-A field is composed of two parts, HE-SIG-A1 and HE-SIG-A2, each containing 26 data bits. HE-SIG-A1 is transmitted before HE-SIG-A2. The data bits of the HE-SIG-A OFDM symbols shall be BCC encoded at rate, $R = 1/2$, interleaved, mapped to a BPSK constellation, and have pilots inserted following the steps described in 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder), 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers), 17.3.5.8 (Subcarrier modulation mapping), and 17.3.5.9 (Pilot subcarriers), respectively. The constellation mappings of HE-SIG-A in HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU are shown in Figure 27-25 (Data subcarrier constellation of HE-SIG-A symbols). The first and second half of the stream of 104 complex numbers generated by these steps (before pilot insertion) is divided into two groups of 52 complex numbers, where respectively, the first 52 complex numbers form the first OFDM symbol of HE-SIG-A and the second 52 complex numbers form the second OFDM symbol of HE-SIG-A.

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, the time domain waveform for the HE-SIG-A field of an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE TB PPDU, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as specified in Equation (27-16).

$$r_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{TX} \cdot N_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{\text{Tone}}}} \sum_{n=0}^1 w_{T_{SYML}}(t - nT_{SYML}) \sum_{i_{BW} \in \Omega_{20\text{MHz}}} \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \eta_{\text{HE-SIG-A}, k} \left(\begin{array}{l} \Upsilon_{(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}), \text{BW})} (D_{k, n, 20} + p_{n+2}P_k) \\ \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - nT_{SYML} - T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}} - T_{CS}^{i_{TX}})) \end{array} \right) \quad (27-16)$$

where

T_{SYML} is given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

$$K_{\text{Shift}}(i) = (N_{20\text{MHz}} - 1 - 2i) \cdot 32$$

$$D_{k, n, 20} = \begin{cases} 0, k = 0, \pm 7, \pm 21 \\ d_{M'_{20}(k), n}, \text{ otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$M'_{20}(k) = \begin{cases} k + 28, -28 \leq k \leq -22 \\ k + 27, -20 \leq k \leq -8 \\ k + 26, -6 \leq k \leq -1 \\ k + 25, 1 \leq k \leq 6 \\ k + 24, 8 \leq k \leq 20 \\ k + 23, 22 \leq k \leq 28 \end{cases}$$

$$\eta_{\text{HE-SIG-A}, k} = \begin{cases} \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1 \right], \text{ for an HE TB PPDU} \\ 1, \text{ otherwise} \end{cases}$$

P_k and p_n are defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation)

$N_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{\text{Tone}}$ is defined in Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values for HE PPDU fields)

$T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for transmit chain i_{TX} with a value given in 27.3.10.2.1 (Cyclic shift for pre-HE modulated fields).

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, the time domain waveform of the HE-SIG-A field shall be as given by Equation (27-17).

$$r_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{STS} \cdot N_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{\text{Tone}}}} \sum_{n=0}^1 w_{T_{SYML}}(t - nT_{SYML}) \sum_{i_{BW}=0}^{N_{20\text{MHz}}-1} \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS}} \left(\begin{array}{l} \left[Q_{4(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}), i_{Seg})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^{4(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))} \right]_{m, 1} (D_{k, n, 20} + p_{n+2}P_k) \\ \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - nT_{SYML} - T_{GI, \text{Pre-HE}} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(m))) \end{array} \right) \quad (27-17)$$

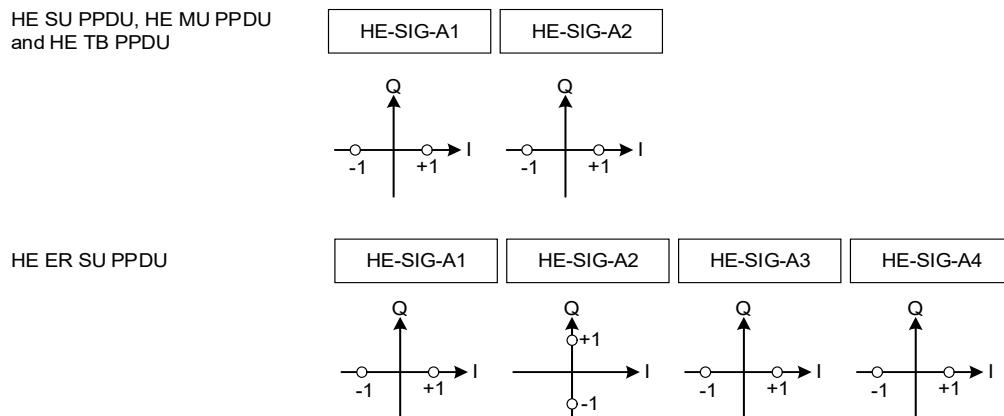
1 where

2 $T_{CS, HE}(m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream m as defined in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for
3 HE modulated fields)

4 $Q_k^{(i_{seg})}$ is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

5 A_{HE-LTF}^k is defined in Equation (27-55)

6 For an HE ER SU PPDU, the HE-SIG-A field is composed of four parts, i.e. HE-SIG-A1, HE-SIG-A2, HE-
7 SIG-A3 and HE-SIG-A4, each part containing 26 data bits. These four parts are transmitted sequentially
8 from HE-SIG-A1 to HE-SIG-A4. The data bits of HE-SIG-A1 and HE-SIG-A3 shall be BCC encoded at
9 rate, $R = 1/2$, interleaved, mapped to a BPSK constellation, and have pilots inserted. HE-SIG-A2 has the
10 same encoded bits as HE-SIG-A1 and the encoded bits shall be mapped to a QPSK constellation without
11 interleaving and have pilots inserted. The constellation mappings of the HE-SIG-A field in an HE ER SU
12 PPDU is shown in Figure 27-25 (Data subcarrier constellation of HE-SIG-A symbols). The QPSK constel-
13 lation on HE-SIG-A2 is used to differentiate between an HE ER SU PPDU and an HE MU PPDU when
14 $m = 1$ in Equation (27-11). HE-SIG-A4 has the same encoded bits as HE-SIG-A3 and the encoded bits shall
15 be mapped to a BPSK constellation without interleaving and have pilots inserted. BCC encoding, data inter-
16 leaving, constellation mapping and pilot insertion follow the steps described in 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional
17 encoder), 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers), 17.3.5.8 (Subcarrier modulation mapping), and 17.3.5.9 (Pilot sub-
18 carriers), respectively.



46 **Figure 27-25—Data subcarrier constellation of HE-SIG-A symbols**

47 If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 1 or not present, the time domain waveform for the HE-
48 SIG-A field in an HE ER SU PPDU shall be as specified in Equation (27-18).

$$49 \quad r_{HE-SIG-A}^{(i_{seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{TX} \cdot N_{HE-SIG-A}^{Tone}}} \sum_{n=0}^3 w_{T_{SYML}}(t - nT_{SYML}) \quad (27-18)$$

$$50 \quad \sum_{k=-28}^{28} (R_n D_{k,n,20} + p_{n+2} P_k) \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \cdot \Delta_{F, Pre-HE}(t - nT_{SYML} - T_{GI, Pre-HE} - T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}))$$

51 where

52 R_n is a phase rotation vector defined as [1, j , 1, 1]

If the TXVECTOR parameter BEAM_CHANGE is 0, the time domain waveform for the HE-SIG-A field in an HE ER SU PPDU shall be as specified in Equation (27-19).

$$r_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{(i_{\text{seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{\text{STS}} \cdot N_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}^{\text{Tone}}}} \sum_{n=0}^3 w_{T_{\text{SYML}}}(t - nT_{\text{SYML}}) \sum_{k=-28}^{28} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{\text{STS}}} \left[Q_{4k}^{(i_{\text{seg}})} \right]_{i_{\text{TX}}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTE}}^{4k} \right]_{m, 1} (R_n D_{k, n, 20} + p_{n+2} P_k) \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \cdot \Delta_{F, \text{Pre-HE}}(t - nT_{\text{SYML}} - T_{\text{GI, Pre-HE}} - T_{\text{CS, HE}}(m))) \quad (27-19)$$

27.3.10.8 HE-SIG-B

27.3.10.8.1 General

The HE-SIG-B field provides necessary signalings including the OFDMA and DL MU-MIMO resource allocation information to allow the STAs to look up the corresponding resources to be used in the HE modulated fields of the PPDU. The integer fields of the HE-SIG-B field are transmitted in unsigned binary format, LSB first, where the LSB is in the lowest numbered bit position.

27.3.10.8.2 HE-SIG-B content channels

The HE-SIG-B field of a 20 MHz HE MU PPDU contains one HE-SIG-B content channel. The HE-SIG-B field of an HE MU PPDU that is 40 MHz or wider contains two HE-SIG-B content channels.

The HE-SIG-B content channel format is shown in Figure 27-26 (HE-SIG-B content channel format). The HE-SIG-B content channel consists of a Common field, if present, followed by a User Specific field.

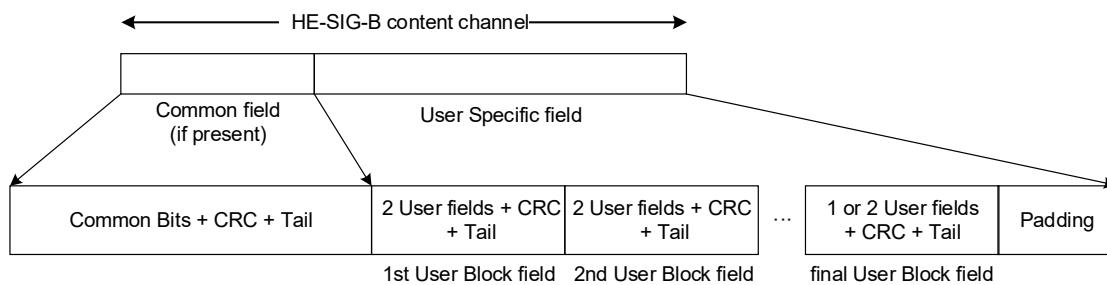


Figure 27-26—HE-SIG-B content channel format

If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 1 (indicating full bandwidth MU-MIMO transmission), the Common field is not present and the HE-SIG-B content channel consists of only the User Specific field. If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 0, the Common field is present in HE-SIG-B content channel.

The Common field of an HE-SIG-B content channel contains information regarding the resource unit allocation such as the RU assignment to be used in the HE modulated fields of the PPDU, the RUs allocated for MU-MIMO and the number of users in MU-MIMO allocations. The Common field is defined in 27.3.10.8.3 (Common field).

The union of the User Specific fields in the HE-SIG-B content channels contains information for all users in the PPDU on how to decode their payload. As shown in Figure 27-26 (HE-SIG-B content channel format),

1 the User Specific field is organized into User Block fields that in turn contain User fields. See 27.3.10.8.4
 2 (User Specific field) for a description of the contents of the User Specific field.
 3

4 See Annex Z for HE-SIG-B content examples.
 5

6 27.3.10.8.3 Common field 7

8 This subclause is not applicable if the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU
 9 PPDU is 1.
 10

11 The Common field format is defined in Table 27-24 (Common field).
 12

13 **Table 27-24—Common field**
 14

15 Subfield	16 Number 17 of subfields	18 Number 19 of bits 20 per 21 subfield	22 Description
23 RU Allocation	24 N	25 8	<p>26 N RU Allocation subfields are present in an HE-SIG-B content channel, where: $N = 1$ if the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field is 0 or 1 (indicating a 20 MHz or 40 MHz HE MU PPDU) $N = 2$ if the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field is 2, 4, or 5 (indicating an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU) $N = 4$ if the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field is 3, 6, or 7 (indicates a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU)</p> <p>27 Each RU Allocation subfield in an HE-SIG-B content channel corresponding to a 20 MHz frequency segment indicates the RU assignment, including the size of the RU(s) and their placement in the frequency domain, to be used in the HE modulated fields of the HE MU PPDU in the frequency domain, also indicates information needed to compute the number of users allocated to each RU, where the subcarrier indices of the RU(s) meet the conditions in Table 27-25 (RUs associated with each RU Allocation subfield for each HE-SIG-B content channel and PPDU bandwidth).</p>
28 Center 26-tone RU	29 0 or 1	30 1	<p>31 The Center 26-tone RU field is present if the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field indicates a bandwidth greater than 40 MHz and not present otherwise.</p> <p>32 If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field is 2, 4 or 5 (indicating 80 MHz): $N = 1$ to indicate that a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU (see Figure 27-7 (RU locations in an 80 MHz HE PPDU)) and that its User field is present in HE-SIG-B content channel 1; otherwise, set to 0. The same value is applied to both HE-SIG-B content channels.</p> <p>33 If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field is 3, 6 or 7 (indicating 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz): $N = 1$ to indicate that a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU of the lower frequency 80 MHz; otherwise, set to 0. $N = 1$ to indicate that a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU of the higher frequency 80 MHz; otherwise, set to 0.</p>

Table 27-24—Common field (continued)

Subfield	Number of subfields	Number of bits per subfield	Description
CRC	1	4	The CRC is calculated over bits 0 to $N \times 8$ if the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field indicates a bandwidth greater than 40 MHz, and bits 0 to $N \times 8 - 1$, otherwise. See 27.3.10.7.3 (CRC computation).
Tail	1	6	Used to terminate the trellis of the convolutional decoder. Set to 0

A 996-tone RU is referred to by two consecutive RU Allocation subfields per HE-SIG-B content channel, for both HE-SIG-B content channels. The two consecutive RU Allocation subfields per HE-SIG-B content channel are labeled the first RU Allocation subfield and the second RU Allocation subfield. A 484-tone RU is referred to by a single RU Allocation subfield per HE-SIG-B content channel, for both HE-SIG-B content channels. Smaller RUs are referred to by a single RU Allocation subfield in a single HE-SIG-B content channel. If a Common field is present in a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz PPDU, a 2×996 tone RU is not permitted (none are defined in Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield)).

For the first or only RU Allocation subfield in an HE-SIG-B content channel that refers to an RU, the RU Allocation subfield encodes the number of User fields per RU contributed to the User Specific field in the same HE-SIG-B content channel as the RU Allocation subfield. This number is labeled $N_{user}(r, c)$ for RU r and HE-SIG-B content channel c as described in Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield).

For the second RU Allocation subfield, if present, in an HE-SIG-B content channel that refers to an RU of size equal to 996-tone, the RU Allocation subfield encodes zero additional User fields per RU contributed to the User Specific field in the same HE-SIG-B content channel as the RU Allocation subfield.

In an HE MU PPDU, an RU that is not allocated to a user can be indicated as follows:

- The Center 26-tone RU subfield in the HE-SIG-B Common field is set to 0 (see Table 27-24 (Common field))
- The RU Allocation subfield in the HE-SIG-B Common field is set to certain values (see Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield))
- The STA-ID subfield in the HE-SIG-B User field is set to 2046 (see 26.11.1 (STA_ID) and 27.3.10.8.4 (User Specific field)).

The subcarriers in the HE modulated fields of a PPDU that correspond to an unallocated RU shall not be modulated.

If an RU is an unallocated RU, zero users are allocated to it. Otherwise, the number of users allocated to RU r is determined from the RU size and $N_{user}(r, c)$ as follows:

- If RU r is a 26-tone or 52-tone RU, then one user is allocated to the RU
- If RU r is a 106-tone or 242-tone RU, then the number of users allocated to the RU is $N_{user}(r, c)$.
- If RU r is a 484-tone or larger RU, then the number of users allocated to the RU equals the number of User fields for the RU summed across both HE-SIG-B content channels, i.e., $N_{user}(r, 1) + N_{user}(r, 2)$.

1 NOTE 1—The exact split of User fields between the two content channels, $N_{user}(r, 1)$ and $N_{user}(r, 2)$, is not specified
 2 and might be used to reduce any disparity in the number of User fields between content channels.

3 NOTE 2—If the number of users per RU is greater than one, then the users in the RU are multiplexed using MU-MIMO.
 4

5 For a 996-tone RU, for each HE-SIG-B content channel, the first 8-bit RU Allocation subfield referring to
 6 the RU may use values in the range 208–215 (11010y₂y₁y₀ in binary representation) as in Table 27-26 (RU
 7 Allocation subfield) with y₂y₁y₀ indicating the number of User fields signaled in the corresponding content
 8 channel, while the second 8-bit RU Allocation subfield referring to the RU shall be set to 115 (01110011 in
 9 binary representation).
 10

11 NOTE—Although there are two RU Allocation subfields per HE-SIG-B content channel for the users of a 996-tone RU,
 12 each user is described by only one User field, which is located in one HE-SIG-B content channel.
 13

14 As defined in Table 27-24 (Common field) and Table 27-25 (RUs associated with each RU Allocation subfield
 15 for each HE-SIG-B content channel and PPDU bandwidth), each signaling for the presence, in HE-
 16 SIG-B content channel 1, of the User field corresponding to a center 26-tone RU in an 80 MHz PPDU car-
 17 ries the same value in both HE-SIG-B content channels.
 18

21
 22 **Table 27-25—RUs associated with each RU Allocation subfield for each HE-SIG-B content**
 23 **channel and PPDU bandwidth**

PPDU bandwidth	RU Allocation subfield and Center 26-tone RU subfield (if present)	RUs in the subcarrier range, or overlapping with the subcarrier range if the RU is larger than a 242-tone RU
20 MHz	The RU Allocation subfield in a single HE-SIG-B content channel	[-122: 122]
40 MHz	The RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[-244: -3]
	The RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[3:244]
80 MHz	The first RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[-500:-259]
	The first RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[-258:-17]
	Center 26-tone RU subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1 and 2	[-16:-4, 4:16]
	The second RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[17:258]
	The second RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[259:500]

1 **Table 27-25—RUs associated with each RU Allocation subfield for each HE-SIG-B content**
 2 **channel and PPDU bandwidth (continued)**

PPDU bandwidth	RU Allocation subfield and Center 26-tone RU subfield (if present)	RUs in the subcarrier range, or overlapping with the subcarrier range if the RU is larger than a 242-tone RU
160 MHz or 80+80 MHz	The first RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[-1012:-771]
	The first RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[-770:-529]
	Center 26-tone RU subfield for lower frequency 80 MHz in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[-528:-516,-508:-496]
	The second RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[-495:-254]
	The second RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[-253:-12]
	The third RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[12:253]
	The third RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[254:495]
	Center 26-tone RU subfield for higher frequency 80 MHz in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[496:508, 516:528]
	The fourth RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	[529:770]
	The fourth RU Allocation subfield in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	[771:1012]

44 The mapping from the 8-bit RU Allocation subfield to the RU assignment and the number of User fields per
 45 RU contributed to the User Specific field in the same HE-SIG-B content channel as the RU Allocation sub-
 46 field is defined in the Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield).

49 **Table 27-26—RU Allocation subfield**

RU Allocation subfield (B7 B6 B5 B4 B3 B2 B1 B0)	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	Number of entries
0 (00000000)	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	1
1 (00000001)	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	52		1
2 (00000010)	26	26	26	26	26	52		26	26	1

Table 27-26—RU Allocation subfield (continued)

RU Allocation subfield (B7 B6 B5 B4 B3 B2 B1 B0)	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	Number of entries
3 (00000011)	26	26	26	26	26	52		52		1
4 (00000100)	26	26	52		26	26	26	26	26	1
5 (00000101)	26	26	52		26	26	26	52		1
6 (00000110)	26	26	52		26	52	26	26		1
7 (00000111)	26	26	52		26	52	52			1
8 (00001000)	52		26	26	26	26	26	26	26	1
9 (00001001)	52		26	26	26	26	26	52		1
10 (00001010)	52		26	26	26	52	26	26		1
11 (00001011)	52		26	26	26	52	52			1
12 (00001100)	52		52		26	26	26	26	26	1
13 (00001101)	52		52		26	26	26	52		1
14 (00001110)	52		52		26	52	26	26		1
15 (00001111)	52		52		26	52	52			1
16-23 (00010y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	52		52		-	106				8
24-31 (00011y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)		106			-	52		52		8
32-39 (00100y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	26	26	26	26	26	106				8
40-47 (00101y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	26	26	52		26	106				8
48-55 (00110y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	52		26	26	26	106				8
56-63 (00111y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	52		52		26	106				8
64-71 (01000y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)		106			26	26	26	26	26	8
72-29 (01001y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)		106			26	26	26	52		8
80-87 (01010y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)		106			26	52	26	26		8
88-95 (01011y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)		106			26	52	52			8

Table 27-26—RU Allocation subfield (continued)

RU Allocation subfield (B7 B6 B5 B4 B3 B2 B1 B0)	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	Number of entries										
96-111 (0110y ₁ y ₀ z ₁ z ₀)	106			-	106															
112 (01110000)	52		52		-	52		52		1										
113 (01110001)	242-tone RU empty (with zero users)																			
114 (01110010)	484-tone RU; contributes zero User fields to the User Specific field in the same HE-SIG-B content channel as this RU Allocation subfield																			
115 (01110011)	996-tone RU; contributes zero User fields to the User Specific field in the same HE-SIG-B content channel as this RU Allocation subfield																			
116-119 (011101x ₁ x ₀)	Reserved																			
120-127 (01111y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	Reserved																			
128-191 (10y ₂ y ₁ y ₀ z ₂ z ₁ z ₀)	106			26	106															
192-199 (11000y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	242																			
200-207 (11001y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	484																			
208-215 (11010y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	996																			
216-223 (11011y ₂ y ₁ y ₀)	Reserved																			
224-255 (111x ₄ x ₃ x ₂ x ₁ x ₀)	Reserved																			

Table 27-26—RU Allocation subfield (continued)

RU Allocation subfield (B7 B6 B5 B4 B3 B2 B1 B0)	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	Number of entries
If signaling RUs of size greater than 242 subcarriers, $y_2y_1y_0 = 000-111$ indicates the number of User fields in the HE-SIG-B content channel that contains the corresponding 8-bit RU Allocation subfield. Otherwise, $y_2y_1y_0 = 000-111$ indicates the number of STAs multiplexed in the 106-tone RU, 242-tone RU or the lower frequency 106-tone RU if there are two 106-tone RUs and one 26-tone RU is assigned between two 106-tone RUs. The binary vector $y_2y_1y_0$ indicates $N_{user}(r,c)=2^2 \times y_2 + 2^1 \times y_1 + y_0 + 1$ STAs multiplexed in the RU.										
$z_2z_1z_0 = 000-111$ indicates the number of STAs multiplexed in the higher frequency 106-tone RU if there are two 106-tone RUs and one 26-tone RU is assigned between two 106-tone RUs. The binary vector $z_2z_1z_0$ indicates $N_{user}(r,c)=2^2 \times z_2 + 2^1 \times z_1 + z_0 + 1$ STAs multiplexed in the RU.										
Similarly, $y_1y_0 = 00-11$ indicates the number of STAs multiplexed in the lower frequency 106-tone RU. The binary vector y_1y_0 indicates $N_{user}(r,c)=2^1 \times y_1 + y_0 + 1$ STAs multiplexed in the RU.										
Similarly, $z_1z_0 = 00-11$ indicates the number of STAs multiplexed in the higher frequency 106-tone RU. The binary vector z_1z_0 indicates $N_{user}(r,c)=2^1 \times z_1 + z_0 + 1$ STAs multiplexed in the RU.										
#1 to #9 (from left to the right) is ordered in increasing order of the absolute frequency.										
$x_1x_0 = 00-11$, $x_4x_3x_2x_1x_0 = 00000-11111$.										
'-' means no STA in that RU, i.e., $N_{user}(r,c)=0$.										
For RU r that is a 106-tone or larger RU, $N_{user}(r,c)$ is indicated by the letters (such as $y_2y_1y_0$ or $z_2z_1z_0$) in the RU allocation subfield above if the letters are present in the RU allocation subfield; otherwise $N_{user}(r,c)$ is 0.										
For RU r that is a 26-tone or 52-tone RU, $N_{user}(r,c)$ is 1.										

If a single RU in a 40 MHz PPDU overlaps the subcarrier ranges [-244:-3] and [3:244], the corresponding RU Allocation subfields in the respective content channels shall both refer to the same RU.

If a single RU in an 80 MHz PPDU overlaps more than one of the subcarrier ranges [-500:-259], [-258:-17], [17:258] or [259:500], the corresponding RU Allocation subfields in the respective content channels shall all refer to the same RU.

If a single RU in a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz PPDU overlaps more than one of the subcarrier ranges [-1012:-771], [-770:-529], [-495:-254], [-253:-12], [12:253], [254:495], [529:770] or [771:1012], the corresponding RU Allocation subfields in the respective content channels shall all refer to the same RU.

In Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield), the number of entries column refers to the number of RU Allocation subfield values that refer to the same RU assignment to be used in the frequency domain but differ in the number of User fields per RU. The number of User fields per RU indicated by the RU Allocation subfields and the Center 26-tone RU subfield of an HE-SIG-B content channel indicate the number of User fields in the User Specific field of the HE-SIG-B content channel.

For an MU-MIMO allocation of RU size greater than 242 subcarriers, the split of User fields between HE-SIG-B content channel 1 and HE-SIG-B content channel 2 is decided by the AP (on a per case basis) and signaled by the AP using the RU Allocation subfields in each HE-SIG-B content channel. See Annex Z for examples.

Signaling for the center 26-tone RU in $BW \geq 80$ MHz follows the RU Allocation subfields. If the Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A field in an HE MU PPDU is 2, 4 or 5 (indicating an 80 MHz PPDU), 1 bit is added to each HE-SIG-B content channel to indicate whether or not a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU. The bit in each HE-SIG-B content channel shall have the same value. If the Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A

1 field in an HE MU PPDU is 3, 6 or 7 (indicating a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz PPDU), 1 bit in HE-SIG-B content channel 1 indicates whether or not a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU of lower frequency 80 MHz, and 1 bit in HE-SIG-B content channel 2 indicates whether or not a user is allocated to the center 26-tone RU of higher frequency 80 MHz.

7 The pre-HE modulated fields (see Figure 27-23 (Timing boundaries for HE PPDU fields if midamble is not present)) are not transmitted in 20 MHz subchannels in which the preamble is punctured (see 27.3.7 (HE modulation and coding schemes (HE-MCSs))).

11 If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 4, 5, 6 or 7, then one or more 20 MHz subchannels of the preamble are punctured, as defined in Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU). If two adjacent 20 MHz subchannels that comprise a 40 MHz subchannel in which a 484-tone RU is located are punctured, then B7–B0 of the RU Allocation subfields corresponding to the two 20 MHz subchannels shall both be set to 113 (242-tone RU is empty) or shall both be set to 114 (see Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield)) to indicate that the preamble is punctured in both the 20 MHz subchannels. Each punctured 20 MHz subchannel that does not have B7–B0 of its corresponding RU Allocation subfield set to 114 shall have B7–B0 of its RU Allocation subfield set to 113.

22 The center 26-tone RU in a preamble punctured 80 MHz, 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU shall not be allocated to a user if either of the two 20 MHz subchannels that the center 26-tone RU straddles have the preamble punctured.

27.3.10.8.4 User Specific field

30 The User Specific field of an HE-SIG-B content channel consists of zero or more User Block fields followed by padding (if present) as shown in Figure 27-26 (HE-SIG-B content channel format). Each non-final User 31 Block field is made up of two User fields that contain information for two STAs that is used to decode their 32 payloads. The final User Block field contains information for one or two STAs depending on the number of 33 users in the HE-SIG-B content channel. If the HE-SIG-B Compression subfield in the HE-SIG-A field of an 34 HE MU PPDU is 0, then the number of User fields is indicated by the RU Allocation subfields and the Center 35 26-tone RU subfield in the same HE-SIG-B content channel. If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the 36 HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 1, then the number of users is indicated by the Number Of HE-SIG- 37 B Symbols Or MU-MIMO Users field in the HE-SIG-A field.

41 If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 1 (indicating full bandwidth 42 MU-MIMO transmission) and the Number Of HE-SIG-B Symbols Or MU-MIMO Users field in the 43 HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 0 (indicating 1 user), then the User Specific field in the HE-SIG-B 44 field consists of a single User Block field containing one User field for a non-MU-MIMO allocation as 45 shown in Table 27-28 (User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation).

1 The User Block field is defined in Table 27-27 (User Block field).

2

3

4

Table 27-27—User Block field

Field	Number of fields	Number of bits per field	Description
User field	N	21	<p>N User fields are present, where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> $N = 1$ if it is the final User Block field, and if there is only one user in the final User Block field. $N = 2$ otherwise. <p>The User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation is defined in Table 27-28 (User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation). The User field format for a MU-MIMO allocation is defined in Table 27-29 (User field format for a MU-MIMO allocation).</p>
CRC	1	4	The CRC is calculated over bits 0 to 20 for a User Block field that contains one User field, and bits 0 to 41 for a User Block field that contains two User fields. See 27.3.10.7.3 (CRC computation).
Tail	1	6	Used to terminate the trellis of the convolutional decoder. Set to 0.

32 If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 0, then for an MU-MIMO
 33 allocation of RU size greater than 242 subcarriers, the AP dynamically splits the User fields between HE-
 34 SIG-B content channel 1 and HE-SIG-B content channel 2 as described in 27.3.10.8.3 (Common field).

37 If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 1, for bandwidths larger
 38 than 20 MHz, the User fields are split equitably between two HE-SIG-B content channels, i.e., User field k
 39 of a K user MU-MIMO PPDU is carried in HE-SIG-B content channel c , where c is defined in Equation (27-
 40 20).

$$c = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } k \in 1, \dots, \lceil K/2 \rceil \\ 2, & \text{if } (k \in \lceil K/2 \rceil + 1, \dots, K) \end{cases} \quad (27-20)$$

48 Multiple RUs addressed to a single STA shall not be allowed in the User Specific field. Therefore, the sig-
 49 naling that enables a STA to decode its data is carried in only one User field.

52 The ordering of User fields in the User Specific field in an HE-SIG-B content channel is determined using
 53 the following three step procedure:

- 55 1) If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 0, then the User
 56 fields in the User Specific field of an HE-SIG-B content channel are grouped into sets of User fields,
 57 where each set comprises the User fields indicated by one RU Allocation subfield or the Center 26-
 58 tone RU. These sets shall be ordered as follows:
 - 60 a) If the Bandwidth field in HE-SIG-A is 0 or 1, then there is only one set, so the need for ordering
 in this first step does not arise
 - 62 b) If the Bandwidth field in HE-SIG-A is 2, 4 or 5, then the set of User fields indicated by the first
 RU Allocation subfield are followed by the set of the User fields indicated by the second RU
 Allocation subfield; in turn, if the center 26-tone RU that spans subcarriers [-16:-4, 4:16] is

- 1 assigned, then its User field is appended as the last User field to HE-SIG-B content channel 1
 2 only.
 3
- 4 c) If the Bandwidth field in HE-SIG-A is 3, 6 or 7, then the set of User fields indicated by the first
 5 RU Allocation subfield are followed by the set of the User fields indicated by the second RU
 6 Allocation subfield; in turn these are followed by the set of the User fields indicated by the
 7 third RU Allocation subfield and then by the set of the User fields indicated by the fourth RU
 8 Allocation subfield. If the center 26-tone RU that spans subcarriers [-528:-516, -508:-496] is
 9 assigned, then its User field is appended to HE-SIG-B content channel 1. If the center 26-tone
 10 RU that spans subcarriers [496:508, 516:528] is assigned, then its User field is appended as the
 11 last User field to HE-SIG-B content channel 2.
 12
- 13 d) Instead, if the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 1,
 14 this first step is bypassed.
 15
- 16 2) If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 0, then each sub-
 17 set of User fields indicated by an RU Allocation subfield shall be ordered by increasing frequency of
 18 RU, i.e., #1-#9 in Table 27-26 (RU Allocation subfield).
 19
- 20 a) Instead, if the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 1,
 21 this second step is bypassed.
 22
- 23 3) Without regard to the value of HE-SIG-B Compression field, the ordering of User fields in the same
 24 RU shall follow the user ordering in Table 27-30 (Spatial Configuration subfield encoding).
 25

26 In this way, RU Allocation subfields, Center 26-tone RU fields (if present), and the position of a user's User
 27 field in the User Specific field of an HE-SIG-B content channel indicate the user's RU assignment.
 28

29 If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (see Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an
 30 HE MU PPDU)) is 4 or 5 (preamble is punctured), the content of the HE-SIG-B content channel 1 and 2
 31 shall be constructed as described above for an 80 MHz PPDU without preamble puncturing.
 32

33 If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU is 6 or 7 (preamble is punctured), the con-
 34 tent of the HE-SIG-B content channel 1 and 2 shall be constructed as described above for an 160 MHz
 35 PPDU without preamble puncturing.
 36

37 An example for the mapping of the 8-bit RU Allocation subfield and the position of the User field to a
 38 STA's data is illustrated in Figure 27-27 (An example of the mapping of the 8-bit RU Allocation subfield
 39 and the position of the User field to the STA's assignment for one 20 MHz channel). The RU Allocation sub-
 40 field indicates an arrangement of one 106-tone RU followed by five 26-tone RUs and that the 106-tone RU
 41 contains three User fields, i.e., the 106-tone RU supports multiplexing of three users using MU-MIMO. The
 42 8 User fields in the User Specific field thus map to the 6 RUs, with the first three User fields indicating MU-
 43

1 MIMO allocations in the first 106-tone RU followed by User fields corresponding to the each of the five 26-
 2 tone RUs.

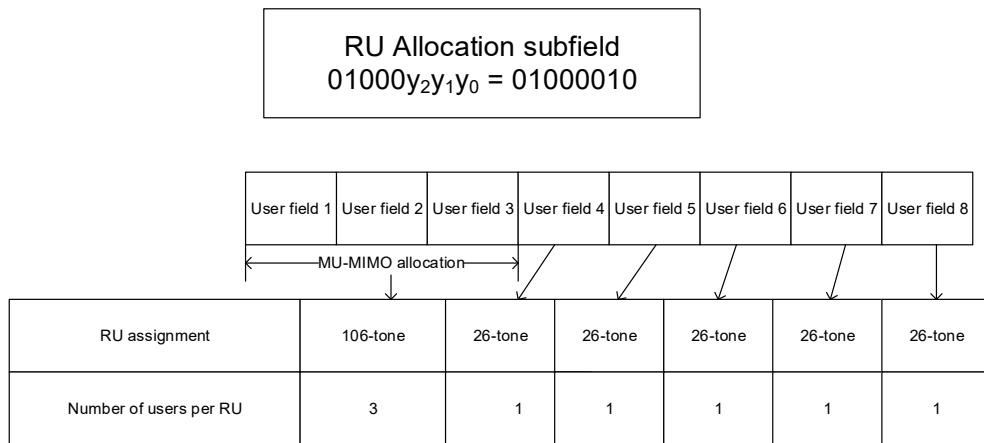


Figure 27-27—An example of the mapping of the 8-bit RU Allocation subfield and the position of the User field to the STA's assignment for one 20 MHz channel

The contents of the User field differ depending on whether the field addresses a STA in a non-MU-MIMO allocation in an RU or a STA in an MU-MIMO allocation in an RU. Irrespective of whether the allocation is for a STA in a non-MU-MIMO or an MU-MIMO allocation, the size of the User field is the same.

The User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation is defined in Table 27-28 (User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation).

Table 27-28—User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation

Bit	Subfield	Number of bits	Description
B0–B10	STA-ID	11	Set to a value of the TXVECTOR parameter STA_ID (see 26.11.1 (STA_ID)).
B11–B13	NSTS	3	Number of space-time streams. Set to the number of space-time streams minus 1.
B14	Beamformed	1	Use of transmit beamforming. Set to 1 if a beamforming steering matrix is applied to the waveform in an SU transmission. Set to 0 otherwise.
B15–B18	HE-MCS	4	Modulation and coding scheme Set to n for HE-MCS n , where $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 11$ Values 12 to 15 are reserved

Table 27-28—User field format for a non-MU-MIMO allocation (continued)

B19	DCM	1	Indicates whether or not DCM is used. Set to 1 to indicate that the payload of the corresponding user of the HE MU PPDU is modulated with DCM for the HE-MCS. Set to 0 to indicate that the payload of the corresponding user of the PPDU is not modulated with DCM for the HE-MCS.
B20	Coding	1	Indicates whether BCC or LDPC is used. Set to 0 for BCC Set to 1 for LDPC
NOTE—If the STA-ID subfield is 2046, then the other subfields can be set to arbitrary values.			

The User field format for an MU-MIMO allocation is defined in Table 27-29 (User field format for a MU-MIMO allocation).

Table 27-29—User field format for a MU-MIMO allocation

Bit	Subfield	Number of bits	Description
B0–B10	STA-ID	11	Set to a value indicated from TXVECTOR parameter STA_ID (see 26.11.1 (STA_ID)).
B11–B14	Spatial Configuration	4	Indicates the number of spatial streams for a STA in an MU-MIMO allocation (see Table 27-30 (Spatial Configuration subfield encoding)).
B15–B18	HE-MCS	4	Modulation and coding scheme. Set to n for HE-MCS n , where $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 11$ Values 12 to 15 are reserved
B19	Reserved	1	Reserved and set to 0
B20	Coding	1	Indicates whether BCC or LDPC is used. Set to 0 for BCC Set to 1 for LDPC
NOTE—If the STA-ID subfield is 2046, then the other subfields can be set to arbitrary values.			

A User field for an MU-MIMO allocation includes a 4-bit Spatial Configuration subfield that indicates the number of spatial streams for each STA and the total number of spatial streams in the MU-MIMO allocation. The subfield shown in Table 27-30 (Spatial Configuration subfield encoding) is constructed by using the entries corresponding to the value of number of users (N_{user}) multiplexed using MU-MIMO in an RU.

If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field is 0 and MU-MIMO is used in an RU of size less than or equal to 242 subcarriers, the number of users (N_{user}) in an MU-MIMO allocation is equal to the number of User fields per RU signaled for the RU in the associated RU Allocation subfield of the Common field in the same HE-SIG-B content channel.

If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field is 0 and MU-MIMO is used in RUs of size greater than 242 subcarriers, User fields corresponding to the same MU-MIMO allocations are dynamically split as described in 27.3.10.8.4 (User Specific field) into two HE-SIG-B content channels and the number of users (N_{user}) is computed as the sum of the number of User fields indicated for the RU by the 8-bit RU Allocation subfield in each HE-SIG-B content channel.

If the HE-SIG-B Compression field in the HE-SIG-A field is 1, then the number of users is signaled by the Number Of HE-SIG-B Symbols Or MU-MIMO Users field in the HE-SIG-A field and the User fields are equitably split following Equation (27-20).

The User field positions within an RU are defined to be logically continuous: the last User field corresponding to an RU in HE-SIG-B content channel 1 is immediately followed by the first User field corresponding to the same RU in HE-SIG-B content channel 2.

For a given value of N_{user} , the four bits of the Spatial Configuration subfield are used as follows: A STA with a STA-ID that matches the 11-bit ID signaled in the User field for an MU-MIMO allocation derives the number of spatial streams allocated to it using the row corresponding to the signaled 4-bit Spatial Configuration subfield and the column corresponding to the User field position in the User Specific field. The starting stream index for the STA is computed by summing the N_{STS} in the columns prior to the column indicated by the STA's User field position.

Table 27-30—Spatial Configuration subfield encoding

N_{user}	B3...B0	N_{STS} [1]	N_{STS} [2]	N_{STS} [3]	N_{STS} [4]	N_{STS} [5]	N_{STS} [6]	N_{STS} [7]	N_{STS} [8]	Total N_{STS}	Number of entries
2	0000–0011	1–4	1							2–5	10
	0100–0110	2–4	2							4–6	
	0111–1000	3–4	3							6–7	
	1001	4	4							8	
3	0000–0011	1–4	1	1						3–6	13
	0100–0110	2–4	2	1						5–7	
	0111–1000	3–4	3	1						7–8	
	1001–1011	2–4	2	2						6–8	
	1100	3	3	2						8	
4	0000–0011	1–4	1	1	1					4–7	11
	0100–0110	2–4	2	1	1					6–8	
	0111	3	3	1	1					8	
	1000–1001	2–3	2	2	1					7–8	
	1010	2	2	2	2					8	

Table 27-30—Spatial Configuration subfield encoding (continued)

N_{user}	B3...B0	$N_{STS}[1]$	$N_{STS}[2]$	$N_{STS}[3]$	$N_{STS}[4]$	$N_{STS}[5]$	$N_{STS}[6]$	$N_{STS}[7]$	$N_{STS}[8]$	Total N_{STS}	Number of entries
5	0000–0011	1–4	1	1	1	1				5–8	7
	0100–0101	2–3	2	1	1	1				7–8	
	0110	2	2	2	1	1				8	
6	0000–0010	1–3	1	1	1	1	1			6–8	4
	0011	2	2	1	1	1	1			8	
7	0000–0001	1–2	1	1	1	1	1	1		7–8	2
8	0000	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	8	1

The user ordering identified by the column headers $N_{STS}[n]$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ in Table 27-30 (Spatial Configuration subfield encoding) shall be the same as the user index u , $u = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ in Equation (27-38), Equation (27-59) and Equation (27-110), i.e., $u = n - 1$.

The total number of spatial streams (total N_{STS}) is computed by summing all columns for the row signaled by the Spatial Configuration field and is indicated in Table 27-30 (Spatial Configuration subfield encoding) under the column Total N_{STS} .

27.3.10.8.5 Encoding and modulation

In each 20 MHz band, the bits in the Common field shall have CRC and tail bits appended and then be BCC encoded at rate $R = 1/2$. The CRC bits are computed as described in 27.3.10.7.3 (CRC computation).

In the User Specific field, in any 20 MHz band, each User Block field shall have CRC and tail bits appended and then be BCC encoded at rate $R = 1/2$. If the number of User fields in the HE-SIG-B content channel is odd, CRC and tail bits are added after the last User field, which is not grouped. Padding bits are appended immediately after the tail bits corresponding to the final User Block field in each HE-SIG-B content channel to round up to the next multiple of number of data bits per HE-SIG-B OFDM symbol. The padding bits may be set to any value. Further padding bits are appended to each HE-SIG-B content channel so that the number of OFDM symbols after encoding and modulation in different 20 MHz bands ends at the same OFDM symbol. For both the Common field and User Block field, the information bits, tail bits and padding bits (if present) are BCC encoded at rate $R = 1/2$ using the encoder described in 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder). If the coding rate of the HE-SIG-B HE-MCS is not equal to 1/2, the convolutional encoder output bits for each field are concatenated, then the concatenated bit streams are punctured as described in 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder).

The coded bits are interleaved as in 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers). The interleaved bits are mapped to constellation points from the HE-MCS specified in HE-SIG-A and have pilots inserted following the steps described in 17.3.5.8 (Subcarrier modulation mapping) and 17.3.5.9 (Pilot subcarriers), respectively. Each HE-SIG-B OFDM symbol shall have 52 data tones.

The guard interval used for HE-SIG-B shall be 0.8 μ s.

1 The number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field, denoted by $N_{SYM,HE-SIG-B}$, shall be signaled by the
 2 Number Of HE-SIG-B Symbols Or MU-MIMO Users field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (see
 3 27.3.10.7.2 (Content)).
 4

5 For the HE-SIG-B content channel c ($c = 1$ or 2), denote the complex number assigned to the k -th data sub-
 6 carrier of the n -th symbol by $d_{k,n,c}$. The time domain waveform for the HE-SIG-B field, transmitted on fre-
 7 quency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , is given by Equation (27-21).
 8

$$r_{HE-SIG-B}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{TX} \cdot N_{HE-SIG-B}^{Tone}}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_{SYM,HE-SIG-B}-1} w_{T_{HE-SIG-B}}(t - nT_{SYML}) \\ \sum_{i_{BW} \in \Omega_{20MHz}} \sum_{k=-N_{SR}}^{N_{SR}} \left[Y_{(k - K_{Shift}(i_{BW})), BW} \left(\Gamma_{M_{20}(k)} D_{k,n,i_{BW}}^{i_{Seg}} + p_{n+4} P_k \right) \right. \\ \left. \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{Shift}(i_{BW}))) \Delta_{F, Pre-HE}(t - nT_{SYML} - T_{GI, Pre-HE} - T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}) \right] \quad (27-21)$$

23 where

24 $\Gamma_{M_{20}(k)}$ is the phase rotation value for HE-SIG-B field PAPR reduction. If the HE-SIG-B field is modu-
 25 lated with HE-MCS 0 and DCM=1, $\Gamma_{M_{20}(k)} = 1$. For all other modulation schemes of HE-
 26 SIG-B field,

$$\Gamma_{M_{20}(k)} = \begin{cases} 1 & 0 \leq M_{20}^r(k) < 26 \\ (-1)^{M_{20}^r(k)} & 26 \leq M_{20}^r(k) < 52 \end{cases}$$

37 $N_{HE-SIG-B}^{Tone}$ is given in Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard interval duration values
 38 for HE PPDU fields)

39 N_{SR} is given in Table 21-5 (Timing-related constants)

40 $T_{HE-SIG-B}$ is given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

41 $K_{Shift}(i)$ is defined in 21.3.8.2.4 (L-SIG definition)

$$D_{k,n,i_{BW}}^{i_{Seg}} = \begin{cases} 0, k = 0, \pm 7, \pm 21 \\ d_{M_{20}(k), n, (i_{BW} \bmod 2) + 1}, \text{ otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$M_{20}^r(k) = \begin{cases} k + 28, -28 \leq k \leq -22 \\ k + 27, -20 \leq k \leq -8 \\ k + 26, -6 \leq k \leq -1 \\ k + 25, 1 \leq k \leq 6 \\ k + 24, 8 \leq k \leq 20 \\ k + 23, 22 \leq k \leq 28 \end{cases}$$

42 P_k and p_n are defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation)

43 $N_{SYM,HE-SIG-B}$ is the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field

From Equation (27-21) and 27.3.10.8.2 (HE-SIG-B content channels), a 20 MHz PPDU contains one HE-SIG-B content channel as shown in Figure 27-28 (HE-SIG-B content channel for a 20 MHz PPDU).

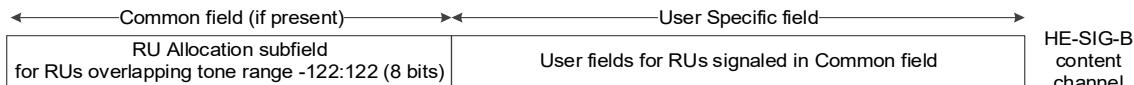


Figure 27-28—HE-SIG-B content channel for a 20 MHz PPDU

From Equation (27-21) and 27.3.10.8.2 (HE-SIG-B content channels), a 40 MHz PPDU contains two HE-SIG-B content channels, each occupying a 20 MHz frequency segment as shown in Figure 27-29 (HE-SIG-B content channel for a 40 MHz PPDU). HE-SIG-B content channel 1 occupies the 20 MHz frequency segment that is lower in frequency. HE-SIG-B content channel 2 occupies the 20 MHz frequency segment that is upper in frequency.

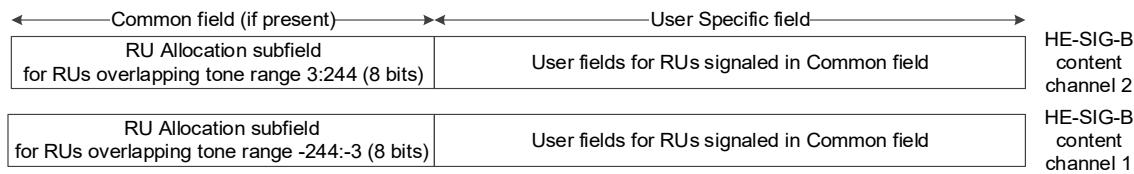


Figure 27-29—HE-SIG-B content channel for a 40 MHz PPDU

From Equation (27-21) and 27.3.10.8.2 (HE-SIG-B content channels), an 80 MHz PPDU contains two HE-SIG-B content channels each of which are duplicated once as shown in Figure 27-30 (HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in an 80 MHz PPDU). HE-SIG-B content channel 1 occupies the 20 MHz frequency segment that is lowest in frequency and is duplicated on the 20 MHz frequency segment that is third lowest in frequency. HE-SIG-B content channel 2 occupies the 20 MHz frequency segment that is second lowest in frequency and is duplicated on the 20 MHz frequency segment that is fourth lowest in frequency.

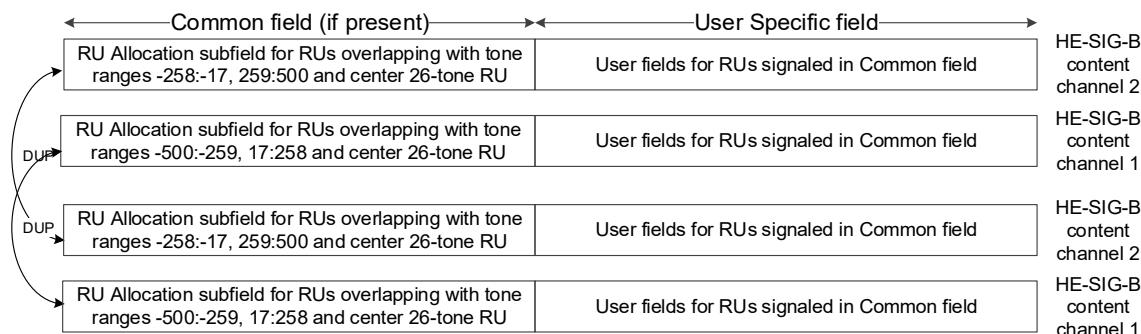


Figure 27-30—HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in an 80 MHz PPDU

From Equation (27-21) and 27.3.10.8.2 (HE-SIG-B content channels), a 160 MHz PPDU contains two HE-SIG-B content channels each of which are duplicated four times as shown in Figure 27-31 (HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in a 160 MHz PPDU). HE-SIG-B content channel 1 occupies the 20 MHz frequency segment that is lowest in frequency and is duplicated on the 20 MHz frequency segments that are third, fifth and seventh lowest in frequency. HE-SIG-B content channel 2 occupies the 20 MHz frequency

segment that is second lowest in frequency and is duplicated on the 20 MHz frequency segments that are fourth, sixth and eighth lowest in frequency.

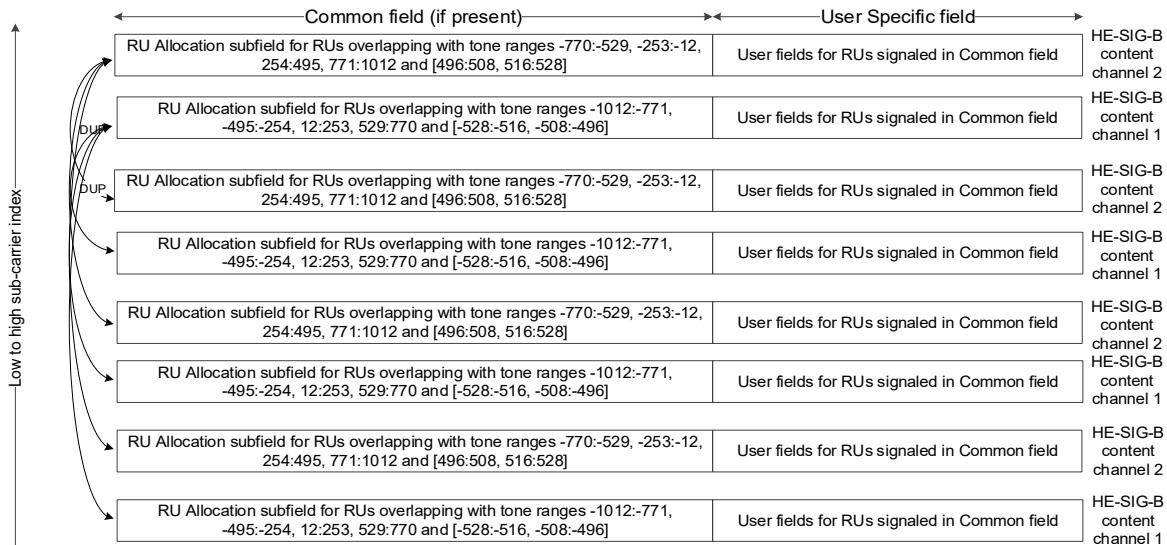


Figure 27-31—HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in a 160 MHz PPDU

If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (see Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU)) is 4 or 5 (preamble is punctured), the mapping of the HE-SIG-B content channels to 20 MHz segments shall be the same as for an 80 MHz PPDU (see Figure 27-30 (HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in an 80 MHz PPDU)), with the exception that punctured 20 MHz channels shall be excluded.

If the Bandwidth field in the HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU (see Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an HE MU PPDU)) is 6 or 7 (preamble is punctured), the mapping of the HE-SIG-B content channels to 20 MHz segments shall be the same as for an 160 MHz PPDU (see Figure 27-31 (HE-SIG-B content channels and their duplication in a 160 MHz PPDU)), with the exception that punctured 20 MHz channels shall be excluded.

27.3.10.9 HE-STF

The main purpose of the HE-STF field is to improve automatic gain control estimation in a MIMO transmission. The duration of the HE-STF field for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDUs is $T_{\text{HE-STF-NT}}$ (periodicity of 0.8 μs with 5 periods as given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)) and the duration of the HE-STF field for an HE TB PPDU is $T_{\text{HE-STF-T}}$ (periodicity of 1.6 μs with 5 periods as given in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)).

For the HE-STF field, the M sequence is defined by Equation (27-22).

$$M = \{-1, -1, -1, 1, 1, -1, 1, 1, -1, 1, 1, -1, 1\} \quad (27-22)$$

The HE-STF field is constructed by mapping the M sequence(s) multiplied by $(1+j)/\sqrt{2}$ or $(-1-j)/\sqrt{2}$ to each 242-tone RU. For a transmission bandwidth greater than 40 MHz, $(1+j)/\sqrt{2}$ or $(-1-j)/\sqrt{2}$ is assigned to subcarrier indices that are inside the center 26-tone RUs.

For a 20 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-23).

$$HES_{-112:16:112} = \{M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-23)$$

The value of the HE-STF sequence at null tone index 0 is $HES_0 = 0$

where $HES_{a:b:c}$ means coefficients of the HE-STF on every b subcarrier indices from a to c subcarrier indices and coefficients on other subcarrier indices are set to zero.

For a 40 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-24).

$$HES_{240:16:240} = \{M, 0, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-24)$$

For an 80 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-25).

$$HES_{-496:16:496} = \{M, 1, -M, 0, -M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-25)$$

For a 160 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-26).

$$HES_{-1008:16:1008} = \{M, 1, -M, 0, -M, 1, -M, 0, -M, -1, M, 0, -M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-26)$$

For an 80+80 MHz transmission, the lower 80 MHz segment for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDU shall use the HE-STF pattern for the 80 MHz defined in Equation (27-25).

For an 80+80 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence of the upper 80 MHz segment for HE PPDUs that are not HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-27).

$$HES_{-496 \cdot 16 \cdot 496} = \{-M, -1, M, 0, -M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-27)$$

For a 20 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-28).

$$HES_{-120:8:120} = \{M, 0, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-28)$$

For an HE TB feedback NDP in 20 MHz channel width, the frequency domain sequence is given by Equation (27-29).

$$HES_{-|120;8;120}^{\text{TB NDP}} = HES_{-|120;8;120} \quad (27-29)$$

For a 40 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-30).

$$HES_{-248:8:248} = \{M, -1, -M, 0, M, -1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27, 28)$$

The value of the HE-STF sequence at edge tone indices ± 248 is $HES_{\pm 248} = 0$

For an HE TB feedback NDP in 40 MHz channel width, the frequency domain sequence is given by Equation (27-31).

$$\begin{aligned} HES_{-248:8:-8}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{M, -1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 18 \\ HES_{8:248}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{M, -1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} > 18 \\ HES_{\pm 248}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-31)$$

For an 80 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-32).

$$HES_{-504:8:504} = \{M, -1, M, -1, -M, -1, M, 0, -M, 1, M, 1, -M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-32)$$

The value of the HE-STF sequence at edge tone indices ± 504 is $HES_{\pm 504} = 0$

For an HE TB feedback NDP in 80 MHz channel width, the frequency domain sequence is given by Equation (27-33).

$$\begin{aligned} HES_{-504:8:-264}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{M, -1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 18 \\ HES_{-248:8:-8}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, -1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 18 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 36 \\ HES_{8:8:248}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 36 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 54 \\ HES_{264:8:504}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 54 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 72 \\ HES_{\pm 504}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-33)$$

For a 160 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence for HE TB PPDUs is given by Equation (27-34).

$$HES_{-1016:8:1016} = \{M, -1, M, -1, -M, -1, M, 0, -M, 1, M, 1, -M, 1, -M, 0 \\ -M, 1, -M, 1, M, 1, -M, 0, -M, 1, M, 1, -M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-34)$$

The value of the HE-STF sequence at edge tone indices ± 8 and ± 1016 is $HES_{\pm 8} = 0$, $HES_{\pm 1016} = 0$

For an HE TB feedback NDP in 160 MHz channel width, the frequency domain sequence is given by Equation (27-35).

$$\begin{aligned} HES_{-1016:8:-776}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{M, -1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 18 \\ HES_{-760:8:-520}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, -1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 18 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 36 \\ HES_{-504:8:-264}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 36 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 54 \\ HES_{-248:8:-8}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 54 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 72 \\ HES_{8:8:248}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 72 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 90 \\ HES_{264:8:504}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 90 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 108 \\ HES_{520:8:760}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 108 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 126 \\ HES_{776:8:1016}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 126 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 144 \\ HES_{\pm 8}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= HES_{\pm 1016}^{\text{TB NDP}} = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-35)$$

For an 80+80 MHz transmission, the lower 80 MHz segment for HE TB PPDUs shall use the HE-STF pattern for the 80 MHz defined in Equation (27-32).

1 For an 80+80 MHz transmission, the frequency domain sequence of the upper 80 MHz segment for HE TB
 2 PPUDUs is given by Equation (27-36).

$$HES_{-504:8:504} = \{-M, 1, -M, 1, M, 1, -M, 0, -M, 1, M, 1, -M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2} \quad (27-36)$$

7 The value of the HE-STF sequence at edge tone indices ± 504 is $HES_{\pm 504} = 0$

9 For an HE TB feedback NDP in the lower 80 MHz segment of an 80+80 MHz channel width, the frequency
 10 domain sequence is given by Equation (27-33).

13 For an HE TB feedback NDP in the upper 80 MHz segment of an 80+80 MHz channel width, the frequency
 14 domain sequence is given by Equation (27-37).

$$\begin{aligned} HES_{-504:8:-264}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 90 \\ HES_{-248:8:-8}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 90 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 108 \\ HES_{8:8:248}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 108 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 126 \\ HES_{264:8:504}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= \{-M, 1, -M\} \cdot (1+j)/\sqrt{2}, \text{ if } 126 < \text{RU_TONE_SET_INDEX} \leq 144 \\ HES_{\pm 504}^{\text{TB NDP}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-37)$$

28 If a 20 MHz operating non-AP STA sends an HE TB feedback NDP report response (see 26.5.7 (NDP feed-
 29 back report procedure)) on a channel width greater than 20 MHz, the HE-STF subcarrier that overlaps the
 30 DC subcarrier of the 20 MHz operating non-AP STA is not transmitted.

32 For an OFDMA transmission, the coefficients in Equation (27-23) to Equation (27-36) are set to zero if
 33 those values are corresponding to subcarrier indices that fall within RUs that have no users assigned to them.

36 The time domain representation of the signal for an HE PPDU that is not an HE TB PPDU on frequency seg-
 37 ment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} shall be as specified in Equation (27-38).

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{HE-STF}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) &= w_{T_{\text{HE-STF-NT}}}(t) \cdot \sum_{r=0}^{N_{\text{RU}}-1} \frac{\alpha_r \beta_r}{\sqrt{N_{\text{STS}, r, total}}} \\ &\quad \sum_{k \in K_r} \eta_{\text{HE-STF}, k} \sum_{u=0}^{N_{\text{user}, r}-1} \sum_{m=1}^{|Q_k^{(i_{\text{Seg}})}|} HES_k \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F, \text{HE}}(t - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r, u} + m))) \end{aligned} \quad (27-38)$$

49 where

50 α_r is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

52 $\eta_{\text{HE-STF}, k}$ is an HE PPDU format dependent scaling factor, defined by

$$\eta_{\text{HE-STF}, k} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}, & \text{for an HE ER SU PPDU} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

57 β_r is the per-RU power normalization factor and defined by

$$\beta_r = \left(\sqrt{\frac{|K_r|}{K_r^{\text{HE-STF}}}} \right) / \left(\sqrt{\sum_{r=0}^{N_{\text{RU}}-1} \alpha_r^2 |K_r|} \right)$$

63 $|K_r|$ is the cardinality of the set of subcarriers K_r , as defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of
 64 signals)

$K_r^{\text{HE-STF}}$ is the set of subcarriers that have nonzero values within K_r in the HE-STF field
 $T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r,u} + m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream $M_{r,u} + m$ as defined in 27.3.10.2.2
(Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields)

$Q_k^{(i_{\text{seg}})}$ is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

$w_{T_{\text{HE-STF-NT}}}$ is the windowing function for HE-STF field in the non-HE TB PPDU

$|K_r^{\text{HE-STF}}|$ is the cardinality of the set of subcarriers $K_r^{\text{HE-STF}}$

N_{RU} , $N_{STS,r,total}$, $N_{user,r}$, and $N_{STS,r,u}$ are defined in 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

The time domain representation of the signal for an HE TB PPDU transmitted by user u in the r -th RU on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} shall be as specified in Equation (27-39).

$$r_{\text{HE-STF}, r, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|K_r^{\text{HE-STF}}| N_{STS, r, total}}} w_{T_{\text{HE-STF-T}}}(t) \\ \sum_{k \in K_r} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS, r, u}} \left(\left[Q_{k, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} HES_k \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F, \text{HE}}(t - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r, u} + m))) \right) \quad (27-39)$$

where

$w_{T_{\text{HE-STF-T}}}$ is the windowing function for HE-STF field in the HE TB PPDU

$Q_{k, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})}$ is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

It is recommended that the spatial mapping matrix applied to HE-STF and beyond is chosen such that it preserves the smoothness of the physical channel, achieved by limiting the variation of each element's real and imaginary values in the spatial mapping matrix across successive tones within one RU.

27.3.10.10 HE-LTF

The HE-LTF field provides a means for the receiver to estimate the MIMO channel between the set of constellation mapper outputs (or, if STBC is applied, the STBC encoder outputs) and the receive chains. In an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, the transmitter provides training for N_{STS} space-time streams (spatial mapper inputs) used for the transmission of the PSDU. In an HE MU PPDU, the transmitter provides training for $N_{STS,r,total}$ space-time streams used for the transmission of the PSDU(s) in the r -th RU. In an HE TB PPDU, the transmitter of user u in the r -th RU provides training for $N_{STS,r,u}$ space-time streams used for the transmission of the PSDU. For each subcarrier in the r -th RU, the MIMO channel that can be estimated is an $N_{RX} \times N_{STS,r,total}$ matrix. An HE transmission has a preamble that contains HE-LTF symbols, where the data tones of each HE-LTF symbol are multiplied by entries belonging to a matrix $P_{\text{HE-LTF}}$, to enable channel estimation at the receiver. When single stream pilot is used in HE-LTF, the pilot subcarriers of each HE-LTF symbol are multiplied by the entries of a matrix $R_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ defined below to allow receivers to track phase and/or frequency offset during MIMO channel estimation using the HE-LTF. Single stream pilot in HE-LTF shall be used for SU, DL and UL OFDMA, DL MU-MIMO and UL MU-MIMO transmission using HE UL MU-MIMO single stream pilot HE-LTF mode.

In an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU with a single RU (the RU having an MU-MIMO allocation or an SU allocation), the number of HE-LTF symbols, $N_{\text{HE-LTF}}$, is a function of the total number of space-time streams N_{STS} as shown in Table 21-13 (Number of VHT-LTFs required for different numbers of space-time streams) in 21.3.8.3.5 (VHT-LTF definition), replacing $N_{VHT-LTF}$ by $N_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ and replacing $N_{STS,total}$ by N_{STS} . In an HE TB PPDU, $N_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ is indicated in the Trigger frame that triggers the transmis-

sion of the PPDU. In an HE MU PPDU, N_{HE-LTF} is indicated in the HE-SIG-A field. In an HE MU PPDU with more than one RU and in an HE TB PPDU, N_{HE-LTF} may take a value 1, 2, 4, 6 or 8 that is greater than or equal to the maximum value of the initial number of HE-LTF symbols for each RU, where the initial number of HE-LTF symbols is calculated as a function of $N_{STS,r,total}$ (where r is the index of the RU) based on Table 21-13 (Number of VHT-LTFs required for different numbers of space-time streams) in 21.3.8.3.5 (VHT-LTF definition) with $N_{VHT-LTF}$ replaced by N_{HE-LTF} .

In a non-OFDMA HE TB PPDU, the number of HE-LTF symbols, N_{HE-LTF} , is a function of the total number of space-time streams, N_{STS} , as shown in Table 21-13 (Number of VHT-LTFs required for different numbers of space-time streams) in 21.3.8.3.5 (VHT-LTF definition), replacing $N_{VHT-LTF}$ by N_{HE-LTF} . For an OFDMA HE TB PPDU N_{HE-LTF} may be 1, 2, 4, 6 or 8, which is greater than or equal to the maximum value of the initial number of HE-LTF symbols for each RU r , which is calculated as a function of $N_{STS,r,total}$, separately based on Table 21-13 (Number of VHT-LTFs required for different numbers of space-time streams) in 21.3.8.3.5 (VHT-LTF definition), replacing $N_{VHT-LTF}$ by N_{HE-LTF} .

An HE PPDU supports 3 HE-LTF types: 1x HE-LTF, 2x HE-LTF and 4x HE-LTF. Table 27-31 (HE-LTF type and GI duration combinations for various HE PPDU formats) defines whether a particular HE-LTF type and GI duration combination is mandatory, conditional mandatory or optional for each HE PPDU format.

Table 27-31—HE-LTF type and GI duration combinations for various HE PPDU formats

HE-LTF type and GI duration combination	HE SU PPDU	HE MU PPDU	HE ER SU PPDU	HE TB PPDU	HE sounding NDP	HE TB feedback NDP
1x HE-LTF 0.8 μ s GI	O	N/A	O	N/A	N/A	N/A
1x HE-LTF 1.6 μ s GI	N/A	N/A	N/A	CM3	N/A	N/A
2x HE-LTF 0.8 μ s GI	M	M	M	N/A	M	N/A
2x HE-LTF 1.6 μ s GI	M	M	M	M	M	N/A
4x HE-LTF 0.8 μ s GI	CM1	CM2	O	N/A	N/A	N/A
4x HE-LTF 3.2 μ s GI	M	M	M	M	O	M

M = mandatory
CM1 = Mandatory if the STA supports 4x HE-LTF 0.8 μ s GI for HE ER SU PPDU. Otherwise, optional.
CM2 = For an AP, mandatory for transmission if the AP supports 4x HE-LTF 0.8 μ s GI for HE ER SU PPDU. For a non-AP STA, mandatory for reception if the non-AP STA supports 4x HE-LTF 0.8 μ s GI for HE ER SU PPDU. Otherwise, optional.
CM3 = Mandatory for full bandwidth UL MU-MIMO if the STA supports UL MU-MIMO. Otherwise, not supported. N/A for partial bandwidth UL MU-MIMO or UL OFDMA.
O = optional
N/A = not supported by the PPDU format

In an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, the combination of HE-LTF type and GI duration is indicated in HE-SIG-A field. In an HE TB PPDU, the combination of HE-LTF type and GI duration

is indicated in the Trigger frame that triggers the transmission of the PPDU. If an HE PPDU is an HE sounding NDP, the combinations of HE-LTF types and GI durations are listed in 27.3.18 (Transmit specification). If an HE PPDU is an HE TB feedback NDP, the combinations of types and GI durations are listed in 27.3.17 (HE TB feedback NDP).

The duration of each HE-LTF symbol excluding GI is $T_{\text{HE-LTF}}$, defined in Equation (27-40).

$$T_{\text{HE-LTF}} = \begin{cases} T_{\text{HE-LTF-1X}}, & \text{if } 1x \text{ HE-LTF} \\ T_{\text{HE-LTF-2X}}, & \text{if } 2x \text{ HE-LTF} \\ T_{\text{HE-LTF-4X}}, & \text{if } 4x \text{ HE-LTF} \end{cases} \quad (27-40)$$

where $T_{\text{HE-LTF-1X}}$, $T_{\text{HE-LTF-2X}}$, $T_{\text{HE-LTF-4X}}$ are defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants).

In a 20 MHz transmission, the 1x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-122: 122] is given by Equation (27-41).

In a 20 MHz transmission, the 2x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-122: 122] is given by Equation (27-42).

1 In a 20 MHz transmission, the 4x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-122: 122] is given by
 2 Equation (27-43).

$$\begin{aligned}
 5 & \text{HELT}_{-122,122} = \\
 6 & \{ -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 7 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 8 & +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 9 & +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 10 & +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 11 & -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 12 & -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, \\
 13 & +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 14 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 15 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 16 & +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, \\
 17 & +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, \\
 18 & +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 19 & \} \quad (27-43)
 \end{aligned}$$

20 In a 40 MHz transmission, the 1x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-244: 244] is given by
 21 Equation (27-44).

$$\begin{aligned}
 25 & \text{HELT}_{-244,244} = \\
 26 & \{ +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, \\
 27 & 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, \\
 28 & 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, \\
 29 & 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, - \\
 30 & 1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 31 & -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 32 & 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, \\
 33 & 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 34 & 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 35 & 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 36 & 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, \\
 37 & 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, - \\
 38 & 1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 39 & -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 40 & 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 41 & 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 42 & 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 43 & +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\
 44 & +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1 \} \quad (27-44)
 \end{aligned}$$

1 In a 40 MHz transmission, the 2x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-244: 244] is given by
 2 Equation (27-45).

$$\begin{aligned}
 5 & \text{HELT}_{-244,244} = \\
 6 & \{+1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, \\
 7 & 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, \\
 8 & 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, \\
 9 & 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, \\
 10 & 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, \\
 11 & 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, \\
 12 & 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, \\
 13 & 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, \\
 14 & 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, \\
 15 & 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, \\
 16 & 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, - \\
 17 & 1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, \\
 18 & -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, \\
 19 & +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, \\
 20 & -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, \\
 21 & +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, \\
 22 & +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, \\
 23 & +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, \\
 24 & -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, \\
 25 & +1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, \\
 26 & -1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, -1, 0, +1, 0, +1, 0, \\
 27 & \} \quad (27-45)
 \end{aligned}$$

29 In a 40 MHz transmission, the 4x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-244: 244] is given by
 30 Equation (27-46).

$$\begin{aligned}
 33 & \text{HELT}_{-244,244} = \\
 34 & \{+1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, \\
 35 & +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, \\
 36 & +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, \\
 37 & +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, \\
 38 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, \\
 39 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, \\
 40 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 41 & +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, \\
 42 & -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, \\
 43 & -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 44 & -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 45 & +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 46 & +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 47 & +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 48 & +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 49 & +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, \\
 50 & +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, \\
 51 & +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 52 & -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 53 & +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 54 & +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 55 & +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 56 & +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 57 & -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 58 & -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 59 & +1, -1, -1, -1\} \quad (27-46)
 \end{aligned}$$

In an 80 MHz transmission, the 1x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-500: 500] is given by Equation (27-47).

In an 80 MHz transmission, the 2x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-500: 500] is given by Equation (27-48).

(27-48)

49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 In an 80 MHz transmission, the 4x HE-LTF sequence transmitted on subcarriers [-500: 500] is given by
 2 Equation (27-49).

$$\begin{aligned}
 5 & \text{HELT}_{-500,500} = \\
 6 & \{+1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, - \\
 7 & 1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, \\
 8 & -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 9 & -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 10 & -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, \\
 11 & +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, \\
 12 & +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, \\
 13 & -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 14 & -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 15 & -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 16 & +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, \\
 17 & -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 18 & -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 19 & +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 20 & -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 21 & -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 22 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 23 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, \\
 24 & -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, \\
 25 & +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 26 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 27 & -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 28 & +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 29 & +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 30 & +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 31 & -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 32 & +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 33 & -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 34 & -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 35 & +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 36 & -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 37 & -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 38 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 39 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 40 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 41 & +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 42 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 43 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 44 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 45 & +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 46 & +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, \\
 47 & -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 48 & -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 49 & -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 50 & -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 51 & -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 52 & -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 53 & -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 54 & -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 55 & +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 56 & +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 57 & +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 58 & +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, \\
 59 & \\
 60 & \\
 61 & \\
 62 & \\
 63 & \\
 64 & \\
 65 &
 \end{aligned}$$

(27-49)

In a 160 MHz transmission using a 1x HE-LTF, the 1x HE-LTF sequence is given by Equation (27-50).

where

$LTF_{80\text{MHz_lower_1x}} = \{LTF_{80\text{MHz_left_1x}}, 0, LTF_{80\text{MHz_right_1x}}\}$ shall be used in the lower 80 MHz frequency segment

$LTF_{80\text{MHz_upper_1x}} = \{LTF_{80\text{MHz_left_1x}}, 0, -LTF_{80\text{MHz_right_1x}}\}$ shall be used in the upper 80 MHz frequency segment

$$LTF_{80\text{MHz_right_1x}} = \{0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, \\ 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\ +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, \\ 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\ 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\ -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, \\ 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\ -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, \\ 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, \\ +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, \\ +1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, \\ 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, -1, 0, 0, 0, +1, 0, 0, \\ 0, +1\}$$

In a 160 MHz transmission using a 2x HE-LTF, the 2x HE-LTF sequence is given by Equation (27-51).

where

$LTF_{80MHz_lower_2x} = \{LTF_{80MHz_part1_2x}, LTF_{80MHz_part2_2x}, LTF_{80MHz_part3_2x}, LTF_{80MHz_part4_2x}, LTF_{80MHz_part5_2x}\}$ shall be used in the lower 80 MHz frequency segment

In a 160 MHz transmission using a 4x HE-LTF, the 4x HE-LTF sequence is given by Equation (27-52).

where

$LTF_{80MHz_lower_4x}$ = { $LTF_{80MHz_left_4x}$, 0, $LTF_{80MHz_right_4x}$ } shall be used in the lower 80 MHz frequency segment

$LTF_{80MHz_upper_4x} = \{LTF_{80MHz_left_4x}, 0, -LTF_{80MHz_right_4x}\}$ shall be used in the upper 80 MHz frequency segment

```

1    $LTF_{80MHz\_left\_4x} = \{+1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
2    $-1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1,$ 
3    $+1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1,$ 
4    $1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
5    $-1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
6    $1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
7    $-1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
8    $+1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
9    $+1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
10   $1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1,$ 
11   $+1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1,$ 
12   $+1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
13   $1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
14   $-1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
15   $-1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1,$ 
16   $-1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
17   $1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1,$ 
18   $-1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1,$ 
19   $-1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1,$ 
20   $-1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1,$ 
21   $+1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
22   $+1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
23   $-1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
24   $-1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
25   $+1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
26   $+1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, 0, 0\}$ 
27
28   $LTF_{80MHz\_right\_4x} = \{0, 0, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
29   $-1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1,$ 
30   $-1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1,$ 
31   $-1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1,$ 
32   $-1, +1, -1, -1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
33   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
34   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
35   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
36   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
37   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
38   $+1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
39   $+1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
40   $-1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
41   $-1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
42   $+1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
43   $+1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
44   $+1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1,$ 
45   $+1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1,$ 
46   $+1, +1, +1, +1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
47   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
48   $-1, +1, -1, -1, -1, -1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, -1,$ 
49   $+1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
50   $+1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
51   $+1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1,$ 
52   $-1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1,$ 
53   $-1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, -1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1, +1\}$ 
54
55
56  For an 80+80 MHz transmission using a 1x HE-LTF, the lower 80 MHz frequency segment shall use the
57  80 MHz 1x HE-LTF sequence,  $HELT_{500,500} = LTF_{80MHz\_lower\_1x}$ , and the upper 80 MHz frequency seg-
58  ment shall use the 80 MHz 1x HE-LTF sequence,  $HELT_{-500,500} = LTF_{80MHz\_upper\_1x}$ .
59
60
61  For an 80+80 MHz transmission using a 2x HE-LTF, the lower 80 MHz frequency segment shall use the
62  80 MHz 2x HE-LTF sequence,  $HELT_{-500,500} = LTF_{80MHz\_lower\_2x}$ , and the upper 80 MHz frequency seg-
63  ment shall use the 80 MHz 2x HE-LTF sequence,  $HELT_{-500,500} = LTF_{80MHz\_upper\_2x}$ .
64
65

```

1 For an 80+80 MHz transmission using a 4x HE-LTF, the lower 80 MHz frequency segment shall use the
 2 80 MHz 4x HE-LTF sequence, $HELT\mathbf{F}_{500,500} = LTF_{80MHz_lower_4x}$, and the upper 80 MHz frequency seg-
 3 ment shall use the 80 MHz 4x HE-LTF sequence, $HELT\mathbf{F}_{-500,500} = LTF_{80MHz_upper_4x}$.
 4

6 For an OFDMA transmission, the values of HE-LTF sequence (defined in Equation (27-41) to Equation (27-
 7 56)) are set to zero if they are assigned to subcarriers within RUs that are not allocated to any user (see
 8 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)).
 9

10 In an UL MU-MIMO transmission using the HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode, the HE-LTF sequence
 11 per frequency segment is generated by masking the nonzero elements in the common HE-LTF sequence
 12 repeatedly with a distinct orthogonal code as defined by Equation (27-53).
 13

$$18 HELT\mathbf{F}_{k,u,m}^{\text{Mask}} = HELT\mathbf{F}_k \cdot [P_{8 \times 8}]_{M_{r,u} + m, (\left(\left\lceil \frac{k}{N_{\text{HE-LTF-Type}}} \right\rceil - 1\right) \bmod 8) + 1} \quad (27-53)$$

22 where
 23

24 $HELT\mathbf{F}_k$ is the value of the common HE-LTF sequence on subcarrier k generated by one of the equations
 25 from Equation (27-41) to Equation (27-52) depending on the bandwidth and the HE-LTF type
 26 (excluding the 1x HE-LTF, which shall not be masked).
 27

28 $[P_{8 \times 8}]$ is defined in Equation (21-46)
 29

32 $M_{r,u} + m$ is the row index of the $[P_{8 \times 8}]$ corresponding to spatial time stream m of user u in the r -th RU
 33

$$35 N_{\text{HE-LTF-Type}} = \begin{cases} 2, & \text{for 2x HE-LTF} \\ 1, & \text{for 4x HE-LTF} \end{cases}$$

40 In the HE TB feedback NDP, neither HE single stream pilot HE-LTF mode nor HE masked HE-LTF
 41 sequence mode is applied to the HE-LTF sequence. Only 4x HE-LTF shall be used in the HE TB feedback
 42 NDP. The 4x HE-LTF sequence is generated by Equation (27-54).
 43

$$46 HELT\mathbf{F}_{k,u}^{\text{TB-NDP}} = \begin{cases} HELT\mathbf{F}_k, & \text{if } k \in K_{\text{tone-NDP}_u} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-54)$$

51 where
 52

53 $HELT\mathbf{F}_k$ is the value of the common HE-LTF sequence on subcarrier k generated by one of the 4x HE-
 54 LTF equations (Equation (27-43), Equation (27-46), Equation (27-49), Equation (27-52))
 55 according to the channel bandwidth
 56

57 $K_{\text{tone-NDP}_u}$ is the set of subcarrier indices for user u and is defined in Table 27-32 (HE-LTF subcarrier
 58 mapping for the HE TB feedback NDP) according to the RU_TONE_SET_INDEX and FEED-
 59 BACK_STATUS.
 60

63 The generation of the time domain HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE SU PPDU, HE MU
 64 PPDU, and HE ER SU PPDU is shown in Figure 27-32 (Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency seg-
 65

Table 27-32—HE-LTF subcarrier mapping for the HE TB feedback NDP

RU TONE SET INDEX	80 MHz		40 MHz		20 MHz	
	$K_{\text{tone NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 1}$	$K_{\text{tone NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 0}$	$K_{\text{tone NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 1}$	$K_{\text{tone NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 0}$	$K_{\text{tone NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 1}$	$K_{\text{tone NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 0}$
1	Use 20 MHz FEEDBACK_STATUS = 1 Subcarrier Indices – 384	Use 20 MHz FEEDBACK_STATUS = 0 Subcarrier Indices – 384	Use 20 MHz FEEDBACK_STATUS = 1 Subcarrier Indices – 128	Use 20 MHz FEEDBACK_STATUS = 0 Subcarrier Indices – 128	-113, -77, -41, 6, 42, 78	-112, -76, -40, 7, 43, 79
2					-111, -75, -39, 8, 44, 80	-110, -74, -38, 9, 45, 81
3					-109, -73, -37, 10, 46, 82	-108, -72, -36, 11, 47, 83
4					-107, -71, -35, 12, 48, 84	-106, -70, -34, 13, 49, 85
5					-105, -69, -33, 14, 50, 86	-104, -68, -32, 15, 51, 87
6					-103, -67, -31, 16, 52, 88	-102, -66, -30, 17, 53, 89
7					-101, -65, -29, 18, 54, 90	-100, -64, -28, 19, 55, 91
8					-99, -63, -27, 20, 56, 92	-98, -62, -26, 21, 57, 93
9					-97, -61, -25, 22, 58, 94	-96, -60, -24, 23, 59, 95
10					-95, -59, -23, 24, 60, 96	-94, -58, -22, 25, 61, 97
11					-93, -57, -21, 26, 62, 98	-92, -56, -20, 27, 63, 99
12					-91, -55, -19, 28, 64, 100	-90, -54, -18, 29, 65, 101
13					-89, -53, -17, 30, 66, 102	-88, -52, -16, 31, 67, 103
14					-87, -51, -15, 32, 68, 104	-86, -50, -14, 33, 69, 105
15					-85, -49, -13, 34, 70, 106	-84, -48, -12, 35, 71, 107
16					-83, -47, -11, 36, 72, 108	-82, -46, -10, 37, 73, 109
17					-81, -45, -9, 38, 74, 110	-80, -44, -8, 39, 75, 111
18					-79, -43, -7, 40, 76, 112	-78, -42, -6, 41, 77, 113

Table 27-32—HE-LTF subcarrier mapping for the HE TB feedback NDP (continued)

	80 MHz		40 MHz		20 MHz	
RU_TONE_SET_INDEX	$K_{\text{tone_NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 1}$	$K_{\text{tone_NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 0}$	$K_{\text{tone_NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 1}$	$K_{\text{tone_NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 0}$	$K_{\text{tone_NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 1}$	$K_{\text{tone_NDP}_u \text{ if FEEDBACK_STATUS is } 0}$
19-36	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 1 Subcarrier Indices – 128	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 0 Subcarrier Indices – 128	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 1 Subcarrier Indices + 128	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 0 Subcarrier Indices + 128		
37-54	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 1 Subcarrier Indices + 128	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 0 Subcarrier Indices + 128				
55-72	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 1 Subcarrier Indices + 384	Use 20 MHz FEED- BACK_STA- TUS = 0 Subcarrier Indices + 384				
The RU_TONE_SET_INDEX for 80+80 MHz and 160 MHz shall use the 80 MHz RU_TONE_SET_INDEX definition for the lower and upper 80 MHz. The RU_TONE_SET_INDEX values 1-72 are mapped to the lower 80 MHz and the RU_TONE_SET_INDEX values 73-144 are mapped to the upper 80 MHz.						

ment in an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, and HE ER SU PPDU) where $A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k$ is given by Equation (27-55).

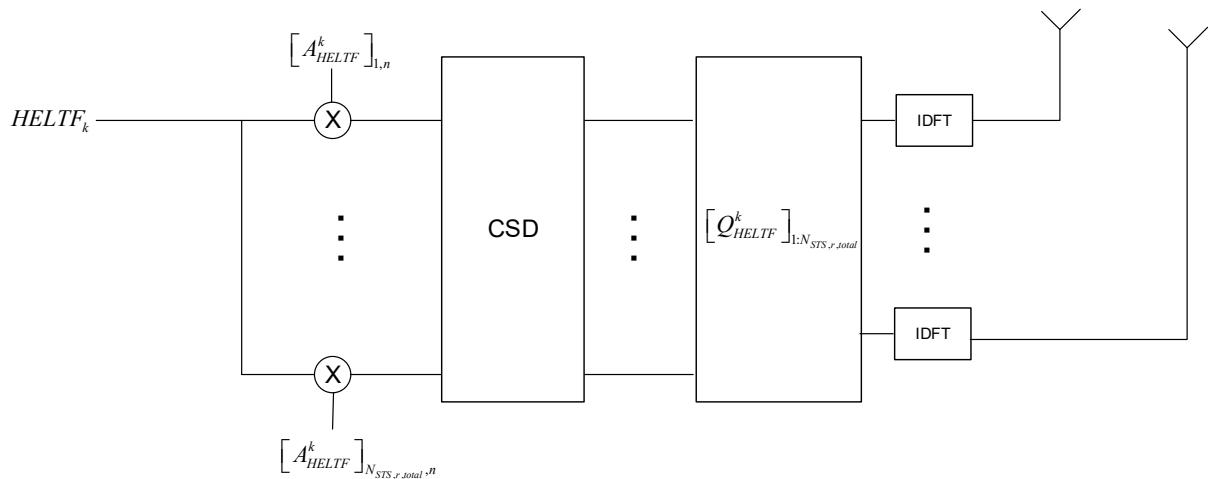


Figure 27-32—Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU, and HE ER SU PPDU

The generation of the time domain HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE TB PPDU is shown in Figure 27-33 (Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE TB PPDU for user u on RU r).

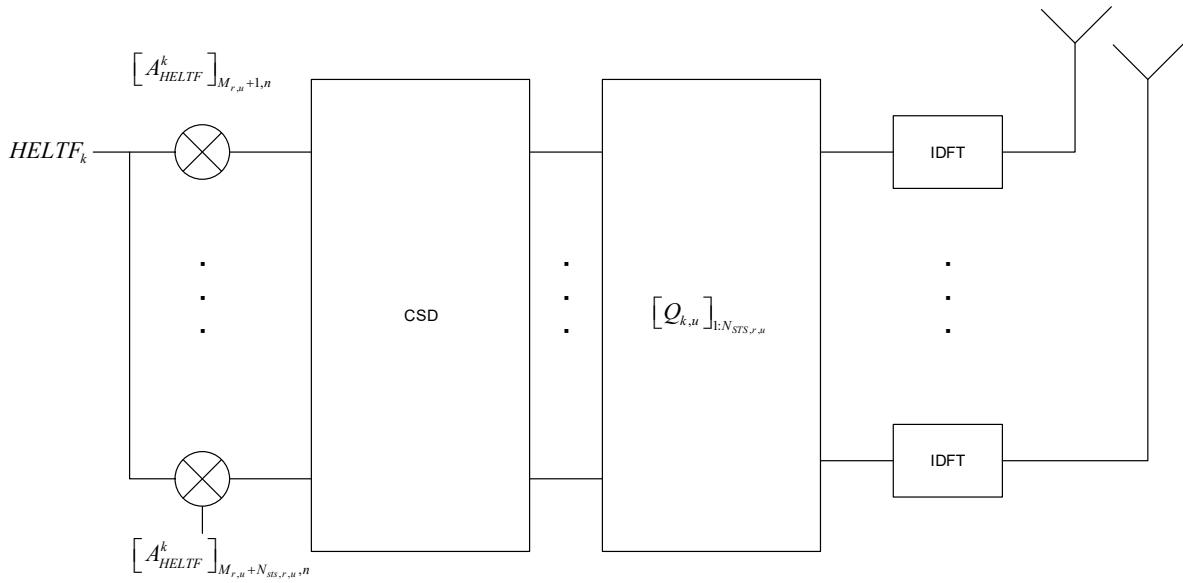


Figure 27-33—Generation of HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment in an HE TB PPDU for user u on RU r

The generation of the time domain symbol of a 1x HE-LTF is equivalent to modulating every 4 subcarriers in an OFDM symbol of 12.8 μ s excluding GI, and then transmitting only the first $\frac{1}{4}$ of the OFDM symbol in the time domain, as shown in Figure 27-34 (Generation of 1x HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment).

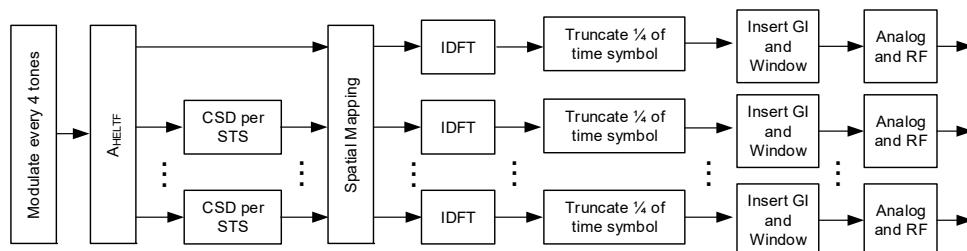


Figure 27-34—Generation of 1x HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment

The generation of the time domain symbol of a 2x HE-LTF is equivalent to modulating every other subcarrier in an OFDM symbol of 12.8 μ s excluding GI, and then transmitting only the first half of the OFDM

symbol in time domain, as shown in Figure 27-35 (Generation of 2x HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment).

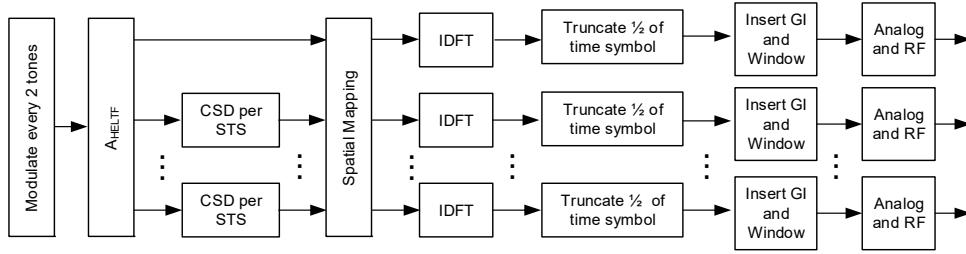


Figure 27-35—Generation of 2x HE-LTF symbols per frequency segment

$A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k$ is given by Equation (27-55).

$$A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k = \begin{cases} R_{\text{HE-LTF}}, & \text{if } k \in K_{\text{Pilot}} \text{ and HE single stream pilot HE LTF mode is used} \\ P_{\text{HE-LTF}}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-55)$$

where

K_{Pilot} is the set of subcarrier indices for the pilot subcarriers as defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers).

$R_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ is a $N_{\text{HE-LTF}} \times N_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ matrix whose elements are defined in Equation (27-56).

$$[R_{\text{HE-LTF}}]_{m,n} = [P_{\text{HE-LTF}}]_{1,n}, \quad 1 \leq m, n \leq N_{\text{HE-LTF}} \quad (27-56)$$

$P_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ is defined in Equation (27-57).

$$P_{\text{HE-LTF}} = \begin{cases} P_{4 \times 4}, & N_{\text{HE-LTF}} \leq 4 \\ P_{6 \times 6}, & N_{\text{HE-LTF}} = 5, 6 \\ P_{8 \times 8}, & N_{\text{HE-LTF}} = 7, 8 \end{cases} \quad (27-57)$$

where $P_{4 \times 4}$ is defined in Equation (19-27), $P_{6 \times 6}$ is defined in Equation (21-44), and $P_{8 \times 8}$ is defined in Equation (21-45).

If the 1x HE-LTF is used for non-OFDMA UL MU-MIMO, the HE no pilot HE-LTF mode is used.

In an HE SU PPDU, HE MU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, the time domain representation of the waveform transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} shall be as described by Equation (27-58).

$$r_{\text{HE-LTF}}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{\text{TX}})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\sum_{r=0}^{N_{RU}-1} \alpha_r^2 |K_r|}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_{\text{HE-LTF}}-1} w_{T_{\text{HE-LTF}}}(t - n T_{\text{HE-LTF}}) \sum_{r=0}^{N_{RU}-1} \frac{\alpha_r \sqrt{|K_r|}}{\sqrt{N_{STS,r,\text{total}} |K_r^{\text{HE-LTF}}|}} \sum_{k \in K_r} \eta_{\text{HE-LTF}, k} \sum_{u=0}^{N_{user,r}-1} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS,r,u}} \left(\left[Q_k^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{\text{TX}}, (M_{r,u}+m)} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k \right]_{(M_{r,u}+m), (n+1)} HLT \mathbf{F}_{k,u,m} \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F,\text{HE}} (t - n T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}} - T_{GI,\text{HE-LTF}} - T_{CS,\text{HE}}(M_{r,u}+m))) \right) \quad (27-58)$$

In an HE TB PPDU, the time domain representation of the waveform of user u in the r -th RU, transmitted on frequency segment i_{Seg} and transmit chain i_{TX} , shall be as described by Equation (27-59).

$$r_{\text{HE-LTF}, r, u}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{STS, r, u}|K_r^{\text{HE-LTF}}|}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_{\text{HE-LTF}}-1} w_{T_{\text{HE-LTF}}}(t - nT_{\text{HE-LTF}}) \sum_{k \in K_r} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS, r, u}} \left[Q_k^{(i_{Seg})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} \left[A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k \right]_{(M_{r, u}+m), (n+1)} HLT F_{k, u, m} \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F, \text{HE}}(t - nT_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}} - T_{GI, \text{HE-LTF}} - T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r, u}+m))) \quad (27-59)$$

In Equation (27-58) and Equation (27-59) the following notations are used:

$N_{user, r}$ is the number of HE MU PPDU recipients (see Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)) in RU r

$HLTF_{k, u, m}$ is the HE-LTF sequence applied on subcarrier k for spatial stream m of user u

$$HLTF_{k, u, m} = \begin{cases} HLT F_{k, u, m}^{\text{Mask}}, & \text{if HE masked HE-LTF sequence mode is used} \\ HLT F_{k, u}^{\text{TB-NDP}}, & \text{for an HE TB NDP report response} \\ HLT F_k, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

α_r is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

$\eta_{\text{HE-LTF}, k}$ is an HE PPDU format dependent scaling factor, defined by

$$\eta_{\text{HE-LTF}, k} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}, & \text{for an HE ER SU PPDU} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$N_{\text{HE-LTF}}$ is the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-LTF field

$T_{CS, \text{HE}}(M_{r, u}+m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream $M_{r, u}+m$ as defined in 27.3.10.2.2 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields)

$Q_k^{(i_{Seg})}$ and $Q_{k, u}^{(i_{Seg})}$ are defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

$A_{\text{HE-LTF}}^k$ is defined in Equation (27-55)

$M_{r, u}$ is given in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters) for HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU. For an HE TB PPDU it is given in the Starting Spatial Stream subfield in the SS Allocation subfield of Trigger frame User info field for u -th user in r -th occupied RU in Figure 9-64e (SS Allocation subfield format).

K_r is the set of subcarrier indices for the tones in the RU r as defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

$|K_r|$ and $|K_r^{\text{HE-LTF}}|$ are defined below Equation (27-5)

$|K_r^{\text{HE-LTF}}|$ is the cardinality of the set of modulated subcarriers within K_r for HE-LTF field, as defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals)

Other variables are defined below Equation (27-1), Equation (27-3), Equation (27-4), Equation (27-6), Equation (27-8), Equation (27-12) and Equation (27-40)

27.3.11 Data field

27.3.11.1 General

The number of OFDM symbols in the Data field is determined by the LENGTH field in the L-SIG field (see Equation (27-11)), the preamble duration and the settings of the GI+LTF Size, Pre-FEC Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity fields in the HE-SIG-A field (see 27.3.10.7 (HE-SIG-A)) for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU

PPDU and HE MU PPDU, or in the soliciting Triggering frame for an HE TB PPDU. Data field OFDM symbols in an HE PPDU shall use a DFT period of 12.8 μ s and subcarrier spacing of 78.125 kHz. An HE STA shall support Data field OFDM symbols in an HE PPDU with guard interval durations of 0.8 μ s, 1.6 μ s and 3.2 μ s. HE PPDUs shall have HE single stream pilot in the Data field. In UL MU-MIMO transmissions, all streams use the same pilot sequence.

If BCC encoding is used, the Data field shall consist of the SERVICE field, the PSDU, the pre-FEC PHY padding bits, the tail bits, and the post-FEC padding bits. If LDPC encoding is used, the Data field shall consist of the SERVICE field, the PSDU, the pre-FEC PHY padding bits, and the post-FEC padding bits. No tail bits are present if LDPC encoding is used.

The Data field of the HE PPDU contains data for one or more users.

27.3.11.2 Pre-FEC padding process

A two-step padding process is applied to an HE PPDU. A pre-FEC padding process including both pre-FEC MAC and pre-FEC PHY padding is applied before conducting FEC coding, and a post-FEC PHY padding process is applied on the FEC encoded bits.

Four pre-FEC padding boundaries partition the last one (in the case of non-STBC) or two (in the case of STBC) OFDM symbols of an HE PPDU into four symbol segments. The pre-FEC padding may pad toward one of the four possible boundaries. The four pre-FEC padding boundaries are represented by a pre-FEC padding factor parameter.

Figure 27-36 (HE PPDU padding process in the last OFDM symbol (non-STBC) if $a = 1$) illustrates these four possible symbol segments in the last OFDM symbol of a non-STBC case, and the general padding process assuming the desired pre-FEC padding boundary, represented by the pre-FEC padding factor, is 1. In the case of STBC, the FEC output bits and post-FEC padding bits are modulated into the last two OFDM symbols by STBC encoding, each with the same pre-FEC padding boundary.

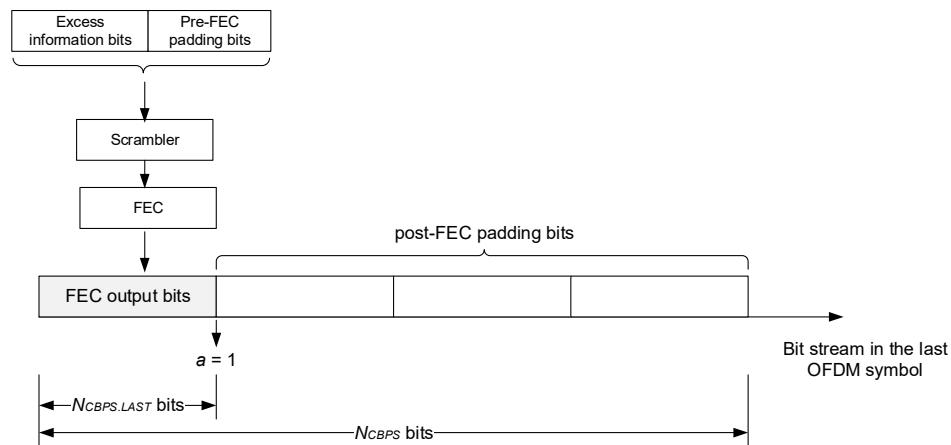


Figure 27-36—HE PPDU padding process in the last OFDM symbol (non-STBC) if $a = 1$

The pre-FEC padding process is described in this subclause, and the encoding and post-FEC padding process are described in 27.3.11.5 (Coding). While this subclause describes the pre-FEC padding processing of an SU transmission, its extension to MU transmission is described in 27.3.11.5.4 (Encoding process for an HE MU PPDU) and 27.3.11.5.5 (Encoding process for an HE TB PPDU).

1 In an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU transmission, the transmitter first computes the number of bits
 2 left in the last OFDM symbol(s) based on Equation (27-60).

$$5 N_{Excess} = \text{mod}(8 \cdot \text{APEP_LENGTH} + N_{Tail} + N_{service}, m_{STBC} \cdot N_{DBPS}) \quad (27-60)$$

8 where

10 m_{STBC} is 2 if STBC is used, and 1 otherwise

11 APEP_LENGTH is the TXVECTOR parameter APEP_LENGTH

13 N_{Tail} is the number of tail bits per encoder as defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

15 $N_{service}$ is the number of bits in the SERVICE field as defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

17 N_{DBPS} is the number of data bits per symbol

20 Based on N_{Excess} , compute the initial number of symbol segments in the last OFDM symbol(s), initial pre-FEC padding factor value or a_{init} , as shown in Equation (27-61).

$$24 a_{init} = \begin{cases} 4, & \text{if } N_{Excess} = 0 \\ 26 \min\left(\left\lceil \frac{N_{Excess}}{m_{STBC} \cdot N_{DBPS, SHORT}} \right\rceil, 4\right), & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-61)$$

31 where

33 $N_{DBPS, SHORT} = N_{CBPS, SHORT} \cdot R$, in which R is the coding rate, and

35 $N_{CBPS, SHORT} = N_{SD, SHORT} \cdot N_{SS} \cdot N_{BPSCS}$;

38 The parameter $N_{SD, short}$ values for different RU sizes are as shown in Table 27-33 (NSD,short values).

41 **Table 27-33— $N_{SD, short}$ values**

RU Size	$N_{SD, short}$	
	DCM = 0	DCM = 1
26-tone	6	2
52-tone	12	6
106-tone	24	12
242-tone	60	30
484-tone	120	60
996-tone	240	120
2×996-tone	492	246

64 Given the a_{init} values, the initial number of data bits per symbol and the initial number of coded bits per
 65 symbol in the last OFDM symbol(s) are defined in Equation (27-62).

$$N_{DBPS, last, init} = \begin{cases} a_{init} N_{DBPS, SHORT}, & \text{if } a_{init} < 4 \\ N_{DBPS}, & \text{if } a_{init} = 4 \end{cases} \quad (27-62)$$

$$N_{CBPS, last, init} = \begin{cases} a_{init} N_{CBPS, SHORT}, & \text{if } a_{init} < 4 \\ N_{CBPS}, & \text{if } a_{init} = 4 \end{cases}$$

For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, the number of pre-FEC pad bits is calculated using Equation (27-63).

$$N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}} = (N_{SYM, init} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS, last, init} - 8 \cdot \text{APEP_LENGTH} - N_{Tail} - N_{service} \quad (27-63)$$

where $N_{SYM, init}$ is the initial number of data OFDM symbols with BCC or LDPC encoding in an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU as defined by Equation (27-64).

$$N_{SYM, init} = m_{STBC} \cdot \left\lceil \frac{8 \cdot \text{APEP_LENGTH} + N_{Tail} + N_{service}}{m_{STBC}N_{DBPS}} \right\rceil \quad (27-64)$$

Among the pre-FEC padding bits, the MAC delivers a PSDU that fills the available octets in the Data field of the HE PPDU (see A-MPDU padding for HE PPDUs in 26.6.2.2 (A-MPDU padding in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU) and 26.6.2.3 (A-MPDU padding in an HE TB PPDU)), toward the desired initial pre-FEC padding boundary, represented by a_{init} value, in the last OFDM symbol(s). The number of pre-FEC pad bits added by MAC will always be a multiple of 8. The PHY then determines the number of remaining pad bits to add and appends them to the PSDU. The number of pre-FEC pad bits added by PHY will always be 0 to 7. The procedure is defined in Equation (27-65).

$$N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC, MAC}} = \left\lfloor \frac{N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}}}{8} \right\rfloor \cdot 8 \quad (27-65)$$

$$N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC, PHY}} = N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}} \bmod 8$$

27.3.11.3 SERVICE field

The SERVICE field of HE PPDU is shown in Table 27-34 (SERVICE field).

Table 27-34—SERVICE field

Bits	Field	Description
B0-B6	Scrambler Initialization	Set to 0
B7-B15	Reserved	Set to 0

27.3.11.4 Scrambler

The SERVICE field, PSDU, and pre-FEC PHY padding of the Data field shall be scrambled by the scrambler defined in 17.3.5.5 (PHY DATA scrambler and descrambler). The Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) TXVECTOR parameters CH_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT and DYN_BANDWIDTH_IN_NON_HT are not present and therefore the initial

1 state of the scrambler is set to a nonzero pseudorandom seed. A different nonzero pseudorandom seed may
 2 be used for each user in an HE MU PPDU.
 3

4 **27.3.11.5 Coding**
 5

6 The Data field shall be encoded using either the binary convolutional code (BCC) defined in 27.3.11.5.1
 7 (BCC coding and puncturing) or the low density parity check (LDPC) code defined in 27.3.11.5.2 (LDPC
 8 coding). The coding type is selected by the Coding field in HE-SIG-A in an HE SU PPDU or an HE ER SU
 9 PPDU, or the Coding field in HE-SIG-B per user subfield(s) in an HE MU PPDU, or the UL FEC Coding
 10 Type subfield in User Info field in the corresponding Trigger frame in the case of an HE TB PPDU, as
 11 defined in 27.3.10.7 (HE-SIG-A), 27.3.10.8 (HE-SIG-B) and 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format), respectively.
 12

13 When conducting BCC FEC encoding for an HE PPDU, the number of encoders is always 1.
 14

15 LDPC is the only FEC coding scheme in the HE PPDU Data field for a 484-, 996-, and 2×996-tone RU.
 16 LDPC is the only FEC coding scheme in the HE PPDU Data field for HE-MCSs 10 and 11. Support for
 17 BCC coding is limited to less than or equal to four spatial streams and HE-MCSs 0 to 9 (per user in case of
 18 MU-MIMO), and is mandatory (for both transmit and receive) for RU sizes less than or equal to a 242-tone
 19 RU. The LDPC Coding In Payload subfield of the HE Capabilities element indicates support for the trans-
 20 mission and reception of the LDPC encoded PPDUs. Support for LDPC coding (for both transmit and
 21 receive) is mandatory for HE STAs declaring support for at least one of HE 40/80/160/80+80 SU PPDU
 22 bandwidths, for HE STAs declaring support for more than 4 spatial streams, or for HE STAs declaring sup-
 23 port for HE-MCSs 10 and 11, according to the LDPC Coding In Payload subfield of the HE Capabilities ele-
 24 ment as defined in 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element). Otherwise, support of LDPC coding for either
 25 transmit or receive is optional.
 26

27 **27.3.11.5.1 BCC coding and puncturing**
 28

29 The information bits and pre-FEC padding bits of user u are encoded by a rate $R = 1/2$ convolutional encoder
 30 defined in 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder). After encoding, the encoded data is punctured by the method
 31 defined in 17.3.5.6 (Convolutional encoder) (except for rate 5/6), to achieve the rate selected by the modula-
 32 tion and coding scheme. In the case that rate 5/6 coding is selected, the puncturing scheme will be the same
 33 as described in 19.3.11.6 (Binary convolutional coding and puncturing).
 34

35 If DCM is used with BPSK modulation in a 106-tone or 242-tone RU with $N_{SS} = 1$, then after every
 36 $2 \times N_{DBPS}$ coded bits, one padding bit is added. The padding bit may be set to any value.
 37

38 For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU with BCC encoding,
 39

$$N_{SYM} = N_{SYM,init} \quad (27-66)$$

40 and
 41

$$a = a_{init} \quad (27-67)$$

42 where $N_{SYM,init}$ is defined in Equation (27-64), a_{init} is defined in Equation (27-61) and a is the pre-FEC pad-
 43 ding factor.
 44

45 The number of data bits per symbol in the last OFDM symbol(s) of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU is
 46 $N_{DBPS,last} = N_{DBPS,last,init}$, where $N_{DBPS,last,init}$ is defined in Equation (27-62).
 47

48 The number of coded bits per symbol in the last OFDM symbol(s) of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU
 49 is $N_{CBPS,last} = N_{CBPS,last,init}$, where $N_{CBPS,last,init}$ is defined in Equation (27-62).
 50

27.3.11.5.2 LDPC coding

For an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU using LDPC coding on the Data field, the LDPC coding process described in 19.3.11.7 (LDPC codes) shall be used with the following modifications. First, all bits in the Data field including the scrambled SERVICE, PSDU, and pre-FEC pad bits are encoded. Thus, N_{pld} for HE PPDUs shall be computed using Equation (27-68) instead of Equation (19-35).

$$N_{pld} = (N_{SYM, init} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS, last, init} \quad (27-68)$$

where $N_{SYM, init}$ is defined in Equation (27-64).

Following the calculation of N_{pld} , N_{avbits} shall be computed using Equation (27-69) instead of Equation (19-36).

$$N_{avbits} = (N_{SYM, init} - m_{STBC}) \cdot N_{CBPS} + m_{STBC} \cdot N_{CBPS, last, init} \quad (27-69)$$

In addition, in step d) of LDPC encoding process as described in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), if the following condition is met:

$$(N_{punc} > 0.1 \times N_{CW} \times L_{LDPC} \times (1 - R)) \text{ AND } \left(N_{shrt} < 1.2 \times N_{punc} \times \frac{R}{1 - R} \right) \text{ is true OR if}$$

$$N_{punc} > 0.3 \times N_{CW} \times L_{LDPC} \times (1 - R) \text{ is true,}$$

then the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field of HE-SIG-A shall be set to 1, N_{avbits} shall be increased according to the Equation (27-70) instead of Equations (19-39), and N_{punc} shall be recomputed as in Equation (19-40):

$$N_{avbits} = \begin{cases} N_{avbits} + m_{STBC} \cdot (N_{CBPS} - 3N_{CBPS, short}), & \text{if } a_{init} = 3 \\ N_{avbits} + m_{STBC} \cdot N_{CBPS, short}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-70)$$

and then compute the pre-FEC padding factor a and N_{SYM} using Equation (27-71):

$$\begin{cases} N_{SYM} = N_{SYM, init} + m_{STBC} \text{ and } a = 1, & \text{if } a_{init} = 4 \\ N_{SYM} = N_{SYM, init} \text{ and } a = a_{init} + 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-71)$$

If in step d) of LDPC encoding process as described in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), the above mentioned condition is not met, then the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field in HE-SIG-A shall be set to 0, and

$$\begin{aligned} N_{SYM} &= N_{SYM, init} \\ a &= a_{init} \end{aligned} \quad (27-72)$$

Using the pre-FEC padding factor a , compute the N_{CBPS} of the last symbol as:

$$N_{CBPS, last} = \begin{cases} a \cdot N_{CBPS, short}, & \text{if } a < 4 \\ N_{CBPS}, & \text{if } a = 4 \end{cases} \quad (27-73)$$

The number of data bits of the last symbol is calculated as $N_{DBPS, last} = N_{DBPS, last, init}$.

1 LDPC coding used in HE MU PPDUs shall also follow the definitions in 19.3.11.7 (LDPC codes). Refer to
 2 27.3.11.5.4 (Encoding process for an HE MU PPDU) for a description of the LDPC encoding process for
 3 HE MU PPDUs.
 4

5 27.3.11.5.3 Post-FEC padding

6 The number of post-FEC padding bits in each of the last m_{STBC} symbol(s) is computed by:
 7

$$8 N_{PAD,Post-FEC} = N_{CBPS} - N_{CBPS,last} \quad (27-74)$$

9 The last m_{STBC} symbols shall consist of $N_{CBPS,last}$ bits from the FEC output followed by $N_{PAD,Post-FEC}$ post-
 10 FEC padding bits. The values of the post-FEC padding bits are not specified and are left up to implementa-
 11 tion.
 12

13 27.3.11.5.4 Encoding process for an HE MU PPDU

14 For an HE MU PPDU, all the users shall use a common pre-FEC padding factor value and a common N_{SYM}
 15 value. The padding process is described as follows.
 16

17 First compute initial pre-FEC padding factor value, $a_{init,u}$, for each user u using Equation (27-61), and the
 18 initial number of OFDM symbols, $N_{SYM,init,u}$ for each user u using Equation (27-64). Among all the users,
 19 derive the user index with the longest encoded packet duration, as in Equation (27-75).
 20

$$21 u_{\max} = \arg \max_{u=0}^{N_{user,total}-1} (N_{SYM,init,u} - m_{STBC} + \frac{m_{STBC}a_{init,u}}{4}) \quad (27-75)$$

22 where
 23

$$24 \arg \max f(x) := \{x | x \in [0, N_{user,total} - 1] \wedge \forall y \in [0, N_{user,total} - 1]; f(y) \leq f(x)\}$$

25 m_{STBC} is the common STBC setting among all the users, as described in 27.3.11.7 (Segment parser).
 26

27 Then the common a_{init} and $N_{SYM,init}$ values among all the users are derived by Equation (27-76):
 28

$$29 N_{SYM,init} = N_{SYM,init,u_{\max}} \quad (27-76)$$

$$30 a_{init} = a_{init,u_{\max}}$$

31 Calculate each user's initial number of coded bits in its last symbol as below:
 32

$$33 N_{DBPS,last,init,u} = \begin{cases} a_{init}N_{DBPS,short,u}, & \text{if } a_{init} < 4 \\ N_{DBPS,u}, & \text{if } a_{init} = 4 \end{cases} \quad (27-77)$$

$$34 N_{CBPS,last,init,u} = \begin{cases} a_{init}N_{CBPS,short,u}, & \text{if } a_{init} < 4 \\ N_{CBPS,u}, & \text{if } a_{init} = 4 \end{cases}$$

35 For each user with LDPC encoding, the number of pre-FEC padding bits is computed as in Equation (27-
 36 78):
 37

$$38 N_{PAD,Pre-FEC,u} = (N_{SYM,init} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS,u} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,init,u} \quad (27-78)$$

$$39 - 8 \cdot \text{APEP_LENGTH}_u - N_{service}$$

1 For each user with LDPC encoding, the parameters $N_{pld,u}$ and $N_{avbits,u}$ are computed using Equation (27-79)
 2 and Equation (27-80) respectively:

$$N_{pld,u} = (N_{SYM,init} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS,u} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,init,u} \quad (27-79)$$

$$N_{avbits,u} = (N_{SYM,init} - m_{STBC})N_{CBPS,u} + m_{STBC}N_{CBPS,last,init,u} \quad (27-80)$$

10 For each user with LDPC encoding continue LDPC encoding process as in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding
 11 process) starting with the parameters $N_{pld,u}$ and $N_{avbits,u}$. If there is at least one user with LDPC encoding
 12 for which step d) of the LDPC encoding process in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process) meets the
 13 following condition:

$$(N_{punc,u} > 0.1 \times N_{CW,u} \times L_{LDPC,u} \times (1 - R_u)) \text{ AND } \left(N_{shrt,u} < 1.2 \times N_{punc,u} \times \frac{R_u}{1 - R_u} \right) \text{ is true OR if}$$

$$N_{punc,u} > 0.3 \times N_{CW,u} \times L_{LDPC,u} \times (1 - R_u) \text{ is true,}$$

20 where $N_{punc,u}$, $N_{CW,u}$, $L_{LDPC,u}$ and $N_{shrt,u}$ are the LDPC encoding parameters for user u , as defined in
 21 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), and R_u is the coding rate of user u , then the LDPC Extra Sym-
 22 bol Segment field in HE-SIG-A shall be set to 1, and all the users with LDPC encoding shall increment
 23 N_{avbits} and recomputed N_{punc} , by the following two equations once:

$$N_{avbits,u} = \begin{cases} N_{avbits,u} + m_{STBC} \cdot (N_{CBPS} - 3N_{CBPS,short,u}), & \text{if } a_{init} = 3 \\ N_{avbits,u} + m_{STBC} \cdot N_{CBPS,short,u}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-81)$$

$$N_{punc,u} = \max(0, (N_{CW,u} \times L_{LDPC,u}) - N_{avbits,u} - N_{shrt,u}) \quad (27-82)$$

34 Update the common pre-FEC padding factor and N_{SYM} values for all users by the following equation:

$$\begin{cases} N_{SYM} = N_{SYM,init} + m_{STBC} \text{ and } a = 1, & \text{if } a_{init} = 4 \\ N_{SYM} = N_{SYM,init} \text{ and } a = a_{init} + 1, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-83)$$

41 If none of the users with LDPC encoding in step d) of 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process) meet the
 42 condition $(N_{punc,u} > 0.1 \times N_{CW,u} \times L_{LDPC,u} \times (1 - R_u))$ and $\left(N_{shrt,u} < 1.2 \times N_{punc,u} \times \frac{R_u}{1 - R_u} \right)$ are true or
 43 $N_{punc,u} > 0.3 \times N_{CW,u} \times L_{LDPC,u} \times (1 - R_u)$ is true, or if all the users in the HE MU PPDU are BCC
 44 encoded, then the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field in HE-SIG-A shall be set to 0, and the common pre-
 45 FEC padding factor and N_{SYM} values for all users shall be updated by Equation (27-84).

$$a = a_{init}, N_{SYM} = N_{SYM,init} \quad (27-84)$$

54 For the users with LDPC encoding, $N_{DBPS,last,u} = N_{DBPS,last,init,u}$

57 For the users with BCC encoding, update the N_{DBPS} of the last symbol as

$$N_{DBPS,last,u} = \begin{cases} a \cdot N_{DBPS,short,u} & \text{if } a < 4 \\ N_{DBPS,u} & \text{if } a = 4 \end{cases} \quad (27-85)$$

65 For each user with either LDPC or BCC encoding, update the N_{CBPS} of the last symbol as

$$N_{CBPS, last, u} = \begin{cases} a \cdot N_{CBPS, short, u} & \text{if } a < 4 \\ N_{CBPS, u} & \text{if } a = 4 \end{cases}$$

For the users with BCC encoding, the number of pre-FEC padding bits is shown in Equation (27-86).

$$N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}, u} = (N_{SYM} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS, u} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS, last, u} - 8 \cdot \text{APEP_LENGTH}_u - N_{Tail} - N_{service} \quad (27-86)$$

For each user with either LDPC or BCC encoding, the number of post-FEC padding bits in each of the last m_{STBC} symbol(s) is computed as in Equation (27-87):

$$N_{PAD, \text{Post-FEC}, u} = N_{CBPS, u} - N_{CBPS, last, u} \quad (27-87)$$

Among the pre-FEC padding bits, the MAC delivers a PSDU that fills the available octets in the Data field of the HE PPDU, toward the desired initial pre-FEC padding boundary represented by a_{init} for users encoded by LDPC and the pre-FEC padding boundary represented by a for users encoded by BCC, in the last OFDM symbol(s). The PHY then determines the number of pad bits to add and appends them to the PSDU. The number of pre-FEC pad bits added by PHY will always be 0 to 7. The procedure is defined in Equation (27-88) and Equation (27-89).

$$N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}, MAC} = 8 \cdot \left\lfloor \frac{N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}, u}}{8} \right\rfloor \quad (27-88)$$

$$N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}, PHY} = N_{PAD, \text{Pre-FEC}, u} \bmod 8 \quad (27-89)$$

27.3.11.5.5 Encoding process for an HE TB PPDU

For an HE TB PPDU sent in response to a Trigger frame, the AP indicates the UL Length, Pre-FEC Padding Factor, UL STBC and LDPC Extra Symbol Segment fields in the Trigger frame. The common values T_{PE} and N_{SYM} are derived by non-AP STAs as shown in Equation (27-114) and Equation (27-115).

For an HE TB PPDU sent in response to a frame containing a TRS Control subfield, the parameters used to derive the common values T_{PE} and N_{SYM} are described in 26.5.2.3.4 (TXVECTOR parameters for HE TB PPDU response to TRS Control subfield).

NOTE—The AP might select any value for the pre-FEC padding factor and LDPC Extra Symbol Segment fields for the solicited HE TB PPDU regardless of the respective values derived from the calculations described in the BCC or LDPC encoding process.

For an HE TB PPDU with BCC encoding, follow the HE SU PPDU padding and encoding process as introduced in 27.3.11.2 (Pre-FEC padding process), 27.3.11.5.1 (BCC coding and puncturing), and 27.3.11.5.3 (Post-FEC padding) with initial parameters as follows:

- If the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRIGGER_FRAME, the initial parameters are $N_{SYM, init} = N_{SYM}$, and $a_{init} = a$, where a is the pre-FEC padding factor indicated in the Pre-FEC Padding Factor subfield of the Common Info field in the Trigger frame and N_{SYM} is the common number of data OFDM symbols derived from the UL Length, Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Periodicity, and Doppler subfields of the Common Info field in the Trigger frame.
- If the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRS, the initial parameters are $N_{SYM, init} = F_{VAL} + 1$, and $a_{init} = 4$, where F_{VAL} is the value of the UL Data Symbols subfield of the TRS Control subfield.

1 For an HE TB PPDU with LDPC encoding, follow the HE SU PPDU padding and encoding process as introduced in 27.3.11.2 (Pre-FEC padding process), 27.3.11.5.2 (LDPC coding), and 27.3.11.5.3 (Post-FEC padding), with the following exceptions:

- 5 — If the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRIGGER_FRAME and the LDPC Extra
 6 Symbol Segment field in the Trigger frame is 1, set the initial parameters following Equation (27-
 7 90).

$$10 \quad \begin{cases} a_{init} = 4 \text{ and } N_{SYM, init} = N_{SYM} - m_{STBC}, & \text{if } a = 1 \\ 11 \quad a_{init} = a - 1 \text{ and } N_{SYM, init} = N_{SYM}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-90)$$

12 where m_{STBC} is 2 if the Trigger frame indicates STBC and 1 otherwise. Then continue with the
 13 LDPC encoding process as in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), during which in step d)
 14 of 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), always increment N_{avbits} as in Equation (27-70),
 15 and always recompute N_{punc} as in Equation (19-40).

- 16 — If the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRIGGER_FRAME and the LDPC Extra
 17 Symbol Segment field in the Trigger frame is 0, set initial parameters to $N_{SYM, init} = N_{SYM}$, and
 18 $a_{init} = a$. Then continue with the LDPC encoding process as in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding
 19 process), during which in step d) of 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), N_{avbits} and N_{punc}
 20 are not changed, and $a = a_{init}$.
- 21 — If the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRS then the parameter LDPC_EX-
 22 TRA_SYMBOL is 1 and initial parameters set to $N_{SYM, init} = F_{VAL} + 1$ and $a_{init} = 3$, where F_{VAL} is
 23 the value of the UL Data Symbols subfield of the TRS Control subfield. Then continue with the
 24 LDPC encoding process as in 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), during which in step d)
 25 of 19.3.11.7.5 (LDPC PPDU encoding process), always increment N_{avbits} as in Equation (27-70),
 26 and always recompute N_{punc} as in Equation (19-40).

27.3.11.6 Stream parser

38 After scrambling, coding, puncturing and post-FEC padding, the data bits are processed in groups of N_{CBPS}
 39 bits. Each of these groups is re-arranged into N_{SS} blocks of N_{CBPSS} bits ($N_{SS,u}$ blocks of $N_{CBPSS,u}$ bits in the
 40 case of an HE MU transmission). This operation is referred to as “stream parsing” and is described in this
 41 subclause.

42 The description is given in terms of an SU transmission. For MU transmissions, the rearrangements are car-
 43 ried out in the same way per user.

44 The number of bits assigned to a single axis (real or imaginary) in a constellation point in a spatial stream is
 45 denoted by Equation (27-91).

$$52 \quad s = \max(1, \frac{N_{BPSCS}}{2}) \quad (27-91)$$

56 The sum of these over all streams is $S = N_{SS} \cdot s$.

58 Consecutive blocks of s bits are assigned to different spatial streams in a round robin fashion.

61 For the N_{CBPS} bits of each OFDM symbol, S bits from the output of the encoder are divided among all spa-
 62 tial streams, s bits per stream.

64 NOTE—For all RU sizes the coded bits per OFDM symbol are always evenly allocated to N_{SS} spatial streams.

1 The following equations are an equivalent description to the above procedure. Bit i at the output of the
 2 encoder is assigned to input bit k of spatial stream i_{SS} where
 3

$$4 \quad i = (i_{SS} - 1)s + S \cdot \left\lfloor \frac{k}{s} \right\rfloor + (k \bmod s)$$

$$5 \quad i_{SS} = 1, 2, \dots, N_{SS}$$

$$6 \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, N_{CBPS} - 1$$

$$7 \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N_{CBPSS} - 1$$

14 27.3.11.7 Segment parser

16 The description in this subclause is for an SU transmission. For an MU transmissions, the rearrangements
 17 are carried out in the same way but per user.

20 For a 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz transmission with a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484-
 21 or 996-tone RU, the segment parser is bypassed and the output bits are as specified in Equation (27-92).

$$25 \quad y_{k,l} = x_k \quad (27-92)$$

27 where

29 x_k is bit k of a block of N_{CBPSS} bits, $k = 0$ to $N_{CBPSS} - 1$

30 l is the frequency subblock index and $l = 0$ for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU.

32 $y_{k,l}$ is bit k of the frequency subblock l

35 For a 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz transmission with a 2×996-tone RU, the output bits of each stream parser
 36 are first divided into blocks of N_{CBPSS} bits ($N_{CBPSS,u}$ bits in the case of an MU transmission). Then, each
 37 block is further divided into two frequency subblocks of $N_{CBPSS}/2$ bits as shown in Equation (27-93).

$$41 \quad y_{k,l} = x_m \quad (27-93)$$

$$44 \quad m = 2s \cdot \left\lfloor \frac{k}{s} \right\rfloor + l \cdot s + (k \bmod s), \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, \frac{N_{CBPSS}}{2} - 1 \quad (27-94)$$

47 and

49 x_m is bit m of a block of N_{CBPSS} bits and $m = 0, \dots, N_{CBPSS} - 1$

51 l is the frequency subblock index and $l = 0, 1$

53 $y_{k,l}$ is bit k of the frequency subblock l

54 s is defined in Equation (27-91)

57 27.3.11.8 BCC interleavers

60 For ease of explanation, the operation of the interleaver is described only for the SU case. For user u of an
 61 MU transmission, the interleaver operates in the same way on the output bits for the user from the stream
 62 parser by replacing N_{SS} , N_{CBPSS} , N_{CBPS} , and N_{BPSCS} with $N_{SS,u}$, $N_{CBPSS,u}$, $N_{CBPS,u}$ and $N_{BPSCS,u}$, respec-
 63 tively. That is, the operation of the interleaver is the same as if the transmission were an SU one, consisting
 64 of bits from only that user.

The BCC interleaver operation is specified in 21.3.10.8 (BCC interleaver). The interleaver parameters, N_{COL} , N_{ROW} , and N_{ROT} , for the Data field depend on the RU size and whether or not DCM is used and are defined in the RU size column of Table 27-35 (BCC interleaver parameters).

Table 27-35—BCC interleaver parameters

DCM	Parameter	RU size (tones)				HE-SIG-A/ HE-SIG-B (tones)
		26	52	106	242	
Not used	N_{COL}	8	16	17	26	13
	N_{ROW}	$3 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$3 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$6 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$9 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$4 \times N_{BPSCS}$
	N_{ROT}	2	11	29	58	-
Used	N_{COL}	4	8	17	13	13
	N_{ROW}	$3 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$3 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$3 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$9 \times N_{BPSCS}$	$2 \times N_{BPSCS}$
	N_{ROT}	2	2	11	29	-

The interleaver parameters, N_{COL} and N_{ROW} , for the HE-SIG-A and HE-SIG-B fields are defined in the HE-SIG-A/HE-SIG-B column of Table 27-35 (BCC interleaver parameters).

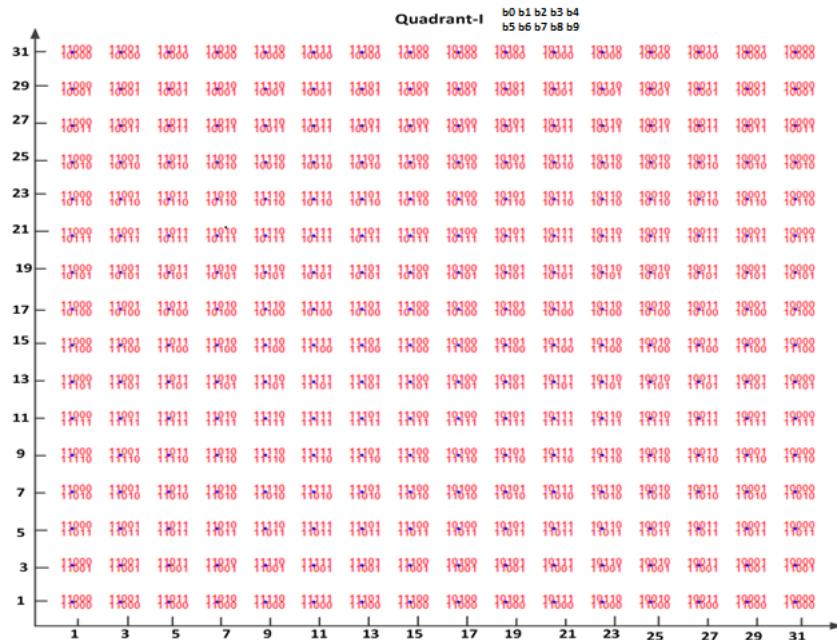
NOTE—DCM is not used on the HE-SIG-A field.

27.3.11.9 Constellation mapping

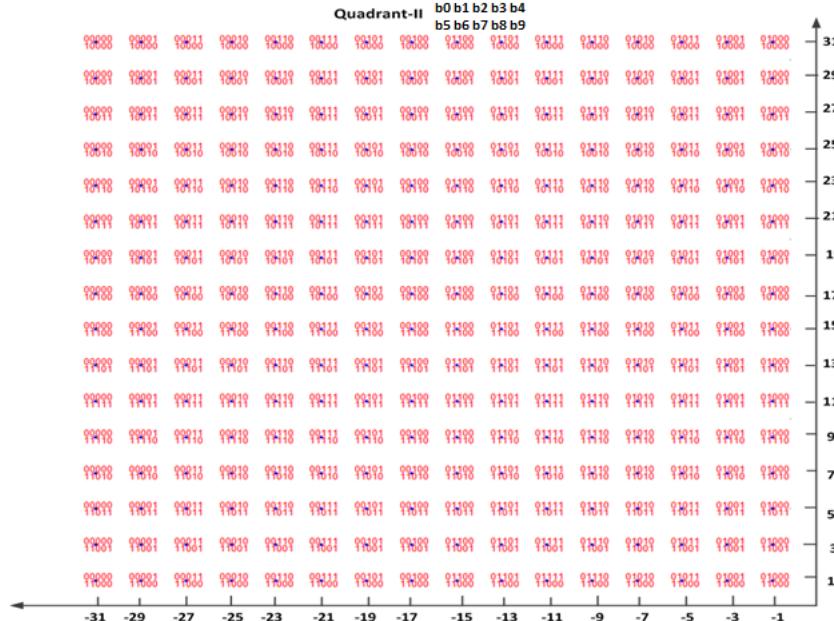
The mapping between the input bits of the constellation mapper and complex constellation points for BPSK, QPSK, 16-QAM, 64-QAM and 256-QAM is defined in 21.3.10.9 (Constellation mapping).

For 1024-QAM, the mapping of the bits at the output of the stream parser or segment parser (if present) to the complex constellation points is defined in Figure 27-37 (Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (1st quadrant)), Figure 27-38 (Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (2nd quadrant)), Figure 27-39 (Con-

1 constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (3rd quadrant)) and Figure 27-40 (Constellation bit encoding for
 2 1024-QAM (4th quadrant)).
 3



31 **Figure 27-37—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (1st quadrant)**
 32



59 **Figure 27-38—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (2nd quadrant)**
 60

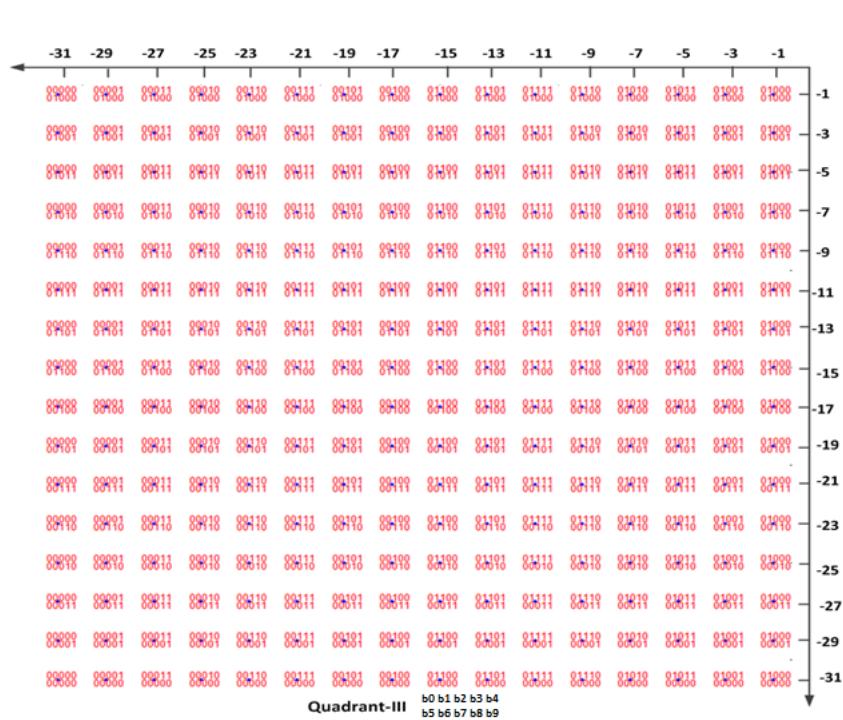


Figure 27-39—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (3rd quadrant)

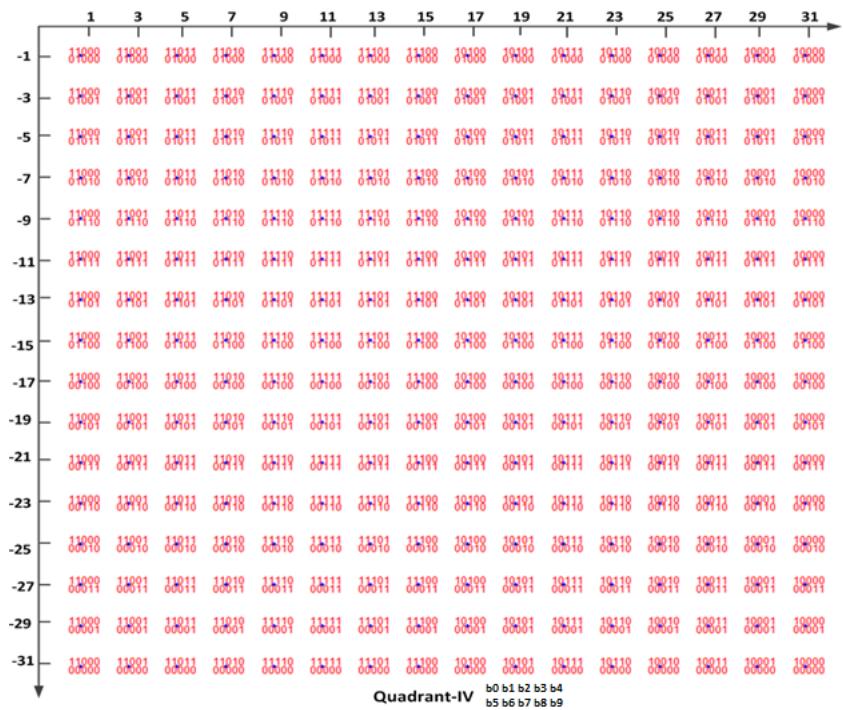


Figure 27-40—Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (4th quadrant)

The bit string convention in Figure 27-37 (Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (1st quadrant)), Figure 27-38 (Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (2nd quadrant)), Figure 27-39 (Constellation bit

1 encoding for 1024-QAM (3rd quadrant)) and Figure 27-40 (Constellation bit encoding for 1024-QAM (4th
 2 quadrant)) follows the bit string convention outlined in 17.3.5.8.
 3

4 The normalization factor K_{mod} for 1024 QAM is $1/\sqrt{682}$.
 5

6 DCM is an optional modulation scheme for the HE-SIG-B and Data fields. DCM can be applied to an HE
 7 SU PPDU and an HE ER SU PPDU. In an HE MU PPDU or HE TB PPDU, DCM can be applied to an RU
 8 containing data for one user but cannot be applied to an RU containing data for more than one user.
 9

10 DCM is applicable to onlyHE-MCSs 0, 1, 3 and 4. DCM is applicable to only $N_{SS} = 1$ or $N_{SS} = 2$ (in the case
 11 of single user RU in an HE MU PPDU, $N_{SS,r,u} = 1$ or $N_{SS,r,u} = 2$). DCM is not applicable with MU-MIMO or
 12 with STBC.
 13

14 If DCM is employed, bit sequences are mapped to a pair of symbols $(d_k, d_{q(k)})$ where k is in the range of
 15 $0 \leq k \leq N_{SD} - 1$ and $q(k)$ is in the range of $N_{SD} \leq q(k) \leq 2N_{SD} - 1$ in order to exploit frequency diversity
 16 for a 996-tone or smaller RU, and $0 \leq k \leq N_{SD}/2 - 1$ and $q(k)$ is in the range of $N_{SD}/2 \leq q(k) \leq N_{SD} - 1$
 17 for a 2×996 -tone RU. To maximize the frequency diversity, the indices of a pair of DCM subcarriers
 18 $(k, q(k))$ is $q(k) = k + N_{SD}$ for a 996-tone or smaller RU and $q(k) = k + N_{SD}/2$ for a 2×996 -tone RU.
 19 The N_{SD} here refers to the N_{SD} with DCM = 1, which is half the value of N_{SD} with DCM = 0.
 20

21 For BPSK modulation with DCM, the input stream is broken into groups of N_{CBPS} or $N_{CBPS,u}$ bits
 22 ($B_0, B_1, \dots, B_{N_{CBPS,u}-1}$). Each bit B_k is BPSK modulated to a sample d_k . This generates the samples for the
 23 lower half of the data subcarriers. For the upper half of the subcarriers, the samples are generated as
 24 $d_{k+N_{SD}} = d_k \times e^{j(k+N_{SD})\pi}$, $k = 0, 1, \dots, N_{SD} - 1$. The N_{SD} here refers to the N_{SD} with DCM = 1, which is
 25 half the value of N_{SD} with DCM = 0.
 26

27 For QPSK modulation with DCM, the input stream is broken into groups of N_{CBPS} or $N_{CBPS,u}$ bits
 28 ($B_0, B_1, \dots, B_{N_{CBPS,u}-1}$). Each pair of bits (B_{2k}, B_{2k+1}) is QPSK modulated to a symbol d_k . This generates
 29 the constellation points for the lower half the data subcarriers in the RU. For the upper half of the data sub-
 30 carriers in the RU, $d_{k+N_{SD}} = \text{conj}(d_k)$, where $\text{conj}()$ represents the complex conjugate operation. The N_{SD}
 31 here refers to the N_{SD} with DCM = 1, which is half the value of N_{SD} with DCM = 0.
 32

33 For 16-QAM modulation with DCM, the input stream is broken into groups of N_{CBPS} or $N_{CBPS,u}$ bits
 34 ($B_0, B_1, \dots, B_{N_{CBPS,u}-1}$). A group of 4 bits $(B_{4k}, B_{4k+1}, B_{4k+2}, B_{4k+3})$ is 16-QAM modulated to a sample d_k
 35 as described in 17.3.5.8 (Subcarrier modulation mapping). This is the sample on subcarrier k in the lower
 36 half. In the upper half, the sample $d_{k+N_{SD}}$ on subcarrier $k + N_{SD}$ is obtained by 16-QAM modulating a per-
 37 mutation of the bits $(B_{4k}, B_{4k+1}, B_{4k+2}, B_{4k+3})$. Specifically, $d_{k+N_{SD}}$ is obtained by applying the 16-QAM
 38 modulation procedure in 18.3.5.8 to the bit group $(B_{4k+1}, B_{4k}, B_{4k+3}, B_{4k+2})$. The N_{SD} here refers to the N_{SD}
 39 with DCM = 1, which is half the value of N_{SD} with DCM = 0.
 40

57 27.3.11.10 LDPC tone mapper

58 The LDPC tone mapping shall be performed on all LDPC encoded streams mapped in an RU as described in
 59 this subclause. LDPC tone mapping shall not be performed on streams that are encoded using BCC. If DCM
 60 is applied to LDPC encoded streams, D_{TM_DCM} shall be applied on both the lower half data subcarriers in an
 61 RU and the upper half data subcarriers of the RU. The LDPC tone mapping distance parameters D_{TM} and
 62

D_{TM} and *D_{TM_DCM}* are constant for each RU size and the values for different RU sizes are given in Table 27-36 (LDPC tone mapping distance for each RU size).

Table 27-36—LDPC tone mapping distance for each RU size

Parameter	RU Size (tones)						
	26	52	106	242	484	996	2×996
<i>D_{TM}</i>	1	3	6	9	12	20	20
<i>D_{TM_DCM}</i>	1	1	3	9	9	14	14

NOTE—The LDPC tone mapping parameters *D_{TM}* and *D_{TM_DCM}* are applied for each frequency subblock, *l* = 0 and *l* = 1.

For an HE PPDU without DCM, the LDPC tone mapping for the LDPC encoded stream for user *u* in the *r*-th RU is done by permuting the stream of complex numbers generated by the constellation mappers (see 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping)) as defined by Equation (27-95).

$$d''_{t(k), i, n, l, r, u} = d^l_{k, i, n, l, r, u} \quad (27-95)$$

where

$$k = \begin{cases} 0, 1, \dots, N_{SD} - 1 & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ 0, 1, \dots, N_{SD}/2 - 1 & \text{for a 2×996-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

$$i = 1, \dots, N_{SS, r, u}$$

$$n = 0, 1, \dots, N_{SYM} - 1$$

$$l = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ 0, 1 & \text{for a 2×996-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

$$u = 0, \dots, N_{user, r} - 1$$

$$r = 0, \dots, N_{RU} - 1$$

N_{SD} is the number of data tones in the *r*-th RU

$$t(k) = \begin{cases} D_{TM} \left(k \bmod \frac{N_{SD}}{D_{TM}} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{k \cdot D_{TM}}{N_{SD}} \right\rfloor, & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ D_{TM} \left(k \bmod \frac{N_{SD}/2}{D_{TM}} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{k \cdot D_{TM}}{N_{SD}/2} \right\rfloor, & \text{for a 2×996-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

For an HE PPDU with DCM, the LDPC tone mapping for the LDPC encoded stream corresponding to user *u* in the *r*-th RU is done by permuting the stream of complex numbers generated by the constellation mappers (see 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping)) as defined by Equation (27-96).

$$d''_{t(k), i, n, l, r, u} = d^l_{k, i, n, l, r, u} \quad (27-96)$$

where

$$k = \begin{cases} 0, 1, \dots, 2N_{SD} - 1 & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ 0, 1, \dots, N_{SD} - 1 & \text{for a } 2 \times 996\text{-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

$$i = 1, \dots, N_{SS,r,u}$$

$$n = 0, 1, \dots, N_{SYM} - 1$$

$$l = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ 0, 1 & \text{for a } 2 \times 996\text{-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

$$u = 0, \dots, N_{user,r} - 1$$

$$r = 0, \dots, N_{RU} - 1$$

N_{SD} is the number of data tones in the r -th RU if DCM is applied

For a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU,

$$t(k) = \begin{cases} D_{TM_DCM} \left(k \bmod \frac{N_{SD}}{D_{TM_DCM}} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{k \cdot D_{TM_DCM}}{N_{SD}} \right\rfloor, & \text{for } k < N_{SD} \\ D_{TM_DCM} \left((k - N_{SD}) \bmod \frac{N_{SD}}{D_{TM_DCM}} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{(k - N_{SD}) \cdot D_{TM_DCM}}{N_{SD}} \right\rfloor + N_{SD}, & \text{for } k \geq N_{SD} \end{cases}$$

For a 2×996 -tone RU,

$$t(k) = \begin{cases} D_{TM_DCM} \left(k \bmod \frac{N_{SD}/2}{D_{TM_DCM}} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{k \cdot D_{TM_DCM}}{N_{SD}/2} \right\rfloor, & \text{for } 0 \leq k < N_{SD}/2 - 1 \\ D_{TM_DCM} \left((k - N_{SD}/2) \bmod \frac{N_{SD}/2}{D_{TM_DCM}} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{(k - N_{SD}/2) \cdot D_{TM_DCM}}{N_{SD}/2} \right\rfloor + N_{SD}/2, & \text{for } N_{SD}/2 \leq k \leq N_{SD} - 1 \end{cases}$$

D_{TM_DCM} is the LDPC tone mapping distance for the r -th RU if DCM is applied.

NOTE—LDPC tone mapper for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU is defined as one segment. LDPC tone mapping is performed separately for the upper and lower 80 MHz frequency segments of a 2×996 -tone RU as indicated by the frequency subblock index l .

Since LDPC tone mapping is not performed on BCC coded streams, for BCC coded spatial streams, Equation (27-97) applies.

$$\mathbf{d}^n_{k,i,n,l,r,u} = \mathbf{d}^l_{k,i,n,l,r,u} \quad (27-97)$$

where

$$k = \begin{cases} 0, 1, \dots, N_{SD} - 1 & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ 0, 1, \dots, N_{SD}/2 - 1 & \text{for a } 2 \times 996\text{-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

$$i = 1, \dots, N_{SS,r,u}$$

$$n = 0, 1, \dots, N_{SYM} - 1$$

$$l = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU} \\ 0, 1 & \text{for a } 2 \times 996\text{-tone RU} \end{cases}$$

$$u = 0, \dots, N_{user,r} - 1$$

$$r = 0, \dots, N_{RU} - 1$$

1 **27.3.11.11 Space-time block coding**

2
3 For an HE PPDU, STBC is applied only with 1 spatial stream and only if DCM is not applied. Its application
4 is indicated by the STBC field in HE-SIG-A. In an HE MU PPDU, STBC coding is used in all RUs or not
5 used in any of the RUs. If any RU in an HE MU PPDU uses DL MU-MIMO, STBC shall not be used in any
6 RU in the HE MU PPDU.

7
8
9 The STBC encoding process is described in 21.3.10.9.4 (Space-time block coding), with $N_{SS,0} = 1$ and
10 $N_{STS,0} = 2$.

11 **27.3.11.12 Segment deparser**

12
13 For a 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 996-tone RU, the segment deparsing is not performed and $d_{k, i, n, r, u}^{(i_{Seg})}$ is
14 specified in Equation (27-98).

15
16
$$d_{k, i, n, r, u}^{(i_{Seg})} = d''_{k, i, n, 0, r, u}, \text{ if } 0 \leq k \leq N_{SD} - 1, i_{Seg} = 0 \quad (27-98)$$

17
18 For a 2×996 -tone RU in a 160 MHz HE PPDU, the two frequency subblocks at the output of the LDPC tone
19 mapper are combined into one frequency segment as specified in Equation (27-99).

20
21
22
$$d_{k, i, n, r, u}^{(i_{Seg})} = \begin{cases} d''_{k, i, n, 0, r, u}, & \text{if } 0 \leq k \leq \frac{N_{SD}}{2} - 1 \\ d''_{k - \frac{N_{SD}}{2}, i, n, l, r, u}, & \text{if } \frac{N_{SD}}{2} \leq k \leq N_{SD} - 1 \end{cases}, i_{Seg} = 0 \quad (27-99)$$

23
24 For a 2×996 -tone RU in an 80+80 MHz HE PPDU, the segment deparsing is not performed and $d_{k, i, n, r, u}^{(i_{Seg})}$ is
25 specified in Equation (27-100).

26
27
$$d_{k, i, n, r, u}^{(i_{Seg})} = d''_{k, i, n, i_{Seg}, r, u}, \text{ if } 0 \leq k \leq N_{SD} - 1, i_{Seg} = 0, 1 \quad (27-100)$$

28
29 NOTE—As per Table 21-7 (center frequency for frequency segment $i_{Seg} = 0$), $f_c^{(0)}$ is always less than $f_c^{(1)}$ in case of
30 80+80 MHz HE PPDU. Hence, $d''_{k, i, n, 0, r, u}$ (frequency subblock 0) is always transmitted in the frequency segment lower
31 in frequency, while $d''_{k, i, n, 1, r, u}$ (frequency subblock 1) is always transmitted in the frequency segment higher in frequency.

1 **27.3.11.13 Pilot subcarriers**

2

3 For a user transmitting on the i -th 26-tone RU in a given PPDU BW, two pilot subcarriers shall be inserted
 4 in subcarriers $k \in K_{R26_i}$, where K_{R26_i} is given by the i -th pilot index set in the row of given PPDU BW of
 5 Table 27-37 (Pilot indices for a 26-tone RU).

6

7 **Table 27-37—Pilot indices for a 26-tone RU**

8

PPDU BW	K_{R26_i}
20 MHz, $i = 1:9$	$\{-116, -102\}, \{-90, -76\}, \{-62, -48\}, \{-36, -22\}, \{-10, 10\}, \{22, 36\}, \{48, 62\}, \{76, 90\}, \{102, 116\}$
40 MHz, $i = 1:18$	$\{-238, -224\}, \{-212, -198\}, \{-184, -170\}, \{-158, -144\}, \{-130, -116\}, \{-104, -90\}, \{-78, -64\}, \{-50, -36\}, \{-24, -10\}, \{10, 24\}, \{36, 50\}, \{64, 78\}, \{90, 104\}, \{116, 130\}, \{144, 158\}, \{170, 184\}, \{198, 212\}, \{224, 238\}$
80 MHz, $i = 1:37$	$\{-494, -480\}, \{-468, -454\}, \{-440, -426\}, \{-414, -400\}, \{-386, -372\}, \{-360, -346\}, \{-334, -320\}, \{-306, -292\}, \{-280, -266\}, \{-252, -238\}, \{-226, -212\}, \{-198, -184\}, \{-172, -158\}, \{-144, -130\}, \{-118, 104\}, \{-92, -78\}, \{-64, -50\}, \{-38, -24\}, \{-10, 10\}, \{24, 38\}, \{50, 64\}, \{78, 92\}, \{104, 118\}, \{130, 144\}, \{158, 172\}, \{184, 198\}, \{212, 226\}, \{238, 252\}, \{266, 280\}, \{292, 306\}, \{320, 334\}, \{346, 360\}, \{372, 386\}, \{400, 414\}, \{426, 440\}, \{454, 468\}, \{480, 494\}$
160 MHz, $i = 1:74$	{pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz –512, pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz +512}

31 The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-101).

32

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^{K_{R26_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 2}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 2}\} \\ P_n^{k \notin K_{R26_i}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-101)$$

39 where

40

41 Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-38 (The 2 pilot values for a 26-tone RU)

42

44 **Table 27-38—The 2 pilot values for a 26-tone RU**

45

Ψ_0	Ψ_1
1	-1

1 For a user transmitting on the i -th 52-tone RU in a given PPDU BW, four pilot subcarriers shall be inserted
 2 in subcarriers $k \in K_{R52_i}$, where K_{R52_i} is given by the i -th pilot index set in the row of given PPDU BW of
 3 Table 27-39 (Pilot indices for 52-tone RU transmission).

Table 27-39—Pilot indices for 52-tone RU transmission

PPDU BW	K_{R52_i}
20 MHz, $i = 1:4$	$\{-116, -102, -90, -76\}, \{-62, -48, -36, -22\}, \{22, 36, 48, 62\}, \{76, 90, 102, 116\}$
40 MHz, $i = 1:8$	$\{-238, -224, -212, -198\}, \{-184, -170, -158, -144\}, \{-104, -90, -78, -64\}, \{-50, -36, -24, -10\}, \{10, 24, 36, 50\}, \{64, 78, 90, 104\}, \{144, 158, 170, 184\}, \{198, 212, 224, 238\}$
80 MHz, $i = 1:16$	$\{-494, -480, -468, -454\}, \{-440, -426, -414, -400\}, \{-360, -346, -334, -320\}, \{-306, -292, -280, -266\}, \{-252, -238, -226, -212\}, \{-198, -184, -172, -158\}, \{-118, -104, -92, -78\}, \{-64, -50, -38, -24\}, \{24, 38, 50, 64\}, \{78, 92, 104, 118\}, \{158, 172, 184, 198\}, \{212, 226, 238, 252\}, \{266, 280, 292, 306\}, \{320, 334, 346, 360\}, \{400, 414, 426, 440\}, \{454, 468, 480, 494\}$
160 MHz, $i = 1:32$	{pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz –512, pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz +512}

The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-102).

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^{K_{R52_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 4}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 4}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 4}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 4}\} \\ P_n^{k \notin K_{R52_i}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-102)$$

where

Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-40 (The 4 pilot values in a 52- and 106-tone RU)

Table 27-40—The 4 pilot values in a 52- and 106-tone RU

Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_3
1	1	1	-1

1 For a user transmitting on the i -th 106-tone RU in a given PPDU BW, four pilot subcarriers shall be inserted
 2 at subcarriers $k \in K_{R106_i}$, where K_{R106_i} is given by the i -th pilot index set in the row of given PPDU BW of
 3 Table 27-41 (Pilot indices for 106-tone RU transmission).

Table 27-41—Pilot indices for 106-tone RU transmission

PPDU BW	K_{R106_i}
20 MHz, $i = 1:2$	$\{-116, -90, -48, -22\}, \{22, 48, 90, 116\}$
40 MHz, $i = 1:4$	$\{-238, -212, -170, -144\}, \{-104, -78, -36, -10\}, \{10, 36, 78, 104\}, \{144, 170, 212, 238\}$
80 MHz, $i = 1:8$	$\{-494, -468, -426, -400\}, \{-360, -334, -292, -266\}, \{-252, -226, -184, -158\}, \{-118, -92, -50, -24\}, \{24, 50, 92, 118\}, \{158, 184, 226, 252\}, \{266, 292, 334, 360\}, \{400, 426, 468, 494\}$
160 MHz, $i = 1:16$	{pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz –512, pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz +512}

The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-103).

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^{K_{R106_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 4}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 4}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 4}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 4}\} \\ P_n^{k \notin K_{R106_i}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-103)$$

where

Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-40 (The 4 pilot values in a 52- and 106-tone RU)

For a user transmitting on the i -th 242-tone RU in a given PPDU BW, 8 pilot subcarriers shall be inserted in subcarriers $k \in K_{R242_i}$, where K_{R242_i} is given by the i -th pilot index set in the row of given PPDU BW of Table 27-42 (Pilot indices for 242-tone RU transmission).

Table 27-42—Pilot indices for 242-tone RU transmission

PPDU BW	K_{R242_i}
20 MHz, $i = 1$	$\{-116, -90, -48, -22, 22, 48, 90, 116\}$
40 MHz, $i = 1:2$	$\{-238, -212, -170, -144, -104, -78, -36, -10\}, \{10, 36, 78, 104, 144, 170, 212, 238\}$
80 MHz, $i = 1:4$	$\{-494, -468, -426, -400, -360, -334, -292, -266\}, \{-252, -226, -184, -158, -118, -92, -50, -24\}, \{24, 50, 92, 118, 158, 184, 226, 252\}, \{266, 292, 334, 360, 400, 426, 468, 494\}$
160 MHz, $i = 1:8$	{pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz –512, pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz +512}

The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-104).

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^{K_{R242_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+4) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+5) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+6) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+7) \bmod 8}\} \\ P_n^{k \notin K_{R242_i}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-104)$$

1 where
 2 Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-43 (The 8 pilot values in a 242-tone RU)
 3
 4
 5

Table 27-43—The 8 pilot values in a 242-tone RU

Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_3	Ψ_4	Ψ_5	Ψ_6	Ψ_7
1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1

14
 15 For a user transmitting on the i -th 484-tone RU in a given PPDU BW, 16 pilot subcarriers shall be inserted
 16 in subcarriers $k \in K_{R484_i}$, where K_{R484_i} is given by the i -th pilot index set in the row of given PPDU BW of
 17 Table 27-44 (Pilot indices for 484-tone RU transmission).
 18

Table 27-44—Pilot indices for 484-tone RU transmission

PPDU BW	K_{R484_i}
40 MHz, $i = 1$	$\{-238, -212, -170, -144, -104, -78, -36, -10, 10, 36, 78, 104, 144, 170, 212, 238\}$
80 MHz, $i = 1:2$	$\{-494, -468, -426, -400, -360, -334, -292, -266, -252, -226, -184, -158, -118, -92, -50, -24\}, \{24, 50, 92, 118, 158, 184, 226, 252, 266, 292, 334, 360, 400, 426, 468, 494\}$
160 MHz, $i = 1:4$	{pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz -512, pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz +512}

34 The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-105).
 35

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_n^{K_{R484_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 8}, \\
 &\quad \Psi_{(n+4) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+5) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+6) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+7) \bmod 8}, \\
 &\quad \Psi_{(n+8) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+9) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+10) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+11) \bmod 8}, \\
 &\quad \Psi_{(n+12) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+13) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+14) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+15) \bmod 8}\} \\
 P_n^{k \notin K_{R484_i}} &= 0
 \end{aligned} \tag{27-105}$$

47 where
 48 Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-43 (The 8 pilot values in a 242-tone RU)

1 For a user transmitting on the i -th 996-tone RU in a given PPDU BW, 16 pilot subcarriers shall be inserted
 2 in subcarriers $k \in K_{R996_i}$, where K_{R996_i} is given by the i -th pilot index set in the row of given PPDU BW of
 3 Table 27-45 (Pilot indices for 996-tone RU transmission).

Table 27-45—Pilot indices for 996-tone RU transmission

PPDU BW	K_{R996_i}
80 MHz, $i = 1$	$\{-468, -400, -334, -266, -226, -158, -92, -24, 24, 92, 158, 226, 266, 334, 400, 468\}$
160 MHz, $i = 1:2$	{for $i = 1$ pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz -512 , for $i = 2$ pilot subcarrier indices in 80 MHz $+512\}$

The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-106).

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^{K_{R996_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+4) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+5) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+6) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+7) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+8) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+9) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+10) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+11) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+12) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+13) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+14) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+15) \bmod 8}\} \\ P_n^{k \notin K_{R996_i}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-106)$$

where

Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-43 (The 8 pilot values in a 242-tone RU)

For a 160 MHz transmission (equivalently two 996-tone RU transmissions), the 80 MHz (equivalently 996-tone RU) pilot mapping is replicated in the two 80 MHz subchannels of the 160 MHz transmission. Specifically, 32 pilot subcarriers shall be inserted in subcarriers $k \in K_{R2 \times 996_i}$, where $K_{R2 \times 996_i}$ is given by $\{-980, -912, -846, -778, -738, -670, -604, -536, -488, -420, -354, -286, -246, -178, -112, -44, 44, 112, 178, 246, 286, 354, 420, 488, 536, 604, 670, 738, 778, 846, 912, 980\}$. The pilot mapping P_n^k for the subcarrier k for symbol n shall be as specified in Equation (27-107).

$$\begin{aligned} P_n^{K_{R2 \times 996_i}} &= \{\Psi_{n \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+4) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+5) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+6) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+7) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+8) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+9) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+10) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+11) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+12) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+13) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+14) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+15) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{n \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+1) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+2) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+3) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+4) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+5) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+6) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+7) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+8) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+9) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+10) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+11) \bmod 8}, \\ &\quad \Psi_{(n+12) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+13) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+14) \bmod 8}, \Psi_{(n+15) \bmod 8}\} \\ P_n^{k \notin K_{R2 \times 996_i}} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27-107)$$

where

Ψ_m is defined in Table 27-43 (The 8 pilot values in a 242-tone RU)

1 For a noncontiguous 80+80 MHz transmission, each frequency segment shall follow the 80 MHz pilot sub-
 2 carrier allocation and values defined for 996-tone RU in 80 MHz transmission as specified in Equation (27-
 3 106).

5 The above pilot mapping shall be copied to all space-time streams before the space-time stream cyclic shifts
 6 are applied.

9 27.3.11.14 OFDM modulation

11 If midambles are not present, the time domain waveform of the Data field of an HE PPDU that is not an HE
 12 TB PPDU for transmit chain $i_{TX}, 1 \leq i_{TX} \leq N_{TX}$ and frequency segment i_{Seg} shall be as defined in
 13 Equation (27-108).

$$17 r_{HE-Data}^{(i_{Seg}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{RU}-1}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_{SYM}-1} w_{T_{HE-Data}}(t-nT_{SYM}) \sum_{r=0}^{N_{RU}-1} \frac{\alpha_r}{\sqrt{N_{STS,r,total}}} \\ 18 \quad \sqrt{\sum_{r=0}^{N_{user,r}-1} \sum_{k \in K_r} \sum_{u=0}^{N_{STS,r,u}} \left(\left[Q_k^{(i_{Seg})} \right]_{i_{TX}, (M_{r,u} + m)} (\tilde{D}_{k,m,n,r}^{(i_{Seg}, u)} + p_{n+2+N_{HE-SIG-A}+N_{HE-SIG-B}} P_n^k) \right.} \\ 19 \quad \left. \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F,HE}(t-nT_{SYM}-T_{GI,Data}-T_{CS,HE}(M_{r,u} + m))) \right) \\ 20 \\ 21 \\ 22 \\ 23 \\ 24 \\ 25 \\ 26 \\ 27 \\ 28 \\ 29 \\ 30 \\ 31 \\ 32 \\ 33 \\ 34 \\ 35 \\ 36 \\ 37 \\ 38 \\ 39 \\ 40 \\ 41 \\ 42 \\ 43 \\ 44 \\ 45 \\ 46 \\ 47 \\ 48 \\ 49 \\ 50 \\ 51 \\ 52 \\ 53 \\ 54 \\ 55 \\ 56 \\ 57 \\ 58 \\ 59 \\ 60 \\ 61 \\ 62 \\ 63 \\ 64 \\ 65$$

where

T_{SYM} is defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

p_n is defined in 17.3.5.10 (OFDM modulation)

P_n^k is defined in 27.3.11.13 (Pilot subcarriers)

$T_{CS,HE}(M_{r,u} + m)$ represents the cyclic shift for space-time stream $M_{r,u} + m$ as defined in 27.3.10.2.2
 (Cyclic shift for HE modulated fields)

$T_{GI,Data}$ is the guard interval duration as defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

$\tilde{D}_{k,m,n,r}^{(i_{Seg}, u)}$ is the transmitted constellation for user u in the r -th RU at subcarrier k , space-time stream m , and
 Data field OFDM symbol n and is defined by Equation (27-109).

$$44 \tilde{D}_{k,m,n,r}^{(i_{Seg}, u)} = \begin{cases} 0, k \in K_{Pilot} \\ d_{M_r(k), m, n, r, u}^{(i_{Seg})}, \text{ otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-109)$$

where

K_{Pilot} is the set of subcarrier indices of pilot subcarriers, as defined in 27.3.2.4 (Pilot subcarriers)

$M_r(k)$ is defined in Equation (27-110)

$$55 M_r(k) = k - K_{r,min} - |\{k' : K_{r,min} \leq k' < k\} \cap K_{Pilot}| \quad (27-110)$$

where

$K_{r,min}$ is the minimum value of the set K_r

$|\Phi|$ is the cardinality of a set Φ

NOTE— $M_r(k)$ translates a subcarrier index ($k \in K_r$) into the index of data symbols in a transmission over RU r ($0 \leq M_r(k) \leq N_{SD}$). The subcarrier index k for the data subcarrier is first offset by the minimum value of subcarrier index $K_{r,min}$ (for the lower edge subcarrier) in this RU, and then subtracted by the number of pilot subcarriers falling in between the data subcarrier and the edge subcarrier.

1 In a noncontiguous 80+80 MHz transmission, each frequency segment shall follow the 80 MHz HE subcarrier
 2 mapping as specified in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
 3

4 If midambles are not present, the time domain waveform of the Data field of an HE TB PPDU for user u in
 5 the r -th RU from transmit chain i_{TX} , $1 \leq i_{TX} \leq N_{TX}$ shall be as defined in Equation (27-111).
 6

$$r_{\text{HE-Data}, r, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, i_{TX})}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|K_r|}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_{SYM}-1} w_{T_{\text{HE-Data}}}(t - nT_{SYM}) \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{STS, r, u}}} \\ \sum_{k \in K_r} \sum_{m=1}^{N_{STS, r, u}} \left(\left[Q_{k, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})} \right]_{i_{TX}, m} (\tilde{D}_{k, m, n, r}^{(i_{\text{Seg}}, u)} + p_{n+4} P_n^k) \cdot \exp(j2\pi k \Delta_{F, \text{HE}}(t - nT_{SYM} - T_{GI, Data} - T_{CS, HE}(M_{r, u} + m))) \right)$$
(27-111)

7 where
 8
 9

10 $Q_{k, u}^{(i_{\text{Seg}})}$ is defined in 27.3.9 (Mathematical description of signals).
 11
 12

27.3.11.15 Dual carrier modulation

27 DCM modulates the same information on a pair of sub-carriers. DCM is an optional modulation scheme for
 28 the HE-SIG-B and Data fields. DCM is applicable to only HE-MCSs and HE-SIG-B HE-MCSs with indices
 29 0, 1, 3 and 4.
 30

31 The constellation mapper for DCM is defined in 27.3.11.9 (Constellation mapping). The LDPC tone mapper
 32 for DCM is defined in 27.3.11.10 (LDPC tone mapper). The BCC interleaver for DCM is defined in
 33 27.3.11.8 (BCC interleavers).
 34

27.3.11.16 Midambles

39 An HE STA may include midambles in an HE PPDU transmission in fast varying channels, i.e., channels
 40 with high Doppler, to facilitate channel estimation update during the PPDU. Midambles are inserted only if
 41 $N_{STS} \leq 4$. The recipient might use the midambles to compensate the channel estimation if it is varying fast in
 42 channels with high Doppler.
 43

45 If the Doppler field of the HE-SIG-A field is 1 in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, or HE MU PPDU, or
 46 if the Doppler subfield in the Common Info field in the Trigger frame preceding an HE TB PPDU is 1, then
 47 midambles are present in the Data field of the HE PPDU every M_{MA} OFDM symbols, where M_{MA} is either
 48 10 or 20 as indicated by the NSTS And Midamble Periodicity field in the HE-SIG-A field (see 27.3.10.7
 49 (HE-SIG-A)) or by the Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Periodicity subfield in the Common
 50 Info field in the Trigger frame (see 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format)).
 51

54 Each midamble is the same as the HE-LTF field(s) in the preamble of the same PPDU as defined in
 55 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF), as shown in Figure 27-41 (HE PPDU with midamble).
 56

58 An HE STA shall not transmit an HE MU PPDU with midambles if there is MU-MIMO on any RU.
 59

61 The scrambling and encoding process of the bits in the Data field OFDM symbols are identical for transmis-
 62 sions with or without midamble.
 63

65 If present, the number of midamble periods, N_{MA} , in a PPDU is calculated using Equation (27-112).

$$N_{MA} = \max\left(0, \left\lceil \frac{N_{SYM}-1}{M_{MA}} \right\rceil - 1\right) \quad (27-112)$$

where N_{SYM} is as defined in 27.3.11.5 (Coding).

As shown in Figure 27-41 (HE PPDU with midamble), the first midamble is inserted immediately after the M_{MA} -th OFDM symbol in the Data field, and a midamble is not inserted after the last data OFDM symbol if $\text{mod}(N_{SYM}, M_{MA}) = 0$. At the end of an HE PPDU, if $\text{mod}(N_{SYM}, M_{MA}) = 1$, there is also no midamble inserted before the last OFDM symbol, as shown in Figure 27-42 (Midamble at the end of an HE PPDU).

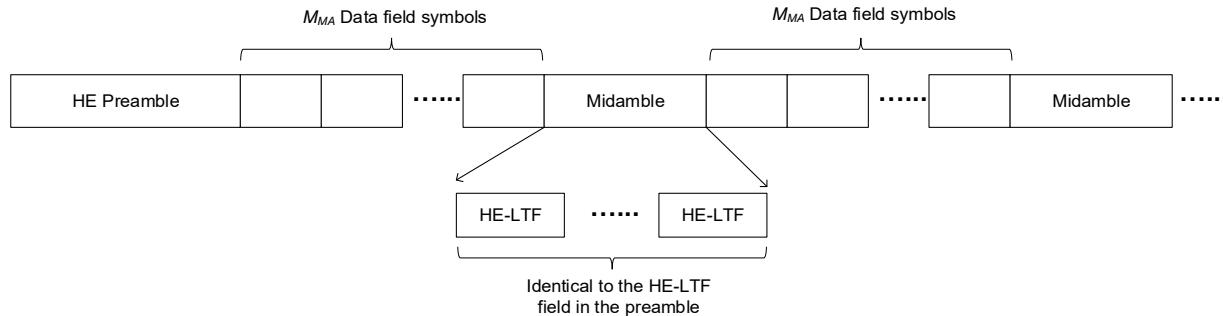


Figure 27-41—HE PPDU with midamble

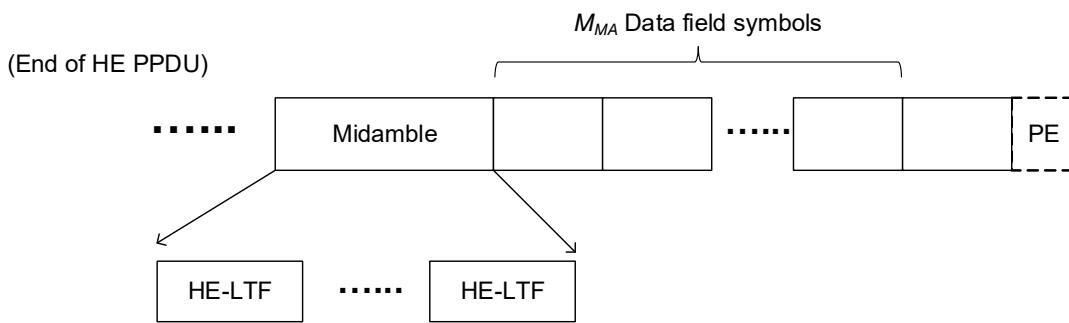


Figure 27-42—Midamble at the end of an HE PPDU

In an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU, or HE MU PPDU, if the Doppler field of HE-SIG-A field is 1 and $N_{SYM} \leq M_{MA} + 1$, there is no midamble present in the current PPDU. In this case, the Doppler field setting to 1 indicates that the current channel between the transmitter and the recipient is with high channel Doppler, and recommends that midamble may be used for the PPDUs of the reverse link.

27.3.12 Packet extension

A PE field of duration 4 μ s, 8 μ s, 12 μ s, or 16 μ s may be present in an HE PPDU. The PE field provides additional receive processing time at the end of the HE PPDU. The PE field, if present, shall be transmitted with the same average power as the Data field and shall not cause significant power leakage outside of the spectrum used by the Data field. Other than that, its content is arbitrary. In an OFDMA HE PPDU, the spectrum used by the Data field for the purpose of packet extension is commensurate with the locations and sizes of the occupied RUs, not the PPDU bandwidth. For example, the Data field of an OFDMA HE PPDU using a single 26-tones RU would have a spectrum that is approximately 2 MHz wide.

1 The duration of the PE field for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU or HE MU PPDU is determined by both
 2 the pre-FEC padding factor value in the last OFDM symbol(s) of the Data field, and the TXVECTOR
 3 parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING.

5 For an HE SU or HE ER SU PPDU, the nominal T_{PE} value ($T_{PE,nominal}$) is given by Table 27-46 (Nominal
 6 TPE values). In this case, a in Table 27-46 (Nominal TPE values) is given by Equation (27-71) or
 7 Equation (27-72).

10 For an HE MU PPDU, the nominal T_{PE} value ($T_{PE,nominal}$) is given by Equation (27-113).

$$13 \quad T_{PE,nominal} = \max_u T_{PE,nominal,u} \quad (27-113)$$

15 where

17 $T_{PE,nominal,u}$ is the nominal T_{PE} value for user u and is also given by Table 27-46 (Nominal TPE values)
 18 $\max_u f(u)$ is the maximum value of $f(u)$ over all values of u

20 In this case, a in Table 27-46 (Nominal TPE values) is given by Equation (27-83) or Equation (27-84).

24 **Table 27-46—Nominal T_{PE} values**

a	TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING (HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU) or NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING[u] (HE MU PPDU)		
	0 μ s	8 μ s	16 μ s
1	0 μ s	0 μ s	4 μ s
2	0 μ s	0 μ s	8 μ s
3	0 μ s	4 μ s	12 μ s
4	0 μ s	8 μ s	16 μ s

41 The duration of the PE field, T_{PE} , may take values of 0, 4, 8, 12 or 16 μ s. T_{PE} for an HE SU, HE ER SU or
 42 HE MU PPDU shall not be less than $T_{PE,nominal}$. T_{PE} for an HE SU, HE ER SU or HE MU PPDU should be
 43 equal to $T_{PE,nominal}$ to minimize the packet extension overhead. Figure 27-43 (PE field duration of an HE
 44 SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU without midambles if TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PAD-
 45 DING is 8 μ s and TPE = TPE,nominal) and Figure 27-44 (PE field duration of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER
 46 SU PPDU without midambles if TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING is 16 μ s TPE =
 47 TPE,nominal) show examples of the PE field duration in an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU without
 48

midambles if the TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING is 8 μ s and 16 μ s, respectively, and $T_{PE} = T_{PE,nominal}$. STBC is not used in these examples.

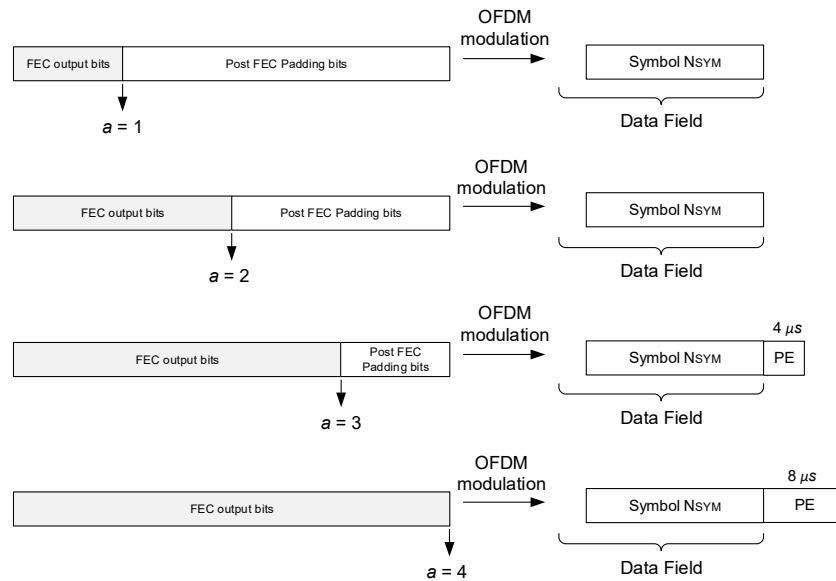


Figure 27-43—PE field duration of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU without midambles if TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING is 8 μ s and $T_{PE} = T_{PE,nominal}$

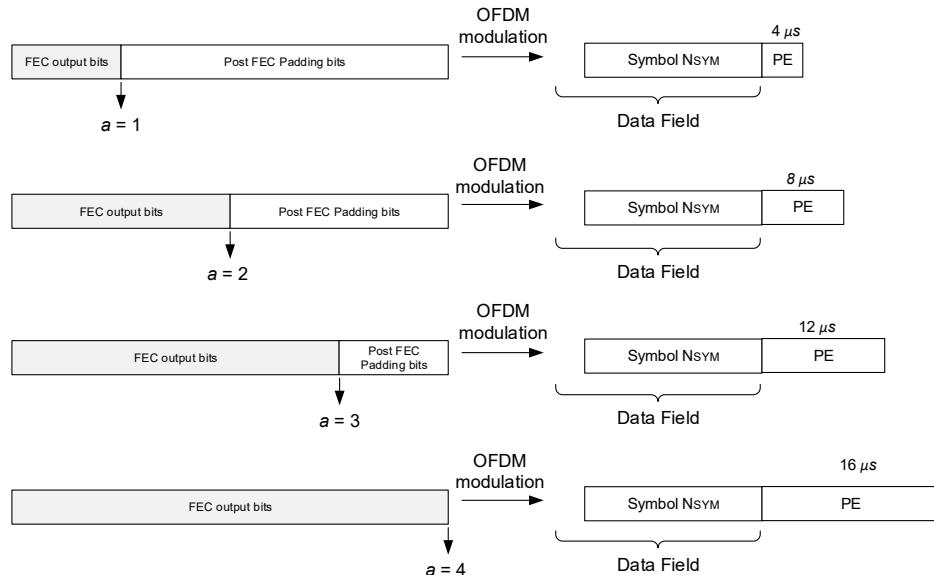


Figure 27-44—PE field duration of an HE SU PPDU or HE ER SU PPDU without midambles if TXVECTOR parameter NOMINAL_PACKET_PADDING is 16 μ s $T_{PE} = T_{PE,nominal}$

T_{PE} for an HE sounding NDP is 4 μ s.

If transmitting an HE TB PPDU for which the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRIGGER_FRAME, each transmitter of an HE TB PPDU shall append a PE field with a duration T_{PE} calculated

1 using Equation (27-114) except for an HE TB feedback NDP (see 27.3.4 (HE PPDU formats)), which has
 2 $T_{PE} = 0$.
 3

$$4 \\ 5 \quad T_{PE} = \left\lfloor \frac{\left(\frac{(\text{LENGTH} + m + 3)}{3} \times 4 - T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}} \right) - N_{SYM}T_{SYM} - N_{MA}N_{\text{HE-LTF}}T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}}}{4} \right\rfloor \times 4 \quad (27-114)$$

6 where
 7

8 $m = 2$ for an HE TB PPDU
 9

10 LENGTH is the value indicated by UL Length subfield of the Common Info field in the Trigger frame
 11

12 $T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}}$ is the value for an HE TB PPDU in Equation (27-121)
 13

14 $T_{\text{HE-STF-T}}$, $T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}}$, $T_{\text{RL-SIG}}$ and $T_{\text{HE-SIG-A}}$ are defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)
 15

16 N_{MA} is the number of midamble periods in the current PPDU
 17

$$18 \\ 19 \quad N_{SYM} = \left\lfloor \left(\frac{(\text{LENGTH} + m + 3)}{3} \times 4 - T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}} - N_{MA}N_{\text{HE-LTF}}T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}} \right) / T_{SYM} \right\rfloor - b_{\text{PE-Disambiguity}} \quad (27-115)$$

20 $b_{\text{PE-Disambiguity}}$ is the value of the TXVECTOR parameter HE_TB_PE_DISAMBIGUITY
 21

22 There are multiple methods for computing N_{MA} for an HE TB PPDU that get the same result, one example is
 23 as follows. The duration of one midamble period is defined in Equation (27-116).
 24

$$25 \\ 26 \quad T_{MA} = M_{MA}T_{SYM} + N_{\text{HE-LTF}}T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}} \quad (27-116)$$

27 where M_{MA} is the midamble periodicity indicated by the Number of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Peri-
 28 odicity subfield of the Common Info field in the Trigger frame. Equation (27-117) for computing N_{MA} can
 29 be used instead of Equation (27-112).
 30

$$31 \\ 32 \quad N_{MA} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if Doppler} = 0 \\ \max\left(0, \left\lfloor \left(\frac{(\text{LENGTH} + 3 + m)}{3} \times 4 - T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}} - (b_{\text{PE-Diambiguity}} + 2) \cdot T_{SYM} \right) / T_{MA} \right\rfloor \right), & \text{if Doppler} = 1 \end{cases} \quad (27-117)$$

33 where Doppler is indicated by the Doppler subfield of the Common Info field of the Trigger frame.
 34

35 If transmitting an HE TB PPDU for which the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_METHOD is TRS, each
 36 transmitter of the HE TB PPDU shall append a PE field with the duration T_{PE} equal to the value specified in
 37 the TXVECTOR parameter DEFAULT_PE_DURATION.
 38

39 The PE Disambiguity field of the HE-SIG-A field for an HE SU, HE ER SU (see Table 27-18 (HE-SIG-A
 40 field of an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU)) or HE MU PPDU (see Table 27-20 (HE-SIG-A field of an
 41 HE MU PPDU)) shall be set to 1 if the condition in Equation (27-118) is met, otherwise it shall be set to 0.
 42

43 The PE Disambiguity subfield in the Common Info field of the Trigger frame (see Table 9-31f (Pre-FEC
 44 Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity subfields)) shall be set to 1 if the condition in Equation (27-118) is met
 45 for the HE TB PPDU solicited by the Trigger frame. Otherwise, it shall be set to 0.
 46

$$47 \\ 48 \quad T_{PE} + 4 \times \left(\left\lceil \frac{\text{TXTIME} - \text{SignalExtension} - 20}{4} \right\rceil - \left(\frac{\text{TXTIME} - \text{SignalExtension} - 20}{4} \right) \right) \geq T_{SYM} \quad (27-118)$$

1 where

2 T_{PE} is the PE field duration

3 T_{SYM} is the symbol duration of the Data field as defined in 27.3.8 (Timing-related parameters)

4 TXTIME (in μs) is defined in 27.4.3 (TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation)

5 $SignalExtension$ is 0 μs if TXVECTOR parameter NO_SIG_EXTN is true and is aSignalExtension as
6 defined in Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics) if TXVECTOR parameter NO_SIG_EXTN
7 is false

8
9
10 The receiver computes N_{SYM} , T_{PE} and N_{MA} using Equation (27-119), Equation (27-120) and Equation (27-
11
12 122), respectively.

13
14
15
$$N_{SYM} = \left\lfloor \left(\frac{L_LENGTH + m + 3}{3} \times 4 - T_{HE-PREAMBLE} - N_{MA} N_{HE-LTF} T_{HE-LTF-SYM} \right) / T_{SYM} \right\rfloor - b_{PE-Disambiguity} \quad (27-119)$$

16
17
18
19
20
$$T_{PE} = \left\lfloor \frac{\left(\frac{L_LENGTH + m + 3}{3} \times 4 - T_{HE-PREAMBLE} \right) - N_{SYM} T_{SYM} - N_{MA} N_{HE-LTF} T_{HE-LTF-SYM}}{4} \right\rfloor \times 4 \quad (27-120)$$

21 where

22 L_LENGTH is the value indicated by the LENGTH field of the L-SIG field

23
24
25 $T_{HE-PREAMBLE} = \quad (27-121)$

26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
$$\begin{cases} T_{RL-SIG} + T_{HE-SIG-A} + T_{HE-STF-T} + N_{HE-LTF} T_{HE-LTF-SYM}, & \text{for an HE TB PPDU} \\ T_{RL-SIG} + T_{HE-SIG-A} + T_{HE-STF-NT} + N_{HE-LTF} T_{HE-LTF-SYM}, & \text{for an HE SU PPDU} \\ T_{RL-SIG} + T_{HE-SIG-A} + N_{HE-SIG-B} T_{HE-SIG-B} + T_{HE-STF-NT} + N_{HE-LTF} T_{HE-LTF-SYM}, & \text{for an HE MU PPDU} \\ T_{RL-SIG} + T_{HE-SIG-A-R} + T_{HE-STF-NT} + N_{HE-LTF} T_{HE-LTF-SYM}, & \text{for an HE ER SU PPDU} \end{cases}$$

T_{RL-SIG} , $T_{HE-STF-T}$, $T_{HE-STF-NT}$, $T_{HE-LTF-SYM}$, $T_{HE-SIG-A}$, $T_{HE-SIG-A-R}$, $T_{HE-SIG-B}$ are defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

$N_{HE-SIG-B}$, N_{HE-LTF} are defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

$b_{PE-Disambiguity}$ is the value indicated by the PE Disambiguity subfield of the HE-SIG-A field for an HE SU, HE ER SU or HE MU PPDU, or the value indicated by the PE Disambiguity subfield in the Common Info field in the Trigger frame (see Table 9-31f (Pre-FEC Padding Factor and PE Disambiguity subfields)) for an HE TB PPDU.

N_{MA} may be computed by multiple methods that get the same result, one example of which is given in Equation (27-122).

60
61
62
63
64
65
$$N_{MA} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if Doppler} = 0 \\ \max(0, \left\lfloor \left(\frac{L_LENGTH + 3 + m}{3} \times 4 - T_{HE-PREAMBLE} - (b_{PE-Disambiguity} + 2) \cdot T_{SYM} \right) / T_{MA} \right\rfloor), & \text{if Doppler} = 1 \end{cases} \quad (27-122)$$

where

T_{MA} is defined in Equation (27-116) except that M_{MA} is the midamble periodicity indicated by the NSTS And Midamble Periodicity subfield of the HE-SIG-A field in an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, or by the Number Of HE-LTF Symbols And Midamble Periodicity subfield of the HE-SIG-A field in an HE MU PPDU.

1 Doppler is indicated by the Doppler field of HE-SIG-A field.
 2

3 27.3.13 Non-HT duplicate transmission 4

5 If the TXVECTOR parameter FORMAT is NON_HT and the TXVECTOR parameter NON_HT_MODU-
 6 LATION is NON_HT_DUP_OFDM, the transmitted PPDU is a non-HT duplicate. Non-HT duplicate trans-
 7 mission is used to transmit to non-HT OFDM STAs, HT STAs, VHT STAs and HE STAs that may be
 8 present in a part of a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, or 160 MHz channel (see Table 21-2 (Interpretation of FORMAT,
 9 NON_HT Modulation and CH_BANDWIDTH parameters)). The RL-SIG, HE-SIG-A, HE-SIG-B, HE-
 10 STF, and HE-LTF fields are not transmitted.
 11

12 The L-STF and L-LTF fields shall be transmitted in the same way as in the HE transmission. The L-SIG
 13 field shall be transmitted in the same way as in the HE transmission, with the following exceptions:
 14

- 15 — The Rate and Length fields shall follow 17.3.4 (SIGNAL field)
- 16 — The four additional subcarriers at indices ± 27 and ± 28 are not modulated (no energy)

17 NOTE—The L-STF, L-LTF and L-SIG fields are not transmitted in 20 MHz subchannels in which the preamble is punc-
 18 tured (see 27.3.7 (HE modulation and coding schemes (HE-MCSs))).
 19

20 In a 40 MHz non-HT duplicate transmission, the Data field shall be as defined by Equation (19-61).
 21

22 For 80 MHz and 160 MHz non-HT duplicate transmissions, the Data field shall be as defined by
 23 Equation (27-123).
 24

$$r_{\text{non-HT}, BW}^{i_{TX}}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{\text{NON_HT_DUP_OFDM-Data}}^{\text{Tone}}}} \sum_{n=0}^{N_{\text{SYM}}-1} w_{T_{\text{SYM}}}(t - nT_{\text{SYM}}) \cdot \sum_{i_{BW}=0}^{N_{20\text{MHz}}-1} \left((1 - \text{INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS}[i_{BW}]) \sum_{k=-26}^{26} \Upsilon_{(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW})), BW}(D_{k,n} + p_{n+1}P_k) \cdot \exp(j2\pi(k - K_{\text{Shift}}(i_{BW}))\Delta_F(t - nT_{\text{SYM}} - T_{GI} - T_{CS}^{i_{TX}})) \right) \quad (27-123)$$

43 where
 44

45 $N_{20\text{MHz}}$ and $K_{\text{Shift}}(i)$ are defined in 21.3.8.2.4

46 P_k and P_n are defined in 17.3.5.10

47 $D_{k,n}$ is defined in Equation (21-26)

48 $\Upsilon_{k, BW}$ is defined in Equation (21-16) and Equation (21-17)

49 $T_{CS}^{i_{TX}}$ represents the cyclic shift for transmit chain i_{TX} with a value given in Table 21-10.

50 $N_{\text{NON_HT_DUP_OFDM-Data}}^{\text{Tone}}$ has the value given in Table 27-16 (Number of modulated subcarriers and guard
 51 interval duration values for HE PPDU fields)

52 INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS[x] is bit x of the TXVECTOR parameter INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS
 53 if present, and is 0, otherwise.

54 In a noncontiguous 80+80 MHz non-HT duplicate transmission, data transmission in each frequency seg-
 55 ment shall be as defined for an 80 MHz non-HT duplicate transmission in Equation (27-123).
 56

57 For each non-HT duplicate PPDU transmission that is a preamble punctured PPDU, each punctured 20 MHz
 58 subchannel is indicated as punctured by including the value of 113 (01110001 in binary representation) in
 59

1 the 8 bits of the TXVECTOR parameter RU_ALLOCATION corresponding to the 242-tone RU that is most
 2 closely aligned with the punctured 20 MHz subchannel. Each 20 MHz subchannel that is not punctured is
 3 indicated as such by including the value of 192 (11000000 in binary representation) in the 8 bits of the
 4 TXVECTOR parameter RU_ALLOCATION corresponding to the 242-tone RU that is most closely aligned
 5 with that 20 MHz subchannel.
 6

7

8 **27.3.14 Transmit requirements for PPDUs sent in response to a triggering frame**

9

10

11 **27.3.14.1 Introduction**

12

13 An AP may solicit simultaneous HE TB PPDUs from multiple non-AP STAs using a triggering frame. Since there are multiple transmitters, transmission time, frequency, sampling symbol clock, and power pre-correction (in the case of an
 14 HE TB PPDU) by the non-AP STAs is necessary to mitigate synchronization and interference issues at the
 15 AP. Frequency and sampling clock pre-corrections are needed to prevent inter-carrier interference. Power
 16 pre-correction is necessary to control interference between HE TB PPDUs from the non-AP
 17 STAs. An AP may solicit simultaneous HE TB PPDUs from both Class A and Class B devices.
 18 A non-AP STA that supports HE TB PPDUs shall support power pre-correction as described in
 19 27.3.14.2 (Power pre-correction) and shall meet the pre-correction accuracy requirements described in
 20 27.3.14.3 (Pre-correction accuracy requirements).
 21

22

23 **27.3.14.2 Power pre-correction**

24

25 Each STA that is scheduled in a triggering frame calculates the UL transmit power, Tx_{pwr}^{STA} , of the HE TB
 26 PPDUs for the assigned HE-MCS using Equation (27-124).
 27

28

$$32 \quad Tx_{pwr}^{STA} = PL_{DL} + Target_{RSSI} \quad (27-124)$$

33

34 where

35 PL_{DL} represents DL pathloss

36 $Target_{RSSI}$ represents the target receive signal power of the HE TB PPDUs averaged over the AP's antenna
 37 connectors. $Target_{RSSI}$ is the value, in dBm, indicated in the UL Target RSSI subfield of User
 38 Info field in Trigger frame or the TRS control field.

39 NOTE—A value of 127 in the UL Target RSSI subfield indicates that the HE TB PPDUs are transmitted at its maximum
 40 transmit power for the assigned HE-MCS, and Equation (27-124) is not used.

41 Each STA computes PL_{DL} using Equation (27-125).

42

$$49 \quad PL_{DL} = Tx_{pwr}^{AP} - DL_{RSSI} \quad (27-125)$$

50

51 where

52 Tx_{pwr}^{AP} is in dBm and represents the AP's transmission power and is equal to the value of the AP Tx
 53 Power subfield of the Common Info field in the Trigger frame, the encoding of which is speci-
 54 fied in 9.3.1.22 (Trigger frame format) or the DL Tx Power subfield of the TRS Control field
 55 as specified in 9.2.4.6a.1 (TRS Control).

56 DL_{RSSI} represents the RSSI at the antenna connector(s) of the STA over the PPDUs bandwidth during the
 57 non-HE portion of the HE PPDUs preamble of the triggering PPDUs normalized to 20 MHz
 58 bandwidth. DL_{RSSI} in dBm is an average of the received power over the antennas on which the
 59 average PL_{DL} is being computed. If the triggering PPDUs are HT-mixed, VHT or HE PPDUs,
 60 then the received power is measured from the fields prior to the HT-STF, VHT-STF or HE-
 61 STF, respectively.

1 A STA that applies beamforming (BF) in the UL should take the BF gain into account when calculating the
 2 transmit power needed to meet the target RSSI.
 3

4 The UL transmit power of the HE TB PPDU is further subject to a STA's minimum and maximum transmit
 5 power limit due to hardware capability, regulatory requirements and local maximum transmit power levels
 6 (see 11.8.5 (Specification of regulatory and local maximum transmit power levels)) as well as non-802.11
 7 in-device coexistence requirements.
 8

9
 10 A STA that is scheduled in a Trigger frame includes its UL power headroom in the HE TB PPDU following
 11 the rules defined in 26.5.2.3 (Non-AP STA behavior for UL MU operation).
 12

13 27.3.14.3 Pre-correction accuracy requirements

14
 15 A STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU shall support per chain max($P_{-32}, -10$) dBm as the minimum trans-
 16 mit power, where P is the maximum power, in dBm, that the STA can transmit at the antenna connector of
 17 that chain using HE-MCS 0 while meeting the transmit EVM and spectral mask requirements. A STA trans-
 18 mitting at and above the minimum power shall support the EVM requirements for HE-MCS 7.
 19

20
 21 A STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU shall support the absolute and relative transmit power requirements
 22 and the RSSI measurement accuracy requirements defined in Table 27-47 (Transmit power and RSSI mea-
 23 surement accuracy).
 24

25
 26
 27 **Table 27-47—Transmit power and RSSI measurement accuracy**

Parameter	Minimum Requirement		Comments
	Class A	Class B	
Absolute transmit power accuracy	± 3 dB	± 9 dB	Accuracy of achieving a specified transmit power.
RSSI measurement accuracy	± 3 dB	± 5 dB	The difference between the RSSI and the received power. Requirements are valid from minimum receive to maximum receive input power.
Relative transmit power accuracy	N/A	± 3 dB	Accuracy of achieving a change in transmit power for consecutive HE TB PPDU. The relative transmit power accuracy is applicable only to Class B devices.

50
 51
 52 The absolute transmit power accuracy is applicable for the entire range of transmit power that the STA is
 53 intending to use for the current band of operation. The RSSI accuracy requirements shall be applied to
 54 receive signal level range from -82 dBm to -20 dBm in the 2.4 GHz band and -82 dBm to -30 dBm in the 5
 55 GHz and 6 GHz bands. The requirements are for nominal (room) temperature conditions. The RSSI shall be
 56 measured during the reception of the non-HE portion of the HE PPDU preamble.
 57

58
 59 A STA compensates for carrier frequency offset (CFO) error and symbol clock error with respect to the cor-
 60 responding triggering PPDU when transmitting the following types of PPDUs:
 61

- 62 — HE TB PPDU
- 63 — Non-HT or non-HT duplicate PPDU with the TXVECTOR parameter TRIGGER_RESPONDING
 64 set to true

1 NOTE—The MU-RTS Trigger frame is the only Trigger frame that solicits transmission of a non-HT or non-HT duplicate
 2 PPDU and not an HE TB PPDU. The non-HT or non-HT duplicate PPDU transmitted as a response to an MU-RTS
 3 Trigger frame carries a CTS frame.

4
 5 After compensation, the absolute value of residual CFO error with respect to the corresponding triggering
 6 PPDU shall not exceed the following levels when measured at the 10% point of the complementary cumulative
 7 distribution function (CCDF) of CFO errors in AWGN at a received power of -60 dBm in the primary
 8 20 MHz:
 9

- 10 — 350 Hz for the data subcarriers of an HE TB PPDU
- 11 — 2 kHz for a non-HT PPDU or non-HT duplicate PPDU

12
 13
 14 The residual CFO error measurement on an HE TB PPDU shall be made after the HE-SIG-A field. The
 15 residual CFO error measurement on the non-HT or non-HT duplicate PPDU shall be made after the L-STF
 16 field. The symbol clock error shall be compensated by the same ppm amount as the CFO error.
 17

18 A STA that transmits an HE TB PPDU, non-HT PPDU, or non-HT duplicate PPDU in response to a triggering
 19 PPDU shall ensure that the transmission start time of the HE TB PPDU, non-HT PPDU, or non-HT
 20 duplicate PPDU is within $\pm 0.4 \mu\text{s} + 16 \mu\text{s}$ from the end, at the STA's antenna connector, of the last OFDM
 21 symbol of the triggering PPDU (if it contains no PE field) or of the PE field of the triggering PPDU (if the
 22 PE field is present).
 23

24 NOTE—This end instant is before any signal extension, so this is equivalent to HE TB PPDU transmission within 0.4 μs
 25 of SIFS after the end of the triggering PPDU including signal extension.
 26

27.3.15 SU-MIMO and DL MU-MIMO beamforming

27.3.15.1 General

30 SU-MIMO and DL MU-MIMO beamforming are techniques used by a STA with multiple antennas (the
 31 beamformer) to steer signals using knowledge of the channel to improve throughput. With SU-MIMO
 32 beamforming all space-time streams in the transmitted signal are intended for reception at a single STA in an
 33 RU. With DL MU-MIMO beamforming, disjoint subsets of the space-time streams are intended for recep-
 34 tion at different STAs in an RU of size greater than or equal to 106-tones.
 35

36 For SU-MIMO and DL MU-MIMO beamforming in RU r , the receive signal vector in subcarrier k (where
 37 subcarrier k is one of the subcarriers in RU r , K_r is the set of used subcarrier indices in RU r , and $k \in K_r$) at
 38 beamformee u , $\mathbf{y}_{k,u} = [y_{k,0}, y_{k,1}, \dots, y_{k,N_{RX_u}-1}]^T$, is shown in Equation (27-126), where
 39 $\mathbf{x}_k = [\mathbf{x}_{k,0}^T, \mathbf{x}_{k,1}^T, \dots, \mathbf{x}_{k,N_{user,r}-1}^T]^T$ denotes the transmit signal vector in subcarrier k for all $N_{user,r}$ beamfor-
 40 mees, with $\mathbf{x}_{k,u} = [x_{k,0}, x_{k,1}, \dots, x_{k,N_{STS,r,u}-1}]^T$ being the transmit signal for beamformee u .
 41

$$42 \quad \mathbf{y}_{k,u} = \mathbf{H}_{k,u} \times [\mathcal{Q}_{k,0}, \mathcal{Q}_{k,1}, \dots, \mathcal{Q}_{k,N_{user,r}-1}] \times \mathbf{x}_k + \mathbf{n} \quad (27-126)$$

43 where

44 $\mathbf{H}_{k,u}$ is the channel matrix from the beamformer to beamformee u in subcarrier k with dimensions

$$45 \quad N_{RX_u} \times N_{TX}$$

46 N_{RX_u} is the number of receive antennas at beamformee u

47 $\mathcal{Q}_{k,u}$ is a steering matrix for beamformee u in subcarrier k with dimensions $N_{TX} \times N_{STS,r,u}$

48 $N_{user,r}$ is the number of HE MU PPDU recipients (see Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)) in RU r

49 \mathbf{n} is a vector of additive noise and may include interference

50 The DL MU-MIMO steering matrix $\mathcal{Q}_k = [\mathcal{Q}_{k,0}, \mathcal{Q}_{k,1}, \dots, \mathcal{Q}_{k,N_{user,r}-1}]$ can be determined by the beam-
 51 former using the beamforming feedback for subcarrier k from beamformee u , where

u = 0, 1, ..., $N_{user,r} - 1$. The feedback report format is described in 9.4.1.65 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report field) and 9.4.1.66 (HE MU Exclusive Beamforming Report field). The steering matrix that is computed (or updated) using new beamforming feedback from some or all of participating beamformees might replace the existing steering matrix Q_k for the next DL MU-MIMO data transmission.

For SU-MIMO beamforming, the steering matrix Q_k can be determined from the beamforming feedback matrix V_k that is sent back to the beamformer by the beamformee using the compressed beamforming feedback matrix format as defined in 19.3.12.3.6 (Compressed beamforming feedback matrix). The feedback report format is described in 9.4.1.65 (HE Compressed Beamforming Report field).

27.3.15.2 Beamforming feedback matrix V

Upon receipt of an HE sounding NDP, the beamformee computes a set of matrices for feedback to the beamformer as described in 21.3.11.2 (Beamforming Feedback Matrix V). The eligible beamformees shall remove the space-time stream CSD in Table 21-11 (Cyclic shift values for the VHT modulated fields of a PPDU) from the measured channel before computing a set of matrices for feedback to the beamformer.

The beamforming feedback matrix, $V_{k,u}$, found by the beamformee u for subcarrier k in RU r shall be compressed in the form of angles using the method described in 19.3.12.3.6 (Compressed beamforming feedback matrix). The angles, $\phi(k,u)$ and $\psi(k,u)$, are quantized according to Table 9-76 (Quantization of angles) with b_ψ defined by the Codebook Information field of the HE MIMO Control field (see 9.4.1.64 (HE MIMO Control field)). The compressed beamforming feedback matrix as defined in 19.3.12.3.6 (Compressed beamforming feedback matrix) is the only Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) beamforming feedback matrix defined.

The beamformee shall generate the beamforming feedback matrices with the number of rows (N_r) equal to the N_{STS} of the HE sounding NDP.

After receiving the angle information, $\phi(k,u)$ and $\psi(k,u)$, the beamformer reconstructs $V_{k,u}$ using Equation (19-79). For SU-MIMO beamforming, the beamformer uses $V_{k,0}$ matrix to determine the steering matrix Q_k . For DL MU-MIMO beamforming, the beamformer may calculate a steering matrix $Q_k = [Q_{k,0}, Q_{k,1}, \dots, Q_{k,N_{user,r}-1}]$ using $V_{k,u}$ and $\Delta SNR_{k,u}$ ($0 \leq u \leq N_{user,r}-1$) in order to suppress crosstalk between participating beamformees. The method used by the beamformer to calculate the steering matrix Q_k is implementation specific.

27.3.15.3 CQI feedback

If the HE NDP Announcement frame requests CQI feedback, then upon receipt of the HE sounding NDP, the beamformee computes CQI feedback as described in 9.4.1.67 (HE CQI Report field). The CQI feedback, $CQI_{s,r,u}$, for beamformee u in RU r for space-time stream s shall be estimated using the method described in 9.4.1.67 (HE CQI Report field). The CQI values to be fed back are derived from quantized SNRs according to Table 9-93h (Average SNR of RU index k for space-time stream i subfield). The beamformee shall transmit the CQI feedback for space-time stream 1, ..., N_c for each of the RU indices for which the CQI report is being requested by the beamformer. The beamformer may use the CQI feedback to determine the best range of RUs for a compressed beamforming/CQI report or for RU assignment during a subsequent MU transmissions. The actual use is implementation specific.

27.3.16 HE sounding NDP

The HE sounding NDP is a variant of the HE SU PPDU. The format of an HE sounding NDP is defined in Figure 27-45 (HE sounding NDP format).

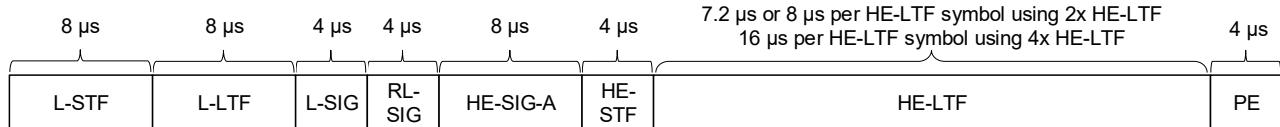


Figure 27-45—HE sounding NDP format

NOTE—The number of HE-LTF symbols in the HE sounding NDP is indicated in the NSTS And Midamble Periodicity field in the HE-SIG-A field.

The HE sounding NDP has the following properties:

- Uses the HE SU PPDU format but without the Data field
- Has a PE field that is 4 μs in duration

The HE sounding NDP overlapping the 242-tone RUs corresponding to bits with a value of 1 in the bitmap of the TXVECTOR parameter INACTIVE_SUBCHANNELS or overlapping a punctured center 26-tone RU of an HE sounding NDP are punctured. The center 26-tone RU of the HE sounding NDP is punctured if either one of the adjacent 242-tone RUs is punctured.

It is mandatory to support the 2x HE-LTF with 0.8 μs GI and 2x HE-LTF with 1.6 μs GI. It is optional to support the 4x HE-LTF with 3.2 μs GI. The other combinations of HE-LTF type and GI duration are disallowed.

If the Beamformed field in HE-SIG-A of an HE sounding NDP is 1, then the receiver of the HE sounding NDP should not perform channel smoothing when generating the compressed beamforming feedback report.

27.3.17 HE TB feedback NDP

The HE TB feedback NDP is used to carry the NDP feedback report information as introduced in 26.5.7 (NDP feedback report procedure). The PPDU structure of an HE TB feedback NDP is shown in Figure 27-46 (HE TB feedback NDP format).

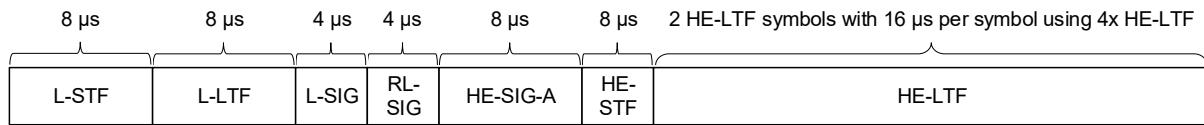


Figure 27-46—HE TB feedback NDP format

The HE TB feedback NDP has the following properties:

- Uses the HE TB PPDU format but without the Data field and PE field
- Has two 4x HE-LTF symbols
- 4x HE-LTF with 3.2 μs GI is the only HE-LTF type and GI duration combination for the HE-LTF
- The generation of HE-LTF symbols for the HE TB feedback NDP is defined in 27.3.10.10 (HE-LTF)

- 1 — The HE-STF and the pre-HE modulated fields are transmitted only on the 20 MHz channel where the
 2 STA is assigned
 3

4 27.3.18 Transmit specification 5

6 27.3.18.1 Transmit spectral mask 7

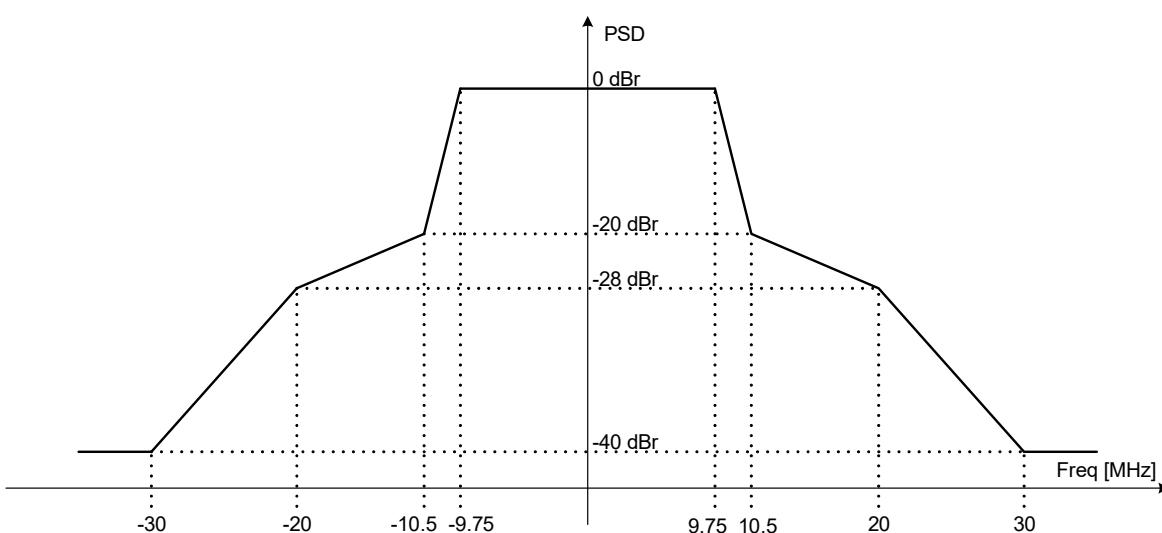
8 The bandwidth of the spectral mask applied to an HE SU PPDU, an HE TB PPDU and an HE MU PPDU
 9 with the Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A field equal to 0, 1, 2 or 3 shall be determined by the bandwidth
 10 indicated in the Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A field. The bandwidth of the spectral mask applied to an
 11 HE ER SU PPDU is 20 MHz. The bandwidth of the spectral mask applied to an HE MU PPDU with the
 12 Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A field equal to 4 or 5 is 80 MHz. The bandwidth of the spectral mask
 13 applied to an HE MU PPDU with the Bandwidth field of the HE-SIG-A field equal to 6 or 7 is 160 MHz. All
 14 HE PPDU formats shall be compliant with the transmit spectral mask described in this section.
 15

16 NOTE 1—In the presence of additional regulatory restrictions, the device has to meet both the regulatory requirements
 17 and the mask defined in this subclause.
 18

19 NOTE 2—Transmit spectral mask figures in this subclause are not drawn to scale.
 20

21 NOTE 3—For rules regarding transmit center frequency leakage levels, see 27.3.18.4.2 (Transmit center frequency leakage).
 22 The spectral mask requirements in this subclause do not apply to the RF LO.
 23

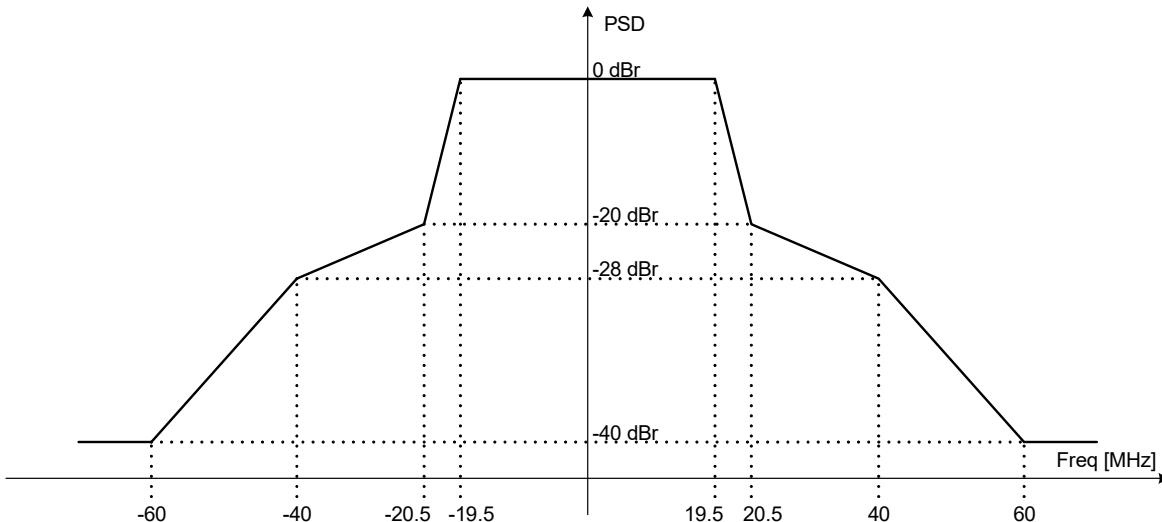
24 For a 20 MHz mask PPDU of HE format, the interim transmit spectral mask shall have a 0 dB_r (dB relative
 25 to the maximum spectral density of the signal) bandwidth of 19.5 MHz, -20 dB_r at 10.5 MHz frequency offset,
 26 -28 dB_r at 20 MHz frequency offset, and -40 dB_r at 30 MHz frequency offset and above. The interim
 27 transmit spectral mask for frequency offsets between 9.75 and 10.5 MHz, 10.5 and 20 MHz, and 20 and 30
 28 MHz shall be linearly interpolated in dB domain from the requirements for 9.75 MHz, 10.5 MHz, 20 MHz,
 29 and 30 MHz frequency offsets. The transmit spectrum shall not exceed the maximum of the interim transmit
 30 spectral mask and -53 dBm/MHz at any frequency offset. Figure 27-47 (Example transmit spectral mask for
 31 a 20 MHz mask PPDU) shows an example of the resulting overall spectral mask when the -40 dB spectrum
 32 level is above -53 dBm/MHz.
 33



60 **Figure 27-47—Example transmit spectral mask for a 20 MHz mask PPDU**
 61

62 For a 40 MHz mask PPDU of HE format, the interim transmit spectral mask shall have a 0 dB_r (dB relative
 63 to the maximum spectral density of the signal) bandwidth of 39 MHz, -20 dB_r at 20.5 MHz frequency off-

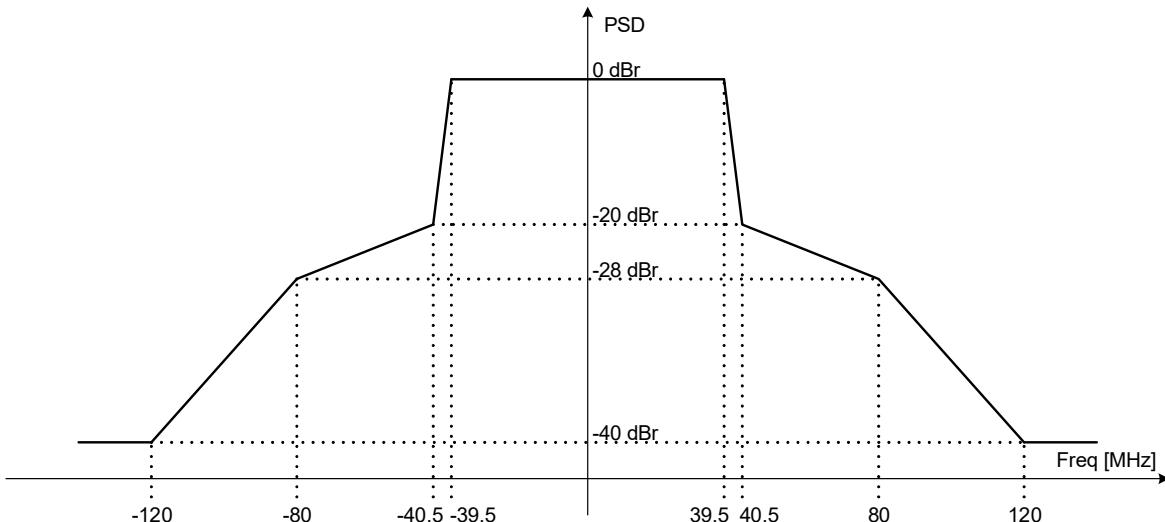
1 set, -28 dBr at 40 MHz frequency offset, and -40 dBr at 60 MHz frequency offset and above. The interim
 2 transmit spectral mask for frequency offsets in between 19.5 and 20.5 MHz, 20.5 and 40 MHz, and 40 and
 3 60 MHz shall be linearly interpolated in dB domain from the requirements for 19.5 MHz, 20.5 MHz, 40
 4 MHz, and 60 MHz frequency offsets. The transmit spectrum shall not exceed the maximum of the interim
 5 transmit spectral mask and -56 dBm/MHz at any frequency offset greater than 19.5 MHz. Figure 27-48
 6 (Example transmit spectral mask for a 40 MHz mask PPDU) shows an example of the resulting overall spec-
 7 tral mask when the -40 dBr spectrum level is above -56 dBm/MHz.
 8



33 **Figure 27-48—Example transmit spectral mask for a 40 MHz mask PPDU**

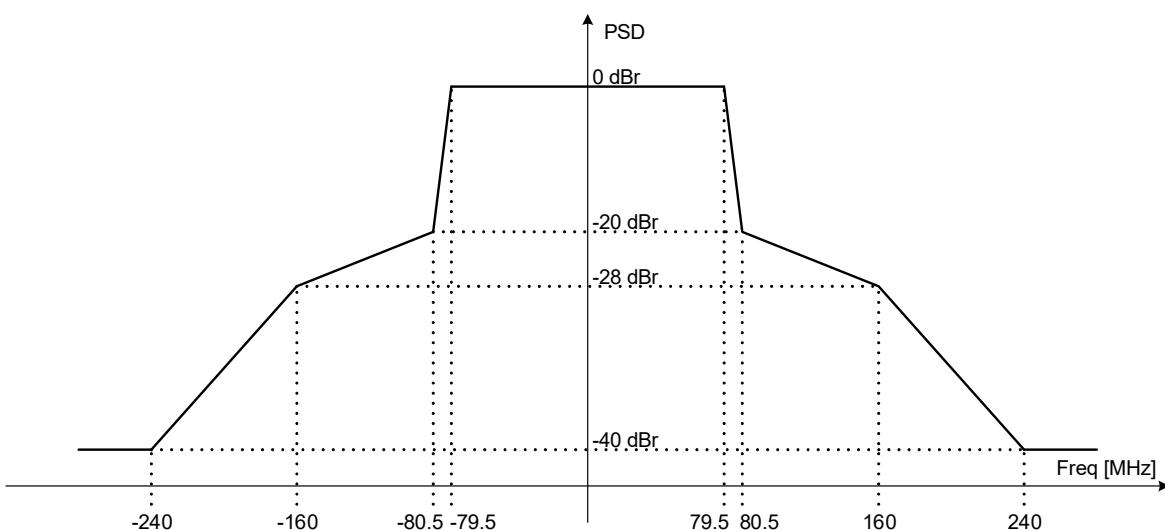
34
 35 For an 80 MHz mask PPDU of HE format, the interim transmit spectral mask shall have a 0 dBr (dB relative
 36 to the maximum spectral density of the signal) bandwidth of 79 MHz, -20 dBr at 40.5 MHz frequency off-
 37 set, -28 dBr at 80 MHz frequency offset, and -40 dBr at 120 MHz frequency offset and above. The interim
 38 transmit spectral mask for frequency offsets in between 39.5 and 40.5 MHz, 40.5 and 80 MHz, and 80 and
 39 120 MHz shall be linearly interpolated in dB domain from the requirements for 39.5 MHz, 40.5 MHz, 80
 40 MHz, and 120 MHz frequency offsets. The transmit spectrum shall not exceed the maximum of the interim
 41 transmit spectrum mask and -59 dBm/MHz at any frequency offset. Figure 27-49 (Example transmit spec-
 42

1 tral mask for an 80 MHz mask PPDU shows an example of the resulting overall spectral mask when the -40
 2 dB spectrum level is above -59 dBm/MHz.
 3



27 **Figure 27-49—Example transmit spectral mask for an 80 MHz mask PPDU**
 28

30 For a 160 MHz mask PPDU of HE format, the interim transmit spectral mask shall have a 0 dB (dB relative
 31 to the maximum spectral density of the signal) bandwidth of 159 MHz, -20 dB at 80.5 MHz frequency offset,
 32 -28 dB at 160 MHz frequency offset, and -40 dB at 240 MHz frequency offset and above. The interim
 33 transmit spectral mask for frequency offsets in between 79.5 and 80.5 MHz, 80.5 and 160 MHz, and 160 and
 34 240 MHz shall be linearly interpolated in dB domain from the requirements for 79.5 MHz, 80.5 MHz, 160
 35 MHz, and 240 MHz frequency offsets. The transmit spectrum shall not exceed the maximum of the interim
 36 transmit spectrum mask and -59 dBm/MHz at any frequency offset. Figure 27-50 (Example transmit spec-
 37 tral mask for a 160 MHz mask PPDU) shows an example of the resulting overall spectral mask when the -40
 38 dB spectrum level is above -59 dBm/MHz.
 39



64 **Figure 27-50—Example transmit spectral mask for a 160 MHz mask PPDU**
 65

For an 80+80 MHz mask PPDU of HE format, the overall transmit spectral mask is constructed in the following manner. First, the 80 MHz interim spectral mask is placed on each of the two 80 MHz segments. For each frequency at which either of the 80 MHz interim spectral mask has value equal to 0 dBr, then 0 dBr shall be taken as the overall interim spectral mask value. Then, for each frequency at which both of the 80 MHz interim spectral masks have values greater than -40 dBr and less than -20 dBr, the sum of the two interim mask values (summed in linear domain) shall be taken as the overall interim spectral mask value. Next, for each frequency at which neither of the two 80 MHz interim masks have values greater than or equal to -20 dBr, the higher value of the two interim masks shall be taken as the overall interim spectral mask value. Finally, for any frequency region where the overall interim spectral mask value has not been defined yet, linear interpolation (in dB domain) between the nearest two frequency points with the overall interim spectral mask value defined shall be used to define the overall interim spectral mask value. The transmit spectrum shall not exceed the maximum of the overall interim transmit spectrum mask and -59 dBm/MHz at any frequency offset. Figure 27-51 (Example transmit spectral mask for an 80+80 MHz mask PPDU) shows an example of a transmit spectral mask for a noncontiguous transmission using two 80 MHz channels where the center frequency of the two 80 MHz channels are separated by 160 MHz and the -40 dBr spectrum level is above -59 dBm/MHz.

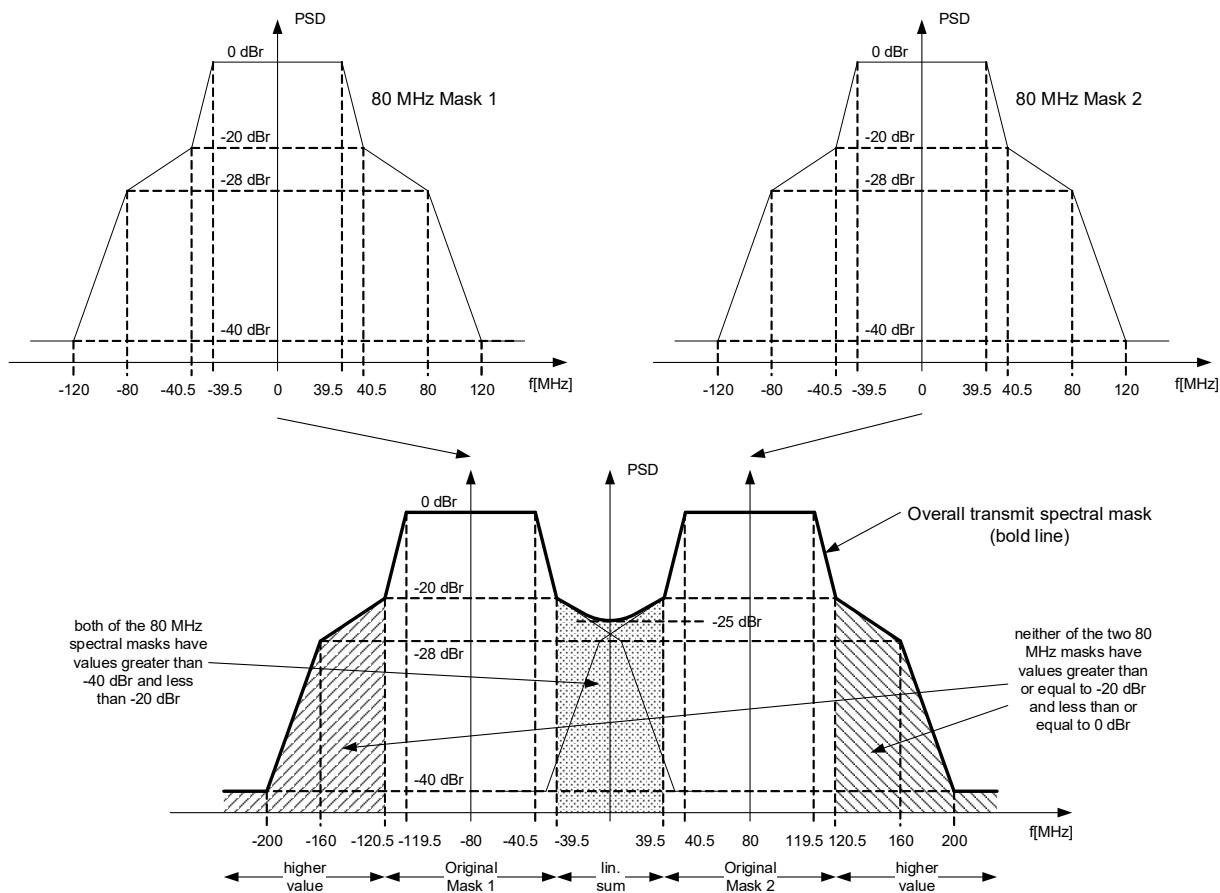


Figure 27-51—Example transmit spectral mask for an 80+80 MHz mask PPDU

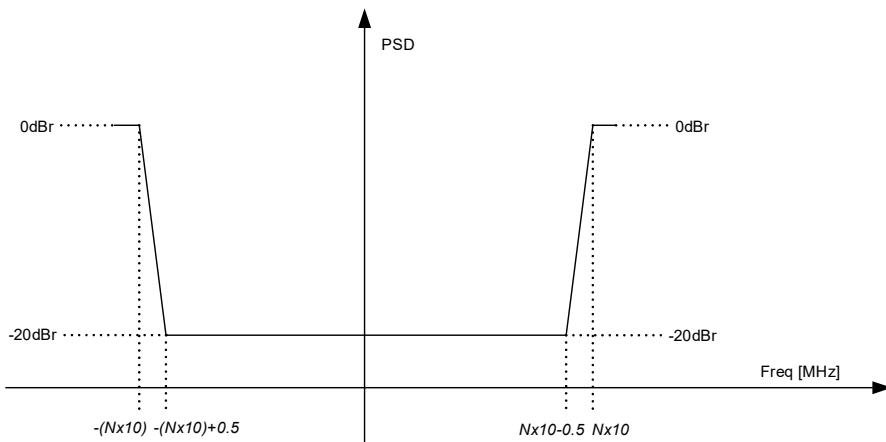
Different center frequency separation between the two 80 MHz frequency segments of the spectral mask as well as different peak levels of each 80 MHz frequency segment of the spectral mask are possible, in which case a similar procedure in determining the spectral mask as in Figure 27-51 (Example transmit spectral mask for an 80+80 MHz mask PPDU) is followed.

1 The transmit spectral mask for noncontiguous transmissions using two nonadjacent 80 MHz channels is
 2 applicable only in regulatory domains that allow for such transmissions.
 3

4 Measurements shall be made using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth and a 7.5 kHz video bandwidth.
 5

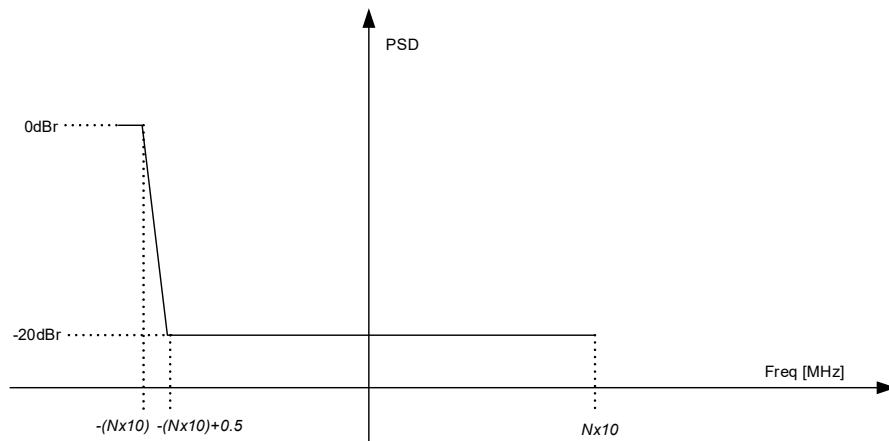
6 For preamble puncture, the signal leakage to the preamble punctured channel from the occupied subchannels
 7 shall be less than or equal to -20 dB_r (dB relative to the maximum spectral density of the signal) starting 0.5
 8 MHz from the boundary of the preamble punctured channel. Denote the number of 20 MHz punctured chan-
 9 nels by N .
 10

11 An example transmit spectral mask for an $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured channel with transmission on the
 12 both the upper and lower subchannels is shown in Figure 27-52 (Example transmit spectral mask for the
 13 $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured channel with transmissions on both upper and lower subchannels), where
 14 the X axis in the plot is centered in the middle of the punctured subbands.
 15



38 **Figure 27-52—Example transmit spectral mask for the $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured chan-
 39 nel with transmissions on both upper and lower subchannels**

1 An example transmit spectral mask for the $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured channel with transmission on the
 2 lower subchannel is shown in Figure 27-53 (Example transmit spectral mask for the $N \times 20$ MHz preamble
 3 punctured channel with transmissions on the lower subchannel)



25 **Figure 27-53—Example transmit spectral mask for the $N \times 20$ MHz preamble punctured chan-
 26 nel with transmissions on the lower subchannel**

27.3.18.2 Spectral flatness

32 Spectral flatness measurements shall be conducted using BPSK modulated HE PPDUs. The HE PPDUs
 33 shall be demodulated using the following (or equivalent) procedure:

- 35 a) Start of PPDU shall be detected.
- 36 b) Transition from L-STF to L-LTF shall be detected and fine timing shall be established.
- 37 c) Coarse and fine frequency offsets shall be estimated.
- 38 d) Symbols in a PPDU shall be manipulated to account for both frequency error and sampling offset
 39 drift.
- 40 e) For each HE-LTF symbol, transform the symbol into subcarrier received values, estimate the phase
 41 from the pilot subcarriers, and compensate the subcarrier values according to the estimated phase.
- 42 f) For each of the data OFDM symbols: transform the symbol into subcarrier received values.

44 The spectral flatness test shall be performed over at least 20 HE PPDUs. The PPDUs under test shall be at
 45 least 16 data OFDM symbols long.

47 Evaluate spectral flatness using the subcarrier received values or the magnitude of the channel estimation of
 48 the occupied subcarriers of the transmission HE PPDUs. Nonoccupied subcarriers of the transmitted HE
 49 PPDUs shall be ignored during averaging and testing. Resource unit power boosting and beamforming
 50 should not be used when measuring spectral flatness.

52 Let $E_{i,\text{avg}}$ denote the magnitude of the channel estimation on subcarrier i or the average constellation energy
 53 of a BPSK modulated subcarrier i in an HE data symbol. In a contiguous HE transmission having a band-
 54 width listed in Table 27-48 (Maximum transmit spectral flatness deviations), $E_{i,\text{avg}}$ of each of the subcarriers
 55 with indices listed as tested subcarrier indices shall not deviate by more than the specified maximum devia-

tion in Table 27-48 (Maximum transmit spectral flatness deviations) from the average of $E_{i,\text{avg}}$ over subcarrier indices listed as averaging subcarrier indices. Averaging of $E_{i,\text{avg}}$ is done in the linear domain.

Table 27-48—Maximum transmit spectral flatness deviations

Bandwidth of transmission (MHz)	Averaging subcarrier indices (inclusive)	Tested subcarrier indices (inclusive)	Maximum deviation (dB)
20	−84 to −2 and +2 to +84	−84 to −2 and +2 to +84	±4
		−122 to −85 and +85 to +122	+4/−6
40	−168 to −3 and +3 to +168	−168 to −3 and +3 to +168	±4
		−244 to −169 and +169 to +244	+4/−6
80	−344 to −3 and +3 to +344	−344 to −3 and +3 to +344	±4
		−500 to −345 and +345 to +500	+4/−6
160	−696 to −515, −509 to −166, +166 to +509, and +515 to +696	−696 to −515, −509 to −166, +166 to +509, and +515 to +696	±4
		−1012 to −697, −165 to −12, +12 to +165, and +697 to +1012	+4/−6

In an 80+80 MHz transmission, each segment shall meet the spectral flatness requirement for an 80 MHz transmission.

For the spectral flatness test, the transmitting STA shall be configured to use a spatial mapping matrix Q_k (see 27.3.11.14 (OFDM modulation)) with flat frequency response. Each output port under test of the transmitting STA shall be connected through a cable to one input port of the testing instrumentation. The requirements shall apply to 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, and 160 MHz contiguous transmissions as well as 80+80 MHz transmissions.

27.3.18.3 Transmit center frequency and symbol clock frequency tolerance

Transmit center frequency and the symbol clock frequency for all transmit antennas and frequency segments shall be derived from the same reference oscillator. The symbol clock frequency and transmit center frequency maximum tolerance shall be ±20 ppm in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands and ±25 ppm in the 2.4 GHz band. HE TB PPDU format is subject to additional requirements as defined in 27.3.14 (Transmit requirements for PPDUs sent in response to a triggering frame).

Transmit signals with TXVECTOR parameter CH_BANDWIDTH set to CBW160 or CBW80+80 may be generated using two separate RF LOs, one for each of the lower and upper 80 MHz frequency portions.

NOTE—The signal phase of the two 80 MHz frequency portions might not be correlated.

27.3.18.4 Modulation accuracy

27.3.18.4.1 Introduction to modulation accuracy tests

Transmit modulation accuracy specifications are described in 27.3.18.4.2 (Transmit center frequency leakage) and 27.3.18.4.3 (Transmitter constellation error). The test method is described in 27.3.18.4.4 (Transmitter modulation accuracy (EVM) test).

27.3.18.4.2 Transmit center frequency leakage

The transmit LO leakage requirement for all transmission modes except 80+80 MHz where the RF LO falls outside both frequency segments shall be the following. The power measured at the location of the RF LO using resolution BW 78.125 kHz shall not exceed the maximum of -32 dB relative to the total transmit power and -20 dBm, or equivalently $\max(P-32, -20)$, where P is the transmit power per antenna in dBm. The transmit center frequency leakage is specified per antenna.

For an 80+80 MHz transmission where the RF LO falls outside both frequency segments, the RF LO shall meet the spectral mask requirements as defined in 27.3.18.1 (Transmit spectral mask).

27.3.18.4.3 Transmitter constellation error

The relative constellation RMS error in the test, calculated by first averaging over subcarriers, frequency segments, HE PPUs, and spatial streams (see Equation (27-127)) as described in 27.3.18.4.4 (Transmitter modulation accuracy (EVM) test) shall not exceed a data-rate dependent value according to Table 27-49 (Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate). The number of spatial streams under test shall be equal to the number of utilized transmitting STA antenna (output) ports and also equal to the number of utilized testing instrumentation input ports. In the test, $N_{SS} = N_{STS}$ (no STBC) and no beamforming steering matrix shall be used. Each output port of the transmitting STA shall be connected through a cable to one input port of the testing instrumentation. The requirements shall apply to 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, and 160 MHz contiguous transmissions as well as 80+80 MHz noncontiguous transmissions.

Table 27-49—Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate

Modulation		Coding rate	Relative constellation error in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU (dB)	Relative constellation error in an HE TB PPDU when transmit power is larger than the maximum power of HE-MCS 7 (dB)	Relative constellation error in an HE TB PPDU when transmit power is less than or equal to the maximum power of HE-MCS 7 (dB)
Without DCM	With DCM				
N/A	BPSK	1/2	-5	-13	-27
BPSK	QPSK	1/2	-5	-13	-27
QPSK	16-QAM	1/2	-10	-13	-27
QPSK	16-QAM	3/4	-13	-13	-27
16-QAM	N/A	1/2	-16	-16	-27
16-QAM	N/A	3/4	-19	-19	-27
64-QAM	N/A	2/3	-22	-22	-27
64-QAM	N/A	3/4	-25	-25	-27
64-QAM	N/A	5/6	-27	-27	-27
256-QAM	N/A	3/4	-30	-30	-30
256-QAM	N/A	5/6	-32	-32	-32
1024-QAM	N/A	3/4	-35/-32	-35/-32	-35/-32

Table 27-49—Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate

Modulation		Coding rate	Relative constellation error in an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU (dB)	Relative constellation error in an HE TB PPDU when transmit power is larger than the maximum power of HE-MCS 7 (dB)	Relative constellation error in an HE TB PPDU when transmit power is less than or equal to the maximum power of HE-MCS 7 (dB)
Without DCM	With DCM				
1024-QAM	N/A	5/6	-35/-32	-35/-32	-35/-32

NOTE—The maximum power of HE-MCS 7 can be measured by setting the UL Target RSSI subfield as defined in Table 9-31i (UL Target RSSI subfield encoding) in the Trigger frame to 127 for the RU for which the EVM test is conducted.

For 1024-QAM, the relative constellation error shall meet one of the following requirements:

- The relative constellation error shall less than or equal to -35 dB if amplitude drift compensation is disabled in the test equipment
- The relative constellation error shall be less than or equal to -35 dB with amplitude drift compensation enabled in the test equipment, and the relative constellation error shall be less than or equal to -32 dB with amplitude drift compensation disabled in the test equipment

For all other constellations the relative constellation error shall be less than or equal to the values in Table 27-49 (Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate) whether or not amplitude drift compensation is enabled in the test equipment.

27.3.18.4.4 Transmitter modulation accuracy (EVM) test

The transmit modulation accuracy test shall be performed by instrumentation capable of converting the transmitted signals into a stream of complex samples at sampling rate greater than or equal to the bandwidth of the signal being transmitted except that for a noncontiguous transmissions each frequency segment may be tested independently.

In this case, transmit modulation accuracy of each segment shall meet the required value in Table 27-49 (Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate) using only the occupied data subcarriers within the corresponding segment. For HE TB PPDU transmission, two sets of EVM requirements are defined in Table 27-49 (Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate) for different transmission power levels to assist AP in better managing the interference among multiple STAs responding to a Trigger frame.

LO leakage that can potentially show up at the center frequency of the HE PPDU tone plan and within ± 3 neighboring subcarriers shall be excluded from the computation of the transmitter modulation accuracy test. The potential LO leakage subcarriers for 20 MHz operating devices are the center of primary 20 MHz of the HE PPDU tone plan and ± 3 subcarriers of it. The potential LO leakage subcarriers for 40 MHz operating devices are the center of the primary 40 MHz of the PPDU tone plan and ± 3 subcarriers. The potential LO leakage subcarriers for 80 MHz operating devices are the center of the primary 80 MHz of the PPDU tone plan and ± 3 subcarriers of it. The potential LO leakage tones for 160 MHz operating devices are the center of the 160 MHz of the PPDU tone plan and ± 3 subcarriers of it. The potential LO leakage tones for 80+80 MHz operating devices exist outside the PPDU bandwidth and should not affect the transmitter modulation accuracy test. For 40 MHz capable devices that transmits 20 MHz, the potential LO leakage subcarriers exist outside the PPDU bandwidth and should not affect the transmitter modulation accuracy test. For 80 MHz

1 capable devices that transmits 20 MHz or 40 MHz PPDU, the potential LO leakage subcarriers exist outside
 2 the PPDU bandwidth and should not affect the transmitter modulation accuracy test. For 160 or 80+80 MHz
 3 capable devices that transmits 20 MHz or 40 MHz PPDU or 80 MHz PPDU, the potential LO leakage sub-
 4 carriers exist outside the PPDU bandwidth and should not affect the transmitter modulation accuracy test.
 5

6 The instrument shall have sufficient accuracy in terms of I/Q branch amplitude and phase balance, DC off-
 7 sets, phase noise, and analog to digital quantization noise. A possible embodiment of such a setup is converting
 8 the signals to a low IF frequency with a microwave synthesizer, sampling the signal with a digital
 9 oscilloscope and decomposing it digitally into quadrature components. The sampled signal shall be pro-
 10 cessed in a manner similar to an actual receiver using the following or equivalent procedure:
 11

- 13 a) Start of PPDU shall be detected.
- 14 b) Transition from L-STF to L-LTF shall be detected and fine timing shall be established.
- 15 c) Coarse and fine frequency offsets shall be estimated.
- 16 d) Symbols in a PPDU shall be derotated according to estimated frequency offset. Sampling offset drift
 17 shall be also compensated.
- 18 e) For each HE-LTF symbol, transform the symbol into subcarrier received values, estimate the phase
 19 from the pilot subcarriers, and derotate the subcarrier values according to the estimated phase.
- 20 f) Estimate the complex channel response coefficient for each of the subcarriers and each of the trans-
 21 mit streams. If midambles are present in the Data field of the PPDU, the channel response coeffi-
 22 cients shall be based upon the most recently received midamble symbols.
- 23 g) For each of the data OFDM symbols: transform the symbol into subcarrier received values, estimate
 24 the phase from the pilot subcarriers, and compensate the subcarrier values according to the estimated
 25 phase, group the results from all of the receiver chains in each subcarrier to a vector, and multiply
 26 the vector by a zero-forcing equalization matrix generated from the estimated channel.
- 27 h) For each data-carrying subcarrier in each spatial stream of RU under test, find the closest constella-
 28 tion point and compute the Euclidean distance from it. If midambles are present in the Data field of
 29 the PPDU, the midamble symbols shall not be used to compute the Euclidean distance.
- 30 i) Compute the average across PPDUs of the RMS of all errors per PPDU as given by Equation (27-
 31 127).
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38

39 $Error_{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{N_f} \sum_{i_f=1}^{N_f} \sum_{i_s=1}^{N_{SYM}} \sum_{i_{ss}=1}^{N_{SS}} (I_e(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc}) - I_0(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc}))^2 + (Q_e(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc}) - Q_0(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc}))^2} / (N_{SYM} N_{SS} N_{SD} P_0)$ (27-127)

40 where

41 $I_0(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc})$ $Q_0(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc})$ denotes the ideal symbol point in the complex plane in data subcarrier i_{sc}
 42 of the RU under test, spatial stream i_{ss} , and OFDM symbol i_s of frame i_f .

43 $I_e(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc})$ $Q_e(i_f, i_s, i_{ss}, i_{sc})$ denotes the equalized observed symbol point in the complex plane of the
 44 data subcarrier i_{sc} of the RU under test, spatial stream i_{ss} , and OFDM symbol i_s of frame i_f

45 P_0 is the average power of constellation

46 N_f is the number of tested frames

47 N_{SD} is the number of data tones of the occupied RU. For an 80+80 MHz transmission, N_{SD} is the total
 48 number of data subcarriers in both 80 MHz frequency segments.

49 N_{SS} is the number of spatial streams of the data

50 N_{SYM} is the number of data OFDM symbols

The test shall be performed over at least 20 PPDUs (N_f as defined in Equation (27-127)). If the occupied RU has 26 tones, the PPDUs under test shall be at least 32 data OFDM symbols long. For occupied RUs that have more than 26 tones, the PPDUs under test shall be at least 16 data OFDM symbols long. Random data shall be used for the symbols.

For an HE TB PPDU with an RU smaller than a 2×996 -tone RU, additional transmit modulation accuracy test for the unoccupied subcarriers of the PPDU shall be performed. The transmit modulation accuracy of unoccupied subcarriers of the PPDU test shall be performed by instrumentation capable of converting the transmitted signals into a stream of complex samples at sampling rate greater than or equal to the bandwidth of the signal being transmitted except that for noncontiguous transmissions, only the frequency segment with occupied subcarriers is tested. The transmit modulation accuracy of unoccupied subcarriers of the PPDU shall meet the relative constellation error staircase mask specified in Equation (27-131) for each modulation and coding rate using the unoccupied subcarriers within the corresponding segment.

The instrument shall have sufficient accuracy in terms of I/Q branch amplitude and phase balance, DC offsets, phase noise, and analog to digital quantization noise. A possible embodiment of such a setup is converting the signals to a low IF frequency with a microwave synthesizer, sampling the signal with a digital oscilloscope and decomposing it digitally into quadrature components. The sampled signal shall be processed in a manner similar to an actual receiver, according to the following steps, or equivalent procedure:

- a) Start of PPDU shall be detected.
- b) Transition from L-STF to L-LTF shall be detected and fine timing shall be established.
- c) Coarse and fine frequency offsets shall be estimated.
- d) Symbols in a PPDU shall be derotated according to estimated frequency offset. Sampling offset drift shall be also compensated.
- e) For each of the data OFDM symbols, transform the symbol into subcarrier received values and estimate the power of each subcarrier.
- f) Compute the average unoccupied subcarrier error vector magnitude for each unoccupied 26-tone RU and average across PPDUs of the RMS of all errors per PPDU as given by Equation (27-128).

$$\text{UnusedToneError}_{RMS}(k) = \frac{1}{N_f} \sum_{i_f=1}^{N_f} \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i_s=1}^{N_{SYM}} \sum_{i_{sc} \in \Omega_k} (I_u(i_f, i_s, i_{sc}))^2 + (Q_u(i_f, i_s, i_{sc}))^2}{N_{SYM} \cdot 26 \cdot P_S}} \quad (27-128)$$

where

$I_u(i_f, i_s, i_{sc})$ $Q_u(i_f, i_s, i_{sc})$ denotes unequalized observed symbol point in the complex plane in subcarrier i_{sc} of the unoccupied 26-tone RU and OFDM symbol i_s of frame i_f

Ω_k is a set of subcarriers for k -th 26-tone RU as defined in Table 27-7 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 20 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 20 MHz HE PPDU), Table 27-8 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in a 40 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 40 MHz HE PPDU) and Table 27-9 (Data and pilot subcarrier indices for RUs in an 80 MHz HE PPDU and in a non-OFDMA 80 MHz HE PPDU)

P_S is the average data subcarrier power of the occupied RU under test and is given by Equation (27-129)

$$P_S = \frac{1}{N_{SYM} N_{SD}} \sum_{i_s=1}^{N_{SYM}} \sum_{i_{sc}=1}^{N_{SD}} (I_u(i_f, i_s, i_{sc}))^2 + (Q_u(i_f, i_s, i_{sc}))^2 \quad (27-129)$$

- 1 N_f is the number of tested frames
 2 N_{SYM} is the number of data OFDM symbols
 3 N_{SD} is the number of data subcarriers in the occupied RU
 4
 5 g) For all HE-MCSs, for an occupied RU bandwidth of r in units of a 26-tone RU as defined by
 6 Equation (27-130)

$$r = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if 26-tone RU} \\ 2, & \text{if 52-tone RU} \\ 4, & \text{if 106-tone RU} \\ 9, & \text{if 242-tone RU} \\ 18, & \text{if 484-tone RU} \\ 37, & \text{if 996-tone RU} \end{cases} \quad (27-130)$$

The average unused subcarrier error vector magnitude for each unoccupied 26-tone RU as calculated in step f) shall meet the staircase mask requirement in Equation (27-131) and Equation (27-132), where m defines the gap in the units of 26-tone RU to the occupied RU from either side with $m = \pm 1$ being the adjacent 26-tone RUs.

$$\text{UnusedToneError}(i_{RU26,start} + m) \leq \begin{cases} \max(\varepsilon - 2, -35 \text{ dB}), & \text{if } -r \leq m \leq -1 \\ \max(\varepsilon - 12, -35 \text{ dB}), & \text{if } -2r \leq m \leq -r - 1 \\ \max(\varepsilon - 22, -35 \text{ dB}), & \text{if } -3r \leq m \leq -2r - 1 \\ -35 \text{ dB}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-131)$$

The valid range for m for Equation (27-131) is as follows:

- $-i_{RU26,start} + 1 \leq m \leq -1$ for a 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz or 160 MHz PPDU
 $-i_{RU26,start} + 1 \leq m \leq -1$ for an 80+80 MHz PPDU and $i_{RU26,start} \leq 37$
 $-i_{RU26,start} + 38 \leq m \leq -1$ for an 80+80 MHz PPDU and $i_{RU26,start} > 37$

$$\text{UnusedToneError}(i_{RU26,end} + m) \leq \begin{cases} \max(\varepsilon - 2, -35 \text{ dB}), & \text{if } 1 \leq m \leq r \\ \max(\varepsilon - 12, -35 \text{ dB}), & \text{if } r + 1 \leq m \leq 2r \\ \max(\varepsilon - 22, -35 \text{ dB}), & \text{if } 2r + 1 \leq m \leq 3r \\ -35 \text{ dB}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-132)$$

The valid range for m for Equation (27-132) is as follows:

- $1 \leq m \leq N_{RU26} - i_{RU26,end}$ for a 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz or 160 MHz PPDU
 $1 \leq m \leq 37 - i_{RU26,end}$ for an 80+80 MHz PPDU and $i_{RU26,start} \leq 37$
 $1 \leq m \leq 74 - i_{RU26,end}$ for an 80+80 MHz PPDU and $i_{RU26,start} > 37$

where

i_{RU26,start} is equal to *i_{RU}* if the occupied RU is a 26-tone RU, and is defined in Table 27-50 (*i_{RU26,start}* for RUs other than a 26-tone RU) for other RU sizes

Table 27-50—*i_{RU26,start}* for RUs other than a 26-tone RU

<i>i_{RU}</i>	52-tone RU	106-tone RU	242-tone RU	484-tone RU	996-tone RU
1	1	1	1	1	1
2	3	6	10	20	38
3	6	10	20	38	
4	8	15	29	57	
5	10	20	38		
6	12	25	47		
7	15	29	57		
8	17	34	66		
9	20	38			
10	22	43			
11	25	47			
12	27	52			
13	29	57			
14	31	62			
15	34	66			
16	36	71			
17	38				
18	40				
19	43				
20	45				
21	47				
22	49				
23	52				
24	54				
25	57				
26	59				
27	62				
28	64				
29	66				
30	68				
31	71				

1 **Table 27-50— $i_{RU26,start}$ for RUs other than a 26-tone RU (continued)**
2
3
4
5
6
7

i_{RU}	52-tone RU	106-tone RU	242-tone RU	484-tone RU	996-tone RU
32	73				

8 $i_{RU26,end}$ is equal to $i_{RU26,start} + r - 1$
9
1011 i_{RU} is the index of the occupied RU
12
1314 N_{RU26} is the maximum number of 26-tone RUs for the given bandwidth of the HE TB PPDU as defined in
15 Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)
16
1718 ϵ is the relative constellation error requirement for an occupied RU of an HE TB PPDU as defined in
19 Table 27-49 (Allowed relative constellation error versus constellation size and coding rate)
20
2122 NOTE—For an 80+80 MHz PPDU the unused subcarrier error is measured only in the 80 MHz segment in which the
23 occupied RU is located. This leads to the different valid range for m in Equation (27-131) and Equation (27-132) for the
24 80+80 MHz PPDU.
25
2627 The test shall be performed over at least 20 PPDUs (N_f as defined in Equation (27-127)). The PPDUs under
28 test shall be at least 16 data OFDM symbols long. The unequarliized observed symbol of potential LO leakage
29 subcarrier locations shall be treated as zero during unoccupied subcarriers transmit modulation accuracy
30 test. Random data shall be used for the symbols.
31
3233 **27.3.19 Receiver specification**
34
3536 **27.3.19.1 General**
37
3839 For receiver minimum input sensitivity, adjacent channel rejection, nonadjacent channel rejection, receiver
40 maximum input level and CCA sensitivity requirements described in this subclause, the input levels are
41 measured at the antenna connectors and are referenced as the average power per receive antenna. The num-
42 ber of spatial streams under test shall be equal to the number of utilized transmitting STA antenna (output)
43 ports and also equal to the number of utilized Device Under Test input ports. Each output port of the trans-
44 mitting STA shall be connected through a cable to one input port of the Device Under Test.
45
4647 NOTE—Additional test requirements and/or test methods may be needed to meet regulatory requirements.
48
4950 The requirements on receiver minimum input sensitivity in 27.3.19.2 (Receiver minimum input sensitivity),
51 adjacent channel rejection in 27.3.19.3 (Adjacent channel rejection) and nonadjacent channel rejection in
52 27.3.19.4 (Nonadjacent channel rejection) apply to PPDUs that meet all the following conditions:
53
54

- 55 — STBC is not used
-
- 56 — 0.8
- μ
- s GI is used
-
- 57 — If the PPDU bandwidth is 20 MHz and the HE-MCS is less than 10, then BCC is used. Otherwise,
-
- 58 LDPC is used.
-
- 59 — The PPDU is an HE SU PPDU
-
- 60
-
- 61
-
- 62
-
- 63
-
- 64
-
- 65

27.3.19.2 Receiver minimum input sensitivity

The packet error rate (PER) shall be less than 10% for a PSDU with the rate-dependent input levels listed in Table 27-51 (Receiver minimum input level sensitivity). The PSDU length shall be 2048 octets for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations.

Table 27-51—Receiver minimum input level sensitivity

Modulation		Rate (R)	Minimum sensitivity (20 MHz PPDU) (dBm)	Minimum sensitivity (40 MHz PPDU) (dBm)	Minimum sensitivity (80 MHz PPDU) (dBm)	Minimum sensitivity (160 MHz or 80+80 MHz PPDU) (dBm)
Without DCM	With DCM					
N/A	BPSK	1/2	-82	-79	-76	-73
BPSK	QPSK	1/2	-82	-79	-76	-73
QPSK	16-QAM	1/2	-79	-76	-73	-70
QPSK	16-QAM	3/4	-77	-74	-71	-68
16-QAM	N/A	1/2	-74	-71	-68	-65
16-QAM	N/A	3/4	-70	-67	-64	-61
64-QAM	N/A	2/3	-66	-63	-60	-57
64-QAM	N/A	3/4	-65	-62	-59	-56
64-QAM	N/A	5/6	-64	-61	-58	-55
256-QAM	N/A	3/4	-59	-56	-53	-50
256-QAM	N/A	5/6	-57	-54	-51	-48
1024-QAM	N/A	3/4	-54	-51	-48	-45
1024-QAM	N/A	5/6	-52	-49	-46	-43

27.3.19.3 Adjacent channel rejection

Adjacent channel rejection for W MHz (where W is 20, 40, 80, or 160) shall be measured by setting the desired signal's strength 3 dB above the rate-dependent sensitivity specified in Table 27-51 (Receiver minimum input level sensitivity) and raising the power of the interfering signal of W MHz bandwidth until 10% PER is caused for a PSDU length of 2048 octets for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations. The difference in power between the signals in the interfering channel and the desired channel is the corresponding adjacent channel rejection. The center frequency of the adjacent channel shall be placed W MHz away from the center frequency of the desired signal.

Adjacent channel rejection for 80+80 MHz channels shall be measured by setting the desired signal's strength 3 dB above the rate-dependent sensitivity specified in Table 27-51 (Receiver minimum input level sensitivity). Then, an interfering signal of 80 MHz bandwidth is introduced, where the center frequency of the interfering signal is placed 80 MHz away from the center frequency of the frequency segment lower in the frequency of the desired signal. The power of interfering signal is raised until 10% PER is caused for a PSDU length of 2048 octets for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations. Let ΔP_1 be the difference between the interfering and desired signal. Next, the interfering signal of 80 MHz bandwidth is moved to the frequency where the center frequency of the interfering signal is 80 MHz away

from the center frequency of the frequency segment higher in frequency of the desired signal. The power of the interfering is raised until 10% PER is caused for a PSDU length of 2048 octets for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations. Let ΔP_2 be the power difference between the interfering and desired signal. The smaller value between ΔP_1 and ΔP_2 is the corresponding adjacent channel rejection.

The interfering signal in the adjacent channel shall be a signal compliant with the HE PHY, unsynchronized with the signal in the channel under test, and shall have a minimum duty cycle of 50%. The corresponding rejection shall be no less than specified in Table 27-52 (Minimum required adjacent and nonadjacent channel rejection levels).

Table 27-52—Minimum required adjacent and nonadjacent channel rejection levels

Modulation		Rate (R)	Adjacent channel rejection (dB)		Nonadjacent channel rejection (dB)	
			20/40/80/ 160 MHz Channel	80+80 MHz Channel	20/40/80/ 160 MHz Channel	80+80 MHz Channel
Without DCM	With DCM					
N/A	BPSK	1/2	16	13	32	29
BPSK	QPSK	1/2	16	13	32	29
QPSK	16-QAM	1/2	13	10	29	26
QPSK	16-QAM	3/4	11	8	27	24
16-QAM	N/A	1/2	8	5	24	21
16-QAM	N/A	3/4	4	1	20	17
64-QAM	N/A	2/3	0	-3	16	13
64-QAM	N/A	3/4	-1	-4	15	12
64-QAM	N/A	5/6	-2	-5	14	11
256-QAM	N/A	3/4	-7	-10	9	6
256-QAM	N/A	5/6	-9	-12	7	4
1024-QAM	N/A	3/4	-12	-15	4	1
1024-QAM	N/A	5/6	-14	-17	2	-1

The measurement of adjacent channel rejection for 160 MHz operation in regulatory domain is required only if such a frequency band plan is permitted in the regulatory domain.

27.3.19.4 Nonadjacent channel rejection

Nonadjacent channel rejection for W MHz channels (where W is 20, 40, 80, or 160) shall be measured by setting the desired signal's strength 3 dB above the rate-dependent sensitivity specified in Table 27-51 (Receiver minimum input level sensitivity), and raising the power of the interfering signal of W MHz bandwidth until a 10% PER occurs for a PSDU length of 2048 octets for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations. The difference in power between the signals in the interfering channel and the desired channel is the corresponding nonadjacent channel rejection. The nonadjacent channel rejection shall be met with any nonadjacent channels located at least $2 \times W$ MHz away from the center frequency of the desired signal.

1 Nonadjacent channel rejection for 80+80 MHz channels shall be measured by setting the desired signal's
 2 strength 3 dB above the rate-dependent sensitivity specified in Table 27-51 (Receiver minimum input level
 3 sensitivity). Then, an interfering signal of 80 MHz bandwidth is introduced, where the center frequency of
 4 the interfering signal is placed at least 160 MHz away from the center frequency of the frequency segment
 5 lower in the frequency of the desired signal. The center frequency of the interfering signal shall also be at
 6 least 160 MHz away from the center frequency of the frequency segment higher in frequency of the desired
 7 signal. The power of interfering signal is raised until 10% PER is caused for a PSDU length of 2048 octets
 8 for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations. Let ΔP_1 be the difference
 9 between the interfering and desired signal. Next, the interfering signal of 80 MHz bandwidth is moved to the
 10 frequency where the center frequency of the interfering signal is at least 160 MHz away from the center fre-
 11 quency of the frequency segment higher in frequency of the desired signal. The center frequency of the
 12 interfering signal shall also be at least 160 MHz away from the center frequency of the frequency segment
 13 lower in frequency of the desired signal. The power of the interfering is raised until 10% PER is caused for a
 14 PSDU length of 2048 octets for BPSK modulation with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations. Let
 15 ΔP_2 be the power difference between the interfering and desired signal. The smaller value between ΔP_1
 16 and ΔP_2 is the corresponding nonadjacent channel rejection.
 17

21 The interfering signal in the nonadjacent channel shall be a signal compliant with the HE PHY, unsynchro-
 22 nized with the signal in the channel under test, and shall have a minimum duty cycle of 50%. The corre-
 23 sponding rejection shall be no less than specified in Table 27-52 (Minimum required adjacent and
 24 nonadjacent channel rejection levels).

27 The measurement of nonadjacent channel rejection for 160 MHz operation in regulatory domain is required
 28 only if such a frequency band plan is permitted in the regulatory domain.

31 **27.3.19.5 Receiver maximum input level**

34 The receiver shall provide a maximum PER of 10% at a PSDU length of 2048 octets for BPSK modulation
 35 with DCM or 4096 octets for all other modulations, for a maximum input level of -30 dBm in the 5 GHz and
 36 6 GHz bands and -20 dBm in the 2.4 GHz band, measured at each antenna for any baseband HE modula-
 37 tion.

40 **27.3.19.6 CCA sensitivity**

42 **27.3.19.6.1 General**

45 The thresholds in this subclause are compared with the signal level at each receiving antenna.

48 **27.3.19.6.2 CCA sensitivity for operating classes requiring CCA-ED**

50 For the operating classes requiring CCA-Energy Detect (CCA-ED), the PHY shall indicate a medium busy
 51 condition if CCA-ED detects a channel busy condition. For improved spectrum sharing, CCA-ED is
 52 required in some bands. The behavior class indicating CCA-ED is given in Table D-2 (Behavior limits). The
 53 operating classes requiring the corresponding CCA-ED behavior class are given in E.1 (Country information
 54 and operating classes). The PHY of a STA that is operating within an operating class that requires CCA-ED
 55 shall operate with CCA-ED.

58 CCA-ED for a STA that is attempting a non-preamble puncturing transmission shall detect a channel busy
 59 condition if the received signal strength exceeds the CCA-ED threshold as given by dot11OFDMEDThreshold
 60 for the primary 20 MHz channel, dot11OFDMEDThreshold for the secondary 20 MHz channel (if pres-
 61 ent), dot11OFDMEDThreshold + 3 dB for the secondary 40 MHz channel (if present), and
 62 dot11OFDMEDThreshold + 6 dB for the secondary 80 MHz channel (if present). The CCA-ED thresholds
 63 for the operating classes requiring CCA-ED are subject to the criteria in D.2.5 (CCA-ED threshold).

1 CCA-ED for a STA that is attempting a preamble puncturing transmission shall detect a channel busy condition
 2 if the received signal strength exceeds the CCA-ED threshold as given by dot11OFDMEDThreshold for
 3 the primary 20 MHz channel and dot11OFDMEDThreshold for each nonprimary 20 MHz subchannel. The
 4 CCA-ED thresholds for the operating classes requiring CCA-ED are subject to the criteria in D.2.5 (CCA-
 5 ED threshold).

8 For the HE TB PPDU transmission, for each of 20 MHz sub-channels that require CCA, CCA-ED shall
 9 detect a channel busy condition if the received signal strength exceeds the CCA-ED threshold as given by
 10 dot11OFDMEDThreshold. The CCA-ED thresholds for the operating classes requiring CCA-ED are subject
 11 to the criteria in D.2.5 (CCA-ED threshold).

14 For transmissions that carry a frame that includes a BQR Control subfield (see 9.2.4.6a (Control subfield
 15 variants of an A-Control subfield)), CCA-ED shall detect a channel busy condition if the received signal
 16 strength exceeds the CCA-ED threshold as given by dot11OFDMEDThreshold for primary 20 MHz channel
 17 and dot11OFDMEDThreshold for each nonprimary 20 MHz channel (if present). The CCA-ED thresholds
 18 for the operating classes requiring CCA-ED are subject to the criteria in D.2.5 (CCA-ED threshold).

21 NOTE—The requirement to detect a channel busy condition as stated in 27.3.19.6.3 (CCA sensitivity for the primary 20
 22 MHz channel) and 27.3.19.6.4 (CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel) is a mandatory
 23 energy detect requirement on all Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification) receivers. Support for CCA-ED is
 24 an additional requirement that relates specifically to the sensitivities described in D.2.5 (CCA-ED threshold).

27.3.19.6.3 CCA sensitivity for the primary 20 MHz channel

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to either 0 (singleelement) or 1 (per20bitmap), the PHY shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {primary}) primitive if one of the conditions listed in Table 27-53 (Conditions for CCA BUSY on the primary 20 MHz) is met in an otherwise idle 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz operating channel width. With >90% probability, the PHY shall detect the start of a PPDU that occupies at least the primary 20 MHz channel under the conditions listed in Table 27-53 (Conditions for CCA BUSY on the primary 20 MHz) within a period of aCCATime (see 21.4.4 (VHT PHY)) and hold the CCA signal busy (PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-list) primitive) for the duration of the PPDU, unless it receives a CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the PPDU for instance during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

Table 27-53—Conditions for CCA BUSY on the primary 20 MHz

Operating Channel Width	Conditions
20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz	The start of a 20 MHz NON_HT PPDU in the primary 20 MHz channel as defined in 17.3.10.6 (CCA requirements). The start of an HT PPDU under the conditions defined in 19.3.19.5 (CCA sensitivity). The start of a 20 MHz VHT PPDU in the primary 20 MHz channel at or above -82 dBm. The start of a 20 MHz HE PPDU in the primary 20 MHz channel at or above -82 dBm.
40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz	The start of a 40 MHz non-HT duplicate, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU in the primary 40 MHz channel at or above -79 dBm. The start of an HT PPDU under the conditions defined in 19.3.19.5 (CCA sensitivity).
80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz	The start of an 80 MHz non-HT duplicate, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU in the primary 80 MHz channel at or above -76 dBm.
160 MHz or 80+80 MHz	The start of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz non-HT duplicate, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU at or above -73 dBm.

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to either 0 (singleelement) or 1 (per20bitmap), the receiver shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {primary}) primitive for any signal that exceeds a threshold equal to 20 dB above the minimum modulation and coding rate sensitivity ($-82 + 20 = -62$ dBm) in the primary 20 MHz channel within a period of aCCATime after the signal arrives at the receiver's antenna(s); then the receiver shall not issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary}), PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary40}), PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary80}), PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {per20bitmap}), or PHY-CCA.indication(IDLE) primitive while the threshold continues to be exceeded.

27.3.19.6.4 CCA sensitivity for signals not occupying the primary 20 MHz channel

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 0 (singleelement), the PHY shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary}) primitive if the conditions for issuing PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {primary}) primitive are not present and one of the following conditions are present in an otherwise idle 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz operating channel width:

- Any signal within the secondary 20 MHz channel at or above a threshold of -62 dBm within a period of aCCATime after the signal arrives at the receiver's antenna(s); then the PHY shall not issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary40}), PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary80}), or PHY-CCA.indication(IDLE) primitive while the threshold continues to be exceeded.
- A 20 MHz NON_HT, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU detected in the secondary 20 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level})$ with $>90\%$ probability within a period aCCAMidTime (see 27.4.4 (HE PHY)).

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 0 (singleelement), the PHY shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary40}) primitive if the conditions for issuing a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {primary}) and PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary}) primitive are not present and one of the following conditions are present in an otherwise idle 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz operating channel width:

- Any signal within the secondary 40 MHz channel at or above a threshold of -59 dBm within a period of aCCATime after the signal arrives at the receiver's antenna(s); then the PHY shall not issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary80}) primitive or PHY-CCA.indication(IDLE) primitive while the threshold continues to be exceeded.
- A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU detected in the secondary 40 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level} + 3 \text{ dB})$ with $>90\%$ probability within a period aCCAMidTime (see 27.4.4 (HE PHY)).
- A 20 MHz non-HT, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU detected in any 20 MHz sub-channel of the secondary 40 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level})$ with $>90\%$ probability within a period aCCAMidTime.

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 0 (singleelement), the PHY shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary80}) primitive if the conditions for PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {primary}), PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary}), and PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {secondary40}) primitive are not present and one of the following conditions are present in an otherwise idle 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz operating channel width:

- Any signal within the secondary 80 MHz channel at or above -56 dBm.
- An 80 MHz non-HT duplicate, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU detected in the secondary 80 MHz channel at or above $\max(-69 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level} + 6 \text{ dB})$ with $>90\%$ probability within a period aCCAMidTime (see 27.4.4 (HE PHY)).
- A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT or HE PPDU detected in any 40 MHz sub-channel of the secondary 80 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level} + 3 \text{ dB})$ with $>90\%$ probability within a period aCCAMidTime.

- A 20 MHz NON_HT, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT or HE PPDU detected in any 20 MHz sub-channel of the secondary 80 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level})$ with >90% probability within a period aCCAMidTime.

$OBSS_PD_{level}$ is defined in 26.10.2.4 (Adjustment of OBSS PD and transmit power) and applied in the equations to define the detection level in this subclause if an HE STA has ignored a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz inter-BSS PPDU following the procedure in 26.10.2.2 (General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level) or 26.10.2.3 (General operation with SRG OBSS PD level). It is applied to any secondary channels within the PPDU bandwidth of the inter-BSS PPDU and during the RXTIME of the inter-BSS PPDU. Otherwise, $OBSS_PD_{level}$ is not applied in the equations to define the detection level in this subclause.

27.3.19.6.5 Per 20 MHz CCA sensitivity

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 1 (per20bitmap), the PHY shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {per20bitmap}) primitive if the conditions for issuing PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {primary}) primitive are not present and one of the following conditions are present in an otherwise idle 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz operating channel width:

- Any signal within the any 20 MHz subchannel of secondary 20 MHz, secondary 40 MHz or secondary 80 MHz at or above a threshold of -62 dBm within a period of aCCATime after the signal arrives at the receiver's antenna(s); then the PHY shall not issue PHY-CCA.indication(IDLE) primitive while the threshold continues to be exceeded.
- An 80 MHz non-HT duplicate, VHT PPDU or HE PPDU detected in the secondary 80 MHz channel at or above $\max(-69 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level} + 6 \text{ dB})$ with > 90% probability within a period accAMidTime (see 27.4.4 (HE PHY)).
- A 40 MHz non-HT duplicate, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT or HE PPDU detected in any 40 MHz sub-channel of the secondary 40 MHz or the secondary 80 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level} + 3 \text{ dB})$ with > 90% probability within a period aCCAMidTime.
- A 20 MHz NON_HT, HT_MF, HT_GF, VHT, or HE PPDU detected in the any 20 MHz subchannel of secondary 20 MHz, secondary 40 MHz or secondary 80 MHz channel at or above $\max(-72 \text{ dBm}, OBSS_PD_{level})$ with >90% probability within a period aCCAMidTime (see 27.4.4 (HE PHY)).

$OBSS_PD_{level}$ is defined in 26.10.2.4 (Adjustment of OBSS PD and transmit power) and applied in the equations to define the detection level in this subclause if an HE STA has ignored a 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz inter-BSS PPDU following the procedure in 26.10.2.2 (General operation with non-SRG OBSS PD level) or 26.10.2.3 (General operation with SRG OBSS PD level). It is applied to any secondary channels within the PPDU bandwidth of the inter-BSS PPDU and during the RXTIME of the inter-BSS PPDU. Otherwise, $OBSS_PD_{level}$ is not applied in the equations to define the detection level in this subclause.

If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 2 (per20bitmapsifs), the PHY shall issue a PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, {per20bitmap}) primitive if one of the following conditions are present in an otherwise idle 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz operating channel width:

- Any signal within any 20 MHz subchannel of primary 20 MHz, secondary 20 MHz, secondary 40 MHz or secondary 80 MHz at or above a threshold of -62 dBm within a period of aCCATime after the signal arrives at the receiver's antenna(s); then the PHY shall not issue PHY-CCA.indication(IDLE) primitive while the threshold continues to be exceeded.

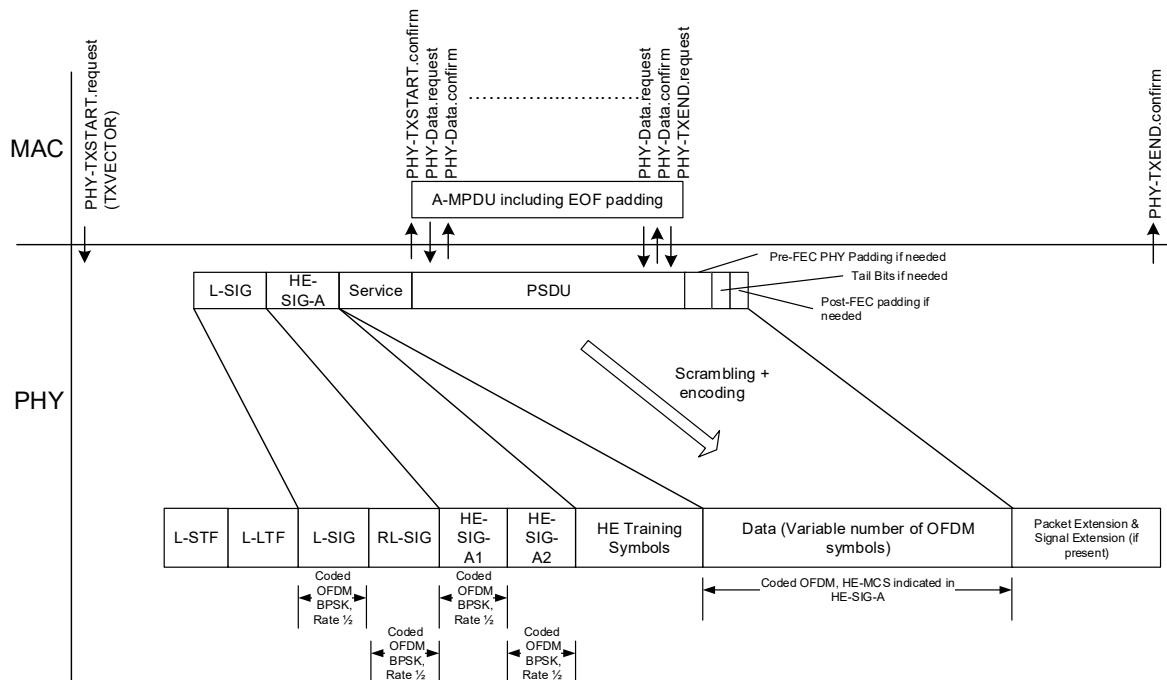
The per20bitmap is 8 bits in length. For 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz operation, the first bit to the 8th bit correspond to the 20 MHz subchannel with the lowest frequency to the 20 MHz subchannel with the highest frequency respectively. When a 20 MHz subchannel is BUSY, the corresponding bit is set to 1, otherwise it is

1 set to 0. If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 1 (per20bitmap), the bit corresponding to the primary 20
 2 MHz is set to 0.
 3

4 For 80 MHz operation, the first bit to the 4th bit corresponds to the 20 MHz subchannel with the lowest frequency
 5 to the 20 MHz subchannel with the highest frequency respectively. When a 20 MHz subchannel is
 6 BUSY, the corresponding bit is set to 1, otherwise it is set to 0. If dot11HECCAIndicationMode is equal to 1
 7 (per20bitmap), the bit corresponding to the primary 20 MHz is set to 0 and the last 4 bits are reserved and set
 8 to 1s.
 9

10 27.3.20 HE transmit procedure

11 There are five options for the transmit PHY procedure. The first four options, for which typical transmit procedures
 12 are shown in Figure 27-54 (PHY transmit procedure for an HE SU PPDU), Figure 27-55 (PHY transmit procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU), Figure 27-56 (PHY transmit procedure for an HE MU PPDU) and Figure 27-57 (PHY transmit procedure for an HE TB PPDU), are selected if the FORMAT field of the
 13 PHY-TXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive is equal to HE_SU, HE_MU, HE_ER_SU, or HE_TB,
 14 respectively. These transmit procedures do not describe the operation of optional features, such as DCM.



50 **Figure 27-54—PHY transmit procedure for an HE SU PPDU**

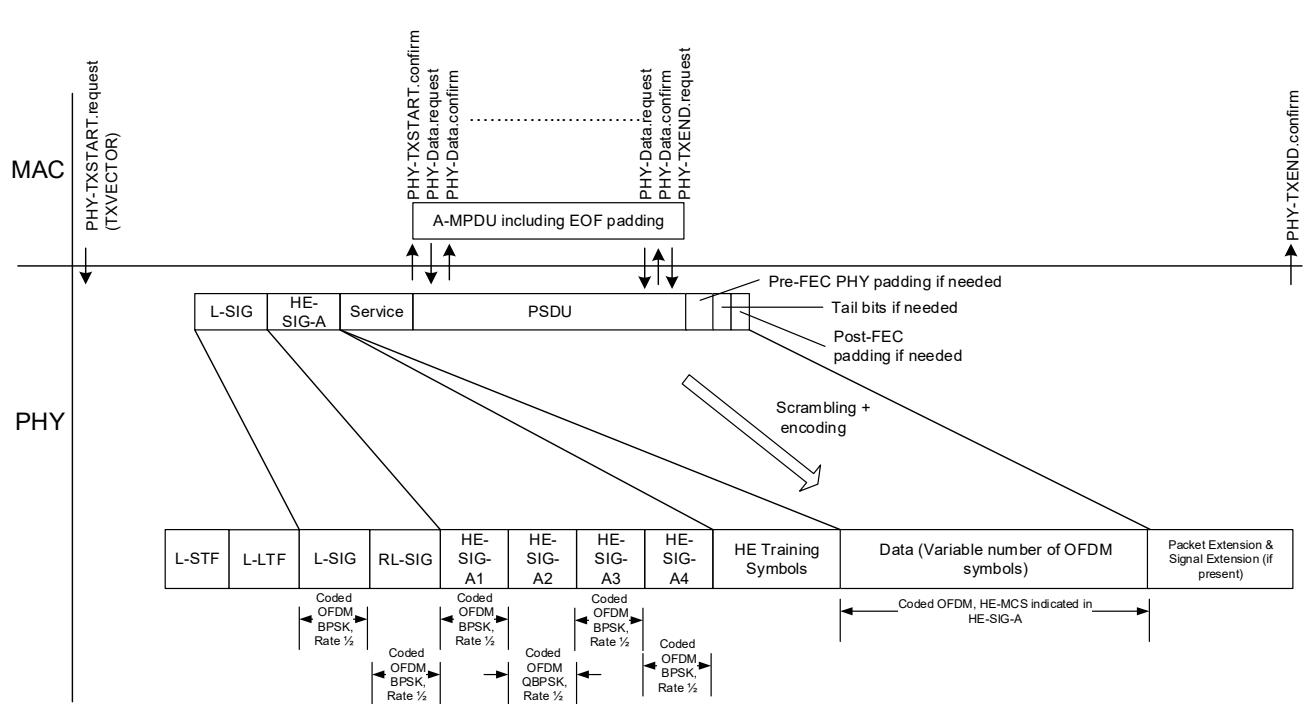


Figure 27-55—PHY transmit procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU

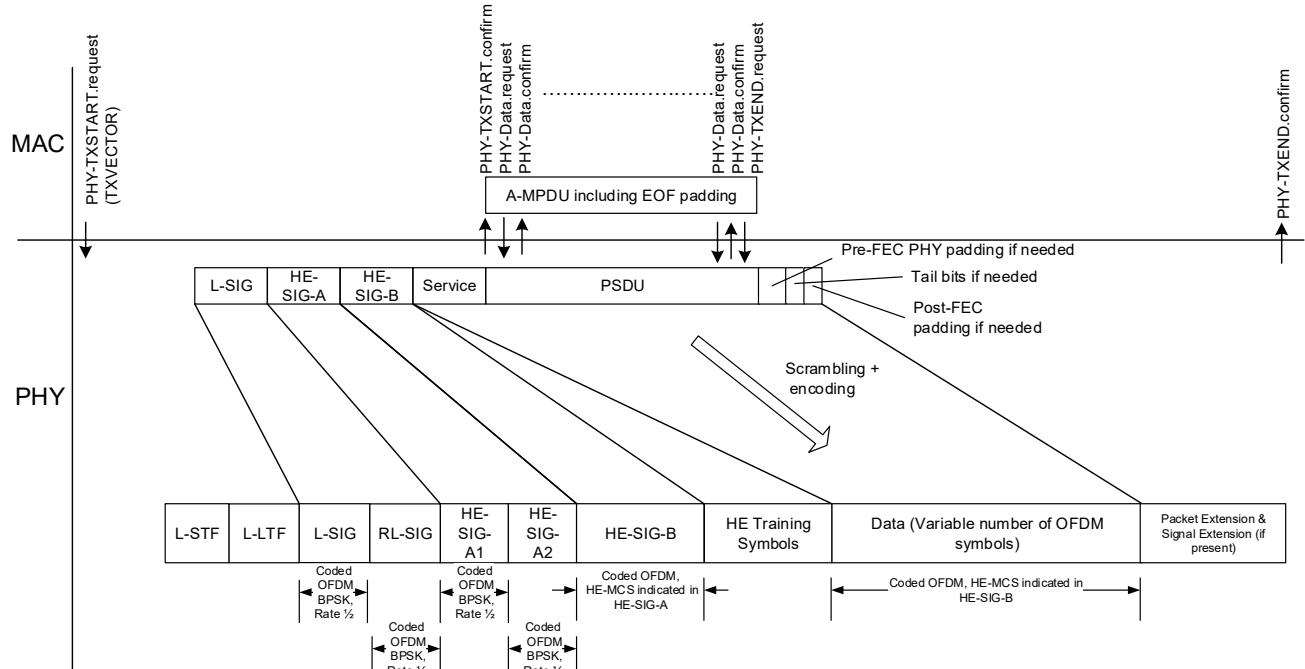


Figure 27-56—PHY transmit procedure for an HE MU PPDU

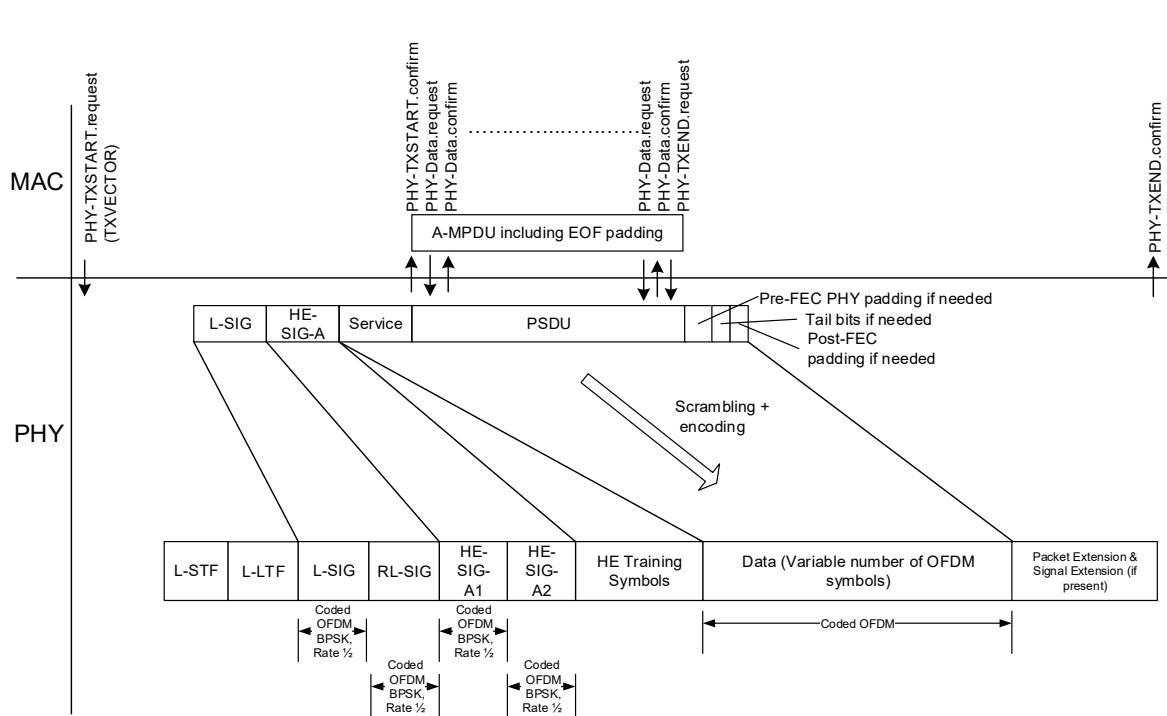


Figure 27-57—PHY transmit procedure for an HE TB PPDU

The fifth option is to follow the transmit procedure in Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) or Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) if the FORMAT parameter of the PHYTXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive is NON_HT. In addition, if the FORMAT parameter is NON_HT and the NON_HT_MODULATION parameter is OFDM, then the transmit procedure defined in Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) is followed. If the FORMAT parameter is NON_HT and the NON_HT_MODULATION parameter is NON_HT_DUP_OFDM the transmit procedure defined in Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) is followed except that the signal is generated simultaneously on each of the 20 MHz channels identified by the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter as defined in 27.3.10 (HE preamble) and 27.3.13 (Non-HT duplicate transmission). If the FORMAT parameter is NON_HT, the CH_BANDWIDTH parameter is NON_HT_CBW20, and the NON_HT_MODULATION parameter is not OFDM, then the transmit procedure defined in Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification) is followed.

NOTE 1—For an HE MU PPDU the A-MPDU is per user in the MAC sublayer and the HE Training Symbols, and Data are per user in the PHY in Figure 27-56 (PHY transmit procedure for an HE MU PPDU), with the number HE Training Symbols depending on the maximum total number of space-time streams across all RUs.

NOTE 2—The transmit procedure for NON_HT, HT_MF, HT_GF, and VHT format are specified in 27.2.6 (Support for non-HT, HT and VHT formats).

In all options, in order to transmit data, the MAC generates a PHY-TXSTART.request primitive, which causes the PHY entity to enter the transmit state. Further, the PHY is set to operate at the appropriate frequency through station management via the PLME, as specified in 27.4 (HE PLME). Other transmit parameters, such as HE-MCS, Coding types and transmit power, are set via the PHY-SAP using the PHYTXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive, as described in 27.2.2 (TXVECTOR and RXVECTOR parameters). After transmitting a PPDU that carries a Trigger frame, the MAC sublayer issues a PHY-TRIGGER.request with a TRIGVECTOR parameter that provides the PHY entity with the information needed to demodulate the expected HE TB PPDU response. The remainder of the clause applies to the first four options.

1 The PHY indicates the state of the primary channel and other channels (if any) via the PHY-CCA.indication
 2 primitive (see 21.3.18.5 (CCA sensitivity) and 8.3.5.12 (PHY-CCA.indication)). Transmission of the PPDU
 3 shall be initiated by the PHY after receiving the PHY-TXSTART.request(TXVECTOR) primitive. The
 4 TXVECTOR elements for the PHY-TXSTART.request primitive are specified in Table 27-1 (TXVECTOR
 5 and RXVECTOR parameters).

6
 7 After the PHY preamble transmission is started, the PHY entity immediately initiates data scrambling and
 8 data encoding. The encoding method for the Data field is based on the FEC_CODING, CH_BANDWIDTH,
 9 NUM_STS, STBC, MCS, and NUM_USERS parameter of the TXVECTOR, as described in 27.3.4 (HE
 10 PPDU formats).

11
 12 The SERVICE field and PSDU are encoded as described in 27.3.5 (Transmitter block diagram). The data
 13 shall be exchanged between the MAC and the PHY through a series of PHY-DATA.request(DATA) primitives
 14 issued by the MAC, and PHY-DATA.confirm primitives issued by the PHY. PHY padding bits are
 15 appended to the PSDU to make the number of bits in the coded PSDU an integral multiple of the number of
 16 coded bits per OFDM symbol.

17
 18 Transmission can be prematurely terminated by the MAC through the PHY-TXEND.request primitive.
 19 PSDU transmission is terminated by receiving a PHY-TXEND.request primitive. Each PHY-
 20 TXEND.request primitive is acknowledged with a PHY-TXEND.confirm primitive from the PHY.

21
 22 A packet extension and/or a signal extension may be present in the PPDU. The PHY-TXEND.confirm primitive
 23 is generated at the latest of the actual ending time of the PPDU, the end of the packet extension if present,
 24 and the end of the signal extension if present.

25
 26 In the PHY, the GI with GI duration indicated in GI_TYPE parameter of the TXVECTOR is inserted in
 27 every data OFDM symbol as a countermeasure against delay spread.

28
 29 Once the PPDU transmission is completed the PHY entity enters the receive state.

30
 31 A typical state machine implementation for the transmission of an HE PPDU without midambles is shown in
 32 Figure 27-58 (PHY transmit state machine for an HE PPDU without midambles). Request (.request) and

confirmation (.confirm) primitives are issued once per state as shown. This state machine does not describe the operation of optional features, such as DCM.

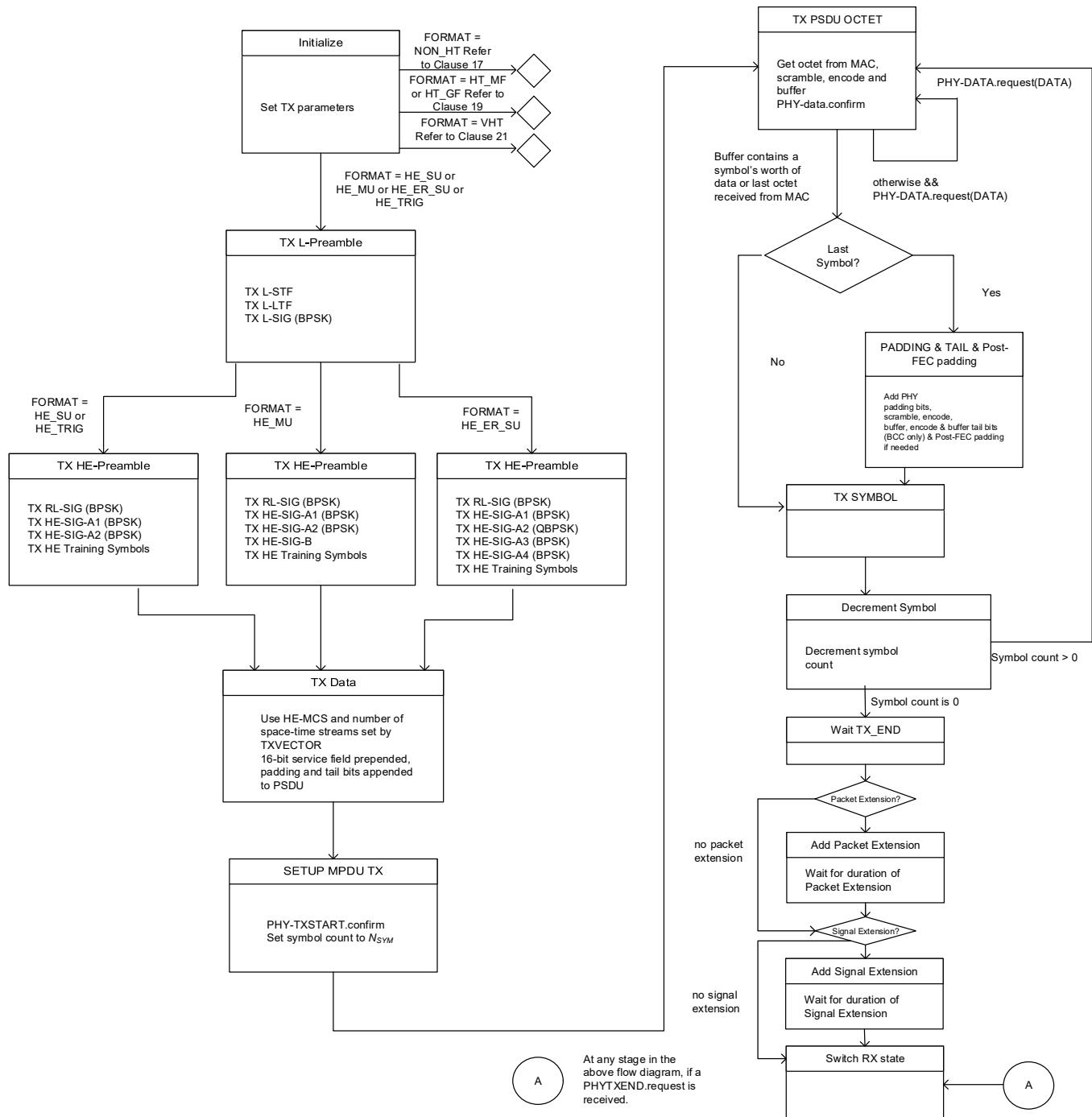


Figure 27-58—PHY transmit state machine for an HE PPDU without midambles

27.3.21 HE receive procedure

Typical PHY receive procedures are shown in Figure 27-59 (PHY receive procedure for an HE SU PPDU), Figure 27-60 (PHY receive procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU), Figure 27-61 (PHY receive procedure for an HE MU PPDU), and Figure 27-62 (PHY receive procedure for an HE TB PPDU) respectively.

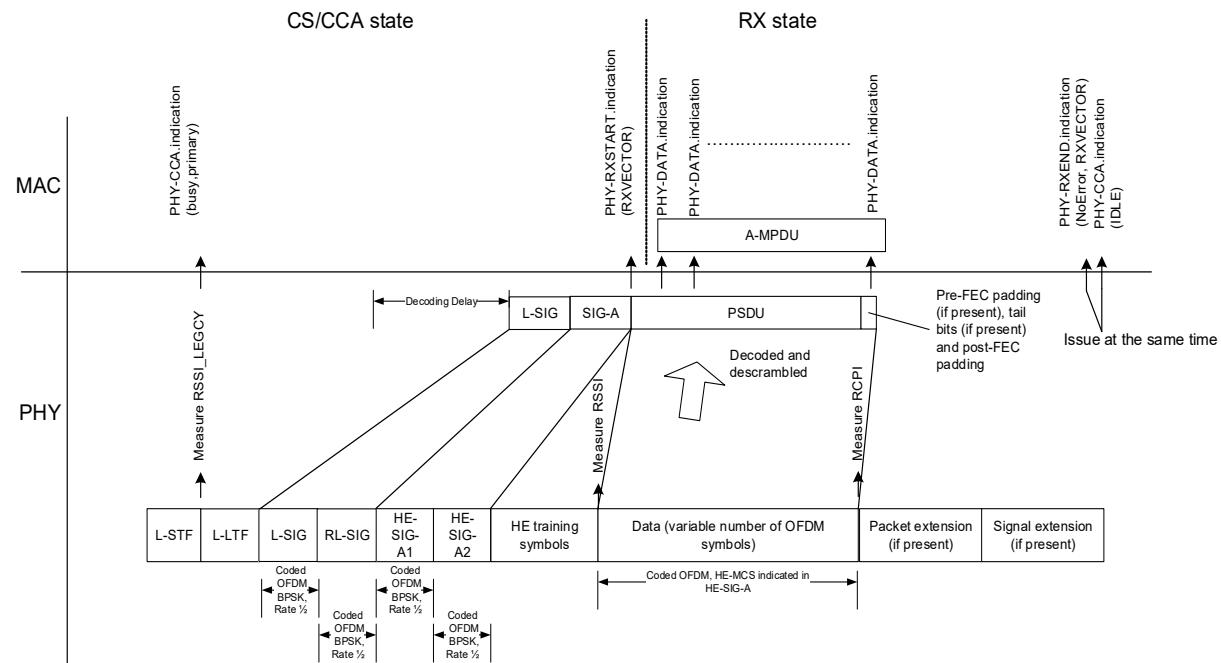


Figure 27-59—PHY receive procedure for an HE SU PPDU

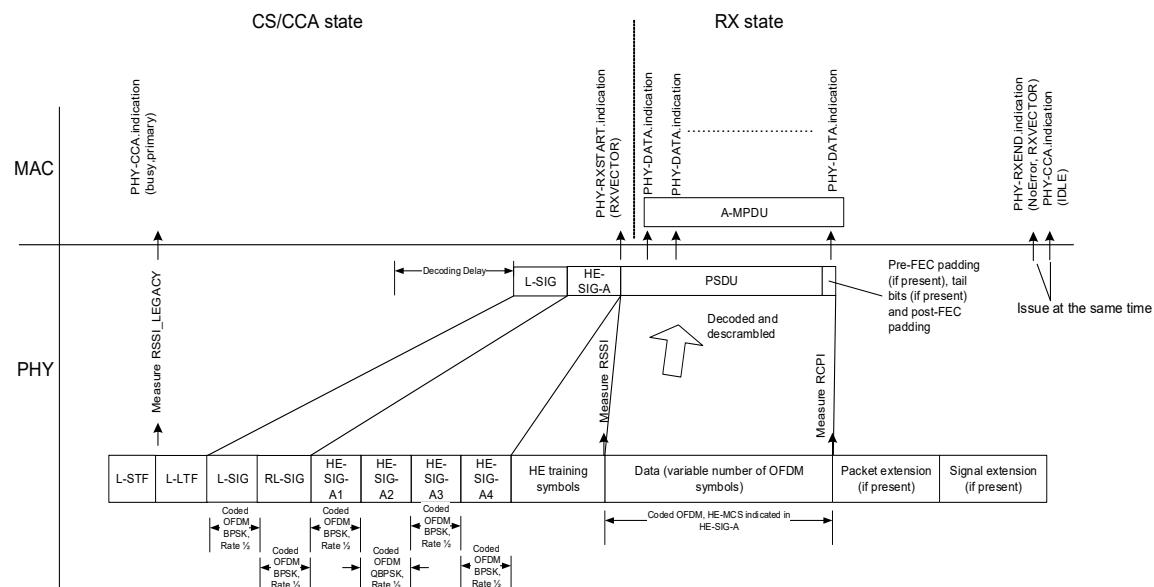


Figure 27-60—PHY receive procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU

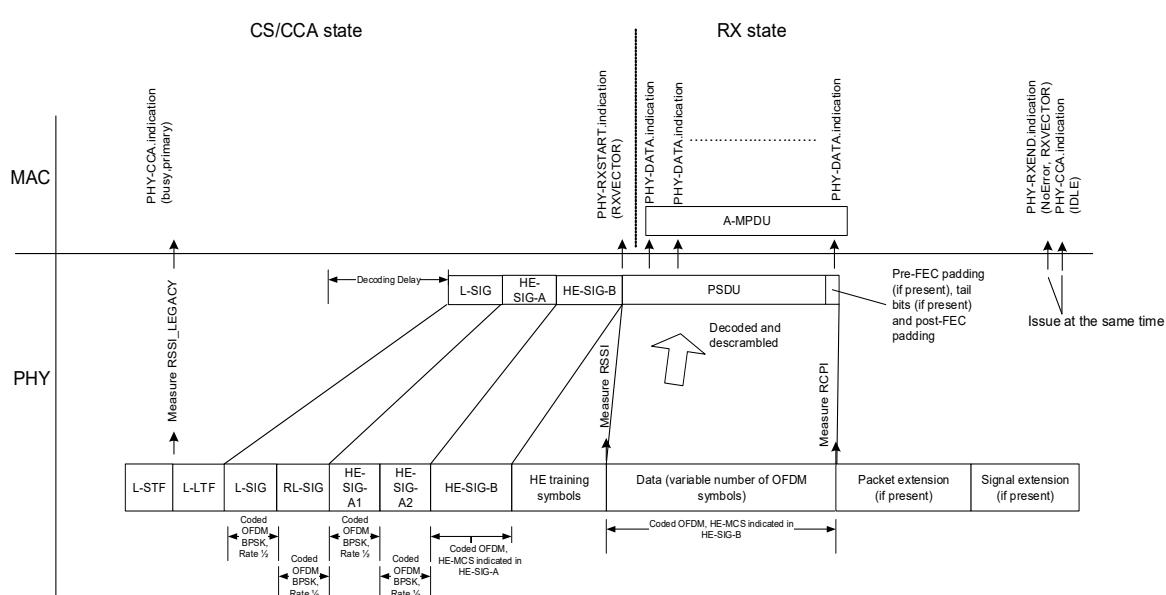


Figure 27-61—PHY receive procedure for an HE MU PPDU

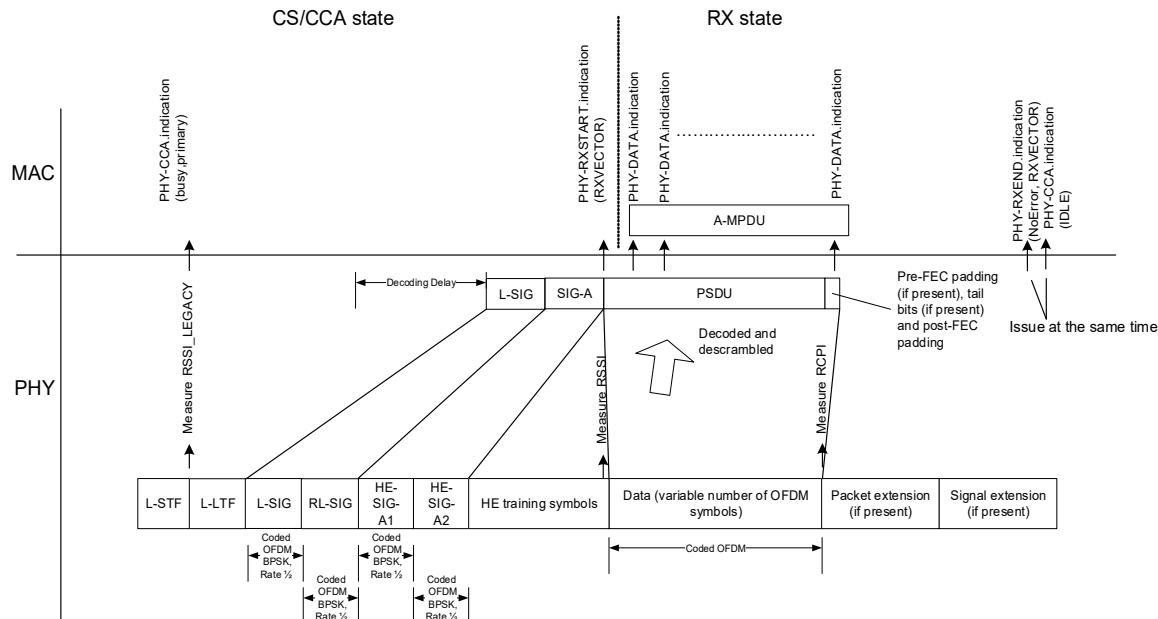


Figure 27-62—PHY receive procedure for an HE TB PPDU

A typical state machine implementation of the receive PHY is given in Figure 27-63 (PHY receive state machine if midambles are not present).

This receive procedure and state machine do not describe the operation of optional features, such as DCM. If the detected format indicates a non-HT PPDU, refer to the receive procedure and state machine in Clause 15 (DSSS PHY specification for the 2.4 GHz band designated for ISM applications), Clause 16 (High rate direct sequence spread spectrum (HR/DSSS) PHY specification), Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division

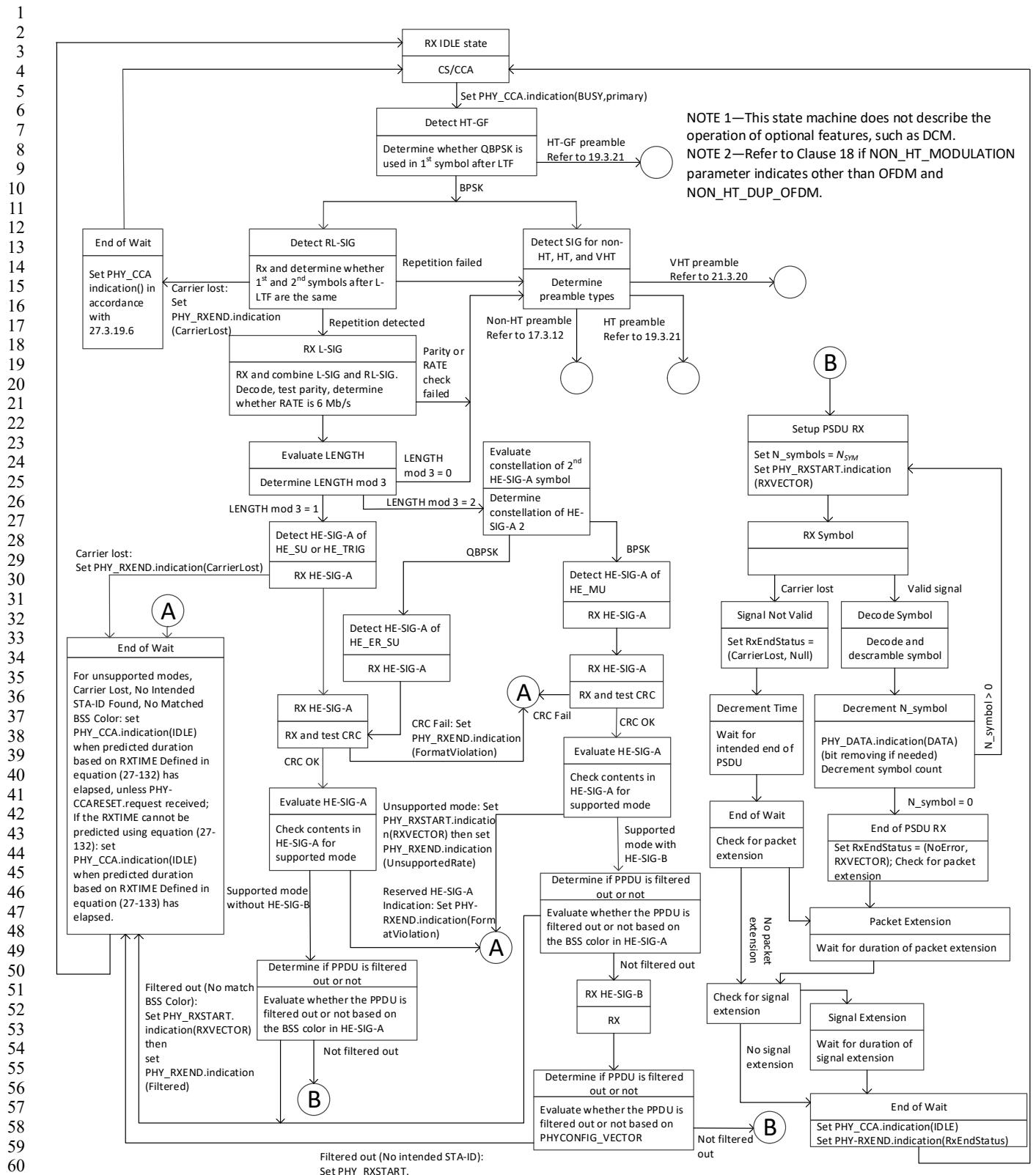


Figure 27-63—PHY receive state machine if midambles are not present

1 multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) and Clause 18 (Extended Rate PHY (ERP) specification). If the
 2 detected format indicates an HT PPDU format, refer to the receive procedure and state machine in Clause 19
 3 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification). If the detected format indicates a VHT PPDU format, refer to
 4 the receive procedure and state machine in Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification). Through station management (via the PLME) the PHY is set to the appropriate frequency, as specified
 5 in 27.4 (HE PLME). The PHY has also been configured with BSS identification information and STA iden-
 6 tification information (i.e., BSS color value and STA-ID in the BSS) so that it can receive data intended for
 7 the STA in the specific cell. Other receive parameters, such as RSSI and indicated DATARATE, may be
 8 accessed via the PHY-SAP.
 9

10
 11 Upon receiving the transmitted PHY preamble in a greater than or equal to 20 MHz BSS, the PHY measures
 12 a receive signal strength. This activity is indicated by the PHY to the MAC via a PHY-CCA.indication primitive.
 13 A PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-list) primitive is also issued as an initial indication of recep-
 14 tion of a signal as specified in 27.3.19.6 (CCA sensitivity). The channel-list parameter of the PHY-
 15 CCA.indication primitive is absent when the operating channel width is 20 MHz. The channel-list parameter
 16 is present when the operating channel width is 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 80+80 MHz.
 17

18 The PHY shall not issue a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive in response to a PPDU that does not over-
 19 lap the primary channel unless the PHY at an AP receives the HE TB PPDU solicited by the AP. For the HE
 20 TB PPDU solicited by the AP, the PHY shall issue a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive for a PPDU
 21 received in the primary or at the secondary 20 MHz channel, the secondary 40 MHz channel, or the second-
 22 ary 80 MHz channel.
 23

24 The PHY includes the measured RSSI and RSSI_LEGACY value in the PHY-RXSTART.indica-
 25 tion(RXVECTOR) primitive issued to the MAC.
 26

27 After the PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-list) primitive is issued, the PHY entity shall begin receiv-
 28 ing the training symbols and searching for the preambles for non-HT, HT, VHT, and HE PPDUs, respec-
 29 tively. If the constellation used in the first symbol after the first long training field is QPSK, the PHY entity
 30 shall continue to detect the received signal using the receive procedure for HT-GF depicted in Clause 19.
 31 Otherwise, for detecting the HE preamble, the PHY entity shall search for L-SIG and RL-SIG in order to set
 32 the maximum duration of the data stream. If RL-SIG is detected, the PHY entity should check the parity bit
 33 and RATE fields in L-SIG and RL-SIG. If either the check of the parity bit is invalid or the RATE field is
 34 not set to 6 Mb/s in non-HT, a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive is not issued. If the check of the parity
 35 bit is valid and the RATE field indicates 6 Mb/s in non-HT but the LENGTH field value in L-SIG is a mul-
 36 tiple of 3, a PHY-RXSTART.indication primitive is not issued. In both cases, the PHY should continue to
 37 detect the received signal using non-HT, HT, and VHT receive procedure in Clauses 17, 19, and 21, respec-
 38 tively.
 39

40 If a valid parity bit and the RATE with 6 Mb/s in non-HT are indicated in L-SIG and RL-SIG and the
 41 LENGTH field value in L-SIG and RL-SIG meets the condition that the remainder is 1 after LENGTH
 42 divided by 3, the PHY entity should begin receiving the sequence of HE-SIG-A, HE-STF, and HE-LTF for
 43 HE SU PPDU and HE TB PPDU as shown in Figure 27-59 (PHY receive procedure for an HE SU PPDU)
 44 and Figure 27-62 (PHY receive procedure for an HE TB PPDU), respectively. After RL-SIG, the PHY
 45 entity shall receive two symbols of HE-SIG-A immediately followed by HE-STF.
 46

47 The PHY entity shall check CRC of the HE-SIG-A field. If the CRC check is valid, the PHY entity shall
 48 report TXOP, BSS color and check Format field, and continue to receive HE-STF. The PHY entity shall
 49 report to the MAC entity the predicted duration of the TXOP in the HE-SIG-A field. The PHY entity shall
 50 check the BSS color in the HE-SIG-A field. If the BSS color does not contain an intended value, the PHY
 51 entity shall issue a PHY-RXSTART.indication(RXVECTOR) then issue a PHY-RXEND.indication(Fil-
 52 tered).
 53

1 The PHY entity shall check the Format field in the HE-SIG-A field. If the Format field indicates an HE SU
 2 PPDU, the PHY entity shall receive HE-STF for 4 μ s after the HE-SIG-A field. If the Format field indicates
 3 an HE TB PPDU, the PHY entity shall receive HE-STF for 8 μ s after the HE-SIG-A field.
 4

5
 6 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates a valid CRC and a reserved HE-SIG-A indication is not indicated, for all
 7 supported modes, unsupported modes, the PHY entity shall maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-
 8 list) primitive for the predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU, as defined by RXTIME in Equation (27-
 9 133), unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the PPDU for instance
 10 during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation). If the HE-SIG-A field indi-
 11 cates an unsupported mode, the PHY shall issue a PHY-RXEND.indication(UnsupportedRate) primitive. If
 12 the HE-SIG-A field indicates a reserved HE-SIG-A indication, the PHY shall issue the error condition PHY-
 13 RXEND.indication(FormatViolation) primitive and maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channellist)
 14 primitive for the predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU derived from the LENGTH field in L-SIG as
 15 defined in Equation (27-134) unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the
 16 PPDU for instance during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).
 17

18
 19 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates an invalid CRC, the PHY shall issue the error condition PHY-RXEND.indi-
 20 cation(FormatViolation) primitive and maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channellist) primitive for the
 21 predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU derived from the LENGTH field in L-SIG as defined in
 22 Equation (27-134). A reserved HE-SIG-A indication is defined as an HE-SIG-A field with Reserved bits
 23 equal to 0 or any other HE-SIG-A field bit combinations that do not correspond to modes of PHY operation
 24 defined in Clause 27 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification).
 25

26
 27 If a valid parity bit of L-SIG and RL-SIG is indicated and the LENGTH field value in L-SIG and RL-SIG
 28 meet the condition that the remainder is 2 after LENGTH divided by 3, the PHY entity should detect the sig-
 29 nal constellations in the second symbol after RL-SIG. If the constellation is QPSK, the PHY entity shall
 30 continue receiving the sequence of HE-SIG-A, HE-STF, and HE-LTF for an HE ER SU PPDU shown in
 31 Figure 27-60 (PHY receive procedure for an HE ER SU PPDU). After RL-SIG, the PHY entity shall receive
 32 four symbols of HE-SIG-A immediately followed by HE-STF.
 33

34
 35 The PHY entity shall check the CRC of the HE-SIG-A field. If the CRC is valid, the PHY entity shall report
 36 TXOP and BSS color, and continue to receive the HE-STF. The PHY entity shall report to the MAC entity
 37 the predicted duration of the TXOP in HE-SIG-A.
 38

39
 40 The PHY entity shall check the BSS color in the HE-SIG-A field. If the BSS color does not contain an
 41 intended value, the PHY entity shall issue a PHY-RXSTART.indication(RXVECTOR) then issue a PHY-
 42 RXEND.indication(Filtered).
 43

44
 45 The PHY entity shall receive the HE-STF for 4 μ s after HE-SIG-A.
 46

47
 48 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates a valid CRC and a reserved HE-SIG-A indication is not indicated, for all
 49 supported modes, unsupported modes, the PHY entity shall maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-
 50 list) primitive for the predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU, as defined by RXTIME in Equation (27-
 51 133), unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the PPDU for instance
 52 during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation). If the HE-SIG-A indicates an
 53 unsupported mode, the PHY shall issue a PHY-RXEND.indication(UnsupportedRate) primitive.
 54

55
 56 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates a reserved HE-SIG-A indication, the PHY shall issue the error condition PHY-
 57 RXEND.indication(FormatViolation) primitive and maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channellist)
 58 primitive for the predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU derived from the LENGTH field in L-SIG as
 59 defined in Equation (27-134) unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the
 60 PPDU for instance during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation). A
 61 reserved HE-SIG-A indication is defined as an HE-SIG-A field with Reserved bits equal to 0 or any other
 62
 63
 64
 65

1 HE-SIG-A field bit combinations that do not correspond to modes of PHY operation defined in Clause 27
 2 (High Efficiency (HE) PHY specification).

4
 5 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates an invalid CRC, the PHY shall issue the error condition PHY-RXEND.indi-
 6 cation(FormatViolation) primitive and maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channellist) primitive for the
 7 predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU derived from the LENGTH field in L-SIG as defined in
 8 Equation (27-134), unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the PPDU for
 9 instance during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

10
 11 If a valid parity bit of L-SIG and RL-SIG is indicated and the LENGTH field value in L-SIG and RL-SIG
 12 meet the condition that the remainder is 2 after LENGTH divided by 3, the PHY entity should detect the sig-
 13 nal constellations in the second symbol after RL-SIG. If the constellation is BPSK, the PHY entity shall con-
 14 tinue receiving the sequence of HE-SIG-A, HE-SIG-B, HE-STF, and HE-LTF for an HE MU PPDU shown
 15 in Figure 27-61 (PHY receive procedure for an HE MU PPDU). After RL-SIG, the PHY entity shall receive
 16 two symbols of the HE-SIG-A field immediately followed by the HE-SIG-B field. The PHY entity shall
 17 check CRC of the HE-SIG-A field. If the CRC check is valid, the PHY entity shall report TXOP and BSS
 18 color, and continue to receive HE-SIG-B. The PHY entity shall report to the MAC entity the predicted dura-
 19 tion of the TXOP in the HE-SIG-A field.

20
 21 The PHY entity shall check the BSS color in the HE-SIG-A field. If the BSS color doesn't contain an
 22 intended value, the PHY entity shall issue a PHY-RXSTART.indication(RXVECTOR) then issue a PHY-
 23 RXEND.indication(Filtered).

24
 25 After the HE-SIG-A field, the PHY entity shall receive the HE-SIG-B field for the number of symbols pre-
 26 dicted from the HE-SIG-A field. If the Common field is present in the HE-SIG-B field, the PHY entity shall
 27 check the CRC of the Common field. If the CRC in the Common field is valid or the Common field is not
 28 present, the PHY entity shall search for intended STA-ID in each User Specific subfield with a valid CRC. If
 29 no CRC is valid or no intended STA-ID is detected, the PHY entity shall issue a PHY-RXSTART.indica-
 30 tion(RXVECTOR) then issue a PHY-RXEND.indication(Filtered). If a complete allocation of an intended
 31 STA-ID is detected in block with valid CRC, the PHY entity shall continue receiving HE-STF for 4 μ s after
 32 HE-SIG-B for the detected and intended STA.

33
 34 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates a valid CRC and a reserved HE-SIG-A indication is not indicated, for all
 35 supported modes, unsupported modes, the PHY entity shall maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-
 36 list) primitive for the predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU, as defined by RXTIME in Equation (27-
 37 133), unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the PPDU for instance
 38 during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

39
 40 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates an unsupported mode, the PHY shall issue a PHY-RXEND.indica-
 41 tion(UnsupportedRate) primitive.

42
 43 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates a reserved HE-SIG-A indication, the PHY shall issue the error condition
 44 PHY-RXEND.indication(FormatViolation) primitive and maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channel-
 45 list) primitive for the predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU derived from the LENGTH field in L-SIG
 46 as defined in Equation (27-134) unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of
 47 the PPDU for instance during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation). A
 48 reserved HE-SIG-A indication is defined as an HE-SIG-A with Reserved bits equal to 0 or any other HE-
 49 SIG-A field bit combinations that do not correspond to modes of PHY operation defined in Clause 27 (High
 50 Efficiency (HE) PHY specification).

51
 52 If the HE-SIG-A field indicates an invalid CRC, the PHY shall issue the error condition PHY-RXEND.indi-
 53 cation(FormatViolation) primitive and maintain PHY-CCA.indication(BUSY, channellist) primitive for the
 54 predicted duration of the transmitted PPDU derived from the LENGTH field in L-SIG as defined in

Equation (27-134), unless it receives a PHY-CCARESET.request primitive before the end of the PPDU for instance during spatial reuse operation as described in 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

If signal loss occurs during reception prior to completion of the PSDU reception, the error condition PHY-RXEND.indication(CarrierLost) shall be reported to the MAC. After waiting for the end of the PPDU as determined by Equation (27-133) the PHY shall set the PHY-CCA.indication (IDLE) primitive and return to the RX IDLE state.

$$\text{RXTIME}(\mu\text{s}) = 20 + T_{\text{HE_PREAMBLE}} + N_{\text{SYM}}T_{\text{SYM}} + N_{\text{MAN}}N_{\text{HE-LTF}}T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}} + T_{\text{PE}} + \text{SignalExtension} \quad (27-133)$$

where

$T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}}$, N_{SYM} , T_{PE} and N_{MA} are defined in Equation (27-119), Equation (27-120), Equation (27-121) and Equation (27-122), respectively.

SignalExtension is defined in Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics).

$$\text{RXTIME}(\mu\text{s}) = \left\lceil \frac{\text{LENGTH} + 3}{3} \right\rceil \cdot 4 + 20 + \text{SignalExtension} \quad (27-134)$$

where

LENGTH is the LENGTH field in L-SIG

SignalExtension is defined in Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics)

Except in an HE sounding NDP and HE TB feedback NDP, a Data field follows the HE-STF and HE-LTF fields. The number of symbols in the Data field and the packet extension duration are computed from Equation (27-119) and Equation (27-120), respectively.

The received PSDU bits are assembled into octets, decoded, and present to the MAC using a series of PHY-DATA.indication(DATA) primitive exchanges. Any final bits that cannot be assembled into a complete octet are considered pad bits and discarded. After the reception of the final bit of the last PSDU octet, and possible padding and tail bits, the PHY entity shall check whether packet extension and/or signal extension is applied. If packet extension and/or signal extension is applied, the PHY entity shall wait until the packet extension and/or signal extension expires before returning to the RX IDLE state, as shown in Figure 27-63 (PHY receive state machine if midambles are not present).

27.3.22 Channel numbering

27.3.22.1 General

The STA may operate in the 2.4 GHz band, 5 GHz band or 6 GHz band. The set of valid operating channel numbers by regulatory domain is defined in Annex E. Channel allocation for each band is defined as follows:

- In 19.3.15.2 (Channel allocation in the 2.4 GHz band) for the 2.4 GHz band
 - In 19.3.15.3 (Channel allocation in the 5 GHz band) for the 5 GHz band
 - In 27.3.22.2 (Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band) for the 6 GHz band

27.3.22.2 Channel allocation in the 6 GHz band

Channel center frequencies are defined at every integer multiple of 5 MHz above 5940 MHz. The relationship between center frequency and channel number is given in Equation (27-135).

$$\text{Channel center frequency} = \text{Channel starting frequency} + 5 \times n_{ch} \text{ (MHz)} \quad (27-135)$$

1 where

2 $n_{ch} = 1, \dots, 253$

3 Channel starting frequency is 5.940 GHz

5 27.3.23 Regulatory requirements

8 Wireless LANs (WLANs) implemented in accordance with this standard are subject to equipment certification
 9 and operating requirements established by regional and national regulatory administrations. The PHY
 10 specification establishes minimum technical requirements for interoperability, based upon established regu-
 11 lations at the time this standard was issued. These regulations are subject to revision or may be superseded.
 12 Requirements that are subject to local geographic regulations are annotated within the PHY specification.
 13 Regulatory requirements that do not affect interoperability are not addressed in this standard. Implementers
 14 are referred to the regulatory sources in Annex D for further information. Operation in countries within
 15 defined regulatory domains might be subject to additional or alternative national regulations.

19 27.4 HE PLME

22 27.4.1 PLME_SAP sublayer management primitives

25 Table 27-54 (HE PHY MIB attributes) lists the MIB attributes that may be accessed by the PHY entities and
 26 the intralayer of higher level LMEs. These attributes are accessed via the PLME-GET, PLME-SET, PLME-
 27 RESET, and PLME-CHARACTERISTICS primitives defined in 6.5 (PLME SAP interface).

29 27.4.2 PHY MIB

32 HE PHY MIB attributes are defined in Annex C with specific values defined in Table 27-54 (HE PHY MIB
 33 attributes). The “Operational semantics” column in Table 27-54 (HE PHY MIB attributes) contains two
 34 types: static and dynamic.

- 36 — Static MIB attributes are fixed and cannot be modified for a given PHY implementation.
- 37 — Dynamic MIB attributes are interpreted according to the MAX-ACCESS field of the MIB attribute.
 38 If MAX-ACCESS is equal to read-only, the MIB attribute value may be updated by the PLME and

1 read from the MIB attribute by management entities. if MAX-ACCESS is equal to read-write, the
 2 MIB attribute may be read and written by management entities.
 3
 4
 5 **Table 27-54—HE PHY MIB attributes**

Managed object	Default value/ range	Operational semantics
dot11PHYOperationTable		
dot11PHYType	he	Static
dot11PHYTxPowerTable		
dot11NumberSupportedPowerLevelsImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel1	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel2	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel3	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel4	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel5	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel6	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel7	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevel8	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11CurrentTxPowerLevel	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11TxPowerLevelExtended	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11CurrentTxPowerLevelExtended	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11PHYOFDMTable		
dot11TwentyMHzOperationImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11PHYHTTable		
dot11CurrentPrimaryChannel	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11CurrentSecondaryChannel	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11FortyMHzOperationImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11FortyMHzOperationActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic

Table 27-54—HE PHY MIB attributes (continued)

Managed object	Default value/range	Operational semantics
dot11NumberOfSpatialStreamsImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11NumberOfSpatialStreamsActivated	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11HTGreenfieldOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HTGreenfieldOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11ShortGIOptionInTwentyImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11ShortGIOptionInTwentyActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11ShortGIOptionInFortyImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11ShortGIOptionInFortyActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11LDPCCodingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11LDPCCodingOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11TxSTBCOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11TxSTBCOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11RxSTBCOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11RxSTBCOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11BeamFormingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11BeamFormingOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11PHYVHTTable		
dot11CurrentChannelWidth	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex0	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex1	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11VHTChannelWidthOptionImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11EightyMHzOperationImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11EightyMHzOperationActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn80Implemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn80Activated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn160and80p80Implemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn160and80p80Activated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11VHTLDPCCodingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTLDPCCodingOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic

Table 27-54—HE PHY MIB attributes (continued)

Managed object	Default value/range	Operational semantics
dot11VHTTxSTBCOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTTxSTBCOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11VHTRxSTBCOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTRxSTBCOptionActivated	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11VHTMaxNTxChainsImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11VHTMaxNTxChainsActivated	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11TransmitBeamformingConfigTable		
dot11ReceiveStaggerSoundingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11TransmitStaggerSoundingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11ReceiveNDPOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11TransmitNDPOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11ImplicitTransmitBeamformingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11CalibrationOptionImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11ExplicitCSITransmitBeamformingOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11ExplicitNonCompressedBeamformingMatrixOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11ExplicitTransmitBeamformingCSIFeedbackOptionImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11ExplicitNoncompressedBeamformingFeedbackOptionImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11ExplicitCompressedBeamformingFeedbackOptionImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11NumberBeamFormingCSISupportAntenna	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11NumberNonCompressedBeamformingMatrixSupportAntenna	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11NumberCompressedBeamformingMatrixSupportAntenna	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11VHTTransmitBeamformingConfigTable		
dot11VHTSUBeamformeeOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTSUBeamformerOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTMUBeamformeeOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11VHTMUBeamformerOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static

Table 27-54—HE PHY MIB attributes (continued)

Managed object	Default value/range	Operational semantics
dot11VHTNumberSoundingDimensions	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11VHTBeamformeeNTxSupport	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11PHYHETable		
dot11HECurrentChannelWidthSet	Implementation dependent	Dynamic
dot11HEPuncturedPreambleRxImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HEDeviceClass	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HELDPCCodingInPayloadImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESUPPDUwith1xHELTand0point8GIIImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESUPPDUandHEMUPPDUwith4xHELTand0point8GIIImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEERSUPPDUwith4xHELTand0point8GIIImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEERSUPPDUwith1xHELTand0point8GIIImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEMidambleRxMaxNSTS	false/Boolean	Dynamic
dot11HENDPwith4xHELTand3point2GIIImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESTBCTxLessThanOrEqualTo80Implemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESTBCRxLessThanOrEqualTo80Implemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESTBCTxGreater Than80Implemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESTBCRxGreater Than80Implemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEDopplerTxImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEDopplerRxImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEDCMIImplemented	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HEFullBWULMUMIMOImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEPartialBWULMUMIMOImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEPartialBWDLMUMIMOImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEULMUPayloadImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HESRPbasedSRSSupportImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEPowerBoostFactorImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEPartialBWERSUPayloadImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigTable		
dot11HESUBeamformerOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static

Table 27-54—HE PHY MIB attributes (continued)

Managed object	Default value/range	Operational semantics
dot11HESUBeamformeeOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEMUBeamformerOptionImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportLessThanOrEqualTo80	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportGreaterThan80	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsLessThanOrEqualTo80	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsGreaterThan80	Implementation dependent	Static
dot11HENG16SUFeedbackSupport	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HENG16MUFeedbackSupport	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HECodebookSizePhi4Psi2SUFeedbackSupport	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HECodebookSizePhi7Psi5MUFeedbackSupport	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HETriggeredSUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HETriggeredMUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented	false/Boolean	Static
dot11HETriggeredCQIFeedbackSupportImplemented	false/Boolean	Static

27.4.3 TXTIME and PSDU_LENGTH calculation

The value of the TXTIME parameter returned by the PLME-TXTIME.confirm primitive shall be calculated for an HE PPDU using Equation (27-136).

$$\text{TXTIME} = 20 + T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}} + N_{\text{SYM}} T_{\text{SYM}} + N_{\text{MA}} N_{\text{HE-LTF}} T_{\text{HE-LTF-SYM}} + T_{\text{PE}} + \text{SignalExtension} \quad (27-136)$$

where

$T_{\text{HE-PREAMBLE}}$ is defined as in Equation (27-121) and SignalExtension takes the value of a SignalExtension as defined in Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics).

For an HE sounding NDP and HE TB feedback NDP, there is no Data field and $N_{\text{SYM}} = 0$.

For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU using BCC encoding, the total number of data OFDM symbols, N_{SYM} , is given by Equation (27-66).

For an HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU using LDPC encoding, the total number of data OFDM symbols, N_{SYM} , is given in 27.3.11.5.2 (LDPC coding).

For an HE MU PPDU (including both MU-MIMO and OFDMA), the total number of data OFDM symbols, N_{SYM} , is given in 27.3.11.5.4 (Encoding process for an HE MU PPDU).

1 For an HE TB PPDU, the total number of data OFDM symbols, N_{SYM} , is given in 27.3.11.5.5 (Encoding
 2 process for an HE TB PPDU).

4 T_{PE} is given in 27.3.12 (Packet extension).

7 N_{MA} is the number of midambles. It is given by Equation (27-117) for an HE TB PPDU and by
 8 Equation (27-112) for an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU if the TXVECTOR value
 9 DOPPLER is 1, and is 0 otherwise.

11 N_{HE-LTF} and T_{HE-LTF} are given in 27.3.8 (Timing-related parameters).

14 The value of the PSDU_LENGTH parameter returned in the PLME-TXTIME.confirm primitive for an HE
 15 SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE TB PPDU is calculated using Equation (27-137).

$$38 \text{PSDU_LENGTH} = \left\lfloor \frac{(N_{SYM,init} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,init} - N_{service} - N_{tail}}{8} \right\rfloor \quad (27-137)$$

21 where

23 $N_{SYM,init}$ is given by Equation (27-64) for BCC encoding, by Equation (27-64) for LDPC encoding for an
 24 HE SU PPDU and HE ER SU PPDU, and in 27.3.11.5.5 (Encoding process for an HE TB
 25 PPDU) for an HE TB PPDU

27 m_{STBC} is 2 when STBC is used, and 1 otherwise

28 N_{DBPS} is given in 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)

30 $N_{DBPS,last,init}$ is given by Equation (27-62)

32 The value of the PSDU_LENGTH parameter for user u returned in the PLME-TXTIME.confirm primitive
 33 for an HE MU PPDU is calculated using Equation (27-138) and Equation (27-139) for users using BCC and
 34 LDPC, respectively.

$$37 \text{PSDU_LENGTH}_u = \left\lfloor \frac{(N_{SYM} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS,u} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,u} - N_{service} - N_{tail}}{8} \right\rfloor \quad (27-138)$$

$$41 \text{PSDU_LENGTH}_u = \left\lfloor \frac{(N_{SYM,init} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS,u} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,init,u} - N_{service}}{8} \right\rfloor \quad (27-139)$$

44 where

46 $N_{SYM,init}$ is given by Equation (27-76)

47 $N_{DBPS,u}$ is given in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

49 $N_{DBPS,last,u}$ is given by Equation (27-85)

50 $N_{DBPS,last,init,u}$ is given by Equation (27-77)

53 For an HE SU PPDU, HE ER SU PPDU and HE TB PPDU, the value of the PSDU_LENGTH parameter
 54 returned in the RXVECTOR is calculated using Equation (27-140).

$$57 \text{PSDU_LENGTH} = \left\lfloor \frac{(N_{SYM,RX} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,RX} - N_{service} - N_{tail}}{8} \right\rfloor \quad (27-140)$$

60 where

62 $N_{SYM,RX}$ is given by Equation (27-141)

63 m_{STBC} is 1 if the STBC field in HE-SIG-A is 0 and 2 if the STBC field is 1

64 $N_{DBPS,last,RX}$ is given by Equation (27-142)

1 N_{DBPS} is defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)
 2 $N_{service}$ and N_{tail} are defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

$$N_{SYM,RX} = \begin{cases} N_{SYM} - m_{STBC}, & \text{if the Coding field is 1,} \\ & \text{the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field is 1, and} \\ & \text{the Pre-FEC Padding Factor field is 1 in HE-SIG-A} \\ N_{SYM}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-141)$$

13 where

14 N_{SYM} is given by Equation (27-119)

$$N_{DBPS,last,RX} = \begin{cases} N_{DBPS}, & \text{if } a_{RX} = 4 \\ a_{RX} \cdot N_{SD,short} \cdot N_{SS} \cdot N_{BPSCS} \cdot R, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-142)$$

22 where

23 a_{RX} is given by Equation (27-143)

24 $N_{SD,short}$ is defined in Table 27-33 (NSD,short values)

25 N_{SS}, N_{BPSCS}, R are defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

$$a_{RX} = \begin{cases} 4, & \text{if } a = 1, \text{ the Coding field is 1 and} \\ & \text{the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field is 1 in HE-SIG-A} \\ a - 1, & \text{if } a > 1, \text{ the Coding field is 1 and} \\ & \text{the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field is 1 in HE-SIG-A} \\ a, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-143)$$

37 where

38 a is the pre-FEC padding factor (ranging from 1 to 4) indicated in HE-SIG-A

40 For an HE MU PPDU, the value of the RXVECTOR parameter PSDU_LENGTH returned for user u is calculated using Equation (27-144).

$$\text{PSDU_LENGTH}_u = \left\lceil \frac{(N_{SYM,RX,u} - m_{STBC})N_{DBPS,u} + m_{STBC}N_{DBPS,last,RX,u} - N_{service} - N_{tail,u}}{8} \right\rceil \quad (27-144)$$

49 where

50 $N_{SYM,RX,u}$ is given by Equation (27-145)

52 m_{STBC} is 1 if the STBC field in HE-SIG-A is 0 and 2 if the STBC field is 1

53 $N_{DBPS,last,RX,u}$ is given by Equation (27-146)

55 $N_{DBPS,u}$ is defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

56 $N_{service}$ and N_{tail} are defined in Table 27-12 (Timing-related constants)

$$N_{SYM,RX,u} = \begin{cases} N_{SYM} - m_{STBC}, & \text{if } a = 1, \text{ the Coding field is 1 in the HE-SIG-B User field} \\ & \text{corresponding to user } u \\ & \text{and the LDPC Extra Symbol Segment field is 1 in HE-SIG-A} \\ N_{SYM}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-145)$$

1 where

2 N_{SYM} is given by Equation (27-119)

$$N_{DBPS, last, RX, u} = \begin{cases} N_{DBPS, u}, & \text{if } a_{RX, u} = 4 \\ a_{RX, u} \cdot N_{SD, short, u} \cdot N_{SS, u} \cdot N_{BPSCS, u} \cdot R_u, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-146)$$

9 where

10 $a_{RX, u}$ is given by Equation (27-147)

11 $N_{SD, short, u}$ is $N_{SD, short}$ defined in Table 27-33 (NSD,short values) for user u

12 $N_{SS, u}$, $N_{BPSCS, u}$, R_u are defined in Table 27-15 (Frequently used parameters)

$$a_{RX, u} = \begin{cases} \text{if } a = 1, \text{ the Coding field is 1 in the HE-SIG-B User field} \\ 4, \quad \text{corresponding to the user } u \\ \quad \text{and the LDPCExtra Symbol Segment field is 1 in HE-SIG-A} \\ \text{if } a > 1, \text{ the Coding field is 1 in the HE-SIG-B User field} \\ a - 1, \quad \text{corresponding to the user } u \\ \quad \text{and the LDPCExtra Symbol Segment field is 1 in HE-SIG-A} \\ a, \quad \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (27-147)$$

28 where

29 a is the pre-FEC padding factor (ranging from 1 to 4) indicated in HE-SIG-A

30 The value of the PSDU_LENGTH parameter returned in the PLME-TXTIME.confirm primitive for an HE
31 sounding NDP is 0.

32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 **27.4.4 HE PHY**

2

3 The static HE PHY characteristics, provided through the PLME-CHARACTERISTICS service primitive,
 4 shall be as shown in Table 19-25 (HT PHY characteristics) unless otherwise listed in Table 27-55 (HE PHY
 5 characteristics). The definitions for these characteristics are given in 6.5 (PLME SAP interface).

6

7

8 **Table 27-55—HE PHY characteristics**

9

Characteristic	Value
aTxPHYDelay	Implementation dependent
aRxPHYDelay	Implementation dependent
aCCAMidTime	25 μ s
aPPDUMaxTime	5.484 ms
aPSDUMaxLength	6 500 631 octets (see NOTE)
aRxPHYStartDelay	32 μ s for HE SU and HE TB PPDUs. 40 μ s for HE ER SU PPDUs. $32 + 4 \times N_{HE-SIG-B}$ μ s for HE MU PPDUs, where $N_{HE-SIG-B}$ is the number of OFDM symbols in the HE-SIG-B field.

NOTE—This is the maximum length in octets for an HE SU PPDU with a bandwidth of 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz using 2×996 RU, HE-MCS 11, 8 spatial streams, 0.8 μ s GI duration, 1x HE-LTF, LDPC coding, 0 μ s duration of the PE field, pre-FEC padding factor value of 4, and limited by 398 possible Data field OFDM symbols in aPPDUMaxTime. This is the maximum PSDU length an HE PHY could support assuming no restrictions in MAC. See 10.3.2 (Procedures common to the DCF and EDCAF) and 9.2.4.7.1 (General) for additional restrictions on the maximum number of octets the MAC could support.

35

36 **27.5 Parameters for HE-MCSs**

37

38 The rate-dependent parameters for 26-tone RU, 52-tone RU, 106-tone RU, 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA
 39 20 MHz, 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, 2×996-tone RU
 40 and non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz $N_{SS} = 1, \dots, 8$ are provided in the 27.5.1 (HE-MCSs for 26-
 41 tone RU) through 27.5.7 (HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz). Support for HE-MCS 8,
 42 9, 10, and 11 is optional in all cases.

43

44 HE-MCSs are defined for both SU transmission and for user u of the r -th RU of an MU transmission. In the
 45 case of HE-MCSs for MU transmissions, the parameters, N_{SS} , R , N_{BPSCS} , N_{CBPS} , and N_{DBPS} are replaced
 46 with $N_{SS,u}$, R_u , $N_{BPSCS,u}$, $N_{CBPS,u}$, and $N_{DBPS,u}$, respectively.

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

1 **27.5.1 HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU**

2

3 The rate-dependent parameters for the 26-tone RU are provided in Table 27-56 (HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU,
 4 NSS = 1) through Table 27-63 (HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, NSS = 8).

5

6 **Table 27-56—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 1$**

7

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	12	12	6	0.4	0.4	0.4
	0		1/2		24	24	12	0.9	0.8	0.8
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	12	24	12	0.9	0.8	0.8
	0		1/2		24	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
2	N/A	3/4	3/4	2	24	48	36	2.6	2.5	2.3
3	1	16-QAM	1/2	4	12	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
	0		1/2		24	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
4	1	3/4	3/4	4	12	48	36	2.6	2.5	2.3
	0		3/4		24	96	72	5.3	5.0	4.5
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	144	96	72	6.7	6.0	
6			3/4			108	7.9	7.5	6.8	
7			5/6			120	8.8	8.3	7.5	
8	N/A	256-QAM	3/4	8	192	144	10.6	10.0	9.0	
9			5/6			160	11.8	11.1	10.0	
10	N/A	1024-QAM	3/4	10	240	180	13.2	12.5	11.3	
11			5/6			200	14.7	13.9	12.5	

Table 27-57—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	12	24	12	0.9	0.8	0.8
	0		1/2		24	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	12	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
	0		1/2		24	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	24	96	72	5.3	5.0	4.5
3	1		1/2		12	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
	0		1/2		24	192	96	7.1	6.7	6.0
4	1	16-QAM	3/4	4	12	96	72	5.3	5.0	4.5
	0		3/4		24	192	144	10.6	10.0	9.0
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	24	288	192	14.1	13.3	12.0
6			3/4				216	15.9	15.0	13.5
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	384	240	240	17.6	16.7	15.0
8			3/4				288	21.2	20.0	18.0
9	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	480	320	320	23.5	22.2	20.0
10			3/4				360	26.5	25.0	22.5
11			5/6				400	29.4	27.8	25.0

Table 27-58—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	24	72	36	2.6	2.5	2.3	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		72	5.3	5.0	4.5		
2			3/4			144	108	7.9	7.5	6.8	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		288	144	10.6	10.0	9.0	
4			3/4			216	216	15.9	15.0	13.5	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		288	288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
6			3/4			432	324	23.8	22.5	20.3	
7			5/6			360	360	26.5	25.0	22.5	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		576	432	31.8	30.0	27.0	
9			5/6			480	480	35.3	33.3	30.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		720	540	39.7	37.5	33.8	
11			5/6			600	600	44.1	41.7	37.5	

Table 27-59—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	24	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		96	96	7.1	6.7	6.0	
2			3/4			192	144	10.6	10.0	9.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		384	192	14.1	13.3	12.0	
4			3/4			288	288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		384	384	28.2	26.7	24.0	
6			3/4			576	432	31.8	30.0	27.0	
7			5/6			480	480	35.3	33.3	30.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		768	576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
9			5/6			640	640	47.1	44.4	40.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		960	720	52.9	50.0	45.0	
11			5/6			800	800	58.8	55.6	50.0	

Table 27-60—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	24	120	60	4.4	4.2	3.8	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		240	120	8.8	8.3	7.5	
2			3/4			180	13.2	12.5	11.3		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		480	240	17.6	16.7	15.0	
4			3/4			360	26.5	25.0	22.5		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		480	480	35.3	33.3	30.0	
6			3/4			720	540	39.7	37.5	33.8	
7			5/6			600	44.1	41.7	37.5		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		960	720	52.9	50.0	45.0	
9			5/6			800	58.8	55.6	50.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		1 200	900	66.2	62.5	56.3	
11			5/6			1 000	73.5	69.4	62.5		

Table 27-61—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	24	144	72	5.3	5.0	4.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		288	144	10.6	10.0	9.0	
2			3/4			216	15.9	15.0	13.5		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		576	288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
4			3/4			432	31.8	30.0	27.0		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		864	576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
6			3/4			648	47.6	45.0	40.5		
7			5/6			720	52.9	50.0	45.0		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		1 152	864	63.5	60.0	54.0	
9			5/6			960	70.6	66.7	60.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		1 440	1 080	79.4	75.0	67.5	
11			5/6			1 200	88.2	83.3	75.0		

Table 27-62—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	24	168	84	6.2	5.8	5.3	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		168	12.4	11.7	10.5		
2			3/4			336	252	18.5	17.5	15.8	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		672	336	24.7	23.3	21.0	
4			3/4				504	37.1	35.0	31.5	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			672	49.4	46.7	42.0	
6			3/4				756	55.6	52.5	47.3	
7			5/6				840	61.8	58.3	52.5	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		1 008	1 008	74.1	70.0	63.0	
9			5/6				1 120	82.4	77.8	70.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		1 344	1 260	92.6	87.5	78.8	
11			5/6				1 400	102.9	97.2	87.5	

Table 27-63—HE-MCSs for 26-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	24	192	96	7.1	6.7	6.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		384	192	14.1	13.3	12.0	
2			3/4				288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		768	384	28.2	26.7	24.0	
4			3/4				576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			768	56.5	53.3	48.0	
6			3/4			1 152	864	63.5	60.0	54.0	
7			5/6				960	70.6	66.7	60.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		1 536	1 152	84.7	80.0	72.0	
9			5/6				1 280	94.1	88.9	80.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		1 920	1 440	105.9	100.0	90.0	
11			5/6				1 600	117.6	111.1	100.0	

1 **27.5.2 HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU**

2

3

4 The rate-dependent parameters for the 52-tone RU are provided in Table 27-64 (HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU,
 5 NSS = 1) through Table 27-71 (HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, NSS = 8).

6

7

8 **Table 27-64—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 1$**

9

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	24	24	12	0.9	0.8	0.8
	0		1/2		48	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	24	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
	0		1/2		48	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	48	96	72	5.3	5.0	4.5
3	1		1/2		24	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
	0		1/2		48	192	96	7.1	6.7	6.0
4	1	16-QAM	3/4	4	24	96	72	5.3	5.0	4.5
	0		3/4		48	192	144	10.6	10.0	9.0
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	288	192	14.1	13.3	12.0	
6			3/4			216	15.9	15.0	13.5	
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	384	240	17.6	16.7	15.0	
8			3/4			288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
9	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	384	320	23.5	22.2	20.0	
10			3/4			360	26.5	25.0	22.5	
11	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	480	400	29.4	27.8	25.0	

Table 27-65—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	24	48	24	1.8	1.7	1.5
	0		1/2		48	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	24	96	48	3.5	3.3	3.0
	0		1/2		48	192	96	7.1	6.7	6.0
2	N/A	3/4	3/4	4	48	192	144	10.6	10.0	9.0
3	1		1/2		24	192	96	7.1	6.7	6.0
	0		1/2		48	384	192	14.1	13.3	12.0
4	1	16-QAM	3/4	4	24	192	144	10.6	10.0	9.0
	0		3/4		48	384	288	21.2	20.0	18.0
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	48	576	384	28.2	26.7	24.0
6			3/4				432	31.8	30.0	27.0
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	768	480	35.3	33.3	30.0	27.0
8			3/4				576	42.4	40.0	36.0
9	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	960	640	47.1	44.4	40.0	36.0
10			3/4				720	52.9	50.0	45.0
11			5/6				800	58.8	55.6	50.0

Table 27-66—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	48	144	72	5.3	5.0	4.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		288	144	10.6	10.0	9.0	
2			3/4			216	15.9	15.0	13.5		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		576	288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
4			3/4			432	31.8	30.0	27.0		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		576	576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
6			3/4			864	648	47.6	45.0	40.5	
7			5/6			720	720	52.9	50.0	45.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		1 152	864	63.5	60.0	54.0	
9			5/6			960	960	70.6	66.7	60.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		1 440	1 080	79.4	75.0	67.5	
11			5/6			1 440	1 200	88.2	83.3	75.0	

Table 27-67—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	48	192	96	7.1	6.7	6.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		384	192	14.1	13.3	12.0	
2			3/4			288	288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		768	384	28.2	26.7	24.0	
4			3/4			576	576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		768	768	56.5	53.3	48.0	
6			3/4			1 152	864	63.5	60.0	54.0	
7			5/6			960	960	70.6	66.7	60.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		1 536	1 152	84.7	80.0	72.0	
9			5/6			1 280	1 280	94.1	88.9	80.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		1 920	1 440	105.9	100.0	90.0	
11			5/6			1 920	1 600	117.6	111.1	100.0	

Table 27-68—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	48	240	120	8.8	8.3	7.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		480	240	17.6	16.7	15.0	
2			3/4			360	26.5	25.0	22.5		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		960	480	35.3	33.3	30.0	
4			3/4			720	52.9	50.0	45.0		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		960	70.6	66.7	60.0		
6			3/4			1 440	1080	79.4	75.0	67.5	
7			5/6			1 200	88.2	83.3	75.0		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		1 920	1 440	105.9	100.0	90.0	
9			5/6			1 600	117.6	111.1	100.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		2 400	1 800	132.4	125.0	112.5	
11			5/6			2 000	147.1	138.9	125.0		

Table 27-69—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	48	288	144	10.6	10.0	9.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		576	288	21.2	20.0	18.0	
2			3/4			432	31.8	30.0	27.0		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		1 152	576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
4			3/4			864	63.5	60.0	54.0		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		1 728	1 152	84.7	80.0	72.0	
6			3/4			1 296	95.3	90.0	81.0		
7			5/6			1 440	105.9	100.0	90.0		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		2 304	1 728	127.1	120.0	108.0	
9			5/6			1 920	141.2	133.3	120.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		2 880	2 160	158.8	150.0	135.0	
11			5/6			2 400	176.5	166.7	150.0		

Table 27-70—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	48	336	168	12.4	11.7	10.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		336	24.7	23.3	21.0		
2			3/4			672	504	37.1	35.0	31.5	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		1 344	672	49.4	46.7	42.0	
4			3/4				1 008	74.1	70.0	63.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			1 344	98.8	93.3	84.0	
6			3/4				2 016	1 512	111.2	105.0	
7			5/6					1 680	123.5	116.7	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8			2 016	2 016	148.2	140.0	
9			5/6					2 240	164.7	155.6	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10			3 360	2 520	185.3	175.0	
11			5/6					2 800	205.9	194.4	

Table 27-71—HE-MCSs for 52-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	48	384	192	14.1	13.3	12.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		768	384	28.2	26.7	24.0	
2			3/4				576	42.4	40.0	36.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		1 536	768	56.5	53.3	48.0	
4			3/4				1 152	84.7	80.0	72.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			1 536	1 12.9	106.7	96.0	
6			3/4				2 304	1 728	127.1	120.0	
7			5/6					1 920	141.2	133.3	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8			3 072	2 304	169.4	160.0	
9			5/6					2 560	188.2	177.8	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10			3 840	2 880	211.8	200.0	
11			5/6					3 200	235.3	222.2	

27.5.3 HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU

The rate-dependent parameters for the 106-tone RU are provided in Table 27-72 (HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 1) through Table 27-79 (HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, NSS = 8).

Table 27-72—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 1$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	51	51	25	1.8	1.7	1.6
	0		1/2		102	102	51	3.8	3.5	3.2
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	51	102	51	3.8	3.5	3.2
	0		1/2		102	204	102	7.5	7.1	6.4
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	102	204	153	11.3	10.6	9.6
3	1		1/2		51	204	102	7.5	7.1	6.4
	0		1/2		102	408	204	15.0	14.2	12.8
4	1	256-QAM	3/4	8	51	204	153	11.3	10.6	9.6
	0		3/4		102	408	306	22.5	21.3	19.1
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	612	408	30.0	28.3	25.5	
6			3/4			459	33.8	31.9	28.7	
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	816	510	37.5	35.4	31.9	
8			3/4			612	45.0	42.5	38.3	
9	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	1 020	680	50.0	47.2	42.5	
10			3/4			765	56.3	53.1	47.8	
11			5/6			850	62.5	59.0	53.1	

Table 27-73—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 µs GI	1.6 µs GI	3.2 µs GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	51	102	51	3.8	3.5	3.2
	0		1/2		102	204	102	7.5	7.1	6.4
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	51	204	102	7.5	7.1	6.4
	0		1/2		102	408	204	15.0	14.2	12.8
2	N/A	3/4	102	3/4	408	306	22.5	21.3	19.1	
3	1	16-QAM	1/2	4	51	408	204	15.0	14.2	12.8
	0		1/2		102	816	408	30.0	28.3	25.5
4	1	3/4	51	3/4	408	306	22.5	21.3	19.1	
	0		102		816	612	45.0	42.5	38.3	
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	1 224	816	60.0	56.7	51.0	
6			3/4			918	67.5	63.8	57.4	
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	1 632	1 020	75.0	70.8	63.8	
8			3/4			1 224	90.0	85.0	76.5	
9	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	2 040	1 360	100.0	94.4	85.0	
10			3/4			1 530	112.5	106.3	95.6	
11			5/6			1 700	125.0	118.1	106.3	

Table 27-74—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	102	306	153	11.3	10.6	9.6	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		306	22.5	21.3	19.1		
2			3/4			612	459	33.8	31.9	28.7	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		1 224	612	45.0	42.5	38.3	
4			3/4				918	67.5	63.8	57.4	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			1 224	90.0	85.0	76.5	
6			3/4			1 836	1 377	101.3	95.6	86.1	
7			5/6				1 530	112.5	106.3	95.6	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		2 448	1 836	135.0	127.5	114.8	
9			5/6				2 040	150.0	141.7	127.5	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		3 060	2 295	168.8	159.4	143.4	
11			5/6				2 550	187.5	177.1	159.4	

Table 27-75—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	102	408	204	15.0	14.2	12.8	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		816	408	30.0	28.3	25.5	
2			3/4				612	45.0	42.5	38.3	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		1 632	816	60.0	56.7	51.0	
4			3/4				1 224	90.0	85.0	76.5	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			1 632	120.0	113.3	102.0	
6			3/4			2 448	1 836	135.0	127.5	114.8	
7			5/6				2 040	150.0	141.7	127.5	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		3 264	2 448	180.0	170.0	153.0	
9			5/6				2 720	200.0	188.9	170.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		4 080	3 060	225.0	212.5	191.3	
11			5/6				3 400	250.0	236.1	212.5	

Table 27-76—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	102	510	255	18.8	17.7	15.9	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		510	37.5	35.4	31.9		
2			3/4			1 020	765	56.3	53.1	47.8	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		2 040	1 020	75.0	70.8	63.8	
4			3/4			1 530	112.5	106.3	95.6		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		2 040	2040	150.0	141.7	127.5	
6			3/4			3 060	2 295	168.8	159.4	143.4	
7			5/6				2 550	187.5	177.1	159.4	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		4 080	3 060	225.0	212.5	191.3	
9			5/6				3 400	250.0	236.1	212.5	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		5 100	3 825	281.3	265.6	239.1	
11			5/6				4 250	312.5	295.1	265.6	

Table 27-77—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	102	612	306	22.5	21.3	19.1	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		1 224	612	45.0	42.5	38.3	
2			3/4				918	67.5	63.8	57.4	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		2 448	1 224	90.0	85.0	76.5	
4			3/4				1 836	135.0	127.5	114.8	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		3 672	2 448	180.0	170.0	153.0	
6			3/4				2 754	202.5	191.3	172.1	
7			5/6				3 060	225.0	212.5	191.3	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		4 896	3 672	270.0	255.0	229.5	
9			5/6				4 080	300.0	283.3	255.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		6 120	4 590	337.5	318.8	286.9	
11			5/6				5 100	375.0	354.2	318.8	

Table 27-78—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	102	714	357	26.3	24.8	22.3	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		714	52.5	49.6	44.6		
2			3/4			1 428	1 071	78.8	74.4	66.9	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		2 856	1 428	105.0	99.2	89.3	
4			3/4				2 142	157.5	148.8	133.9	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			2 856	210.0	198.3	178.5	
6			3/4			4 284	3 213	236.3	223.1	200.8	
7			5/6				3 570	262.5	247.9	223.1	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		5 712	4 284	315.0	297.5	267.8	
9			5/6				4 760	350.0	330.6	297.5	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		7 140	5 355	393.8	371.9	334.7	
11			5/6				5 950	437.5	413.2	371.9	

Table 27-79—HE-MCSs for 106-tone RU, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modula-tion	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	102	816	408	30.0	28.3	25.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		816	60.0	56.7	51.0		
2			3/4			1 632	1 224	90.0	85.0	76.5	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		3 264	1 632	120.0	113.3	102.0	
4			3/4				2 448	180.0	170.0	153.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			3 264	240.0	226.7	204.0	
6			3/4			4 896	3 672	270.0	225.0	229.5	
7			5/6				4 080	300.0	283.3	255.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		6 528	4 896	360.0	340.0	306.0	
9			5/6				5 440	400.0	377.8	340.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		8 160	6 120	450.0	425.0	382.5	
11			5/6				6 800	500.0	472.2	425.0	

1 **27.5.4 HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz**

2

3 The rate-dependent parameters for the 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz are provided in Table 27-80
 4 (HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 1) through Table 27-87 (HE-MCSs for 242-
 5 tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, NSS = 8).

6

7 **Table 27-80—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 1$**

8

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	117	117	58	4.3	4.0	3.6
	0		1/2		234	234	117	8.6	8.1	7.3
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	117	234	117	8.6	8.1	7.3
	0		1/2		234	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	234	468	351	25.8	24.4	21.9
3	1		1/2		117	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
	0		1/2		234	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
4	1	256-QAM	3/4	8	117	468	351	25.8	24.4	21.9
	0		3/4		234	936	702	51.6	48.8	43.9
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	1 404	936	68.8	65.0	58.5	
6			3/4			1 053	77.4	73.1	65.8	
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	1 872	1 170	86.0	81.3	73.1	
8			3/4			1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8	
9	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	2 340	1 560	114.7	108.3	97.5	
10			3/4			1 755	129.0	121.9	109.7	
11			5/6			1 950	143.4	135.4	121.9	

Table 27-81—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	117	234	117	8.6	8.1	7.3
	0		1/2		234	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	117	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
	0		1/2		234	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	234	936	702	51.6	48.8	43.9
3	1		1/2		117	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
	0		1/2		234	1 872	936	68.8	65.0	58.5
4	1		3/4		117	936	702	51.6	48.8	43.9
	0		3/4		234	1 872	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	234	2 808	1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0
6			3/4				2 106	154.9	146.3	131.6
7			5/6				2 340	172.1	162.5	146.3
8		256-QAM	3/4	8	3 744	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
9			5/6				3 120	229.4	216.7	195.0
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10	4 680	3 510	258.1	243.8	219.4	
11			5/6				3 900	286.8	270.8	243.8

Table 27-82—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	234	702	351	25.8	24.4	21.9	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		702	51.6	48.8	43.9		
2			3/4			1 404	1 053	77.4	73.1	65.8	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		2 808	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8	
4			3/4			2 106	154.9	146.3	131.6		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5		
6			3/4			4 212	3 159	232.3	219.4	197.4	
7			5/6			4 212	3 510	258.1	243.8	219.4	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		5 616	4 212	309.7	292.5	263.3	
9			5/6			5 616	4 680	344.1	325.0	292.5	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		7 020	5 265	387.1	365.6	329.1	
11			5/6			7 020	5 850	430.1	406.3	365.6	

Table 27-83—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	234	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		936	68.8	65.0	58.5		
2			3/4			1 872	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		3 744	1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0	
4			3/4			3 744	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		3 744	3 744	275.3	260.0	234.0	
6			3/4			5 616	4 212	309.7	292.5	263.3	
7			5/6			5 616	4 680	344.1	325.0	292.5	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		7 488	5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
9			5/6			7 488	6 240	458.8	433.3	390.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		9 360	7 020	516.2	487.5	438.8	
11			5/6			9 360	7 800	573.5	541.7	487.5	

Table 27-84—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	234	1 170	585	43.0	40.6	36.6	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		1 170	86.0	81.3	73.1		
2			3/4			2 340	1 755	129.0	121.9	109.7	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		4 680	2 340	172.1	162.5	146.3	
4			3/4				3 510	258.1	243.8	219.4	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			4 680	344.1	325.0	292.5	
6			3/4			7 020	5 265	387.1	365.6	329.1	
7			5/6				5 850	430.1	406.3	365.6	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		9 360	7 020	516.2	487.5	438.8	
9			5/6				7 800	573.5	541.7	487.5	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		11 700	8 775	645.2	609.4	548.4	
11			5/6				9 750	716.9	677.1	609.4	

Table 27-85—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	234	1 404	702	51.6	48.8	43.9	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		2 808	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8	
2			3/4				2 106	154.9	146.3	131.6	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		5 616	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
4			3/4				4 212	309.7	292.5	263.3	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
6			3/4			8 424	6 318	464.6	438.8	394.9	
7			5/6				7 020	516.2	487.5	438.8	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		11 232	8 424	619.4	585.0	526.5	
9			5/6				9 360	688.2	650.0	585.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		14 040	10 530	774.3	731.3	658.1	
11			5/6				11 700	860.3	812.5	731.3	

Table 27-86—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	234	1 638	819	60.2	56.9	51.2	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		1 638	120.4	113.8	102.4		
2			3/4			3 276	2 457	180.7	170.6	153.6	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		6 552	3 276	240.9	227.5	204.8	
4			3/4				4 914	361.3	341.3	307.1	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		9 828	6 552	481.8	455.0	409.5	
6			3/4				7 371	542.0	511.9	460.7	
7			5/6				8 190	602.2	568.8	511.9	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		13 104	9 828	722.6	682.5	614.3	
9			5/6				10 920	802.9	758.3	682.5	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		16 380	12 285	903.3	853.1	767.8	
11			5/6				13 650	1 003.7	947.9	853.1	

Table 27-87—HE-MCSs for 242-tone RU and non-OFDMA 20 MHz, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	234	1 872	936	68.8	65.0	58.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		3 744	1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0	
2			3/4				2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		7 488	3 744	275.3	260.0	234.0	
4			3/4				5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		11 232	7 488	550.6	520.0	468.0	
6			3/4				8 424	619.4	585.0	526.5	
7			5/6				9 360	688.2	650.0	585.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		14 976	11 232	825.9	780.0	702.0	
9			5/6				12 480	917.6	866.7	780.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		18 720	14 040	1 032.4	975.0	877.5	
11			5/6				15 600	1 147.1	1 083.3	975.0	

1 **27.5.5 HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz**

2

3

4 The rate-dependent parameters for the 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz are provided in Table 27-88
 5 (HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 1) through Table 27-95 (HE-MCSs for 484-
 6 tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, NSS = 8).

7

8

9 **Table 27-88—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 1$**

10

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	234	234	117	8.6	8.1	7.3
	0		1/2		468	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	234	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
	0		1/2		468	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	468	936	702	51.6	48.8	43.9
3	1		1/2		234	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
	0		1/2		468	1 872	936	68.8	65.0	58.5
4	1		3/4		234	936	702	51.6	48.8	43.9
	0		3/4		468	1 872	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	2 808	1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0	
6			3/4			2 106	154.9	146.3	131.6	
7			5/6			2 340	172.1	162.5	146.3	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8	3 744	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
9			5/6			3 120	229.4	216.7	195.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10	4 680	3 510	258.1	243.8	219.4	
11			5/6			3 900	286.8	270.8	243.8	

Table 27-89—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	234	468	234	17.2	16.3	14.6
	0		1/2		468	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	234	936	468	34.4	32.5	29.3
	0		1/2		468	1 872	936	68.8	65.0	58.5
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	468	1 872	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8
3	1		1/2		234	1 872	936	68.8	65.0	58.5
	0		1/2		468	3 744	1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0
4	1		3/4		234	1 872	1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8
	0		3/4		468	3 744	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	5 616	3 744	275.3	260.0	234.0	
6			3/4			4 212	309.7	292.5	263.3	
7			5/6			4 680	344.1	325.0	292.5	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8	7 488	5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
9			5/6			6 240	458.8	433.3	390.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10	9 360	7 020	516.2	487.5	438.8	
11			5/6			7 800	573.5	541.7	487.5	

Table 27-90—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	468	1 404	702	51.6	48.8	43.9	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		1 404	103.2	97.5	87.8		
2			3/4			2 808	2 106	154.9	146.3	131.6	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		5 616	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
4			3/4			4 212	309.7	292.5	263.3		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		5 616	5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
6			3/4			8 424	6 318	464.6	438.8	394.9	
7			5/6			8 424	7 020	516.2	487.5	438.8	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		11 232	8 424	619.4	585.0	526.5	
9			5/6			11 232	9 360	688.2	650.0	585.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		14 040	10 530	774.3	731.3	658.1	
11			5/6			14 040	11 700	860.3	812.5	731.3	

Table 27-91—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	468	1 872	936	68.8	65.0	58.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0		
2			3/4			3 744	2 808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		7 488	3 744	275.3	260.0	234.0	
4			3/4			7 488	5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		7 488	7 488	550.6	520.0	468.0	
6			3/4			11 232	8 424	619.4	585.0	526.5	
7			5/6			11 232	9 360	688.2	650.0	585.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		14 976	11 232	825.9	780.0	702.0	
9			5/6			14 976	12 480	917.6	866.7	780.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		18 720	14 040	1 032.4	975.0	877.5	
11			5/6			18 720	15 600	1 147.1	1 083.3	975.0	

Table 27-92—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	468	2 340	1 170	86.0	81.3	73.1	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		2 340	172.1	162.5	146.3		
2			3/4			4 680	3 510	258.1	243.8	219.4	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		9 360	4 680	344.1	325.0	292.5	
4			3/4			7 020	516.2	487.5	438.8		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		9 360	688.2	650.0	585.0		
6			3/4			14 040	10 530	774.3	731.3	658.1	
7			5/6			14 040	11 700	860.3	812.5	731.3	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		18 720	14 040	1 032.4	975.0	877.5	
9			5/6			18 720	15 600	1 147.1	1 083.3	975.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		23 400	17 550	1 290.4	1 218.8	1 096.9	
11			5/6			23 400	19 500	1 433.8	1 354.2	1 218.8	

Table 27-93—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	468	2 808	1404	103.2	97.5	87.8	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		5 616	2808	206.5	195.0	175.5	
2			3/4			4212	309.7	292.5	263.3		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		11 232	5616	412.9	390.0	351.0	
4			3/4			8424	619.4	585.0	526.5		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		11 232	825.9	780.0	702.0		
6			3/4			16 848	12 636	929.1	877.5	789.8	
7			5/6			14 040	1 032.4	975.0	877.5		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		22 464	16 848	1 238.8	1 170.0	1 053.0	
9			5/6			22 464	18 720	1 376.5	1 300.0	1 170.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		28 080	21 060	1 548.5	1 462.5	1 316.3	
11			5/6			28 080	23 400	1 720.6	1 625.0	1 462.5	

Table 27-94—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	468	3 276	1 638	120.4	113.8	102.4	
1			1/2	2		3 276	240.9	227.5	204.8		
2		QPSK	3/4			6 552	4 914	361.3	341.3	307.1	
3			1/2	4		13 104	6 552	481.8	455.0	409.5	
4		16-QAM	3/4			9 828	722.6	682.5	614.3		
5			2/3	6		19 656	13 104	963.5	910.0	819.0	
6		64-QAM	3/4			14 742	1 084.0	1 023.8	921.4		
7			5/6			16 380	1 204.4	1 137.5	1 023.8		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		26 208	19 656	1 445.3	1 365.0	1 228.5	
9			5/6			21 840	1 605.9	1 516.7	1 365.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		32 760	24 570	1 806.6	1 706.3	1 535.6	
11			5/6				27 300	2 007.4	1 895.8	1 706.3	

Table 27-95—HE-MCSs for 484-tone RU and non-OFDMA 40 MHz, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μs GI	1.6 μs GI	3.2 μs GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	468	3 744	1 872	137.6	130.0	117.0	
1			1/2	2		7 488	3 744	275.3	260.0	234.0	
2		QPSK	3/4			5 616	412.9	390.0	351.0		
3			1/2	4		14 976	7 488	550.6	520.0	468.0	
4		16-QAM	3/4			11 232	825.9	780.0	702.0		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		14 976	1 101.2	1 040.0	936.0		
6			3/4			22 464	16 848	1 238.8	1 170.0	1 053.0	
7			5/6			18 720	1 376.5	1 300.0	1 170.0		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		29 952	22 464	1 651.8	1 560.0	1 404.0	
9			5/6			24 960	1 835.3	1 733.3	1 560.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		37 440	28 080	2 064.7	1 950.0	1 755.0	
11			5/6				31 200	2 294.1	2 166.7	1 950.0	

1 **27.5.6 HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz**

2

3 The rate-dependent parameters for the 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz are provided in Table 27-96
4 (HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 1) through Table 27-103 (HE-MCSs for
5 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, NSS = 8).

6

7 **Table 27-96—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 1$**

8

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	490	490	245	18.0	17.0	15.3	
	0		1/2		980	980	490	36.0	34.0	30.6	
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	490	980	490	36.0	34.0	30.6	
	0		1/2		980	1960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3	
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	980	1960	1 470	108.1	102.1	91.9	
3	1		1/2		490	1960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3	
	0		1/2		980	3920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5	
4	1	256-QAM	3/4	8	490	1960	1 470	108.1	102.1	91.9	
	0		3/4		980	3920	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8	
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	5 880	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0		
6			3/4			4 410	324.3	306.3	275.6		
7	N/A		5/6	8	7 840	4 900	360.3	340.3	306.3		
8			3/4			5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5		
9	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	9 800	6 533	480.4	453.7	408.3		
10			3/4			7 350	540.4	510.4	459.4		
11			5/6			8 166	600.4	567.1	510.4		

Table 27-97—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 µs GI	1.6 µs GI	3.2 µs GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	490	980	490	36.0	34.0	30.6
	0		1/2		980	1 960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	490	1 960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3
	0		1/2		980	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	980	3 920	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8
3	1		1/2		490	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5
	0		1/2		980	7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0
4	1		3/4		490	3 920	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8
	0		3/4		980	7 840	5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	980	11 760	7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0
6			3/4				8 820	648.5	612.5	551.3
7			5/6				9 800	720.6	680.6	612.5
8		256-QAM	3/4	8	15 680	11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
9			5/6			13 066	960.7	907.4	816.6	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10	19 600	14 700	1 080.9	1 020.8	918.8	
11			5/6			16 333	1 201.0	1 134.3	1 020.8	

Table 27-98—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	980	2 940	1 470	108.1	102.1	91.9	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8		
2			3/4			5 880	4 410	324.3	306.3	275.6	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		11 760	5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5	
4			3/4				8 820	648.5	612.5	551.3	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
6			3/4			17 640	13 230	972.8	918.8	826.9	
7			5/6				14 700	1 080.9	1 020.8	918.8	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		23 520	17 640	1 297.1	1 225.0	1 102.5	
9			5/6				19 600	1 441.2	1 361.1	1 225.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		29 400	22 050	1 621.3	1 531.3	1 378.1	
11			5/6				24 500	1 801.5	1 701.4	1 531.3	

Table 27-99—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	980	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0	
2			3/4				5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		15 680	7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0	
4			3/4				11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			15 680	1 152.9	1 088.9	980.0	
6			3/4			23 520	17 640	1 297.1	1 225.0	1 102.5	
7			5/6				19 600	1 441.2	1 361.1	1 225.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		31 360	23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
9			5/6				26 133	1 921.5	1 814.8	1 633.3	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		39 200	29 400	2 161.8	2 041.7	1 837.5	
11			5/6				32 666	2 401.9	2 268.5	2 041.6	

Table 27-100—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	980	4 900	2 450	180.1	170.1	153.1	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		4 900	360.3	340.3	306.3		
2			3/4			9 800	7 350	540.4	510.4	459.4	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		19 600	9 800	720.6	680.6	612.5	
4			3/4			14 700	1 080.9	1 020.8	918.8		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		19 600	1 441.2	1 361.1	1 225.0		
6			3/4			29 400	22 050	1 621.3	1 531.3	1 378.1	
7			5/6			24 500	1 801.5	1 701.4	1 531.3		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		39 200	29 400	2 161.8	2 041.7	1 837.5	
9			5/6			32 666	2 401.9	2 268.5	2 041.6		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		49 000	36 750	2 702.2	2 552.1	2 296.9	
11			5/6			40 833	3 002.4	2 835.6	2 552.1		

Table 27-101—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	980	5 880	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5		
2			3/4			11 760	8 820	648.5	612.5	551.3	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		23 520	11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
4			3/4			17 640	1 297.1	1 225.0	1 102.5		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0		
6			3/4			35 280	26 460	1 945.6	1 837.5	1 653.8	
7			5/6			29 400	2 161.8	2 041.7	1 837.5		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		47 040	35 280	2 594.1	2 450.0	2 205.0	
9			5/6			39 200	2 882.4	2 722.2	2 450.0		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		58 800	44 100	3 242.6	3 062.5	2 756.3	
11			5/6			49 000	3 602.9	3 402.8	3 062.5		

Table 27-102—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	980	6 860	3 430	252.2	238.2	214.4	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		6 860	504.4	476.4	428.8		
2			3/4			13 720	756.6	714.6	643.1		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		27 440	1 008.8	952.8	857.5		
4			3/4			20 580	1 513.2	1 429.2	1 286.3		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		27 440	2 017.6	1 905.6	1 715.0		
6			3/4			41 160	2 269.9	2 143.8	1 929.4		
7			5/6			34 300	2 522.1	2 381.9	2 143.8		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		54 880	3 026.5	2 858.3	2 572.5		
9			5/6			45 733	3 362.7	3 175.9	2 858.3		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		68 600	51 450	3 783.1	3 572.9	3 215.6	
11			5/6				57 166	4 203.4	3 969.9	3 572.9	

Table 27-103—HE-MCSs for 996-tone RU and non-OFDMA 80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	980	7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0		
2			3/4			15 680	11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		31 360	15 680	1 152.9	1 088.9	980.0	
4			3/4				23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6			31 360	2 305.9	2 177.8	1 960.0	
6			3/4			47 040	35 280	2 594.1	2 450.0	2 205.0	
7			5/6				39 200	2 882.4	2 722.2	2 450.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		62 720	47 040	3 458.8	3 266.7	2 940.0	
9			5/6				52 266	3 843.1	3 629.6	3 266.6	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		78 400	58 800	4 323.5	4 083.3	3 675.0	
11			5/6				65 333	4 803.9	4 537.0	4 083.3	

1 **27.5.7 HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz**

2

3 The rate-dependent parameters for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz are provided in Table 27-104
4 (HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 1) through Table 27-111 (HE-MCSs for
5 non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, NSS = 8).

6

7 **Table 27-104—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 1$**

8

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	980	980	490	36.0	34.0	30.6
	0		1/2		1 960	1 960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	980	1 960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3
	0		1/2		1 960	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	1 960	3 920	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8
3	1		1/2		980	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5
	0		1/2		1 960	7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0
4	1	16-QAM	3/4	4	980	3 920	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8
	0		3/4		1 960	7 840	5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	11 760	7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0	
6			3/4			8 820	648.5	612.5	551.3	
7	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	15 680	9 800	720.6	680.6	612.5	
8			3/4			11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
9	N/A	256-QAM	5/6	8	15 680	13 066	960.7	907.4	816.6	
10			3/4			19 600	14 700	1 080.9	1 020.8	918.8
11	N/A	1024-QAM	5/6	10	19 600	16 333	1 201.0	1 134.2	1 020.8	

Table 27-105—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 2$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)		
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI
0	1	BPSK	1/2	1	980	1 960	980	72.1	68.1	61.3
	0		1/2		1 960	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5
1	1	QPSK	1/2	2	980	3 920	1 960	144.1	136.1	122.5
	0		1/2		1 960	7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0
2	N/A	16-QAM	3/4	4	1 960	7 840	5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5
3	1		1/2		980	7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0
	0		1/2		1 960	15 680	7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0
4	1		3/4		980	7 840	5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5
	0		3/4		1 960	15 680	11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0
5	N/A	64-QAM	2/3	6	23 520	15 680	1 152.9	1 088.9	980.0	
6			3/4			17 640	1 297.1	1 225.0	1 102.5	
7			5/6			19 600	1 441.2	1 361.1	1 225.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8	31 360	23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
9			5/6			26 133	1 921.5	1 814.8	1 633.3	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10	39 200	29 400	2 161.8	2 041.7	1 837.5	
11			5/6			32 666	2 401.9	2 268.5	2 041.6	

Table 27-106—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 3$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	1 960	5 880	2 940	216.2	204.2	183.8	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5		
2			3/4			11 760	8 820	648.5	612.5	551.3	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		23 520	11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
4			3/4			17 640	1 297.1	1 225.0	1 102.5		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		23 520	23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
6			3/4			35 280	26 460	1 945.6	1 837.5	1 653.8	
7			5/6			35 280	29 400	2 161.8	2 041.7	1 837.5	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		47 040	35 280	2 594.1	2 450.0	2 205.0	
9			5/6			47 040	39 200	2 882.4	2 722.2	2 450.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		58 800	44 100	3 242.6	3 062.5	2 756.3	
11			5/6			58 800	49 000	3 602.9	3 402.8	3 062.5	

Table 27-107—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 4$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	1 960	7 840	3 920	288.2	272.2	245.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		7 840	7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0	
2			3/4			15 680	11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		31 360	15 680	1 152.9	1 088.9	980.0	
4			3/4			31 360	23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		47 040	31 360	2 305.9	2 177.8	1 960.0	
6			3/4			47 040	35 280	2 594.1	2 450.0	2 205.0	
7			5/6			47 040	39 200	2 882.4	2 722.2	2 450.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		62 720	47 040	3 458.8	3 266.7	2 940.0	
9			5/6			62 720	52 266	3 843.1	3 629.6	3 266.6	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		78 400	58 800	4 323.5	4 083.3	3 675.0	
11			5/6			78 400	65 333	4 803.9	4 537.0	4 083.3	

Table 27-108—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 5$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	1 960	9 800	4 900	360.3	340.3	306.3	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		9 800	720.6	680.6	612.5		
2			3/4			19 600	1 080.9	1 020.8	918.8		
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		19 600	1 441.2	1 361.1	1 225.0		
4			3/4			39 200	2 161.8	2 041.7	1 837.5		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		39 200	2 882.4	2 722.2	2 450.0		
6			3/4			58 800	3 242.6	3 062.5	2 756.3		
7			5/6			49 000	3 602.9	3 402.8	3 062.5		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		78 400	4 323.5	4 083.3	3 675.0		
9			5/6			65 333	4 803.9	4 537.0	4 083.3		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		98 000	5 404.4	5 104.2	4 593.8		
11			5/6			81 666	6 004.9	5 671.3	5 104.1		

Table 27-109—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 6$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	1 960	11 760	5 880	432.4	408.3	367.5	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		11 760	864.7	816.7	735.0		
2			3/4			23 520	17 640	1 297.1	1 225.0	1 102.5	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		47 040	23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
4			3/4			35 280	2 594.1	2 450.0	2 205.0		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		47 040	47 040	3 458.8	3 266.7	2 940.0	
6			3/4			70 560	52 920	3 891.2	3 675.0	3 307.5	
7			5/6			58 800	58 800	4 323.5	4 083.3	3 675.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		94 080	70 560	5 188.2	4 900.0	4 410.0	
9			5/6			78 400	78 400	5 764.7	5 444.4	4 900.0	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		11 7600	88 200	6 485.3	6 125.0	5 512.5	
11			5/6			98 000	98 000	7 205.9	6 805.6	6 125.0	

Table 27-110—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 7$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	1 960	13 720	6 860	504.4	476.4	428.8	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		13 720	1 008.8	952.8	857.5		
2			3/4			27 440	20 580	1 513.2	1 429.2	1 286.3	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		54 880	27 440	2 017.6	1 905.6	1 715.0	
4			3/4			41 160	3 026.5	2 858.3	2 572.5		
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		54 880	4 035.3	3 811.1	3 430.0		
6			3/4			82 320	61 740	4 539.7	4 287.5	3 858.8	
7			5/6			68 600	5 044.1	4 763.9	4 287.5		
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		109 760	82 320	6 052.9	5 716.7	5 145.0	
9			5/6			91 466	6 725.4	6 351.8	5 716.6		
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		137 200	102 900	7 566.2	7 145.8	6 431.3	
11			5/6			114 333	8 406.8	7 939.8	7 145.8		

Table 27-111—HE-MCSs for non-OFDMA 160 MHz and 80+80 MHz, $N_{SS} = 8$

HE-MCS Index	DCM	Modulation	R	N_{BPSCS}	N_{SD}	N_{CBPS}	N_{DBPS}	Data rate (Mb/s)			
								0.8 μ s GI	1.6 μ s GI	3.2 μ s GI	
0	N/A	BPSK	1/2	1	1 960	15 680	7 840	576.5	544.4	490.0	
1		QPSK	1/2	2		15 680	15 680	1 152.9	1 088.9	980.0	
2			3/4			31 360	23 520	1 729.4	1 633.3	1 470.0	
3		16-QAM	1/2	4		62 720	31 360	2 305.9	2 177.8	1 960.0	
4			3/4			47 040	47 040	3 458.8	3 266.7	2 940.0	
5		64-QAM	2/3	6		62 720	62 720	4 611.8	4 355.6	3 920.0	
6			3/4			94 080	70 560	5 188.2	4 900.0	4 410.0	
7			5/6			78 400	78 400	5 764.7	5 444.4	4 900.0	
8		256-QAM	3/4	8		125 440	94 080	6 917.6	6 533.3	5 880.0	
9			5/6			104 533	104 533	7 686.3	7 259.2	6 533.3	
10		1024-QAM	3/4	10		156 800	117 600	8 647.1	8 166.7	7 350.0	
11			5/6			130 666	130 666	9 607.8	9 074.0	8 166.6	

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 Annex B

2
3
4 (normative)

5
6
7 **Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS)
8 proforma**

9
10
11 **B.4 PICS proforma—IEEE Std 802.11-<year>**

12
13 *Change B.4.3 as follows:*

14
15 **B.4.3 IUT configuration**

Item	IUT configuration	References	Status	Support
	What is the configuration of the IUT?			
* CFOFDM	Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY	—	O.2 CFHT5G:M CFTVHT:M CFS1G: M <u>CFHE:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
...				
*CFHT	High-throughput (HT) PHY	9.4.2.55 (HT Capabilities element)	O.2 CFVHT:M <u>CFHE:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
...				
*CFHT2G4	HT operation in the 2.4 GHz band	Clause 19	CFHT:O.6 <u>CFHE:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*CFHT5G	HT operation in the 5 GHz band	Clause 19	CFHT:O.6 CFVHT:M <u>CFHE:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
..				
*CFVHT	Very High Throughput (VHT) features	9.4.2.157 (VHT Capabilities element)	O.2 <u>CFHE:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
...				
*CFESM	Extended spectrum management	10.23.3 (Operation with operating classes)	O CFVHT OR CFTVHT:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
*CFHE	<u>High efficiency (HE) operation</u>	<u>9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)</u>	<u>O</u> <u>CFHE20:M</u> <u>CFHE80:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
*CFHE2G4	<u>HE operation in the 2.4 GHz band</u>	<u>Clause 27</u>	<u>O.8</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
*CFHE5G	<u>HE operation in the 5 GHz band</u>	<u>Clause 27</u>	<u>O.8</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
*CFHE6G	<u>HE operation in the 6 GHz band</u>	<u>Clause 27</u>	<u>O.8</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.3 IUT configuration (continued)**

2

3

Item	IUT configuration	References	Status	Support
*CFHE20	HE operation as a 20 MHz-only non-AP HE STA	Clause 27	CFIndepSTA and CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
*CFHE80	HE operation with capability of 80 MHz or wider channel width	Clause 27	CFAP and CFHE and CFVHT:M CFIndepSTA and CFHE and CFVHT:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
CF2G4n6G	Operation in the 2.4 GHz and 6 GHz bands	26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS)	(CFHT2G4 or CFHE2G4): O CFHE6G: M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
CF5Gn6G	Operation in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands	26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS)	(CFHT5G or CFHE5G): O CFHE6G: M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

29

30 **B.4.4 MAC protocol**

31

32 *Change B.4.4.1 as follows:*

33

34

35 **B.4.4.1 MAC protocol capabilities**

36

37

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
	Are the following MAC protocol capabilities supported?			
PC46	Dynamic fragmentation	10.3 (DCF), 10.4 (MSDU, A-MSDU, and MMPDU fragmentation)		
PC46.1	Dynamic fragmentation level 1	26.3.2.2 (Level 1 dynamic fragmentation)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
PC46.2	Dynamic fragmentation level 2	26.3.2.3 (Level 2 dynamic fragmentation)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
PC46.3	Dynamic fragmentation level 3	26.3.2.4 (Level 3 dynamic fragmentation)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>

1 *Change B.4.4.2 as follows:*

2

3 **B.4.4.2 MAC frames**

4

Item	MAC frame	References	Status	Support
	Is transmission of the following MAC frames supported?	9 (Frame formats)		
FT42	Transmission of Operating Mode Notification frame and Operating Mode Notification element	9.6.22.4 (Operating Mode Notification frame format), 9.4.2.165 (Operating Mode Notification element), 11.41 (Notification of operating mode changes)	O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
FT53	<u>Trigger frame</u>	<u>9 (Frame formats)</u>	<u>CFHE:M</u>	<u>Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/></u>
	Is reception of the following MAC frames supported?	9 (Frame formats)		
FR41	VHT NDP Announcement	9 (Frame formats)	VHTM4.2:M TVHTM4.2:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
FR42	Beamforming Report Poll	9 (Frame formats)	VHTM4.2:O VHTM4.4:M TVHTM4.2:O TVHTM4.4:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
FR43	Reception of Operating Mode Notification frame and Operating Mode Notification element	9.6.23.4 (Operating Mode Notification frame format), 9.4.2.166 (Operating Mode Notification element), 11.42 (Notification of operating mode changes)	CFVHT:M CFTVHT:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
FR53	<u>Trigger frame</u>	<u>9 (Frame formats)</u>	<u>CFHE:O</u>	<u>Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/></u>

1 *Change B.4.12 as follows:*

2

3 **B.4.12 QoS base functionality**

4

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
...				
QB4	Block acknowledgments (block ack)			
...				
QB4.4	Multi-TID Block Ack	9.3.1.8.3 (Multi-TID BlockAck variant)	CFQoS:O CFHT OR CFT-VHT:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
<u>QB4.5</u>	<u>Multi-STA BlockAck</u>	<u>9.3.1.8.7 (Multi-STA BlockAck variant)</u>	<u>CFHE:M</u>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
...				

23 *Insert a new subclause at the end of B.4 as follows:*

24

25 **B.4.33 High efficiency (HE) features**

26

27 **B.4.33.1 HE MAC features**

28

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
	Are the following MAC protocol features supported?			
HEM1	HE capabilities signaling			
HEM1.1	HE Capabilities element	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM1.2	Signaling of STA capabilities in Probe Request, (Re)Association Request frames	9.3.3.5 (Association Request frame format), 9.3.3.7 (Reassociation Request frame format), 9.3.3.9 (Probe Request frame format), 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	(CFHE AND CFIndep-STA):M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.1 HE MAC features (continued)**

2

3

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
HEM1.3	Signaling of STA and BSS capabilities in Beacon, Probe Response, (Re)Association Response frames	9.3.3.2 (Beacon frame format), 9.3.3.6 (Association Response frame format), 9.3.3.8 (Reassociation Response frame format), 9.3.3.10 (Probe Response frame format), 9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	(CFVHT AND CFAP):M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM2	Signaling of HE operation	9.4.2.248 (HE Operation element)	(CFHE AND CFAP):M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM3	A-MPDU with multiple TIDs	26.6.3 (Multi-TID A-MPDU and ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4	HE variant HT Control			
HEM4.1	UL MU Response Scheduling	9.2.4.6a.1 (TRS Control)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4.2	Operating Mode	9.2.4.6a.2 (OM Control)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4.3	HE Link Adaptation	9.2.4.6a.3 (HLA Control)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4.4	Buffer Status Report	9.2.4.6a.4 (BSR Control)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4.5	UL Power Headroom	9.2.4.6a.5 (UPH Control)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4.6	BQR Control	9.2.4.6a.6 (BQR Control)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM4.7	CAS Control	9.2.4.6a.7 (CAS Control)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5	Trigger frame			
HEM5.1	Basic Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.2 (Basic Trigger variant)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.2	BFRP Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.3 (Beamforming Report Poll (BFRP) variant)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.3	MU-BAR Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.4 (MU-BAR variant)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.1 HE MAC features (*continued*)**

2

3

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
HEM5.4	MU-RTS Trigger frame transmission	9.3.1.22.5 (MU-RTS variant)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.5	MU-RTS Trigger frame reception	9.3.1.22.5 (MU-RTS variant)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.6	BSRP Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.6 (Buffer Status Report Poll (BSRP) variant)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.7	GCR MU-BAR Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.7 (GCR MU-BAR variant)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.8	BQRP Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.8 (Bandwidth Query Report Poll (BQRP) variant)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM5.9	NFRP Trigger frame	9.3.1.22.9 (NDP Feed-back Report Poll (NFRP) variant)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM6	Transmit beamforming			
*HEM6.1	SU beamformer capable if the supported maximum number of transmit spatial streams is less than 4	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEM6.2	SU beamformer capable if the supported maximum number of transmit spatial streams is greater than or equal to 4	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEM6.3	SU beamformee capable	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEM6.4	MU beamformer capable if the supported maximum number of transmit spatial streams is less than 4	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFAP AND CFHEM6.1:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEM6.5	MU beamformer capable if the supported maximum number of transmit spatial streams is greater than or equal to 4	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFAP AND CFHEM6.2:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEM6.6	MU beamformee capable	9.4.2.247 (HE Capabilities element)	CFIndepSTA and VHTM7.2: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM6.7	Transmission of an HE sounding NDP	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.1:M HEM6.2:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM6.8	Reception of an HE sounding NDP	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.3:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.1 HE MAC features (continued)**

2

3

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
*HEM6.9	Transmission of Trigger frame	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.1:O HEM6.2:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM6.10	Reception of Trigger frame	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.9:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM7	Sounding protocol			
HEM7.1	HE Sounding Protocol as SU beam-former	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.1:M HEM6.2:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM7.2	HE Sounding Protocol as SU beam-formee	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.3:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM7.3	HE Sounding Protocol as MU beam-former	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.4:M HEM6.5:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM7.4	HE Sounding Protocol as MU beam-formee	26.7 (HE sounding protocol)	HEM6.6:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM8	NAV update	26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)		
HEM8.1	Update basic NAV	26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM8.2	Update IntraBSS NAV	26.2.4 (Updating two NAVs)	CFAP AND CFHE:O CFIndepSTA AND CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM9	OFDMA-based random access	26.5.4 (UL OFDMA-based random access (UORA))	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM10	TWT operation	26.8 (TWT operation)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM11	Quiet time period			
HEM11.1	Transmission of Quiet Time Period Request frame	26.17.5 (Quiet HE STAs in an HE BSS)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM11.2	Reception of Quiet Time Period Response frame	26.17.5 (Quiet HE STAs in an HE BSS)	CFHE:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM12	HE BSS operation in the 6 GHz band			
HEM12.1	Scanning in the 6 GHz band	26.17.2.3 (Scanning in the 6 GHz band)	CFHE6G: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEM12.2	Out of band discovery	26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of a 6 GHz BSS)	(CF2G4n6G or CF5Gn6G): M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

B.4.33.2 HE PHY features

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
	Are the following PHY protocol features supported?			
HEP1	PHY operating modes			
HEP1.1	Operation according to Clause 17 (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification) (Orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) PHY specification), Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) (High Throughput) and/or Clause 21 (Very High Throughput (VHT) PHY specification)	27.1.1 (Introduction to the HE PHY)	CFHE5G and (CFAP or CFHE80):M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP1.2	Operation according Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) (High Throughput) in the 5 GHz band	27.1.1 (Introduction to the HE PHY)	CFHE5G and CFHE20: M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP1.3	Operation according Clause 19 (High Throughput (HT) PHY specification) (High Throughput) in the 2.4 GHz band	27.1.1 (Introduction to the HE PHY)	CFHE2G4:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP1.4	Operation according to Clause 17 in the 6 GHz band	27.1.1 (Introduction to the HE PHY)	CFHE6G:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP2	HE PPDU format	27.1.4 (PPDU formats)		
*HEP2.1	HE SU PPDU	27.1.4 (PPDU formats)		Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP2.2	HE ER SU PPDU	27.1.4 (PPDU formats)		Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP2.3	HE MU PPDU	27.1.4 (PPDU formats)		Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP2.4	HE TB PPDU	27.1.4 (PPDU formats)		Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP3	BSS bandwidth			
*HEP3.1	20 MHz operation	26.17 (HE BSS operation)	CFHE: M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP3.2	40 MHz operation	26.17 (HE BSS operation)	CFHE80 and (CFHE5G or CFHE6G):M CFHE2G4:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP3.3	80 MHz operation	26.17 (HE BSS operation)	CFHE80 and (CFHE5G or CFHE6G):M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP3.4	160 MHz operation	26.17 (HE BSS operation)	CFHE80 and (CFHE5G or CFHE6G):O HEP3.5:M	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.2 HE PHY features (continued)**

2

3

4 Item	5 Protocol capability	6 References	7 Status	8 Support
9 *HEP3.5	10 80+80 MHz operation	11 26.17 (HE BSS 12 operation)	13 CFHE80 and 14 (CFHE5G or 15 CFHE6G):O	16 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
17 HEP4	18 PHY timing information	19	20	21
22 HEP4.1	23 Values in 20 MHz channel	24 27.3.8 (Timing- 25 related parame- 26 ters)	27 CFHE:M	28 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
29 HEP4.2	30 Values in 40 MHz channel	31 27.3.8 (Timing- 32 related parame- 33 ters)	34 CFHE:M	35 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
36 HEP4.3	37 Values in 80 MHz channel	38 27.3.8 (Timing- 39 related parame- 40 ters)	41 CFHE:M	42 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
43 HEP4.4	44 Values in 160 MHz channel	45 27.3.8 (Timing- 46 related parame- 47 ters)	48 HEP3.4:M	49 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
50 HEP4.5	51 Values in 80+80 MHz channel	52 27.3.8 (Timing- 53 related parame- 54 ters)	55 HEP3.5:M	56 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
57 HEP5	58 STBC	59 27.3.11.11 60 (Space-time 61 block coding)	62 CFHE:O	63 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
64 HEP6	65 Tone allocation			
66 *HEP6.1	67 26-tone RU mapping	68 27.3.2.2 69 (Resource unit, 70 guard and DC 71 subcarriers), 72 27.3.2.3 (Null 73 subcarriers) 74 and 27.3.2.4 75 (Pilot subcarri- 76 ers)	77 CFHE:M	78 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
79 *HEP6.2	80 52-tone RU mapping	81 27.3.2.2 82 (Resource unit, 83 guard and DC 84 subcarriers), 85 27.3.2.3 (Null 86 subcarriers) 87 and 27.3.2.4 88 (Pilot subcarri- 89 ers)	90 CFHE:M	91 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
92 *HEP6.3	93 106-tone RU mapping	94 27.3.2.2 95 (Resource unit, 96 guard and DC 97 subcarriers), 98 27.3.2.3 (Null 99 subcarriers) 100 and 27.3.2.4 101 (Pilot subcarri- 102 ers)	103 CFHE:M	104 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.2 HE PHY features (continued)**

2

3

4 Item	5 Protocol capability	6 References	7 Status	8 Support
9 *HEP6.4	10 242-tone RU mapping	11 27.3.2.2 12 (Resource unit, 13 guard and DC 14 subcarriers), 15 27.3.2.3 (Null 16 subcarriers) 17 and 27.3.2.4 18 (Pilot subcarri- 19 ers)	20 CFHE80:M 21 CFHE20:O	22 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
23 *HEP6.5	24 484-tone RU mapping	25 27.3.2.2 26 (Resource unit, 27 guard and DC 28 subcarriers), 29 27.3.2.3 (Null 30 subcarriers) 31 and 27.3.2.4 32 (Pilot subcarri- 33 ers)	34 CFHE80 and 35 HEP3.2:M	36 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
37 *HEP6.6	38 996-tone RU mapping	39 27.3.2.2 40 (Resource unit, 41 guard and DC 42 subcarriers), 43 27.3.2.3 (Null 44 subcarriers) 45 and 27.3.2.4 46 (Pilot subcarri- 47 ers)	48 CFHE80 and 49 HEP3.3:M 50 CFHE80 and 51 HEP3.4:M	52 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
53 *HEP6.7	54 2×996-tone RU mapping	55 27.3.2.2 56 (Resource unit, 57 guard and DC 58 subcarriers), 59 27.3.2.3 (Null 60 subcarriers) 61 and 27.3.2.4 62 (Pilot subcarri- 63 ers)	64 CFHE80 and 65 HEP3.4:M	66 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
67 HEP7	68 Coding	69	70	71
72 HEP8.1	73 BCC with 4 or fewer spatial streams	74 27.3.11.5.1 75 (BCC coding 76 and puncturing)	77 (HEP6.1 or 78 HEP6.2 or 79 HEP6.3 or 80 HEP6.4):M 81 (HEP3.1 and 82 HEP2.1):M	83 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
84 HEP8.2	85 LDPC with more than 4 spatial 86 streams	87 27.3.11.5.2 88 (LDPC coding)	89 CFHE80:M 90 CFHE20:M	91 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.2 HE PHY features (continued)**

2

3

4 Item	5 Protocol capability	6 References	7 Status	8 Support
9 HEP8.3	10 LDPC with 4 or fewer spatial 11 streams	12 27.3.11.5.2 (LDPC coding)	13 (HEP6.5 or 14 HEP6.6 or 15 HEP6.7):M 16 ((HEP3.2 or 17 HEP3.3 or 18 HEP3.4 or 19 HEP3.5) and 20 HEP2.1):M 21 (HEP6.1 or 22 HEP6.2 or 23 HEP6.3 or 24 HEP6.4):O 25 (HEP3.1 and 26 HEP2.1):O 27 CFHE20: O	28 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
29 HEP9	30 Coding and modulation schemes	31	32	33
34 HEP9.1	35 For 26-, 52-, 106-, 242-, 484- and 36 996-tone mapping	37	38	39
40 *HEP9.1.1	41 HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 1$	42 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	43 CFHE: M	44 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
45 *HEP9.1.2	46 HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 1$	47 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	48 HEP9.1.1:O	49 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
50 HEP9.1.3	51 HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 1$	52 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	53 HEP9.1.2:O	54 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
55 *HEP9.1.4	56 HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 2$	57 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	58 CFHE:O	59 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
60 *HEP9.1.5	61 HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 2$	62 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	63 HEP9.1.4:O	64 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
65 HEP9.1.6	66 HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 2$	67 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	68 HEP9.1.5:O	69 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
70 *HEP9.1.7	71 HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 3$	72 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	73 CFHE:O	74 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
75 *HEP9.1.8	76 HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 3$	77 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	78 HEP9.1.7:O	79 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
80 HEP9.1.9	81 HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 3$	82 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	83 HEP9.1.8:O	84 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
85 *HEP9.1.10	86 HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 4$	87 27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	88 CFHE:O	89 Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.2 HE PHY features (continued)**

2

3

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
*HEP9.1.11	HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 4$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.10:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.1.12	HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 4$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.11:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.13	HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 5$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.14	HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 5$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.13:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.1.15	HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 5$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.14:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.16	HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 6$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.17	HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 6$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.16:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.1.18	HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 6$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.17:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.19	HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 7$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.20	HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 7$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.19:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.1.21	HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 7$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.20:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.22	HE-MCS with Index 0-7 and $N_{SS} = 8$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.1.23	HE-MCS with Index 0-8 and $N_{SS} = 8$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.22:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.1.24	HE-MCS with Index 0-9 and $N_{SS} = 8$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.1.23:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2	For 242-, 484- and 996-tone plan			
*HEP9.2.1	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 1$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.2	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 1$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.1:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

1 **B.4.33.2 HE PHY features (continued)**

2

3

Item	Protocol capability	References	Status	Support
*HEP9.2.3	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 2$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.4	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 2$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.3:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.2.5	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 3$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.6	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 3$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.5:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.2.7	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 4$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.8	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 4$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.7:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.2.9	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 5$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.10	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 5$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.9:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.2.11	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 6$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.12	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 6$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.11:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.2.13	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 7$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.14	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 7$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.13:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
*HEP9.2.15	HE-MCS with Index 0-10 and $N_{SS} = 8$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	CFHE80: O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>
HEP9.2.16	HE-MCS with Index 0-11 and $N_{SS} = 8$	27.5 (Parameters for HE-MCSs)	HEP9.2.15:O	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> N/A <input type="checkbox"/>

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

Annex C

(normative)

ASN.1 encoding of the MAC and PHY MIB

C.3 MIB Detail

```
-- ****  
-- * Major sections  
-- ****  
-- Station Management (SMT) Attributes  
-- DEFINED AS "The SMT object class provides the necessary support  
-- at the station to manage the processes in the station such that  
-- the station may work cooperatively as a part of an IEEE 802.11  
-- network."  
--
```

Change the comment list following the dot11smt definition as follows (not all lines shown):

```
dot11smt OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { ieee802dot11 1 }
-- dot11GLKLinkMetricsTable                                ::= { dot11smt 41 }
-- dot11HEStationConfigTable                            ::= { dot11smt 42 }
-- dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsTable                   ::= { dot11smt 43 }

MAC Attributes
-- DEFINED AS "The MAC object class provides the necessary support
-- for the access control, generation, and verification of frame
-- check sequences (FCSs), and proper delivery of valid data to
-- upper layers."
```

Change the comment list following the dot11mac definition as follows (not all lines shown):

```
dot11mac OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { ieee802dot11 2 }

MAC GROUPS
-- dot11CDMOperationTable ::= { dot11mac 11 }
-- dot11MUEDCATable ::= { dot11mac 15 }
```

Change Dot11StationConfigEntry as follows (not all lines shown):

```
Dot11StationConfigEntry ::= SEQUENCE
{
    dot11FutureChannelGuidanceActivated      TruthValue,
    dot11HEOptionImplemented                TruthValue,
    dot11OBSSNarrowBWRUinOFDMATolerated TruthValue,
    dot11HE6GOptionImplemented              TruthValue,
    dot11OCTOptionImplemented              TruthValue,
}
```

Insert the following after the dot11FutureChannelGuidanceActivated OBJECT-TYPE element in the Dot11StationConfig TABLE:

```
dot11HEOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX TruthValue
    MAX-ACCESS read-only
    STATUS current
    DESCRIPTION
        "This is a capability variable.
        Its value is determined by device capabilities."
```

```

1      This attribute indicates whether the entity is HE Capable."
2      ::= { dot11StationConfigEntry 181}
3
4      dot11OBSSNarrowBWRUinOFDMATolerated OBJECT-TYPE
5          SYNTAX TruthValue
6          MAX-ACCESS read-only
7          STATUS current
8          DESCRIPTION
9              "This is a capability variable.
10             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
11
12
13             This attribute indicates whether the AP STA is able to tolerate 26-tone RU UL
14                 OFDMA transmissions using HE TB PPDU from OBSS (not falsely classify the
15                 26-tone RU UL OFDMA transmissions as radar pulses)."
16             ::= { dot11StationConfigEntry 182 }
17
18             dot11HE6GOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
19                 SYNTAX TruthValue
20                 MAX-ACCESS read-only
21                 STATUS current
22                 DESCRIPTION
23                     "This is a capability variable.
24                     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
25
26                     This attribute indicates whether the entity is capable of operating in the
27                         6 GHz band."
28             ::= { dot11StationConfigEntry 194}
29
30             dot11OCTOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
31                 SYNTAX TruthValue
32                 MAX-ACCESS read-only
33                 STATUS current
34                 DESCRIPTION
35                     "This is a capability variable.
36                     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
37
38             This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
39             capable of on-channel tunnelling operation. The capability is
40             disabled otherwise."
41             ::= { dot11StationConfigEntry 187}
42
43
44     Insert the following after the dot11GLKLinkMetricsTable TABLE:
45
46     -- ****
47     -- * dot11HEStationConfig TABLE
48     -- ****
49
50     dot11HEStationConfigTable OBJECT-TYPE
51         SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF Dot11HEStationConfigEntry
52         MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
53         STATUS current
54         DESCRIPTION
55             "Station Configuration attributes. In tabular form to allow for multiple
56             instances on an agent."
57             ::= { dot11smt 42 }
58
59     dot11HEStationConfigEntry OBJECT-TYPE
60         SYNTAX Dot11HEStationConfigEntry
61         MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
62         STATUS current
63         DESCRIPTION
64             "An entry (conceptual row) in the dot11HEStationConfig Table.
65

```

```

1      ifIndex - Each IEEE 802.11 interface is represented by an ifEntry. Inter-
2      face tables in this MIB module are indexed by ifIndex."
3      INDEX { ifIndex }
4      ::= { dot11HEStationConfigTable 1 }

5
6 Dot11HEStationConfigEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
7     dot11TRSOPTIONImplemented                      TruthValue,
8     dot11ULMUMIMOOPTIONImplemented                TruthValue,
9     dot11OFDMARandomAccessOPTIONImplemented       TruthValue,
10    dot11HEControlFieldOPTIONImplemented          TruthValue,
11    dot11OMIOPTIONImplemented                     TruthValue,
12    dot11HEMCSSFeedbackOPTIONImplemented         INTEGER,
13    dot11HEDYNAMICFragmentationLevel            INTEGER,
14    dot11AMPDUwithMultipleTIDOPTIONImplemented   TruthValue,
15    dot11MPDUAAskedforAckInMultiTIDAMPDU        TruthValue,
16    dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold               Unsigned32,
17    dot11PPEThresholdsRequired                  TruthValue,
18    dot11IntraPPDUPowerSaveOPTIONActivated      TruthValue,
19    dot11AMSDUFragmentationOPTIONImplemented     TruthValue,
20    dot11BSSColorCollisionAPPPeriod             Unsigned32,
21    dot11BSSColorCollisionSTAPeriod            Unsigned32,
22    dot11AutonomousBSSColorCollisionREPORTINGImplemented TruthValue,
23    dot11HESRPOPTIONImplemented                 TruthValue,
24    dot11HEBSRControlOPTIONImplemented          TruthValue,
25    dot11HEBQRControlOPTIONImplemented          TruthValue,
26    dot11HECASControlOPTIONImplemented          TruthValue,
27    dot11PartialBSSColorOPTIONImplemented       TruthValue,
28    dot11ObssNbRuToleranceTime                Unsigned32,
29    dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionOPTIONImplemented TruthValue,
30    dot11SRResponderOPTIONImplemented           TruthValue,
31    dot11AutonomousBSSColorInUseREPORTINGImplemented TruthValue,
32    dot11ShortSSIDListOPTIONImplemented         TruthValue,
33    dot11ColocatedRNRIOPTIONImplemented         TruthValue,
34    dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMinOffset                Integer32,
35    dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset                Integer32,
36    dot11SRGAPBSSColorBitmap                 OCTET STRING,
37    dot11SRGAPBSSIDBitmap                   OCTET STRING,
38    dot11NonSRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset             Integer32,
39    dot11HTVHTTriggerOPTIONImplemented        TruthValue,
40    dot11HEDYNAMICSMPowerSaveOPTIONImplemented TruthValue,
41    dot11MUEDCAParametersActived            TruthValue,
42    dot11CoHostedBSSIDOPTIONImplemented       TruthValue,
43    dot1120TUProbeResponseActiveOPTIONImplemented TruthValue,
44    dot11MemberOfColocated6GHzESSOPTIONImplemented TruthValue,
45    dot11AckEnabledAMPDUDOPTIONImplemented     TruthValue,
46    dot11MinPSCPProbeDelay                  Unsigned32
47
48 }
49
50
51 dot11TRSOPTIONImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
52     SYNTAX TruthValue
53     MAX-ACCESS read-only
54     STATUS current
55     DESCRIPTION
56         "This is a capability variable.
57         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
58
59         This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
60         capable of receiving frames with a TRS Control subfield. The capability is
61         disabled otherwise."
62     DEFVAL { false }
63     ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 1 }

64
65 dot11ULMUMIMOOPTIONImplemented OBJECT-TYPE

```

```

1      SYNTAX TruthValue
2      MAX-ACCESS read-only
3      STATUS current
4      DESCRIPTION
5          "This is a capability variable.
6          Its value is determined by device capabilities.
7
8          This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
9          capable of a full bandwidth UL MU-MIMO transmission. The capability is
10         disabled otherwise."
11        DEFVAL { false }
12        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 2 }
13
14 dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
15     SYNTAX TruthValue
16     MAX-ACCESS read-only
17     STATUS current
18     DESCRIPTION
19         "This is a capability variable.
20         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
21
22         This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
23         capable of an OFDMA random access operation. The capability is disabled
24         otherwise."
25        DEFVAL { false }
26        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 3 }
27
28 dot11HEControlFieldOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
29     SYNTAX TruthValue
30     MAX-ACCESS read-only
31     STATUS current
32     DESCRIPTION
33         "This is a capability variable.
34         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
35
36         This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
37         capable of receiving the HE variant HT Control field. The capability is
38         disabled otherwise."
39        DEFVAL { false }
40        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 4 }
41
42 dot11OMIOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
43     SYNTAX TruthValue
44     MAX-ACCESS read-only
45     STATUS current
46     DESCRIPTION
47         "This is a capability variable.
48         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
49
50         This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
51         capable of receiving frames with an OM Control subfield. The capability is
52         disabled otherwise."
53        DEFVAL { false }
54        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 5 }
55
56 dot11HEMCSFeedbackOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
57     SYNTAX INTERGER {none(0), unsolicited(2), solicitedandunsolicited(3) }
58     MAX-ACCESS read-only
59     STATUS current
60     DESCRIPTION
61         "This is a capability variable.
62         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
63
64         This attribute indicates the HE-MCS feedback capability supported by the

```

```

1      station implementation."
2  DEFVAL { 0 }
3  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 6 }
4
5 dot11HEDynamicFragmentationLevel OBJECT-TYPE
6  SYNTAX INTEGER{hedynamicfragmentationlevel1(1), hedynamicfragmentationlev-
7      el2(2), hedynamicfragmentationlevel3(3)}
8  MAX-ACCESS read-only
9  STATUS current
10 DESCRIPTION
11     "This is a capability variable.
12     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
13
14     HEDynamicFragmentationLevel1 indicates support for up to one dynamic frag-
15     ment that is a non-A-MPDU frame, no support for dynamic fragments within
16     an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU.
17
18     HEDynamicFragmentationLevel2 indicates support for up to one dynamic frag-
19     ment that is a non-A-MPDU frame and support for up to one dynamic fragment
20     for each MSDU, each A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) and one MMPDU
21     (if present) within an A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU.
22
23     HEDynamicFragmentationLevel3 indicates support for up to one dynamic frag-
24     ment that is a non-A-MPDU frame and support for up to 4 dynamic fragments
25     for each MSDU and for each A-MSDU (if supported by the recipient) within
26     an A-MPDU and up to one dynamic fragment for one MMPDU (if present) in an
27     A-MPDU that does not contain an S-MPDU"
28  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 7 }
29
30 dot11HEAMPDUwithMultipleTIDOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
31  SYNTAX TruthValue
32  MAX-ACCESS read-only
33  STATUS current
34  DESCRIPTION
35     "This is a capability variable.
36     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
37
38     This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
39     capable of receiving an A-MPDU that contains QoS Data frames with two or
40     more different TID values. The capability is disabled otherwise."
41  DEFVAL { false }
42  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 8 }
43
44 dot11MPDUAAskedforAckInMultiTIDAMPDU OBJECT-TYPE
45  SYNTAX TruthValue
46  MAX-ACCESS read-only
47  STATUS current
48  DESCRIPTION
49     "This is a capability variable.
50     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
51
52     This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
53     capable of receiving a multi-TID A-MPDU that can solicit either Ack or
54     BlockAck, or both. The capability is disabled otherwise."
55  DEFVAL { false }
56  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 9 }
57
58 dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold OBJECT-TYPE
59  SYNTAX Unsigned32 (1..1023)
60  UNITS "32 microseconds"
61  MAX-ACCESS read-write
62  STATUS current
63  DESCRIPTION
64     "This is a control variable.
65

```

```

1      It is written by an external management entity or by the MAC of a non-AP
2      HE STA upon receiving an HE Operation element from the HE AP with which it
3      is associated.
4      Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
5
6      This attribute indicates the duration of the transmission or TXOP above
7      which an RTS/CTS handshake is performed. Value 1023 means this feature is
8      disabled"
9      DEFVAL { 1023 }
10     ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 10 }
11
12    dot11PPEThresholdsRequired OBJECT-TYPE
13      SYNTAX TruthValue
14      MAX-ACCESS read-only
15      STATUS current
16      DESCRIPTION
17        "This is a capability variable.
18        Its value is determined by device capabilities.
19        This attribute, when true, indicates that PPE thresholds exist and are
20        provided in dot11PPEThresholdsTable."
21      DEFVAL { false }
22      ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 11 }
23
24    dot11IntraPPDUPowerSaveOptionActivated OBJECT-TYPE
25      SYNTAX TruthValue
26      MAX-ACCESS read-only
27      STATUS current
28      DESCRIPTION
29        "This is a capability variable.
30        Its value is determined by device capabilities.
31
32        This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
33        capable of Intra PPDU Power Save operation. The capability is disabled
34        otherwise."
35      DEFVAL { false }
36      ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 12 }
37
38    dot11AMSDUFragmentationOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
39      SYNTAX TruthValue
40      MAX-ACCESS read-only
41      STATUS current
42      DESCRIPTION
43        "This is a capability variable. Its value is determined by device
44        capabilities.
45
46        This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is
47        capable of receiving dynamic fragments of A-MSDUs. The capability is
48        disabled otherwise."
49      DEFVAL { false }
50      ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 13 }
51
52    dot11BSSColorCollisionAPPPeriod OBJECT-TYPE
53      SYNTAX Unsigned32 (50..255)
54      UNITS "seconds"
55      MAX-ACCESS read-only
56      STATUS current
57      DESCRIPTION
58        "The attribute indicates the duration for which an HE AP shall wait before
59        disabling BSS color. The minimum value of this variable is 50."
60      DEFVAL { 50 }
61      ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 14 }
62
63    dot11BSSColorCollisionSTAPeriod OBJECT-TYPE
64      SYNTAX Unsigned32 (5..10)
65

```

```

1      UNITS "seconds"
2      MAX-ACCESS read-only
3      STATUS current
4      DESCRIPTION
5          "The attribute indicates the interval between successive BSS color
6              collision reports. The maximum value of this variable is 10."
7          DEFVAL { 5 }
8          ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 15 }

9
10     dot11AutonomousBSSColorCollisionReportingImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
11         SYNTAX TruthValue
12         MAX-ACCESS read-write
13         STATUS current
14         DESCRIPTION
15             "This is a capability variable.
16                 Its value is determined by device capabilities.
17                 This attribute, when true, indicates that autonomously detecting and
18                     reporting of BSS color collision is implemented."
19             DEFVAL { false }
20             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 16 }

21
22     dot11HESRPOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
23         SYNTAX TruthValue
24         MAX-ACCESS read-only
25         STATUS current
26         DESCRIPTION
27             "This is a capability variable. Its value is determined by device
28                 capabilities.
29
30             This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is
31                 capable of transmitting Spatial Reuse Parameters in HE PPDUs. The
32                     capability is disabled otherwise."
33             DEFVAL { false }
34             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 17 }

35
36     dot11HEBSRControlImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
37         SYNTAX TruthValue
38         MAX-ACCESS read-only
39         STATUS current
40         DESCRIPTION
41             "This is a capability variable.
42                 Its value is determined by device capabilities.
43
44             This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
45                 capable of receiving frames with a BSR Control subfield. The capability is
46                     disabled otherwise."
47             DEFVAL { false }
48             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 18 }

49
50     dot11HEBQRControlImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
51         SYNTAX TruthValue
52         MAX-ACCESS read-only
53         STATUS current
54         DESCRIPTION
55             "This is a capability variable.
56                 Its value is determined by device capabilities.
57
58             This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
59                 capable of receiving frames with a BQR Control subfield. The capability is
60                     disabled otherwise."
61             DEFVAL { false }
62             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 19 }

63
64     dot11HECASControlImplemented OBJECT-TYPE

```

```

1      SYNTAX TruthValue
2      MAX-ACCESS read-only
3      STATUS current
4      DESCRIPTION
5          "This is a capability variable.
6          Its value is determined by device capabilities.
7
8          This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
9          capable of receiving frames with a CAS Control subfield. The capability is
10         disabled otherwise."
11        DEFVAL { false }
12        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 20 }
13
14    dot11PartialBSSColorImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
15        SYNTAX TruthValue
16        MAX-ACCESS read-only
17        STATUS current
18        DESCRIPTION
19          "This is a capability variable.
20          Its value is determined by device capabilities.
21          This attribute, when true, indicates that the partial BSS color (see
22          27.16.3 (AID assignment)) is implemented. The capability is disabled oth-
23          erwise."
24        DEFVAL { false }
25        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 21 }
26
27    dot11ObssNbRuToleranceTime OBJECT-TYPE
28        SYNTAX Unsigned32 (0..3600)
29        UNITS "seconds"
30        MAX-ACCESS read-only
31        STATUS current
32        DESCRIPTION
33          "This attribute indicates the minimum time that needs to pass since the
34          reception of the last Beacon frame from an OBSS AP that did not indicate
35          tolerance to narrow bandwidth RU in OFDMA before the STA can transmit a
36          Trigger frame or TRS Control subfield that allocates a 26-tone RU, or
37          transmit an HE TB PPDU in a 26-tone RU."
38        DEFVAL { 1800 }
39        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 22 }
40
41    dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
42        SYNTAX TruthValue
43        MAX-ACCESS read-only
44        STATUS current
45        DESCRIPTION
46          "This is a capability variable.
47          Its value is determined by device capabilities.
48          This attribute, when true, indicates that an HE subchannel selective
49          transmission operation is implemented. The capability is disabled other-
50          wise."
51        DEFVAL { false }
52        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 23 }
53
54    dot11SRResponderOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
55        SYNTAX TruthValue
56        MAX-ACCESS read-only
57        STATUS current
58        DESCRIPTION
59          "This is a capability variable.
60          Its value is determined by device capabilities.
61
62          This attribute, when true, indicates that the SRP-based SRPT PPDU recep-
63          tion (see 26.10.3 (SRP-based spatial reuse operation)) is implemented. The
64          capability is disabled otherwise."
65

```

```

1      DEFVAL { false }
2      ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 24 }
3
4  dot11AutonomousBSSColorInUseReportingImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
5      SYNTAX TruthValue
6      MAX-ACCESS read-only
7      STATUS current
8      DESCRIPTION
9          "This is a capability variable.
10         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
11
12        This attribute, when true, indicates that autonomously
13        reporting of BSS color in use is implemented."
14        DEFVAL { false }
15        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 25 }
16
17  dot11ShortSSIDListImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
18      SYNTAX TruthValue
19      MAX-ACCESS read-only
20      STATUS current
21      DESCRIPTION
22          "This is a capability variable. Its value is determined by device capabil-
23          ities.
24
25          This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is capa-
26          ble of transmitting and receiving Short SSID List element in Probe Request
27          frames. The capability is disabled otherwise."
28        DEFVAL { false }
29        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 26 }
30
31  dot11ColocatedRNRImpediment OBJECT-TYPE
32      SYNTAX TruthValue
33      MAX-ACCESS read-only
34      STATUS current
35      DESCRIPTION
36          "This is a capability variable. Its value is determined by device capabil-
37          ities.
38
39          This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is capa-
40          ble of transmitting or receiving a Reduced Neighbor Report element carry-
41          ing information on APs that are in the same co-located AP set as the
42          reporting AP in Probe Response, Beacon and FILS Discovery frames. The
43          capability is disabled otherwise."
44        DEFVAL { false }
45        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 27 }
46
47  dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMinOffset OBJECT-TYPE
48      SYNTAX Integer32
49      UNITS "dBm"
50      MAX-ACCESS read-only
51      STATUS current
52      DESCRIPTION
53          "This is a control variable.
54          It is written by an external management entity.
55          Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
56
57          This attribute indicates the SRG OBSS PD Min Offset for an AP."
58        DEFVAL { 0 }
59        ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 28 }
60
61  dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset OBJECT-TYPE
62      SYNTAX Integer32
63      UNITS "dBm"
64      MAX-ACCESS read-only
65

```

```

1      STATUS current
2      DESCRIPTION
3          "This is a control variable.
4          It is written by an external management entity.
5          Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
6
7          This attribute indicates the SRG OBSS PD Max Offset for an AP."
8          DEFVAL { 0 }
9          ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 29 }
10
11     dot11SRGAPBSSColorBitmap OBJECT-TYPE
12         SYNTAX OCTET STRING (SIZE(8))
13         MAX-ACCESS read-only
14         STATUS current
15         DESCRIPTION
16             "This is a control variable.
17             This variable is a 64 bit bitmap that indicates which BSS color values are
18             used by members of the SRG of which the AP is a member.
19             It is written by an external management entity.
20             Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
21
22             This attribute indicates the SRG BSS Color Bitmap for an AP."
23             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 30 }
24
25     dot11SRGAPBSSIDBitmap OBJECT-TYPE
26         SYNTAX OCTET STRING (SIZE(8))
27         MAX-ACCESS read-only
28         STATUS current
29         DESCRIPTION
30             "This is a control variable.
31             This variable is a 64 bit bitmap that indicates which Partial BSSID values
32             are used by members of the SRG of which the AP is a member.
33             It is written by an external management entity.
34             Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
35
36             This attribute indicates the SRG BSSID Bitmap for an AP."
37             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 31 }
38
39     dot11NonSRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset OBJECT-TYPE
40         SYNTAX Integer32
41         UNITS "dBm"
42         MAX-ACCESS read-only
43         STATUS current
44         DESCRIPTION
45             "This is a control variable.
46             It is written by an external management entity.
47             Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
48
49             This attribute indicates the Non SRG OBSS PD Max Offset for an AP."
50             DEFVAL { 0 }
51             ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 32 }
52
53     dot11HTVHTTriggerOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
54         SYNTAX TruthValue
55         MAX-ACCESS read-only
56         STATUS current
57         DESCRIPTION
58             "This is a capability variable.
59             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
60
61             This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is capa-
62             ble of receiving Trigger frames in HT PPDUs and VHT PPDUs. The capability
63             is disabled, otherwise."
64             DEFVAL { false }
65

```

```

1 ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 33 }
2
3 dot11HEDynamicSMPowerSaveOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
4   SYNTAX TruthValue
5   MAX-ACCESS read-only
6   STATUS current
7   DESCRIPTION
8     "This is a capability variable. Its value is determined by device
9     capabilities."
10
11    This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is
12      capable of enabling its multiple receive chains when it receives a
13        Trigger frame. The capability is disabled otherwise."
14    DEFVAL { false }
15 ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 34 }
16
17 dot11MUEDCAParametersActived OBJECT-TYPE
18   SYNTAX TruthValue
19   MAX-ACCESS read-write
20   STATUS current
21   DESCRIPTION
22     "This is a control variable used only if the STA is an AP. It is set to
23       true by an AP that advertises MU EDCA parameters so that its associated
24         STAs use MU EDCA parameters."
25     DEFVAL { true }
26 ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 35 }
27
28 dot11CoHostedBSSIDImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
29   SYNTAX TruthValue
30   MAX-ACCESS read-only
31   STATUS current
32   DESCRIPTION
33     "This is a capability variable.
34       Its value is determined by device capabilities.
35       This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
36         capable of supporting Co-Hosted BSSID."
37     DEFVAL { false }
38 ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 36 }
39
40 dot1120TUProbeResponseOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
41   SYNTAX TruthValue
42   MAX-ACCESS read-only
43   STATUS current
44   DESCRIPTION
45     "This is a capability variable.
46       Its value is determined by device capabilities.
47
48       This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is an
49         AP and schedules transmission of unsolicited Probe Response frames every
50           20 TUs (see 26.17.2.3.2 (AP behavior for fast passive scanning)). The
51             capability is disabled otherwise."
52
53 ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 37 }
54
55 dot11MemberOfColocated6GHzESSOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
56   SYNTAX TruthValue
57   MAX-ACCESS read-only
58   STATUS current
59   DESCRIPTION
60     "This is a capability variable.
61       Its value is determined by device capabilities.
62
63       This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is an
64         AP that operates in the 6 GHz band and is part of an ESS where each AP has
65           a corresponding AP operating in the 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz band that is in the

```

```

1      same co-located AP set as that AP (see 26.17.2.4 (Out of band discovery of
2          a 6 GHz BSS)). The capability is disabled otherwise."
3  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 38 }
4
5 dot11AckEnabledAMPDUOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
6     SYNTAX TruthValue
7     MAX-ACCESS read-only
8     STATUS current
9     DESCRIPTION
10        "This is a capability variable.
11        Its value is determined by device capabilities.
12
13        This attribute, when true, indicates that the station implementation is
14        capable of receiving ack-enabled single-TID A-MPDU. The capability is dis-
15        abled otherwise."
16  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 39 }
17
18 dot11MinPSCPProbeDelay OBJECT-TYPE
19     SYNTAX Unsigned32 (5484..100000)
20     UNITS "microseconds"
21     MAX-ACCESS read-write
22     STATUS current
23     DESCRIPTION
24        "This is a control variable.
25        It is written by an external management entity.
26        Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
27
28        A STA does not send a Probe Request frame if it is scanning a preferred
29        scanning channel in the 6 GHz band unless the channel has been continu-
30        ously idle for this duration since the start of the scan on that channel."
31 DEFVAL { 7000 }
32  ::= { dot11HEStationConfigEntry 40 }
33
34
35 -- ****
36 -- * End of dot11HEStationConfigTable TABLE
37 -- ****
38
39 -- ****
40 -- * dot11PPEThresholdsMappings TABLE
41 -- ****
42 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsTable OBJECT-TYPE
43     SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF Dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry
44     MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
45     STATUS current
46     DESCRIPTION
47        "A conceptual table for PPE thresholds mappings, which determines the nom-
48        inal packet padding value as a function of the two PPE thresholds, PPET8
49        and PPET16, for an HE PPDU of a particular RU allocation size and NSTS
50        value. The MIB supports the ability to share separate PPE thresholds for
51        each NSTS/RU pair. The thresholds mappings table contains one entry for
52        each NSTS/RU pair and contains two fields for each entry: PPET8 and
53        PPET16."
54     REFERENCE "IEEE Std 802.11-<year>, 26.12 (HE PPDU post-FEC padding and packet
55         extension)"
56  ::= { dot11smt 43}
57
58 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry OBJECT-TYPE
59     SYNTAX Dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry
60     MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
61     STATUS current
62     DESCRIPTION
63        "An Entry (conceptual row) in the PPE Thresholds Mappings Table.
64        ifIndex - Each IEEE Std 802.11 interface is represented by an ifEntry.
65

```

```

1      Interface tables in this MIB module are indexed by ifIndex."
2      INDEX { ifIndex, dot11PPEThresholdsMappingIndex }
3      ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsTable 1 }
4
5 Dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
6     dot11PPEThresholdsMappingIndex                               Unsigned32,
7     dot11PPEThresholdsMappingNSS                                Unsigned32,
8     dot11PPEThresholdsMappingRUIIndex                           Unsigned32,
9     dot11PPEThresholdsMappingPPET8                             INTEGER,
10    dot11PPEThresholdsMappingPPET16                            INTEGER,
11    dot11PPEThresholdsMappingStatus                          RowStatus}
12
13 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingIndex OBJECT-TYPE
14   SYNTAX Unsigned32
15   MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
16   STATUS current
17   DESCRIPTION
18     "The auxiliary variable used to identify instances of the columnar objects
19       in the PPE Thresholds Mappings Table."
20   ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry 1 }
21
22 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingNSS OBJECT-TYPE
23   SYNTAX Unsigned32
24   MAX-ACCESS read-create
25   STATUS current
26   DESCRIPTION
27     "The NSS value portion of the NSS/RU pair for which the values from this
28       Thresholds mapping entry are to be used."
29   ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry 2 }
30
31 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingRUIIndex OBJECT-TYPE
32   SYNTAX Unsigned32
33   MAX-ACCESS read-create
34   STATUS current
35   DESCRIPTION
36     "The index of the RU value portion of the NSS/RU pair for which the values
37       from this thresholds mapping entry are to be used. The index values map to
38       an RU as follows: RU Index of 0 is 242 tones, 1 is 448 tones, 2 is 996
39       tones, 3 is 2x996 tones."
40   ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry 3 }
41
42 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingPPET8 OBJECT-TYPE
43   SYNTAX INTEGER{BPSK(0), QPSK(1), 16-QAM(2), 64-QAM(3), 256-QAM(4), 1024-
44     QAM(5), NONE(7)}
45   MAX-ACCESS read-create
46   STATUS current
47   DESCRIPTION
48     "An index that determines a constellation value at or above which a nomi-
49       nal packet padding value of at least 8 microseconds is required for the
50       given NSS/RU pair corresponding to the row of the entry."
51   ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry 4 }
52
53 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingPPET16 OBJECT-TYPE
54   SYNTAX INTEGER{BPSK(0), QPSK(1), 16-QAM(2), 64-QAM(3), 256-QAM(4), 1024-
55     QAM(5), NONE(7)}
56   MAX-ACCESS read-create
57   STATUS current
58   DESCRIPTION
59     "An index that determines a constellation value at or above which a nomi-
60       nal packet padding value of 16 microseconds is required for the given NSS/
61       RU pair corresponding to the row of the entry."
62   ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry 5 }
63
64 dot11PPEThresholdsMappingStatus OBJECT-TYPE

```

```

1      SYNTAX RowStatus
2      MAX-ACCESS read-create
3      STATUS current
4      DESCRIPTION
5          "The status column used for creating, modifying, and deleting instances of
6          the columnar objects in the PPE thresholds mapping table."
7          DEFVAL { active }
8      ::= { dot11PPEThresholdsMappingsEntry 6 }

9      -----
10     -- ****
11     -- * End of dot11PPEThresholdsMappings TABLE
12     -- ****
13
14
15 Insert the following after the end of dot11CDMGOperationTable:
16
17     --
18     -- * SMT MU EDCA Config TABLE
19     -- ****
20
21     dot11MUEDCATable OBJECT-TYPE
22         SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF Dot11MUEDCAEntry
23         MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
24         STATUS current
25         DESCRIPTION
26             "Conceptual table for MU EDCA parameter values at a non-AP STA. This table
27             contains the four entries of the MU EDCA parameters corresponding to four
28             possible ACs. Index 1 corresponds to AC_BK, index 2 to AC_BE, index 3 to
29             AC_VI, and index 4 to AC_VO."
30
31     ::= { dot11mac 15 }

32
33     dot11MUEDCAEntry OBJECT-TYPE
34         SYNTAX Dot11MUEDCAEntry
35         MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
36         STATUS current
37         DESCRIPTION
38             "An Entry (conceptual row) in the MU EDCA Table.
39
40             ifIndex - Each IEEE 802.11 interface is represented by an ifEntry. Interface
41             tables in this MIB module are indexed by ifIndex."
42             INDEX { ifIndex, dot11MUEDCATableIndex }
43     ::= { dot11MUEDCATable 1 }

44
45     Dot11MUEDCAEntry ::=
46         SEQUENCE {
47             dot11MUEDCATableIndex                               Unsigned32,
48             dot11MUEDCATableCWmin                            Unsigned32,
49             dot11MUEDCATableCWmax                            Unsigned32,
50             dot11MUEDCATableAIFSN                           Unsigned32,
51             dot11MUEDCATableTimer                           Unsigned32
52         }
53
54     dot11MUEDCATableIndex OBJECT-TYPE
55         SYNTAX Unsigned32 (1..4)
56         MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
57         STATUS current
58         DESCRIPTION
59             "The auxiliary variable used to identify instances of the columnar objects
60             in the MU EDCA Table. The value of this variable is
61             1, if the value of the AC is AC_BK.
62             2, if the value of the AC is AC_BE.
63             3, if the value of the AC is AC_VI.
64             4, if the value of the AC is AC_VO."
65     ::= { dot11MUEDCAEntry 1 }

```

```

1   dot11MUEDCATableCWmin OBJECT-TYPE
2     SYNTAX Unsigned32 (0..255)
3     MAX-ACCESS read-only
4     STATUS current
5     DESCRIPTION
6       "This is a control variable.
7       It is written by the MAC upon receiving an MU EDCA Parameter Set.
8       Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
9
10      This attribute specifies the value of the minimum size of the window that
11        is used by a STA for a particular AC for generating a random number for
12          the backoff. The value of this attribute is such that it could always be
13            expressed in the form of  $2^{**X} - 1$ , where X is an integer. "
14
15 ::= { dot11MUEDCAEntry 2 }

16
17 dot11MUEDCATableCWmax OBJECT-TYPE
18   SYNTAX Unsigned32 (0..65535)
19   MAX-ACCESS read-only
20   STATUS current
21   DESCRIPTION
22     "This is a control variable.
23     It is written by the MAC upon receiving an MU EDCA Parameter Set.
24     Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
25
26     This attribute specifies the value of the maximum size of the window that
27       is used by a STA for a particular AC for generating a random number for
28           the backoff. The value of this attribute is such that it could always be
29             expressed in the form of  $2^{**X} - 1$ , where X is an integer. "
30
31 ::= { dot11MUEDCAEntry 3 }

32 dot11MUEDCATableAIFSN OBJECT-TYPE
33   SYNTAX Unsigned32 (0..15)
34   MAX-ACCESS read-only
35   STATUS current
36   DESCRIPTION
37     "This is a control variable.
38     It is written by the MAC upon receiving an MU EDCA Parameter Set element.
39     Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
40
41     This attribute specifies the number of slots, after a SIFS, that the STA,
42       for a particular AC, senses the medium idle either before transmitting or
43           executing a backoff. "
44
45 ::= { dot11MUEDCAEntry 4 }

46
47 dot11MUEDCATableTimer OBJECT-TYPE
48   SYNTAX Unsigned32 (1..255)
49   UNITS "8 TUs"
50   MAX-ACCESS read-only
51   STATUS current
52   DESCRIPTION
53     "This is a control variable.
54     It is written by an external management entity.
55     Changes take effect as soon as the STA sends a frame in response to a
56       Basic Trigger frame.
57
58     This attribute specifies the duration of time during which the HE STA uses
59       the MU EDCA parameters for the corresponding AC."
60     REFERENCE
61       "26.2.7 (EDCA operation using MU EDCA parameters)"
62
63 ::= { dot11MUEDCAEntry 5 }

64
65

```

```

1   --
2   -- **** End of MU EDCA Config TABLE
3   -- ****
4   --
5   --
6
7 Change dot11PHYType as follows:
8
9 dot11PHYType OBJECT-TYPE
10    SYNTAX INTEGER {
11      fhss(1),
12      dsss(2),
13      irbaseband(3),
14      ofdm(4),
15      hrdsss(5),
16      erp(6),
17      ht(7),
18      dmrg(8),
19      vht(9),
20      tvht(10),
21      s1g(11),
22      cdmg(12),
23      cmmg(13),
24      he (14)}
25    MAX-ACCESS read-only
26    STATUS current
27    DESCRIPTION
28      "This is a status variable.
29      It is written by the PHY.
30
31      This is an 8-bit integer value that identifies the PHY type supported by
32      the attached PLCP and PMD. Currently defined values and their correspond-
33      ing PHY types are:
34
35      FHSS 2.4 GHz = 01, DSSS 2.4 GHz = 02, IR Baseband = 03,
36      OFDM = 04, HRDSSS = 05, ERP = 06, HT = 07, DMG = 08, VHT = 09,
37      TVHT = 10, S1G = 11, CDMG = 12, CMMG = 13, HE = 14"
38      ::= { dot11PhyOperationEntry 1 }
39
40
41 Change dot11PhyVHTEntry as follows:
42
43
44 Dot11PhyVHTEntry ::= SEQUENCE {
45   dot11VHTChannelWidthOptionImplemented           INTEGER,
46   dot11CurrentChannelWidth                      INTEGER,
47   dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex0       Unsigned32,
48   dot11CurrentChannelCenterFrequencyIndex1       Unsigned32,
49   dot11EightyMHzOperationImplemented            TruthValue,
50   dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn80Implemented          TruthValue,
51   dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn80Activated           TruthValue,
52   dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn160and80p80Implemented TruthValue,
53   dot11VHTShortGIOptionIn160and80p80Activated   TruthValue,
54   dot11VHTLDPCCCodingOptionImplemented          TruthValue,
55   dot11VHTLDPCCCodingOptionActivated           TruthValue,
56   dot11VHTTxSTBCOptionImplemented              TruthValue,
57   dot11VHTTxSTBCOptionActivated                TruthValue,
58   dot11VHTRxSTBCOptionImplemented              TruthValue,
59   dot11VHTRxSTBCOptionActivated                TruthValue,
60   dot11VHTMUMaxUsersImplemented                Unsigned32,
61   dot11VHTMUMaxNSTSPerUserImplemented          Unsigned32,
62   dot11VHTMUMaxNSTSTotalImplemented           Unsigned32,
63   dot11VHTMaxNTxChainsImplemented             Unsigned32,
64   dot11VHTMaxNTxChainsActivated               Unsigned32_
65

```



```

1      dot11HEDopplerRxImplemented           TruthValue,
2      dot11HEDCMIImplemented             TruthValue,
3      dot11HEFullBWULMUMIMOImplemented   TruthValue,
4      dot11HEPartialBWULMUMIMOImplemented TruthValue,
5      dot11HEPartialBWDLMUMIMOImplemented TruthValue,
6      dot11HEULMUPayloadImplemented      TruthValue,
7      dot11HESRPbasedSRSSupportImplemented TruthValue,
8      dot11HEPowerBoostFactorImplemented  TruthValue,
9      dot11HEPartialBWERSUPayloadImplemented TruthValue,
10     dot11HEPuncturedSoundingOptionImplemented TruthValue
11   }
12
13 dot11HECCAIndicationMode OBJECT-TYPE
14   SYNTAX INTEGER {
15     singleelement (0),
16     per20bitmap (1),
17     per20bitmapsifs (2) }
18   MAX-ACCESS read-write
19   STATUS current
20   DESCRIPTION
21     "This is a control variable.
22     It is written by an external management entity.
23     Changes take effect as soon as practical in the implementation.
24     The current CCA method in operation for an HE PHY. Valid values are:
25     When the channel-list of a PHY-CCA.indication primitive contains only
26     single element, it is set to 0 (singleelement).
27     When the channel-list of a PHY-CCA.indication primitive contains a
28     per20bitmap and the channel-list is used for the preamble puncturing
29     transmission, it is set to 1 (per20bitmap).
30     When the channel-list of a PHY-CCA.indication primitive contains a
31     per20bitmap measured during the SIFS time and the channel-list is
32     used for the HE TB PPDU transmission and BQR operation, it is
33     set 2 (per20bitmapsifs)."
34   ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 1 }
35
36 dot11HECurrentChannelWidthSet OBJECT-TYPE
37   SYNTAX Unsigned32 (0..6)
38   MAX-ACCESS read-only
39   STATUS current
40   DESCRIPTION
41     "This is a status variable.
42
43     This attribute specifies the channel width set, equal to 0 for a 40 MHz
44     channel width in the 2.4 GHz band, equal to 1 for a 40 MHz and 80 MHz chan-
45     nel width in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz band, equal to 2 for a 160 MHz channel
46     width in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz band, equal to 3 for a 160/80+80 MHz channel
47     width in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz band, equal to 4 for 242-tone RUs in a 40 MHz
48     HE MU PPDU in the 2.4 GHz band, equal to 5 for 242-tone RUs in a 40 MHz,
49     80 MHz, 160 MHz, and 80+80 MHz HE MU PPDU in the 5 GHz or 6 GHz band, and
50     the value 6 is reserved."
51   ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 2 }
52
53 dot11HEPuncturedPreambleRxImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
54   SYNTAX OCTET STRING(SIZE(2))
55   MAX-ACCESS read-only
56   STATUS current
57   DESCRIPTION
58     "This is a capability variable.
59     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
60
61     This attribute indicates the preamble punctured channel, equal to 0 for
62     the reception of an 80 MHz preamble where the secondary 20 MHz subchannel
63     is punctured, equal to 1 for the reception of an 80 MHz preamble where one
64     of the two 20 MHz subchannels in the secondary 40 MHz is punctured, equal
65

```

```

1      to 2 for the reception of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz preamble where in the pri-
2      mary 80 MHz of the preamble only the secondary 20 MHz is punctured, and
3      equal to 3 for the reception of a 160 MHz or 80+80 MHz preamble where in
4      the primary 80 MHz of the preamble, the primary 40 MHz is present."
5  ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 3 }
6
7  dot11HEDeviceClass OBJECT-TYPE
8      SYNTAX TruthValue
9      MAX-ACCESS read-only
10     STATUS current
11     DESCRIPTION
12         "This is a capability variable.
13         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
14         This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is operating as
15             a class A device. When false, this attribute indicates that the non-AP STA
16             is operating as a class B device."
17  ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 4 }
18
19  dot11HELDPCCodingInPayloadImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
20      SYNTAX TruthValue
21      MAX-ACCESS read-only
22      STATUS current
23      DESCRIPTION
24         "This is a capability variable.
25         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
26
27         This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA is capable of transmit-
28             ting and receiving LDPC encoded packets. This capability is disabled oth-
29             erwise."
30     DEFVAL { false }
31  ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 5 }
32
33  dot11HESUPPDUwith1xHELTFind0point8GILmplemented OBJECT-TYPE
34      SYNTAX TruthValue
35      MAX-ACCESS read-only
36      STATUS current
37      DESCRIPTION
38         "This is a capability variable.
39         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
40
41         This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
42             receiving an HE SU PPDU with 1x HE-LTF and 0.8 microsecond guard interval
43             duration. This capability is disabled otherwise."
44     DEFVAL { false }
45  ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 6 }
46
47  dot11HESUPPDUandHEMUPPDUwith4xHELTFind0point8GILmplemented OBJECT-TYPE
48      SYNTAX TruthValue
49      MAX-ACCESS read-only
50      STATUS current
51      DESCRIPTION
52         "This is a capability variable.
53         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
54
55         This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
56             receiving an HE SU PPDU and HE MU PPDU with 4x HE-LTF and 0.8 microsecond
57             guard interval duration. This capability is disabled otherwise."
58     DEFVAL { false }
59  ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 7 }
60
61  dot11HEERSUPPDUwith4xHELTFind0point8GIImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
62      SYNTAX TruthValue
63      MAX-ACCESS read-only
64      STATUS current
65

```

```

1      DESCRIPTION
2          "This is a capability variable.
3          Its value is determined by device capabilities.
4
5              This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
6                  receiving an HE ER SU PPDU with 4x HE-LTF and 0.8 microsecond guard inter-
7                      val duration. This capability is disabled otherwise."
8      DEFVAL { false }
9      ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 8 }
10
11 dot11HEERSUPPDUwith1xHELTFind0point8GIImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
12     SYNTAX TruthValue
13     MAX-ACCESS read-only
14     STATUS current
15     DESCRIPTION
16         "This is a capability variable.
17         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
18
19             This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
20                 receiving an HE ER SU PPDU with 1x HE-LTF and 0.8 microsecond guard inter-
21                     val duration. This capability is disabled otherwise."
22     DEFVAL { false }
23     ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 9 }
24
25 dot11HEMidambleRxMaxNSTS OBJECT-TYPE
26     SYNTAX Unsigned32 (0..3)
27     MAX-ACCESS read-only
28     STATUS current
29     DESCRIPTION
30         "This is a capability variable.
31         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
32
33             This attribute specifies the maximum number of space-time streams sup-
34                 ported for reception when a midamble is present in the Data field, equal
35                     to 0 for 1 space-time stream, equal to 1 for 2 space-time streams, equal
36                         to 2 for 3 space-time streams, and equal to 3 for 4 space-time streams."
37     DEFVAL { 0 }
38     ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 10 }
39
40 dot11HENDPwith4xHELTFind3point2GIImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
41     SYNTAX TruthValue
42     MAX-ACCESS read-only
43     STATUS current
44     DESCRIPTION
45         "This is a capability variable.
46         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
47
48             This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
49                 receiving an NDP with 4x HE-LTF and 3.2 microsecond guard interval dura-
50                     tion. This capability is disabled otherwise."
51     DEFVAL { false }
52     ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 11 }
53
54 dot11HESTBCTxLessThanOrEqualTo80Implemented OBJECT-TYPE
55     SYNTAX TruthValue
56     MAX-ACCESS read-only
57     STATUS current
58     DESCRIPTION
59         "This is a capability variable.
60         Its value is determined by device capabilities.
61
62             This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
63                 transmitting an HE PPDU that has a bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz
64                     and is using STBC with one spatial stream. This capability is disabled
65

```

```

1      otherwise."
2      DEFVAL { false }
3      ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 12 }
4
5 dot11HESTBCRxLessThanOrEqualTo80Implemented OBJECT-TYPE
6      SYNTAX TruthValue
7      MAX-ACCESS read-only
8      STATUS current
9      DESCRIPTION
10     "This is a capability variable.
11     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
12
13    This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
14    receiving an HE PPDU that has a bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz and
15    is using STBC with one spatial stream. This capability is disabled other-
16    wise."
17    DEFVAL { false }
18    ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 13 }
19
20 dot11HESTBCTxGreaterThan80Implemented OBJECT-TYPE
21      SYNTAX TruthValue
22      MAX-ACCESS read-only
23      STATUS current
24      DESCRIPTION
25     "This is a capability variable.
26     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
27
28    This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
29    transmitting an HE PPDU that has a bandwidth greater than 80 MHz and is
30    using STBC with one spatial stream. This capability is disabled other-
31    wise."
32    DEFVAL { false }
33    ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 14 }
34
35 dot11HESTBCRxGreaterThan80Implemented OBJECT-TYPE
36      SYNTAX TruthValue
37      MAX-ACCESS read-only
38      STATUS current
39      DESCRIPTION
40     "This is a capability variable.
41     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
42
43    This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
44    receiving an HE PPDU that has a bandwidth greater than 80 MHz and is using
45    STBC with one spatial stream. This capability is disabled otherwise."
46    DEFVAL { false }
47    ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 15 }
48
49 dot11HEDopplerTxImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
50      SYNTAX TruthValue
51      MAX-ACCESS read-only
52      STATUS current
53      DESCRIPTION
54     "This is a capability variable.
55     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
56
57    This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
58    transmitting HE PPDUs with midamble. This capability is disabled other-
59    wise."
60    DEFVAL { false }
61    ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 16 }
62
63 dot11HEDopplerRxImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
64      SYNTAX TruthValue

```

```

1      MAX-ACCESS read-only
2      STATUS current
3      DESCRIPTION
4          "This is a capability variable.
5              Its value is determined by device capabilities.
6
7          This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
8              receiving HE PPDUs with midamble. This capability is disabled otherwise."
9          DEFVAL { false }
10         ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 17 }

11
12 dot11HEDCMIImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
13     SYNTAX TruthValue
14     MAX-ACCESS read-only
15     STATUS current
16     DESCRIPTION
17         "This is a capability variable.
18             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
19
20         This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA implementation
21             supports DCM. This capability is disabled otherwise."
22         ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 18 }

23
24 dot11HEFullBWULMUMIMOImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
25     SYNTAX TruthValue
26     MAX-ACCESS read-only
27     STATUS current
28     DESCRIPTION
29         "This is a capability variable.
30             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
31
32         This attribute, when true, indicates that for an AP implementation, the
33             MU-MIMO reception of an HE TB PPDU on an RU that spans the entire PPD
34             bandwidth is supported; and for a non-AP STA implementation, the transmis
35             sion of an HE TB PPDU on an RU that spans the entire PPDU bandwidth is sup
36             ported. This capability is disabled otherwise."
37         DEFVAL { false }
38         ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 19 }

39
40 dot11HEPartialBWULMUMIMOImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
41     SYNTAX TruthValue
42     MAX-ACCESS read-only
43     STATUS current
44     DESCRIPTION
45         "This is a capability variable.
46             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
47
48         This attribute, when true, indicates that an AP is capable of receiving an
49             RU in an HE TB PPDU where MU-MIMO is employed in the RU, the RU size is
50             greater than or equal to 106-tones, and the RU does not span the entire
51             PPDU bandwidth; and a non-AP STA is capable of transmitting an RU in an HE
52             TB PPDU where MU-MIMO is employed in the RU, the RU size is greater than
53             or equal to 106-tones, and the RU does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth.
54             This capability is disabled otherwise."
55         DEFVAL { false }
56         ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 20 }

57
58 dot11HEPartialBWDLMUMIMOImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
59     SYNTAX TruthValue
60     MAX-ACCESS read-only
61     STATUS current
62     DESCRIPTION
63         "This is a capability variable.
64             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
65

```

```

1      This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
2      receiving a DL MU-MIMO transmission on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where the RU
3      does not span the entire PPDU bandwidth. This capability is disabled oth-
4      erwise."
5      DEFVAL { false }
6      ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 21 }

7      dot11HEULMUPayloadImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
8          SYNTAX TruthValue
9          MAX-ACCESS read-only
10         STATUS current
11         DESCRIPTION
12             "This is a capability variable.
13             Its value is determined by device capabilities.

14             This attribute, when true, indicates that the AP is capable of receiving
15             the payload on an RU in an HE MU PPDU where RU spans the entire PPDU band-
16             width or a 106-tone RU within 20 MHz PPDU bandwidth. This capability is
17             disabled otherwise."
18             DEFVAL { false }
19             ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 22 }

20             dot11HESRPbasedSRSSupportImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
21                 SYNTAX TruthValue
22                 MAX-ACCESS read-only
23                 STATUS current
24                 DESCRIPTION
25                     "This is a capability variable.
26                     Its value is determined by device capabilities.

27                     This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
28                     supporting the SRP-based SR operation. This capability is disabled other-
29                     wise."
30                     DEFVAL { false }
31                     ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 23 }

32                     dot11HEPowerBoostFactorImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
33                         SYNTAX TruthValue
34                         MAX-ACCESS read-only
35                         STATUS current
36                         DESCRIPTION
37                             "This is a capability variable.
38                             Its value is determined by device capabilities.

39                             This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA implementation
40                             supports a power boost factor for the r-th RU in the range [0.5, 2]. This
41                             capability is disabled otherwise."
42                             DEFVAL { false }
43                             ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 24 }

44             dot11HEPartialBWERSUPayloadImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
45                 SYNTAX TruthValue
46                 MAX-ACCESS read-only
47                 STATUS current
48                 DESCRIPTION
49                     "This is a capability variable.
50                     Its value is determined by device capabilities.

51                     This attribute, when true, indicates that the non-AP STA is capable of
52                     transmitting and receiving an HE ER SU PPDU in which the HE modulated
53                     fields are transmitted over the higher frequency 106-tone RU within pri-
54                     mary 20 MHz channel. This capability is disabled otherwise."
55                     DEFVAL { false }
56

```

```

1  ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 25 }
2
3 dot11HEPuncturedSoundingOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
4   SYNTAX TruthValue
5   MAX-ACCESS read-only
6   STATUS current
7   DESCRIPTION
8     "This is a capability variable.
9     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
10
11    This attribute, when true, indicates that the STA implementation is capa-
12    ble of operating in a mode where some 242-tone RUs are not allowed to be
13    used within a channel of width 80 MHz or 160 MHz. The capability is dis-
14    abled, otherwise"
15 DEFVAL { false }
16 ::= { dot11PhyHEEntry 26 }
17
18
19 -- ****
20 -- * End of dot11 Phy HE TABLE
21 -- ****
22
23
24 -- ****
25 -- * dot11 HE Transmit Beamforming Config TABLE
26 -- ****
27
28 dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigTable OBJECT-TYPE
29   SYNTAX SEQUENCE OF Dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry
30   MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
31   STATUS current
32   DESCRIPTION
33     "Entry of attributes for dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigTable. Imple-
34     mented as a table indexed on ifIndex to allow for multiple instances on an
35     Agent."
36   ::= { dot11phy 32 }
37
38 dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry OBJECT-TYPE
39   SYNTAX Dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry
40   MAX-ACCESS not-accessible
41   STATUS current
42   DESCRIPTION
43     "An entry in dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigTable.
44       ifIndex - Each IEEE 802.11 interface is represented by an ifEntry. Inter-
45       face tables in this MIB module are indexed by ifIndex."
46 INDEX {ifIndex}
47   ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigTable 1 }
48
49 Dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry :=
50   SEQUENCE {
51     dot11HESUBeamformerOptionImplemented          TruthValue,
52     dot11HESUBeamformeeOptionImplemented          TruthValue,
53     dot11HEMUBEamformerOptionImplemented          TruthValue,
54     dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportLessThanOrEqualTo80 Unsigned32,
55     dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportGreaterThan80    Unsigned32,
56     dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsLessThanOrEqualTo80 Unsigned32,
57     dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsGreaterThan80 Unsigned32,
58     dot11HENG16SUFeedbackSupport                TruthValue,
59     dot11HENG16MUFeedbackSupport                TruthValue,
60     dot11HECodebookSizePhi4Psi2SUFeedbackSupport TruthValue,
61     dot11HECodebookSizePhi7Psi5MUFeedbackSupport TruthValue,
62     dot11HETriggeredSUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented TruthValue,
63     dot11HETriggeredMUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented TruthValue,
64     dot11HETriggeredCQIFeedbackSupportImplemented TruthValue
65

```

```

1      }
2
3 dot11HESUBeamformerOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
4   SYNTAX TruthValue
5   MAX-ACCESS read-only
6   STATUS current
7   DESCRIPTION
8     "This is a capability variable.
9     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
10
11    This attribute, when true, indicates that for a non-AP STA implementation,
12    the operation as an SU beamformer is supported; for an AP implementation,
13    the operation as an SU beamformer is supported when the AP is equipped
14    with 4 or more spatial streams. When false, this attribute indicates that
15    for the non-AP STA implementation, the operation as an SU beamformer is
16    not supported."
17   DEFVAL { false }
18 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 1 }
19
20 dot11HESUBeamformeeOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
21   SYNTAX TruthValue
22   MAX-ACCESS read-only
23   STATUS current
24   DESCRIPTION
25     "This is a capability variable.
26     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
27
28    This attribute, when true, indicates that for an AP implementation, the
29    operation as an SU beamformee is supported; for a non-AP STA implementa-
30    tion, the operation as an SU beamformee is supported. When false, this
31    attribute indicates that for an AP implementation, the operation as an SU
32    beamformee is not supported."
33   DEFVAL { false }
34 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 2 }
35
36 dot11HEMUMBeamformerOptionImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
37   SYNTAX TruthValue
38   MAX-ACCESS read-only
39   STATUS current
40   DESCRIPTION
41     "This is a capability variable.
42     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
43
44    This attribute, when true, indicates that for an AP implementation, the
45    operation as an MU beamformer is supported when the SU Beamformer field is
46    1. When false, this attribute indicates that for an AP implementation, the
47    operation as an MU beamformer is not supported; for a non-AP STA implemen-
48    tation, the operation as an MU beamformer is not supported."
49   DEFVAL { false }
50 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 3 }
51
52 dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportLessThanOrEqualTo80 OBJECT-TYPE
53   SYNTAX Unsigned32
54   MAX-ACCESS read-only
55   STATUS current
56   DESCRIPTION
57     "This is a capability variable.
58     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
59
60    This attribute indicates the maximum number of space-time streams that the
61    non-AP STA can receive in an HE sounding NDP, the maximum value for the
62    total number of space-time streams over all the users in RU r,
63    NSTS,r,total that can be sent in a DL MU-MIMO transmission on an RU where
64    the RU might or might not span the entire PPDU bandwidth, which includes
65

```

```

1      that non-AP STA."
2 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 4 }
3
4 dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportGreaterThan80 OBJECT-TYPE
5   SYNTAX Unsigned32
6   MAX-ACCESS read-only
7   STATUS current
8   DESCRIPTION
9     "This is a capability variable.
10    Its value is determined by device capabilities.
11
12   This attribute indicates the maximum number of space-time streams that the
13   non-AP STA can receive in an HE sounding NDP, the maximum value for the
14   total number of space-time streams over all the users in RU  $r$ ,
15    $N_{STS,r, total}$  that can be sent in a DL MU-MIMO transmission on an RU where
16   the RU might or might not span the entire PPDU bandwidth, which includes
17   that STA."
18 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 5 }
19
20 dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsLessThanOrEqualTo80 OBJECT-TYPE
21   SYNTAX Unsigned32
22   MAX-ACCESS read-only
23   STATUS current
24   DESCRIPTION
25     "This is a capability variable.
26     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
27
28   This attribute specifies, for bandwidth less than or equal to 80 MHz, the
29   beamformer's capability to indicate the maximum value of the TXVECTOR
30   parameter NUM_STS for an HE sounding NDP."
31 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 6 }
32
33 dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsGreaterThan80 OBJECT-TYPE
34   SYNTAX Unsigned32
35   MAX-ACCESS read-only
36   STATUS current
37   DESCRIPTION
38     "This is a capability variable.
39     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
40
41   This attribute specifies, for bandwidth greater than 80 MHz, the beam-
42   former's capability to indicate the maximum value of the TXVECTOR parame-
43   ter NUM_STS for an HE sounding NDP."
44 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 7 }
45
46 dot11HENG16SUFeedbackSupport OBJECT-TYPE
47   SYNTAX TruthValue
48   MAX-ACCESS read-only
49   STATUS current
50   DESCRIPTION
51     "This is a capability variable.
52     Its value is determined by device capabilities.
53
54     This attribute, when true, indicates the HE beamformee support for a tone
55     grouping of 16 in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for SU feed-
56     back. This capability is disabled otherwise."
57     DEFVAL { false }
58 ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 8 }
59
60 dot11HENG16MUFeedbackSupport OBJECT-TYPE
61   SYNTAX TruthValue
62   MAX-ACCESS read-only
63   STATUS current
64   DESCRIPTION

```

```

1      "This is a capability variable.
2      Its value is determined by device capabilities.
3
4      This attribute, when true, indicates the HE beamformee support for a tone
5      grouping of 16 in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report field for MU feed-
6      back. This capability is disabled otherwise."
7      DEFVAL { false }
8      ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 9 }
9
10     dot11HECodebookSizePhi4Psi2SUFeebackSupport OBJECT-TYPE
11         SYNTAX TruthValue
12         MAX-ACCESS read-only
13         STATUS current
14         DESCRIPTION
15             "This is a capability variable.
16             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
17
18             This attribute, when true, indicates the HE beamformee support for a code-
19             book size (psi, phy) = {4, 2} in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report
20             field for SU feedback. This capability is disabled otherwise."
21             DEFVAL { false }
22             ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 10 }
23
24     dot11HECodebookSizePhi7Psi5MUFeebackSupport OBJECT-TYPE
25         SYNTAX TruthValue
26         MAX-ACCESS read-only
27         STATUS current
28         DESCRIPTION
29             "This is a capability variable.
30             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
31
32             This attribute, when true, indicates the HE beamformee support for a code-
33             book size (psi, phy) = {7, 5} in the HE Compressed Beamforming Report
34             field for MU feedback. This capability is disabled otherwise."
35             DEFVAL { false }
36             ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 11 }
37
38     dot11HETriggeredSUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
39         SYNTAX TruthValue
40         MAX-ACCESS read-only
41         STATUS current
42         DESCRIPTION
43             "This is a capability variable.
44             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
45
46             This attribute, when true, indicates that for an AP implementation, the
47             reception of partial and full bandwidth SU feedback in an HE TB sounding
48             sequence is supported; for a non-AP STA implementation, the transmission
49             of partial and full bandwidth SU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence is
50             supported. This capability is disabled otherwise."
51             DEFVAL { false }
52             ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 12 }
53
54     dot11HETriggeredMUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
55         SYNTAX TruthValue
56         MAX-ACCESS read-only
57         STATUS current
58         DESCRIPTION
59             "This is a capability variable.
60             Its value is determined by device capabilities.
61
62             This attribute, when true, indicates that for an AP implementation, the
63             reception of partial bandwidth MU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence
64             is supported; for a non-AP STA implementation, the transmission of partial
65

```

```

1      bandwidth MU feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence is supported. This
2      capability is disabled otherwise."
3      DEFVAL { false }
4      ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 13 }
5
6 dot11HETriggeredCQIFeedbackSupportImplemented OBJECT-TYPE
7     SYNTAX TruthValue
8     MAX-ACCESS read-only
9     STATUS current
10    DESCRIPTION
11        "This is a capability variable.
12        Its value is determined by device capabilities.
13
14        This attribute, when true, indicates that for an AP implementation, the
15        reception of partial and full bandwidth CQI feedback in an HE TB sounding
16        sequence is supported; for a non-AP STA implementation, the transmission
17        of partial and full bandwidth CQI feedback in an HE TB sounding sequence
18        is supported. This capability is disabled otherwise."
19        DEFVAL { false }
20    ::= { dot11HETransmitBeamformingConfigEntry 14 }
21
22
23 -- ****
24 -- * End of dot11 HE Transmit Beamforming Config TABLE
25 -- ****
26
27
28 Insert the following after the dot11FineTimingMeasurement OBJECT-GROUP:
29
30 dot11SMTbase14 OBJECT-GROUP
31     OBJECTS {
32         dot11HEOptionImplemented
33     }
34     STATUS current
35     DESCRIPTION
36         "The SMTbase14 object class provides the necessary support at the STA to
37         manage the processes in the STA such that the STA may work cooperatively
38         as a part of an IEEE 802.11 network."
39     ::= { dot11Groups 101 }
40
41
42 Change the MANDATORY-GROUPS element in the dot11Compliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE as
43 follows:
44
45
46 dot11Compliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
47     STATUS current
48     DESCRIPTION
49         "The compliance statement for SNMPv2 entities that implement the IEEE
50         802.11 MIB."
51     MODULE -- this module
52     MANDATORY-GROUPS {
53         dot11SMTbase13-dot11SMTbase14,
54         dot11MACbase4,
55         dot11CountersGroup4,
56         dot11SmtAuthenticationAlgorithms,
57         dot11ResourceTypeID,
58         dot11PhyOperationComplianceGroup2 }
59
60 Insert the following compliance objects after the dot11S1GComplianceGroup object:
61
62 dot11HEComplianceGroup OBJECT-GROUP
63     OBJECTS {
64         dot11HEOptionImplemented,
65         dot11OBSSNarrowBWRUinOFDMA Tolerated,
```

```

1      dot11HE6GOptionImplemented,
2      dot11OCTOptionImplemented,
3      dot11TRSOptionImplemented,
4      dot11ULMUMIMOOptionImplemented,
5      dot11OFDMARandomAccessOptionImplemented,
6      dot11HEControlFieldOptionImplemented,
7      dot11OMIOptionImplemented,
8      dot11HEMCSFeedbackOptionImplemented,
9      dot11HEDynamicFragmentationLevel,
10     dot11AMPDWithMultipleTIDOptionImplemented,
11     dot11MPDUAAskedforAckInMultiTIDAMPDU,
12     dot11TXOPDurationRTSThreshold,
13     dot11PPEThresholdsRequired,
14     dot11IntraPPDUPowerSaveOptionActivated,
15     dot11AMSDUFragmentationOptionImplemented,
16     dot11BSSColorCollisionAPPPeriod,
17     dot11BSSColorCollisionSTAPeriod,
18     dot11AutonomousBSSColorCollisionReportingImplemented,
19     dot11HESRPOptionImplemented,
20     dot11HEBSRControlImplemented,
21     dot11HEBQRControlImplemented,
22     dot11HECASControlImplemented,
23     dot11PartialBSSColorImplemented,
24     dot11ObsNbRuToleranceTime,
25     dot11HESubchannelSelectiveTransmissionImplemented,
26     dot11SRResponderOptionImplemented,
27     dot11AutonomousBSSColorInUseReportingImplemented,
28     dot11ShortSSIDListImplemented,
29     dot11ColocatedRNRImplemented,
30     dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMinOffset,
31     dot11SRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset,
32     dot11SRGAPBSSColorBitmap,
33     dot11SRGAPBSSIDBitmap,
34     dot11NonSRGAPOBSSPDMaxOffset,
35     dot11HTVHTTriggerOptionImplemented,
36     dot11HEDynamicSMPowerSaveOptionImplemented,
37     dot11MUEDCAParametersActived,
38     dot11CoHostedBSSIDImplemented,
39     dot1120TUProbeResponseActiveOptionImplemented,
40     dot11MemberOfColocated6GHzESSOptionImplemented,
41     dot11AckEnabledAMPDUOptionImplemented,
42     dot11MinPSCPProbeDelay}
43
44 STATUS current
45 DESCRIPTION
46     "Attributes that configure the HE Group for IEEE 802.11."
47 ::= { dot11Groups 100 }
48
49 dot11HETransmitBeamformingGroup OBJECT-GROUP
50     OBJECTS {
51         dot11HESUBeamformerOptionImplemented,
52         dot11HESUBeamformeeOptionImplemented,
53         dot11HEMUBeamformerOptionImplemented,
54         dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportLessThanOrEqualTo80,
55         dot11HEBeamformeeSTSSupportGreaterThanOrEqualTo80,
56         dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsLessThanOrEqualTo80,
57         dot11HENumberSoundingDimensionsGreaterThanOrEqualTo80,
58         dot11HENG16SUFeedbackSupport,
59         dot11HENG16MUFeedbackSupport,
60         dot11HECodebookSizePhi4Psi2SUFeedbackSupport,
61         dot11HECodebookSizePhi7Psi5MUFeedbackSupport,
62         dot11HETriggeredSUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented,
63         dot11HETriggeredMUBeamformingFeedbackImplemented,
64         dot11HETriggeredCQIFeedbackSupportImplemented }
65
66 STATUS current

```

```

1      DESCRIPTION
2          "Attributes that configure HE transmit beamforming for IEEE 802.11."
3  ::= { dot11Groups 102 }
4
5 dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup OBJECT-GROUP
6   OBJECTS {
7     dot11HECurrentChannelWidthSet,
8     dot11HEPuncturedPreambleRxImplemented,
9     dot11HEPuncturedPreambleRxActivated,
10    dot11HEDeviceClass,
11    dot11HELDPCCodingInPayloadImplemented,
12    dot11HESUPPDUwith1xHELTfand0point8GIImplemented,
13    dot11HESUPPDUandHEMUPPDUwith4xHELTfand0point8GIImplemented,
14    dot11HEERSUPPDUwith4xHELTfand0point8GIImplemented,
15    dot11HEERSUPPDUwith1xHELTfand0point8GIImplemented,
16    dot11HEMidambleRxMaxNSTS,
17    dot11HENDPwith4xHELTfand3point2GIImplemented,
18    dot11HESTBCTxLessThanOrEqualTo80Implemented,
19    dot11HESTBCTxLessThanOrEqualTo80Implemented,
20    dot11HESTBCTxGreaterThan80Implemented,
21    dot11HESTBCTxGreaterThan80Implemented,
22    dot11HEDopplerTxImplemented,
23    dot11HEDopplerRxImplemented,
24    dot11HEDCMImplemented,
25    dot11HEFullBWULMUMIMOImplemented,
26    dot11HEPartialBWULMUMIMOImplemented,
27    dot11HEPartialBWDLMUMIMOImplemented,
28    dot11HEULMUPayloadImplemented,
29    dot11HESRPbasedSRSupportImplemented,
30    dot11HEPowerBoostFactorImplemented,
31    dot11HEPartialBWERSUPayloadImplemented}
32   STATUS current
33   DESCRIPTION
34       "Attributes that configure the HE PHY."
35  ::= { dot11Groups 103 }
36
37
38 Change the dot11Compliance object as follows:
39
40 dot11Compliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
41   STATUS current
42   DESCRIPTION
43       "The compliance statement for SNMPv2 entities that implement the IEEE
44           802.11 MIB."
45   MODULE -- this module
46   MANDATORY-GROUPS {
47     dot11SMTbase14,
48     dot11MACbase4,
49     dot11CountersGroup3,
50     dot11SmtAuthenticationAlgorithms,
51     dot11ResourceTypeID,
52     dot11PhyOperationComplianceGroup2 }
53
54   GROUP dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
55   DESCRIPTION
56       "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType is
57           dsss.
58       This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
59       dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
60       dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
61       dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
62       dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
63       dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
64       dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
65       dot11DMGComplianceGroup

```

```

1      dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
2      dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
3      dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
4      dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
5
6      GROUP dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
7      DESCRIPTION
8          "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType is
9          ofdm.
10         This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
11         dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
12         dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
13         dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
14         dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
15         dot11PhyERPCComplianceGroup
16         dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
17         dot11DMGComplianceGroup
18         dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
19         dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
20         dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
21         dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
22
23      GROUP dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
24      DESCRIPTION
25          "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType is
26          hrdsss.
27         This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
28         dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
29         dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
30         dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
31         dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
32         dot11PhyERPCComplianceGroup
33         dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
34         dot11DMGComplianceGroup
35         dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
36         dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
37         dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
38         dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
39
40      GROUP dot11PhyERPCComplianceGroup
41      DESCRIPTION
42          "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType is ERP.
43          This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
44          dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
45          dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
46          dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
47          dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
48          dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
49          dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
50          dot11DMGComplianceGroup
51          dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
52          dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
53          dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
54          dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
55
56      GROUP dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
57      DESCRIPTION
58          "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType has the
59          value of ht.
60          This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
61          dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
62          dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
63          dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
64          dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
65

```

```

1      dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
2      dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
3      dot11DMGComplianceGroup
4      dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
5      dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
6      dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
7      dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
8
9      GROUP dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
10     DESCRIPTION
11        "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType has the
12        value of vht.
13        This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
14        dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
15        dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
16        dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
17        dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
18        dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
19        dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
20        dot11DMGComplianceGroup
21        dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
22        dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
23        dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
24        dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
25
26      GROUP dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
27      DESCRIPTION
28        "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType has the
29        value of tvht.
30        This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
31        dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
32        dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
33        dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
34        dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
35        dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
36        dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
37        dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
38        dot11DMGComplianceGroup
39        dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
40        dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
41        dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
42
43      GROUP dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
44      DESCRIPTION
45        "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType has the
46        value of s1g.
47        This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
48        dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
49        dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
50        dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
51        dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
52        dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
53        dot11DMGComplianceGroup
54        dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
55        dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
56        dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
57
58      GROUP dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup
59      DESCRIPTION
60        "Implementation of this group is required when object dot11PHYType has the
61        value of HE.
62        This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
63        dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
64        dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
65

```

```

1      dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
2      dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
3      dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
4      dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
5      dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
6      dot11DMGComplianceGroup
7      dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
8      dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
9      dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup"
10
11     GROUP dot11DMGComplianceGroup
12     DESCRIPTION
13     This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
14     "Implementation of this group is required when the object dot11PHYType is dmg.
15     This group is mutually exclusive to the following groups:
16         dot11PhyIRComplianceGroup
17         dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2
18         dot11PhyDSSSComplianceGroup
19         dot11PhyOFDMComplianceGroup3
20         dot11PhyHRDSSSComplianceGroup
21         dot11PhyERPComplianceGroup
22         dot11PhyHTComplianceGroup
23         dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup
24         dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup
25         dot11PhyS1GComplianceGroup
26         dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup"
27
28 Insert the following after GROUP dot11VHTMACAdditions:
29
30     GROUP dot11HETransmitBeamformingGroup
31     DESCRIPTION
32     "The dot11HETransmitBeamformingGroup group is optional."
33
34     GROUP dot11HEComplianceGroup
35     DESCRIPTION
36     "The dot11HEComplianceGroup group is optional."
37
38 Change OPTIONAL-GROUPS as follows:
39
40     -- OPTIONAL-GROUPS {
41     --     dot11SMTprivacy,
42     --     dot11MACStatistics,
43     --     dot11PhyAntennaComplianceGroup,
44     --     dot11PhyTxPowerComplianceGroup,
45     --     dot11PhyRegDomainsSupportGroup,
46     --     dot11PhyAntennasListGroup,
47     --     dot11PhyRateGroup,
48     --     dot11MultiDomainCapabilityGroup,
49     --     dot11PhyFHSSComplianceGroup2,
50     --     dot11RSNAadditions,
51     --     dot11OperatingClassesGroup,
52     --     dot11Qosadditions,
53     --     dot11RMCompliance,
54     --     dot11FTComplianceGroup
55     --     dot11PhyAntennaComplianceGroup2,
56     --     dot11HTMACadditions,
57     --     dot11PhyMCSGroup,
58     --     dot11TransmitBeamformingGroup,
59     --     dot11VHTTransmitBeamformingGroup,
60     --     dot11PhyVHTComplianceGroup,
61     --     dot11VHTMACAdditions,
62     --     dot11TVHTTransmitBeamformingGroup,
63     --     dot11PhyTVHTComplianceGroup,
64     --     dot11HETransmitBeamformingGroup,
65     --     dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup,

```

```

1      -- dot11HEComplianceGroup,
2      -- dot11WNMCompliance}
3
4 Insert the following after dot11S1GCompliance:
5
6 -- ****
7 -- * Compliance Statements - HE
8 -- ****
9 dot11HECompliance MODULE-COMPLIANCE
10    STATUS current
11    DESCRIPTION
12      "This object class provides the objects from the IEEE 802.11
13      MIB used to operate at high efficiency."
14    MODULE -- this module
15    MANDATORY-GROUPS { dot11PhyHEComplianceGroup, dot11PhyTxPowerCompliance-
16                  Group2, dot11HETransmitBeamformingGroup, dot11HEComplianceGroup }
17    -- OPTIONAL-GROUPS { }
18    ::= { dot11Compliances 22 }

19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

```

1
2
3
4
5
6
7 **Annex E**

8 (normative)

9
10
11 **Country elements and operating classes**

12
13 **E.1 Country information and operating classes**

14
15 *Insert the following rows and update the “reserved” row appropriately in Table E-4:*

16
17 **Table E-4—Global operating classes**

Operating class	Nonglobal operating class(es)	Channel starting frequency (GHz)	Channel spacing (MHz)	Channel set	Channel center frequency index	Behavior limits set
131		5.940	20	—	1, 5, 9, 13, 17, 21, 25, 29, 33, 37 , 41, 45, 49, 53, 57, 61, 65, 69, 73, 77, 81, 85, 89, 93, 97, 101, 105, 109, 113, 117, 121, 125, 129, 133, 137, 141, 145, 149, 153, 157, 161, 165, 169, 173, 177, 181, 185, 189, 193, 197, 201, 205, 209, 213, 217, 221, 225, 229, 233	
132		5.940	40	—	3, 11, 19, 27, 35, 43, 51, 59, 67, 75, 83, 91, 99, 107, 115, 123, 131, 139, 147, 155, 163, 171, 179, 187, 195, 203, 211, 219, 227	

Table E-4—Global operating classes (continued)

Operating class	Nonglobal operating class(es)	Channel starting frequency (GHz)	Channel spacing (MHz)	Channel set	Channel center frequency index	Behavior limits set
133		5.940	80	—	7, 23, 39, 55, 71, 87, 103, 119, 135, 151, 167, 183, 199, 215	
134		5.940	160	—	15, 47, 79, 111, 143, 175, 207	
135		5.940	80	—	7, 23, 39, 55, 71, 87, 103, 119, 135, 151, 167, 183, 199, 215	80+

1 Annex G

2
3
4 (normative)

5 6 7 Frame exchange sequences

8 G.1 General

9
10
11 Change Table G.1 as follows:

12
13
14
15
16 Table G-1—Attributes applicable to frame exchange sequence definition

17 18 19 Attribute	20 Description
22 23 24 25 <i>mu-user-respond</i>	26 The preceding frame or A-MPDU is part of a VHT MU PPDU and is 27 addressed to a user from which an immediate response is expected. See NOTE 28 3 and NOTE 4.
26 27 <i>mu-users-respond</i>	28 The preceding frame or A-MPDU is part of an HE MU PPDU.
28 29 30 <i>mu-user-not-respond</i>	31 The preceding frame or A-MPDU is part of a VHT MU PPDU and is 32 addressed to a user from which no immediate response is expected. See NOTE 33 3 and NOTE 4.

34 G.4 HT and VHT and S1G sequences

35
36 Change as follows:

37
38 (* The per-user parts of a VHT MU PPDU and HE MU PPDU that do not require a response *)
39 other-users = {ppdu-not-requiring-response-per-user +mu-user-not-respond} +mu-ppdu-end;

40
41
42 Insert a new subclause G.5 as follows:

43 G.5 HE sequences

44
45
46 he-txop-sequence = he-nav-protected-sequence |
47
48 1 {initiator-sequence};

49
50
51 (* an he-nav-protected-sequence consists of setting the NAV, performing one or more initiator-sequences
52 and then resetting the NAV if time permits *)

53
54
55 he-nav-protected-sequence = he-nav-set 1 {initiator-sequence} [resync-sequence];

56
57 (* This is the sequence of frames that establish protection use MU-RTS *)

58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65 he-nav-set = (**MU-RTS Trigger 1{CTS}**) |
66 (**Data[+HTC]+individual[+null][+QoS+normal-ack] Ack**) |
67 (**Data[+HTC]+individual[+QoS+block-ack]**) |
68 (**Data+group[+null][+QoS]**) |
69 (1 {**Data[+HTC]+individual+QoS+implicit-bar+a-mpdu**}+a-mpdu-end)
70 **BlockAck**) |

```

1          (BlockAckReq (BlockAck|Ack)) |
2          (BlockAck|Ack);
3
4 he-dl-mu-sequence =   (BlockAck+delayed[+mu-users-respond] Ack |
5                      (BlockAckReq+delayed[+mu-users-respond] Ack) |
6                      (Data[+HTC]+individual[+null][+QoS+normal-ack][+mu-user-respond] Ack |
7                      Ack);
8
9
10 (* Trigger frame is sent by the AP to initiate non-AP UL transmission. A PPDU containing a Trigger frame
11      is either a non-A-MPDU Trigger frame, or an A-MPDU carrying a Trigger frame
12      *)
13
14
15 he-ul-mu-sequence =   (Basic Trigger) | (Basic Trigger+a-mpdu+mu-user-respond+a-mpdu-end)
16           1{Data[+HTC]+QoS+(no-ack | block-ack)+a-mpdu}
17           + a-mpdu-end;
18
19
20 he-cascading-sequence = he-dl-mu-sequence + he-ul-mu-sequence
21
22 (* HE beamforming sequence *)
23
24
25 he-non-trigger-based-sounding =
26           (HE NDP Announcement) (HE sounding NDP)
27           HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI;
28
29
30 he-trigger-based-sounding = (HE NDP Announcement) (HE sounding NDP) he-feedback
31           {BFRP Trigger he-feedback};
32
33
34 he-feedback =          (HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI) | (* S-MPDU or non-HE PPDU *)
35           1{(HE Compressed Beamforming/CQI)+a-mpdu}+a-mpdu-end;
36
37 he-nfrp-report =       (NFRP Trigger) n (HE TB feedback NDP)
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

```

1 **Annex T**
 2
 3
 4 (informative)
 5
 6

Overlapping BSS (OBSS) management

T.1 Introduction

Change as follows:

When two or more BSSs overlap, the available bandwidth is shared and hence reduced for each BSS. The basic access mechanism, such as DCF, is able to work across OBSSs. Similarly, if EDCA is used, the OBSS might be considered a larger network, and access to the WM is basically shared according to the EDCA access mechanism. Note that for both DCF and EDCA overlapping networks, the sharing is affected by the relative traffic; and if more than two APs are sharing, the problem of "neighbor capture" might occur. The neighbor capture effect might occur when a BSS is in the middle of two other BSSs that are hidden from each other, where it might suffer a disproportionate degradation in throughput, relative to the total traffic in all three BSSs. A particular problem arises when there is some expectation of QoS. If EDCA admission control is in use, then it can be used to regulate the QoS traffic on its own BSS, but it might not take into account the EDCA admitted traffic on an OBSS. The result is that the QoS is compromised if each BSS admits traffic up to its local maximum. Similarly a BSS using HCCA might schedule traffic in its own BSS, to "guarantee" a service, but, if not controlled, this might suppress overlapping EDCA admission control BSS. Furthermore, if two HCCA BSSs overlap and they do not coordinate their scheduled TXOPs, then a degradation of QoS might result. An HE BSS advertises BSS color information which is a value between 1-63 that identifies the BSS. Based on the BSS color information, a receiving STA can make decisions on whether to access the medium while there is on-going transmission on the medium or go to doze state until the end of the received PPDU or update the NAV. The features described in this annex have been introduced in order to allow a degree of management for OBSSs and for mitigation of the basic problems outlined above.

Insert the following at the end of the Annex:

T.6 BSS color and spatial reuse

The BSS color is an identifier of the BSS and is used to assist a receiving STA in identifying the BSS from which a PPDU originates so that the STA can follow the channel access rules to perform spatial reuse. The objective of spatial reuse operation is to allow the medium to be used more often between OBSSs in dense deployment scenarios by the early identification of signals from OBSSs and interference management. See 26.10 (Spatial reuse operation).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

1 *Insert a new annex as follows:*
 2
 3
 4
 5 **Annex Z**
 6
 7
 8 (informative)
 9

12 **HE-SIG-B content examples**

16 **Z.1 General**

19 This annex provides a number of examples to illustrate the content of HE-SIG-B content channels.
 20

22 HE-SIG-B content channels are padded to the same length and to an OFDM symbol boundary as defined in
 23 27.3.10.8.5 (Encoding and modulation). For illustration simplicity, the examples do not include the com-
 24 plete padding bits but only pad to make the two HE-SIG-B content channels equal in length and an integer
 25 number of 4 bits. All the padding bits in the examples are set to 0.
 26

28 In the examples, the binary sequence of each HE-SIG-B field is in transmission order. For the entire content
 29 of each HE-SIG-B content channel, the binary sequences are converted to hexadecimal.
 30

34 **Z.2 Example 1**

37 An example of the HE-SIG-B field with resource allocation signaling for an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU is
 38 shown in Table Z-1.
 39

41 **Table Z-1—Resource allocation signaling example 1**

44 RU	45 484-tone RU 1	46 26-tone RU 19 (center 26-tone RU)	47 242-tone RU 3	48 242-tone RU 4
49 SS0	50 STA-ID 1441, 51 HE-MCS 10, 52 LDPC	53 STA-ID 1443, 54 HE-MCS 3, BCC, 55 1SS, no beam- 56 forming, no DCM	57 STA-ID 1444, 58 HE-MCS 4, BCC, 59 2SS, Tx beam- 60 forming	61 STA-ID 1445, 62 HE-MCS 8, BCC
63 SS1				64 STA-ID 1446, 65 HE-MCS 7, BCC
66 SS2	67 STA-ID 1442, 68 HE-MCS 9, LDPC		69 N/A	70 STA-ID 1447, 71 HE-MCS 6, BCC
72 SS3				73 STA-ID 1448, 74 HE-MCS 5, BCC

62 The User fields for the two MU-MIMO STAs on 484-tone RU 1 are split with 2 User fields on HE-SIG-B
 63 content channel 1 and non on HE-SIG-B content channel 2, to balance their load. The User field for STAs
 64 1441, 1442, 1443 and 1444 are in HE-SIG-B content channel 1 while User field for STAs 1445, 1446, 1447
 65

1 and 1448 are in HE-SIG-B content channel 2. The content of the entire HE-SIG-B for this example is shown
 2 in Table Z-2.

5 **Table Z-2—HE-SIG-B content for example 1**

	HE-SIG-B content channel 1		HE-SIG-B content channel 2	
Common field	10010011 00000011 1 1111 000000		01001110 11000011 1 1100 000000	
User fields	STA 1441	10000101101 0010 0101 0 1	STA 1445	10100101101 0000 0001 0 0
	STA 1442	01000101101 0010 1001 0 1	STA 1446	01100101101 0000 1110 0 0
	CRC & tail	0011 000000	CRC & tail	1101 000000
	STA 1444	00100101101 100 1 0010 0 0	STA 1447	11100101101 0000 0110 0 0
	STA 1443	11000101101 000 0 1100 0 0	STA 1448	00010101101 0000 1010 0 0
	CRC & tail	1000 000000	CRC & tail	1001 000000
	Padding	0	Padding	0
HE-SIG-B field content in hexa-decimal	0x9303F810B49545A529804B648C5A18400		0x4EC3E014B40465A1C681CB41815A14480	

Z.3 Example 2

An example of the HE-SIG-B field with full bandwidth MU-MIMO resource allocation for more than 1 user in an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU is shown in Table Z-3.

38 **Table Z-3—Resource allocation signaling example 2**

RU	996-tone RU 1
SS0	STA-ID 1449, HE-MCS 6, LDPC
SS1	
SS2	STA-ID 1450, HE-MCS 7, LDPC
SS3	STA-ID 1451, HE-MCS 8, LDPC

In this example, the SIGB Compression field in HE-SIG-A is set to 1 and the Common field is not present in either HE-SIG-B content channel. The User field for STA 1449 and STA 1450 is in HE-SIG-B content

1 channel 1 and User field for STA 1451 is in HE-SIG-B content channel 2. The content of the HE-SIG-B
 2 field in this example is shown in Table Z-4.
 3
 4
 5

Table Z-4—HE-SIG-B content for example 2

	HE-SIG-B content channel 1			HE-SIG-B content channel 2	
User fields	STA 1449	10010101101 1000 0110 0 1	STA 1451	11010101101 1000 0001 0 1	
	STA 1450	01010101101 1000 1110 0 1	CRC & tail	0101 000000	
	CRC & tail	0011 000000	Padding	00000000000000000000000000000000	
HE-SIG-B field content in hexa-decimal	0x95B0CAAD8E4C0			0xD5B02A8000000	

Z.4 Example 3

An example of the HE-SIG-B field with signaling for a full bandwidth, single user resource allocation in an 80 MHz HE MU PPDU is shown in Table Z-5.

Table Z-5—Resource allocation signaling example 3

RU	996-tone RU 1
SS0	STA-ID 1452, HE-MCS 8, LDPC, 2SS, Tx beam-forming
SS1	

In this example, the SIGB Compression field in HE-SIG-A is set to 0 and the resource allocation is signaled as an OFDMA transmission with one user. The User field for STA 1452 is in HE-SIG-B content channel 1 and no User field is present in HE-SIG-B content channel 2. The content of the HE-SIG-B field is shown in Table Z-6.

Table Z-6—HE-SIG-B content for example 3

	HE-SIG-B content channel 1			HE-SIG-B content channel 2	
Common field	00001011 11001110 0 1011 000000			11001110 11001110 0 1110 000000	
User fields	STA 1452	00110101101 100 1 0001 0 1	Padding	00000000000000000000000000000000	
	CRC & tail	1100 000000			
	Padding	00			
HE-SIG-B field content in hexa-decimal	0x0BCE5806B645C00			0xCECE700000000000	

Z.5 Example 4

An example of various dynamic split options to balance the load across HE-SIG-B content channels is shown in Table Z-7. Two users are transmitted using MU-MIMO in the lowest 484-tone RU of an 80 MHz or wider PPDU. The example shows just the associated RU Allocation subfields (i.e., a fragment of the HE-SIG-B field), which might be sent in one of three ways.

Table Z-7—RU Allocation subfields for different dynamic splits of User fields for the example of two MU-MIMO users in the lowest 484-tone RU of an 80 MHz or wider PPDU

Dynamic split option	First RU Allocation subfield of HE-SIG-B content channel 1	Number of User fields contributed to HE SIG-B content channel 1	First RU Allocation subfield of HE SIG-B content channel 2	Number of User fields contributed to HE SIG-B content channel 2
Both User fields signaled in HE-SIG-B content channel 1	MSB first: 11001001 LSB first: 10010011	2	MSB first: 01110010 LSB first: 01001110	0
Both User fields signaled in HE-SIG-B content channel 2	MSB first: 01110010 LSB first: 01001110	0	MSB first: 11001001 LSB first: 10010011	2
One User field per HE-SIG-B content channel	MSB first: 11001000 LSB first: 00010011	1	MSB first: 11001000 LSB first: 00010011	1